Digital Imaging and Communications in Medicine (DICOM)

Part 3: Information Object Definitions

Published by

National Electrical Manufacturers Association
1300 N. 17th Street
Rosslyn, Virginia 22209 USA

- Standard -

NOTICE AND DISCLAIMER

The information in this publication was considered technically sound by the consensus of persons engaged in the development and approval of the document at the time it was developed. Consensus does not necessarily mean that there is unanimous agreement among every person participating in the development of this document.

NEMA standards and guideline publications, of which the document contained herein is one, are developed through a voluntary consensus standards development process. This process brings together volunteers and/or seeks out the views of persons who have an interest in the topic covered by this publication. While NEMA administers the process and establishes rules to promote fairness in the development of consensus, it does not write the document and it does not independently test, evaluate, or verify the accuracy or completeness of any information or the soundness of any judgments contained in its standards and guideline publications.

NEMA disclaims liability for any personal injury, property, or other damages of any nature whatsoever, whether special, indirect, consequential, or compensatory, directly or indirectly resulting from the publication, use of, application, or reliance on this document. NEMA disclaims and makes no guaranty or warranty, expressed or implied, as to the accuracy or completeness of any information published herein, and disclaims and makes no warranty that the information in this document will fulfill any of your particular purposes or needs. NEMA does not undertake to guarantee the performance of any individual manufacturer or seller's products or services by virtue of this standard or guide.

In publishing and making this document available, NEMA is not undertaking to render professional or other services for or on behalf of any person or entity, nor is NEMA undertaking to perform any duty owed by any person or entity to someone else. Anyone using this document should rely on his or her own independent judgment or, as appropriate, seek the advice of a competent professional in determining the exercise of reasonable care in any given circumstances. Information and other standards on the topic covered by this publication may be available from other sources, which the user may wish to consult for additional views or information not covered by this publication.

NEMA has no power, nor does it undertake to police or enforce compliance with the contents of this document. NEMA does not certify, test, or inspect products, designs, or installations for safety or health purposes. Any certification or other statement of compliance with any health or safety–related information in this document shall not be attributable to NEMA and is solely the responsibility of the certifier or maker of the statement.

CONTENTS

FOREWORD

The American College of Radiology (ACR) and the National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) formed a joint committee to develop a standard for Digital Imaging and Communications in Medicine (DICOM). This DICOM Standard was developed according to the NEMA procedures.

This standard is developed in liaison with other standardization organizations including CEN TC251 in Europe and JIRA in Japan, with review also by other organizations including IEEE, HL7 and ANSI in the USA.

The DICOM Standard is structured as a multi-part document using the guidelines established in the following document:

— ISO/IEC Directives, 1989 Part 3 : Drafting and Presentation of International Standards.

This document is one part of the DICOM Standard which consists of the following parts:

PS 3.1: Introduction and Overview

PS 3.2: Conformance

PS 3.3: Information Object Definitions

PS 3.4: Service Class Specifications

PS 3.5: Data Structures and Encoding

PS 3.6: Data Dictionary

PS 3.7: Message Exchange

PS 3.8: Network Communication Support for Message Exchange

PS 3.9: Retired

PS 3.10: Media Storage and File Format for Media Interchange

PS 3.11: Media Storage Application Profiles

PS 3.12: Formats and Physical Media

PS 3.13: Retired

PS 3.14: Grayscale Standard Display Function

PS 3.15: Security and System Management Profiles

PS 3.16: Content Mapping Resource

PS 3.17: Explanatory Information

PS 3.18: Web Access to DICOM Persistent Objects (WADO)

These parts are related but independent documents. Their development level and approval status may differ. Additional parts may be added to this multi-part standard. PS 3.1 should be used as the base reference for the current parts of this standard.

1 Scope and field of application

This Part of the DICOM Standard specifies the set of Information Object Definitions (IODs) which provide an abstract definition of real-world objects applicable to communication of digital medical information. For each IOD, this Part specifies:

— any necessary information for the semantic description of the IOD

— relationships to associated real-world objects relevant to the IOD

— Attributes which describe the characteristics of the IOD

For each IOD, this Part does not specify:

— the nature of any Service Class Definition intended to reference the IOD

— the nature of any interactions which result in the usage of the IOD

This Part is related to other parts of the DICOM Standard in that:

— PS 3.4, Service Class Specifications, specifies application level services by grouping DIMSE services with IODs as defined in this Part;

— PS 3.5, Data Structure and Semantics, defines the data encoding used in the DIMSE Protocol when applied to IODs defined in this Part;

— PS 3.6, Data Dictionary, contains an index by Tag of all IOD Attributes defined in this Part. This index includes the Value Representation and Value Multiplicity for each Attribute;

— PS 3.7, Message Exchange Protocol, defines the DIMSE Services and Protocol which may be applied to IODs defined in this Part.

2 Normative references

The following standards contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of this Standard. At the time of publication, the editions indicated were valid. All standards are subject to revision, and parties to agreements based on this Standard are encouraged to investigate the possibilities of applying the most recent editions of the standards indicated below.

INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATION FOR STANDARDIZATION (ISO) AND INTERNATIONAL ELECTROTECHNICAL COMMISSION (IEC)

ISO/IEC Directives, 1989 Part 3	Drafting and Presentation of International Standards
ISO/IEC 2022:1994	Information technology - Character code structure and extension techniques.
ISO 3950-1984	Dentistry - Designation system for teeth and areas of the oral cavity.
ISO 7498-1:1994	Information Processing Systems - Open Systems Interconnection - Basic Reference Model

ISO 7498-2:1989	Information processing systems – Open Systems Interconnection – Basic reference Model – Part 2: Security Architecture
ISO/TR 8509	Information Processing Systems - Open Systems Interconnection - Service Conventions Note: ISO/TR 8509 has been withdrawn. See ISO/IEC 2382-26:1993 Information technology -- Vocabulary -- Part 26: Open systems interconnection
ISO 8825-1:2002	Information technology – ASN.1 encoding rules: Specification of Basic Encoding Rules (BER), Canonical Encoding Rules (CER) and Distinguished Encoding Rules (DER).
ISO/IEC 10118-3:1998	Information technology – Security techniques – Hash-functions – Part 3: Dedicated hash-functions (RIPEMD-160 reference) Note: The draft RIPEMD-160 specification and sample code are also available at http://homes.esat.kuleuven.be/~bosselae/ripemd160.html
ISO/IEC 10646:2003	Information Technology -- Universal Multiple-Octet Coded Character Set (UCS) Note: ISO/IEC 10646-2003 is the same as Unicode Version 4.0, available at http://unicode.org
ISO/IEC 13818-1:2000	Information technology -- Generic coding of moving pictures and associated audio information: Systems
ISO/IEC 13818-2:2000	Information technology -- Generic coding of moving pictures and associated audio information: Video
ISO/IEC 13818-3:1998	Information technology -- Generic coding of moving pictures and associated audio information -- Part 3: Audio
ISO/IEC 13818-4:2004	Information technology -- Generic coding of moving pictures and associated audio information -- Part 4: Conformance testing
ISO 15076-1:2005	Image technology colour management — Architecture, profile format, and data structure Note: Also available as ICC.1:2004-10 (Profile version 4.2.0.0), International Color Consortium.
IEC 60601-2-44, Ed.2.1	Medical Electrical Equipment – Part 2-44: Particular Requirements for the Safety of X-Ray Equipment for Computed Tomography, 2002
IEC 61217, Ed 1.1	Radiotherapy Equipment - Coordinates, Movements and Scales, 2002
IEC 61966-2.1	Multimedia systems and equipment - Colour measurement and management– Part 2.1: Colour management - Default RGB colour space – sRGB, 1999

INTERNATIONAL TELECOMMUNICATIONS UNION (ITU)

ITU-T G.711	Pulse code modulation (PCM) of voice frequencies, 1998

ITU-T X.509	Information technology - Open Systems Interconnection - The directory: Public-key and attribute certificate frameworks, 2000 Note: ITU-T Recommendation X.509 is similar to ISO/IEC 9594-8 1990. However, the ITU-T recommendation is the more familiar form, and was revised in 1993 and 2000, with two sets of corrections in 2001. ITU-T was formerly known as CCITT.

INTERNET ENGINEERING TASK FORCE (IETF)

RFC 2046	Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) Part Two: Media Types, November 1996
RFC 2396	Uniform Resource Identifiers (URI): Generic Syntax
RFC 2437	PKCS #1 RSA Cryptography Specifications Version 2.0 Note: The RSA Encryption Standard is also defined in informative annex A of ISO/IEC 9796, and in Normative Annex A of the CEN/TC251 European Prestandard prENV 12388:1996.
RFC 2630	Cryptographic Message Syntax, June 1999
RFC 3161	Internet X.509 Public Key Infrastructure; Time Stamp Protocols

HEALTH LEVEL SEVEN (HL7)

ANSI/HL7 V2.5-2003	HL7 Standard Version 2.5 – An Application Protocol for Electronic Data Exchange in Healthcare Environments
ANSI/HL7 v3 DT R1-2004	Health Level Seven Version 3 Standard: Data Types – Abstract Specification, Release 1
ANSI/HL7 CDA R1.0-2000	Health Level Seven Version 3 Standard: Clinical Document Architecture Framework, Release 1.0
ANSI/HL7 v3 CDA R2-2005	Health Level Seven Version 3 Standard: Clinical Document Architecture Framework, Release 2
HL7 SCTP R1.0	HL7 Structured Clinical Trial Protocol Standard, Release 1.0
ANSI/HL7 SPL R1.0-2004	HL7 Structured Product Labeling Standard, Release 1.0

UNITED STATES NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF STANDARDS AND TECHNOLOGY (NIST)

FIPS PUB 46	Data Encryption Standard
FIPS PUB 81	DES Modes of Operation

OTHER REFERENCES

Anderson, LL	"A "natural" volume-dose histogram for brachytherapy", Medical Physics 13(6) pp 898-903, 1986.
ANSI X9.52-1998	Triple Data Encryption Algorithm Modes of Operation, Accredited Standards Committee (ASC) X9, Financial Services
BI-RADS	Breast Imaging Reporting and Data System, 3rd Edition 1998, American College of Radiology.

CIE Publication 15.2-1986	Colorimetry, Second Edition, Commission Internationale de l'Eclairage/ International Commission on Illumination
ECMA 235	The ECMA GSS-API Mechanism, European Computer Manufacturers Association
GB 18030-2000	Information Technology -- Chinese ideograms coded character set for information interchange -- Extension for the basic set, Standards Administration of China
ICRU Report 50	Prescribing, Recording, and Reporting Photon Beam Therapy, International Commission on Radiation Units and Measurements, 1993
NEMA UD3-2004	Standard for Real-Time Display of Thermal and Mechanical Acoustic Output Indices on Diagnostic Ultrasound Equipment, National Electrical Manufacturers Association and American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine
IEEE 754:1985	32-bit and 64-bit Floating Point Number Representations
PDF Reference	PDF Reference, Fifth Edition: Adobe Portable Document Format version 1.6, Adobe Systems Incorporated
TIS 620-2533 (1990)	Thai Characters Code for Information Interchange, Thai Industrial Standards Institute

3 Definitions

For the purposes of this Standard the following definitions apply.

3.1 REFERENCE MODEL DEFINITIONS

This Part of the Standard is based on the concepts developed in ISO 7498-1 and makes use of the following terms defined in it:

a. Application Entity
b. Service or Layer Service

This Part of the Standard makes use of the following terms defined in ISO 7498-2:

a. Data Confidentiality

Note: The definition is “the property that information is not made available or disclosed to unauthorized individuals, entities or processes.”

b. Data Origin Authentication

Note: The definition is “the corroboration that the source of data received is as claimed.”

c. Data Integrity

Note: The definition is “the property that data has not been altered or destroyed in an unauthorized manner.”

d. Key Management

Note: The definition is “the generation, storage, distribution, deletion, archiving and application of keys in accordance with a security policy.”

3.2 SERVICE CONVENTIONS DEFINITIONS

This Part of the Standard makes use of the following terms defined in ISO/TR 8509:

a. Primitive

3.3 DICOM INTRODUCTION AND OVERVIEW DEFINITIONS

This Part of the Standard makes use of the following terms defined in PS 3.1:

a. Attribute
b. Command
c. Data Dictionary
d. Message

3.4 DICOM SERVICE CLASS SPECIFICATIONS

This Part of the Standard makes use of the following terms defined in PS 3.4:

a. Real-World Activity
b. Real-World Object
c. Service Class
d. Service Class User
e. Service Class Provider
f. Service-Object Pair (SOP) Class
g. Service-Object Pair (SOP) Instance
h. Preformatted Grayscale Image
i. Preformatted Color Image
j. Related General SOP Class

3.5 DICOM DATA STRUCTURES AND ENCODING

This Part of the Standard makes use of the following terms defined in PS 3.5:

a. Data Element
b. Data Element Tag
c. Data Element Type
d. Data Set
e. Defined Term
f. Enumerated Value
g. Sequence of Items

h. Unique Identifier (UID)

3.6 DICOM MESSAGE EXCHANGE

This Part of the Standard makes use of the following terms defined in PS 3.7:

a. DICOM Message Service Element (DIMSE)
b. DIMSE-N Services
c. DIMSE-C Services

3.7 DICOM UPPER LAYER SERVICE

This Part of the Standard makes use of the following terms defined in PS 3.8:

a. DICOM Upper Layer Service

3.8 DICOM INFORMATION OBJECT

The following definitions are commonly used in this part of the Standard:

3.8.1 Attribute tag: A unique identifier for an Attribute of an Information Object composed of an ordered pair of numbers (a Group Number followed by an Element number).

3.8.2 Composite IOD: an Information Object Definition which represents parts of several entities in the DICOM Application Model. Such an IOD includes Attributes which are not inherent in the Real-World Object that the IOD represents but rather are inherent in related Real-World Objects.

3.8.3 Derived image: an image in which the pixel data was constructed from pixel data of one or more other images (source images).

3.8.4 DICOM information model: an Entity-Relationship diagram which is used to model the relationships between the Information Object Definitions representing classes of Real-World Objects defined by the DICOM Application Model.

3.8.5 DICOM application model: an Entity-Relationship diagram used to model the relationships between Real-World Objects which are within the area of interest of the DICOM Standard.

3.8.6 Information entity: that portion of information defined by a Composite IOD which is related to one specific class of Real-World Object. There is a one-to-one correspondence between Information Entities and entities in the DICOM Application Model**.**

3.8.7 Information object definition (IOD): a data abstraction of a class of similar Real-World Objects which defines the nature and Attributes relevant to the class of Real-World Objects represented.

3.8.8 Module: A set of Attributes within an Information Entity or Normalized IOD which are logically related to each other.

3.8.9 Multi-frame image: Image that contains multiple two-dimensional pixel planes.

3.8.10 Normalized IOD: an Information Object Definition which represents a single entity in the DICOM Application Model. Such an IOD includes Attributes which are only inherent in the Real-World Object that the IOD represents.

3.8.11 Cine run: A set of temporally related frames acquired at constant or variable frame rates. This term incorporates the general class of serialography**.**

Note: A Cine run is typically encoded as a multi-frame image.

3.8.12 Specialization: Specialization is the replacement of the Type, value range and/or description of an Attribute in a general Module of an IOD, by its Type, value range and/or description defined in a modality-specific Module of an IOD.

Note: The same Attribute may be present in multiple Modules in the same IOD but not specified to be "Specialized".

3.8.13 Functional Group: A set of logically related Attributes that are likely to vary together. May be used in Multi-frame IODs to describe parameters which change on a per frame basis.

3.8.14 Code Sequence Attribute: Attribute that (usually) includes the string "Code Sequence" in the Attribute Name and has a VR of SQ (Sequence of Items). Its purpose is to encode concepts using code values and optional text meanings from coding schemes. Sections 8.1 through 8.8 specify the Attributes of which the Sequence Items (Attribute Sets) of Code Sequence Attributes are constructed.

3.9 CHARACTER HANDLING DEFINITIONS

This part of the standard makes use of the following terms defined in ISO/IEC 2011:1994:

a. Coded character set; code.
b. Code extension;
c. Escape sequence.

3.10 RADIOTHERAPY

This Part of the Standard is based on the concepts developed in IEC 61217 and makes use of the following terms defined in it:

a. FIXED REFERENCE system
b. GANTRY system
c. BEAM LIMITING DEVICE system
d. WEDGE FILTER system
e. X-RAY IMAGE RECEPTOR system
f. PATIENT SUPPORT system
g. TABLE TOP ECCENTRIC system
h. TABLE TOP system

3.11 MACROS

3.11.1 Attribute Macro: a set of Attributes that are described in a single table that is referenced by multiple Module or other tables.

3.12 DEVICE INDEPENDENT PIXEL VALUES

3.12.1 P-Value

This Part of the Standard makes use of the following terms defined in PS 3.14:

a. P-Value

Note: The definition is **"**A device independent value defined in a perceptually linear grayscale space. The output of the DICOM Presentation LUT is P-Values, i.e. the pixel value after all DICOM defined grayscale transformations have been applied. P-Values are the input to a Standardized Display System."

3.12.2 PCS-Value: Profile Connection Space Value. A device independent color value that is created by the application of the transformation specified in an ICC profile.

3.13 CODES AND CONTROLLED TERMINOLOGY DEFINITIONS:

This Part of the Standard makes use of the following terms defined in PS 3.16:

a. Baseline Context Group Identifier (BCID)

b. Defined Context Group Identifier (DCID)

c. Context Group

d. Context Group Version

e. Context ID (CID)

f. Mapping Resource

g. Relationship Type

h. DICOM Content Mapping Resource (DCMR)

i. Template

j. Template ID (TID)

k. Value Set

l. Baseline Template Identifier (BTID)

m. Defined Template Identifier (DTID)

n. Coding schemes

3.14 REFERENCE MODEL SECURITY ARCHITECTURE DEFINITIONS

This Part of the Standard makes use of the following terms defined in ISO 7498-2:

a. Digital Signature

Note: The definition is “Data appended to, or a cryptographic transformation of, a data unit that allows a recipient of the data unit to prove the source and integrity of that unit and protect against forgery e.g. by the recipient.”

a. Data Confidentiality

Note: The definition is “the property that information is not made available or disclosed to unauthorized individuals, entities or processes.”

b. Data Origin Authentication

Note: The definition is “the corroboration that the source of data received is as claimed.”

c. Data Integrity

Note: The definition is “the property that data has not been altered or destroyed in an unauthorized manner.”

d. Key Management

Note: The definition is “the generation, storage, distribution, deletion, archiving and application of keys in accordance with a security policy.”

3.15 SECURITY DEFINITIONS

This Part of the Standard makes use of the following terms defined in ECMA 235:

a. Security Context

Note: The definition is “security information that represents, or will represent a Security Association to an initiator or acceptor that has formed, or is attempting to form such an association.”

3.16 DICOM SECURITY PROFILES

This part of the Standard makes use of the following terms defined in PS 3.15:

a. Message Authentication Code
b. Certificate

3.17 MULTI-DIMENSIONAL DEFINITIONS

3.17.1 **Reference Coordinate System (RCS)**: The RCS is the spatial coordinate system in a DICOM Frame of Reference. It is the chosen origin, orientation and spatial scale of an Image IE in a Cartesian space. The RCS is a right-handed Cartesian coordinate system i.e. the vector cross product of a unit vector along the positive x-axis and a unit vector along the positive y-axis is equal to a unit vector along the positive z-axis. The unit length is one millimeter. Typically, the Image IE contains a spatial mapping that specifies the relationship of the image samples to the Cartesian spatial domains of the RCS.

3.17.2 **Fiducial:** A fiducial is some unique feature or landmark suitable as a spatial reference or correlation between similar objects. The fiducial may contribute to the definition of the origin and orientation of a chosen coordinate system. Identifying fiducials in different data sets is a common means to establish the spatial relationship between similar objects.

3.17.3 **Fiducial Point:** A Fiducial Point defines a specific location of a Fiducial. A Fiducial Point is relative an image or to an RCS.

4 Symbols and abbreviations

The following symbols and abbreviations are used in this Part of the Standard.

ACR	American College of Radiology
ASCII	American Standard Code for Information Interchange
AE	Application Entity

ANSI	American National Standards Institute
BEV	Beam's-eye view
Brachy	Brachytherapy
BRHC	Bottom Right Hand Corner
CC	Counter-clockwise
CDA	Clinical Document Architecture (HL7)
CEN TC251	Comite European de Normalisation-Technical Committee 251-Medical Informatics
CCIR	Consultative Committee, International Radio
Chest CAD	Computer-Aided Detection and/or Computer-Aided Diagnosis for chest radiography
CTV	Clinical target volume
CW	Clockwise
DICOM	Digital Imaging and Communications in Medicine
DIMSE	DICOM Message Service Element
DIMSE-C	DICOM Message Service Element-Composite
DIMSE-N	DICOM Message Service Element-Normalized
DRR	Digitally-reconstructed radiograph
DVH	Dose-volume histogram
EPI	Electronic Portal Image
EPID	Electronic Portal Imaging Device
GTV	Gross tumor volume
Gy	Gray
HISPP	Healthcare Information Standards Planning Panel
HL7	Health Level 7
HMD	Hierarchical Message Description (HL7)
ICRU	International Commission on Radiation Units
IE	Information Entity
IEC	International Electrotechnical Commission
IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers
IHE	Integrating the Healthcare Enterprise
II	Instance Identifier (HL7)
IOD	Information Object Definition
ISO	International Standards Organization
ITU-T	International Telecommunications Union – Telecommunications Standardization Sector
JIRA	Japan Industries Association of Radiation Apparatus
JPIP	JPEG 2000 Interactive Protocol
LUT	Lookup Table
MAC	Message Authentication Code
Mammography CAD	Computer-Aided Detection and/or Computer-Aided Diagnosis for Mammography
MeV	Mega electron Volt
MLC	Multileaf (multi-element) collimator

MSDS	Healthcare Message Standard Developers Sub-Committee
MU	Monitor unit
MV	Megavolt
NaN	Not a Number (See IEEE 754)
NEMA	National Electrical Manufacturers Association
OID	Object Identifier (ISO 8824)
OSI	Open Systems Interconnection
PDF	Portable Document Format
PTV	Planning target volume
R&V	Record and verify
RCS	Reference Coordinate System
ROI	Region of interest
RT	Radiotherapy
SAD	Source-axis distance
SCP	Service Class Provider
SCTP	Structured Clinical Trial Protocol (HL7)
SCU	Service Class User
SD	Structured Documents (HL7)
SID	Source Image Receptor Distance
SOD	Source Object Distance
SOP	Service-Object Pair
SPL	Structured Product Labeling (HL7)
SR	Structured Reporting
SSD	Source-skin distance
TLHC	Top Left Hand Corner
UID	Unique Identifier
UUID	Universal Unique Identifier (ISO/IEC 11578)
XDS	Cross-Enterprise Document Sharing Profile (IHE)
XML	Extensible Markup Language

5 Conventions

5.1 ENTITY-RELATIONSHIP MODEL

5.1.1 ENTITY

An entity is used in an Entity-Relationship (E-R) model to represent a Real-World Object, class of Real-World Objects, or DICOM data representation (such as an IOD or Module). An entity is depicted as shown in Figure 5.1-1.

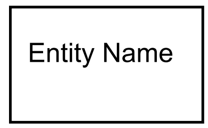


Figure 5.1-1
ENTITY CONVENTION

5.1.2 RELATIONSHIP

A relationship, which defines how entities are related, is depicted as a diamond within this Part of the DICOM Standard as shown in Figure 5.1-2.

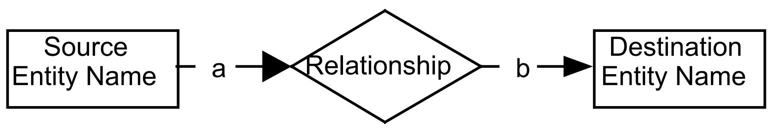


Figure 5.1-2
RELATIONSHIP CONVENTION

The relationship is read from source to destination entity as indicated by the arrows. The a and b show the source and destination cardinality of the relationship respectively. The following cardinalities are permitted:

a. (a = 1, b = 1) - one source entity is related to one destination entity
b. (a = 1, b = 0-n) - one source entity is related to zero or more destination entities
c. (a = 1, b = 1-n) - one source entity is related to one or more destination entities
d. (a = 1-n, b = 1) - one or more source entities are related to one destination entity
e. (a = 1-n, b = 0-n) - one or more source entities are related to zero or more destination entities
f. (a = 1-n, b = 1-n) - one or more source entities are related to one or more destination entities

In a relationship where (a = 1-n, b = 1-n) the values of the source and destination cardinalities may be different. The value "n" simply denotes one or more.

Note: DICOM has added the use of arrows to the E-R diagramming conventions often used in other literature. This has been done to avoid the possibility of inferring an incorrect relationship which can result from reading a relationship in the reverse order of that intended. For example, a relationship "Cat Catches Mouse" could be read "Mouse Catches Cat" if the arrows were not present.

A relationship may be bi-directional (i.e. the relationship is true in both directions). In such a case, the convention used is arrows pointing toward both the source and the destination entities.

5.2 SEQUENCES

Certain Tables in this Standard describe Sequences of Items by using the symbol: '>'. The symbol '>' precedes the Attribute (or Module) Name of the members of an Item. All marked Attributes (or Modules) belong to the generic description of an Item which may be repeated to form a Sequence of Items. This

Sequence of Items is nested in the Attribute (or Module) which precedes in the table the first member marked with a '>'.

Note: The following table describes the "Referenced Series Sequences" Attribute as a Sequence of one or more Items where each Item contains the three Attributes marked by a '>'. The Sequence of Items is nested inside the value of the Referenced Series Sequence Attribute. The following Attribute (not marked) is not part of the Items of the Sequence.

......	.....
Referenced Series Sequence	.....
> Series Date	.....
> Series Time	.....
> Series Instance UID	.....
Modality	....

This notation may be used to create nested hierarchical structures by using '>>' at the second level of nesting and so on.

The Type of the Sequence attribute defines whether the Sequence attribute itself must be present, and the Attribute Description of the Sequence attribute may define whether and how many Items shall be present in the Sequence. The Types of the attributes of the Data Set included in the Sequence, including any conditionality, are specified within the scope of each Data Set, i.e., for each Item present in the Sequence. See PS 3.5.

Notes: 1. Some sections of the Standard often include Attributes within a Sequence of Items under the condition that a Sequence Item is present. For example, as shown in the following table, Requested Procedure ID (0040,1001) has Type 1C and is included under the condition that “Required if Sequence Item is present”:

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Request Attributes Sequence	(0040,0275)	3	Sequence that contains attributes from the Imaging Service Request. The sequence may have one or more Items.
>Requested Procedure ID	(0040,1001)	1C	Identifier which identifies the Requested Procedure in the Imaging Service Request. Required if Sequence Item is present.
>Scheduled Procedure Step ID	(0040,0009)	1C	Identifier which identifies the Scheduled Procedure Step. Required if Sequence Item is present.

2. The condition may be omitted since it is redundant with the Type of the Sequence attribute. The above example may be equivalently specified without the conditions, as illustrated in the following table:

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Request Attributes	(0040,0275)	3	Sequence that contains attributes from

Sequence			the Imaging Service Request. The sequence may have one or more Items.
>Requested Procedure ID	(0040,1001)	1	Identifier which identifies the Requested Procedure in the Imaging Service Request.
>Scheduled Procedure Step ID	(0040,0009)	1	Identifier which identifies the Scheduled Procedure Step.

5.3 TRIPLET ENCODING OF STRUCTURED DATA (RETIRED)

This section has been retired. See Section 8.

5.4 ATTRIBUTE MACROS

Some tables contain references to Attribute Macros. This convention is used in cases where the same Attributes are used in multiple tables or multiple places in one Module. The reference means that the Attributes of the Attribute Macro shall be included in the Module in place of the row that contains the reference to the Attribute Macro.

In some cases, the Attribute Macro is used in a Sequence (the VR of the Data Element in which the Attribute is encoded is SQ, see PS 3.5). When this is done, the reference is preceded by one or more ">" characters. The number of ">" characters indicates the level in the sequence that all of the Attributes in the Attribute Macro occupy.

There may be specialization of the description of the Attributes in the Attribute Macro. In these cases, this specialization is described in the Description column of the Module.

Following is an example of this convention.

Table 5.4-1 is an example of a Module table using the Attribute Macro convention.

Table 5.4-1
Example Module Table

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Attribute A	(aaaa,aaaa)	1	This is an example.
Attribute B Sequence	(bbbb,bbbb)	1	This is an example of a Sequence Attribute
>Include 'Example Macro' Table 5.4-2			*In this Module, Attribute D (dddd,dddd) is Type 1*

Table 5.4-2 is an example of the Attribute Macro referenced in Table 5.4-1.

Table 5.4-2
Example Macro

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Attribute C	(cccc,cccc)	1	This is an example.
Attribute D	(dddd,dddd)	3	This Attribute is generally a Type 3.

The contents of the Example Module Table, if it had not been described with the Example Macro would have been as shown in Table 5.4-3

Table 5.4-3
Example Module Table without the Use of an Attribute Macro

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Attribute A	(aaaa,aaaa)	1	This is an example.
Attribute B Sequence	(bbbb,bbbb)	1	This is an example of a Sequence Attribute.
>Attribute C	(cccc,cccc)	1	This is an example.
>Attribute D	(dddd,dddd)	1	In this Module, this Attribute has been specialized to Type 1 as indicated in Table 5.4-1.

5.5 TYPES AND CONDITIONS IN NORMALIZED IODS

When a Normalized Information Object Definition in PS 3.3 invokes Modules (e.g., the SOP Common Module) or Attribute Macros that are specified with Data Element Types, those specified Data Element Types and Conditions do not apply. Rather, the Data Element Types and Conditions have to be specified for each Attribute for both SCU and SCP in the appropriate Service definition in PS3.4.

6 DICOM information model

The DICOM Information Model defines the structure and organization of the information related to the communication of medical images. Figure 6-1 shows the relationships between the major structures of the DICOM Information Model.

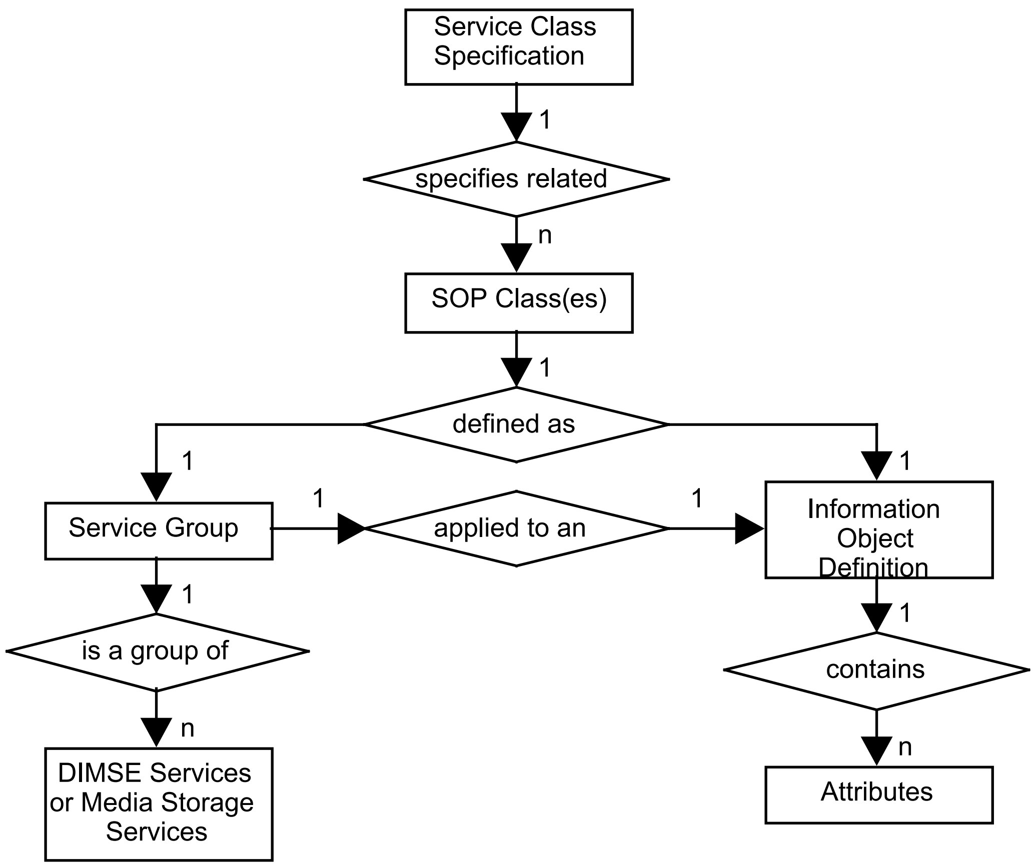


Figure 6-1
MAJOR STRUCTURES OF DICOM INFORMATION MODEL

6.1 INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

An Information Object Definition (IOD) is an object-oriented abstract data model used to specify information about Real-World Objects. An IOD provides communicating Application Entities with a common view of the information to be exchanged.

An IOD does not represent a specific instance of a Real-World Object, but rather a class of Real-World Objects which share the same properties. An IOD used to generally represent a single class of Real-World Objects is called a Normalized Information Object. An IOD which includes information about related Real-World Objects is called a Composite Information Object.

6.1.1 COMPOSITE IOD

A Composite IOD is an Information Object Definition which represents parts of several entities included in the DICOM Model of the Real-World. This Model is introduced in Section 7. Such an IOD includes

Attributes which are not inherent in the Real-World Object that the IOD represents but rather are inherent in related Real-World Objects.

These related Real-World Objects provide a complete context for the exchanged information. When an instance of a Composite IOD is communicated, this entire context is exchanged between Application Entities. Relationships between Composite IOD Instances shall be conveyed in this contextual information.

The Composite IODs are specified in Annex A.

6.1.2 NORMALIZED IOD

A Normalized IOD is an Information Object Definition which generally represents a single entity in the DICOM Model of the Real-World.

When an instance of a Normalized IOD is communicated, the context for that instance is not actually exchanged. Instead, the context is provided through the use of pointers to related Normalized IOD Instances.

The Normalized IODs are specified in Annex B.

6.2 ATTRIBUTES

The Attributes of an IOD describe the properties of a Real-World Object Instance. Related Attributes are grouped into Modules which represent a higher level of semantics documented in the Module Specifications found in Annex C.

Attributes are encoded as Data Elements using the rules, the Value Representation and the Value Multiplicity concepts specified in PS 3.5. For specific Data Elements, the Value Representation and Value Multiplicity are specified in the Data Dictionary in PS 3.6.

When multiple modules containing the same Attributes(s) are included in an IOD, the Attribute shall be encoded only once into a Data Element.

6.3 ON-LINE COMMUNICATION AND MEDIA STORAGE SERVICES

For on-line communication the DIMSE Services allow a DICOM Application Entity to invoke an operation or notification across a network or a point-to-point interface. DIMSE Services are defined in PS 3.7.

For media storage interchange, Media Storage Services allow a DICOM Application Entity to invoke media storage related operations.

Note: These Media Storage Services are discussed in PS 3.10.

6.3.1 DIMSE-C SERVICES

DIMSE-C Services are services applicable only to a Composite IOD. DIMSE-C Services provide only operation services.

6.3.2 DIMSE-N SERVICES

DIMSE-N Services are services applicable only to a Normalized IOD. DIMSE-N Services provide both operation and notification services.

6.4 DIMSE SERVICE GROUP

A DIMSE Service Group specifies one or more operations/notifications defined in PS 3.7 which are applicable to an IOD.

DIMSE Service Groups are defined in PS 3.4 in the specification of a Service-Object Pair Class.

6.5 SERVICE-OBJECT PAIR (SOP) CLASS

A Service-Object Pair (SOP) Class is defined by the union of an IOD and a DIMSE Service Group. The SOP Class definition contains the rules and semantics which may restrict the use of the services in the DIMSE Service Group and/or the Attributes of the IOD.

The selection of SOP Classes is used by Application Entities to establish an agreed set of capabilities to support their interaction. This negotiation is performed at association establishment time as described in PS 3.7. An extended negotiation allows Application Entities to further agree on specific options within a SOP Class.

Note: The SOP Class as defined in the DICOM Information Model is equivalent in ISO/OSI terminology to the Managed Object Class. Readers familiar with object oriented terminology will recognize the SOP Class operations (and notifications) as comprising the methods of an object class.

6.5.1 NORMALIZED AND COMPOSITE SOP CLASSES

DICOM defines two types of SOP Classes, Normalized and Composite. Normalized SOP Classes are defined as the union of a Normalized IOD and a set of DIMSE-N Services. Composite SOP Classes are defined as the union of a Composite IOD and a set of DIMSE-C Services.

Note: SOP Class Specifications play a central role for defining DICOM conformance requirements. It allows DICOM Application Entities to select a well-defined application level subset of the DICOM V3.0 Standard to which they may claim conformance. See PS 3.2.

6.6 ASSOCIATION NEGOTIATION

Association establishment is the first phase of communication between peer DICOM compliant Application Entities. The Application Entities shall use association establishment to negotiate which SOP Classes can be exchanged and how this data will be encoded.

Association Negotiation is defined in PS 3.7.

6.7 SERVICE CLASS SPECIFICATION

A Service Class Specification defines a group of one or more SOP Classes related to a specific function which is to be accomplished by communicating Application Entities. A Service Class Specification also defines rules which allow implementations to state some pre-defined level of conformance to one or more SOP Classes. Applications may conform to SOP Classes as either a Service Class User (SCU) or Service Class Provider (SCP).

Service Class Specifications are defined in PS 3.4.

Note: Such interaction between peer Application Entities work on a 'client/server model'. The SCU acts as the 'client', while the SCP acts as the 'server'. The SCU/SCP roles are determined during association establishment.

7 DICOM model of the real-world

Figures 7-1a, 7-1b and 7-3 depict the DICOM view of the Real-World which identifies the relevant Real-World Objects and their relationships within the scope of the DICOM Standard. It provides a common framework to ensure consistency between the various Information Objects defined by the DICOM Standard.

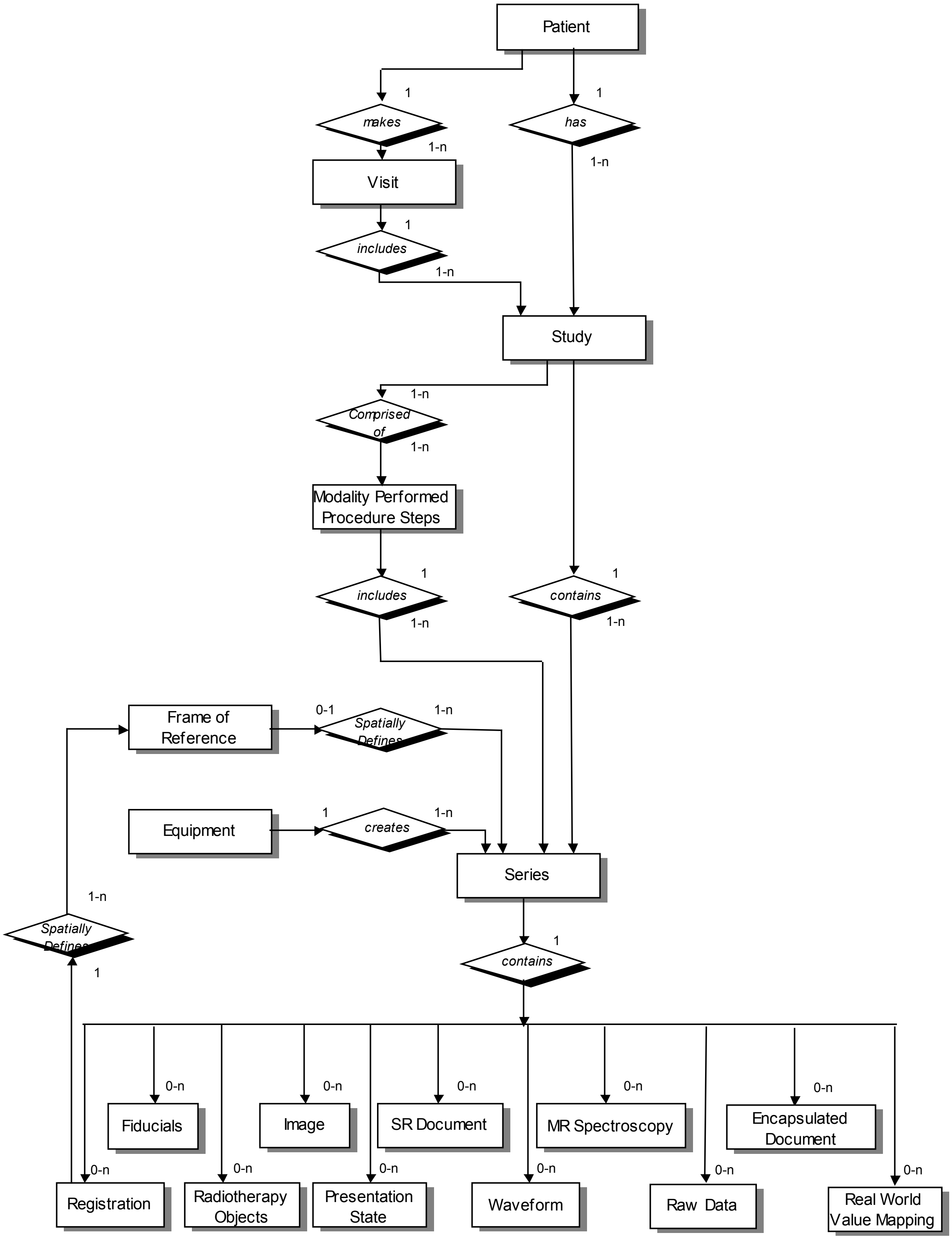


Figure 7-1a
DICOM MODEL OF THE REAL-WORLD

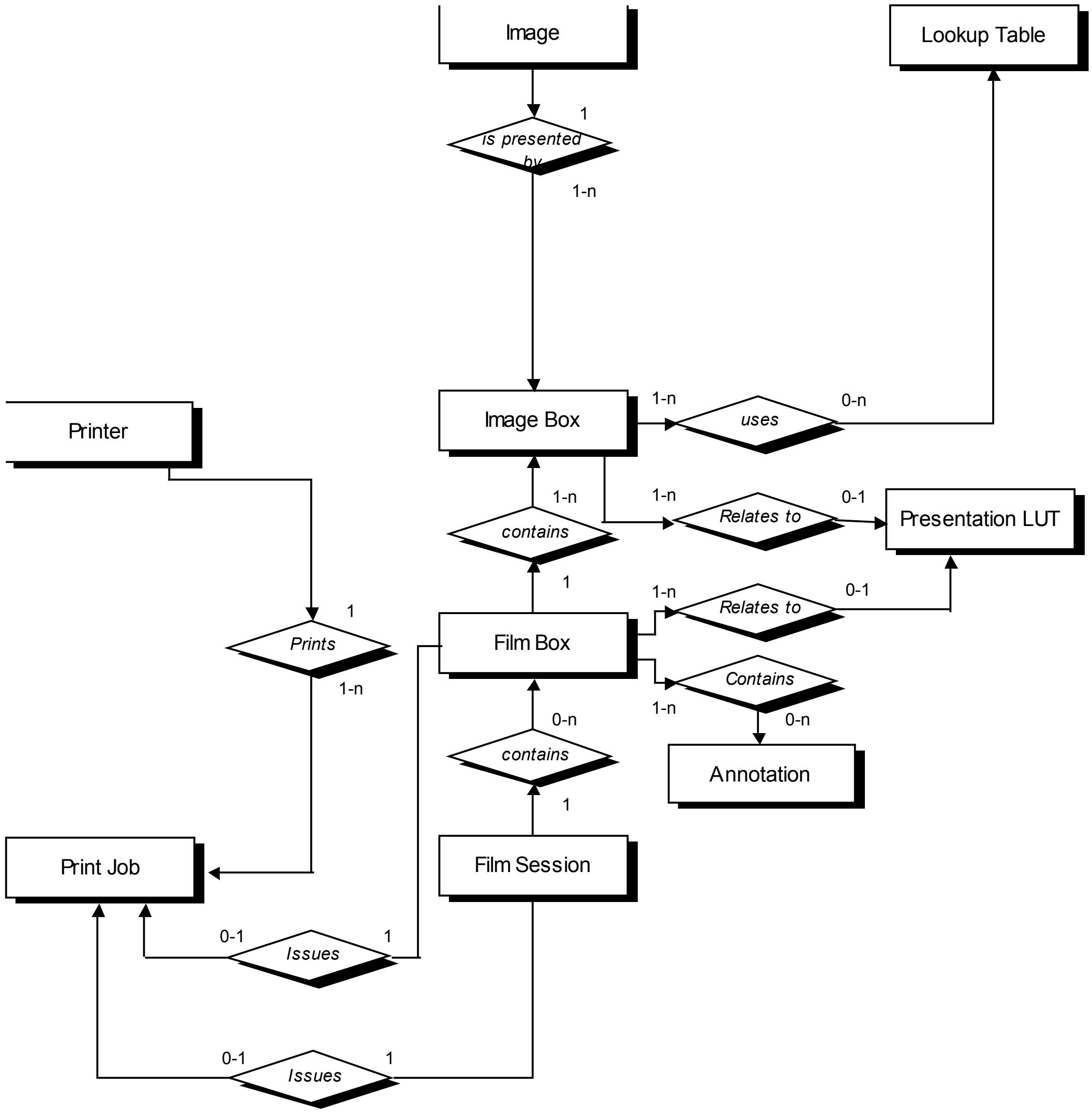


Figure 7-1b
DICOM MODEL OF THE REAL-WORLD - PRINT

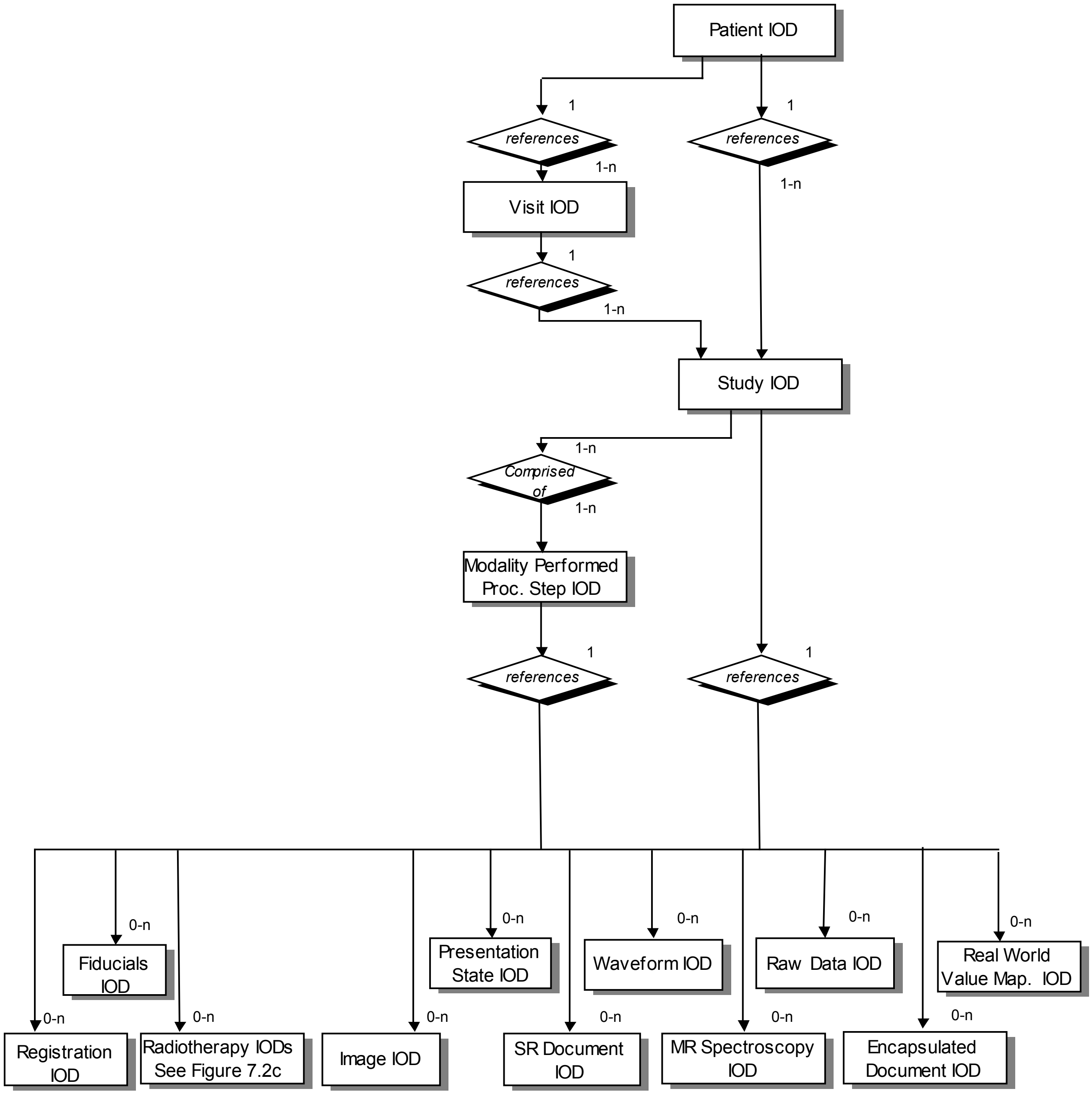


Figure 7-2a
DICOM INFORMATION MODEL

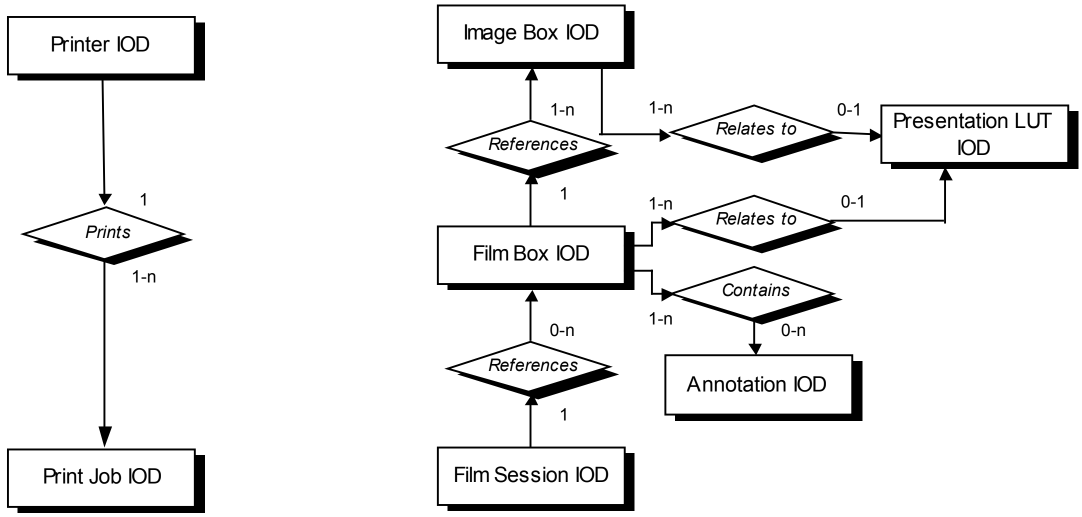


Figure 7-2b
DICOM INFORMATION MODEL - PRINT

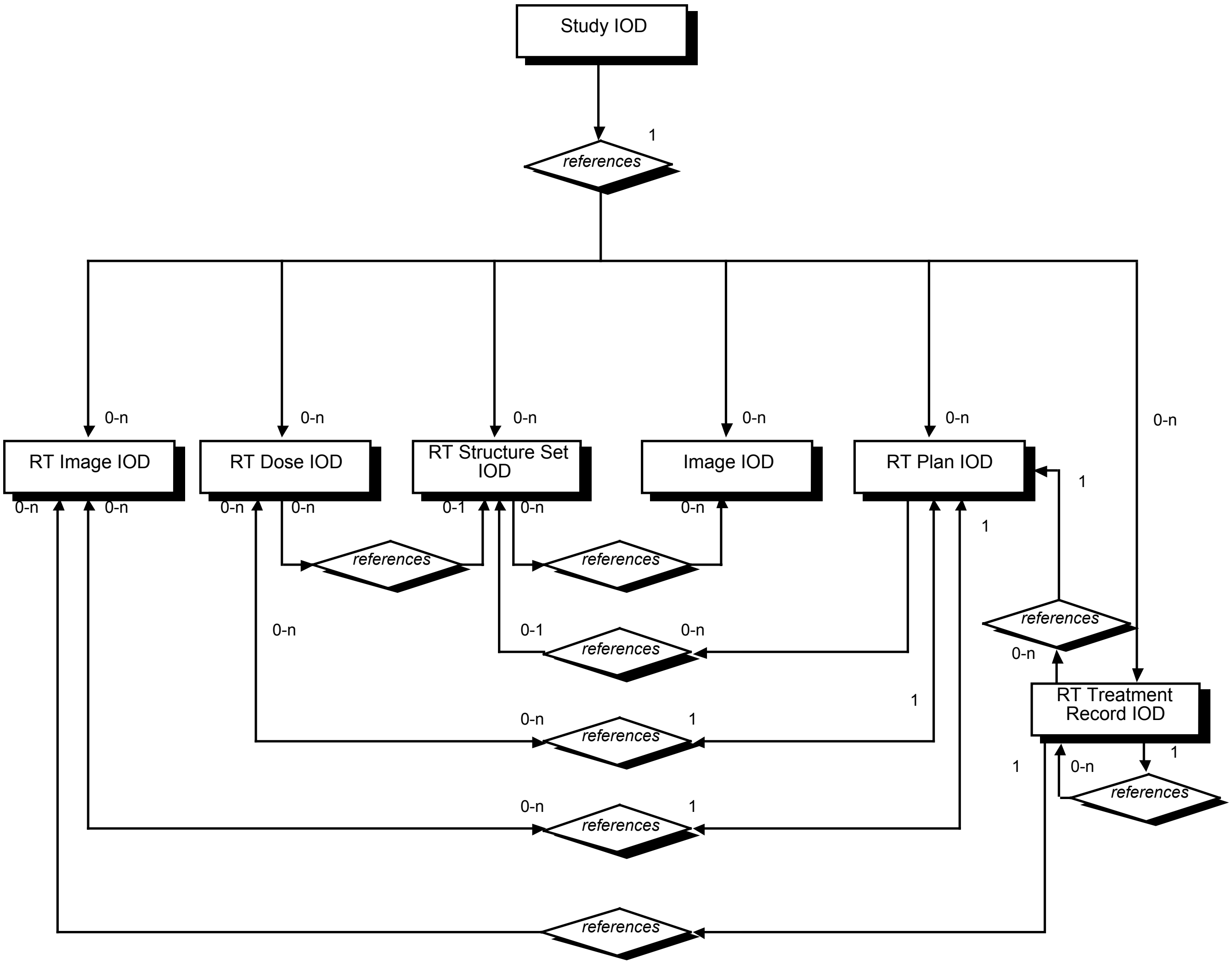


Figure 7-2c
DICOM INFORMATION MODEL - RADIOTHERAPY

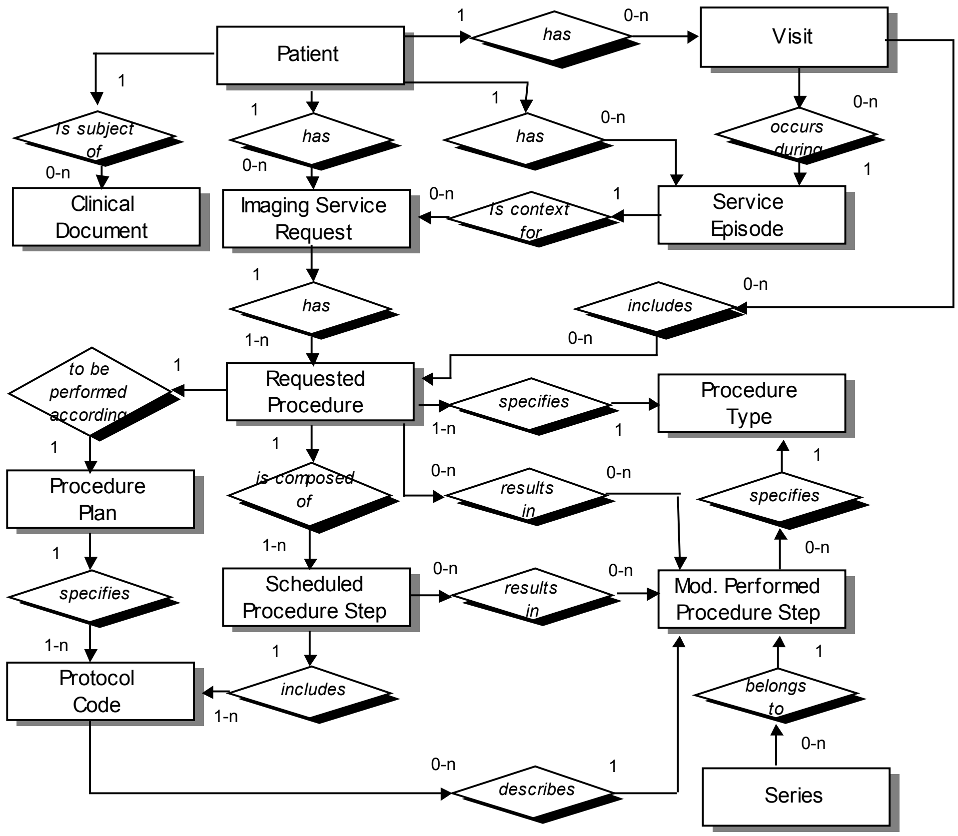


Figure 7-3.
MODEL OF THE REAL WORLD FOR THE PURPOSE OF MODALITY-IS INTERFACE

7.1 DICOM INFORMATION MODEL

The DICOM Information Model is derived from the DICOM Model of the Real-World. The DICOM Information Model presented by Figures 7-2a, 7-2b and 7-2c identify the various IODs specified by this Standard and their relationships. There is not always a one-to-one correspondence between DICOM Information Object Definitions and Real-World Objects. For example a Composite IOD contains Attributes of multiple real-world objects such as series, equipment, frame of reference, study and patient.

The entities in Figures 7-2a, 7-2b and 7-2c correspond to IODs defined in Annexes A through C.

7.2 ORGANIZATION OF ANNEXES A, B AND C

Annex A defines Composite IOD's (e.g. Images) acquired on a number of Modalities (e.g. CT, MR, NM, US, CR, Secondary Capture). These Composite IOD's reference Modules found in Annex C.

Annex B defines Normalized IODs (e.g. Film Session, Print Job) for a number of Service Classes specified in PS 3.4. These Normalized IODs reference Module definitions found in Annex C.

7.3 EXTENSION OF THE DICOM MODEL OF THE REAL-WORLD

For the purpose of the Basic Worklist Management Service Class and the Modality Performed Procedure Step SOP Classes an enhancement of the original DICOM Model of the Real-World is made, as depicted in Figure 7-3.

The PS 3.17 Annex entitled Integration of Modality Worklist and Modality Performed Procedure Step in the Original DICOM Standard discusses the relationship of this extension to the original DICOM model of the real world.

Figure 7-3 is an abstract description of the real world objects invoked in the Modality-IS Interface. It is not to be seen as a database scheme for an implementation.

7.3.1 Definition of the Extensions of the DICOM Real-World Model

7.3.1.1 PATIENT

A Patient is a person receiving, or registered to receive, healthcare services, or is the subject of one or more studies for some other purpose, such as research.

Note: A patient may be a human or an animal.

7.3.1.2 SERVICE EPISODE AND VISIT

A Service Episode is a collection of events, aggregated during an interval bounded by start and stop times (e.g. an outpatient visit or a hospitalization). The definition of the start time, stop time, and included events of a Service Episode is entirely arbitrary. A Service Episode is the context in which the treatment or management of an arbitrary subset of a Patient's medical conditions occurs. In the context of imaging services, a Service Episode may involve one or more Healthcare Organizations (administrative entities that authorize Healthcare Providers to provide services within their legal administrative domain, e.g. hospitals, private physician's offices, multispecialty clinics, nursing homes). A Service Episode identifies the Certified Health Care Providers who have been delegated responsibility by one or more Healthcare Organizations to provide healthcare services to the Patient. One or more Certified Healthcare Providers (Organizations or individual persons, e.g. physician group practices, individual physicians, technologists, nurses) may be accountable for the healthcare services provided in a Service Episode. The Certified Health Care Providers are accountable to one or more Healthcare Organizations and to the Patient for the outcomes of the services provided.

A subset of Service Episode, the Visit, is the collection of events that fall under the accountability of a particular Healthcare Organization in a single facility. A Visit may be associated with one or more physical locations (e.g. different rooms, departments, or buildings) within the Healthcare Organization's definition of a facility. In addition to identification of Certified Health Care Providers, it also specifies Healthcare Organization, Patient's location(s), admission and discharge diagnoses and time boundaries of the visit.

Notes: 1. The Visit is a part of the Service Episode. The Service Episode describes several administrative aspects of healthcare, while the Visit is limited to the description of one visit of a Patient to a facility.

2. In the context of the Modality Worklist SOP Class, only the Visit is of relevance, the attributes of the Service Episode are not defined.

3. The attributes for Visit often use the term admission.

7.3.1.3 IMAGING SERVICE REQUEST

An Imaging Service Request is a set of one or more Requested Procedures selected from a list of Procedure Types. An Imaging Service Request is submitted by one authorized imaging service requester to one authorized imaging service provider in the context of one Service Episode. An Imaging Service Request includes pertinent specific and general information. Each instance of an Imaging Service Request carries the information common to one or more Requested Procedures requested at the same moment. An Imaging Service Request may be associated with one or more Visits that occur within the same Service Episode. The existence of an Imaging Service Request will typically result in the creation of one or more Imaging Service Reports and the distribution of Imaging Service Reports to one or more destinations.

In the context of the Modality Worklist the information provided by the Imaging Service Request aims at performing one or more imaging procedures, i.e. at acquiring new images. In the context of the General Purpose Worklist the information provided by the Imaging Service Request supports a more general kind of request, e.g. reporting, requesting an image processing procedure on an existing examination, etc.

7.3.1.4 PROCEDURE TYPE

A Procedure Type identifies a class of procedures. In the context of imaging services, a Procedure Type is an item in a catalog of imaging procedures that can be requested and reported upon in an imaging service facility. An instance of a Procedure Type typically has a name and one or more other identifiers. A Procedure Type is associated with one or more Procedure Plans.

Note: The information content of this entity relates to the general identification of a Procedure Type rather than to its decomposition into the protocol(s) required to perform a specific instance of a Requested Procedure for a particular Patient.

7.3.1.5 REQUESTED PROCEDURE

A Requested Procedure is an instance of a Procedure of a given Procedure Type. An instance of a Requested Procedure includes all of the items of information that are specified by an instance of a Procedure Plan that is selected for the Requested Procedure by the imaging service provider. This Procedure Plan is defined by the imaging service provider on the basis of the Procedure Plan templates associated with the considered Procedure Type. An Imaging Service Request may include requests for several different Requested Procedures. The purpose of this entity is to establish the association between Imaging Service Requests and Procedure Types, to convey the information that belongs to this association and to establish the relationships between Requested Procedures and the other entities that are needed to describe them. A single Requested Procedure of one Procedure Type is the smallest unit of service that can be requested, reported, coded and billed. Performance of one instance of a Requested Procedure is specified by exactly one Procedure Plan. A Requested Procedure leads to one or more Scheduled Procedure Steps involving Protocols as specified by a Procedure Plan. A Requested Procedure may be associated with one or more Visits. A Requested Procedure may involve one or more pieces of equipment.

7.3.1.6 SCHEDULED PROCEDURE STEP

A Modality Scheduled Procedure Step is an arbitrarily defined scheduled unit of service, that is specified by the Procedure Plan for a Requested Procedure. A Modality Scheduled Procedure Step prescribes Protocol which may be identified by one or more protocol codes. A Modality Scheduled Procedure Step involves equipment (e.g. imaging Modality equipment, anesthesia equipment, surgical equipment, transportation equipment), human resources, consumable supplies, location, and time (e.g. start time, stop time, duration). While in the context of imaging services the scheduling of a Modality Scheduled Procedure Step might include only a general designation of imaging Modality that could be satisfied by multiple pieces of the same equipment type, the performance of one instance of a Modality Scheduled Procedure Step involves one and only one piece of imaging Modality equipment.

The performance of a Modality Scheduled Procedure Step may result in the creation of zero or more Modality Performed Procedure Step instances.

Notes: 1. The Procedure Step entity is provided to support management of the logistical aspects of procedures (e.g. materials management, human resources, scheduling). The full definition of the contents of Procedure Steps and protocols according to which they are performed is implementation dependent and is beyond the scope of this Standard.

2. A Modality Scheduled Procedure Step may contribute to more than one Requested Procedure (e.g. a Modality Scheduled Procedure Step requiring an intravenous iodine contrast injection might be shared by an intravenous pyelogram and a CT examination). However, for billing purposes an instance of a Modality Scheduled Procedure Step is typically considered to be a part of only one Requested Procedure.

7.3.1.7 PROCEDURE PLAN

A Procedure Plan is a specification that defines the set of Protocols that must be done in order to perform the Scheduled Procedure Steps of a Requested Procedure. Each Scheduled Procedure Step is preformed according to a single Protcol which may be identified by one or more Protocol Codes. The Protocols actually performed during a Procedure Step may differ from those prescribed in the related

Procedure Plan. Audit of actually performed Protocols versus the prescribed Procedure Plan is an important element of quality control, but is not specified by this Standard.

Note: The fact that Protocols Codes are in a given order in a Procedure Plan is not evident in Figure 7.3. However, the order of Protocols is represented at the syntax level (i.e. as the sequence of items present in the Protocol Code Sequence (0040,0008)).

7.3.1.8 PROTOCOL

A Protocol is a specification of actions prescribed by a Procedure Plan to perform a specific Procedure Step. A Scheduled Procedure Step contains only one Protocol which may be conveyed by one or more Protocol Codes. Typically, the code or codes identifying a Protocol instance would be selected from a catalog of protocols. Multiple Protocols may not exist in one Scheduled Procedure Step.

7.3.1.9 MODALITY PERFORMED PROCEDURE STEP

A Performed Procedure Step is an arbitrarily defined unit of service that has actually been performed (not just scheduled). Logically it corresponds to a Scheduled Procedure Step, but real-world conditions may dictate that what is actually performed does not correspond exactly with what was requested or scheduled.

Note: For example, two or more Scheduled Procedure Steps, Requested Procedures or Imaging Service Requests may have been generated by different Referring Physicians but may be satisfied be a single Performed Procedure Step at the discretion of a Performing Physician or Operator. Alternatively, a single Scheduled Procedure Step may need to be satisfied by multiple Performed Procedure Steps on different types or instances of equipment, due to clinical need or failure conditions, or over extended periods of time.

It contains information describing the type of procedure actually performed. This information is represented by the Performed Protocol that may be defined by one or more Protocol Codes.

A Requested Procedure results in the creation of zero or more Performed Procedure Steps.

A Scheduled Procedure Step results in the creation of zero or more Performed Procedure Steps.

The Performed Procedure Step contains information about it’s state (e.g. in progress, discontinued or completed).

A Modality Performed Procedure Step is a Performed Procedure Step that results from the acquisition of images from a Patient or other Imaging Subject on a Modality.

It contains information describing the performance of a step of an imaging procedure, including data about the performance of the procedure itself, radiation dose values to which the patient has been exposed if ionizing radiation is in use, and data for billing and material management.

The Modality Performed Procedure Step contains references to zero or more Series of Images and other Composite SOP Instances that may be created as part of the procedure step. A particular Series is part of only one Modality Performed Procedure Step.

7.3.1.10 GENERAL PURPOSE SCHEDULED PROCEDURE STEP

A General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step is an arbitrarily defined scheduled unit of service, that is specified by the Procedure Plans of one or more Requested Procedures. A General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step prescribes one Workitem that describes the procedure step to be performed. A General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step involves applications, human resources, location, and time resources (e.g. start time, stop time, duration).

Notes: 1. In this section, application is the generic term used to designate software applications and pieces of devices.

2. The status of a general Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step must not be confused with the status of the Requested Procedure or Imaging Service Request to which it belongs. One General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step may be completed, but that does not imply that also the related Requested Procedure has reached its completion.

A General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step contains references to Composite SOP Instances or Performed Procedure Steps, which denote the information to be used for the performance of the General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step.

7.3.1.11 GENERAL PURPOSE PERFORMED PROCEDURE STEP

A general Purpose Performed Procedure step is an arbitrarily defined unit of service that has actually been performed (not just scheduled). Normally it corresponds to one General Purpose Scheduled Procedure step, but real-world conditions may dictate that what is actually performed does not correspond exactly with what was requested or scheduled.

Note: For example, two or more General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Steps, Requested Procedures or Imaging Service Requests may have been generated by different Referring Physicians but may be satisfied by a single General Purpose Performed Procedure Step at the discretion of a Performing Physician or Operator. Alternatively, a single General Purpose Scheduled Procedure step may need to be satisfied by multiple General Purpose Performed Procedure Steps on different types or instances of equipment, due to clinical need or failure conditions, or over extended periods of time.

It contains information describing the type of procedure actually performed.

A Requested Procedure results in the creation of zero or more General Purpose Performed Procedure Steps.

A General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step results in the creation of zero or more General Purpose Performed Procedure Steps.

The General Purpose Performed Procedure Step contains information about its state.

It contains information describing the performance of the general purpose procedure step of a procedure.

The General Purpose Performed Procedure step contains references to zero or more Composite SOP Instances that have been created as part of the procedure step.

7.3.1.12 WORKITEM

A Workitem is one of the tasks prescribed by a Procedure Plan to perform an instance of a Requested Procedure. Each General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step will contain exactly one Workitem. The code identifying a Workitem instance would be selected from a catalog of workitem types, for example with the value of Image Processing or Interpretation.

7.3.1.13 Clinical Document

A Clinical Document is a part of the medical record of a patient. A Clinical Document is a documentation of clinical observations and services and has the following characteristics:

- Persistence – A clinical document continues to exist in an unaltered state, for a time period defined by local and regulatory requirements.
- Stewardship – A clinical document is maintained by an organization entrusted with its care.
- Potential for authentication - A clinical document is an assemblage of information that is intended to be legally authenticated.

- Context - A clinical document establishes the default context for its contents.
- Wholeness - Authentication of a clinical document applies to the whole and does not apply to portions of the document without the full context of the document.
- Human readability – A clinical document is human readable.

Note: This definition is from ANSI/HL7 CDA R1.0-2000, and HL7 v3 CDA R2-2005.

Clinical Documents may provide significant context for the performance of imaging and related procedures, e.g., patient clinical history, pre-imaging-procedure lab test results, or patient advance medical directives.

Clinical Documents may be associated with Service Episodes, Service Requests, Requested Procedures, or other entities subsidiary to the Patient in the Real-World Model. Such associations are not explicitly modeled for the purposes of the Modality-IS or General Purpose Worklist contexts.

Clinical Documents are one sub-class of the class of healthcare Structured Documents; Structured Documents, in general, are not necessarily related to a patient. Structured Documents may be used for imaging procedure operational instructions, e.g., in product labeling, Procedure Plans, or patient care plans.

Notes: 1. The format and semantics of Structured Documents, including Clinical Documents, are defined outside the scope of the DICOM Standard (e.g., by HL7). DICOM provides the means to reference Structured Documents within the Modality-IS and General Purpose Worklist contexts.

2. The general class of Structured Documents is not modeled in the Real-World Model; only specific sub-classes, e.g., Clinical Documents, are modeled.

7.4 EXTENSION OF THE DICOM MODEL OF THE REAL-WORLD FOR THE GENERAL PURPOSE WORKLIST

For the purpose of the General Purpose Worklist SOP Class in the Worklist Management Service Class an extension of the DICOM Model of the Real-World is made, as depicted in Figures 7.4.a and 7.4.b.

This subset of the real-world model covers the requirements for the General Purpose Worklist SOP Class in the Worklist Management Service Class.

Figures 7.4.a and 7.4.b are an abstract description of the real world objects involved in Workflow Management.

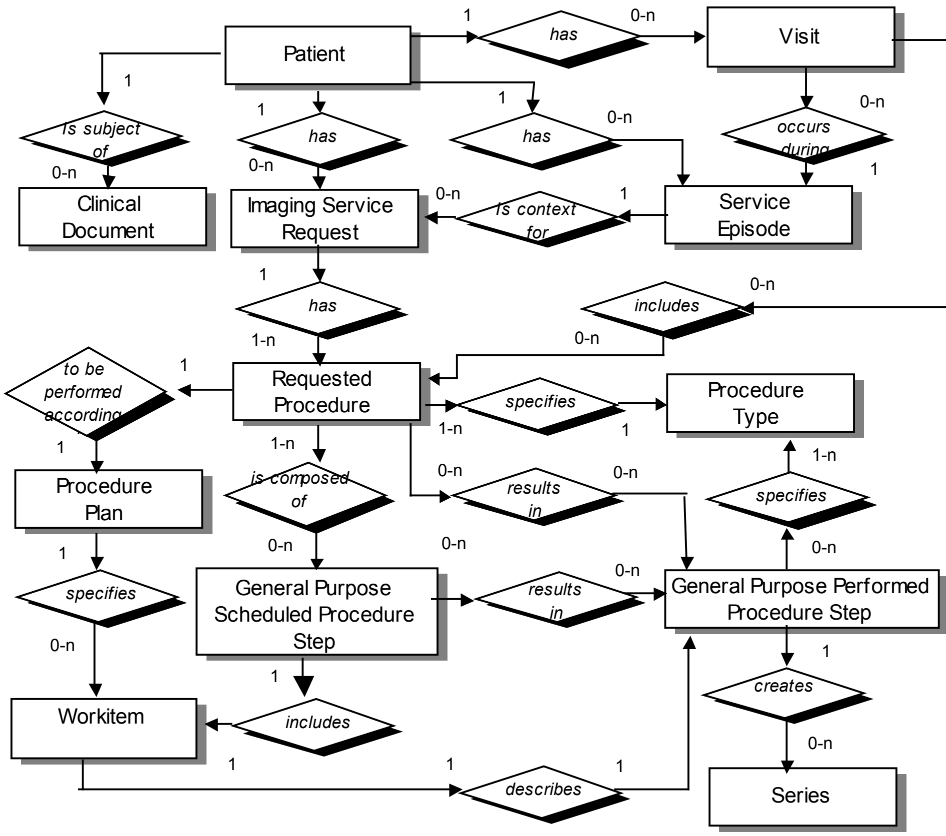


Figure 7.4.a
Model of the real world for the purpose of General Purpose Worklist interface

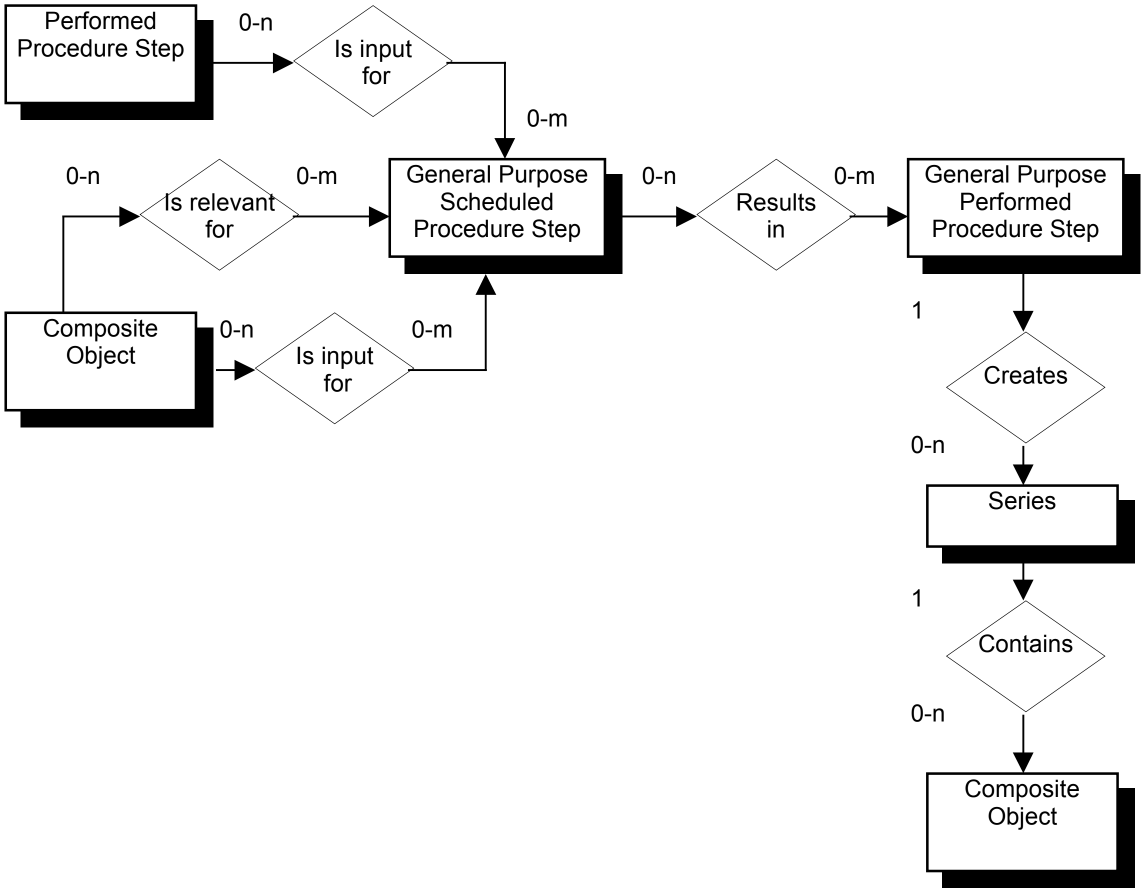


Figure 7.4.b
Model of the real world for the purpose of General Purpose Worklist interface

7.5 ORGANIZING LARGE SETS OF INFORMATION

For the purpose of accommodating large sets of frames in Multi-frame Image SOP Instances the Real-World Entity Relationship Diagram has been extended to describe the relationships of these instances: Concatenation (see Section 7.5.1) and Dimension Organization (see Section 7.5.2). Figure 7-5.1 depicts the additions to Figure 7-2.

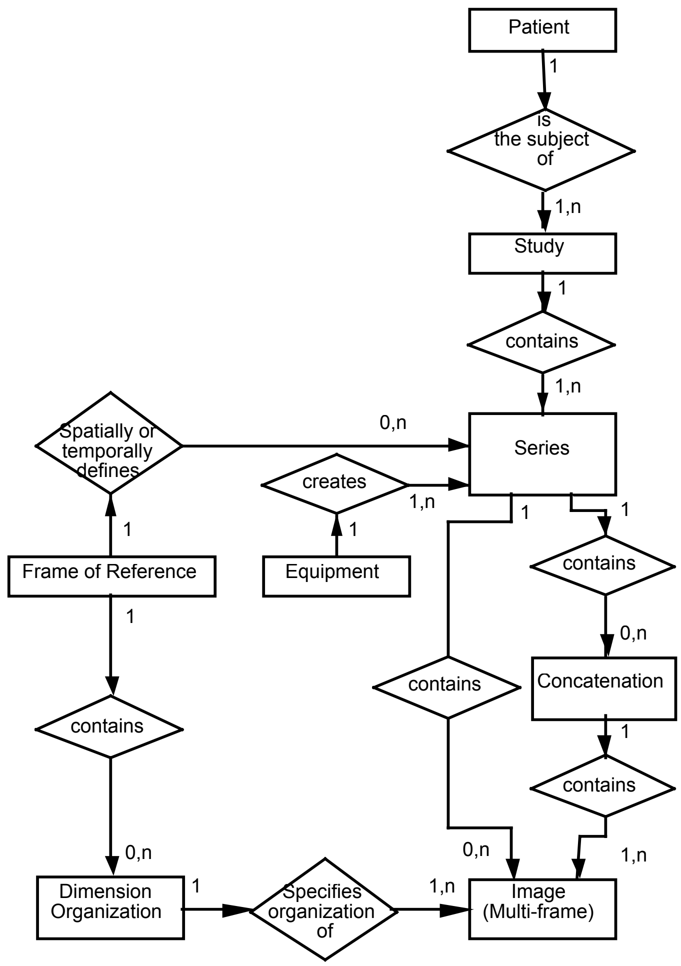


Figure 7.5-1
EXTENSION OF THE REAL-WORLD MODEL WITH CONCATENATIONS AND DIMENSIONS

7.5.1 CONCATENATION

For implementation specific reasons (such as practical limits on the maximum size of an individual SOP Instance) the content of a multi-frame image may need to be split into more than one SOP Instance. These SOP Instances together form a Concatenation, which is a group of SOP Instances within a Series that is uniquely identified by the Concatenation UID (0020,9133).

7.5.2 DIMENSION ORGANIZATION

The Dimension Organization contains a set of dimensions. A dimension is a set of attributes which change on a per-frame basis in a manner which is known before the image is acquired, which are defined by the generating application and which are especially intended for presentation. Other attributes may also change on a per-frame basis but if they are not present in the Dimension Organization, they are not considered significant as a dimension for organizational purposes.

Receiving applications can use the order of dimensions for guidance when presenting images. The first item of the Dimension Index Sequence shall be the slowest varying index.

Note: See Multi-frame Dimension Module section (C.7.6.17) for an example.

7.6 EXTENSION OF THE DICOM MODEL OF THE REAL WORLD FOR CLINICAL TRIALS

The DICOM Model of the Real World is extended for Clinical Trials with the addition of several objects whose relationships to each other and existing DICOM Real World objects are shown in Figure 7.6-1.

Attributes of the Clinical Trial Sponsor, Clinical Trial Protocol, Clinical Trial Subject, and Clinical Trial Site objects are represented in the Clinical Trial Subject Module within the Patient IOD. Attributes of the Clinical Trial Time Point object are represented in the Clinical Trial Study Module within the Study IOD. The Clinical Trial Coordinating Center attribute is represented in the Clinical Trial Series Module within Image IODs.

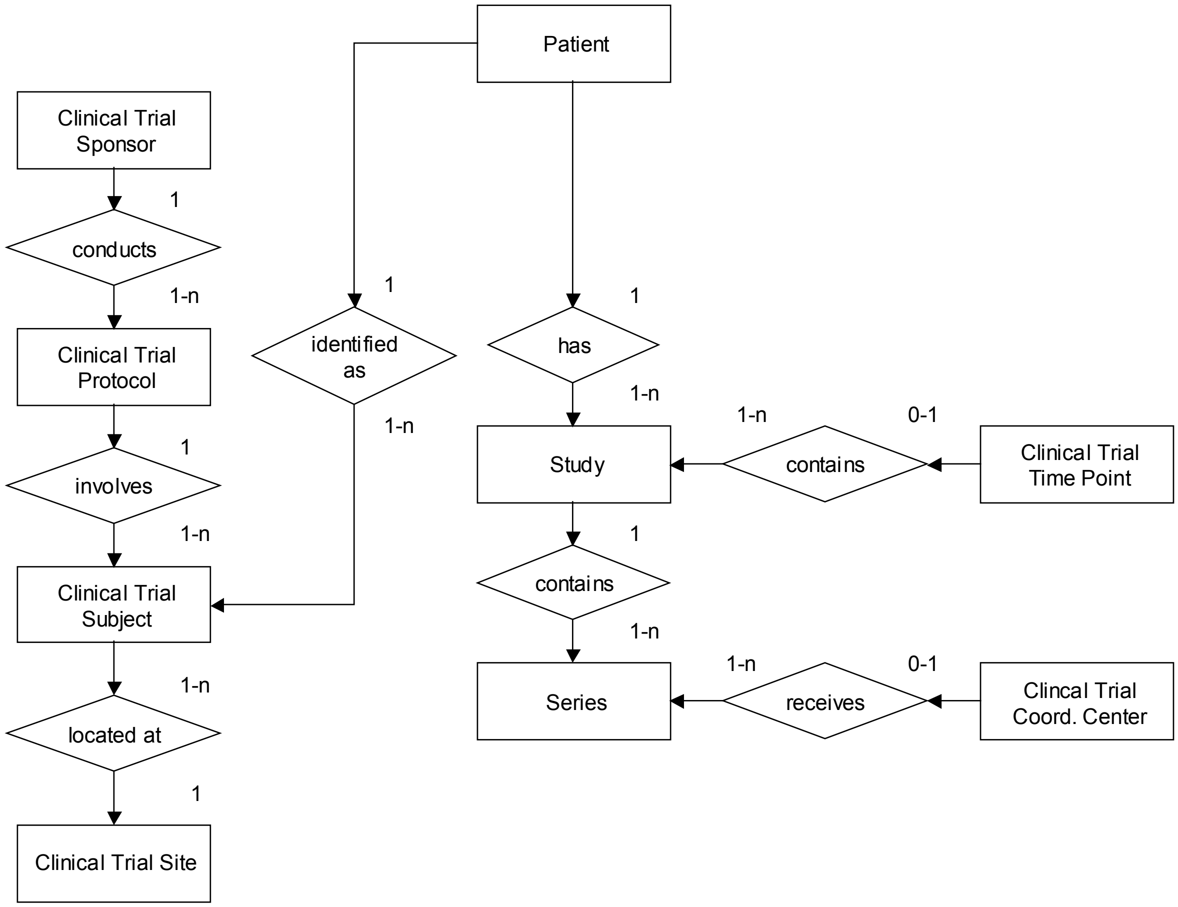


Figure 7.6-1 – DICOM MODEL OF THE REAL WORLD – CLINICAL TRIALS

7.6.1 Clinical Trial Information Entities

For the purpose of Clinical Trial Information, an extension of the DICOM Model of the Real World is made, as depicted in Figure 7.6-1.

7.6.1.1 Clinical Trial Sponsor

A Clinical Trial Sponsor identifies the agency, group, or institution responsible for conducting the clinical trial and for assigning a Protocol Identifier.

7.6.1.2 Clinical Trial Protocol

A Clinical Trial Protocol identifies the investigational Protocol in which the Subject has been enrolled. The Protocol has a Protocol Identifier and Protocol Name.

7.6.1.3 Clinical Trial Subject

A Clinical Trial Subject identifies the Patient who is enrolled as a Subject in the investigational Protocol.

7.6.1.4 Clinical Trial Site

A Clinical Trial Site identifies the location or institution at which the Subject is treated or evaluated and which is responsible for submitting clinical trial data. Images and/or clinical trial data may be collected for a given Subject at alternate institutions, e.g. follow-up scans at a satellite imaging center, but the Clinical

Trial Site represents the primary location for Patient management and data submission in the context of a clinical trial.

7.6.1.5 Clinical Trial Time Point

The Clinical Trial Time Point identifies an imaging Study within the context of an investigational protocol. A Time Point defines a set of studies that are grouped together as a clinical time point or submission in a clinical trial.

7.6.1.6 Clinical Trial Coordinating Center

The Clinical Trial Coordinating Center identifies the institution responsible for coordinating the collection, management, processing, and/or analysis of images and associated data for Subjects enrolled in a clinical trial. Within a given Clinical Trial Protocol, there may be multiple Clinical Trial Coordinating Centers, each handling different aspects of the clinical data submitted by the Clinical Trial Sites.

7.7 EXTENSION OF THE DICOM MODEL OF THE REAL-WORLD FOR HANGING PROTOCOLS

The DICOM Model of the Real World is extended for Hanging Protocols with the addition of an entity that is separate from the rest of the DICOM Real World objects, as shown in Figure 7.7-1. A Hanging Protocol is not associated with any specific objects in the existing DICOM Information model, because it is not associated with a specific patient. There is no hierarchy applied to Hanging Protocol objects.

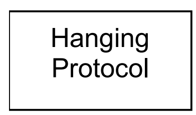


Figure 7.7-1 DICOM MODEL OF THE REAL WORLD – HANGING PROTOCOL

7.7.1 Hanging Protocol Information Entity

A Hanging Protocol entity specifies the viewing preferences of a specific user or group, for a specific type of study (Modality, Anatomy, Laterality combination, and optionally Procedure, and/or Reason). A Hanging Protocol definition includes descriptors that identify the Hanging Protocol, the creator, the type of study it addresses, the type of image sets to display, the intended display environment, and the intended layout for the screen(s).

8 Encoding of Coded Entry Data

The primary method of incorporating coded entry data in DICOM IODs is the Code Sequence Attribute. Code Sequence Attributes are encoded as a Sequence of Items using a macro which is described in this section. These Attributes typically include the string "Code Sequence" in the Attribute Name. Their purpose is to encode terms by using codes from coding schemes.

Note: In this Standard, Code Sequence Attributes are defined for a variety of concepts, for example: Primary Anatomic Structure Sequence (0008,2228) and other Attributes to describe anatomy; and Interventional Drug Code Sequence (0018,0029), to document administration of drugs that have special significance in Imaging Procedures.

Each Item of a Code Sequence Attribute contains the triplet of Coding Scheme Designator, the Code Value, and Code Meaning. Other optional and conditional attributes may also be present.

For any particular Code Sequence Attributes, the range of codes that may be used for that attribute (the Value Set) may be suggested or constrained by specification of a Context Group. The Module or Template in which the attribute is used will specify whether or not the context group is baseline or defined. A Baseline Context Group lists codes for terms which are suggested and may be used, but are not required to be used. A Defined Context Group lists codes for terms which shall be used if the term is used.

Context Groups are defined in a Mapping Resource, such as the DICOM Content Mapping Resource (DCMR) specified in PS 3.16. Context Groups consist of lists of contextually related coded concepts, including the Code Value (0008,0100) and Coding Scheme Designator (0008,0102). Each concept is unqiue within the Context Group and identified by its Code Value (0008,0100) and Coding Scheme Deisgnator (0008,0102). The Context Group specification identifies whether it is extensible, i.e., whether it may be modified in an Application to use additional terms (see PS 3.16). Whether a Context Group is used as a Baseline or Defined Context Group is defined not in the mapping resource, but rather in the Template or Module in which the Code Sequence Attribute is used.

Context Groups are identified by labels referred to as Context Group Identifiers (CID).

8.1 CODE VALUE

The Code Value (0008,0100) is an identifier that is unambiguous within the Coding Scheme denoted by Coding Scheme Designator (0008,0102) and Coding Scheme Version (0008,0103).

Note: The Code Value is typically not a natural language string, e.g. “T-04000”.

8.2 CODING SCHEME DESIGNATOR AND CODING SCHEME VERSION

The attribute Coding Scheme Designator (0008,0102) identifies the coding scheme in which the code for a term is defined. Standard coding scheme designators used in DICOM information interchange are listed in PS 3.16. Other coding scheme designators, for both private and public coding schemes, may be used. Further identification of the coding scheme designators used in a SOP Instance may be provided in the Coding Scheme Identification Sequence (0008,0110) (see Section C.12).

Notes: 1. Typical coding schemes used in DICOM include “DCM” for DICOM defined codes, “SNM3” for SNOMED version 3, “SRT” for SNOMED-RT, and “LN” for LOINC.

2. Coding scheme designators beginning with “99” and the coding scheme designator “L” are defined in HL7 V2 to be private or local coding schemes.

3. Most IODs that define the use of coded terms provide for the use of private codes and coding schemes through replacement of Baseline Context Groups or extension of Defined Context Groups. Systems supporting such private code use must provide a mechanism for the configuration of sets of Coding Scheme Designator, Code Value, and Code Meaning to support interoperation of the private codes with other systems.

4. It is highly recommended that local or non-standard coding schemes be identified in the Coding Scheme Identification Sequence.

The attribute Coding Scheme Version (0008,0103) may be used to identify the version of a coding scheme if necessary to resolve ambiguity in the Code Value (0008,0100) or Code Meaning (0008,0104), or if the Code Value does not appear in all versions of the Coding Scheme identified by the Coding Scheme Designator.

In previous editions of the DICOM Standard, a provisional Coding Scheme Identifier of "99SDM" was used for SNOMED codes that were used in DICOM.

Consequently, when a Coding Scheme Designator (0008,0102) of “99SDM” is encountered, it shall be treated as equivalent to “SNM3” for the purpose of interpreting Code Value (0008,0100).

A Coding Scheme Designator (0008,0102) of “99SDM” or “SNM3” is defined to identify the SNOMED Version 3 Coding Scheme unambiguously, hence the condition for inclusion of Coding Scheme Version (0008,0103) is explicitly not satisfied.

8.3 CODE MEANING

The Code Meaning (0008,0104) is text which has meaning to a human and which conveys the meaning of the term defined by the combination of Code Value and Coding Scheme Designator. Though such a meaning can be “looked up” in the dictionary for the coding scheme, it is encoded for the convenience of applications that do not have access to such a dictionary.

It should be noted that for a particular Coding Scheme Designator (0008,0102) and Code Value (0008,0100), several alternative values for Code Meaning (0008,0104) may be defined. These may be synonyms in the same language or translations of the Coding Scheme into other languages. Hence the value of Code Meaning (0008,0104) shall never be used as a key, index or decision value, rather the combination of Coding Scheme Designator (0008,0102) and Code Value (0008,0100) may be used. Code Meaning (0008,0104) is a purely annotative, descriptive Attribute.

This does not imply that Code Meaning (0008,0104) can be filled with arbitrary free text. Available values from the Coding Scheme or translation in the chosen language shall be used.

8.4 MAPPING RESOURCE

The value of Mapping Resource (0008,0105) denotes the message/terminology Mapping Resource that specifies the Context Group that specifies the Value Set. The Defined Terms for the value of Mapping Resource (0008,0105) shall be:

“DCMR”= “DICOM Content Mapping Resource”,

"SDM"= "SNOMED DICOM Microglossary" (Retired).

PS 3.16 specifies the DICOM Content Mapping Resource (DCMR).

Note: Unless otherwise specified, the DCMR is the source of all Context Groups and Templates specified in this Standard.

8.5 CONTEXT GROUP VERSION

Context Group Version (0008,0106) conveys the version (as a datetime value) of the Context Group identified by Context Identifier (0008,010F).

8.6 CONTEXT IDENTIFIER

The value of Context Identifier (0008,010F) identifies the Context Group defined by Mapping Resource (0008,0105) from which the values of Code Value (0008,0100) and Code Meaning (0008,0104) were selected , or to which the Code Value (0008,0100) and Code Meaning (0008,0104) have been added as a private Context Group extension (see Section 8.7) .

Note: Privately defined Context Groups are not identified by Context Identifier and Mapping Resource.

8.7 CONTEXT GROUP EXTENSIONS

Context Group Extension Flag (0008,010B) may be used to designate a Code Value/Code Meaning pair as a selection from a private extension of a Context Group. If the Context Group Extension Flag is present, and has a value of “Y”, Context Group Extension Creator UID (0008,010D) shall be used to identify the person or organization who created the extension to the Context Group. Context Group Local Version (0008,0107) conveys an implementation-specific private version datetime of a Context Group that contains private extensions

Notes: 1. These Attributes provide the means for implementations to extend code sets conveniently, while preserving referential integrity with respect to the original Context Group Version.

2. The locally-defined (private) value of Context Group Local Version (0008,0107) typically would be a more recent date than the standard value of Context Group Version (0008,0106) specified in the standard message/terminology Mapping Resource that defines the Context Group.

8.8 STANDARD ATTRIBUTE SETS FOR CODE SEQUENCE ATTRIBUTES

Table 8.8-1 specifies the default set of Attributes encapsulated in the Items of Code Sequence Attributes. These Attributes comprise the Code Sequence Macro.

Note: The instruction “ *Include ‘Code Sequence Macro’ Table 8.8-1”* may be used in an Information Object Definition as a concise way to indicate that the attributes of Table 8.8-1 are included in the specification of the Attribute Set of a Sequence of items. Additional constraints on the Code Sequence Data Element (such as a Context Group that defines the value set) may be appended to the “*Include ‘Code Sequence Macro’ Table 8.8-1”* instruction.

The default specifications of this Section are overridden within the scope of a Sequence Item or Code Sequence Attribute or IOD by corresponding specifications defined within the scope of that Sequence Item or Code Sequence Attribute or IOD. Additional Attributes may also be specified by the instantiation of the macro.

The Basic Coded Entry Attributes fully define a Coded Entry. If it is desired to convey the list from which a code has been chosen, then the optional Enhanced Encoding Mode Attributes may also be sent.

Table 8.8-1 Common Attribute Set for Code Sequence Attributes (Invoked as "Code Sequence Macro")

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
BASIC CODED ENTRY ATTRIBUTES			
Code Value	(0008,0100)	1C	See Section 8.1. Required if a sequence item is present.
Coding Scheme Designator	(0008,0102)	1C	See Section 8.2. Required if a sequence item is present.
Coding Scheme Version	(0008,0103)	1C	See Section 8.2. Required if a sequence item is present and the value of Coding Scheme Designator (0008,0102) is not sufficient to identify the Code Value (0008,0100) unambiguously.
Code Meaning	(0008,0104)	1C	See Section 8.3. Required if a sequence item is present.
ENHANCED ENCODING MODE			
Context Identifier	(0008,010F)	3	See Section 8.6.
Mapping Resource	(0008,0105)	1C	See Section 8.4. Required if Context Identifier (0008,010F) is present.
Context Group Version	(0008,0106)	1C	See Section 8.5. Required if Context Identifier (0008,010F) is present.
Context Group Extension Flag	(0008,010B)	3	Indicates whether the Code Value/Coding Scheme/Code Meaning is selected from a private extension of the Context Group identified in Context Identifier (0008,010F). See Section 8.7 of this Part. Enumerated Values: "Y", "N"
Context Group Local Version	(0008,0107)	1C	See Section 8.7. Required if the value of Context Group Extension Flag (0008,010B) is "Y". .
Context Group Extension Creator UID	(0008,010D)	1C	Identifies the person or organization who created an extension to the Context Group. See Section 8.7. Required if the value of Context Group Extension Flag (0008,010B) is "Y".

9 TEMPLATE IDENTIFICATION MACRO (Retired)

Section 9 was defined in a previous version of the DICOM Standard (see PS3.3-2004). The Section is now retired, and its contents have been consolidated into Section C.18.8.

10 MISCELLANEOUS MACROS

10.1 PERSON IDENTIFICATION MACRO

This Macro may be invoked to specify a coded representation of a person such as a healthcare worker, and the organization to which they are responsible.

Notes: 1. This macro is typically invoked within a Sequence Item used to identify an individual such as a physician or a device operator.

2. The free-text name of the individual is not included in this Macro since there are already widely used specific Attributes to hold such values.

3. No Baseline, Defined or Enumerated Context Groups are defined nor is any particular coding scheme specified. In practice, workers are usually identified by using a locally or nationally specific coding scheme. For example, a local Coding Scheme Designator might be used and the individual's internal hospital ID number user in Code Value.

4. The organization is specified by either a coded sequence or a free text name but not both.

Table 10-1
Person Identification Macro Attributes Description

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Person Identification Code Sequence	(0040,1101)	1	A coded entry which identifies a person. The Code Meaning attribute, though it will be encoded with a VR of LO, may be encoded according to the rules of the PN VR (e.g. caret '^' delimiters shall separate name components), except that a single component (i.e. the whole name unseparated by caret delimiters) is not permitted. Name component groups for use with multi-byte character sets are permitted, as long as they fit within the 64 characters (the length of the LO VR). One or more Items may be permitted in this Sequence.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
Person's Address	(0040,1102)	3	Person's mailing address
Person's Telephone Numbers	(0040,1103)	3	Person's telephone number(s)
Institution Name	(0008,0080)	1C	Institution or organization to which the identified individual is responsible or accountable. Shall not be present if Institution Code Sequence (0008,0082) is present.
Institution Address	(0008,0081)	3	Mailing address of the institution or organization to which the identified individual is responsible or accountable.
Institution Code Sequence	(0008,0082)	1C	Institution or organization to which the identified individual is responsible or accountable. Shall not be present if Institution Name (0008,0080) is present. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this Sequence.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*

10.2 CONTENT ITEM MACRO

A Content Item is a flexible means of encoding attribute identifiers and attribute values using the Code Sequence Macro (see Section 8) for coded terminology defined by a coding scheme. The Content Item provides a name-value pair, i.e., a Concept Name, encoded as a Code Sequence, and a Concept Value. The Concept Value may be encoded by any of a set of generic Attributes, as specified by a Value Type, including text, personal name, numeric, and coded concept (Code Sequence) values.

Note: Comparing a Content Item to a native DICOM Data Element, the Concept Name Code Sequence corresponds to the Data Element Tag and Attribute Name, the Value Type to the Value Representation, and the Concept Value to the Data Element Value Field. See PS3.5.

Specific uses of the Content Item may invoke the Content Item Macro defined in this Section, the Document Content Macro of Section C.17.3, or another similar construct. An invocation of the Content Item Macro may constrain the allowed values of Value Type (0040,A040).

Note: The NUMERIC Value Type of this Macro differs from the NUM Value Type defined in Section C.17.3, since the encoding of the Concept Value is different.

See Section 5.4 for the meaning of the Type column in this Macro when applied to Normalized IODs.

Table 10-2
Content Item Macro Attributes Description

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Value Type	(0040,A040)	1	The type of the value encoded in this name-value Item. Defined Terms: DATETIME DATE TIME PNAME UIDREF TEXT CODE NUMERIC
Concept Name Code Sequence	(0040,A043)	1	Coded concept name of this name-value Item.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
DateTime	(0040,A120)	1C	Datetime value for this name-value Item. Required if Value Type (0040,A040) is DATETIME.
Date	(0040,A121)	1C	Date value for this name-value Item. Required if Value Type (0040,A040) is DATE.
Time	(0040,A122)	1C	Time value for this name-value Item. Required if Value Type (0040,A040) is TIME.
Person Name	(0040,A123)	1C	Person name value for this name-value Item. Required if Value Type (0040,A040) is PNAME.
UID	(0040,A124)	1C	UID value for this name-value Item. Required if Value Type (0040,A040) is UIDREF.
Text Value	(0040,A160)	1C	Text value for this name-value Item.

			Required if Value Type (0040,A040) is TEXT.
Concept Code Sequence	(0040,A168)	1C	Coded concept value of this name-value Item. Required if Value Type (0040,A040) is CODE.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
Numeric Value	(0040,A30A)	1C	Numeric value for this name-value Item. Required if Value Type (0040,A040) is NUMERIC.
Measurement Units Code Sequence	(0040,08EA)	1C	Units of measurement for a numeric value in this name-value Item. Required if Value Type (0040,A040) is NUMERIC.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*Baseline Context ID 82*

10.3 IMAGE SOP INSTANCE REFERENCE MACRO

Table 10-3
IMAGE SOP INSTANCE REFERENCE MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.
Referenced Frame Number	(0008,1160)	1C	Identifies the frame numbers within the Referenced SOP Instance to which the reference applies. The first frame shall be denoted as frame number 1. Note: This Attribute may be multi-valued. Required if the Referenced SOP Instance is a multi-frame image and the reference does not apply to all frames, and Referenced Segment Number (0062,000B) is not present.
Referenced Segment Number	(0062,000B)	1C	Identifies the Segment Number to which the reference applies. Required if the Referenced SOP Instance is a Segmentation and the reference does not apply to all segments and Referenced Frame Number (0008,1160) is not present.

10.4 SERIES AND INSTANCE REFERENCE MACRO

Table 10-4 defines the Attributes that list Series and SOP Instances within those Series.

Table 10-4
SERIES AND INSTANCE REFERENCE MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Referenced Series Sequence	(0008,1115)	1	Sequence of Items each of which includes the Attributes of one Series. One or more Items shall be present.
>Series Instance UID	(0020,000E)	1	Unique identifier of the Series containing the referenced Instances.
>Referenced Instance Sequence	(0008,114A)	1	Sequence of Items each providing a reference to an Instance that is part of the Series defined by Series Instance UID (0020,000E) in the enclosing Item. One or more Items shall be present.
>>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.

10.5 GENERAL ANATOMY MACROS

Tables 10-5 through 10-7 describe the attributes for identifying the general region of the patient anatomy examined using coded terminology, as well as the principal structure(s) within that region that is the target of the current SOP Instance. The only difference between the three macros is the Type of the Anatomic Region Sequence (0008,2218) attribute. Table 10-8 describe the attributes for the coding of the principal structure only.

The invocation of these macros may specify Baseline or Defined Context IDs for the Anatomic Region Sequence (0008,2218), the Anatomic Region Modifier Sequence (0008,2220), and/or the Primary Anatomic Structure Sequence (0008,2228).

The general region of the body (e.g. the anatomic region, organ, or body cavity being examined) is identified by the Anatomic Region Sequence (0008,2218). Characteristics of the anatomic region being examined, such as sub-region (e.g. medial, lateral, superior, inferior, lobe, quadrant) and laterality (e.g. right, left, both), may be refined by the Anatomic Region Modifier Sequence (0008,2220).

Note: These Attributes allow the specification of the information encoded by the Body Part Examined (0018,0015) in the General Series Module in a more robust, consistent way.

The specific anatomic structures of interest within the image (e.g., a particular artery within the anatomic region) is identified by the Primary Anatomic Structure Sequence (0008,2228). Characteristics of the anatomic structure, such as its location (e.g. subcapsular, peripheral, central), configuration (e.g. distended, contracted), and laterality (e.g. right, left, both), and so on, may be refined by the Primary Anatomic Structure Modifier Sequence (0008,2230).

Table 10-5
GENERAL ANATOMY MANDATORY MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Anatomic Region Sequence	(0008,2218)	1	Sequence that identifies the anatomic region of interest in this Instance (i.e. external anatomy, surface anatomy, or general region of the body). Only a single Item shall be permitted in

			this sequence.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Context ID may be defined in the macro invocation.*	
>Anatomic Region Modifier Sequence	(0008,2220)	3	Sequence of Items that modifies the anatomic region of interest of this Instance One or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Defined Context ID is 2, unless otherwise defined in the macro invocation.*	
Include 'Primary Anatomic Structure Macro' Table 10-8		*Context ID may be defined in the macro invocation.*	

Table 10-6
GENERAL ANATOMY REQUIRED MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Anatomic Region Sequence	(0008,2218)	2	Sequence that identifies the anatomic region of interest in this Instance (i.e. external anatomy, surface anatomy, or general region of the body). Zero or one Item may be present in this Sequence.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Context ID may be defined in the macro invocation.*	
>Anatomic Region Modifier Sequence	(0008,2220)	3	Sequence of Items that modifies the anatomic region of interest of this Instance One or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Defined Context ID is 2, unless otherwise defined in the macro invocation.*	
Include 'Primary Anatomic Structure Macro' Table 10-8		*Context ID may be defined in the macro invocation.*	

Table 10-7
GENERAL ANATOMY OPTIONAL MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Anatomic Region Sequence	(0008,2218)	3	Sequence that identifies the anatomic region of interest in this Instance (i.e. external anatomy, surface anatomy, or general region of the body). Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Context ID may be defined in the macro invocation.*	
>Anatomic Region Modifier Sequence	(0008,2220)	3	Sequence of Items that modifies the anatomic region of interest of this Instance

			One or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Defined Context ID is 2, unless otherwise defined in the macro invocation.*	
Include 'Primary Anatomic Structure Macro' Table 10-8		*Context ID may be defined in the macro invocation.*	

Table 10-8
PRIMARY ANATOMIC STRUCTURE MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Primary Anatomic Structure Sequence	(0008,2228)	3	Sequence of Items that identifies the primary anatomic structure(s) of interest in this Instance. One or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Context ID may be defined in the macro invocation.*	
>Primary Anatomic Structure Modifier Sequence	(0008,2230)	3	Sequence of Items that modifies the primary anatomic structure of interest in this Instance. One or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Defined Context ID is 2.*	

10.6 Request Attributes Macro

Table 10-9
REQUEST ATTRIBUTES MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Requested Procedure ID	(0040,1001)	1	Identifier that identifies the Requested Procedure in the Imaging Service Request.
Accession Number	(0008,0050)	3	An identifier of the Imaging Service Request for this Requested Procedure.
Study Instance UID	(0020,000D)	3	The unique identifier for the Study provided for this Requested Procedure.
Referenced Study Sequence	(0008,1110)	3	Uniquely identifies the Study SOP Instances associated with this SOP Instance. One or more items may be included.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.
Requested Procedure Description	(0032,1060)	3	Institution-generated administrative description or classification of Requested Procedure.
Requested Procedure Code Sequence	(0032,1064)	3	A sequence that conveys the Procedure Type of the requested procedure. The Requested Procedure Code Sequence shall

			contain only a single item.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*	
Reason for the Requested Procedure	(0040,1002)	3	Reason for requesting this procedure.
Reason for Requested Procedure Code Sequence	(0040,100A)	3	Coded Reason for requesting this procedure. One or more sequence items may be present.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Context ID may be defined in the macro invocation.*	
Scheduled Procedure Step ID	(0040,0009)	1	Identifier that identifies the Scheduled Procedure Step.
Scheduled Procedure Step Description	(0040,0007)	3	Institution-generated description or classification of the Scheduled Procedure Step to be performed.
Scheduled Protocol Code Sequence	(0040,0008)	3	Sequence describing the Scheduled Protocol following a specific coding scheme. This sequence contains one or more Items.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Context ID may be defined in the macro invocation.*	
>Protocol Context Sequence	(0040,0440)	3	Sequence that specifies the context for the Scheduled Protocol Code Sequence Item. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>Include 'Content Item Macro' Table 10-2		*Context ID may be defined in the macro invocation.*	
>> Content Item Modifier Sequence	(0040,0441)	3	Sequence that specifies modifiers for a Protocol Context Content Item. One or more items may be included in this sequence. See Section C.4.10.1.
>>>Include 'Content Item Macro' Table 10-2		*Context ID may be defined in the macro invocation.*	

10.7 BASIC PIXEL SPACING CALIBRATION MACRO

Table 10-10 defines the Attributes for the Basic Pixel Spacing Calibration Macro.

Table 10-10
BASIC PIXEL SPACING CALIBRATION MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Pixel Spacing	(0028,0030)	1C	Physical distance in the patient between the center of each pixel, specified by a numeric pair - adjacent row spacing (delimiter) adjacent column spacing in mm. See 10.7.1.1 and 10.7.1.3.
Pixel Spacing Calibration Type	(0028,0402)	3	The type of correction for the effect of geometric magnification or calibration against an object of known size, if any. See 10.7.1.2.
Pixel Spacing Calibration Description	(0029,0404)	1C	A free text description of the type of correction or calibration performed. Notes: 1. In the case of correction, the text might include description of the assumptions made about the body part and geometry and depth within the patient. 2. in the case of calibration, the text might include a description of the fiducial and where it is located (e.g., "XYZ device applied to the skin over the greater trochanter"). 3. Though it is not required, the Device Module may be used to describe the specific characteristics and size of the calibration device. Required if Pixel Spacing Calibration Type (0028,0402) is present.

10.7.1 Basic Pixel Spacing Calibration Macro Attribute Descriptions

10.7.1.1 Pixel Spacing

The Pixel Spacing (0028,0030) attribute specifies the physical distance in the patient between the center of each pixel.

If the image has not been calibrated to correct for the effect of geometric magnification, the values of this attribute shall be the same as in Imager Pixel Spacing (0018,1164) or Nominal Scanned Pixel Spacing (0018,2010), if either of those attributes are present.

If the values are different from those in Imager Pixel Spacing (0018,1164) or Nominal Scanned Pixel Spacing (0018,2010), then the image has been corrected for known or assumed geometric magnification or calibrated with respect to some object of known size at known depth within the patient.

If Pixel Spacing Calibration Type (0028,0402) and Imager Pixel Spacing (0018,1164) and Nominal Scanned Pixel Spacing (0018,2010) are absent, then it cannot be determined whether or not correction or calibration have been performed.

Notes: 1. Imager Pixel Spacing (0018,1164) is a required attribute in DX family IODs.
2. Nominal Scanned Pixel Spacing (0018,2010) is a required attribute in Multi-frame SC family IODs

10.7.1.2 Pixel Spacing Calibration Type

The Pixel Spacing Calibration Type (0028,0402) attribute The type of correction for the effect of geometric magnification or calibration against an object of known size, if any.

Enumerated Values:

GEOMETRY the Pixel Spacing (0028,0030) values account for assumed or known geometric magnification effects and correspond to some unspecified depth within in the patient; the Pixel Spacing (0028,0030) values may thus be used for measurements of objects located close to the central ray and at the same depth.

FIDUCIAL the Pixel Spacing (0028,0030) values have been calibrated by the operator or image processing software by measurement of an object (fiducial) that is visible in the pixel data and is of known size and is located close to the central ray; the Pixel Spacing (0028,0030) values may thus be used for measurements of objects located close to the central ray and located at the same depth within the patient as the fiducial

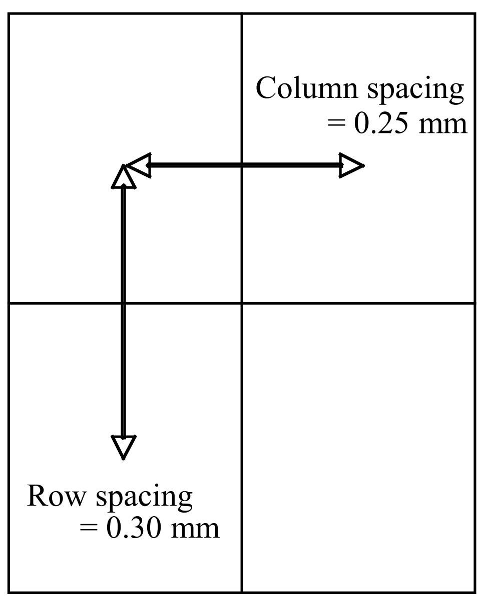
10.7.1.3 Pixel Spacing Value Order

All pixel spacing related attributes are encoded as the physical distance between the centers of each two-dimensional pixel, specified by two numeric values.

The first value is the row spacing in mm, that is the spacing between the centers of adjacent rows, or vertical spacing.

The second value is the column spacing in mm, that is the spacing between the centers of adjacent columns, or horizontal spacing.

To illustrate, consider the following example:



Pixel Spacing = Row Spacing \ Column Spacing = 0.30 mm \ 0.25 mm.

This description applies to:

- Pixel Spacing (0028,0030)
- Imager Pixel Spacing (0018,1164)

- Nominal Scanned Pixel Spacing (0018,2010)
- Image Plane Pixel Spacing (3002,0011)
- Compensator Pixel Spacing (300A,00E9)
- Detector Element Spacing (0018,7022)
- Presentation Pixel Spacing (0070,0101)
- Printer Pixel Spacing (2010,0376)
- Object Pixel Spacing in Center of Beam (0018,9404)

10.8 SOP INSTANCE REFERENCE MACRO

Table 10-11 specifies the attributes that reference an SOP instance.

Table 10-11
SOP INSTANCE REFERENCE MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.

10.9 CONTENT IDENTIFICATION MACRO

Table 10-12 describe the attributes for identifying a SOP Instance potentially created by a human user interacting with an application.

Table 10-12
CONTENT IDENTIFICATION MACRO

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Instance Number	(0020,0013)	1	A number that identifies this SOP Instance.
Content Label	(0070,0080)	1	A label that is used to identify this SOP Instance.
Content Description	(0070,0081)	2	A description of the content of the SOP Instance.
Content Creator’s Name	(0070,0084)	2	Name of operator (such as a technologist or physician) creating the content of the SOP Instance.
Content Creator’s Identification Sequence	(0070,0086)	3	Identification of the person who created the real world value mapping. Only a single item shall be present in this sequence.
> Include Person Identification Macro Table 10-1			

Annex A Composite information object definitions (Normative)

A.1 ELEMENTS OF AN INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

Each Composite Information Object Definition is composed of the following Sections

a. IOD Description
b. IOD Entity-Relationship Model
c. IOD Module Table
d. Optionally, a Functional Group Macros Table used by the Multi-frame Functional Groups Module

Sections A.1.1 through A.1.3 of this document define the requirements of a) through d) above.

A.1.1 IOD Description

This Section provides a brief description of the IOD. Specifically, this description includes:

— The Real-World Object which is represented by the IOD
— Information as to the scope of the represented object if appropriate

A.1.2 IOD Entity-Relationship Model

This Section of an IOD provides the Entity-Relationship (E-R) Model which depicts the relationships of the components or Information Entities (IE) of the specified IOD. It forms an IOD specific information model. This E-R model provides the complete context of how the composite instance information shall be interpreted when a composite instance is exchanged between two DICOM Application Entities.

Even though composite instances are sent as discrete individual components, each Composite Instance IOD E-R Model requires that all composite instances that are part of a specific study shall share the same context. That is, all composite instances within a specific patient study share the same patient and study information; all composite instances within the same series share the same series information; etc.

Figure A.1-1 is the DICOM Composite Instance IOD Information Model. It applies to all of the Composite Instance IODs defined in Annex A. However, a subset of this model may be specified by each individual Composite Instance IOD to accurately define the context for specific composite instance exchange.

Sections A.1.2.1 through A.1.2.10 describe the Information Entities (IE) which comprise the Composite Instance IODs defined in this Annex.

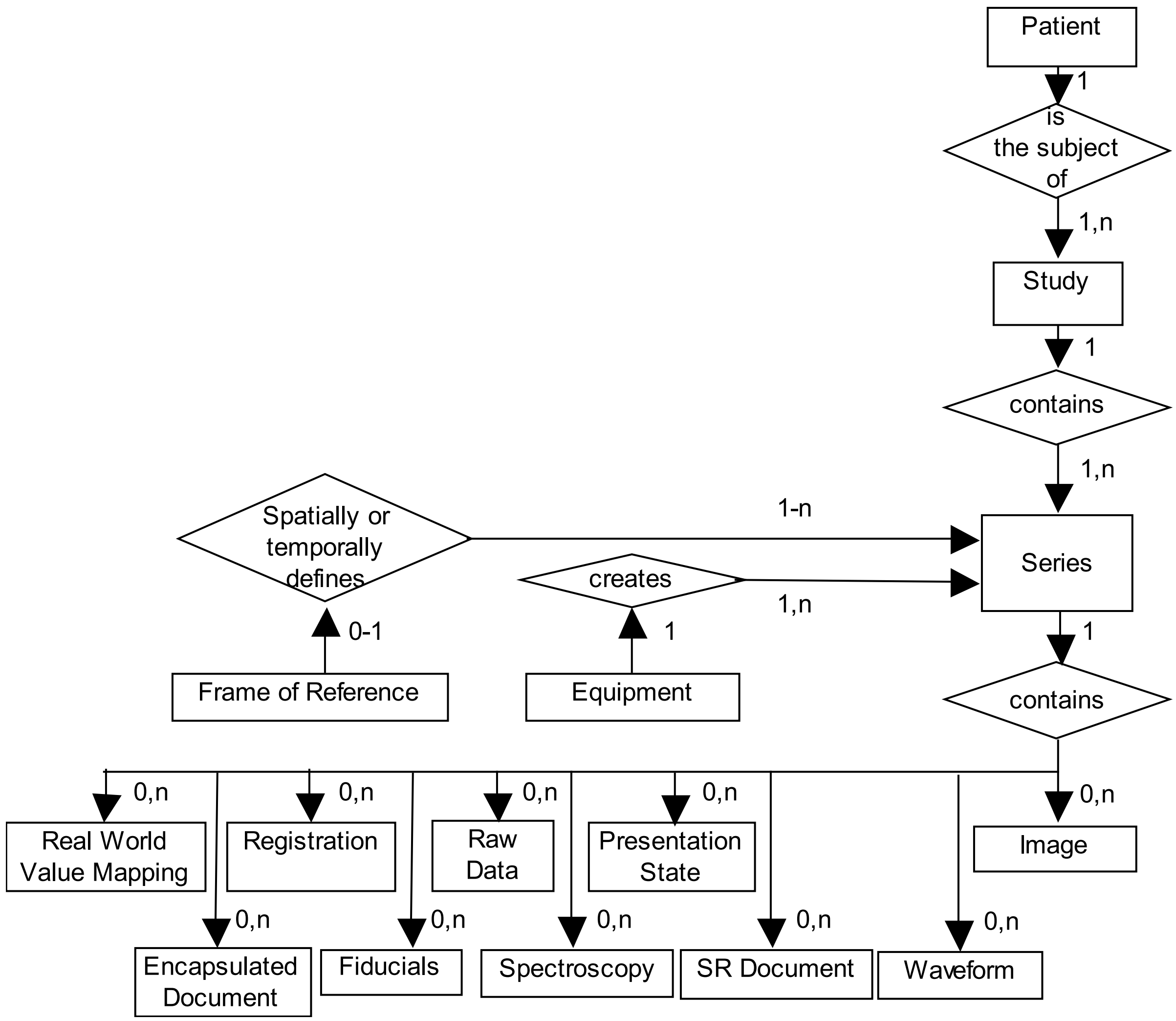


Figure A.1-1
DICOM COMPOSITE INSTANCE IOD INFORMATION MODEL

Each Series shall contain at least one Presentation State IE, SR Document IE or Image IE.

A.1.2.1 PATIENT IE

The Patient IE defines the characteristics of a patient who is the subject of one or more medical studies.

Note: A patient may be a human or an animal.

The Patient IE is modality independent.

A.1.2.2 STUDY IE

The Study IE defines the characteristics of a medical study performed on a patient. A study is a collection of one or more series of medical images, presentation states, and/or SR documents that are logically related for the purpose of diagnosing a patient. Each study is associated with exactly one patient.

A study may include composite instances that are created by a single modality, multiple modalities or by multiple devices of the same modality.

The Study IE is modality independent.

A.1.2.3 SERIES IE

The Series IE defines the Attributes that are used to group composite instances into distinct logical sets. Each series is associated with exactly one Study.

The following criteria group composite instances into a specific series:

a. All composite instances within a series must be of the same modality
b. If a specific Composite Instance IOD specifies the support of a Frame of Reference IE, all composite instances within the series shall be spatially or temporally related to each other; therefore, each series is associated with exactly one Frame of Reference IE
c. If a specific Composite Instance IOD specifies the support of the Equipment IE, all composite instances within the series shall be created by the same equipment; therefore, each series is associated with exactly one Equipment IE
d. All composite instances within a series shall have the same series information

Presentation States shall be grouped into Series without Images (i.e. in a different Series from the Series containing the Images to which they refer). The Frame of Reference IE is irrelevant to the Presentation State IE.

Note: The Series containing Grayscale, Color and Pseudo-Color Softcopy Presentation States and the Series containing the Images to which they refer are both contained within the same Study, except for Blended Presentation States, which may refer to images from different Studies.

Waveforms shall be grouped into Series without Images. A Frame of Reference IE may apply to both Waveform Series and Image Series.

SR Documents shall be grouped into Series without Images. The Frame of Reference IE does not apply to SR Document Series.

A.1.2.4 EQUIPMENT IE

The Equipment IE describes the particular device that produced the series of composite instances. A device may produce one or more series within a study. The Equipment IE does not describe the data acquisition or image creation Attributes used to generate the composite instances within a series. These Attributes are described in the composite instance specific IEs (e.g. the Image IE).

A.1.2.5 FRAME OF REFERENCE IE

The Frame of Reference IE identifies the coordinate system that conveys spatial and/or temporal information of composite instances in a series.

When present, a Frame of Reference IE may be related to one or more series. In this case, it provides the ability to spatially or temporally relate multiple series to each other. In such cases, the series may share the UID of the Frame of Reference, or alternatively, a Registration SOP Instance may specify the spatial relationship explicitly, as a spatial transformation. A Frame of Reference IE may also spatially register a Frame of Reference to an atlas.

A.1.2.6 IMAGE IE

The Image IE defines the Attributes that describe the pixel data of an image. The pixel data may be generated as a direct result of patient scanning (termed an Original Image) or the pixel data may be derived from the pixel data of one or more other images (termed a Derived Image). An image is defined by its image plane, pixel data characteristics, gray scale and/or color mapping characteristics, overlay planes and modality specific characteristics (acquisition parameters and image creation information).

An image is related to a single series within a single study.

The pixel data within an Image IE may be represented as a single frame of pixels or as multiple frames of pixel data. The frames of a Multi-frame image (a cine run or the slices of a volume) are sequentially ordered and share a number of common properties. A few Attributes may vary between frames (eg.- Time, Angular Displacement, Slice Increment). All common Image IE Attributes refer to the first frame of a multiple frame image.

Overlay and Lookup Table data may be included within an Image IE only if this information is directly associated with the image.

A.1.2.7 OVERLAY IE

The Overlay IE defines the Attributes that describe an independent set of Overlay Planes. The Overlay IE may represent in a bit-map format, graphics or text and is used to indicate such items as region of interest, reference marks and annotations. Sufficient information shall be available to allow an overlay to be presented at a display station superimposed on a particular image with which it is associated. An Overlay IE shall be related to only one Series IE.

An Overlay Plane may be represented as a single frame (when associated with a single frame image) or as multiple frames of overlay planes (when associated with a Multi-frame image).

A.1.2.8 CURVE IE

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.1.2.9 MODALITY LUT IE

The Modality LUT IE defines the Attributes that describe the transformation of manufacturer dependent pixel values into pixel values which are manufacturer independent (e.g. Hounsfield units for CT, Optical Density for film digitizers, etc.). The Modality LUT may be contained within an image, or a presentation state that references an image. When the transformation is linear, the Modality LUT is described by Rescale Slope (0028,1053) and Rescale Intercept (0028,1052). When the transformation is non-linear, the Modality LUT is described by Modality LUT Sequence (0028,3000).

A.1.2.10 VOI LUT IE

The VOI LUT IE defines the Attributes that describe the transformation of the modality pixel values into pixel values that are meaningful for print, display, etc. This transformation is applied after any Modality LUT. The VOI LUT may be contained within an image, or a presentation state that references an image. When the transformation is linear, the VOI LUT is described by the Window Center (0028,1050) and Window Width (0028,1051). When the transformation is non-linear, the VOI LUT is described by VOI LUT Sequence (0028,3010). A non-linear interpretation of Window Center (0028,1050) and Window Width (0028,1051) may be defined by VOI LUT Function (0028,1056).

A.1.2.11 PRESENTATION STATE IE

The Presentation State IE defines how a referenced image (or images) will be presented (e.g. displayed) in a device independent grayscale space (i.e. in P-Values) or color space (i.e. in PCS-values), and what graphical annotations and spatial and grayscale contrast transformations will be applied to the referenced image pixel data.

A.1.2.12 WAVEFORM IE

The Waveform IE represents a multi-channel time-based digitized waveform. The waveform consists of measurements of some physical qualities (e.g., electrical voltage, pressure, gas concentration, or sound), sampled at constant time intervals. The measured qualities may originate, for example, in any of the following sources:

a. the anatomy of the patient,
b. therapeutic equipment (e.g., a cardiac pacing signal or a radio frequency ablation signal),

c. equipment for diagnostic synchronization (e.g., a clock or timing signal used between distinct devices),

d. the physician's voice (e.g., a dictated report).

The sample data within a Waveform IE may represent one or more acquired channels. Several signal channels acquired at the same sampling rate can be multiplexed (by interleaving samples) in a single multiplex group. (See also PS 3.17 Annex on Waveforms.)

A.1.2.13 SR DOCUMENT IE

The SR Document IE defines the Attributes that describe the content of an SR Document. These include semantic context as well as Attributes related to document completion, verification and other characteristics. An SR Document SOP Instance is related to a single Series within a single Study.

A.1.2.14 MR Spectroscopy IE

The MR Spectroscopy IE defines the attributes that describe the data of a MR spectroscopy acquisition created by a magnetic resonance spectroscopy device.

A.1.2.15 Raw Data IE

The Raw Data IE defines the attributes that describe a data set that may be used for further processing to produce image data or other data.

Note: For example, raw data may be used with CT and MR systems to reconstruct sets of images or for MR to reconstruct spectroscopic data. The format of the raw data is vendor specific.

A.1.2.16 Encapsulated Document IE

The Encapsulated Document IE defines the Attributes that describe the content of a non-DICOM formatted document that is encapsulated in a DICOM Attribute. These include Attributes related to document origin, title, and other characteristics. An Encapsulated Document SOP Instance is related to a single Series within a single Study.

A.1.2.17 Real World Value Mapping IE

The Real World Value Mapping IE defines the attributes that describe the mapping of stored pixel data to real world values.

A.1.3 IOD Module Table and Functional Group Macro Table

This Section of each IOD defines in a tabular form the Modules comprising the IOD. The following information must be specified for each Module in the table:

- The name of the Module or Functional Group
- A reference to the Section in Annex C which defines the Module or Functional Group
- The usage of the Module or Functional Group; whether it is:
  - Mandatory (see A.1.3.1) , abbreviated M
  - Conditional (see A.1.3.2) , abbreviated C
  - User Option (see A.1.3.3) , abbreviated U

The Modules referenced are defined in Annex C.

A.1.3.1 MANDATORY MODULES

For each IOD, Mandatory Modules shall be supported per the definitions, semantics and requirements defined in Annex C.

A.1.3.2 CONDITIONAL MODULES

Conditional Modules are Mandatory Modules if specific conditions are met. If the specified conditions are not met, this Module shall not be supported; that is, no information defined in that Module shall be sent.

A.1.3.3 USER OPTION MODULES

User Option Modules may or may not be supported. If an optional Module is supported, the Attribute Types specified in the Modules in Annex C shall be supported.

A.1.4 Overview of the Composite IOD Module Content

Tables A.1-1 and A.1-2 provide an overview of the Modules used throughout the Composite IODs. This table is for informative purposes only. It is based on the IOD definitions found in the remaining Sections of Annex A that are normative.

Table A.1-1
COMPOSITE INFORMATION OBJECT MODULES OVERVIEW - IMAGES

IODs Modules	CR	CT	Enh CT	MR	Enh MR	NM	US	US MF	SC	SC MF SB	SC MF GB	SC MF GW	SC MF TC	XA	Enh XA	RF	Enh XRF	RT IM	PET	DX	MG	IO	VL EN	VL MC	VL SL	VL PH	Vid VL EN	Vid VL MC	Vid VL PH	Oph 8 Bit	Oph 16 Bit	Seg
Patient	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M
Specimen Identification			U		U															U	U	U		M	M	C		M	C	U	U	U
Clinical Trial Subject	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U
General Study	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M
Patient Study	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U
Clinical Trial Study	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U
General Series	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M		M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M
Clinical Trial Series	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U
CR Series	M																															
NM/PET Patient Orientation						M													M													
PET Series																			M													
PET Isotope																			M													
PET Multi-gated Acquisition																			C													
RT Series																		M														
DX Series																				M	M	M										
Mammo Series																					M											
Intra-oral Series																						M										
XA/XRF Series															M		M															
Segmentation Series																																M

IODs Modules	CR	CT	Enh CT	MR	Enh MR	NM	US	US MF	SC	SC MF SB	SC MF GB	SC MF GW	SC MF TC	XA	Enh XA	RF	Enh XRF	RT IM	PET	DX	MG	IO	VL EN	VL MC	VL SL	VL PH	Vid VL EN	Vid VL MC	Vid VL PH	Oph 8 Bit	Oph 16 Bit	Seg
Series																																
Frame Of Reference		M	M	M	M	U	U	U			C	C	C		C		U	U	M	U	C	U			M							C
Synchronization			C		C		U	U			U	U	U	U	C	U	C													M	M	
Cardiac Synchronization			C		C										C		C															
Respiratory Synchronization			C		C										C		C															
Bulk Motion Synchronization					C																											
General Equipment	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	U	U	U	U	U	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M
Enhanced General Equipment			M		M										M		M															M
SC Equipment									M	M	M	M	M																			
General Image	M	M		M		M	M*	M	M	M	M	M	M	M		M		M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M
Image Plane		M		M															M													
Image Pixel	M	M	M	M	M	M	M*	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M
NM Image Pixel						M																										
PaletteColor Lookup Table							C	C																								
Supplemental PaletteColor Lookup Table			C		C																											
Contrast/ Bolus	C	C		C			C*	C						C		C		C		U	U	U										
Enhanced Contrast/ Bolus			C		C										C		C													C	C	

IODs Modules	CR	CT	Enh CT	MR	Enh MR	NM	US	US MF	SC	SC MF SB	SC MF GB	SC MF GW	SC MF TC	XA	Enh XA	RF	Enh XRF	RT IM	PET	DX	MG	IO	VL EN	VL MC	VL SL	VL PH	Vid VL EN	Vid VL MC	Vid VL PH	Oph 8 Bit	Oph 16 Bit	Seg
Cine								M		C	C	C	C	C		C		C									M	M	M	C	C	
Multi-frame						M		M		M	M	M	M	C		C		C									M	M	M	M	M	
NM Multi-frame						M																										
Frame Pointers								U		U	U	U	U	U		U																
Multi-frame Functional Groups			M		M						U	U	U		M		M															M
Multi-frame Dimension			M		M						U	U	U		U		U															M
Mask														C	U	C	U															
Display Shutter														U		U				U	U	U										
Device	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	
Intervention														U	U	U	U			U	U	U										
CR Image	M																															
CT Image		M																														
Enhanced CT Image			M																													
MR Image				M																												
Enhanced MR Image					M																											
MR Pulse Sequence					C																											
NM Image						M																										
NM Isotope						M																										
NM Detector						M																										
NM TOMO Acquisition						C																										

IODs Modules	CR	CT	Enh CT	MR	Enh MR	NM	US	US MF	SC	SC MF SB	SC MF GB	SC MF GW	SC MF TC	XA	Enh XA	RF	Enh XRF	RT IM	PET	DX	MG	IO	VL EN	VL MC	VL SL	VL PH	Vid VL EN	Vid VL MC	Vid VL PH	Oph 8 Bit	Oph 16 Bit	Seg
NM Multi-Gated Acquisition						C																										
NM Phase						C																										
NM Reconstruction						C																										
US Region Calibration							U*	U																								
US Image							M*	M																								
SC Image									M	U	U	U	U																			
SC Multi-frame Image										M	M	M	M																			
SC Multi-frame Vector										C	C	C	C																			
PET Image																			M													
X-Ray Image														M		M																
Enhanced XA/XRF Image															M		M															
X-Ray Acquisition														M		M																
XA/XRF Acquisition															C		C															
X-Ray Collimator														U		U				U	U	U										
X-Ray Table														C		U																
XRF Positioner																U																
X-Ray Tomo Acquisition																C	U			U	U	U										
X-Ray Acquisition																				U	U	U										

IODs Modules	CR	CT	Enh CT	MR	Enh MR	NM	US	US MF	SC	SC MF SB	SC MF GB	SC MF GW	SC MF TC	XA	Enh XA	RF	Enh XRF	RT IM	PET	DX	MG	IO	VL EN	VL MC	VL SL	VL PH	Vid VL EN	Vid VL MC	Vid VL PH	Oph 8 Bit	Oph 16 Bit	Seg
Dose																																
X-Ray Generation																				U	U	U										
X-Ray Filtration															U		U			U	U	U										
X-Ray Grid															U		U			U	U	U										
XA Positioner														M																		
X-Ray Image Intensifier															C		C															
X-Ray Detector															C		C															
XA/XRF Multi-frame Presentation															U		U															
DX Anatomy Imaged																				M	M	M										
DX Image																				M	M	M										
DX Detector														U		U				M	M	M										
DX Positioning																				U	U	U										
Mammo Image																					M											
Intra-oral Image																						M										
VL Image																							M	M	M	M	M	M	M			
Slide Coordinates																									M							
Ophthalmic Photography Image																														M	M	
Ocular Region Imaged																														M	M	
Ophthalmic Photography Acquisition																														M	M	

IODs Modules	CR	CT	Enh CT	MR	Enh MR	NM	US	US MF	SC	SC MF SB	SC MF GB	SC MF GW	SC MF TC	XA	Enh XA	RF	Enh XRF	RT IM	PET	DX	MG	IO	VL EN	VL MC	VL SL	VL PH	Vid VL EN	Vid VL MC	Vid VL PH	Oph 8 Bit	Oph 16 Bit	Seg
Parameters																																
Ophthalmic Photographic Parameters																														M	M	
RT Image																		M														
Segmentation Image																																M
Approval																		U														
Overlay Plane	U	U		U		U	U*		U					U		U			U	C	C	C	U	U	U	U						
Multi-frame Overlay						U								C		C																
Modality LUT	U								U					C*		C*		U														
VOI LUT	U	U		U		U	U*	U	U		C	C		U		U		U	U	C	C	C										
Image Histogram																				U	U	U										
Common Instance Reference																																C
Acquisition Context			M		M	U									M		M		U	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M			
SOP Common	M	M	M	M	M	M	M*	M*	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M			M

* The notation next to M and U indicates a special condition for these modules. Refer to the corresponding Information Object Definitions in this Annex for details.

Notes: 1. The original US Image IOD and US multi-frame IOD, and the associated US and US multi-frame Storage SOP Class UID have been retired. New US and US multi-frame Image IODs are defined, as shown in Table A.1-1 which includes the Palette Color Lookup Table module.

2. The original NM Image IOD and the associated NM Storage SOP Class UID have been retired. A completely new NM Image IOD is defined, as shown in Table A.1-1.

Table A.1-2
COMPOSITE INFORMATION OBJECT MODULES OVERVIEW - NON-IMAGES

IODs Modules	Gray Pres St	Col Pres St	Ps-ColPres St	Blnd Pres St	MR Spect	Raw Data	Basic Voice Audio	12 Lead ECG	Gen ECG WF	Amb ECG WF	Hemo WF	Basic Card EP	Basic Text SR	Enhan SR	Comp SR	Key Object Seln	Mam CAD	Chest CAD	Reg	Def Reg	Fid	Real World Value	Stereo Reln	HP	Enc PDF
Patient	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M		M
Patient Summary																									
Specimen Identification					U	U							C	C	C	C	C	C					C		U
Clinical Trial Subject	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U		U
General Study	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M		M
Patient Study	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U		U
Clinical Trial Study	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U		U
General Series	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M													
Clinical Trial Series	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U			U		U		U
Spatial Registration Series																			M	M					
Spatial Fiducials Series																					M				
Real World Value Mapping Series																						M			
Stereometric Series																							M		
Encapsulated Document Series																									M
PET Series																									
PET Isotope																									

IODs Modules	Gray Pres St	Col Pres St	Ps-ColPres St	Blnd Pres St	MR Spect	Raw Data	Basic Voice Audio	12 Lead ECG	Gen ECG WF	Amb ECG WF	Hemo WF	Basic Card EP	Basic Text SR	Enhan SR	Comp SR	Key Object Seln	Mam CAD	Chest CAD	Reg	Def Reg	Fid	Real World Value	Stereo Reln	HP	Enc PDF
PET Multi-gated Acquisition																									
Presentation Series	M	M	M	M																					
SR Document Series													M	M	M		M	M							
Key Object Document Series																M									
Frame Of Reference					M	U									U				M	M					
Synchronization					C	C	U	U	U	U	C	C			U										
Cardiac Synchronization					C																				
Respiratory Synchronization					C																				
Bulk Motion Synchronization					C																				
General Equipment	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M		M
Enhanced General Equipment					M															M					
SC Equipment																									M
Multi-frame Functional Groups					M																				
Multi-frame Dimension					M																				
Mask	C		C																						

IODs Modules	Gray Pres St	Col Pres St	Ps-ColPres St	Blnd Pres St	MR Spect	Raw Data	Basic Voice Audio	12 Lead ECG	Gen ECG WF	Amb ECG WF	Hemo WF	Basic Card EP	Basic Text SR	Enhan SR	Comp SR	Key Object Seln	Mam CAD	Chest CAD	Reg	Def Reg	Fid	Real World Value	Stereo Reln	HP	Enc PDF
Display Shutter	C	C	C																						
Bitmap Display Shutter	C	C	C																						
Palette Color LUT			M	M																					
Raw Data						M																			
MR Spectroscopy					M																				
MR Spectroscopy Pulse Sequence					C																				
MR Spectroscopy Data					M																				
Stereometric Relationship																							M		
SR Document General													M	M	M		M	M							
SR Document Content													M	M	M	M	M	M							
Key Object Document																M									
Overlay Plane	C	C	C																						
Waveform Identification							M	M	M	M	M	M													
Waveform							M	M	M	M	M	M													
Waveform Annotation							U	C	C	C	C	C													
Displayed Area	M	M	M	M																					
Overlay Activation	C	C	C																						

IODs Modules	Gray Pres St	Col Pres St	Ps-ColPres St	Blnd Pres St	MR Spect	Raw Data	Basic Voice Audio	12 Lead ECG	Gen ECG WF	Amb ECG WF	Hemo WF	Basic Card EP	Basic Text SR	Enhan SR	Comp SR	Key Object Seln	Mam CAD	Chest CAD	Reg	Def Reg	Fid	Real World Value	Stereo Reln	HP	Enc PDF
Graphic Annotation	C	C	C	C																					
Spatial Transformation	C	C	C	C																					
Graphic Layer	C	C	C	C																					
Modality LUT	C		C																						
VOI LUT																									
Softcopy VOI LUT	C		C																						
Softcopy Presentation LUT	M																								
Image Histogram																									
Presentation State Identification	M	M	M	M																					
Presentation State Relationship	M	M	M																						
Presentation State Shutter	M	M	M																						
Presentation State Mask	M		M																						
Presentation State Blending				M																					
ICC Profile		M	M	M																					
Spatial Registration																			M						

IODs Modules	Gray Pres St	Col Pres St	Ps-ColPres St	Blnd Pres St	MR Spect	Raw Data	Basic Voice Audio	12 Lead ECG	Gen ECG WF	Amb ECG WF	Hemo WF	Basic Card EP	Basic Text SR	Enhan SR	Comp SR	Key Object Seln	Mam CAD	Chest CAD	Reg	Def Reg	Fid	Real World Value	Stereo Reln	HP	Enc PDF
Deformable Spatial Registration																				M					
Spatial Fiducials																					M				
Real World Value Mapping																						M			
Common Instance Reference																			M	M	M	M	M		
Acquisition Context					M	M	M	M	M	U	M	M													
Hanging Protocol Definition																								M	
Hanging Protocol Environment																								M	
Hanging Protocol Display																								M	
Encapsulated Document																									M
SOP Common	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M

Table A.1-3
COMPOSITE INFORMATION OBJECT MODULES OVERVIEW - RADIOTHERAPY

IODs Modules	RT Dose	RT Struc Set	RT Plan	RT Beam Rec	RT Brachy Rec	RT Sum	RT Ion Plan	RT Ion Beams Treat Rec
Patient	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M
Clinical Trial Subject	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U
General Study	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M
Patient Study	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U
Clinical Trial Study	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U
Clinical Trial Series	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U
RT Series	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M
Frame Of Reference	M		U				U	
General Equipment	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M
General Image	C							
Image Plane	C							
Image Pixel	C							
Multi-frame	C							
RT Dose	M							
RT DVH	U							
Structure Set	C	M						
ROI Contour	C	M						
RT Dose ROI	C							
RT ROI Observations		M						

IODs Modules	RT Dose	RT Struc Set	RT Plan	RT Beam Rec	RT Brachy Rec	RT Sum	RT Ion Plan	RT Ion Beams Treat Rec
RT General Treatment Record				M	M	M		M
RT Treatment Machine Record				M	M			M
Measured Dose Reference Record				U	U			U
Calculated Dose Reference Record				U	U			U
RT Beams Session Record				M				
RT Ion Beams Session Record								M
RT Brachy Session Record					M			
RT Treatment Summary Record				U	U	M		
RT General Plan			M				M	
RT Prescription			U				U	
RT Tolerance Tables			U				U	
RT Patient Setup			U	U	U		U	U
RT Fraction Scheme			U				U	

IODs Modules	RT Dose	RT Struc Set	RT Plan	RT Beam Rec	RT Brachy Rec	RT Sum	RT Ion Plan	RT Ion Beams Treat Rec
RT Beams			C					
RT Ion Beams							M	
RT Brachy Application Setups			C					
Approval		U	U				U	
Overlay Plane	U							
Multi-frame Overlay	U							
Modality LUT	U							
SOP Common	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M

A.2 COMPUTED RADIOGRAPHY IMAGE INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.2.1 CR Image IOD Description

The Computed Radiography (CR) Image Information Object Definition specifies an image that has been created by a computed radiography imaging device.

Note: Digital Luminescence Radiography is an equivalent term for computed Radiography.

A.2.2 CR Image IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 depicts those components of the DICOM Information Model that directly reference the CR Image IOD. The Frame of Reference IE, Overlay IE, Modality LUT IE, VOI LUT IE and Curve IE are not components of the CR Image IOD.

A.2.3 CR Image IOD Module Table

Table A.2-1
CR IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	CR Series	C.8.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Image	General Image	C.7.6.1	M
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Contrast/bolus	C.7.6.4	C - Required if contrast media was used in this image
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	CR Image	C.8.1.2	M
	Overlay Plane	C.9.2	U
	Modality LUT	C.11.1	U
	VOILUT	C.11.2	U
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

Note: The Curve Module was previously included in the Image IE for this IOD but has been retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.3 COMPUTED TOMOGRAPHY IMAGE INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.3.1 CT Image IOD Description

The Computed Tomography (CT) Image Information Object Definition (IOD) specifies an image that has been created by a computed tomography imaging device.

A.3.2 CT image IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 depicts those components of the DICOM Information Model that directly reference the CT Image IOD. The Overlay IE, Modality LUT IE, VOI LUT IE and Curve IE are not components of the CT Image IOD.

A.3.3 CT Image IOD Module Table

Table A.3-1
CT IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Frame of Reference	Frame of Reference	C.7.4.1	M
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Image	General Image	C.7.6.1	M
	Image Plane	C.7.6.2	M
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Contrast/bolus	C.7.6.4	C - Required if contrast media was used in this image
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	CT Image	C.8.2.1	M
	Overlay Plane	C.9.2	U
	VOI LUT	C.11.2	U
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.4 MAGNETIC RESONANCE IMAGE INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.4.1 MR Image IOD Description

The Magnetic Resonance (MR) Image Information Object Definition (IOD) specifies an image that has been created by a magnetic resonance imaging device.

A.4.2 MR image IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 depicts those components of the DICOM Information Model that directly reference the MR Image IOD. The Overlay IE, Modality LUT IE, VOI LUT IE and Curve IE are not components of the MR Image IOD.

A.4.3 MR Image IOD Module Table

Table A.4-1
MR IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Frame of Reference	Frame of Reference	C.7.4.1	M
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Image	General Image	C.7.6.1	M
	Image Plane	C.7.6.2	M
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Contrast/bolus	C.7.6.4	C - Required if contrast media was used in this image
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	MR Image	C.8.3.1	M
	Overlay Plane	C.9.2	U
	VOI LUT	C.11.2	U
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.5 NUCLEAR MEDICINE IMAGE INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.5.1 NM Image IOD Description

The Nuclear Medicine (NM) Image Information Object Definition (IOD) specifies an image that has been created by a nuclear medicine imaging device. This includes data created by external detection devices that create images of the distribution of administered radioactive materials in the body. Depending on the specific radio pharmaceutical administered and the particular imaging procedure performed, problems involving changes in metabolism, function, or physiology can be investigated and various regional pathologies can be studied.

A.5.2 NM Image IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 depicts those components of the DICOM Information Model that directly reference the NM Image IOD. The Modality LUT IE is not a component of the NM Image IOD.

A.5.3 NM Image IOD Module Table (Retired)

Section A.5.3 was defined in a previous version of the DICOM Standard. The Section is now retired.

A.5.4 NM Image IOD Module Table

Table A.5-1
NM IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
	NM/PET Patient Orientation	C.8.4.6	M
Frame of Reference	Frame of Reference	C.7.4.1	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Image	General Image	C.7.6.1	M
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Acquisition Context	C.7.6.14	U – See Section A.5.4.1
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	NM Image Pixel	C.8.4.7	M
	Multi-frame	C.7.6.6	M
	NM Multi-frame	C.8.4.8	M
	NM Image	C.8.4.9	M
	NM Isotope	C.8.4.10	M
	NM Detector	C.8.4.11	M
	NM TOMO Acquisition	C.8.4.12	C - Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 3 is TOMO, GATED TOMO, RECON TOMO or RECON GATED TOMO
	NM Multi-gated Acquisition	C.8.4.13	C - Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 3 is GATED, GATED TOMO, or RECON GATED TOMO
	NM Phase	C.8.4.14	C - Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 3 is DYNAMIC
	NM Reconstruction	C.8.4.15	C - Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 3 is RECON TOMO or RECON GATED TOMO
	Overlay Plane	C.9.2	U
	Multi-frame Overlay	C.9.3	U
	VOI LUT	C.11.2	U
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

Note: The Curve Module was previously included in the Image IE for this IOD but has been retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.5.4.1 Acquisition Context Module

The Defined Template for Acquisition Context Sequence (0040,0555) is TID 3470.

The Acquisition Context Sequence (0040,0555) shall always apply to all frames in the Image. Patient State shall always apply to all frames in the Image, therefore, Referenced Frame Numbers (0040,A136) shall not be present.

A.6 ULTRASOUND IMAGE INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.6.1 US Image IOD Description

The Ultrasound (US) Image Information Object Definition specifies an image that has been created by an ultrasound imaging device.

A.6.2 US Image IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 depicts those components of the DICOM Information Model that directly reference the US Image IOD. The Overlay IE, Modality LUT IE and VOI LUT IE are not components of the US Image IOD.

A.6.3 US Image IOD Module Table (Retired)

Section A.6.3 was defined in a previous version of the DICOM Standard. The Section is now retired.

A.6.4 US Image IOD Module Table

Table A.6-1
US IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Frame of Reference	Frame of Reference	C.7.4.1	U
	Synchronization	C.7.4.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Image	General Image	C.7.6.1	M
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Contrast/bolus	C.7.6.4	C - Required if contrast media was used in this image
	Palette Color Lookup Table	C.7.9	C - Required if Photometic Interpretation (0028,0004) has a value of PALETTE COLOR
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	US Region Calibration	C.8.5.5	U
	US Image	C.8.5.6	M
	Overlay Plane	C.9.2	U
	VOI LUT	C.11.2	U
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

Notes: 1. For the purpose of conveying ultrasound protocol data management information it is recommended that the Performed Protocol Code Sequence (0040,0260) be assigned the code value(s) of the performed ultrasound protocol, if any. The Baseline Context Group for these code values is Context ID 12001 (defined in PS 3.16).

2. The US Frame of Reference Module was previously included in this IOD, but has been retired. See PS 3.3 2003.

A.6.4.1 Mutually Exclusive IEs

Note: A Curve IE was previously included in this IOD that was mutually exclusive with the Image IE, but has been retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.7 ULTRASOUND MULTI-FRAME IMAGE INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.7.1 US Image IOD Description

The Ultrasound (US) Multi-frame Image Information Object Definition specifies a Multi-frame image that has been created by an ultrasound imaging device.

A.7.2 US Multi-Frame Image IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 depicts those components of the DICOM Application Information Model that directly reference the US Multi-frame Image IOD. The Overlay IE, Modality LUT IE and VOI LUT IE are not components of the US Multi-frame Image IOD.

A.7.3 US Image IOD Module Table (Retired)

Section A.7.3 was defined in a previous version of the DICOM Standard. The Section is now retired.

A.7.4 US Multi-Frame Image IOD Module Table

Table A.7-1
US MULTI-FRAME IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Frame of Reference	Frame of Reference	C.7.4.1	U
	Synchronization	C.7.4.2	C – Required if Modality (0008,0060) = IVUS. May be present otherwise.
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Image	General Image	C.7.6.1	M
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Contrast/bolus	C.7.6.4	C - Required if contrast media was used in this image.
	Cine	C.7.6.5	M
	Multi-frame	C.7.6.6	M
	Frame Pointers	C.7.6.9	U
	Palette Color Lookup Table	C.7.9	C - Required if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) has a value of PALETTE COLOR
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	US Region Calibration	C.8.5.5	U
	US Image	C.8.5.6	M
	VOI LUT	C.11.2	U
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

Notes: 1. For the purpose of conveying ultrasound protocol data management information it is recommended that the Performed Protocol Code Sequence (0040,0260) be assigned the code value(s) of the performed ultrasound protocol, if any. The Baseline Context Group for these code values is Context ID 12001 (defined in PS 3.16).

2. The US Frame of Reference Module was previously included in this IOD, but has been retired. See PS 3.3 2003.

A.7.4.1 Mutually Exclusive IEs

Note: A Curve IE was previously included in this IOD that was mutually exclusive with the Image IE, but has been retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.8 SECONDARY CAPTURE IMAGE INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

The Secondary Capture (SC) Image Information Object Definition (IOD) specifies images that are converted from a non-DICOM format to a modality independent DICOM format.

Examples of types of equipment that create Secondary Capture Images include:

a. Video interfaces that convert an analog video signal into a digital image

b. Digital interfaces that are commonly used to transfer non-DICOM digital images from an imaging device to a laser printer

c. Film digitizers that convert an analog film image to digital data

d. Workstations that construct images that are sent out as a screen dump

e. Scanned documents and other bitmap images including hand-drawings

f. Synthesized images that are not modality-specific, such as cine-loops of 3D reconstructions

Originally, a single, relatively unconstrained, single-frame SC Image IOD was defined in the DICOM Standard. Though this IOD is retained and not retired since it is in common use, more specific IODs for particular categories of application are also defined.

The following IODs are all multi-frame. A single frame image is encoded as a multi-frame image with only one frame. The multi-frame SC IODs consist of:

- Multi-frame Single Bit Secondary Capture Image IOD
- Multi-frame Grayscale Byte Secondary Capture Image IOD
- Multi-frame Grayscale Word Secondary Capture Image IOD
- Multi-frame True Color Secondary Capture Image IOD

A.8.1 SC Image Information Objection Definition

A.8.1.1 SC Image IOD Description

The Secondary Capture (SC) Image Information Object Definition (IOD) specifies single-frame images that are converted from a non-DICOM format to a modality independent DICOM format, without any constraints on pixel data format.

Note: The use of this IOD is deprecated, and other more specific SC Image IODs should be used.

A.8.1.2 SC Image IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 depicts those components of the DICOM Information Model that directly reference the Secondary Capture Image IOD. The Frame of Reference IE and Curve IE are not components of this IOD.

A.8.1.3 SC Image IOD Module Table

Table A.8-1
SC IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	U
	SC Equipment	C.8.6.1	M
Image	General Image	C.7.6.1	M
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	SC Image	C.8.6.2	M
	Overlay Plane	C.9.2	U
	Modality LUT	C.11.1	U
	VOI LUT	C.11.2	U
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.8.2 Multi-frame Single Bit SC Image Information Object Definition

A.8.2.1 Multi-frame Single Bit SC Image IOD Description

The Multi-frame Single Bit Secondary Capture (SC) Image Information Object Definition (IOD) specifies images that are converted from a non-DICOM format to a modality independent DICOM format.

This IOD is typically used for scanned documents and bitmap images of hand drawings.

A.8.2.2 Multi-frame Single Bit SC Image IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 depicts those components of the DICOM Information Model that directly reference the Secondary Capture Image family of IODs. The Frame of Reference IE, Overlay IE, Modality LUT IE, VOI LUT IE and Curve IE are not components of this IOD.

A.8.2.3 Multi-frame Single Bit SC Image IOD Module Table

Table A.8-2
MULTI-FRAME SINGLE BIT SC IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	U
	SC Equipment	C.8.6.1	M
Image	General Image	C.7.6.1	M
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Cine	C.7.6.5	C – Required if Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) is Frame Time (0018,1063) or Frame Time Vector (0018,1065)
	Multi-frame	C.7.6.6	M
	Frame Pointers	C.7.6.9	U
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	SC Image	C.8.6.2	U
	SC Multi-frame Image	C.8.6.3	M
	SC Multi-frame Vector	C.8.6.4	C – Required if Number of Frames is greater than 1
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.8.2.4 Multi-frame Single Bit SC Image IOD Content Constraints

In the Image Pixel Module, the following constraints apply:

- Samples per Pixel (0028,0002) shall be 1
- Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) shall be MONOCHROME2
- Bits Allocated (0028,0100) shall be 1
- Bits Stored (0028,0101) shall be 1
- High Bit (0028,0102) shall be 0
- Pixel Representation (0028,0103) shall be 0
- Planar Configuration (0028,0006) shall not be present

Note: As a consequence of these attribute values, single bit pixels are packed eight to a byte as defined by the encoding rules in PS 3.5.

The VOI LUT module shall not be present.

The Overlay module shall not be present.

A.8.3 Multi-frame Grayscale Byte SC Image Information Object Definition

A.8.3.1 Multi-frame Grayscale Byte Image IOD Description

The Multi-frame Grayscale Byte Secondary Capture (SC) Image Information Object Definition (IOD) specifies Grayscale Byte images that are converted from a non-DICOM format to a modality independent DICOM format.

This IOD is typically used for screen captured images for modalities that have pixel values of 8 bits, but may also be appropriate for scanned grayscale documents.

A.8.3.2 Multi-frame Grayscale Byte SC Image IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 depicts those components of the DICOM Information Model that directly reference the Secondary Capture Image family of IODs. The Frame of Reference IE, Overlay IE, Modality LUT IE and Curve IE are not components of this IOD.

A.8.3.3 Multi-frame Grayscale Byte SC Image IOD Module Table

Table A.8-3
MULTI-FRAME GRAYSCALE BYTE SC IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	U
	SC Equipment	C.8.6.1	M
Frame of Reference	Frame of Reference	C.7.4.1	C – Required if Pixel Measures or Plane Position or Plane Orientation Functional Group Macros Present
	Synchronization	C.7.4.2	U
Image	General Image	C.7.6.1	M
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Cine	C.7.6.5	C – Required if Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) is Frame Time (0018,1063) or Frame Time Vector (0018,1065)
	Multi-frame	C.7.6.6	M
	Frame Pointers	C.7.6.9	U
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	Multi-frame Functional Groups	C.7.6.16	U
	Multi-frame Dimension	C.7.6.17	U
	SC Image	C.8.6.2	U
	SC Multi-frame Image	C.8.6.3	M
	SC Multi-frame Vector	C.8.6.4	C – Required if Number of Frames is greater than 1
	VOI LUT	C.11.2	C – Required if the VOI LUT stage is not an identity transformation
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.8.3.4 Multi-frame Grayscale Byte SC Image IOD Content Constraints

The VOI LUT module is required if the VOI LUT stage is not an identity transformation. Support for both window and LUT is mandatory. The output grayscale space is defined to be in P-Values.

Note: If the VOI LUT module is absent, then the stored pixel values are in P-Values.

In the Image Pixel Module, the following constraints apply:

- Samples per Pixel (0028,0002) shall be 1
- Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) shall be MONOCHROME2
- Bits Allocated (0028,0100) shall be 8
- Bits Stored (0028,0101) shall be 8
- High Bit (0028,0102) shall be 7
- Pixel Representation (0028,0103) shall be 0
- Planar Configuration (0028,0006) shall not be present

The Overlay module shall not be present.

A.8.3.5 Multi-frame Grayscale Byte SC Image Functional Group Macros

Table A.8-3b specifies the use of the Functional Group macros used in the Multi-frame Functional Groups Module for the Multi-frame Grayscale Byte SC Image IOD.

Table A.8-3b
MULTI-FRAME GRAYSCALE BYTE SC IMAGE FUNCTIONAL GROUP MACROS

Functional Group Macro	Section	Usage
Pixel Measures	C.7.6.16.2.1	C – Required if Plane Position or Plane Orientation Macros Present
Plane Position	C.7.6.16.2.3	C – Required if Pixel Measures or Plane Orientation Macros Present
Plane Orientation	C.7.6.16.2.4	C – Required if Pixel Measures or Plane Position Macros Present

A.8.4 Multi-frame Grayscale Word SC Image Information Object Definition

A.8.4.1 Multi-frame Grayscale Word SC Image IOD Description

The Multi-frame Grayscale Word Secondary Capture (SC) Image Information Object Definition (IOD) specifies Grayscale Word images that are converted from a non-DICOM format to a modality independent DICOM format.

This IOD is typically used for screen captured images for modalities that have pixel values greater than 8 bits.

A.8.4.2 Multi-frame Grayscale Word SC Image IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 depicts those components of the DICOM Information Model that directly reference the Secondary Capture Image family of IODs. The Frame of Reference IE, Overlay IE, Modality LUT IE and Curve IE are not components this IOD.

A.8.4.3 Multi-frame Grayscale Word SC Image IOD Module Table

Table A.8-4
MULTI-FRAME GRAYSCALE WORD SC IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	U
	SC Equipment	C.8.6.1	M
Frame of Reference	Frame of Reference	C.7.4.1	C – Required if Pixel Measures or Plane Position or Plane Orientation Functional Group Macros Present
	Synchronization	C.7.4.2	U
Image	General Image	C.7.6.1	M
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Cine	C.7.6.5	C – Required if Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) is Frame Time (0018,1063) or Frame Time Vector (0018,1065)
	Multi-frame	C.7.6.6	M
	Frame Pointers	C.7.6.9	U
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	Multi-frame Functional Groups	C.7.6.16	U
	Multi-frame Dimension	C.7.6.17	U
	SC Image	C.8.6.2	U
	SC Multi-frame Image	C.8.6.3	M
	SC Multi-frame Vector	C.8.6.4	C – Required if Number of Frames is greater than 1
	VOI LUT	C.11.2	C – Required if the VOI LUT stage is not an identity transformation
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.8.4.4 Multi-frame Grayscale Word SC Image IOD Content Constraints

The VOI LUT module is required if the VOI LUT stage is not an identity transformation. Support for both window and LUT is mandatory. The output grayscale space is defined to be in P-Values.

Note: If the VOI LUT module is absent, then the stored pixel values are in P-Values.

In the Image Pixel Module, the following constraints apply:

- Samples per Pixel (0028,0002) shall be 1
- Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) shall be MONOCHROME2
- Bits Allocated (0028,0100) shall be 16
- Bits Stored (0028,0101) shall be greater than or equal to 9 and less than or equal to 16
- High Bit (0028,0102) shall be one less than Bits Stored (0028,0101)
- Pixel Representation (0028,0103) shall be 0
- Planar Configuration (0028,0006) shall not be present

The Overlay module shall not be present. Unused high bits shall be filled with zeroes.

A.8.4.5 Multi-frame Grayscale Word SC Image Functional Group Macros

Table A.8-4b specifies the use of the Functional Group macros used in the Multi-frame Functional Groups Module for the Multi-frame Grayscale Word SC Image IOD.

Table A.8-4b
MULTI-FRAME GRAYSCALE WORD SC IMAGE FUNCTIONAL GROUP MACROS

Functional Group Macro	Section	Usage
Pixel Measures	C.7.6.16.2.1	C – Required if Plane Position or Plane Orientation Macros Present
Plane Position	C.7.6.16.2.3	C – Required if Pixel Measures or Plane Orientation Macros Present
Plane Orientation	C.7.6.16.2.4	C – Required if Pixel Measures or Plane Position Macros Present

A.8.5 Multi-frame True Color SC Image Information Object Definition

A.8.5.1 Multi-frame True Color Image IOD Description

The Multi-frame True Color Secondary Capture (SC) Image Information Object Definition (IOD) specifies True Color images that are converted from a non-DICOM format to a modality independent DICOM format.

This IOD is typically used for screen captured or synthetic images where true color is used, but may also be appropriate for scanned color documents.

A.8.5.2 Multi-frame True Color SC Image IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 depicts those components of the DICOM Information Model that directly reference the Secondary Capture Image family of IODs. The Frame of Reference IE, Overlay IE, Modality LUT IE, VOI LUT IE and Curve IE are not components of the this IOD.

A.8.5.3 Multi-frame True Color SC Image IOD Module Table

Table A.8-5
MULTI-FRAME TRUE COLOR SC IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Frame of Reference	Frame of Reference	C.7.4.1	C – Required if Pixel Measures or Plane Position or Plane Orientation Functional Group Macros Present
	Synchronization	C.7.4.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	U
	SC Equipment	C.8.6.1	M
Image	General Image	C.7.6.1	M
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Cine	C.7.6.5	C – Required if Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) is Frame Time (0018,1063) or Frame Time Vector (0018,1065)
	Multi-frame	C.7.6.6	M
	Frame Pointers	C.7.6.9	U
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	Multi-frame Functional Groups	C.7.6.16	U
	Multi-frame Dimension	C.7.6.17	U
	SC Image	C.8.6.2	U
	SC Multi-frame Image	C.8.6.3	M
	SC Multi-frame Vector	C.8.6.4	C – Required if Number of Frames is greater than 1
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.8.5.4 Multi-frame True Color SC Image IOD Content Constraints

The VOI LUT module shall not be present.

In the Image Pixel Module, the following constraints apply:

- Samples per Pixel (0028,0002) shall be 3
- Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) shall be RGB for uncompressed or lossless compressed transfer syntaxes that do not involve color space transformations, YBR_ICT for irreversible JPEG 2000 transfer syntaxes, YBR_RCT for reversible JPEG 2000 transfer

syntaxes, YBR_PARTIAL_420 for MPEG2 transfer syntaxes and YBR_FULL_422 for other lossy compressed transfer syntaxes

Note: Future lossless and lossy transfer syntaxes may lead to the need for new definitions and choices for Photometric Interpretation.

- Bits Allocated (0028,0100) shall be 8
- Bits Stored (0028,0101) shall be 8
- High Bit (0028,0102) shall be 7
- Pixel Representation (0028,0103) shall be 0
- Planar Configuration (0028,0006) shall be 0 (color-by-pixel) if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) is RGB

The Overlay module shall not be present.

A.8.5.5 Multi-frame True Color SC Image Functional Group Macros

Table A.8-5b specifies the use of the Functional Group macros used in the Multi-frame Functional Groups Module for the Multi-frame True Color SC Image IOD.

Table A.8-5b
MULTI-FRAME TRUE COLOR SC IMAGE FUNCTIONAL GROUP MACROS

Functional Group Macro	Section	Usage
Pixel Measures	C.7.6.16.2.1	C – Required if Plane Position or Plane Orientation Macros Present
Plane Position	C.7.6.16.2.3	C – Required if Pixel Measures or Plane Orientation Macros Present
Plane Orientation	C.7.6.16.2.4	C – Required if Pixel Measures or Plane Position Macros Present

A.9 STANDALONE OVERLAY INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.10 STANDALONE CURVE INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.11 BASIC STUDY DESCRIPTOR INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.12 STANDALONE MODALITY LUT INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.13 STANDALONE VOI LUT INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.14 X-RAY ANGIOGRAPHIC IMAGE INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.14.1 XA Image IOD Description

This Section defines the Information Object for single plane X-Ray Angiographic Imaging that includes those data elements and information objects necessary for the interchange of digital X-Ray Angiographic data. This includes images of the heart and all blood vessels.

The XA IOD share a significant amount of common information with the XRF IOD. The differences between the two IODs are that the XRF Image IOD includes a tomography module; and the two IODs utilize different methods to specify positioner angles. The XRF Image IOD contains a single column angulation Data Element that uses an equipment based coordinate system, while XA Image IOD c-arm positioner angles are specified in a patient based coordinate system. RF applications that support a patient-based coordinate system with cranial/caudal, LAO/RAO angles may utilize the XA IOD.

The XA IOD is also applicable to clinical areas other than angiography (e.g. Interventional Procedures, Myelography, Biopsy/Localization, and Neurology).

Note: 1. For the purpose of X-Ray Angiography (XA), this IOD can be used to encode a single frame image, or a Cine Run encoded in a single multi-frame image.

2. A typical study might include all the images generated between the time a patient gets on and gets off the procedure table. As several separable diagnostic or therapeutic processes may occur during a single study (e.g., pre-intervention CA, left ventriculography, and post-intervention CA), a series may be defined as comprising a set of images (single or Multi-Frame) associated with one such process within a study.

3. This IOD can be used to encode a single plane acquisition, or one plane of a biplane acquisition.

A.14.2 XA Image IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 depicts those components of the DICOM Application Information Model that directly reference the X-Ray Angiographic Image IOD, with exception of the Frame of Reference and Modality LUT entities, which are not used. Additionally, "Image" in Figure A.1-1 may represent a Single Frame or a Multi-Frame image. A frame denotes a two-dimensional organization of pixels recorded as a single exposure.

A.14.3 XA Image IOD Module Table

Table A.14-1
X-RAY ANGIOGRAPHIC IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Frame of Reference	Synchronization	C.7.4.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Image	General Image	C.7.6.1	M
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Contrast/Bolus	C.7.6.4	C - Required if contrast media was used in this Image
	Cine	C.7.6.5	C - Required if pixel data is Multi-Frame Cine data
	Multi-Frame	C.7.6.6	C - Required if pixel data is Multi-Frame Cine data
	Frame Pointers	C.7.6.9	U
	Mask	C.7.6.10	C - Required if the Image may be subtracted
	Display Shutter	C.7.6.11	U
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	Intervention	C.7.6.13	U
	X-Ray Image	C.8.7.1	M
	X-Ray Acquisition	C.8.7.2	M
	X-Ray Collimator	C.8.7.3	U
	X-Ray Table	C.8.7.4	C - Required if Image is created with table motion, may be present otherwise
	XA Positioner	C.8.7.5	M
	DX Detector	C.8.11.4	U
	Overlay Plane	C.9.2	U
	Multi-Frame Overlay	C.9.3	C - Required if Overlay data contains multiple frames.
	Modality LUT	C.11.1	C - Required if Pixel Intensity Relationship (0028,1040) is LOG U - Optional if Pixel Intensity

			Relationship (0028,1040) is DISP
	VOI LUT	C.11.2	U
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

Note: The Curve Module was previously included in the Image IE for this IOD but has been retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.15 X-RAY ANGIOGRAPHIC BI-PLANE IMAGE INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION (RETIRED)

A.16 X-RAY RF IMAGE INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.16.1 XRF Image IOD Description

The focus for this X-Ray RF Image IOD (XRF IOD) is to address the requirements for image transfer found in general Radiofluoroscopic applications performed on a table with a column. For applications performed on X-Ray RF acquisition systems that support a patient based coordinate system with cranial/caudal, LAO/RAO angles, etc. the XA Image IOD may be used.

Note: An example of a case where the XA IOD may be preferred to the RF IOD are RF acquisition system equipped with an X-Ray source and an image Receptor positioned by what is generally called a c-arm (e.g. Interventional Procedures, Myelography, Biopsy, and Neurology).

This Section defines the Information Object for X-Ray Radiofluoroscopic Imaging that includes those data elements and information objects necessary for the interchange of digital X-Ray RF Image data. The XRF IOD is applicable to X-Ray acquisition systems equipped with an image receptor whose plane is parallel to the table plane where the patient is. This Table has in general the ability to be tilted. Furthermore the X-Ray source may be supported by a column that can be angulated to adjust the incidence of the X-Ray beam on the image receptor plan. An equipment based coordinated system is used to track these angles.

Notes: 1. For the purpose of X-Ray Radiofluoroscopy, this IOD can be used to encode a single frame image, or a cine run encoded in a single multi-frame image.

2. A typical study might include all the images generated between the time a patient gets on and gets off the procedure table. As several separable diagnostic or therapeutic processes may occur during a single study, a series may be defined as comprising a set of images (single or Multi-Frame) associated with one such process within a study.

A.16.2 XRF Image IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 depicts those components of the DICOM Application Information Model that directly reference the X-Ray RF Image IOD, with exception of the Frame of Reference entity that is not used. Additionally, "Image" in figure A.1-1 may represent a Single Frame or a Multi-Frame image. A frame denotes a two-dimensional organization of pixels recorded as a single exposure.

Note: When a Study (or Study Component) contains a number of Multi-frame images that do not need to be grouped under different Series, a single Series may be used with a series number containing an arbitrary value (e.g. 1).

A.16.3 XRF Image IOD Module Table

Table A.16-1 - XRF IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Frame of Reference	Synchronization	C.7.4.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Image	General Image	C.7.6.1	M
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Contrast/bolus	C.7.6.4	C - Required if contrast media was used in this Image
	Cine	C.7.6.5	C - Required if pixel data is Multi-Frame Cine Data
	Multi-Frame	C.7.6.6	C - Required if pixel data is Multi-Frame Cine Data
	Frame Pointers	C.7.6.9	U
	Mask	C.7.6.10	C - Required if the Image may be subtracted
	X-Ray Image	C.8.7.1	M
	X-Ray Acquisition	C.8.7.2	M
	X-Ray Collimator	C.8.7.3	U
	Display Shutter	C.7.6.11	U
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	Intervention	C.7.6.13	U
	X-Ray Table	C.8.7.4	U
	XRF Positioner	C.8.7.6	U
	X-Ray Tomo Acquisition	C.8.7.7	C - Required if Scan Option (0018,0022) is TOMO
	DX Detector	C.8.11.4	U
	Overlay Plane	C.9.2	U
	Multi-frame Overlay	C.9.3	C - Required if Overlay Data contains multiple frames
	Modality LUT	C.11.1	C - Required if Pixel Intensity Relationship (0028,1040) is LOG

			U - Optional if Pixel Intensity Relationship (0028,1040) is DISP
	VOI LUT	C.11.2	U
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

Note: The Curve Module was previously included in the Image IE for this IOD but has been retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.17 RT IMAGE INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.17.1 RT Image IOD Description

The focus for this Radiotherapy Image IOD (RT Image IOD) is to address the requirements for image transfer found in general radiotherapy applications performed on conventional simulators, virtual simulators, and portal imaging devices. Such images have a conical imaging geometry and may either be acquired directly from the device, or digitized using a film digitizer. Numeric beam data parameters may also be recorded with the image, indicating the parameter values at the time the image was taken or created.

A.17.2 RT Image IOD entity-relationship model

The E-R model for the RT Image IOD is illustrated in Figure A.17-1.

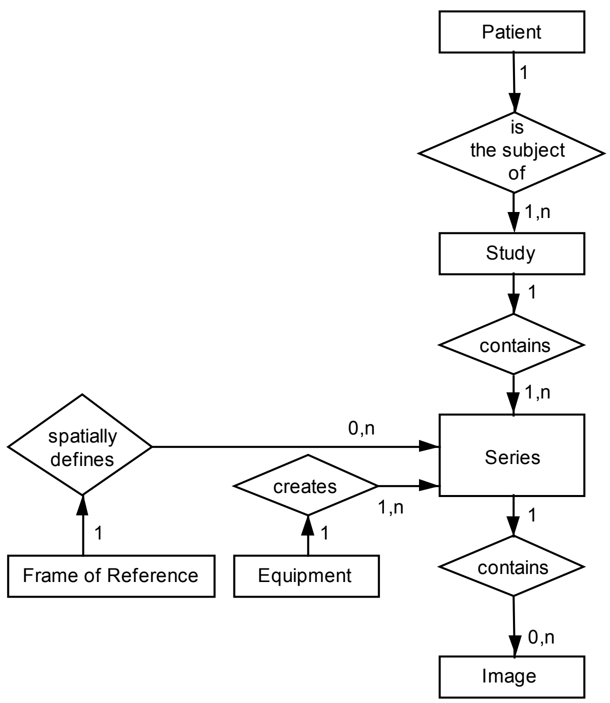


Figure A.17-1—DICOM RT Image IOD information model

A.17.3 RT Image IOD Module Table

Table A.17.3-1—RT IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	RT Series	C.8.8.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Frame of Reference	Frame of Reference	C.7.4.1	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Image	General Image	C.7.6.1	M
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Contrast/bolus	C.7.6.4	C-Required if contrast media was used in this image.
	Cine	C.7.6.5	C - Required if multi-frame image is a cine image.
	Multi-Frame	C.7.6.6	C - Required if pixel data is multi-frame data.
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	RT Image	C.8.8.2	M
	Modality LUT	C.11.1	U
	VOI LUT	C.11.2	U
	Approval	C.8.8.16	U
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

Notes: 1. The inclusion of the Multi-Frame module allows for the expression of time-dependent image series or multiple exposures of identical beam geometries (i.e. multiple exposure portal images). If a time-dependent series of images (such as port images or DRRs) is represented the Cine module is used to indicate this. This would subsequently allow analysis of patient movement during treatment. Multiple exposure images allow individual images of treatment ports and open field ports to be grouped into a single multi-frame image.

2. The Modality LUT module has been included to allow the possibility of conversion between portal image pixel values and dose transmitted through the patient. The VOI LUT module has been included to allow the possibility of translation between stored pixel values (after the Modality LUT has been applied if specified) and display levels.

3. The Curve and Audio Modules were previously included in the Image IE for this IOD but has been retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

4. The Equipment module contains information describing the equipment used to acquire or generate the RT Image (such as a portal imager, conventional simulator or treatment planning system). However, the equipment attributes in the RT Image module describe the equipment on which the treatment has been or will be given, typically an electron accelerator.

5. For RT Images that contain no relevant pixel data, such as BEV images without DRR information, Pixel Data (7FE0,0010) should be filled with a sequence of zeros.

6. The Frame of Reference module has been included to allow the indication of spatial association of two or more RT Image instances (e.g. where the images have been acquired in the same frame of reference, or have been resampled to share the same frame of reference). If the Frame of Reference occurs within a SOP Instance within a given series, then all SOP Instances within that series will be spatially related. For example, two RT Images may share the same Frame of Reference if they are located on the same physical plane, as determined by the treatment machine Gantry Angle (300A,011E) and source to image plane distance specified by RT Image SID (3002,0026).

A.18 RT DOSE INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.18.1 RT Dose IOD Description

The focus for this Radiotherapy Dose IOD (RT Dose IOD) is to address the requirements for transfer of dose distributions calculated by radiotherapy treatment planning systems. These distributions may be represented as 2D or 3D grids, as isodose curves, or as named or unnamed dose points scattered throughout the volume. This IOD may also contain dose-volume histogram data, single or multi-frame overlays and application-defined lookup tables. This IOD does not provide for definition of doses in beam or other coordinate systems. The application is responsible for transforming data in other, non-patient based coordinate systems to the patient based coordinate system described in C.7.6.2.1.1.

A.18.2 RT Dose IOD entity-relationship model

The E-R model for the RT Dose IOD is illustrated in Figure A.18-1.

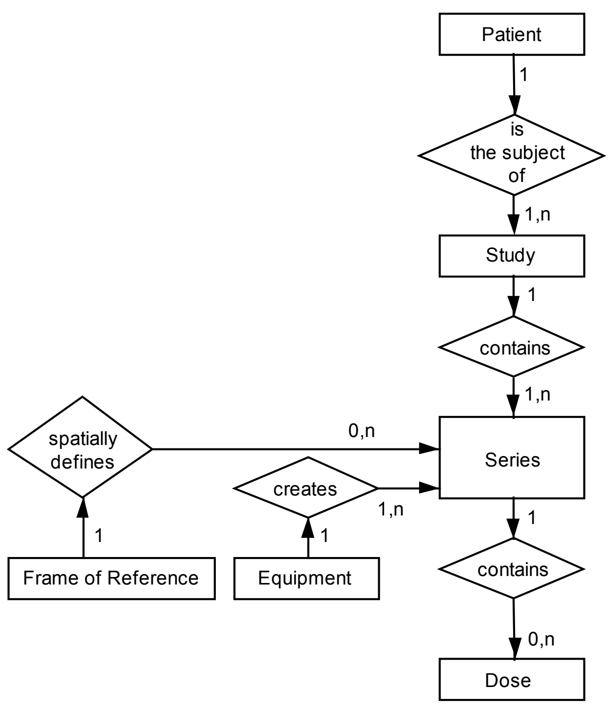


Figure A.18-1—DICOM RT Dose IOD information model

A.18.3 RT Dose IOD Module Table

Table A.18.3-1—RT DOSE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	RT Series	C.8.8.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Frame of Reference	Frame of Reference	C.7.4.1	M
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Dose	General Image	C.7.6.1	C - Required if dose data contains grid-based doses.
	Image Plane	C.7.6.2	C - Required if dose data contains grid-based doses.
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	C - Required if dose data contains grid-based doses.
	Multi-Frame	C.7.6.6	C - Required if dose data contains grid-based doses and pixel data is multi-frame data.
	Overlay Plane	C.9.2	U
	Multi-Frame Overlay	C.9.3	U
	Modality LUT	C.11.1	U
	RT Dose	C.8.8.3	M
	RT DVH	C.8.8.4	U
	Structure Set	C.8.8.5	C - Required if dose data contains dose points or isodose curves
	ROI Contour	C.8.8.6	C - Required if dose data contains dose points or isodose curves
	RT Dose ROI	C.8.8.7	C - Required if dose data contains dose points or isodose curves
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

Notes: 1. Within the RT Dose IOD, the RT Dose module supports 2D and 3D dose grids. The Structure Set, ROI Contour and RT Dose ROI modules together support isodose curves and points, and the RT DVH module supports dose-volume histogram data. They are not mutually exclusive: all four representations may be included in a single instance of the object or they may be included in any combination. Product Conformance Statements should clearly state which of these mechanisms is supported and under what conditions.

2. The RT Dose IOD has been defined as a composite IOD, separate from the RT Plan IOD. This has been done for the following reasons:

– to allow for the multiplicity of possible dose calculations using beam models for the same basic plan,

– to avoid undesirable transmission of large amounts of data with the treatment plan, and

– to accommodate the fact that CT Simulation and other “beam geometry” generating devices that use the RT Plan IOD do not have or require access to this data, either for transmission or storage.

3. The Audio Module was previously included in this IOD but has been retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.19 RT STRUCTURE SET INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.19.1 RT Structure Set IOD Description

The focus for this Radiotherapy Structure Set IOD (RT Structure Set IOD) is to address the requirements for transfer of patient structures and related data defined on CT scanners, virtual simulation workstations, treatment planning systems and similar devices.

A.19.2 RT Structure Set IOD entity-relationship model

The E-R model for the RT Structure Set IOD is illustrated in Figure A.19-1.

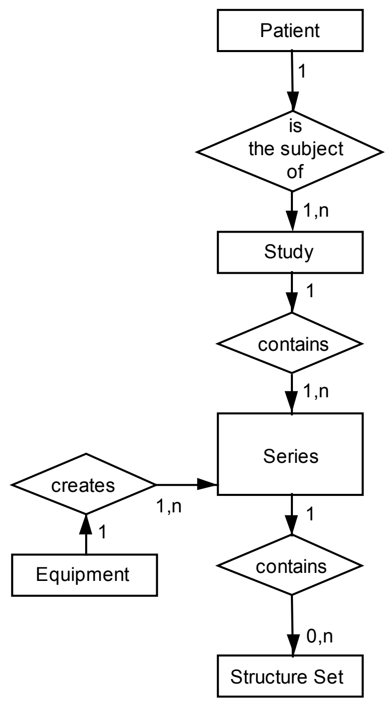


Figure A.19-1—DICOM RT Structure Set IOD information model

A.19.3 RT Structure Set IOD Module Table

Table A.19.3-1—RT STRUCTURE SET IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	RT Series	C.8.8.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Structure Set	Structure Set	C.8.8.5	M
	ROI Contour	C.8.8.6	M
	RT ROI Observations	C.8.8.8	M
	Approval	C.8.8.16	U
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

Note: The Audio Module was previously included in this IOD but has been retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.20 RT PLAN INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.20.1 RT Plan IOD Description

The focus for this Radiotherapy Plan IOD (RT Plan IOD) is to address the requirements for transfer of treatment plans generated by manual entry, a virtual simulation system, or a treatment planning system before or during a course of treatment. Such plans may contain fractionation information, and define external beams and/or brachytherapy application setups.

A.20.2 RT Plan IOD entity-relationship model

The E-R model for the RT Plan IOD is illustrated in Figure A.20-1.

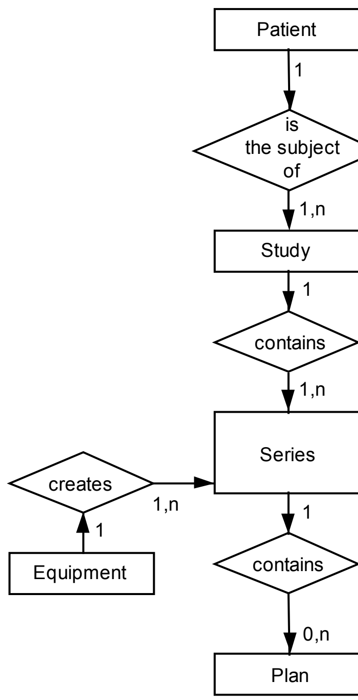


Figure A.20-1—DICOM RT Plan IOD information model

A.20.3 RT Plan IOD Module Table

Table A.20.3-1—RT PLAN IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	RT Series	C.8.8.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Frame of Reference	Frame of Reference	C.7.4.1	U – See Note.
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Plan	RT General Plan	C.8.8.9	M
	RT Prescription	C.8.8.10	U
	RT Tolerance Tables	C.8.8.11	U
	RT Patient Setup	C.8.8.12	U
	RT Fraction Scheme	C.8.8.13	U
	RT Beams	C.8.8.14	C - Required if RT Fraction Scheme Module exists and Number of Beams (300A,0080) is greater than zero for one or more fraction groups
	RT Brachy Application Setups	C.8.8.15	C - Required if RT Fraction Scheme Module exists and Number of Brachy Application Setups (300A,00A0) is greater than zero for one or more fraction groups
	Approval	C.8.8.16	U
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

Notes: 1. The RT Structure Set referenced in Referenced Structure Set Sequence (300C,0060) of the RT General Plan Module may contain more than one item in the Referenced Frame of Reference Sequence (3006,0010) in the Structure Set Module. In this case, it is highly recommended that the Frame of Reference Module be supplied in the RT Plan object, to unambiguously specify the frame of reference of the RT Plan contents.

2. The Audio Module was previously included in this IOD but has been retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.20.3.1 RT FRACTION SCHEME MODULE

The RT Fraction Scheme module is structured to be used together with the RT Beams or RT Brachy Application Setups module. If beams are referenced in the RT Fraction Scheme module, all such beams shall be included in the RT Beams module if it is present. Similarly, if brachy application setups are referenced in the RT Fraction Scheme module, all such setups shall be included in the RT Brachy Application Setups module if it is present. However, the RT Fraction

Scheme module can be used without the RT Beams or RT Brachy Application Setups modules if no beams or brachy application setups are referenced, and the RT Beams or RT Brachy Application Setups modules can also be used without the RT Fraction Scheme module if no fraction scheme information is available.

A.20.3.2 RT PRESCRIPTION MODULE

The RT Prescription module provides for the inclusion of dose prescription information pertinent to the complete plan, which may comprise several fraction schemes, themselves consisting of many beams.

A.20.3.3 RT TOLERANCE TABLES MODULE

The RT Tolerance Tables module provides information concerning machine tolerances as they apply to the whole treatment plan. Tolerances are applied by reference to a tolerance table within the RT Tolerance Tables module for beams contained within the RT Beams module.

A.20.3.4 RT PATIENT SETUP MODULE

The RT Patient Setup module provides information concerning patient setup parameters and fixation devices as they apply to the whole treatment plan. Patient setup information within the RT Patient Setup module is referenced by beams contained within the RT Beams module.

A.21 POSITRON EMISSION TOMOGRAPHY IMAGE INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.21.1 PET Image IOD Description

The Positron Emission Tomography (PET) Image Information Object Definition specifies an image that has been created by a Positron Tomograph imaging device, including dedicated PET cameras and Nuclear Medicine imaging devices operating in coincidence mode. This includes data created by external detection devices that create images of the distribution of administered radioactive materials, specifically positron emitters, in the body. Depending on the specific radiopharmaceuticals administered and the particular imaging procedure performed, problems involving changes in metabolism, function, or physiology can be investigated and various region pathologies can be studied. For these problems, quantitation of image data in absolute activity and physiological units is important. In addition, the PET Image IOD specifies attenuation (transmission) images used for correction and anatomical reference of emission images.

A.21.2 PET Image IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R model in Section A.1.2 of this part depicts those components of the DICOM Information Model that directly reference the PET Image IOD. The overlay IE, modality LUT IE, VOI LUT IE, and curve IE are not components of the PET Image IOD.

A.21.3 PET Image IOD Module Table

Table A.21.3-1 - PET IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
	PET Series	C.8.9.1	M
	PET Isotope	C.8.9.2	M
	PET Multi-gated Acquisition	C.8.9.3	C - Required if Series Type (0054,1000) Value 1 is GATED.
	NM/PET Patient Orientation	C.8.4.6	M
Frame of Reference	Frame of Reference	C.7.4.1	M
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Image	General Image	C.7.6.1	M
	Image Plane	C.7.6.2	M
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	PET Image	C.8.9.4	M
	Overlay Plane	C.9.2	U
	VOI LUT	C.11.2	U
	Acquisition Context	C.7.6.14	U
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.21.3.1 Acquisition Context Module

The Defined Template for Acquisition Context Sequence (0040,0555) is TID 3470.

A.22 STANDALONE PET CURVE INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.23 STORED PRINT INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.24 HARDCOPY GRAYSCALE IMAGE INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.25 HARDCOPY COLOR IMAGE INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.26 DIGITAL X-RAY IMAGE INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.26.1 DX Image IOD Description

The Digital X-Ray (DX) Image Information Object Definition specifies an image that has been created by a digital projection radiography imaging device.

Notes: 1. This includes but is not limited to: chest radiography, linear and multi-directional tomography, orthopantomography and skeletal radiography. Acquisition of image data may include but is not limited to: CCD-based sensors, stimulable phosphor imaging plates, amorphous selenium, scintillation based amorphous silicon and secondary capture of film-based images.

2. Specific IODs are defined for intra-oral radiography and mammography that further specialize the DX IOD.

A DX image shall consist of the result of a single X-Ray exposure, in order to ensure that the anatomical and orientation attributes are meaningful for the image, permitting safe annotation, appropriate image processing and appropriate dissemination.

Notes: 1. This requirement specifically deprecates the common film/screen and Computed Radiography practice of making multiple exposures on different areas of a cassette or plate by using lead occlusion between exposures. Such acquisitions could be separated and transformed into multiple DX images during an appropriate quality assurance step by an operator.

2. This requirement does not deprecate the acquisition of multiple paired structures during a single exposure, provided that they can be described by the relevant orientation Attributes. For example, an AP or PA projection of both hands side by side is typically obtained in a single exposure, and can be described by a Patient Orientation (0020,0020) of R\H or L\H since both hands are in the same traditional Anatomical Position. See PS 3.17 annex on Explanation of Patient Orientation.

The DX Image IOD is used in two SOP Classes as defined in PS 3.4 Storage Service Class, a SOP Class for storage of images intended for presentation, and a SOP Class for storage of images intended for further processing before presentation. These are distinguished by their SOP Class UID and by the Enumerated Value of the mandatory Attribute in the DX Series Module, Presentation Intent Type (0008,0068).

A.26.2 DX Image IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 depicts those components of the DICOM Information Model that directly reference the DX Image IOD.

A.26.3 DX Image IOD Module Table

Table A.26-1
DIGITAL X-RAY IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Specimen Identification	C.7.1.2	U
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
	DX Series	C.8.11.1	M
Frame of Reference	Frame of Reference	C.7.4.1	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Image	General Image	C.7.6.1	M
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Contrast/Bolus	C.7.6.4	U
	Display Shutter	C.7.6.11	U
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	Intervention	C.7.6.13	U
	DX Anatomy Imaged	C.8.11.2	M
	DX Image	C.8.11.3	M
	DX Detector	C.8.11.4	M
	X-Ray Collimator	C.8.7.3	U
	DX Positioning	C.8.11.5	U
	X-Ray Tomo Acquisition	C.8.7.7	U
	X-Ray Acquisition Dose	C.8.7.8	U
	X-Ray Generation	C.8.7.9	U
	X-Ray Filtration	C.8.7.10	U
	X-Ray Grid	C.8.7.11	U
	Overlay Plane	C.9.2	C - Required if graphic annotation is present - See A.26.4
	VOI LUT	C.11.2	C - Required if Presentation Intent Type (0008,0068) is FOR PRESENTATION. Shall not be present otherwise. See Note 8.
	Image Histogram	C.11.5	U

	Acquisition Context	C.7.6.14	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

Notes: 1. The Overlay Plane requirement is determined by the presence of “graphic annotation”. Graphic annotation includes user or machine drawn graphics or text (such as computer assisted diagnosis) to indicate regions of interest or descriptions. It specifically does not include patient or image identification or technique information that is defined in other Attributes of the IOD..

2. The Device and Intervention Modules are User optional, though it is desirable that, if present, they are stored by an SCP. It is recognized that in some cases the digital image acquisition system will not have a user interface or direct connection that allows acquisition of these parameters, even if device or therapy have been used.

3. The Frame of Reference, X-Ray Collimator, DX Positioning and DX Tomo Acquisition Modules are User optional, though it is desirable that, if present, they are stored by an SCP. It is recognized that in some cases the parameters of the mechanical devices used for collimation, positioning and tomography may not be available to a digital image acquisition system that is not integrated with the X-Ray generation and positioning system.

4. The Acquisition Context Module is mandatory, but may include only an empty (zero-length) Acquisition Context Sequence (0040,0555). Thus all Level 1 or 2 Storage SCPs will preserve any information present, and acquisition systems are not required to generate any content in that Sequence

5. Expectations on what an SCP of a SOP Class based on this IOD will store may be determined by evaluating a Conformance Statement of the form defined in PS 3.2 that specifies the level of conformance to the Storage SOP Classes as defined in PS 3.4. For example, Level 2 (Full) conformance indicates that all standard and optional attributes will be stored and may be accessed.

6. The Histogram Module may contain a single or multiple statistical representations of the pixel data used to derive the VOI LUT Module, or intended to be used to derive or replace the VOI LUT Module. The Histogram Module may contain statistics of a subset of the stored image pixel data (such as from a cropped area or region of interest that is not the full field of view) that are useful for deriving a better VOI LUT than might be derived from the statistics obtained from the entire stored pixel data.

7. The Specimen Identification Module is User optional, because although its Attributes may be helpful for identification and correlation with Pathology Information Systems, much specimen radiography, including forensic radiography, is performed with conventional clinical X-Ray equipment that is not likely to support specific specimen identification features.

8. The VOI LUT Module Attributes and behavior are further specialized in the DX Image Module.

9. The Curve Module was previously included in this IOD but has been retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.26.4 Overlay Plane Module

If the Overlay Plane Module is present, any Overlays defined in that Module shall store the overlay data in Overlay Data (60xx,3000), and not any unused high bits in Pixel Data (7FE0,0010).

A.27 DIGITAL MAMMOGRAPHY X-RAY IMAGE INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.27.1 Digital Mammography X-Ray Image IOD Description

The Digital Mammography X-Ray Image Information Object Definition specifies an image that has been created by a digital mammography projection radiography imaging device.

Note: It meets all of the requirements of the DX IOD in A.26 in addition to those specified in this section.

The Digital Mammography Image IOD is used in two SOP Classes as defined in PS 3.4 Storage Service Class, a SOP Class for storage of images intended for presentation, and a SOP Class for storage of images intended for further processing before presentation. These are distinguished by their SOP Class UID and by the Enumerated Value of the mandatory Attribute in the DX Series Module, Presentation Intent Type (0008,0068).

A.27.2 Digital Mammography X-Ray Image IOD Module Table

Table A.27-1
DIGITAL MAMMOGRAPHY X-RAY IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Specimen Identification	C.7.1.2	U
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
	DX Series	C.8.11.1	M
	Mammography Series	C.8.11.6	M
Frame of Reference	Frame of Reference	C.7.4.1	C - Required if multiple images are obtained without releasing breast compression
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Image	General Image	C.7.6.1	M
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Contrast/Bolus	C.7.6.4	U
	Display Shutter	C.7.6.11	U
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	Intervention	C.7.6.13	U
	DX Anatomy Imaged	C.8.11.2	M
	DX Image	C.8.11.3	M
	DX Detector	C.8.11.4	M
	X-Ray Collimator	C.8.7.3	U
	DX Positioning	C.8.11.5	U
	X-Ray Tomo Acquisition	C.8.7.7	U
	X-Ray Acquisition Dose	C.8.7.8	U
	X-Ray Generation	C.8.7.9	U
	X-Ray Filtration	C.8.7.10	U
	X-Ray Grid	C.8.7.11	U
	Mammography Image	C.8.11.7	M
	Overlay Plane	C.9.2	C - Required if graphic annotation is present - See A.27.3
	VOI LUT	C.11.2	C - Required if Presentation Intent Type (0008,0068) is FOR PRESENTATION. Shall

			not be present otherwise.
	Image Histogram	C.11.5	U
	Acquisition Context	C.7.6.14	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

Note: The Curve Module was previously included in this IOD but has been retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.27.3 Overlay Plane Module

If the Overlay Plane Module is present, any Overlays defined in that Module shall store the overlay data in Overlay Data (60xx,3000), and not any unused high bits in Pixel Data (7FE0,0010).

A.28 DIGITAL INTRA-ORAL X-RAY IMAGE INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.28.1 Digital Intra-oral X-Ray Image IOD Description

The Digital Intra-oral X-Ray Image Information Object Definition specifies an image that has been created by an intra-oral projection radiography imaging device.

Note: It meets all of the requirements of the DX IOD in A.26 in addition to those specified in this section.

The Digital Intra-oral X-Ray Image IOD is used in two SOP Classes as defined in PS 3.4 Storage Service Class, a SOP Class for storage of images intended for presentation, and a SOP Class for storage of images intended for further processing before presentation. These are distinguished by their SOP Class UID and by the Enumerated Value of the mandatory Attribute in the DX Series Module, Presentation Intent Type (0008,0068).

A.28.2 Digital Intra-oral X-Ray Image IOD Module Table

Table A.28-1
DIGITAL INTRA-ORAL X-RAY IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Specimen Identification	C.7.1.2	U
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
	DX Series	C.8.11.1	M
	Intra-oral Series	C.8.11.8	M
Frame of Reference	Frame of Reference	C.7.4.1	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Image	General Image	C.7.6.1	M
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Contrast/Bolus	C.7.6.4	U
	Display Shutter	C.7.6.11	U
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	Intervention	C.7.6.13	U
	DX Anatomy Imaged	C.8.11.2	M
	DX Image	C.8.11.3	M
	DX Detector	C.8.11.4	M
	X-Ray Collimator	C.8.7.3	U
	DX Positioning	C.8.11.5	U
	X-Ray Tomo Acquisition	C.8.7.7	U
	X-Ray Acquisition Dose	C.8.7.8	U
	X-Ray Generation	C.8.7.9	U
	X-Ray Filtration	C.8.7.10	U
	X-Ray Grid	C.8.7.11	U
	Intra-oral Image	C.8.11.9	M
	Overlay Plane	C.9.2	C - Required if graphic annotation is present - See

			A.28.3
	VOI LUT	C.11.2	C - Required if Presentation Intent Type (0008,0068) is FOR PRESENTATION. Shall not be present otherwise.
	Image Histogram	C.11.5	U
	Acquisition Context	C.7.6.14	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

Note: The Curve Module was previously included in this IOD but has been retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.28.3 Overlay Plane Module

If the Overlay Plane Module is present, any Overlays defined in that Module shall store the overlay data in Overlay Data (60xx,3000), and not any unused high bits in Pixel Data (7FE0,0010).

A.29 RT BEAMS TREATMENT RECORD INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.29.1 RT Beams Treatment Record IOD Description

The focus for this Radiotherapy Beams Treatment Record IOD (RT Beams Treatment Record IOD) is to address the requirements for transfer of treatment session reports generated by a treatment verification system during a course of external beam treatment, with optional cumulative summary information. It may also be used for transfer of treatment information during delivery.

A.29.2 RT Beams Treatment Record IOD entity-relationship model

The E-R model for the RT Beams Treatment Record IOD is illustrated in Figure A.29-1.

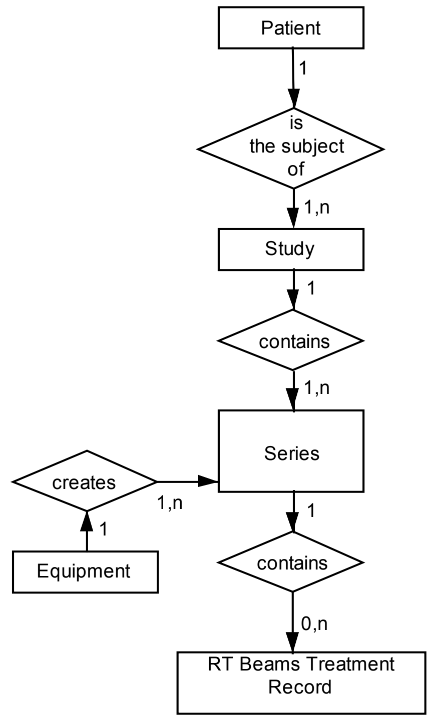


Figure A.29-1—DICOM RT Beams Treatment Record IOD information model

A.29.3 RT Beams Treatment Record IOD Module Table

Table A.29.3-1—RT Beams Treatment Record IOD Modules

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	RT Series	C.8.8.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Treatment Record	RT General Treatment Record	C.8.8.17	M
	RT Patient Setup	C.8.8.12	U
	RT Treatment Machine Record	C.8.8.18	M
	Measured Dose Reference Record	C.8.8.19	U
	Calculated Dose Reference Record	C.8.8.20	U
	RT Beams Session Record	C.8.8.21	M
	RT Treatment Summary Record	C.8.8.23	U
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

Note: The Curve Module was previously included in this IOD but has been retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.30 RT BRACHY TREATMENT RECORD INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.30.1 RT Brachy Treatment Record IOD Description

The focus for this Radiotherapy Brachy Treatment Record IOD (RT Brachy Treatment Record IOD) is to address the requirements for transfer of treatment session reports generated by a treatment verification system during a course of Brachytherapy treatment, with optional cumulative summary information. It may also be used for transfer of treatment information during delivery.

A.30.2 RT Brachy Treatment Record IOD entity-relationship model

The E-R model for the RT Brachy Treatment Record IOD is illustrated in Figure A.30-1.

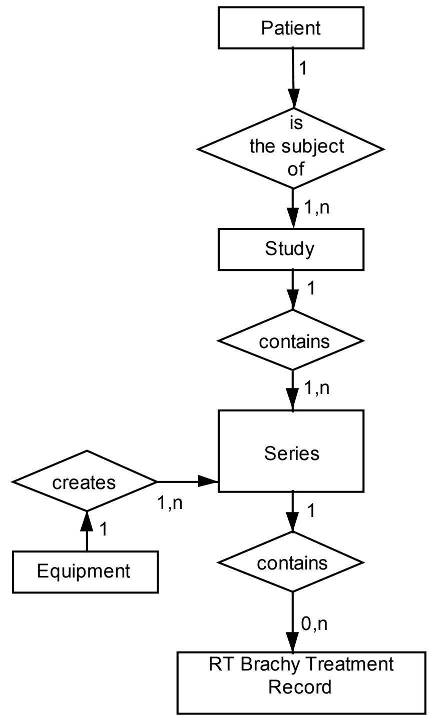


Figure A.30-1—DICOM RT Brachy Treatment Record IOD information model

A.30.3 RT Brachy Treatment Record IOD Module Table

Table A.30.3-1—RT Brachy Treatment Record IOD Modules

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	RT Series	C.8.8.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Treatment Record	RT General Treatment Record	C.8.8.17	M
	RT Patient Setup	C.8.8.12	U
	RT Treatment Machine Record	C.8.8.18	M
	Measured Dose Reference Record	C.8.8.19	U
	Calculated Dose Reference Record	C.8.8.20	U
	RT Brachy Session Record	C.8.8.22	M
	RT Treatment Summary Record	C.8.8.23	U
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

Note: The Curve Module was previously included in this IOD but has been retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.31 RT TREATMENT SUMMARY RECORD INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.31.1 RT Treatment Summary Record IOD Description

The focus for this Radiotherapy Treatment Summary Record IOD (RT Treatment Summary Record IOD) is to address the requirements for transfer of cumulative summary information, normally generated at the completion of a course of treatment.

A.31.2 RT Treatment Summary Record IOD entity-relationship model

The E-R model for the RT Treatment Summary Record IOD is illustrated in Figure A.31-1.

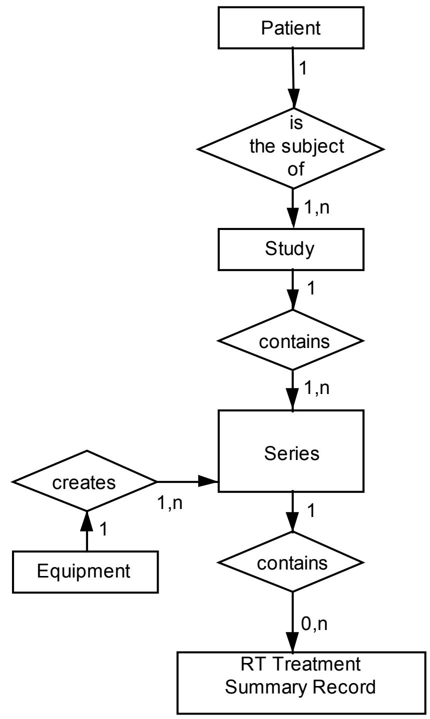


Figure A.31-1—DICOM RT Treatment Summary Record IOD information model

A.31.3 RT Treatment Summary Record IOD Module Table

Table A.31.3-1—RT Treatment Summary Record IOD Modules

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	RT Series	C.8.8.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Treatment Record	RT General Treatment Record	C.8.8.17	M
	RT Treatment Summary Record	C.8.8.23	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

Note: The Curve Module was previously included in this IOD but has been retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.32 VISIBLE LIGHT IMAGE INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITIONS

The Visible Light (VL) Image Information Object Definition (IOD) specifies images that are acquired by means of a camera or other sensors that are sensitive to visible or near-visible light.

Examples of types of equipment that create Visible Light Images include:

a. Rigid and flexible endoscopy equipment
b. Operation microscopes / colposcopes
c. Ophthalmology equipment
d. Digital or Video Cameras
e. Analysis microscopes

Separate IODs have been defined for specialized applications. Some support only single frame images, some support both single frame and multi-frame video images.

A.32.1 VL Endoscopic Image Information Object Definition

A.32.1.1 VL Endoscopic Image IOD Description

The VL Endoscopic Image IOD specifies the Attributes of Single-frame VL Endoscopic Images.

A.32.1.2 VL Endoscopic Image IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 of this Part depicts those components of the DICOM Information Model that directly reference the VL Endoscopic Image IOD, with exception of the VOI LUT, Frame of Reference and Modality LUT entities, which are not used. Additionally, Image in figure A.1.2 of PS3.3 represents a Single Frame image. A frame denotes a two-dimensional organization of pixels recorded as a single exposure. Table A.32.1-1 specifies the Modules of the VL Endoscopic Image IOD.

Notes: 1. An endoscopic procedure might include multiple series of single frame endoscopic images as well as one or more additional series of related diagnostic images. The procedure might involve multiple Performed Procedure Steps, multiple endoscopes, and multiple anatomic regions and might be supervised, performed, and/or interpreted by one or more individuals.

2. Several distinct diagnostic or therapeutic processes might occur during an endoscopic procedure. For example: Endoscopic examination of duodenal mucosa, biopsy, lavage, or biliary stone removal.

3. The Curve entity was previously include in the list of entities that are not used, but has been retired from DICOM. It is still not used in this IOD. See PS 3.3 2004.

Table A.32.1-1
VL ENDOSCOPIC IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Image	General Image	C.7.6.1	M
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Acquisition Context	C.7.6.14	M
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	VL Image	C.8.12.1	M
	Overlay Plane	C.9.2	U
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.32.1.3 VL Endoscopic Image IOD Content Constraints

A.32.1.3.1 Modality

The value of Modality (0008,0060) shall be ES.

A.32.2 VL Microscopic Image Information Object Definition

A.32.2.1 VL Microscopic Image IOD Description

The VL Microscopic Image IOD specifies the Attributes of Single-frame VL Microscopic Images. Slide Coordinates shall not be encoded with this IOD.

A.32.2.2 VL Microscopic Image IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 of this Part depicts those components of the DICOM Information Model that directly reference the VL Microscopic Image IOD, with exception of the VOI LUT, Frame of Reference and Modality LUT entities, which are not used. Additionally, Image in figure A.1.2 of PS3.3 represents a Single Frame image. A frame denotes a two-dimensional organization of pixels recorded as a single exposure. Table A.32.1-2 specifies the Modules of the VL Microscopic Image IOD.

Notes: 1. A microscopy procedure might include multiple series of single frame VL Microscopic Images as well as one or more additional series of related diagnostic images. The procedure might involve multiple Performed Procedure Steps, multiple microscopes, and multiple anatomic regions and might be supervised, performed, and/or interpreted by one or more individuals.

2. Several distinct diagnostic or therapeutic processes might occur during a single procedure. For example: Histologic staining of the same section with multiple special stains.

3. The Curve entity was previously include in the list of entities that are not used, but has been retired from DICOM. It is still not used in this IOD. See PS 3.3 2004.

Table A.32.1-2
VL MICROSCOPIC IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Specimen Identification	C.7.1.2	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Image	General Image	C.7.6.1	M
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Acquisition Context	C.7.6.14	M
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	VL Image	C.8.12.1	M
	Overlay Plane	C.9.2	U
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.32.2.3 VL Microscopic Image IOD Content Constraints

A.32.2.3.1 Modality

The value of Modality (0008,0060) shall be GM.

A.32.3 VL Slide-Coordinates Microscopic Image Information Object Definition

A.32.3.1 VL Slide-Coordinates Microscopic Image IOD Description

The VL Slide-Coordinates Microscopic Image IOD specifies the Attributes of VL Single-frame Slide-Coordinates Microscopic Images.

A.32.3.2 VL Slide-Coordinates Microscopic Image IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 of this Part depicts those components of the DICOM Information Model that directly reference the VL Slide-Coordinates Microscopic Image IOD, with exception of the VOI LUT, Frame of Reference and Modality LUT entities, which are not used. Additionally, Image in figure A.1.2 of PS3.3 represents a Single Frame image. A frame denotes a two-dimensional organization of pixels recorded as a single exposure. Table A.32.1-3 specifies the Modules of the VL Slide-Coordinates Microscopic Image IOD.

Notes: 1. A microscopic imaging procedure might include multiple series of single frame Microscopic Images as well as one or more additional series of related diagnostic images and might involve multiple Performed Procedure Steps, multiple Microscopes, and multiple anatomic regions. The procedure might be supervised, performed, and/or interpreted by one or more individuals.

2. Several distinct diagnostic or therapeutic processes might occur during a single procedure. For example: Histologic staining of the same section with multiple special stains.

3. The Curve entity was previously include in the list of entities that are not used, but has been retired from DICOM. It is still not used in this IOD. See PS 3.3 2004.

Table A.32.1-3
VL SLIDE-COORDINATES MICROSCOPIC IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Specimen Identification	C.7.1.2	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
	Frame of Reference	C.7.4.1	M
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Image	General Image	C.7.6.1	M
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Acquisition Context	C.7.6.14	M
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	VL Image	C.8.12.1	M
	Slide Coordinates	C.8.12.2	M
	Overlay Plane	C.9.2	U
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.32.3.3 VL Slide-Coordinates Microscopic Image IOD Content Constraints

A.32.3.3.1 Modality

The value of Modality (0008,0060) shall be SM.

A.32.4 VL Photographic Image Information Object Definition

A.32.4.1 VL Photographic Image IOD Description

The VL Photographic Image IOD specifies the attributes of VL Single-frame photographic Images.

A.32.4.2 VL Photographic Image IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 of this Part depicts those components of the DICOM Information Model that directly reference the VL Photographic Image IOD, with exception of the VOI LUT, Frame of Reference and Modality LUT entities, which are not used. Additionally, Image in figure A.1.2 of PS3.3 represents a Single Frame image. A frame denotes a two-dimensional organization of pixels recorded as a single exposure. Table A.32.4-1 specifies the Modules of the VL Photographic Image IOD.

Notes: 1. A VL photographic imaging procedure might include multiple series of single frame VL Photographic images as well as one or more additional series of related diagnostic images. The procedure might involve multiple Performed Procedure Steps, multiple cameras, and multiple anatomic regions and might be supervised, performed, and/or interpreted by one or more individuals.

2. Several distinct diagnostic or therapeutic processes might occur during a single procedure.

3. The Curve entity was previously include in the list of entities that are not used, but has been retired from DICOM. It is still not used in this IOD. See PS 3.3 2004.

Table A.32.4-1
VL PHOTOGRAPHIC IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Specimen Identification	C.7.1.2	C - Required if the Imaging Subject is a Specimen
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Image	General Image	C.7.6.1	M
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Acquisition Context	C.7.6.14	M
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	VL Image	C.8.12.1	M
	Overlay Plane	C.9.2	U
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.32.4.3 VL Photographic Image IOD Content Constraints

A.32.4.3.1 Modality

The value of Modality (0008,0060) shall be XC.

A.32.5 Video Endoscopic Image Information Object Definition

A.32.5.1 Video Endoscopic Image IOD Description

The Video Endoscopic Image IOD specifies the Attributes of Multi-frame Video Endoscopic Images.

A.32.5.2 Video Endoscopic Image IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 of this Part depicts those components of the DICOM Information Model that directly reference the Video Endoscopic Image IOD, with exception of the VOI LUT, and Modality LUT entities, which are not used. Table A.32.5-1 specifies the Modules of the Video Endoscopic Image IOD.

Notes: 1. An endoscopic procedure might include multiple series of video Endoscopic images as well as one or more additional series of: single frame VL Endoscopic images, Key Object Selection documents (for selecting clips from the video) and/or of related diagnostic images. The procedure might involve multiple Performed Procedure Steps, multiple endoscopes, and multiple anatomic regions and might be supervised, performed, and/or interpreted by one or more individuals.

2. Several distinct diagnostic or therapeutic processes might occur during an endoscopic procedure. For example: Endoscopic examination of duodenal mucosa, biopsy, lavage, or biliary stone removal.

3. The video may include audio channel(s) for acquiring patient voice or physiological sounds, healthcare professionals' commentary, or environmental sounds.

4. The Frame Pointers Module has not been included because the selection of relevant sub-sequence(s) is usually made in a second workflow step and stored into separate Key Object Selection Documents.

5. The Curve entity was previously include in the list of entities that are not used, but has been retired from DICOM. It is still not used in this IOD. See PS 3.3 2004.

Table A.32.5-1
VIDEO ENDOSCOPIC IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Image	General Image	C.7.6.1	M
	Cine	C.7.6.5	M
	Multi-frame	C.7.6.6	M
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Acquisition Context	C.7.6.14	M
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	VL Image	C.8.12.1	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.32.5.3 Video Endoscopic Image IOD Content Constraints

A.32.5.3.1 Modality

The value of Modality (0008,0060) shall be ES.

Note: The use of a single value for Modality recognizes the fact that the same acquisition equipment is often used for different purposes (e.g. laparoscopy and colonoscopy). This means that Modality is not useful to distinguish one type of endoscopy from another when browsing a collection of studies. Therefore, the use of Procedure Code Sequence (0008,1032) and Anatomic Region Sequence (0008,2218) in the image instances and in the query response is recommended, though gathering sufficient information to populate these attributes in an unscheduled workflow environment (i.e., in the absence of Modality Worklist) may require operator intervention.

A.32.5.3.2 Image Related Data Encoding

The Modality LUT, VOI LUT, Graphic Annotation and Overlay Modules shall not be present.

Note: The Curve Module was previously include in the list of Modules that shall not be present, but has been retired from DICOM. It is still not permitted to be present. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.32.5.3.3 Anatomic Region Sequence

The Defined Context Group for Anatomic Region Sequence (0008,2218) shall be CID 4040.

A.32.6 Video Microscopic Image Information Object Definition

A.32.6.1 Video Microscopic Image IOD Description

The Video Microscopic Image IOD specifies the Attributes of Video Microscopic Images. Slide Coordinates shall not be encoded with this IOD.

A.32.6.2 Video Microscopic Image IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 of this Part depicts those components of the DICOM Information Model that directly reference the Video Microscopic Image IOD, with exception of the VOI LUT, and Modality LUT entities, which are not used. Table A.32.6-1 specifies the Modules of the Video Microscopic Image IOD.

Notes:

1. A microscopy procedure might include multiple series of video Microscopic images as well as one or more additional series of: single frame VL Microscopic images, Key Object Selection documents (for selecting clips from the video) and/or of related diagnostic images. The procedure might involve multiple Performed Procedure Steps, multiple microscopes, and multiple anatomic regions and might be supervised, performed, and/or interpreted by one or more individuals.

2. Several distinct diagnostic or therapeutic processes might occur during a single procedure. For example: Histologic staining of the same section with multiple special stains.

3. The video may include audio channel for acquiring patient voice or physiological sounds, healthcare professionals comment, or environment sounds.

4. The Frame Pointers Module has not been included because the selection of relevant sub-sequence(s) is usually made in a second step and stored into separate Key Object Selection Documents.

5. The Curve entity was previously include in the list of entities that are not used, but has been retired from DICOM. It is still not used in this IOD. See PS 3.3 2004.

Table A.32.6-1
VIDEO MICROSCOPIC IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Specimen Identification	C.7.1.2	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Image	General Image	C.7.6.1	M
	Cine	C.7.6.5	M
	Multi-frame	C.7.6.6	M
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Acquisition Context	C.7.6.14	M
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	VL Image	C.8.12.1	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.32.6.3 Video Microscopic Image IOD Content Constraints

A.32.6.3.1 Modality

The value of Modality (0008,0060) shall be GM.

A.32.6.3.2 Image Related Data Encoding

The Modality LUT, VOI LUT, Graphic Annotation and Overlay Modules shall not be present.

Note: The Curve Module was previously include in the list of Modules that shall not be present, but has been retired from DICOM. It is still not permitted to be present. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.32.7 Video Photographic Image Information Object Definition

A.32.7.1 Video Photographic Image IOD Description

The Video Photographic Image IOD specifies the attributes of VL Multi-frame photographic Images.

A.32.7.2 Video Photographic Image IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 of this Part depicts those components of the DICOM Information Model that directly reference the Video Photographic Image IOD, with exception of the VOI LUT and Modality LUT entities, which are not used. Table A.32.7-1 specifies the Modules of the Video Photographic Image IOD.

Notes: 1. A VL photographic imaging procedure might include multiple series of video Photographic images as well as one or more additional series of: single frame VL Photographic images, Key Object Selection documents (for selecting clips from the video) and/or of related diagnostic images. The procedure might involve multiple Performed Procedure Steps, multiple cameras, and multiple anatomic regions and might be supervised, performed, and/or interpreted by one or more individuals.

2. Several distinct diagnostic or therapeutic processes might occur during a single procedure.

3. The video may include audio channel for acquiring patient voice or physiological sounds, healthcare professionals comment, or environment sounds.

4. The Frame Pointers Module has not been included because the selection of relevant sub-sequence(s) is usually made in a second step and stored into separate Key Object Selection Documents.

5. The Curve entity was previously include in the list of entities that are not used, but has been retired from DICOM. It is still not used in this IOD. See PS 3.3 2004.

Table A.32.7-1
VIDEO PHOTOGRAPHIC IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Specimen Identification	C.7.1.2	C - Required if the Imaging Subject is a Specimen
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Image	General Image	C.7.6.1	M
	Cine	C.7.6.5	M
	Multi-frame	C.7.6.6	M
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Acquisition Context	C.7.6.14	M
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	VL Image	C.8.12.1	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.32.7.3 Video Photographic Image IOD Content Constraints

A.32.7.3.1 Modality

The value of Modality (0008,0060) shall be XC.

A.32.7.3.2 Image Related Data Encoding

The Modality LUT, VOI LUT, Graphic Annotation and Overlay Modules shall not be present.

Note: The Curve Module was previously include in the list of Modules that shall not be present, but has been retired from DICOM. It is still not permitted to be present. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.33 SOFTCOPY PRESENTATION STATE INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITIONS

A.33.1 Grayscale Softcopy Presentation State Information Object Definition

A.33.1.1 Grayscale Softcopy Presentation State IOD Description

The Grayscale Softcopy Presentation State Information Object Definition (IOD) specifies information that may be used to present (display) images that are referenced from within the IOD.

It includes capabilities for specifying:

a. the output grayscale space in P-Values
b. grayscale contrast transformations including modality and VOI LUT
c. mask subtraction for multi-frame images
d. selection of the area of the image to display and whether to rotate or flip it
e. image and display relative annotations, including graphics, text and overlays

A.33.1.2 Grayscale Softcopy Presentation State IOD Module Table

Table A.33.1-1
Grayscale Softcopy Presentation State IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
	Presentation Series	C.11.9	M
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Presentation State	Presentation State Identification	C.11.10	M
	Presentation State Relationship	C.11.11	M
	Presentation State Shutter	C.11.12	M
	Presentation State Mask	C.11.13	M
	Mask	C.7.6.10	C - Required if the referenced image(s) are multi-frame and are to be subtracted
	Display Shutter	C.7.6.11	C - Required if a Display Shutter is to be applied to referenced image(s) and the Bitmap Display Shutter Module is not present
	Bitmap Display Shutter	C.7.6.15	C - Required if a Display Shutter is to be applied to referenced image(s) and the Display Shutter Module is not present
	Overlay Plane	C.9.2	C - Required if Overlay is to be applied to referenced image(s) or the Bitmap Display Shutter Module is present
	Overlay Activation	C.11.7	C- Required if referenced image contains overlay data that is to be displayed
	Displayed Area	C.10.4	M
	Graphic Annotation	C.10.5	C - Required if Graphic Annotations are to be applied to referenced image(s)
	Spatial Transformation	C.10.6	C - Required if rotation or flipping are to be applied to referenced image(s)

	Graphic Layer	C.10.7	C - Required if Graphic Annotations or Overlays or Curves are to be applied to referenced image(s)
	Modality LUT	C.11.1	C - Required if a Modality LUT is to be applied to referenced image(s)
	Softcopy VOI LUT	C.11.8	C - Required if a VOI LUT is to be applied to referenced image(s)
	Softcopy Presentation LUT	C.11.6	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

In the Grayscale Softcopy Presentation State IOD, the Presentation Series Module specializes some Attributes of the General Series Module, the Presentation State Mask Module specializes some Attributes of the Mask Module, and the Presentation State Shutter Module specializes some Attributes of the Bitmap Display Shutter and Display Shutter Modules.

Notes: 1. Subtraction between different images is not supported.

2. The Mask Module condition implies that it need not be supported by an SCP that supports presentation states only for single frame image storage SOP Classes, or instances of multi-frame image Storage SOP Classes that contain only one frame.

3. The Display Shutter may be used to darken image areas that surround important information and exclude extraneous bright areas that increase glare and ambient lighting impairing image interpretation. For example, unexposed areas in a CR image might be obscured using the Display Shutter, rather than permanently replacing image pixels in those areas.

4. This IOD does not support the storage of a multi-frame overlay in the IOD itself, but does support selective activation of multi-frame overlays within the referenced images via the Overlay Activation Module.

A.33.2 Color Softcopy Presentation State Information Object Definition

A.33.2.1 Color Softcopy Presentation State IOD Description

The Color Softcopy Presentation State Information Object Definition (IOD) specifies information that may be used to present (display) color images that are referenced from within the IOD.

It includes capabilities for specifying:

a. the output color space in PCS-Values
b. color transformations from device-dependent color to PCS-Values using an ICC profile
c. selection of the area of the image to display and whether to rotate or flip it
d. image and display relative annotations, including graphics, text and overlays

A.33.2.2 Color Softcopy Presentation State IOD Module Table

Table A.33.2-1
Color Softcopy Presentation State IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
	Presentation Series	C.11.9	M
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Presentation State	Presentation State Identification	C.11.10	M
	Presentation State Relationship	C.11.11	M
	Presentation State Shutter	C.11.12	M
	Display Shutter	C.7.6.11	C – Required if a Display Shutter is to be applied to referenced image(s) and the Bitmap Display Shutter Module is not present
	Bitmap Display Shutter	C.7.6.15	C – Required if a Display Shutter is to be applied to referenced image(s) and the Display Shutter Module is not present
	Overlay Plane	C.9.2	C – Required if Overlay is to be applied to referenced image(s) or the Bitmap Display Shutter Module is present
	Overlay Activation	C.11.7	C- Required if referenced image contains overlay data which is to be displayed
	Displayed Area	C.10.4	M
	Graphic Annotation	C.10.5	C – Required if Graphic Annotations are to be applied to referenced image(s)
	Spatial Transformation	C.10.6	C – Required if rotation, flipping or magnification are to be applied to referenced image(s)
	Graphic Layer	C.10.7	C – Required if Graphic Annotations or Overlays or Curves are to be applied to referenced image(s)

	ICC Profile	C.11.15	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

In the Color Softcopy Presentation State IOD, the Presentation Series Module specializes some Attributes of the General Series Module, and the Presentation State Module specializes some Attributes of the Bitmap Display Shutter and Display Shutter Modules.

A.33.3 Pseudo-Color Softcopy Presentation State Information Object Definition

A.33.3.1 Pseudo-Color Softcopy Presentation State IOD Description

The Pseudo-Color Softcopy Presentation State Information Object Definition (IOD) specifies information that may be used to present (display) images that are referenced from within the IOD.

It includes capabilities for specifying:

a. the output color space in PCS-Values
b. grayscale contrast transformations including modality and VOI LUT
c. a color palette to map the transformed grayscale values into pseudo-color
d. mask subtraction for multi-frame images
e. selection of the area of the image to display and whether to rotate or flip it
f. image and display relative annotations, including graphics, text and overlays

A.33.3.2 Pseudo-Color Softcopy Presentation State IOD Module Table

Table A.33.3-1
Pseudo-Color Softcopy Presentation State IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
	Presentation Series	C.11.9	M
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Presentation State	Presentation State Identification	C.11.10	M
	Presentation State Relationship	C.11.11	M
	Presentation State Shutter	C.11.12	M
	Presentation State Mask	C.11.13	M
	Mask	C.7.6.10	C - Required if the referenced image(s) are multi-frame and are to be subtracted
	Display Shutter	C.7.6.11	C - Required if a Display Shutter is to be applied to referenced image(s) and the Bitmap Display Shutter Module is not present
	Bitmap Display Shutter	C.7.6.15	C - Required if a Display Shutter is to be applied to referenced image(s) and the Display Shutter Module is not present
	Overlay Plane	C.9.2	C - Required if Overlay is to be applied to referenced image(s) or the Bitmap Display Shutter Module is present
	Overlay Activation	C.11.7	C- Required if referenced image contains overlay data that is to be displayed
	Displayed Area	C.10.4	M
	Graphic Annotation	C.10.5	C - Required if Graphic Annotations are to be applied to referenced image(s)
	Spatial Transformation	C.10.6	C - Required if rotation or flipping are to be applied to referenced image(s)
	Graphic Layer	C.10.7	C - Required if Graphic

			Annotations or Overlays or Curves are to be applied to referenced image(s)
	Modality LUT	C.11.1	C - Required if a Modality LUT is to be applied to referenced image(s)
	Softcopy VOI LUT	C.11.8	C - Required if a VOI LUT is to be applied to referenced image(s)
	Palette Color LUT	C.7.9	M
	ICC Profile	C.11.15	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

In the Pseudo-Color Softcopy Presentation State IOD, the Presentation Series Module specializes some Attributes of the General Series Module, the Presentation State Mask Module specializes some Attributes of the Mask Module, and the Presentation State Shutter Module specializes some Attributes of the Bitmap Display Shutter and Display Shutter Modules.

The Presentation LUT Module shall not be present in this IOD.

A.33.4 Blending Softcopy Presentation State Information Object Definition

A.33.4.1 Blending Softcopy Presentation State IOD Description

The Blending Softcopy Presentation State Information Object Definition (IOD) specifies information that may be used to blend two sets of images that are referenced from within the IOD for the purpose of presentation (display).

It includes capabilities for specifying:

a. the output color space in PCS-Values

b. grayscale contrast transformations including modality and VOI LUT for both the underlying and superimposed image sets

c. a color palette to map the transformed grayscale values of the superimposed image set into pseudo-color

d. selection of the area of the blended images to display and whether to rotate or flip it

e. image and display relative annotations, including graphics, text and overlays

A.33.4.2 Blending Softcopy Presentation State IOD Module Table

Table A.33.4-1
Blending Softcopy Presentation State IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
	Presentation Series	C.11.9	M
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Presentation State	Presentation State Identification	C.11.10	M
	Presentation State Blending	C.11.14	M
	Displayed Area	C.10.4	M
	Graphic Annotation	C.10.5	C - Required if Graphic Annotations are to be applied
	Spatial Transformation	C.10.6	C - Required if rotation or flipping are to be applied
	Graphic Layer	C.10.7	C - Required if Graphic Annotation Module is present
	Palette Color LUT	C.7.9	M
	ICC Profile	C.11.15	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

In the Blending Softcopy Presentation State IOD, the Presentation Series Module specializes some Attributes of the General Series Module.

The Presentation LUT Module shall not be present in this IOD.

The Modality LUT and Softcopy VOI LUT Module shall not be present in this IOD, since the Presentation State Blending Module subsumes their function.

The Palette Color LUT Module describes the color mapping to be used for the superimposed image set.

The Displayed Area and Graphic Annotation Modules specifically identify those images or frames to which they apply, and may include images or frames from the underlying or superimposed set.

The Spatial Transformation Module describes any necessary spatial transformation of the image to be rendered after the blending operation.

The Overlay Plane and Overlay/Curve Activation Modules shall not be present, and any overlays present in the referenced images shall not be displayed.

The Display Shutter and Bitmap Display Shutter Modules shall not be present, since the underlying image geometry may differ between the two sets of images.

The ICC Profile Module shall always be present. If the color space to be used is not calibrated (i.e., a device-specific ICC Input Profile is not available), then an ICC Input Profile specifying a well-known space (such as sRGB) may be specified.

A.34 WAVEFORM INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITIONS

A.34.1 Waveform IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The Waveform E-R Model is shown in Figure A.34-1. This model applies to a variety of Waveform IODs.

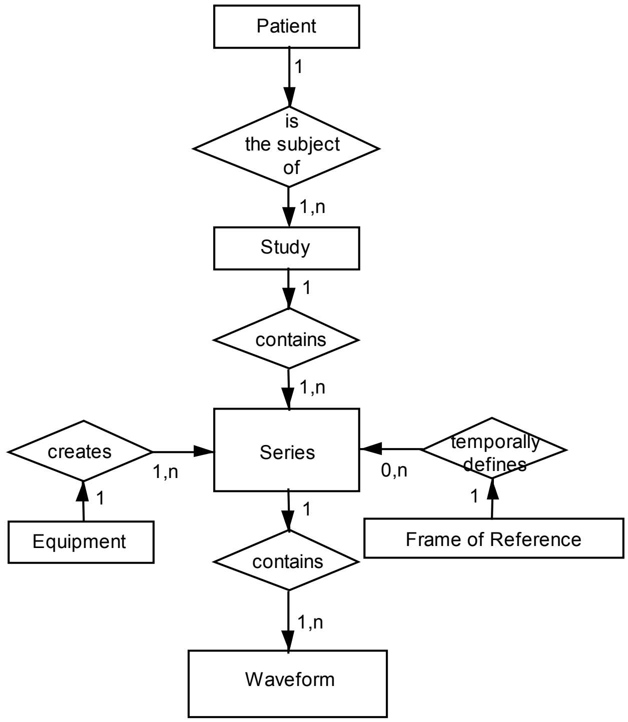


Figure A.34-1
DICOM Waveform IOD Information Model

A.34.2 Basic Voice Audio Information Object Definition

A.34.2.1 Basic Voice Audio IOD Description

The Basic Voice Audio IOD is the specification of a digitized sound that has been acquired or created by an audio modality or by an audio acquisition function within an imaging modality. A typical use is report dictation.

A.34.2.2 Basic Voice Audio IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.34.1 of this Part applies to the Basic Voice Audio IOD.

A.34.2.3 Basic Voice Audio IOD Module Table

Table A.34.2-1
Basic Voice Audio IOD Modules

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Frame of Reference	Synchronization	C.7.4.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Waveform	Waveform Identification	C.10.8	M
	Waveform	C.10.9	M
	Acquisition Context	C.7.6.14	M
	Waveform Annotation	C.10.10	U
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.34.2.4 Basic Voice Audio IOD Content Constraints

A.34.2.4.1 Modality

The value of Modality (0008,0060) shall be AU.

A.34.2.4.2 Waveform Sequence

The number of Waveform Sequence (5400,0100) Items shall be one.

A.34.2.4.3 Number of Waveform Channels

The value of the Number of Waveform Channels (003A,0005) in the Waveform Sequence Item shall be 1 or 2.

A.34.2.4.4 Sampling Frequency

The value of the Sampling Frequency (003A,001A) in the Waveform Sequence Item shall be 8000.

A.34.2.4.5 Waveform Sample Interpretation

The value of the Waveform Sample Interpretation (5400,1006) in the Waveform Sequence Item shall be UB, MB, or AB.

A.34.3 12-Lead Electrocardiogram Information Object Definition

A.34.3.1 12-Lead ECG IOD Description

The 12-Lead Electrocardiogram (12-Lead ECG) IOD is the specification of digitized electrical signals from the patient cardiac conduction system collected on the body surface, which has been acquired by an ECG modality or by an ECG acquisition function within an imaging modality.

A.34.3.2 12-Lead ECG IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.34.1 of this Part applies to the 12-Lead ECG IOD.

A.34.3.3 12-Lead ECG IOD Module Table

Table A.34.3-1
12-Lead ECG IOD Modules

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Frame of Reference	Synchronization	C.7.4.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Waveform	Waveform Identification	C.10.8	M
	Waveform	C.10.9	M
	Acquisition Context	C.7.6.14	M
	Waveform Annotation	C.10.10	C – required if annotation is present
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.34.3.4 12-Lead ECG IOD Content Constraints

A.34.3.4.1 Modality

The value of Modality (0008,0060) shall be ECG.

A.34.3.4.2 Acquisition Context Module

For SOP Instances of ECG acquired in the cardiac catheterization lab, the Defined Template for Acquisition Context Sequence (0040,0555) is TID 3403. For routine resting or stress ECG, the Defined Template for Acquisition Context Sequence (0040,0555) is TID 3401.

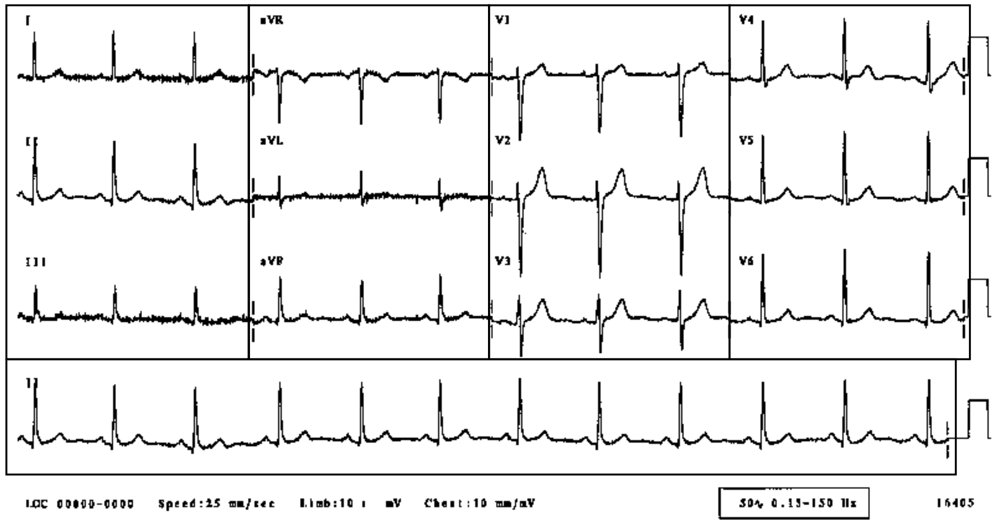
A.34.3.4.3 Waveform Sequence

The number of Waveform Sequence (5400,0100) Items shall be between 1 and 5, inclusive.

A.34.3.4.4 Number of Waveform Channels

The value of the Number of Waveform Channels (003A,0005) in each Waveform Sequence Item shall be between 1 and 13, inclusive. The total number of channels encoded across all Items shall not exceed 13.

Note: This specialization provides for up to five Waveform Sequence Items (multiplex groups), with a total of 13 channels. This allows, for instance, encoding of four sets of three simultaneously recorded channels, the sets being acquired sequentially, plus one continuous channel for the duration of the other sets. This can be used to emulate the behavior of classical 12-lead ECG strip chart recorders with 4x3 presentation, plus a continuous lead II recording (see figure).



Multiplex Group 1 – leads I, II, III; time offset 0; duration 2.5 s
Multiplex Group 2 – leads aVR, aVL, aVF; time offset 2.5 s; duration 2.5 s
Multiplex Group 3 – leads V1, V2, V3; time offset 5.0 s; duration 2.5 s
Multiplex Group 4 – leads V4, V5, V6; time offset 7.5 s; duration 2.5 s
Multiplex Group 5 – lead II; time offset 0; duration 9.84 s

FIGURE A.34.3-1 12-Lead ECG Example (Informative)

A.34.3.4.5 Number of Waveform Samples

The value of the Number of Waveform Samples (003A,0010) in each Waveform Sequence Item shall be less than or equal to 16384.

Note: This allows over 16 seconds per channel at the maximum sampling frequency; if longer recordings are required, the General ECG IOD may be used.

A.34.3.4.6 Sampling Frequency

The value of the Sampling Frequency (003A,001A) in each Waveform Sequence Item shall be between 200 and 1000, inclusive.

A.34.3.4.7 Channel Source

The Baseline Context ID for the Channel Source Sequence (003A,0208) in each Channel Definition Sequence Item shall be CID 3001.

A.34.3.4.8 Waveform Sample Interpretation

The value of the Waveform Sample Interpretation (5400,1006) in each Waveform Sequence Item shall be SS.

A.34.3.4.9 Waveform Annotation Module

The Defined Context ID for the Concept Name Code Sequence (0040,A043) in the Waveform Annotation Sequence (0040,B020) shall be CID 3335. This Context Group supports the annotation of suppressed pacemaker spikes in the ECG waveform.

A.34.4 General Electrocardiogram Information Object Definition

A.34.4.1 General ECG IOD Description

The General Electrocardiogram (ECG) IOD is the specification of digitized electrical signals from the patient cardiac conduction system collected on the body surface, which has been acquired by an ECG modality or by an ECG acquisition function within an imaging modality.

A.34.4.2 General ECG IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.34.1 of this Part applies to the General ECG IOD.

A.34.4.3 General ECG IOD Module Table

Table A.34.4-1
General ECG IOD Modules

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Frame of Reference	Synchronization	C.7.4.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Waveform	Waveform Identification	C.10.8	M
	Waveform	C.10.9	M
	Acquisition Context	C.7.6.14	M
	Waveform Annotation	C.10.10	C – required if annotation is present
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.34.4.4 General ECG IOD Content Constraints

A.34.4.4.1 Modality

The value of Modality (0008,0060) shall be ECG.

A.34.4.4.2 Waveform Sequence

The number of Waveform Sequence (5400,0100) Items shall be between 1 and 4, inclusive.

A.34.4.4.3 Number of Waveform Channels

The value of the Number of Waveform Channels (003A,0005) in each Waveform Sequence Item shall be between 1 and 24, inclusive.

A.34.4.4.4 Sampling Frequency

The value of the Sampling Frequency (003A,001A) in each Waveform Sequence Item shall be between 200 and 1000, inclusive.

A.34.4.4.5 Channel Source

The Defined Context ID for the Channel Source Sequence (003A,0208) in each Channel Definition Sequence Item shall be CID 3001.

Note: Terms from other Context Groups may also be used for extended specification of the Channel Source, as declared in the Conformance Statement for an application (see PS3.2).

A.34.4.4.6 Waveform Sample Interpretation

The value of the Waveform Sample Interpretation (5400,1006) in each Waveform Sequence Item shall be SS.

A.34.4.4.7 Waveform Annotation Module

The Defined Context ID for the Concept Name Code Sequence (0040,A043) in the Waveform Annotation Sequence (0040,B020) shall be CID 3335. This Context Group supports the annotation of suppressed pacemaker spikes in the ECG waveform.

A.34.5 Ambulatory Electrocardiogram Information Object Definition

A.34.5.1 Ambulatory ECG IOD Description

The Ambulatory Electrocardiogram (ECG) IOD is the specification of digitized electrical signals from the patient cardiac conduction system collected on the body surface, which has been acquired by an ambulatory electrocardiography (Holter) device.

Note: The duration of acquisition represented in one SOP Instance is not specifically constrained, and is limited only by the maximum size of the Waveform Data attribute.

A.34.5.2 Ambulatory ECG IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.34.1 of this Part applies to the Ambulatory ECG IOD.

A.34.5.3 Ambulatory ECG IOD Module Table

Table A.34.5-1
Ambulatory ECG IOD Modules

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Frame of Reference	Synchronization	C.7.4.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Waveform	Waveform Identification	C.10.8	M
	Waveform	C.10.9	M
	Acquisition Context	C.7.6.14	U
	Waveform Annotation	C.10.10	C – required if annotation is present
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.34.5.4 Ambulatory ECG IOD Content Constraints

A.34.5.4.1 Modality

The value of Modality (0008,0060) shall be ECG.

A.34.5.4.2 Waveform Sequence

The number of Waveform Sequence (5400,0100) Items shall be be 1.

A.34.5.4.3 Number of Waveform Channels

The value of the Number of Waveform Channels (003A,0005) in the Waveform Sequence Item shall be between 1 and 12, inclusive.

A.34.5.4.5 Sampling Frequency

The value of the Sampling Frequency (003A,001A) in each Waveform Sequence Item shall be between 50 and 1000, inclusive.

A.34.5.4.6 Channel Source

The Defined Context ID for the Channel Source Sequence (003A,0208) in each Channel Definition Sequence Item shall be CID 3001.

A.34.5.4.7 Waveform Sample Interpretation

The value of the Waveform Sample Interpretation (5400,1006) in each Waveform Sequence Item shall be SB or SS.

A.34.6 Hemodynamic Information Object Definition

A.34.6.1 Hemodynamic IOD Description

The Hemodynamic IOD is the specification of digitized pressure, electrical, and other signals from the patient circulatory system, which has been acquired by a hemodynamic modality.

Note: The duration of acquisition represented in one SOP Instance is not specifically constrained, and is limited only by the maximum size of the Waveform Data attribute.

A.34.6.2 Hemodynamic IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.34.1 of this Part applies to the Hemodynamic IOD.

A.34.6.3 Hemodynamic IOD Module Table

Table A.34.6-1
Hemodynamic IOD Modules

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Frame of Reference	Synchronization	C.7.4.2	C – Required if Waveform Originality (003A,0004) is ORIGINAL; may be present otherwise
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Waveform	Waveform Identification	C.10.8	M
	Waveform	C.10.9	M
	Acquisition Context	C.7.6.14	M
	Waveform Annotation	C.10.10	C – required if annotation is present
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.34.6.4 Hemodynamic IOD Content Constraints

A.34.6.4.1 Modality

The value of Modality (0008,0060) shall be HD.

A.34.6.4.2 Acquisition Context Module

The Defined Template for Acquisition Context Sequence (0040,0555) is TID 3403.

A.34.6.4.3 Waveform Sequence

The number of Waveform Sequence (5400,0100) Items shall be between 1 and 4, inclusive.

A.34.6.4.4 Number of Waveform Channels

The value of the Number of Waveform Channels (003A,0005) in each Waveform Sequence Item shall be between 1 and 8, inclusive.

A.34.6.4.5 Sampling Frequency

The value of the Sampling Frequency (003A,001A) in each Waveform Sequence Item shall be less than or equal to 400.

A.34.6.4.7 Channel Source

The Defined Context ID for the Channel Source Sequence (003A,0208) in each Channel Definition Sequence Item shall be CID 3003, CID 3001 for surface ECG channels, or CID 3090 for time synchronization channels. The Channel Source Code Value shall encode at minimum the metric (measured physical quality) and function (measurement or stimulus); unless otherwise specifically encoded, the default function shall be “measurement”.

The Channel Source Modifiers Sequence (003A,0209) in each Channel Definition Sequence Item shall be used to specify additional qualifiers of the semantics of the waveform source, including technique and anatomic location, if not encoded by the Channel Source Code Value. Technique, with terms from Defined Context ID 3241, shall be specified in Channel Source Modifiers Sequence Items prior to the cardiac anatomic location(s), with terms from Defined Context ID 3010, 3014, and 3019. If technique is pullback, the sequence of anatomic locations shall be specified in ordered Channel Source Modifiers Sequence Items (e.g., initial, transitional, and final locations).

Note: Terms from other Context Groups may also be used for extended specification of the Channel Source, as declared in the Conformance Statement for an application (see PS3.2).

A.34.6.4.8 Waveform Sample Interpretation

The value of the Waveform Sample Interpretation (5400,1006) in each Waveform Sequence Item shall be SS.

A.34.6.4.9 Waveform Annotation Module

The Defined Context ID for the Concept Name Code Sequence (0040,A043) in the Waveform Annotation Sequence (0040,B020) shall be CID 3337.

A.34.7 Basic Cardiac Electrophysiology Information Object Definition

A.34.7.1 Basic Cardiac EP IOD Description

The Basic Cardiac Electrophysiology IOD is the specification of digitized electrical signals from the patient cardiac conduction system collected in the heart, which has been acquired by an EP modality.

Note: The duration of acquisition represented in one SOP Instance is not specifically constrained, and is limited only by the maximum size of the Waveform Data attribute.

A.34.7.2 Basic Cardiac EP IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.34.1 of this Part applies to the Cardiac EP IOD.

A.34.7.3 Basic Cardiac EP IOD Module Table

Table A.34.7-1
Basic Cardiac EP IOD Modules

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Frame of Reference	Synchronization	C.7.4.2	C – Required if Waveform Originality (003A,0004) value is ORIGINAL; may be present otherwise
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Waveform	Waveform Identification	C.10.8	M
	Waveform	C.10.9	M
	Acquisition Context	C.7.6.14	M
	Waveform Annotation	C.10.10	C – required if annotation is present
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.34.7.4 Basic Cardiac EP IOD Content Constraints

A.34.7.4.1 Modality

The value of Modality (0008,0060) shall be EPS.

A.34.7.4.2 Acquisition Context Module

The Defined Template for Acquisition Context Sequence (0040,0555) is TID 3450.

A.34.7.4.3 Waveform Sequence

The number of Waveform Sequence (5400,0100) Items shall be between 1 and 4, inclusive.

A.34.7.4.4 Sampling Frequency

The value of the Sampling Frequency (003A,001A) in each Waveform Sequence Item shall be less than or equal to 2000.

A.34.7.4.5 Channel Source

The Defined Context ID for the Channel Source Sequence (003A,0208) in each Channel Definition Sequence Item shall be CID 3011. The Channel Source Code Value shall encode at minimum the anatomic location of the channel source.

The Channel Source Modifiers Sequence (003A,0209) in each Channel Definition Sequence Item shall be used to specify additional qualifiers of the semantics of the waveform source, including metric (measured physical quality), function (measurement or stimulus), and technique from Defined Context ID 3240, and anatomic location qualifiers from Defined Context ID 3019, if not encoded by the Channel Source Code Value. If not explicitly encoded, the default metric and function shall be “voltage measurement”. If a differential signal is used, that shall be indicated in a Modifier Item, and the positive pole and negative pole identified in the subsequent two modifiers.

Notes: 1. Terms from other Context Groups may also be used for extended specification of the Channel Source, as declared in the Conformance Statement for an application (see PS3.2).

2. A differential signal from the high right atrium , where electrode 1 on the catheter is the positive pole and electrode 3 the negative pole, could be specified by coded terms meaning:
Channel Source: “High Right Atrium”
Channel Source Modifiers: “Differential”, “E1”, “E3”
(Implicit default modifier: “Voltage Measurement”)

A.34.7.4.6 Waveform Sample Interpretation

The value of the Waveform Sample Interpretation (5400,1006) in each Waveform Sequence Item shall be SS.

A.34.7.4.7 Waveform Annotation Module

The Defined Context ID for the Concept Name Code Sequence (0040,A043) in the Waveform Annotation Sequence (0040,B020) shall be CID 3339.

A.35 STRUCTURED REPORT DOCUMENT INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITIONS

A.35.1 Basic Text SR Information Object Definition

A.35.1.1 Basic Text SR Information Object Description

The Basic Text Structured Report (SR) IOD is intended for the representation of reports with minimal usage of coded entries (typically used in Document Title and headings) and a hierarchical tree of headings under which may appear text and subheadings. Reference to SOP Instances (e.g. images or waveforms or other SR Documents) is restricted to appear at the level of the leaves of this primarily textual tree. This structure simplifies the encoding of conventional textual reports as SR Documents, as well as their rendering.

A.35.1.2 Basic Text SR IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 of this Part applies to the Basic Text SR IOD. The Frame of Reference IE, and the IEs at the level of the Image IE in Section A.1.2 are not components of the Basic Text SR IOD. Table A.35.1-1 specifies the Modules of the Basic Text SR IOD.

A.35.1.3 Basic Text SR IOD Module Table

Table A.35.3-1 specifies the Modules of the Basic Text SR IOD.

Table A.35.1-1
BASIC TEXT SR IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Specimen Identification	C.7.1.2	C - Required if the Observation Subject is a Specimen
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	SR Document Series	C.17.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Document	SR Document General	C.17.2	M
	SR Document Content	C.17.3	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.35.1.3.1 Basic Text SR IOD Content Constraints

A.35.1.3.1.1 Value Type

Value Type (0040,A040) in the Content Sequence (0040,A730) of the SR Document Content Module is constrained to the following Enumerated Values (see Table C.17.3-7 for Value Type definitions):

TEXT
CODE
DATETIME
DATE
TIME
UIDREF
PNAME
COMPOSITE
IMAGE
WAVEFORM
CONTAINER

A.35.1.3.1.2 Relationship Constraints

Relationships between Content Items in the content of this IOD shall be conveyed in the by-value mode. See Table C.17.3-8 for Relationship Type definitions.

Note: Relationships by-reference are forbidden. Therefore, Referenced Content Item Identifier (0040,DB73) is not present in any of the Content Items within the SR Document Content Module.

Table A.35.1-2 specifies the relationship constraints of this IOD.

Table A.35.1-2
RELATIONSHIP CONTENT CONSTRAINTS FOR BASIC TEXT SR IOD

Source Value Type	Relationship Type (Enumerated Values)	Target Value Type
CONTAINER	CONTAINS	TEXT, CODE, DATETIME, DATE, TIME, UIDREF, PNAME, COMPOSITE[1], IMAGE[1], WAVEFORM[1], CONTAINER
CONTAINER	HAS OBS CONTEXT	TEXT, CODE, DATETIME, DATE, TIME, UIDREF, PNAME, COMPOSITE[1]
CONTAINER, IMAGE[1], WAVEFORM[1], COMPOSITE[1]	HAS ACQ CONTEXT	TEXT, CODE, DATETIME, DATE, TIME, UIDREF, PNAME
any type	HAS CONCEPT MOD	TEXT, CODE[2]
TEXT	HAS PROPERTIES	TEXT, CODE, DATETIME, DATE, TIME, UIDREF, PNAME, IMAGE[1], WAVEFORM[1], COMPOSITE[1]
TEXT	INFERRED FROM	TEXT, CODE, DATETIME, DATE, TIME, UIDREF, PNAME, IMAGE[1], WAVEFORM[1], COMPOSITE[1]

Note: 1. Which SOP Classes the IMAGE, WAVEFORM or COMPOSITE Value Type may refer to, is documented in the Conformance Statement for an application (see PS 3.2 and PS 3.4).

2. The HAS CONCEPT MOD relationship is used to modify the meaning of the Concept Name of a Source Content Item, for example to provide a more descriptive explanation, a different language translation, or to define a post-coordinated concept.

A.35.2 Enhanced SR Information Object Definition

A.35.2.1 Enhanced SR Information Object Description

The Enhanced Structured Report (SR) IOD is a superset of the Basic Text SR IOD. It is also intended for the representation of reports with minimal usage of coded entries (typically Document Title and headings) and a hierarchical tree of headings under which may appear text and subheadings. In addition, it supports the use of numeric measurements with coded measurement names and units. Reference to SOP Instances (e.g. images or waveforms or SR Documents) is restricted to appear at the level of the leaves of this primarily textual tree. It enhances references to SOP Instances with spatial regions of interest (points, lines, circle, ellipse, etc.) and temporal regions of interest.

A.35.2.2 Enhanced SR IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 of this Part applies to the Enhanced SR IOD. The Frame of Reference IE, and the IEs at the level of the Image IE in Section A.1.2 are not components of the Enhanced SR IOD. Table A.35.2-1 specifies the Modules of the Enhanced SR IOD.

A.35.2.3 Enhanced SR IOD Module Table

Table A.35.2-1
ENHANCED SR IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Specimen Identification	C.7.1.2	C - Required if the Observation Subject is a Specimen
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	SR Document Series	C.17.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Document	SR Document General	C.17.2	M
	SR Document Content	C.17.3	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.35.2.3.1 Enhanced SR IOD Content Constraints

A.35.2.3.1.1 Value Type

Value Type (0040,A040) in the Content Sequence (0040,A730) of the SR Document Content Module is constrained to the following Enumerated Values (see Table C.17.3-7 for Value Type definitions):

TEXT
CODE
NUM
DATETIME
DATE
TIME
UIDREF
PNAME
SCOORD
TCOORD
COMPOSITE
IMAGE
WAVEFORM
CONTAINER

A.35.2.3.1.2 Relationship Constraints

Relationships between Content Items in the content of this IOD shall be conveyed in the by-value mode. See Table C.17.3-8 for Relationship Type definitions.

Note: Relationships by-reference are forbidden. Therefore, Referenced Content Item Identifier (0040,DB73) is not present in any of the Content Items within the SR Document Content Module.

Table A.35.2-2 specifies the relationship constraints of this IOD.

Table A.35.2-2
RELATIONSHIP CONTENT CONSTRAINTS FOR ENHANCED SR IOD

Source Value Type	Relationship Type (Enumerated Values)	Target Value Type
CONTAINER	CONTAINS	TEXT, CODE, NUM, DATETIME, DATE, TIME, UIDREF, PNAME, SCOORD, TCOORD, COMPOSITE[1], IMAGE[1], WAVEFORM[1], CONTAINER
CONTAINER	HAS OBS CONTEXT	TEXT, CODE, NUM, DATETIME, DATE, TIME, UIDREF, PNAME, COMPOSITE[1]
CONTAINER, IMAGE[1], WAVEFORM[1], COMPOSITE[1], NUM	HAS ACQ CONTEXT	TEXT, CODE, NUM, DATETIME, DATE, TIME, UIDREF, PNAME
any type	HAS CONCEPT MOD	TEXT, CODE[2]
TEXT, CODE, NUM	HAS PROPERTIES	TEXT, CODE, NUM, DATETIME, DATE, TIME, UIDREF, PNAME, IMAGE[1], WAVEFORM[1], COMPOSITE[1], SCOORD, TCOORD
TEXT, CODE, NUM	INFERRED FROM	TEXT, CODE, NUM, DATETIME, DATE, TIME, UIDREF, PNAME, IMAGE[1], WAVEFORM[1], COMPOSITE[1], SCOORD, TCOORD
SCOORD	SELECTED FROM	IMAGE[1]
TCOORD	SELECTED FROM	SCOORD, IMAGE[1], WAVEFORM[1]

Note: 1. Which SOP Classes the IMAGE, WAVEFORM or COMPOSITE Value Type may refer to, is documented in the Conformance Statement for an application (see PS 3.2 and PS 3.4).

2. The HAS CONCEPT MOD relationship is used to modify the meaning of the Concept Name of a Source Content Item, for example to provide a more descriptive explanation, a different language translation, or to define a post-coordinated concept.

A.35.3 Comprehensive SR Information Object Definition

A.35.3.1 Comprehensive SR Information Object Description

The Comprehensive SR IOD is a superset of the Basic Text SR IOD and the Enhanced SR IOD, which specifies a class of documents, the content of which may include textual and a variety of coded information, numeric measurement values, references to the SOP Instances and spatial or temporal regions of interest within such SOP Instances. Relationships by-reference are enabled between Content Items.

A.35.3.2 Comprehensive SR IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 of this Part applies to the Comprehensive SR IOD. The IEs at the level of the Image IE in Section A.1.2 are not components of the Comprehensive SR IOD. Table A.35.3-1 specifies the Modules of the Comprehensive SR IOD.

A.35.3.3 Comprehensive SR IOD Module Table

Table A.35.3-1
COMPREHENSIVE SR IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Specimen Identification	C.7.1.2	C - Required if the Observation Subject is a Specimen
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	SR Document Series	C.17.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Frame of Reference	Frame of Reference	C.7.4.1	U
	Synchronization	C.7.4.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Document	SR Document General	C.17.2	M
	SR Document Content	C.17.3	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.35.3.3.1 Comprehensive SR IOD Content Constraints

A.35.3.3.1.1 Value Type

Value Type (0040,A040) in the Content Sequence (0040,A730) of the SR Document Content Module is constrained to the following Enumerated Values (see Table C.17.3-7 for Value Type definitions):

TEXT
CODE
NUM
DATETIME
DATE
TIME
UIDREF
PNAME
SCOORD
TCOORD
COMPOSITE
IMAGE
WAVEFORM
CONTAINER

A.35.3.3.1.2 Relationship Constraints

Relationships between content items in the content of this IOD may be conveyed either by-value or by-reference. Table A.35.3-2 specifies the relationship constraints of this IOD. See Table C.17.3-8 for Relationship Type definitions.

Table A.35.3-2
RELATIONSHIP CONTENT CONSTRAINTS FOR COMPREHENSIVE SR IOD

Source Value Type	Relationship Type (Enumerated Values)	Target Value Type
CONTAINER	CONTAINS	TEXT, CODE, NUM, DATETIME, DATE, TIME, UIDREF, PNAME, SCOORD, TCOORD, COMPOSITE[1], IMAGE[1], WAVEFORM[1], CONTAINER (See below).
TEXT, CODE, NUM, CONTAINER	HAS OBS CONTEXT	TEXT, CODE, NUM, DATETIME, DATE, TIME, UIDREF, PNAME, COMPOSITE[1]
CONTAINER, IMAGE[1], WAVEFORM[1], COMPOSITE[1], NUM	HAS ACQ CONTEXT	TEXT, CODE, NUM, DATETIME, DATE, TIME, UIDREF, PNAME, CONTAINER.
any type	HAS CONCEPT MOD	TEXT, CODE[2]
TEXT, CODE, NUM	HAS PROPERTIES	TEXT, CODE, NUM, DATETIME, DATE, TIME, UIDREF, PNAME, IMAGE[1], WAVEFORM[1], COMPOSITE[1], SCOORD, TCOORD, CONTAINER.
TEXT, CODE, NUM	INFERRED FROM	TEXT, CODE, NUM, DATETIME, DATE, TIME, UIDREF, PNAME, IMAGE[1], WAVEFORM[1], COMPOSITE[1], SCOORD, TCOORD, CONTAINER.
SCOORD	SELECTED FROM	IMAGE[1]
TCOORD	SELECTED FROM	SCOORD, IMAGE[1], WAVEFORM[1]

Note: 1. Which SOP Classes the IMAGE, WAVEFORM or COMPOSITE Value Type may refer to, is documented in the Conformance Statement for an application (see PS 3.2 and PS 3.4).

2. The HAS CONCEPT MOD relationship is used to modify the meaning of the Concept Name of a Source Content Item, for example to provide a more descriptive explanation, a different language translation, or to define a post-coordinated concept.

The HAS CONCEPT MOD relationship shall not be conveyed by-reference.

For relationships conveyed by-reference, Content Items with a Value Type of CONTAINER shall only be the target of relationships other than CONTAINS.

That is, CONTAINS relationships with CONTAINERS may not span by-reference links; containment of directly nested CONTAINERS shall only be conveyed by value.

Note: 1. It is legal to have a CONTAINS relationship by-reference to a target that is not a CONTAINER, such as a TEXT or CODE, which itself has immediate or distant descendants that are CONTAINERS, which may then subsequently have CONTAINS relationships by value with CONTAINERS.

2. The intent of this constraint is to prevent the need arising to follow by-reference links to build up a strict CONTAINS hierarchy of CONTAINERS that are used as headings and subheadings of an outline. Otherwise the outline hierarchy could become a more general graph than a tree,

which would be awkward to render. The intent is not to prohibit by-reference relationships to other parts of the tree that may be part of an outline, which is why only the CONTAINS relationship is forbidden in this constraint.

3. These constraints only apply to by-reference relationships. There is no intent to prohibit CONTAINERS from being the target value types of by-value relationships other than CONTAINS. That is why CONTAINERs are indicated as valid target value types of HAS PROPERTIES, INFERRED FROM and HAS ACQ CONTEXT in Table A.35.3-2.

Relationships by-reference to ancestor Content Items are forbidden in this IOD to prevent loops.

A.35.4 Key Object Selection Document Information Object Definition

A.35.4.1 Key Object Selection Document Information Object Description

The Key Object Selection Document IOD is intended for flagging one or more significant images, waveforms, or other composite SOP Instances.

A.35.4.2 Key Object Selection Document IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 of this Part applies to the Key Object Selection Document IOD. Table A.35.1-1 specifies the Modules of the Key Object Selection Document IOD.

A.35.4.3 Key Object Selection Document IOD Module Table

Table A.35.4-1 specifies the Modules of the Key Object Selection Document IOD.

Table A.35.4-1
KEY OBJECT SELECTION DOCUMENT IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Specimen Identification	C.7.1.2	C - Required if the Observation Subject is a Specimen
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	Key Object Document Series	C.17.6.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Document	Key Object Document	C.17.6.2	M
	SR Document Content	C.17.3	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.35.4.3.1 Key Object Selection Document IOD Content Constraints

A.35.4.3.1.1 Value Type

Value Type (0040,A040) in the Content Sequence (0040,A730) of the SR Document Content Module is constrained to the following Enumerated Values (see Table C.17.3-7 for Value Type definitions):

TEXT
CODE

UIDREF
PNAME
IMAGE
WAVEFORM
COMPOSITE
CONTAINER

A.35.4.3.1.2 Relationship Constraints

Relationships between Content Items in the content of this IOD shall be conveyed in the by-value mode. See Table C.17.3-8 for Relationship Type definitions.

Note: Relationships by-reference are forbidden. Therefore, Referenced Content Item Identifier (0040,DB73) is not present in any of the Content Items within the SR Document Content Module.

Table A.35.4-2 specifies the relationship constraints of this IOD.

Table A.35.4-2
RELATIONSHIP CONTENT CONSTRAINTS FOR KEY OBJECT SELECTION DOCUMENT IOD

Source Value Type	Relationship Type (Enumerated Values)	Target Value Type
CONTAINER	CONTAINS	TEXT, IMAGE, WAVEFORM, COMPOSITE
CONTAINER	HAS OBS CONTEXT	TEXT, CODE, UIDREF, PNAME
CONTAINER	HAS CONCEPT MOD	CODE

A.35.4.3.1.3 Template Constraints

The document shall be constructed from TID 2010 Key Object Selection invoked at the root node.

A.35.5 Mammography CAD SR Information Object Definition

A.35.5.1 Mammography CAD SR Information Object Description

The Mammography CAD SR IOD is used to convey the detection and analysis results of a mammography CAD device. The content may include textual and a variety of coded information, numeric measurement values, references to the SOP Instances, and spatial regions of interest within such SOP Instances. Relationships by-reference are enabled between Content Items.

A.35.5.2 Mammography CAD SR IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 of this Part applies to the Mammography CAD SR IOD. The Frame of Reference IE, and the IEs at the level of the Image IE in Section A.1.2 are not components of the Mammography CAD SR IOD. Table A.35.5-1 specifies the Modules of the Mammography CAD SR IOD.

A.35.5.3 Mammography CAD SR IOD Module Table

Table A.35.5-1 specifies the Modules of the Mammography CAD SR IOD.

Table A.35.5-1
MAMMOGRAPHY CAD SR IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Specimen Identification	C.7.1.2	C - Required if the Observation Subject is a Specimen
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	SR Document Series	C.17.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Document	SR Document General	C.17.2	M
	SR Document Content	C.17.3	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.35.5.3.1 Mammography CAD SR IOD Content Constraints

A.35.5.3.1.1 Template Constraints

- The document shall be constructed from TID 4000 Mammography CAD Document Root invoked at the root node.
- When a content item sub-tree from a prior document is duplicated by-value, its observation context shall be defined by TID 1001, Observation Context, and its subordinate templates, as described in PS 3.16, DCMR Templates.

Note: All Template and Context Group definitions are located in PS 3.16, DICOM Content Mapping Resource, in the Annexes titled DCMR Templates and DCMR Context Groups, respectively.

A.35.5.3.1.2 Value Type

Value Type (0040,A040) in the Content Sequence (0040,A730) of the SR Document Content Module is constrained to the following Enumerated Values (see Table C.17.3-7 for Value Type definitions):

TEXT
CODE
NUM
DATE
TIME
PNAME
SCOORD
COMPOSITE
IMAGE
CONTAINER

A.35.5.3.1.3 Relationship Constraints

The Mammography CAD SR IOD makes extensive use of by-reference INFERRED FROM, by-reference HAS PROPERTIES and by-reference SELECTED FROM relationships. Other relationships by-reference are forbidden. Table A.35.5-2 specifies the relationship constraints of this IOD. See Table C.17.3-8 for Relationship Type definitions.

Table A.35.5-2
RELATIONSHIP CONTENT CONSTRAINTS FOR MAMMOGRAPHY CAD SR IOD

Source Value Type	Relationship Type (Enumerated Values)	Target Value Type
CONTAINER	CONTAINS	CODE, NUM, SCOORD, IMAGE[1], CONTAINER.
TEXT, CODE, NUM, CONTAINER	HAS OBS CONTEXT	TEXT, CODE, NUM, DATE, TIME, PNAME, COMPOSITE[1].
IMAGE	HAS ACQ CONTEXT	TEXT, CODE, DATE, TIME, NUM.
CONTAINER, CODE	HAS CONCEPT MOD	TEXT, CODE[2].
TEXT, CODE	HAS PROPERTIES	CONTAINER, TEXT, CODE, NUM, DATE, IMAGE[1], SCOORD.
CODE, NUM	INFERRED FROM	CODE, NUM, SCOORD, CONTAINER.
SCOORD	SELECTED FROM	IMAGE[1].

Note: 1. Which SOP Classes the IMAGE or COMPOSITE Value Type may refer to, is documented in the Conformance Statement for an application (see PS 3.2 and PS 3.4).

2. The HAS CONCEPT MOD relationship is used to modify the meaning of the Concept Name of a Source Content Item, for example to provide a more descriptive explanation, a different language translation, or to define a post-coordinated concept.

A.35.6 Chest CAD SR Information Object Definition

A.35.6.1 Chest CAD SR Information Object Description

The Chest CAD SR IOD is used to convey the detection and analysis results of a chest CAD device. The content may include textual and a variety of coded information, numeric measurement values, references to the SOP Instances, and spatial regions of interest within such SOP Instances. Relationships by-reference are enabled between Content Items.

A.35.6.2 Chest CAD SR IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 of this Part applies to the Chest CAD SR IOD. The Frame of Reference IE, and the IEs at the level of the Image IE in Section A.1.2 are not components of the Chest CAD SR IOD. Table A.35.6-1 specifies the Modules of the Chest CAD SR IOD.

A.35.6.3 Chest CAD SR IOD Module Table

Table A.35.6-1 specifies the Modules of the Chest CAD SR IOD.

Table A.35.6-1
CHEST CAD SR IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Specimen Identification	C.7.1.2	C - Required if the Observation Subject is a Specimen
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	SR Document Series	C.17.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Document	SR Document General	C.17.2	M
	SR Document Content	C.17.3	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.35.6.3.1 Chest CAD SR IOD Content Constraints

A.35.6.3.1.1 Template Constraints

- The document shall be constructed from TID 4100 Chest CAD Document Root invoked at the root node.
- When a content item sub-tree from a prior document is duplicated by-value, its observation context shall be defined by TID 1001, Observation Context, and its subordinate templates, as described in PS 3.16, DCMR Templates.

Note: All Template and Context Group definitions are located in PS 3.16, DICOM Content Mapping Resource, in the Annexes titled DCMR Templates and DCMR Context Groups, respectively.

A.35.6.3.1.2 Value Type

Value Type (0040,A040) in the Content Sequence (0040,A730) of the SR Document Content Module is constrained to the following Enumerated Values (see Table C.17.3-7 for Value Type definitions):

TEXT
CODE
NUM
DATE
TIME
PNAME
SCOORD
TCOORD
COMPOSITE
IMAGE

CONTAINER
UIDREF
WAVEFORM

A.35.6.3.1.3 Relationship Constraints

The Chest CAD SR IOD makes use of by-reference INFERRED FROM, by-reference SELECTED FROM, and by-reference HAS PROPERTIES relationships. Other relationships by-reference are forbidden. Table A.35.6-2 specifies the relationship constraints of this IOD. See Table C.17.3-8 for Relationship Type definitions.

Table A.35.6-2
RELATIONSHIP CONTENT CONSTRAINTS FOR CHEST CAD SR IOD

Source Value Type	Relationship Type (Enumerated Values)	Target Value Type
CONTAINER	CONTAINS	CODE, NUM, IMAGE[1], CONTAINER.
TEXT, CODE, NUM, CONTAINER	HAS OBS CONTEXT	TEXT, CODE, NUM, DATE, TIME, PNAME, UIDREF, COMPOSITE[1].
IMAGE, WAVEFORM	HAS ACQ CONTEXT	TEXT, CODE, DATE, TIME, NUM.
CONTAINER, CODE, COMPOSITE	HAS CONCEPT MOD	TEXT, CODE[2].
TEXT, CODE, NUM	HAS PROPERTIES	CONTAINER, TEXT, CODE, NUM, DATE, IMAGE[1], WAVEFORM[1], SCOORD, TCOORD.
CODE, NUM	INFERRED FROM	CODE, NUM, IMAGE[1], WAVEFORM[1], SCOORD, TCOORD, CONTAINER.
SCOORD	SELECTED FROM	IMAGE[1].
TCOORD	SELECTED FROM	SCOORD, IMAGE[1], WAVEFORM[1].

Note: 1. Which SOP Classes the IMAGE or COMPOSITE Value Type may refer to, is documented in the Conformance Statement for an application (see PS 3.2 and PS 3.4).

2. The HAS CONCEPT MOD relationship is used to modify the meaning of the Concept Name of a Source Content Item, for example to provide a more descriptive explanation, a different language translation, or to define a post-coordinated concept.

A.35.7 Procedure Log Information Object Definition

A.35.7.1 Procedure Log Information Object Description

The Procedure Log IOD is intended for the representation of reports or logs of time-stamped events occurring during an extended diagnostic or interventional procedure, typical of the cardiac catheterization lab.

A.35.7.2 Procedure Log IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 of this Part applies to the Procedure Log IOD. Table A.35.7-1 specifies the Modules of the Procedure Log IOD.

Note: Unlike some other SR IODs, the Frame of Reference IE is critical to the synchronized time stamping of events in the Procedure Log IOD and to multi-modality coordination.

A.35.7.3 Procedure Log IOD Module Table

Table A.35.7-1
PROCEDURE LOG IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	SR Document Series	C.17.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Frame of Reference	Synchronization	C.7.4.2	M
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Document	SR Document General	C.17.2	M
	SR Document Content	C.17.3	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.35.7.3.1 Procedure Log IOD Content Constraints

A.35.7.3.1.1 Template

The document may be constructed from Baseline TID 3001 "Procedure Log" (defined in PS3.16) invoked at the root node.

Note: This template defines a container (the root) with subsidiary content items, each of which represents a single procedure log entry. There is a defined recording observer (the person responsible for recording the log, generally a technician or nurse). The log entries follow a canonical model of a coded log entry type (the concept name of the content item), the value associated with the concept name as one of the SR Value Types, and optionally a subsidiary free text comment and/or an identifier of the author or device source of the log entry (which may be other than the recording observer).

A.35.7.3.1.2 Observation DateTime

Each Item in the Content Sequence (0040,A730) of the SR Document Content Module that is a target of a "CONTAINS" relationship from the root node, i.e., the first level Log Content Items, shall include the Observation DateTime (0040,A032) as a Type 1 attribute. This attribute shall represent the datetime at which the event recorded in the Content Item occurred, not the time at which the Item was recorded.

The first level Procedure Log Content Items in the Content Sequence shall be strictly ordered by monotonically increasing Observation DateTime values.

The Observation DateTime shall be specified to a precision of one second or finer.

A.35.7.3.1.3 Value Type

Value Type (0040,A040) in the Content Sequence (0040,A730) of the SR Document Content Module is constrained to the following Enumerated Values (see Table C.17-7 for Value Type definitions):

CODE
CONTAINER
COMPOSITE
DATETIME
DATE
IMAGE
NUM
PNAME
TEXT
TIME
UIDREF
WAVEFORM

A.35.7.3.1.4 Relationship Constraints

Relationships between Content Items in the content of this IOD shall be conveyed in the by-value mode. See Table C.17-8 for Relationship Type definitions.

Notes: 1. Relationships by-reference are forbidden. Therefore, Referenced Content Item Identifier (0040,DB73) is not present in any of the Content Items within the SR Document Content Module.
2. CONTAINERs are not permitted as a target of any relationship.

Table A.35.7-2 specifies the relationship constraints of this IOD.

Table A.35.7-2
RELATIONSHIP CONTENT CONSTRAINTS FOR PROCEDURE LOG IOD

Source Value Type	Relationship Type (Enumerated Values)	Target Value Type
CONTAINER	CONTAINS	TEXT, CODE, NUM, PNAME, COMPOSITE, IMAGE, WAVEFORM
any type	HAS OBS CONTEXT	TEXT, CODE, NUM, DATETIME, UIDREF, PNAME
CONTAINER, IMAGE, WAVEFORM, COMPOSITE	HAS ACQ CONTEXT	TEXT, CODE, NUM, DATETIME, DATE, TIME, UIDREF, PNAME
any type	HAS CONCEPT MOD	TEXT, CODE
any type (except CONTAINER)	HAS PROPERTIES	TEXT, CODE, NUM, DATETIME, UIDREF, PNAME
TEXT, CODE, NUM	INFERRED FROM	IMAGE, WAVEFORM, COMPOSITE

A.35.8 X-Ray Radiation Dose SR Information Object Definition

A.35.8.1 X-Ray Radiation Dose SR Information Object Description

The X-Ray Radiation Dose SR IOD is used to convey the exposure characteristics and dose from X-rays generated by imaging devices.

Note: Therapeutic dose is reported in the RT Dose IOD.

A.35.8.2 X-Ray Radiation Dose SR IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 of this Part applies to the X-Ray Radiation Dose SR IOD. Table A.35.8-1 specifies the Modules of the X-Ray Radiation Dose SR IOD.

A.35.8.3 X-Ray Radiation Dose SR IOD Module Table

Table A.35.8-1
X-RAY RADIATION DOSE SR IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	SR Document Series	C.17.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Frame of Reference	Synchronization	C.7.4.2	C - shall be present if system time is synchronized to an external reference. May be present otherwise.
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Document	SR Document General	C.17.2	M
	SR Document Content	C.17.3	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.35.8.3.1 X-Ray Radiation Dose SR IOD Content Constraints

A.35.8.3.1.1 Template

The document may be constructed from Baseline TID 10001 "Projection X-Ray Radiation Dose Report" (defined in PS3.16) invoked at the root node.

Note: This IOD maybe used with other Templates defined for Dose Reporting. Such other Templates maybe specialized for specific modalities or future dose measurement techniques.

A.35.8.3.1.2 Value Type

Value Type (0040,A040) in the Content Sequence (0040,A730) of the SR Document Content Module is constrained to the following Enumerated Values (see Table C.17-7 for Value Type definitions):

TEXT
CODE
NUM
DATETIME
UIDREF
PNAME
COMPOSITE
IMAGE
CONTAINER

A.35.8.3.1.3 Relationship Constraints

Relationships between content items in the content of this IOD may be conveyed by-value. Table A.35.8-2 specifies the relationship constraints of this IOD. See Table C.17.3-2 for Relationship Type definitions.

Table A.35.8-2
RELATIONSHIP CONTENT CONSTRAINTS FOR X-RAY RADIATION DOSE SR IOD

Source Value Type	Relationship Type (Enumerated Values)	Target Value Type
CONTAINER	CONTAINS	TEXT, CODE, NUM, DATETIME, UIDREF, PNAME, IMAGE, COMPOSITE, CONTAINER
TEXT, CODE, NUM	HAS OBS CONTEXT	TEXT, CODE, NUM, DATETIME, UIDREF, PNAME, COMPOSITE
CONTAINER, IMAGE, COMPOSITE	HAS ACQ CONTEXT	TEXT, CODE, NUM, DATETIME, UIDREF, PNAME, CONTAINER.
any type	HAS CONCEPT MOD	TEXT, CODE
TEXT, CODE, NUM	HAS PROPERTIES	TEXT, CODE, NUM, DATETIME, UIDREF, PNAME, IMAGE, COMPOSITE, CONTAINER.
TEXT, CODE, NUM	INFERRED FROM	TEXT, CODE, NUM, DATETIME, UIDREF, IMAGE, COMPOSITE, CONTAINER.

Note: The SOP Classes to which an IMAGE or COMPOSITE Value Type may refer, is documented in the Conformance Statement for an application (see PS 3.2 and PS 3.4).

A.36 ENHANCED MR INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITIONS

A.36.1 Relationship between Enhanced MR IODs

Figure A.36-1 illustrates the relationships between the Enhanced MR IODs described in Section A.36.

Source Image Sequence (0008,2112), Referenced Image Sequence (0008,1140) and Referenced Raw Data Sequence (0008,9121) provide references between SOP Instances.

Note: Many attributes have names and descriptions that include the terms “pixel” and “image”. Although MR spectroscopy is not pixel based, some of these “pixel” and “image” attributes encode concepts that are still relevant for this technique. Where such attributes appear in the MR Spectroscopy IOD, it may be helpful to consider the term “pixel” to be equivalent to a spectroscopy “voxel”, and the term “image” to be equivalent to “MR Spectroscopy SOP Instance”.

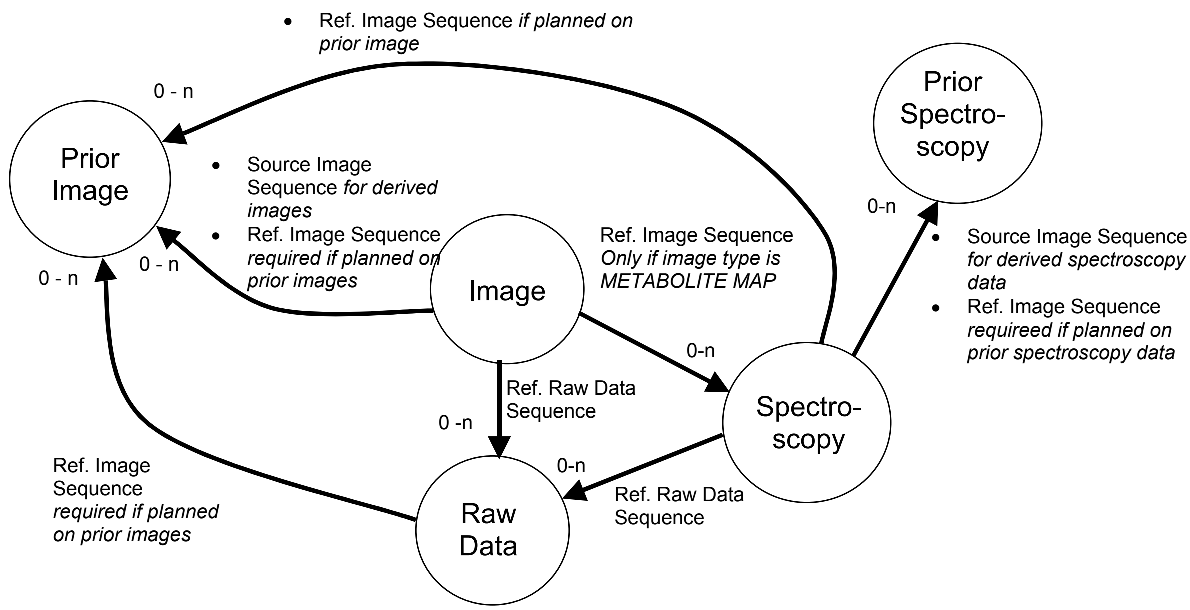


Figure A.36-1
Relationships between Enhanced MR IODs

A.36.2 Enhanced MR Image Information Object Definition

A.36.2.1 Enhanced MR Image IOD Description

The Enhanced Magnetic Resonance (MR) Image Information Object Definition (IOD) specifies an image, which has been created by a magnetic resonance device.

A.36.2.2 Enhanced MR Image Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in section A.1.2 depicts those components of the DICOM Information Model, which directly reference the Enhanced MR Image IOD.

A.36.2.3 Enhanced MR Image IOD Module Table

Table A.36-1
ENHANCED MR IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Specimen Identification	C.7.1.2	U
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
	MR Series	C.8.13.6	M
Frame of Reference	Frame of Reference	C.7.4.1	M
	Synchronization	C.7.4.2	C- Required if time synchronization was applied.
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
	Enhanced General Equipment	C.7.5.2	M
Image	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Enhanced Contrast/Bolus	C.7.6.4b	C - Required if contrast media were applied.
	Multi-frame Functional Groups	C.7.6.16	M
	Multi-frame Dimension	C.7.6.17	M
	Cardiac Synchronization	C.7.6.18.1	C - Required if cardiac synchronization was applied.
	Respiratory Synchronization	C.7.6.18.2	C - Required if respiratory synchronization was applied.
	Bulk Motion Synchronization	C.7.6.18.3	C - Required if bulk motion synchronization was applied.
	Supplemental Palette Color Lookup Table	C.7.6.19	C – Required if Pixel Presentation (0008,9205) in the Enhanced MR Image Module equals COLOR or MIXED.
	Acquisition Context	C.7.6.14	M
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	Enhanced MR Image	C.8.13.1	M
	MR Pulse Sequence	C.8.13.4	C – Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.36.2.3.1 Enhanced MR Image IOD Content Constraints

The General Image Module, Overlay Plane Module and VOI LUT Module shall not be used in a Standard Extended SOP Class of the Enhanced MR Image.

Notes: 1. In order to annotate images, whether during acquisition or subsequently, SOP Instances of the Grayscale Softcopy Presentation State Storage or the Structured Report Storage SOP Classes that reference the image SOP Instance, may be used.

No standard mechanism is provided for inclusion of annotations within the image SOP Instance itself, and implementers are discouraged from using private extensions to circumvent this restriction.

Grayscale Softcopy Presentation State Storage Instances that are generated during acquisition may be referenced from the Image SOP Instance by using the Referenced Grayscale Presentation State Sequence in the MR Image and Spectroscopy Instance Macro invoked from the Enhanced MR Image Module. See C.8.13.2.

2. The Curve Module was previously include in the list of Modules that shall not be present, but has been retired from DICOM. It is still not permitted to be present. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.36.2.4 Enhanced MR Image Functional Group Macros

Table A.36-2 specifies the use of the Functional Group macros used in the Multi-frame Functional Groups Module for the Enhanced MR Image IOD.

Table A.36-2
ENHANCED MR IMAGE FUNCTIONAL GROUP MACROS

Functional Group Macro	Section	Usage
Pixel Measures	C.7.6.16.2.1	M
Frame Content	C.7.6.16.2.2	M - May not be used as a Shared Functional Group.
Plane Position	C.7.6.16.2.3	M
Plane Orientation	C.7.6.16.2.4	M
Referenced Image	C.7.6.16.2.5	C - Required if the image or frame has been planned on another image or frame. May be present otherwise
Derivation Image	C.7.6.16.2.6	C - Required if the image or frame has been derived from another SOP Instance.
Cardiac Trigger	C.7.6.16.2.7	C - Required if Cardiac Synchronization Technique (0018,9037) equals other than NONE and if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Frame Anatomy	C.7.6.16.2.8	M
Pixel Value Transformation	C.7.6.16.2.9	M
Frame VOI LUT	C.7.6.16.2.10	U
Real World Value Mapping	C.7.6.16.2.11	U
Contrast/Bolus Usage	C.7.6.16.2.12	C – Required if Contrast/Bolus Agent Sequence (0018,0012) is used.
Respiratory Trigger	C.7.6.16.2.17	C – Required if Respiratory Motion Compensation Technique (0018,9170) equals other than NONE, REALTIME or BREATH_HOLD and if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
MR Image Frame Type	C.8.13.5.1	M
MR Timing and Related Parameters	C.8.13.5.2	C – Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
MR FOV/Geometry	C.8.13.5.3	C – Required if Geometry of k-Space Traversal (0018,9032) equals RECTILINEAR and if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
MR Echo	C.8.13.5.4	C – Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
MR Modifier	C.8.13.5.5	C – Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
MR Imaging Modifier	C.8.13.5.6	C – Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.

MR Receive Coil	C.8.13.5.7	C – Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
MR Transmit Coil	C.8.13.5.8	C – Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
MR Diffusion	C.8.13.5.9	C - Required if Acquisition Contrast (0008,9209) in any MR Image Frame Type Functional Group in the SOP Instance equals DIFFUSION and Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
MR Averages	C.8.13.5.10	C – Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
MR Spatial Saturation	C.8.13.5.11	C - Required if Spatial Pre-saturation (0018,9027) equals SLAB for any frame in the SOP Instance and Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
MR Metabolite Map	C.8.13.5.12	C – Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 3 equals METABOLITE_MAP. May be present otherwise.
MR Velocity Encoding	C.8.13.5.13	C – Required if Phase Contrast (0018,9014) equals YES and Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.

A.36.3 MR Spectroscopy Information Object Definition

A.36.3.1 MR Spectroscopy IOD Description

The Magnetic Resonance (MR) Spectroscopy Information Object Definition (IOD) specifies spectroscopic data, which has been created by a magnetic resonance device.

A.36.3.2 MR Spectroscopy entity-relationship model

The E-R Model in section A.1.2 depicts those components of the DICOM Information Model, which directly reference the MR Spectroscopy IOD.

A.36.3.3 MR Spectroscopy IOD Module Table

Table A.36-3
MR SPECTROSCOPY IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Specimen Identification	C.7.1.2	U
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
	MR Series	C.8.13.6	M
Frame of Reference	Frame of Reference	C.7.4.1	M
	Synchronization	C.7.4.2	C- Required if time synchronization was applied.
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
	Enhanced General Equipment	C.7.5.2	M
MR Spectroscopy	Enhanced Contrast/Bolus	C.7.6.4b	C – Required if contrast media were applied.
	Multi-frame Functional Groups	C.7.6.16	M
	Multi-frame Dimension	C.7.6.17	M
	Cardiac Synchronization	C.7.6.18.1	C - Required if cardiac synchronization was applied.
	Respiratory Synchronization	C.7.6.18.2	C - Required if respiratory synchronization was applied.
	Bulk Motion Synchronization	C.7.6.18.3	C - Required if bulk motion synchronization was applied.
	Acquisition Context	C.7.6.14	M
	MR Spectroscopy	C.8.14.1	M
	MR Spectroscopy Pulse Sequence	C.8.14.2	C – Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
	MR Spectroscopy Data	C.8.14.3	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.36.3.4 MR Spectroscopy Functional Group Macros

Table A.36-4 specifies the use of the Functional Group macros used in the Multi-frame Functional Groups Module for the MR Spectroscopy IOD.

Table A.36-4
MR SPECTROSCOPY FUNCTIONAL GROUP MACROS

Functional Group Macro	Section	Usage
Pixel Measures	C.7.6.16.2.1	M
Frame Content	C.7.6.16.2.2	M – May not be used as a Shared Functional Group
Plane Position	C.7.6.16.2.3	M
Plane Orientation	C.7.6.16.2.4	M
Referenced Image	C.7.6.16.2.5	C - Required if the image or frame has been planned on another image or frame. May be present otherwise
Derivation Image	C.7.6.16.2.6	C - Required if the image or frame has been derived from another SOP Instance.
Cardiac Trigger	C.7.6.16.2.7	C - Required if Cardiac Synchronization Technique (0018,9037) equals other than NONE and if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Frame Anatomy	C.7.6.16.2.8	M
Contrast/Bolus Usage	C.7.6.16.2.12	C – Required if Contrast/Bolus Agent Sequence (0018,0012) is used.
Respiratory Trigger	C.7.6.16.2.17	C – Required if Respiratory Motion Compensation Technique (0018,9170) equals other than NONE, REALTIME or BREATH_HOLD and if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
MR Spectroscopy Frame Type	C.8.14.5.1	M
MR Timing and Related Parameters	C.8.13.5.2	C – Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
MR Spectroscopy FOV/Geometry	C.8.14.3.2	C – Required if Geometry of k-Space Traversal (0018,9032) equals RECTILINEAR and if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
MR Echo	C.8.13.5.4	C – Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
MR Modifier	C.8.13.5.5	C – Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
MR Receive Coil	C.8.13.5.7	C – Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be

		present otherwise.
MR Transmit Coil	C.8.13.5.8	C – Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
MR Diffusion	C.8.13.5.9	C - Required if Acquisition Contrast (0008,9209) in any MR Image Frame Type Functional Group in the SOP Instance equals DIFFUSION and Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
MR Averages	C.8.13.5.10	C – Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
MR Spatial Saturation	C.8.13.5.11	C - Required if Spatial Pre-saturation (0018,9027) equals SLAB for any frame in the SOP Instance and Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
MR Velocity Encoding	C.8.13.5.13	C – Required if Phase Contrast (0018,9014) equals YES and Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.

A.37 RAW DATA INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.37.1 Raw Data IOD Description

The Raw Data Information Object Definition (IOD) specifies raw data.

A.37.2 Raw Data entity-relationship model

The E-R Model in section A.1.2 depicts those components of the DICOM Information Model, which directly reference the Raw Data IOD.

A.37.3 Raw Data IOD Module Table

Table A.37-1
RAW DATA IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Specimen Identification	C.7.1.2	U
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Frame of Reference	Frame of Reference	C.7.4.1	U
	Synchronization	C.7.4.2	C- Required if time synchronization was applied.
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Raw Data	Acquisition Context	C.7.6.14	M
	Raw Data	C.19.1	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.38 ENHANCED COMPUTED TOMOGRAPHY IMAGE INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.38.1 Enhanced CT Image Information Object Definition

A.38.1.1 Enhanced CT Image IOD Description

The Enhanced Computed Tomography (CT) Image Information Object Definition (IOD) specifies an image that has been created by a computed tomography imaging device.

A.38.1.2 Enhanced CT Image IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 depicts those components of the DICOM Information Model that directly reference the Enhanced CT Image IOD.

A.38.1.3 Enhanced CT Image IOD Module Table

Table A.38-1
ENHANCED CT IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Specimen Identification	C.7.1.2	U
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	CT Series	C.8.15.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Frame of Reference	Frame of Reference	C.7.4.1	M
	Synchronization	C.7.4.2	C- Required if time synchronization was applied.
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
	Enhanced General Equipment	C.7.5.2	M
Image	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Enhanced Contrast/Bolus	C.7.6.4b	C – Required if contrast media was applied.
	Multi-frame Functional Groups	C.7.6.16	M
	Multi-frame Dimension	C.7.6.17	M
	Cardiac Synchronization	C.7.6.18.1	C – Required if cardiac synchronization was applied.
	Respiratory Synchronization	C.7.6.18.2	C – Required if respiratory synchronization was applied.
	Supplemental Palette Color Lookup Table	C.7.6.19	C – Required if Pixel Presentation (0008,9205) in the Enhanced CT Image Module equals COLOR or MIXED.
	Acquisition Context	C.7.6.14	M
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	Enhanced CT Image	C.8.15.2	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.38.1.3.1 Enhanced CT Image IOD Content Constraints

The General Image Module, Overlay Plane Module and VOI LUT Module shall not be used in a Standard Extended SOP Class of the Enhanced CT Image.

Notes: 1. In order to annotate images, whether during acquisition or subsequently, SOP Instances of the Grayscale Softcopy Presentation State Storage or the Structured Report Storage SOP Classes that reference the image SOP Instance, may be used.

No standard mechanism is provided for inclusion of annotations within the image SOP Instance itself, and implementers are discouraged from using private extensions to circumvent this restriction.

Grayscale Softcopy Presentation State Storage Instances that are generated during acquisition may be referenced from the Image SOP Instance by using the Referenced Grayscale Presentation State Sequence in the Enhanced CT Image Module. See C.8.15.2.

2. The Curve Module was previously include in the list of Modules that shall not be present, but has been retired from DICOM. It is still not permitted to be present. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.38.1.4 Enhanced CT Image Functional Group Macros

Table A.38-2 specifies the use of the Functional Group macros used in the Multi-frame Functional Group Module for the Enhanced CT Image IOD.

Table A.38-2
ENHANCED CT IMAGE FUNCTIONAL GROUP MACROS

Function Group Macro	Section	Usage
Pixel Measures	C.7.6.16.2.1	M
Frame Content	C.7.6.16.2.2	M – May not be used as a Shared Functional Group.
Plane Position	C.7.6.16.2.3	M
Plane Orientation	C.7.6.16.2.4	M
Referenced Image	C.7.6.16.2.5	C – Required if the image or frame has been planned on another image or frame, may be present otherwise.
Derivation Image	C.7.6.16.2.6	C – Required if the image or frame has been derived from another SOP Instance.
Cardiac Trigger	C.7.6.16.2.7	C – Required if Cardiac Synchronization Technique (0018,9037) equals other than NONE and if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Frame Anatomy	C.7.6.16.2.8	M
Frame VOI LUT	C.7.6.16.2.10	U
Real World Value Mapping	C.7.6.16.2.11	U
Contrast/Bolus Usage	C.7.6.16.2.12	C – Required if Contrast/Bolus Agent Sequence (0018,0012) is used.
Respiratory Trigger	C.7.6.16.2.17	C – Required if Respiratory Motion Compensation Technique (0018,9170) equals other than NONE, REALTIME or BREATH_HOLD and if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Irradiation Event Identification	C.7.6.16.2.18	M
CT Image Frame Type	C.8.15.3.1	M

CT Acquisition Type	C.8.15.3.2	C – Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED, may be present otherwise.
CT Acquisition Details	C.8.15.3.3	C – Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED, may be present otherwise.
CT Table Dynamics	C.8.15.3.4	C – Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED, may be present otherwise.
CT Position	C.8.15.3.5	C – Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED, may be present otherwise
CT Geometry	C.8.15.3.6	C – Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED, may be present otherwise.
CT Reconstruction	C.8.15.3.7	C – Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED and Acquisition Type (0018,9302) is other than CONSTANT_ANGLE, may be present otherwise.
CT Exposure	C.8.15.3.8	C – Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED, may be present otherwise.
CT X-ray Details	C.8.15.3.9	C – Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED, may be present otherwise.
CT Pixel Value Transformation	C.8.15.3.10	M

A.39 SPATIAL REGISTRATION INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITIONS

A.39.1 Spatial Registration Information Object Definition

A.39.1.1 Spatial Registration IOD Description

The Registration IOD specifies the spatial relationship between Frames of Reference..

A.39.1.2 Spatial Registration IOD Entity-Relationship Model

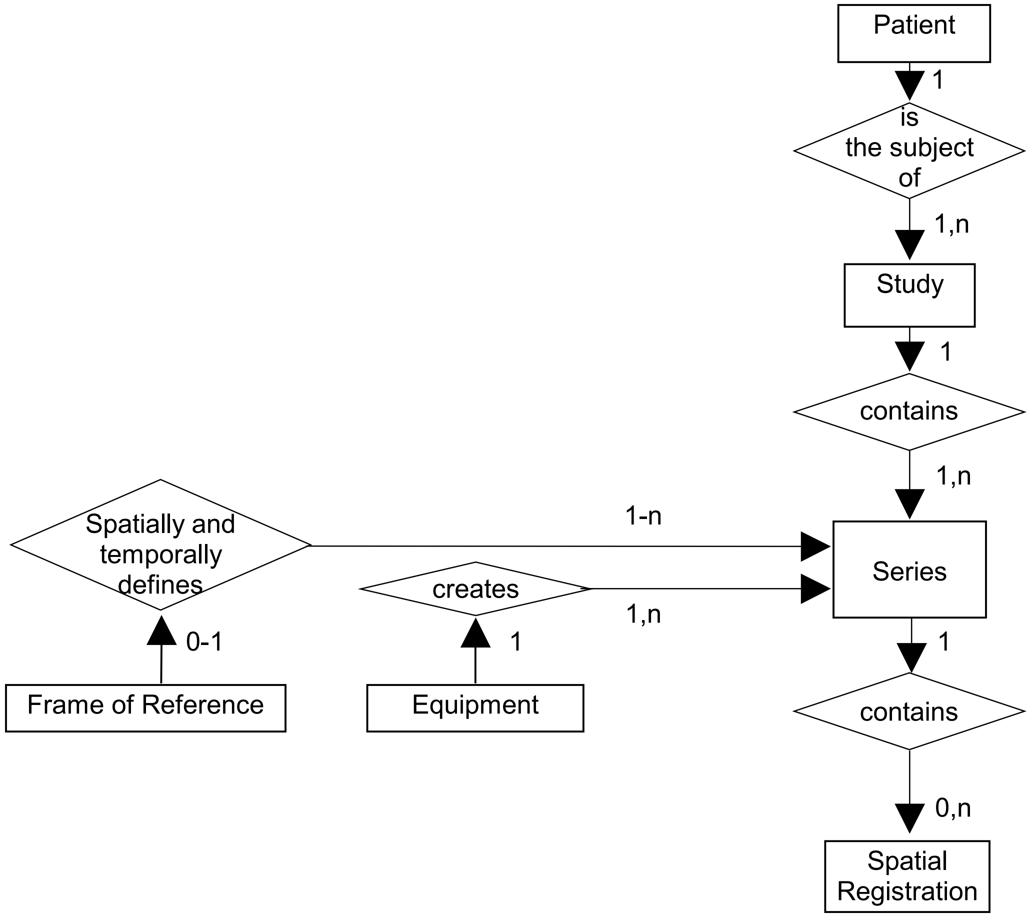


Figure A.39-1 SPATIAL REGISTRATION INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION E-R MODEL

A.39.1.3 Spatial Registration IOD Module Table

Table A.39.1-1 SPATIAL REGISTRATION IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Specimen Identification	C.7.1.2	U
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
	Spatial Registration Series	C.20.1	M
Frame of Reference	Frame of Reference	C.7.4.1	M
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Spatial Registration	Spatial Registration	C.20.2	M
	Common Instance Reference	C.12.2	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.39.2 Deformable Spatial Registration information object definition

A.39.2.1 Deformable Spatial Registration IOD Description

The Deformable Spatial Registration Information Object Definition (IOD) describes spatial relationships between images in one or more frames of reference via deformation grids and transformation matrices. The deformations and transformations describe to an application how to sample data from one or more *Source* RCSs into the *Registered* RCS.

The *Registered* RCS is the Frame of Reference specified within an instance of this IOD. The IOD may specify that only a subset of the entire *Source* RCS Frame of Reference is affected by the transformation, by specifying specific frames of image SOP Instances that use the *Source* Frame of Reference.

The deformation is described as a grid of offset vectors. Each grid element contains 3 values representing offset distances in the X, Y, and Z directions at the center position of the deformation grid element. The relationship between the data being deformed and the deformation grid is purely spatial. Therefore the resolution of the grid is independent of the data being deformed.

A.39.2.1.1 Deformable Spatial Registration IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model for the Deformable Spatial Registration IOD is identical to the E-R Model for the Spatial Registration IOD in Figure A.39-1.

A.39.2.1.2 Deformable Spatial Registration IOD Module Table

Table A.39.2-1 DEFORMABLE SPATIAL REGISTRATION IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
	Spatial Registration Series	C.20.1	M
Frame of Reference	Frame of Reference	C.7.4.1	M
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
	Enhanced Equipment	C.7.5.2	M
Deformable Registration	Deformable Spatial Registration	C.20.3	M
	Common Instance Reference	C.12.2	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.40 SPATIAL FIDUCIALS INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.40.1 Spatial Fiducials IOD Description

The Fiducials IOD specifies the spatial relationship between the Composite Fiducial instance, to one or more images.

A.40.2 Spatial Fiducials IOD Entity-Relationship Model

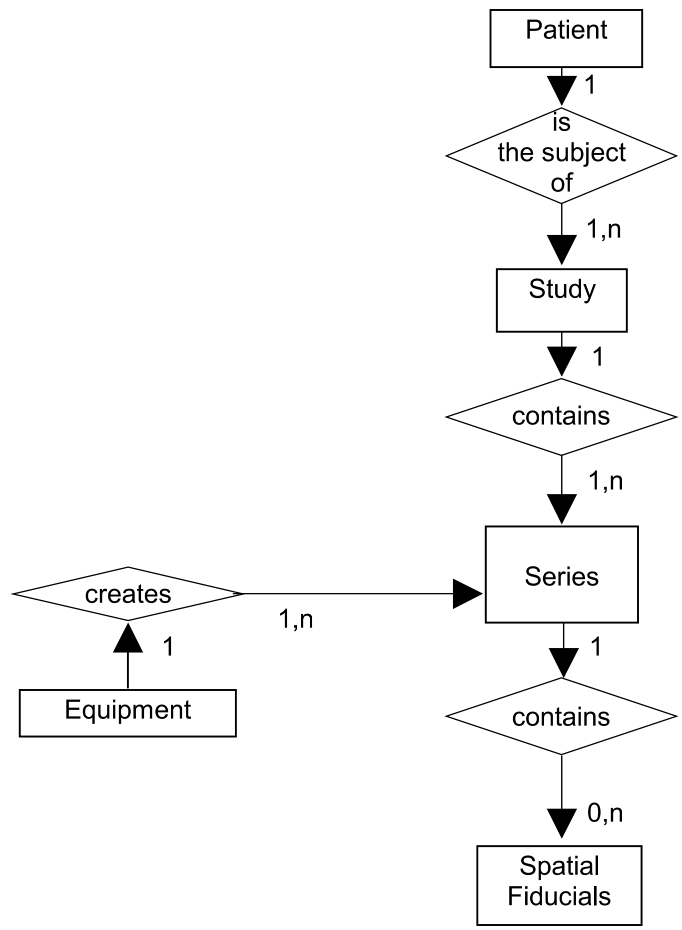


Figure A.40-1 SPATIAL FIDUCIALS INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION E-R MODEL

A.40.3 Spatial Fiducials IOD Module Table

Table A.40-1 SPATIAL FIDUCIALS IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Specimen Identification	C.7.1.2	U
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
	Spatial Fiducials Series	C.21.1	M
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Spatial Fiducials	Spatial Fiducials	C.21.2	M
	Common Instance Reference	C.12.2	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.41 OPHTHALMIC PHOTOGRAPHY 8 BIT IMAGE INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

This Section defines an Information Object to be used with several types of ophthalmic photographic imaging devices including fundus cameras, slit lamp cameras, scanning laser devices, stereoscopic cameras, video equipment and digital photographic equipment, with 8 bit resolution per pixel in each image plane.

A.41.1 Ophthalmic Photography 8 Bit Image IOD Description

The Ophthalmic Photography 8 Bit Image IOD specifies a single-frame or a multi-frame image acquired on a digital photographic DICOM modality. This IOD can be used to encode single ophthalmic images and cine sequences.

A.41.2 Ophthalmic Photography 8 Bit Image IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 of this Part depicts those components of the DICOM Information Model that directly reference the Ophthalmic Photography 8-Bit Image IOD, with exception of the VOI LUT, and Modality LUT entities, which are not used. Table A.41-1 specifies the Modules of the Ophthalmic Photography 8 Bit Image IOD.

Note: The Curve Module was previously include in the list of Modules that shall not be present, but has been retired from DICOM. It is still not permitted to be present. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.41.3 Ophthalmic Photography 8 Bit Image IOD Modules

Table A.41-1
OPHTHALMIC PHOTOGRAPHY 8 BIT IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Specimen Identification	C.7.1.2	C - Required if the Imaging Subject is a Specimen
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Ophthalmic Photography Series	C.8.17.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Frame of Reference	Synchronization	C.7.4.2	M
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Image	General Image	C.7.6.1	M
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Enhanced Contrast/Bolus	C 7.6.4.b	C – Required if contrast was administered, see A.41.4.2
	Cine	C.7.6.5	C - Required if there is a sequential temporal relationship between all frames
	Multi-frame	C.7.6.6	M
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	Ophthalmic Photography Image	C.8.17.2	M
	Ocular Region Imaged	C.8.17.5	M
	Ophthalmic Photography Acquisition Parameters	C.8.17.4	M
	Ophthalmic Photographic Parameters	C.8.17.3	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.41.4 Ophthalmic Photography 8 Bit Image IOD Content Constraints

The following constraints on Series and Image attributes take precedence over the descriptions given in the Module Attribute Tables.

A.41.4.1 Bits Allocated, Bits Stored, and High Bit

For Ophthalmic Photography 8 bit images, the Enumerated Value of Bits Allocated (0028,0100) (Image Pixel Module, C.7.6.3) shall be 8; the Enumerated Value of Bits Stored (0028,0101) shall be 8; and the Enumerated Value of High Bit (0028,0102) shall be 7.

A.41.4.2 Contrast/Bolus Agent Sequence

For Contrast/Bolus Agent Sequence (0018,0012), the defined CID 4200 shall be used.

A.42 OPHTHALMIC PHOTOGRAPHY 16 BIT IMAGE INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

This Section defines an Information Object to be used with several types of ophthalmic photographic imaging devices including fundus cameras, slit lamp cameras, scanning laser devices, stereoscopic cameras, video equipment and digital photographic equipment, with16 bit resolution per pixel in each image plane.

A.42.1 Ophthalmic Photography 16 Bit Image IOD Description

The Ophthalmic Photography 16 Bit Image IOD specifies a single-frame or a multi-frame image acquired on a digital photographic DICOM modality. This IOD can be used to encode single ophthalmic images and other combinations including cine sequences.

A.42.2 Ophthalmic Photography 16 Bit Image IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 of this Part depicts those components of the DICOM Information Model that directly reference the Ophthalmic Photography 16-Bit Image IOD, with exception of the VOI LUT, Frame of Reference and Modality LUT entities, which are not used. Table A.42-1 specifies the Modules of the Ophthalmic Photography 16 Bit Image IOD.

Note: The Curve Module was previously include in the list of Modules that shall not be present, but has been retired from DICOM. It is still not permitted to be present. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.42.3 Ophthalmic Photography 16 Bit Image IOD Modules

Table A.42-1
OPHTHALMIC PHOTOGRAPHY 16 BIT IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Specimen Identification	C.7.1.2	C - Required if the Imaging Subject is a Specimen
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Ophthalmic Photography Series	C.8.17.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Frame of Reference	Synchronization	C.7.4.2	M
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Image	General Image	C.7.6.1	M
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Enhanced Contrast/Bolus	C 7.6.4.b	C – Required if contrast was administered; see A.42.4.2
	Cine	C.7.6.5	C - Required if there is a sequential temporal relationship between all frames
	Multi-frame	C.7.6.6	M
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	Ophthalmic Photography Image	C.8.17.2	M
	Ocular Region Imaged	C.8.17.5	M
	Ophthalmic Photography Acquisition Parameters	C.8.17.4	M
	Ophthalmic Photographic Parameters	C.8.17.3	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.42.4 Ophthalmic Photography 16 Bit Image IOD Content Constraints

The following constraints on Series and Image attributes take precedence over the descriptions given in the Module Attribute Tables.

A.42.4.1 Bits Allocated, Bits Stored, and High Bit

For Ophthalmic Photography 16 bit images, the Enumerated Value of Bits Allocated (0028,0100) (Image Pixel Module, C.7.6.3) shall be 16; the Enumerated Value of Bits Stored (0028,0101) shall be 16; and the Enumerated Value of High Bit (0028,0102) shall be 15.

A.42.4.2 Contrast/Bolus Agent Sequence

For Contrast/Bolus Agent Sequence (0018,0012), the defined CID 4200 shall be used.

A.43 STEREOMETRIC RELATIONSHIP INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

This Section defines an Information Object to be used for linking together images belonging to stereoscopic pairs. A Series IE will typically contain a single Stereometric Relationship IE that references one or more sets of stereoscopic images. Stereoscopic pairs for ophthalmic photographic imaging may include single images, multi-frame images, or cine images.

A.43.1 Stereometric Relationship IOD Entity-Relationship Model

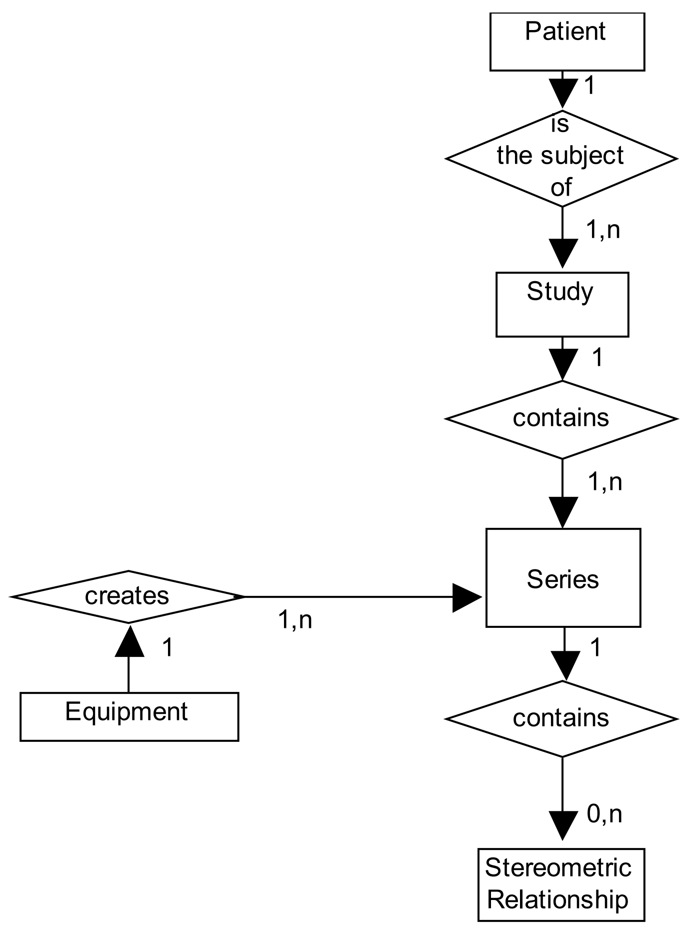


Figure A.43-1 STEREOMETRIC RELATIONSHIP INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION E-R MODEL

A.43.2 Stereometric Relationship IOD Modules

Table A.43-2
STEREOMETRIC RELATIONSHIP IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Specimen Identification	C.7.1.2	C - Required if the Imaging Subject is a Specimen
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
	Stereometric Series	C.8.18.1	M
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Stereometric Relationship	Stereometric Relationship Module	C.8.18.2	M
	Common Instance Reference Module	C.12.2	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.44 HANGING PROTOCOL INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.44.1 Hanging Protocol IOD Description

A Hanging Protocol entity specifies the viewing preferences of a specific user or group, for a specific type of study (Modality, Anatomy, Laterality combination, and optionally Procedure, and/or Reason), that may be exchanged between connecting devices that claim conformance to the DICOM Standard. The Hanging Protocol contains information about the Hanging Protocol, the creator, the type of study it addresses, the type of image sets to display, the intended display environment, and the intended layout for the screen(s).

A.44.2 Hanging Protocol IOD Entity-Relationship Model

A Hanging Protocol is not related to other Information Entities of the DICOM real-world model, as it is not associated with a specific patient. The E-R model for the Hanging Protocol IOD is shown in Figure A.44.2-1.

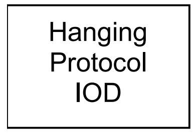


Figure A.44.2-1 HANGING PROTOCOL IOD E-R MODEL

A.44.3 Hanging Protocol IOD Module Table

Table A.44.3-1 lists the modules that make up the Hanging Protocol IOD.

Table A.44.3-1
HANGING PROTOCOL IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Hanging Protocol	SOP Common	C.12.1	M
	Hanging Protocol Definition	C.23.1	M
	Hanging Protocol Environment	C.23.2	M
	Hanging Protocol Display	C.23.3	M

A.45 ENCAPSULATED DOCUMENT INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.45.1 Encapsulated PDF Information Object Definition

A.45.1.1 Encapsulated PDF IOD Description

The Encapsulated PDF Information Object Definition (IOD) describes a PDF document that has been encapsulated within a DICOM information object.

A.45.1.2 Encapsulated PDF Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 of this Part applies to the Encapsulated PDF IOD.

A.45.1.3 Encapsulated PDF IOD Module Table

Table A.45.1-1 specifies the Encapsulated PDF IOD Modules.

Table A.45.1-1
Encapsulated PDF IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Specimen Identification	C.7.1.2	U
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	Encapsulated Document Series	C.24.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
	SC Equipment	C.8.6.1	M
Encapsulated Document	Encapsulated Document	C.24.2	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.45.1.4 Encapsulated PDF IOD content constraints

A.45.1.4.1 MIME Type of Encapsulated Document

The Enumerated Value of the MIME Type of Encapsulated Document (0042,0012) shall be ‘application/pdf’.

A.46 REAL WORLD VALUE MAPPING INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

The Real World Value Mapping Information Object Definition specifies a mapping of the stored pixel values of referenced images into some real world value in defined units. This allows the capture of retrospectively determined mappings, e.g., for values that cannot be determined at the time of image acquisition and encoding.

Note: A particular use case is mapping of PET pixel values to counts, concentration, or selective uptake values (SUVs) normalized by one of several factors.

A.46.1 Real World Value Mapping IOD Entity-Relationship Model

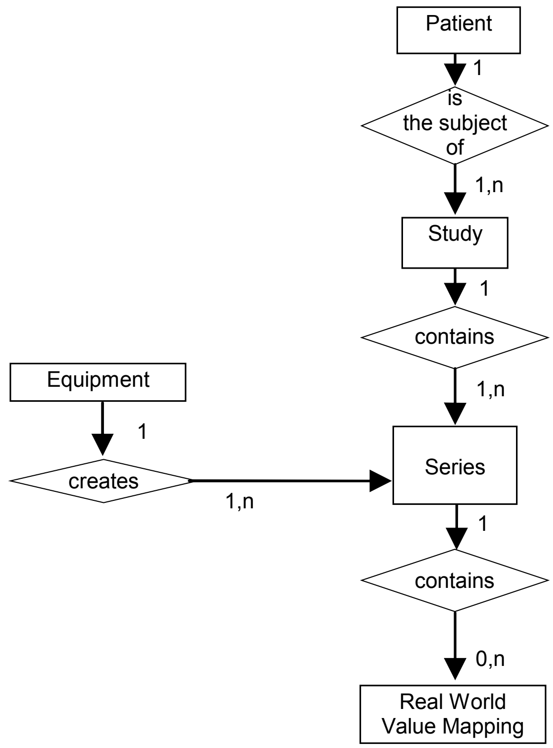


Figure A.46-1 REAL WORLD VALUE MAPPING INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION E-R MODEL

A.46.2 Real World Value Mapping IOD Modules

Table A.46-1 Real World Value Mapping IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Specimen Identification	C.7.1.2	U
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
	Real World Value Mapping Series	C.25.1	M
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Real World Value Mapping	Real World Value Mapping	C.25.22	M
	Common Instance Reference	C.12.2	M
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.47 ENHANCED X-RAY ANGIOGRAPHIC IMAGE INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.47.1 Enhanced XA Image IOD Description

This Section defines the enhanced Information Object for single plane X-Ray Angiographic Imaging that includes those data elements and information objects necessary for the interchange of digital X-Ray Angiographic data. This includes images of the heart and all blood vessels.

The enhanced XA IOD is also applicable to clinical areas other than angiography (e.g. Interventional Procedures, Myelography, Biopsy/Localization, and Neurology).

Notes: 1. For the purpose of X-Ray Angiography (XA), this enhanced IOD can be used to encode a single frame image, or a Cine Run, or a single multi-frame image with non-time related dimensions.

2. A typical study might include all the images generated between the time a patient gets on and gets off the procedure table. As several separable diagnostic or therapeutic processes may occur during a single study (e.g., pre-intervention CA, left ventriculography, and post-intervention CA), a series may be defined as comprising a set of images (single or Multi-Frame) associated with one such process within a study.

3. This enhanced IOD can be used to encode a single plane acquisition, or one plane of a biplane acquisition.

A.47.2 Enhanced XA Image IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 depicts those components of the DICOM Application Information Model that directly reference the enhanced X-Ray Angiographic Image IOD. Additionally, "Image" in Figure A.1-1 may represent a Single Frame or a Multi-Frame image. A frame denotes a two-dimensional organization of pixels recorded as a single exposure.

A.47.3 Enhanced XA Image IOD Module Table

Table A.47-1
ENHANCED X-RAY ANGIOGRAPHIC IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Specimen Identification	C.7.1.2	U
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	XA/XRF Series	C.8.19.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Frame of Reference	Frame of Reference	C.7.4.1	C – Required if C-arm Positioner Tabletop Relationship (0018,9474) equals YES. May be present otherwise.
	Synchronization	C.7.4.2	C – Required if C-arm Positioner Tabletop Relationship (0018,9474) equals YES. May be present otherwise.
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
	Enhanced General Equipment	C.7.5.2	M
Image	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Enhanced Contrast/Bolus	C.7.6.4b	C – Required if contrast media was applied and the system is able to register contrast usage.
	Mask	C.7.6.10	U
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	Intervention	C.7.6.13	U
	Acquisition Context	C.7.6.14	M
	Multi-frame Functional Groups	C.7.6.16	M
	Multi-frame Dimension Module	C.7.6.17	U
	Cardiac Synchronization	C.7.6.18.1	C – Required if cardiac synchronization was applied.

	Respiratory Synchronization	C.7.6.18.2	C – Required if respiratory synchronization was applied.
	X-Ray Filtration	C.8.7.10	U
	X-Ray Grid	C.8.7.11	U
	Enhanced XA/XRF Image	C.8.19.2	M
	XA/XRF Acquisition	C.8.19.3	C – Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 equals ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
	X-Ray Image Intensifier	C.8.19.4	C – Required if X-Ray Receptor Type (0018,9420) is present and equals IMG_INTENSIFIER.
	X-Ray Detector	C.8.19.5	C – Required if X-Ray Receptor Type (0018,9420) is present and equals DIGITAL_DETECTOR.
	XA/XRF Multi-frame Presentation	C.8.19.7	U
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.47.3.1 Enhanced XA Image IOD Content Constraints

A.47.3.1.1 Modality Type Attribute

The Modality Type attribute (0008,0060) shall have the value XA.

A.47.3.1.2 Overlay Plane Module, Curve Module and VOI LUT Module

The Overlay Plane Module, VOI LUT Module and Softcopy Presentation LUT Module shall not be used in a Standard Extended SOP Class of the Enhanced XA Image.

Notes: 1. The VOI LUT function is provided by a Frame VOI LUT Functional Group.

2. The Curve Module was previously include in the list of Modules that shall not be present, but has been retired from DICOM. It is still not permitted to be present. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.47.3.1.3 Positioner Type

The Positioner Type (0018,1508) attribute shall have the value CARM if the XA/XRF Acquisition Module is present.

A.47.4 Enhanced XA Image Functional Group Macros

Table A.47-2 specifies the use of the Functional Group macros used in the Multi-frame Functional Groups Module for the Enhanced XA Image IOD.

Table A.47-2
ENHANCED XA IMAGE FUNCTIONAL GROUP MACROS

Functional Group Macro	Section	Usage
Frame Content	C.7.6.16.2.2	M – May not be used as a Shared Functional Group.
Referenced Image	C.7.6.16.2.5	U
Derivation Image	C.7.6.16.2.6	C – Required if the image or frame has been derived from another SOP Instance.
Cardiac Trigger	C.7.6.16.2.7	U
Frame Anatomy	C.7.6.16.2.8	M
Frame VOI LUT	C.7.6.16.2.10	M
Contrast/Bolus Usage	C.7.6.16.2.12	C – Required if the Enhanced Contrast/Bolus Module is present
Pixel Intensity Relationship LUT	C.7.6.16.2.13	C – Required if Pixel Intensity Relationship (0028,1040) equals LOG. May be present otherwise.
Frame Pixel Shift	C.7.6.16.2.14	U
Patient Orientation in Frame	C.7.6.16.2.15	C– Required if C-arm Positioner Tabletop Relationship (0018,9474) is present and equals YES. May be present otherwise.
Frame Display Shutter	C.7.6.16.2.16	U
Respiratory Trigger	C.7.6.16.2.17	U
Irradiation Event Identification	C.7.6.16.2.18	M
XA/XRF Frame Characteristics	C.8.19.6.1	U
X-Ray Field of View	C.8.19.6.2	C – Required if Isocenter Reference System Sequence (0018,9462) is present.
X-Ray Exposure Control Sensing Regions	C.8.19.6.3	U
XA/XRF Frame Pixel Data Properties	C.8.19.6.4	M
X-Ray Frame Detector Parameters	C.8.19.6.5	C – Required if X-Ray Receptor Type (0018,9420) is present and equals DIGITAL_DETECTOR.
X-Ray Calibration Device Usage	C.8.19.6.6	U
X-Ray Object Thickness	C.8.19.6.7	U
X-Ray Frame Acquisition	C.8.19.6.8	U
X-Ray Projection Pixel Calibration	C.8.19.6.9	C– Required if C-arm Positioner Tabletop Relationship (0018,9474) is present and equals YES.
X-Ray Positioner	C.8.19.6.10	C– Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 equals ORIGINAL and C-arm Positioner Tabletop Relationship (0018,9474) is present and equals YES. May be present otherwise.

X-Ray Table Position	C.8.19.6.11	C– Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 equals ORIGINAL and C-arm Positioner Tabletop Relationship (0018,9474) is present and equals YES. May be present otherwise.
X-Ray Collimator	C.8.19.6.12	C– Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 equals ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
X-Ray Isocenter Reference System	C.8.19.6.13	U – May not be used if C-arm Positioner Tabletop Relationship (0018,9474) is not present or equals NO.
X-Ray Geometry	C.8.19.6.14	C – Required if Projection Pixel Calibration Sequence (0018,9401) is present. May be present otherwise.

A.47.4.1 Enhanced XA Image Functional Group Macros Content Constraints

A.47.4.1.1 Frame Anatomy Function Group Macro

The Defined Context ID for the Anatomic Region Sequence (0008,2218) shall be CID 4042.

A.48 ENHANCED X-RAY RF IMAGE INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.48.1 Enhanced XRF Image IOD Description

The focus for this enhanced X-Ray RF Image IOD (XRF IOD) is to address the requirements for image transfer found in general Radiofluoroscopic applications performed on a table with a column. For applications performed on X-Ray RF acquisition systems that support a patient based coordinate system with cranial/caudal, LAO/RAO angles, etc. the enhanced XA Image IOD may be used.

Notes: 1. An example of a case where the enhanced XA IOD may be preferred to the enhanced RF IOD are RF acquisition system equipped with an X-Ray source and an image Receptor positioned by what is generally called a C-arm (e.g. Interventional Procedures, Myelography, Biopsy, and Neurology).

2. For the purpose of X-Ray Radiofluoroscopy, this IOD can be used to encode a single frame image, or a cine run, or a single multi-frame image with non-time related dimensions.

3. A typical study might include all the images generated between the time a patient gets on and gets off the procedure table. As several separable diagnostic or therapeutic processes may occur during a single study, a series may be defined as comprising a set of images (single or Multi-Frame) associated with one such process within a study.

A.48.2 Enhanced XRF Image IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 depicts those components of the DICOM Application Information Model that directly reference the X-Ray RF Image IOD. Additionally, “Image” in figure A.1-1 may represent a Single Frame or a Multi-Frame image. A frame denotes a two-dimensional organization of pixels recorded as a single exposure.

A.48.3 Enhanced XRF Image IOD Module Table

Table A.48.-1
ENHANCED X-RAY RF IMAGE IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Specimen Identification	C.7.1.2	U
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	XA/XRF Series	C.8.19.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Frame of Reference	Frame of Reference	C.7.4.1	U
	Synchronization	C.7.4.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
	Enhanced General Equipment	C.7.5.2	M
Image	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Enhanced Contrast/Bolus	C.7.6.4b	C – Required if contrast media was applied and the system is able to register contrast usage.
	Mask	C.7.6.10	U
	Device	C.7.6.12	U
	Intervention	C.7.6.13	U
	Acquisition Context	C.7.6.14	M
	Multi-frame Functional Groups	C.7.6.16	M
	Multi-frame Dimension Module	C.7.6.17	U
	Cardiac Synchronization	C.7.6.18.1	C - Required if cardiac synchronization was applied.
	Respiratory Synchronization	C.7.6.18.2	C - Required if respiratory synchronization was applied.
	X-Ray Tomography Acquisition	C.8.7.7	U
	X-Ray Filtration	C.8.7.10	U
	X-Ray Grid	C.8.7.11	U
	Enhanced XA/XRF Image	C.8.19.2	M
	XA/XRF Acquisition	C.8.19.3	C – Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 equals ORIGINAL. May be present

			otherwise.
	X-Ray Image Intensifier	C.8.19.4	C – Required if X-Ray Receptor Type (0018,9420) is present and equals IMG_INTENSIFIER.
	X-Ray Detector	C.8.19.5	C – Required if X-Ray Receptor Type (0018,9420) is present and equals DIGITAL_DETECTOR.
	XA/XRF Multi-frame Presentation	C.8.19.7	U
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.48.3.1 Enhanced XRF Image IOD Content Constraints

A.48.3.1.1 Modality Type Attribute

The Modality Type attribute (0008,0060) shall have the value RF.

A.48.3.1.2 Overlay Plane Module, Curve Module and VOI LUT Module

The Overlay Plane Module, VOI LUT Module and Softcopy Presentation LUT Module shall not be used in a Standard Extended SOP Class of the Enhanced XRF Image.

Notes: 1. The VOI LUT function is provided by a Frame VOI LUT Functional Group.

2. The Curve Module was previously include in the list of Modules that shall not be present, but has been retired from DICOM. It is still not permitted to be present. See PS 3.3 2004.

A.48.3.1.3 Positioner Type

The Positioner Type (0018,1508) attribute shall have the value COLUMN if the XA/XRF Acquisition Module is present.

A.48.4 Enhanced XRF Image Functional Group Macros

Table A.48-2 specifies the use of the Functional Group macros used in the Multi-frame Functional Groups Module for the Enhanced XRF Image IOD.

Table A.48-2
ENHANCED XRF IMAGE FUNCTIONAL GROUP MACROS

Functional Group Macro	Section	Usage
Frame Content	C.7.6.16.2.2	M – May not be used as a Shared Functional Group.
Referenced Image	C.7.6.16.2.5	U
Derivation Image	C.7.6.16.2.6	C – Required if the image or frame has been derived from another SOP Instance.
Cardiac Trigger	C.7.6.16.2.7	U
Frame Anatomy	C.7.6.16.2.8	M
Frame VOI LUT	C.7.6.16.2.10	M
Contrast/Bolus Usage	C.7.6.16.2.12	C – Required if the Enhanced Contrast/Bolus Module is present
Pixel Intensity Relationship LUT	C.7.6.16.2.13	C – Required if Pixel Intensity Relationship (0028,1040) equals LOG. May be present otherwise.
Frame Pixel Shift	C.7.6.16.2.14	U
Patient Orientation in Frame	C.7.6.16.2.15	U
Frame Display Shutter	C.7.6.16.2.16	U
Respiratory Trigger	C.7.6.16.2.17	U
Irradiation Event Identification	C.7.6.16.2.18	M
XA/XRF Frame Characteristics	C.8.19.6.1	U
X-Ray Field of View	C.8.19.6.2	U
X-Ray Exposure Control Sensing Regions	C.8.19.6.3	U
XA/XRF Frame Pixel Data Properties	C.8.19.6.4	M
X-Ray Frame Detector Parameters	C.8.19.6.5	C – Required if X-Ray Receptor Type (0018,9420) is present and equals DIGITAL_DETECTOR.
X-Ray Calibration Device Usage	C.8.19.6.6	U
X-Ray Object Thickness	C.8.19.6.7	U
X-Ray Frame Acquisition	C.8.19.6.8	U
X-Ray Positioner	C.8.19.6.10	U
X-Ray Table Position	C.8.19.6.11	U
X-Ray Collimator	C.8.19.6.12	U
X-Ray Geometry	C.8.19.6.14	U

A.48.4.1 Enhanced XRF Image Functional Group Macros Content Constraints

A.48.4.1.1 Frame Anatomy Function Group Macro

The Defined Context ID for the Anatomic Region Sequence (0008,2218) shall be CID 4042.

A.49 RT ION PLAN INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.49.1 IOD Description

The focus for this Radiotherapy Ion Plan IOD (RT Ion Plan IOD) is to address the requirements for transfer of treatment plans generated by manual entry, a virtual simulation system, or a treatment planning system before or during a course of Ion therapy treatment. Such plans may contain fractionation information, and define Ion beams.

A.49.2 IOD Modules

Table A.49-1 identifies and defines the Modules that comprise this IOD. Modules listed are either mandatory or optional as specified in PS 3.4. Mandatory Modules contain Attributes that are included in all SOP Instances employing this IOD.

Table A.49-1
RT ION PLAN IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	RT Series	C.8.8.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Frame of Reference	Frame of Reference	C.7.4.1	M
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Plan	RT General Plan	C.8.8.9	M
	RT Prescription	C.8.8.10	U
	RT Ion Tolerance Tables	C.8.8.24	U
	RT Patient Setup	C.8.8.12	U
	RT Fraction Scheme	C.8.8.13	U
	RT Ion Beams	C.8.8.25	C - Required if RT Fraction Scheme Module is included and Number of Beams (300A,0080) is greater than zero for one or more fraction groups
	Approval	C.8.8.16	U
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.50 RT ION BEAMS TREATMENT RECORD INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.50.1 IOD Description

The Radiotherapy Ion Beams Treatment Record IOD (RT Ion Beams Treatment Record IOD) addresses the requirements for transfer of treatment session reports generated by a treatment verification system during a course of Ion beam treatment, with optional cumulative summary information. It may also be used for transfer of treatment information during delivery.

A.50.2 IOD Modules

Table A.50-1 identifies and defines the Modules that comprise this IOD. Modules listed are either mandatory or optional as specified in PS 3.4. Mandatory Modules contain Attributes that are included in all SOP Instances employing this IOD.

Table A.50-1
RT ION BEAMS TREATMENT RECORD IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
Series	RT Series	C.8.8.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
Treatment Record	RT General Treatment Record	C.8.8.17	M
	RT Patient Setup	C.8.8.12	U
	RT Treatment Machine Record	C.8.8.18	M
	Measured Dose Reference Record	C.8.8.19	U
	Calculated Dose Reference Record	C.8.8.20	U
	RT Ion Beams Session Record	C.8.8.26	M
	RT Treatment Summary Record	C.8.8.23	U
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.51 SEGMENTATION INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

A.51.1 Segmentation IOD Description

The Segmentation Information Object Definition (IOD) specifies a multi-frame image representing a classification of pixels in one or more referenced images. Segmentations are either binary or fractional. If the referenced images have a defined frame of reference, the segmentation instance shall have the same frame of reference and is not required to have the same spatial sampling or extent as the referenced images. If the referenced image does not have a defined frame of reference, the segmentation instance shall have the same spatial sampling and extent as the referenced image.

The Segmentation IOD does not include the full set of acquisition parameters of the referenced images, e.g. cardiac phase. An application rendering or processing the segmentation may need to access the referenced images for such information.

A.51.2 Segmentation IOD Entity-Relationship Model

The E-R Model in Section A.1.2 depicts those components of the DICOM Information Model that directly reference the Segmentation IOD. The Segmentation is a kind of Image.

A.51.3 Segmentation IOD Module Table

Table A.51-1
SEGMENTATION IOD MODULES

IE	Module	Reference	Usage
Patient	Patient	C.7.1.1	M
	Specimen Identification	C.7.1.2	U
	Clinical Trial Subject	C.7.1.3	U
Study	General Study	C.7.2.1	M
	Patient Study	C.7.2.2	U
	Clinical Trial Study	C.7.2.3	U
Series	General Series	C.7.3.1	M
	Segmentation Series	C.8.20.1	M
	Clinical Trial Series	C.7.3.2	U
Frame of Reference	Frame of Reference	C.7.4.1	C – Required if Derivation Image Functional Group (C.7.16.2.6) is not present.
Equipment	General Equipment	C.7.5.1	M
	Enhanced General Equipment	C.7.5.2	M
Segmentation	General Image	C.7.6.1	M
	Image Pixel	C.7.6.3	M
	Segmentation Image	C.8.20.2	M
	Multi-frame Functional Groups	C.7.6.16	M
	Multi-frame Dimension	C.7.6.17	M
	Common Instance Reference	C.12.2	C – Required if Derivation Image Functional Group (C.7.16.2.6) is present.
	SOP Common	C.12.1	M

A.51.4 Segmentation IOD Content Constraints

The VOI LUT module shall not be present.

The Modality LUT module shall not be present.

The Overlay Module shall not be present.

Pixel Padding Value (0028,0120) shall not be present.

A.51.5 Segmentation Functional Groups

Table A.51-2 specifies the use of the Functional Group macros used in the Multi-frame Functional Group Module for the Segmentation IOD.

Table A.51-2
SEGMENTATION FUNCTIONAL GROUP MACROS

Function Group Macro	Section	Usage
Pixel Measures	C.7.6.16.2.1	C – Required if Derivation Image Functional Group (C.7.6.16.2.6) is not present. May be present otherwise. See A.51.5.1
Plane Position	C.7.6.16.2.3	C – Required if Derivation Image Functional Group (C.7.6.16.2.6) is not present. May be present otherwise. See A.51.5.1
Plane Orientation	C.7.6.16.2.4	C – Required if Derivation Image Functional Group (C.7.6.16.2.6) is not present. May be present otherwise. See A.51.5.1
Derivation Image	C.7.6.16.2.6	C – Required if any of Pixel Measures (C.7.6.16.2.1) or Plane Position (C.7.6.16.2.3) or Plane Orientation (C.7.6.16.2.4) Functional Groups are not present. May be present otherwise. See A.51.5.1
Frame Content Macro	C.7.6.16.2.2	M
Segmentation	C.8.20.3.1	M

A.51.5.1 Segmentation Functional Groups Description

When a Frame of Reference UID is present the segment shall be specified within that coordinate system, using the Pixel Measures, Plane Position and Plane Orientation Functional Groups. Since this defines the spatial relationship of the segment, the size of the segmentation frames need not be the same size, or resolution, as the image data used to generate the segment data.

If the Frame of Reference UID is not present, each pixel of the segmentation shall correspond to a pixel in a referenced image, using the Derivation Image Functional Group. Hence, the rows and columns of each referenced image will match the segmentation image.

The value of Purpose of Reference Sequence (0040,A170) in the Derivation Image Functional Group Macro shall be (121322, DCM, “Source Image for Image Processing Operation”). The value of Derivation Code Sequence (0008,9215) shall be (113076, DCM, “Segmentation”).

Annex B Normalized Information Object Definitions (Normative)

B.1 PATIENT INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

B.2 VISIT INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

B.3 STUDY INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

B.4 STUDY COMPONENT INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

B.5 RESULTS INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

B.6 INTERPRETATION INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

B.7 BASIC FILM SESSION INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

B.7.1 IOD description

The Basic Film Session Information Object Definition describes the presentation parameters that are common for all the films of a film session (e.g. number of films, film destination).

B.7.2 IOD modules

Table B.7-1
FILM SESSION IOD MODULES

Module	Reference	Module Description
SOP Common	C.12.1	Contains SOP Common information
Basic Film Session Presentation	C.13.1	Contains Film Session presentations information
Basic Film Session Relationship	C.13.2	References to related SOPs

B.8 BASIC FILM BOX INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

B.8.1 IOD description

The Basic Film Box Information Object Definition is an abstraction of the presentation of one film of the film session. The Basic Film Box IOD describes the presentation parameters that are common for all images on a given sheet of film.

B.8.2 IOD modules

Table B.8-1
BASIC FILM BOX IOD MODULES

Module	Reference	Module Description
SOP Common	C.12.1	Contains SOP Common information
Basic Film Box Presentation Module	C.13.3	Contains Film Box presentation information
Basic Film Box Relationship	C.13.4	References to related SOPs

B.9 BASIC IMAGE BOX INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

B.9.1 IOD description

The Basic Image Box Information Object Definition is an abstraction of the presentation of an image and image related data in the image area of a film. The Basic Image Box IOD describes the presentation parameters and image pixel data that apply to a single image of a sheet of film.

B.9.2 IOD modules

Table B.9-1
BASIC IMAGE BOX IOD MODULES

Module	Reference	Module Description
SOP Common	C.12.1	Contains SOP Common information
Image Box Presentation Module	C.13.5	Contains Image Box presentation information

The Image Box Relationship Module was previously defined in DICOM. It is now retired. See PS 3.3-1998.

B.10 BASIC ANNOTATION BOX INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

B.10.1 IOD description

The Basic Annotation Box Information Object Definition is an abstraction of the presentation of an annotation (e.g. text string) on a film. The Basic Annotation Box IOD describes the most used text related presentation parameters.

B.10.2 IOD modules

Table B.10-1
BASIC ANNOTATION BOX IOD MODULES

Module	Reference	Module Description
SOP Common	C.12.1	Contains SOP Common information
Basic Annotation Presentation Module	C.13.7	Contains annotation presentation information

B.11 PRINT JOB INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

B.11.1 IOD description

The Print Job Information Object Definition is an abstraction of the print job transaction and is the basic information entity to monitor the execution of the print process. A print job contains one film or multiple films, all belonging to the same film session.

B.11.2 IOD modules

Table B.11-1
PRINT JOB IOD MODULES

Module	Reference	Module Description
SOP Common	C.12.1	Contains SOP Common information
Print Job Module	C.13.8	Contains print job transaction information

B.12 PRINTER INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

B.12.1 IOD description

The Printer Information Object Definition is an abstraction of the hardcopy printer and is the basic information entity to monitor the status of the printer.

B.12.2 IOD modules

Table B.12-1
PRINTER IOD MODULES

Module	Reference	Module Description
SOP Common	C.12.1	Contains SOP Common information
Printer Module	C.13.9	Contains status information to monitor the printer

B.13 VOI LUT BOX INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION (RETIRED)

This section was previously defined in DICOM. It is now retired. See PS 3.3-1998.

B.14 IMAGE OVERLAY BOX INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION (RETIRED)

This section was previously defined in DICOM. It is now retired. See PS 3.3-1998.

B.15 STORAGE COMMITMENT INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

B.15.1 Storage Commitment IOD Description

The Storage Commitment IOD describes the Attributes that may be present in a Storage Commitment Request or Response. The SOP Instances referenced by the Storage Commitment IOD are not restricted to images and may include other SOP Instances.

B.15.2 Storage Commitment IOD Modules

Table B.15-1 identifies and defines the Modules that comprise this IOD. The requirements for whether Attributes in these Modules are mandatory or optional are as specified in PS 3.4.

Table B.15-1
STORAGE COMMITMENT IOD MODULES

Module	Reference	Module Description
SOP Common	C.12.1	Contains SOP common information
Storage Commitment	C.14	Contains references to the SOP Instances and associated information that are contained in Storage Commitment.

B.16 PRINT QUEUE INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

B.17 MODALITY PERFORMED PROCEDURE STEP INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

B.17.1 IOD Description

A "Modality Performed Procedure Step Information Object Definition" is an abstraction of the information that describes the activities, conditions and results of an imaging procedure performed on a modality. It contains information about the Modality Performed Procedure Step (MPPS) and its relations to other Information Entities of the DICOM real-world model as introduced in this Part.

A Modality Performed Procedure Step is related to the actual imaging procedure carried out at the modality. Other types of Performed Procedure Steps, e.g. reporting or image processing, are not covered by the Modality Performed Procedure Step IOD. The information gathered includes data about the performance of the procedure itself, radiation dose values to which the patient has been exposed, and data for billing and material management. The Modality Performed Procedure Step IOD includes general PPS modules and image acquisition specific ones, such as Image Acquisition Results, Radiation Dose and Billing and Material Management.

B.17.2 IOD Modules

Table B.17.2-1 lists the modules that make up the Modality Performed Procedure Step IOD.

Table B.17.2-1
MODALITY PERFORMED PROCEDURE STEP IOD MODULES

Module	Reference	Module Description
SOP Common	C.12.1	Contains SOP common information
Performed Procedure Step Relationship	C.4.13	References the related SOPs and IEs.
Performed Procedure Step Information	C.4.14	Includes identifying and status information as well as place and time
Image Acquisition Results	C.4.15	Identifies Series and Images related to this PPS and specific image acquisition conditions.
Radiation Dose	C.4.16	Contains radiation dose information related to this Performed Procedure Step.
Billing and Material Management Codes	C.4.17	Contains codes for billing and material management.

Notes: The Radiation Dose Module (C.4.16) does not have meaning if the modality does not generate ionizing radiation or if the generator does not provide the area dose product.

B.18 PRESENTATION LUT INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

B.18.1 IOD Description

The Presentation LUT Information Object is an abstraction of a Presentation LUT. The objective of the Presentation LUT is to realize image display tailored for specific modalities, applications, and user preferences. It is used to prepare image pixel data for display on devices that conform to the Grayscale Standard Display Function defined in PS 3.14.

The output of the Presentation LUT is Presentation Values (P-Values). P-Values are approximately related to human perceptual response. They are intended to facilitate common input for both hardcopy and softcopy display devices. P-Values are intended to be independent of the specific class or characteristics of the display device.

B.18.2 IOD Modules

Module	Reference
SOP Common Information	C.12.1
Presentation LUT Module	C.11.4

B.19 PULL PRINT REQUEST INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

B.20 PRINTER CONFIGURATION INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

B.20.1 IOD Description

The Printer Configuration IOD describes key imaging characteristics of the printer.

B.20.2 IOD Modules

Table B.20-1
Printer Configuration IOD Modules

Module	Reference	Module Description
SOP Common	C.12.1	Contains SOP Common Information
Printer	C13.9	Contains information about the printer
Printer Configuration	C.13.13	Contains Printer Configuration Information

B.21 BASIC PRINT IMAGE OVERLAY BOX INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

B.22 GENERAL PURPOSE SCHEDULED PROCEDURE STEP INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

B.22.1 IOD Description

A "General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step Information Object Definition" is an abstraction of the information that describes the scheduled activities, conditions and status of a scheduled procedure step. It contains information about the General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step (GP-SPS) and its relations to other Information Entities of the DICOM real-world model as introduced in PS 3.3.

A General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step is related to one of the steps to be performed in response to the Requested Procedure.

B.22.2 IOD Modules

Table B.22.2-1 lists the modules that make up the General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step IOD.

Table B.22.2-1
GENERAL PURPOSE SCHEDULED PROCEDURE STEP IOD MODULES

Module	Reference	Module Description
SOP Common	C.12.1	Contains SOP common information
General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step Relationship	C.4.18	References the related SOPs and IEs.
General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step Information	C.4.19	Includes identifying and status information as well as place and time

B.23 GENERAL PURPOSE PERFORMED PROCEDURE STEP INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

B.23.1 IOD Description

A "General Purpose Performed Procedure Step Information Object Definition" is an abstraction of the information that describes the activities, conditions and results of a procedure step performed on a performing device. It contains information about the General Purpose Performed Procedure Step (GP-PPS) and its relations to other Information Entities of the DICOM real-world model as introduced in PS 3.3.

A General Purpose Performed Procedure Step is related to the procedure scheduled to be performed. The information gathered at the performing device includes data about the performance of the procedure step itself and the results. The General Purpose Performed Procedure Step IOD includes general GP-PPS modules and a specific one for the created results, the General Purpose Results.

B.23.2 IOD Modules

Table B.21.2-1 lists the modules that make up the General Purpose Performed Procedure Step IOD.

Table B.23.2-1
GENERAL PURPOSE PERFORMED PROCEDURE STEP IOD MODULES

Module	Reference	Module Description
SOP Common	C.12.1	Contains SOP common information
General Purpose Performed Procedure Step Relationship	C.4.20	References the related SOPs and IEs.
General Purpose Performed Procedure Step Information	C.4.21	Includes identifying and status information as well as place and time
General Purpose Results	C.4.22	Identifies Results related to this GP-PPS.

B.24 INSTANCE AVAILABILITY NOTIFICATION INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

B.24.1 IOD Description

An "Instance Availability Notification Information Object Definition" is a summary of the information that describes the availability of a set of Composite Instances.

B.24.2 IOD Modules

Table B.24.2-1 lists the modules, which make up the Instance Availability Notification IOD.

Table B.24.2-1
INSTANCE AVAILABILITY NOTIFICATION IOD MODULES

Module	Reference	Module Description
SOP Common	C.12.1	Contains SOP common information
Instance Availability Notification	C.4.23	References the related SOPs and IEs.

B.25 MEDIA CREATION MANAGEMENT INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

B.25.1 IOD Description

A "Media Creation Management Information Object Definition" is an abstraction of the information that describes the attributes and the status of a media creation request.

B.25.2 IOD Modules

Table B.25.2-1 lists the modules that make up the Media Creation Management IOD.

Table B.25.2-1
MEDIA CREATION MANAGEMENT IOD MODULES

Module	Reference	Module Description
SOP Common	C.12.1	Contains SOP common information
Media Creation Management	C.22.1	Contains references to the SOP instances to be used for this media creation request, and the information about its status.

Annex C INFORMATION MODULE DEFINITIONS (NORMATIVE)

C.1 ELEMENTS OF A MODULE DEFINITION

A Module Definition is composed of the following Sections

a. Module Description

b. Module Definition

c. Attribute Description (Optional)

Sections C.1.1 through C.1.3 define the requirements of a. through c. above.

C.1.1 Module Description

This Section briefly describes the Module and references the Module Definition.

C.1.2 Module Definition

This Section contains a table that enumerates each Attribute contained in the Module. For each Attribute in the table the following information is given:

a. Attribute Name (see C.1.2.1)

b. Data Element Tag (see C.1.2.2)

c. Type Designation (see C.1.2.3)

d. Attribute Definition (see C.1.2.4)

C.1.2.1 Attribute Name

This name shall be used whenever referencing the Attribute. This name shall also identify the Attribute in PS 3.6.

C.1.2.2 Attribute Tag

Each Attribute has a tag that uniquely identifies the Attribute (also used for encoding into a Data Set - see PS 3.5). This tag also serves as an index into the Data Dictionary of PS 3.6.

C.1.2.3 Type Designation

Each Attribute contained in a Module referenced by a Composite IOD defines a Type designation that indicates if a specific Attribute is required for all DIMSE operations/notifications associated with a SOP Class using this Module. PS 3.5 defines a choice of generic Type designations available for DICOM Attributes.

Note: The Type designation specified is generally determined by the value most appropriate for the C-STORE DIMSE Service.

The Type designation given in a Module is a default value and as such may be overridden by an IOD referencing the Module. Some Attributes may also be contained in more than one Module for the IOD. In that case, the Type designation applicable for the Attribute of the specific IOD is the lowest Type value (e.g. if type 2 is specified in one Module and type 3 in another, then type 2 shall apply), unless explicitly stated by the Attribute description.

The Type designation given in a Module (and/or IOD) may also be overridden by Service Class Definitions referencing the IOD containing the Module. PS 3.4 specifies the Service Class Definitions.

Modules referenced only by Normalized IODs do not contain Type designations. Modules referenced by both Normalized IODs and Composite IODs will contain a Type designation that only applies to Composite IODs and any specific conditions for Conditional Types (type 1C and 2C) also only apply to Composite IODs.

C.1.2.4 Attribute Definition

A brief definition will be provided for each attribute in the Module definition table. The description shall provide a context for the use of the Attribute and provide general elucidation. Defined Terms and Enumerated Values applicable to the Attribute may also be listed in the Attribute Description.

C.1.3 Attribute Descriptions

Additional information may be provided if necessary for selected Attributes. Such information shall be placed following the Module definition table. Dependencies between Attributes may be specified in this Section.

C.2 PATIENT MODULES

The following Sections specify Modules used for patient management.

C.2.1 Patient Relationship Module

Table C.2-1 defines the Attributes that reference SOP Instances related to this SOP Class.

Table C.2-1
PATIENT RELATIONSHIP MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
Referenced Study Sequence	(0008,1110)	Uniquely identifies the Study SOP Instances associated with the Patient SOP Instance. One or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.
Referenced Visit Sequence	(0008,1125)	Uniquely identifies the Visit SOP Instances associated with this Patient SOP Instance. One or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.
Referenced Patient Alias Sequence	(0038,0004)	Uniquely identifies any Patient SOP Instances that also describe this patient. These SOP Instances are aliases. Zero or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.

C.2.2 Patient Identification Module

Table C.2-2 defines the Attributes relevant to identifying a patient.

Table C.2-2
PATIENT IDENTIFICATION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
Patient's Name	(0010,0010)	Patient's full name
Patient ID	(0010,0020)	Primary hospital identification number or code for the patient.
Issuer of Patient ID	(0010,0021)	Identifier of the Assigning Authority (system, organization, agency, or department) that issued the Patient ID. Note: Issuer of Patient ID (0010,0021) is equivalent to HL7 v2 PID-3 component 4.
Other Patient IDs	(0010,1000)	Other identification numbers or codes used to identify the patient.
Other Patient IDs Sequence	(0010,1002)	A sequence of identification numbers or codes used to identify the patient, which may or may not be human readable, and may or may not have been obtained from an implanted or attached device such as an RFID or barcode.
>Patient ID	(0010,0010)	An identification number or code used to identify the patient
>Issuer of Patient ID	(0010,0021)	Identifier of the Assigning Authority that issued the Patient ID.
>Type of Patient ID	(0010,0022)	The type of identifier in this item. Defined Terms: TEXT RFID BARCODE Note: The identifier is coded as a string regardless of the type, not as a binary value.
Other Patient Names	(0010,1001)	Other names used to identify the patient.
Patient's Birth Name	(0010,1005)	Patient's birth name.
Patient's Mother's Birth Name	(0010,1060)	Birth name of patient's mother.
Medical Record Locator	(0010,1090)	An identifier used to find the patient's existing medical record (e.g. film jacket).

C.2.3 Patient Demographic Module

Table C.2-3 defines the Attributes relevant to generally describing a patient.

Table C.2-3
PATIENT DEMOGRAPHIC MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
Patient's Age	(0010,1010)	Age of the Patient.
Occupation	(0010,2180)	Occupation of the Patient.
Confidentiality Constraint on Patient Data Description	(0040,3001)	Special indication to the modality operator about confidentiality of patient information (e.g., that he should not use the patients name where other patients are present).
Patient's Birth Date	(0010,0030)	Date of birth of the named patient
Patient's Birth Time	(0010,0032)	Time of birth of the named patient
Patient's Sex	(0010,0040)	Sex of the named patient. Enumerated Values: M = male F = female O = other
Patient's Insurance Plan Code Sequence	(0010,0050)	A sequence that conveys the patient's insurance plan. Zero or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
Patient's Primary Language Code Sequence	(0010,0101)	The languages that can be used to communicate with the patient. Zero or more Items may be included in the sequence. The sequence items are ordered by preference (most preferred language to least preferred language).
> Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is CID 5000 - Languages.*
> Patient's Primary Language Code Modifier Sequence	(0010,0102)	A modifer for a Patient's Primary Language. Can be used to specify a national language variant. Exactly one Item may be included in the sequence.
>> Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is CID 5001 - Countries.*
Patient's Size	(0010,1020)	Patient's height or length in meters
Patient's Weight	(0010,1030)	Weight of the patient in kilograms
Patient's Address	(0010,1040)	Legal address of the named patient
Military Rank	(0010,1080)	Military rank of patient
Branch of Service	(0010,1081)	Branch of the military. The country allegiance may also be included (e.g. U.S. Army).
Country of Residence	(0010,2150)	Country in which patient currently resides
Region of Residence	(0010,2152)	Region within patient's country of residence
Patient's Telephone Numbers	(0010,2154)	Telephone numbers at which the patient can be reached
Ethnic Group	(0010,2160)	Ethnic group or race of patient

Patient's Religious Preference	(0010,21F0)	The religious preference of the patient
Patient Comments	(0010,4000)	User-defined comments about the patient
Responsible Person	(0010,2297)	Name of person with medical decision making authority for the patient.
Responsible Person Role	(0010,2298)	Relationship of Responsible Person to the patient. Defined Terms: OWNER
Responsible Organization	(0010,2299)	Name of organization with medical decision making authority for the patient.
Patient Species Description	(0010,2201)	The species of the patient.
Patient Species Code Sequence	(0010,2202)	The species of the patient.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-2		*Defined Context ID is 7454.*
Patient Breed Description	(0010,2292)	The breed of the patient.
Patient Breed Code Sequence	(0010,2293)	The breed of the patient.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-2		*Defined Context ID is 7480.*
Breed Registration Sequence	(0010,2294)	Information identifying an animal within a breed registry.
>Breed Registration Number	(0010,2295)	Identification number of a veterinary patient within the registry.
>Breed Registry Code Sequence	(0010,2296)	Identification of the organization with which an animal is registered.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Defined Context ID is 7481.*

Note: The language codes specified in CID 5000, used in Patient's Primary Language Code Sequence (0010,0101), optionally allow the encoding of the country of language in the code value for the language. Encoding of the country of language in a subsidiary Patient's Primary Language Code Modifier Sequence (0010,0102) is allowed for backward compatibility with previous editions of the Standard.

C.2.4 Patient Medical Module

Table C.2-4 defines the Attributes relevant to a patient's medical state or history.

Table C.2-4
PATIENT MEDICAL MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
Medical Alerts	(0010,2000)	Conditions to which medical staff should be alerted (e.g. contagious condition, drug allergies, etc.)
Contrast Allergies	(0010,2110)	Description of prior reaction to contrast agents.
Smoking Status	(0010,21A0)	Indicates whether patient smokes. Enumerated Values: YES NO UNKNOWN
Additional Patient History	(0010,21B0)	Additional information about the patient's medical history
Pregnancy Status	(0010,21C0)	Describes pregnancy state of patient. Enumerated Values: 0001 = not pregnant 0002 = possibly pregnant 0003 = definitely pregnant 0004 = unknown
Last Menstrual Date	(0010,21D0)	Date of onset of last menstrual period
Patient’s Sex Neutered	(0010,2203)	Whether or not a procedure has been performed in an effort to render the patient sterile. Enumerated value: ALTERED = Altered/Neutered UNALTERED = Unaltered/intact
Special Needs	(0038,0050)	Medical and social needs (e.g. wheelchair, oxygen, non-English-speaking, etc.)
Patient State	(0038,0500)	Description of patient state (comatose, disoriented, vision impaired, etc.)
Pertinent Documents Sequence	(0038,0100)	List of Documents (e.g., SR, or CDA) that contain information considered pertinent for the patient medical condition. Zero or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	SOP Class UID of the Referenced Document
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	SOP Instance UID of the Referenced Document
>Purpose of Reference Code Sequence	(0040,A170)	Describes the purpose for which the document reference is made. Zero or more Items may be present.
>>Include ‘Code Sequence Macro’ Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context Group ID defined*
>Document Title	(0042,0010)	Title of the referenced document.
Patient Clinical Trial Participation Sequence	(0038,0502)	Sequence of identifiers for clinical trials in which the patient participates.

		Zero or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>Clinical Trial Sponsor Name	(0012,0010)	The name of the clinical trial sponsor, responsible for conducting the clinical trial and for defining the Clinical Trial Protocol.
>Clinical Trial Protocol ID	(0012,0020)	Identifier for the noted protocol, used by the Clinical Trial Sponsor to uniquely identify the investigational protocol.
>Clinical Trial Protocol Name	(0012,0021)	The name or title of the clinical trial protocol.
>Clinical Trial Site ID	(0012,0030)	The identifier, issued by the Clinical Trial Sponsor, of the site responsible for submitting clinical trial data.
>Clinical Trial Site Name	(0012,0031)	Name of the site responsible for submitting clinical trial data.
>Clinical Trial Subject ID	(0012,0040)	The assigned identifier for the patient as a clinical trial subject.
>Clinical Trial Subject Reading ID	(0012,0042)	Identifies the patient as a clinical trial subject for blinded evaluations.

Note: The Patient Clinical Trial Participation Sequence (0038,0502) identifies potentially multiple trials in which the patient is enrolled. Application behavior in the presence of multiple items is outside the scope of the standard.

C.3 VISIT MODULES

The following Sections specify Modules relevant to a real world patient visit.

C.3.1 Visit Relationship Module

Table C.3-1 defines the Attributes that reference SOP Instances related to this SOP Class.

Table C.3-1
VISIT RELATIONSHIP MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
Referenced Study Sequence	(0008,1110)	Uniquely identifies the Study SOP Instances associated with the Visit SOP Instance. One or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.
Referenced Patient Sequence	(0008,1120)	Uniquely identifies the Patient SOP Instance that relates to the Visit SOP Instance. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this Sequence.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.

C.3.2 Visit Identification Module

Table C.3-2 defines the Attributes relevant to identifying a visit.

Table C.3-2
VISIT IDENTIFICATION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
Institution Name	(0008,0080)	Institution where the equipment is located
Institution Address	(0008,0081)	Mailing Address of the institution where the equipment is located
Institution Code Sequence	(0008,0082)	A sequence that conveys the healthcare facility identification. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this Sequence.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
Admission ID	(0038,0010)	Identification number of the visit as assigned by the healthcare provider
Issuer of Admission ID	(0038,0011)	Name of healthcare provider which issued the Admission ID

C.3.3 Visit Status Module

Table C.3-3 defines the Attributes relevant to the patient's stay with the healthcare provider.

Table C.3-3
VISIT STATUS MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
Visit Status ID	(0038,0008)	Identifies the state of the visit. Defined Terms: CREATED = Created but not yet scheduled SCHEDULED = Scheduled but not yet admitted ADMITTED = Patient admitted to institution DISCHARGED = Patient Discharged
Current Patient Location	(0038,0300)	Describes the current known location of the patient
Patient's Institution Residence	(0038,0400)	Primary location where patient resides (ward, floor, room, etc. or outpatient)
Visit Comments	(0038,4000)	User-defined comments about the visit

C.3.4 Visit Admission Module

Table C.3-4 defines the Attributes relevant to admitting a patient during a visit.

Table C.3-4
VISIT ADMISSION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	**Tag**	**Attribute Description**
Referring Physician's Name	(0008,0090)	Patient's primary referring physician for this visit
Referring Physician's Address	(0008,0092)	Referring physician's address
Referring Physician's Telephone Numbers	(0008,0094)	Referring physician's telephone numbers
Referring Physician Identification Sequence	(0008,0096)	Identification of the patient's referring physician. Only a single item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Include 'Person Identification Macro' Table 10-1		
Admitting Diagnoses Description	(0008,1080)	Description of admitting diagnosis (diagnoses).
Admitting Diagnoses Code Sequence	(0008,1084)	A sequence that conveys the admitting diagnosis (diagnoses). One or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
Route of Admissions	(0038,0016)	Mode of admission: emergency, normal
Admitting Date	(0038,0020)	Date patient visit began
Admitting Time	(0038,0021)	Time patient visit began

C.3.5 Visit Discharge Module

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.3.6 Visit Scheduling Module

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.4 STUDY MODULES

The following Sections specify Modules relevant to a real world diagnostic imaging study performed on a patient.

C.4.1 Study Relationship Module

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.4.2 Study Identification Module

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.4.3 Study Classification Module

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.4.4 Study Scheduling Module

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.4.5 Study Acquisition Module

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.4.6 Study Read Module

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.4.7 Study Component Module

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.4.8 Study Component Relationship Module

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.4.9 Study Component Acquisition Module

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.4.10 Scheduled Procedure Step Module

Table C.4-10
SCHEDULED PROCEDURE STEP MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
Scheduled Procedure Step Sequence	(0040,0100)	One or more Scheduled Procedure Steps for one Requested Procedure.
>Scheduled Station AE Title	(0040,0001)	The AE title of the modality on which the Scheduled Procedure Step is scheduled to be performed.
>Scheduled Station Name	(0040,0010)	An institution defined name for the modality on which the Scheduled Procedure Step is scheduled to be performed.
>Scheduled Procedure Step Location	(0040,0011)	The location at which the Procedure Step is scheduled to be performed.
>Scheduled Procedure Step Start Date	(0040,0002)	Date on which the Scheduled Procedure Step is scheduled to start.
>Scheduled Procedure Step Start Time	(0040,0003)	Time at which the Scheduled Procedure Step is scheduled to start.
>Scheduled Procedure Step End Date	(0040,0004)	Date on which the Scheduled Procedure Step is scheduled to end.
>Scheduled Procedure Step End Time	(0040,0005)	Time at which the Scheduled Procedure Step is scheduled to end.
>Scheduled Performing Physician's Name	(0040,0006)	Name of the physician scheduled to administer the Scheduled Procedure Step.
>Scheduled Performing Physician Identification Sequence	(0040,000B)	Identification of the physician scheduled to administer the Scheduled Procedure Step. Only a single item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>>Include 'Person Identification Macro' Table 10-1		
>Scheduled Procedure Step Description	(0040,0007)	Institution-generated description or classification of the Scheduled Procedure Step to be performed. Note: The purpose of this attribute is to store a description or classification that is used at a local level (e.g., a hospital or a managed care network), and this description need not comply to an accepted standard.
>Scheduled Protocol Code Sequence	(0040,0008)	Sequence describing the Scheduled Protocol following a specified coding scheme. This

		sequence contains one or more Items.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
>>Protocol Context Sequence	(0040,0440)	Sequence that specifies the context for the Scheduled Protocol Code Sequence Item. One or more items may be included in this sequence. See Section C.4.10.1.
>>>Include 'Content Item Macro' Table 10-2		*No Baseline Template is defined.*
>>> Content Item Modifier Sequence	(0040,0441)	Sequence that specifies modifiers for a Protocol Context Content Item. One or more items may be included in this sequence. See Section C.4.10.1.
>>>>Include 'Content Item Macro' Table 10-2		*No Baseline Template is defined.*
>Scheduled Procedure Step ID	(0040,0009)	Identifier that identifies the Scheduled Procedure Step.
>Scheduled Procedure Step Status	(0040,0020)	A real world condition that may affect the selection of of the Scheduled Procedure Step. Defined Terms: SCHEDULED – Procedure Step scheduled ARRIVED – patient is available for the Scheduled Procedure Step READY – all patient and other necessary preparation for this step has been completed STARTED – at least one Performed Procedure Step has been created that references this Scheduled Procedure Step
>Comments on the Scheduled Procedure Step	(0040,0400)	User-defined comments on the Scheduled Procedure Step. Note: The Comments attribute is intended to transmit non-structured information, which can be displayed to the operator of the Modality.
>Modality	(0008,0060)	Source equipment for the image. See Section C.7.3.1.1.1 for Defined Terms.
>Requested Contrast Agent	(0032,1070)	Contrast agent requested for use in the Scheduled Procedure Step.
>Pre-Medication	(0040,0012)	Medication to be administered at the beginning of the Scheduled Procedure Step, e.g. Nuclear Medicine radiopharmaceutical.

C.4.10.1 Protocol Context Sequence

The Protocol Context Sequence (0040,0440) allows the specification of parameters that further qualify the scheduled protocol, provided through a set of generic name/value pairs of context Content Items.

Note: This allows the specification of clinical, acquisition, or procedural qualifiers for the scheduled protocol, such as a specific body part, imaging technique, or parameters of a preparatory event (e.g., radionuclide injection). Specific uses of this Sequence may be documented in a Template defined in accordance with PS3.16.

C.4.11 Requested Procedure Module

Table C.4-11
REQUESTED PROCEDURE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
Requested Procedure ID	(0040,1001)	Identifier that identifies the Requested Procedure in the Imaging Service Request.
Reason for the Requested Procedure	(0040,1002)	Reason for requesting this imaging procedure. Note: This reason is more specific to the requested procedure than the reason mentioned in the imaging service request (0040,2001).
Requested Procedure Comments	(0040,1400)	User-defined comments on the Requested Procedure.
Reason for Requested Procedure Code Sequence	(0040,100A)	Coded Reason for requesting this procedure. One or more sequence items may be present.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
Requested Procedure Code Sequence	(0032,1064)	A sequence that conveys the Requested Procedure of one Procedure Type.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
Study Instance UID	(0020,000D)	Unique identifier to be used to identify the Study
Study Date	(0008,0020)	Date the Study started, if any previous procedure steps within the same study have already been performed.
Study Time	(0008,0030)	Time the Study started, if any previous procedure steps within the same study have already been performed.
Referenced Study Sequence	(0008,1110)	Uniquely identifies the Study SOP Instances associated with this SOP Instance.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	Uniquely identifies the SOP Class.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	Uniquely identifies the SOP Instance.
Requested Procedure Description	(0032,1060)	Institution-generated administrative description or classification of Requested Procedure
Requested Procedure Priority	(0040,1003)	Requested Procedure Type Urgency. Defined Terms: STAT, HIGH, ROUTINE, MEDIUM, LOW
Patient Transport Arrangements	(0040,1004)	Mode of transportation of the patient to the location of examination.
Requested Procedure Location	(0040,1005)	Physical location at which the Requested Procedure is to be performed.
Confidentiality Code	(0040,1008)	Confidentiality Constraints on the Requested Procedure by the party filling the order.
Reporting Priority	(0040,1009)	Requested Reporting Priority. Defined Terms: HIGH, ROUTINE, MEDIUM, LOW
Names of Intended Recipients of Results	(0040,1010)	Names of the physicians, who are intended recipients of results.
Intended Recipients of Results	(0040,1011)	Identification of the physicians who are intended

Identification Sequence		recipients of results. One or more items shall be included in this sequence. If more than one Item, the number and order shall correspond to the value of Names of Intended Recipients of Results (0040,1010), if present.
>>Include 'Person Identification Macro' Table 10-1		

Note: Attributes (0040,1006) Placer Order Number/Procedure and (0040,1007) Filler Order Number/Procedure were previously defined in DICOM. They are now retired (See PS3.3 1998).

C.4.12 Imaging Service Request Module

Table C.4-12
IMAGING SERVICE REQUEST MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
Imaging Service Request Comments	(0040,2400)	User-defined comments on the Imaging Service Request. Note: The Comments attribute is intended to transmit non-structured information, which can be displayed to the operator of the equipment (e.g. Modality).
Requesting Physician	(0032,1032)	Name of the physician who requested the Imaging Service Request.
Requesting Physician Identification Sequence	(0032,1031)	Identification of the physician who requested the Imaging Service Request. Only a single item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Include 'Person Identification Macro' Table 10-1		
Referring Physician's Name	(0008,0090)	Name of the patient's referring physician for this Imaging Service Request.
Referring Physician Identification Sequence	(0008,0096)	Identification of the patient's referring physician. Only a single item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Include 'Person Identification Macro' Table 10-1		
Requesting Service	(0032,1033)	Institutional department where the request initiated.
Accession Number	(0008,0050)	A departmental IS generated number that identifies the order for the Imaging Service Request.
Issue Date of Imaging Service Request	(0040,2004)	Date on which the Imaging Service Request was issued by the requester.
Issue Time of Imaging Service Request	(0040,2005)	Time at which the Imaging Service Request was issued by the requester.
Placer Order Number / Imaging Service Request	(0040,2016)	The order number assigned to the Imaging Service Request by the party placing the order.
Filler Order Number / Imaging Service Request	(0040,2017)	The order number assigned to the Imaging Service Request by the party filling the order.
Order entered by ...	(0040,2008)	The person who entered the Imaging Service Request into an Information System.
Order Enterer's Location	(0040,2009)	The location at which the Imaging Service Request

		was entered.
Order Callback Phone Number	(0040,2010)	Telephone Number at which additional information can be retrieved.
Admission ID	(0038,0010)	Identification number of the visit as assigned by the healthcare provider
Issuer of Admission ID	(0038,0011)	Name of healthcare provider that issued the Admission ID

Notes: 1. Attributes (0040,2016) and (0040,2017) Placer Order Number and Filler Order Number/Imaging Service Request are intended to convey the corresponding order numbers as defined in HL7, in the case where interoperability with an HL7 environment is the objective.

2. Attributes (0040,2001), (0040,2006) and (0040,2007) were previously defined in DICOM. They are now retired (See PS3.3 1998).

C.4.13 Performed Procedure Step Relationship

Table C.4-13 specifies the Attributes used to reference other SOP Classes and other Information Entities of the DICOM real-world model as defined in Section 7.3.1.6.

Table C.4-13
PERFORMED PROCEDURE STEP RELATIONSHIP MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
Patient's Name	(0010,0010)	Patient's full legal name.
Patient ID	(0010,0020)	Primary hospital identification number or code for the patient.
Issuer of Patient ID	(0010,0021)	Identifier of the Assigning Authority that issued the Patient ID.
Patient's Birth Date	(0010,0030)	Date of birth of the named patient
Patient's Sex	(0010,0040)	Sex of the named Patient. Enumerated Values: M = male F = female O = other
Referenced Patient Sequence	(0008,1120)	Uniquely identifies the Patient SOP Instance.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.
Scheduled Step Attributes Sequence	(0040,0270)	Sequence containing attributes that are related to the scheduling of the Procedure Step. The Sequence may have one or more Items.
>Study Instance UID	(0020,000D)	Unique identifier for the Study.
>Referenced Study Sequence	(0008,1110)	Uniquely identifies the Study SOP Instance associated with this Scheduled Procedure Step. This Sequence shall have only one Item.
>>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	Uniquely identifies the SOP Class.
>>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	Uniquely identifies the SOP Instance.
>Accession Number	(0008,0050)	A departmental IS generated number that identifies

		the order for the Study.
>Placer Order Number/Imaging Service Request	(0040,2016)	The order number assigned to the Imaging Service Request by the party placing the order.
>Filler Order Number/Imaging Service Request	(0040,2017)	The order number assigned to the Imaging Service Request by the party filling the order.
>Requested Procedure ID	(0040,1001)	Identifier of the related Requested Procedure.
>Requested Procedure Description	(0032,1060)	Institution-generated administrative description or classification of Requested Procedure.
>Requested Procedure Code Sequence	(0032,1064)	A sequence that conveys the Procedure Type of the requested procedure. The Requested Procedure Code Sequence shall contain only a single item.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
>Scheduled Procedure Step ID	(0040,0009)	Identifier of the related Scheduled Procedure Step.
>Scheduled Procedure Step Description	(0040,0007)	Institution-generated description or classification of the Scheduled Procedure Step to be performed.
>Scheduled Protocol Code Sequence	(0040,0008)	Sequence describing the Scheduled Protocol following a specific coding scheme. This sequence contains one or more Items.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
>>Protocol Context Sequence	(0040,0440)	Sequence that specifies the context for the Scheduled Protocol Code Sequence Item. One or more items may be included in this sequence. See Section C.4.10.1.
>>>Include 'Content Item Macro' Table 10-2		*No Baseline Template is defined.*
>>> Content Item Modifier Sequence	(0040,0441)	Sequence that specifies modifiers for a Protocol Context Content Item. One or more items may be included in this sequence. See Section C.4.10.1.
>>>>Include 'Content Item Macro' Table 10-2		*No Baseline Template is defined.*

Notes: 1. The patient information is included in order to relate the Modality Performed Procedure Step SOP Instance to the Study Management SOP Instance and other associated IODs in case the SCU (the modality) is unable to obtain or use the Study Instance UID created by the Information System.

2. Attributes (0040,2016) and (0040,2017) Placer Order Number and Filler Order Number/Imaging Service Request are intended to convey the corresponding order numbers as defined in HL7, in the case where interoperability with an HL7 environment is the objective.

3. Attributes (0040,2006) and (0040,2007) were previously defined in DICOM. They are now retired (See PS3.3 1998).

4. Attributes (0040,1006) Placer Order Number/Procedure and (0040,1007) Filler Order Number/Procedure were previously defined in DICOM. They are now retired (See PS3.3 1998).

C.4.14 Performed Procedure Step Information

Table C.4-14 defines the general attributes that may be used by all specific Procedure Steps.

Table C.4-14
PERFORMED PROCEDURE STEP INFORMATION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
Performed Station AE Title	(0040,0241)	AE title of the modality on which the Performed Procedure Step was performed.
Performed Station Name	(0040,0242)	An institution defined name for the modality on which the Performed Procedure Step was performed.
Performed Location	(0040,0243)	Description of the location at which the Performed Procedure Step was performed.
Performed Procedure Step Start Date	(0040,0244)	Date on which the Performed Procedure Step started. Note: This value may be used to determine the earliest date to use as the Study Date (0008,0020) in composite instances and in updated Modality Scheduled Procedure Steps in order to allow Study level attributes to have consistent values if additional Procedure Steps are performed.
Performed Procedure Step Start Time	(0040,0245)	Time at which the Performed Procedure Step started. Note: This value may be used to determine the earliest time to use as the Study Time (0008,0030) in composite instances and in updated Modality Scheduled Procedure Steps in order to allow Study level attributes to have consistent values if additional Procedure Steps are performed.
Performed Procedure Step ID	(0040,0253)	User or equipment generated identifier of that part of a Procedure that has been carried out within this step.
Performed Procedure Step End Date	(0040,0250)	Date on which the Performed Procedure Step ended.
Performed Procedure Step End Time	(0040,0251)	Time at which the Performed Procedure Step ended.
Performed Procedure Step Status	(0040,0252)	Contains the state of the Performed Procedure Step. Enumerated Values: IN PROGRESS = Started but not complete DISCONTINUED = Canceled or unsuccessfully terminated COMPLETED = Successfully completed
Performed Procedure Step Description	(0040,0254)	Institution-generated description or classification of the Procedure Step that was performed.
Comments on the Performed Procedure Step	(0040,0280)	User-defined comments on the Performed Procedure Step.
Performed Procedure Type Description	(0040,0255)	A description of the type of procedure performed.
Procedure Code Sequence	(0008,1032)	A sequence that conveys the (single) type of procedure performed.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*

Performed Procedure Step Discontinuation Reason Code Sequence	(0040,0281)	The reason the Performed Procedure Step Status (0040,0252) was set to DISCONTINUED.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Defined Context ID is 9300.*

C.4.15 Image Acquisition Results

Table C.4-15 specifies attributes that describe the acquisition of images during the performance of the Procedure Step and that provide references to the Series, Images and other Composite SOP Instances associated with this Modality Performed Procedure Step.

Table C.4-15
IMAGE ACQUISITION RESULTS MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
Modality	(0008,0060)	Type of equipment that originally acquired the data used to create the images associated with this Modality Performed Procedure Step. See C.7.3.1.1.1 for Defined Terms. Note: A Modality value in the created SOP Instances may be different from the MPPS Modality value. For example, multiple series may have been created during the MPPS (images, waveforms, softcopy presentation states and/or structured reports) with SOP Instances in different series having different modality values.
Study ID	(0020,0010)	User or equipment generated Study Identifier.
Performed Protocol Code Sequence	(0040,0260)	Sequence describing the Protocol performed for this Procedure Step. This sequence may have zero or more Items.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
>Protocol Context Sequence	(0040,0440)	Sequence that specifies the context for the Performed Protocol Code Sequence Item. One or more items may be included in this sequence. See Section C.4.10.1.
>>Include 'Content Item Macro' Table 10-2		*No Baseline Template is defined.*
>> Content Item Modifier Sequence	(0040,0441)	Sequence that specifies modifiers for a Protocol Context Content Item. One or more items may be included in this sequence. See Section C.4.10.1.
>>>Include 'Content Item Macro' Table 10-2		*No Baseline Template is defined.*
Performed Series Sequence	(0040,0340)	Attributes of the Series that comprise this Modality Performed Procedure Step. The Sequence may have zero or more Items.
>Performing Physician's Name	(0008,1050)	Name of the physician(s) administering this Series.
>Performing Physician Identification Sequence	(0008,1052)	Identification of the physician(s) administering the Series. One or more items shall be included in this sequence. If more than one Item, the number and order shall correspond to the value of Performing Physician's Name (0008,1050), if present.

>>Include 'Person Identification Macro' Table 10-1		
>Operators' Name	(0008,1070)	Name(s) of the operator(s) who supporting this Series.
>Operator Identification Sequence	(0008,1072)	Identification of the operator(s) supporting the Series. One or more items shall be included in this sequence. If more than one Item, the number and order shall correspond to the value of Operators' Name (0008,1070), if present.
>>Include 'Person Identification Macro' Table 10-1		
>Protocol Name	(0018,1030)	User-defined description of the conditions under which the Series was performed. Note: This attribute conveys series-specific protocol identification and may or may not be identical to the one presented in the Performed Protocol Code Sequence (0040,0260).
>Series Instance UID	(0020,000E)	Unique Identifier of the Series.
>Series Description	(0008,103E)	User provided description of the Series
>Retrieve AE Title	(0008,0054)	Title of the DICOM Application Entity where the Images and other Composite SOP Instances in this Series may be retrieved on the network. Note: The duration for which this location remains valid is unspecified.
>Referenced Image Sequence	(0008,1140)	A Sequence that provides reference to one or more sets of Image SOP Class/SOP Instance pairs created during the acquisition of the procedure step. The sequence may have zero or more Items.
>>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.
>Referenced Non-Image Composite SOP Instance Sequence	(0040,0220)	Uniquely identifies instances, other than images, of any SOP Class that conforms to the DICOM Composite IOD Information Model, such as Waveforms, Presentation States or Structured Reports, created during the acquisition of the procedure step. The sequence may have zero or more Items.
>>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.

C.4.16 Radiation Dose

Table C.4-16 defines the Attributes that may be used to communicate information related to radiation dose values. The attributes are intended to enable the Information System to store Patient exposure to ionizing radiation for legal purposes. Though these attributes are not intended to be used to accurately calculate volume dose distribution, they may serve for some quality control purposes.

This module provides a means to communicate radiation dose values but DICOM does not define any requirements for the accuracy of these values, which may be defined in other professional, national or international standards.

The scope of the attributes contained in this module covers the entire acquisition that comprises the Modality Performed Procedure Step. Attributes that relate to single images, such as mAs or kVP, may be included in the Image IODs. It is beyond the scope of DICOM to define what attributes may be required to calculate or estimate area dose product values.

Note: The X-Ray Radiation Dose SR SOP Class provides a more comprehensive means of reporting radiation dose. Such a dose report may be referenced in the Image Acquisition Results Module.

Table C.4-16
RADIATION DOSE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
Anatomic Structure, Space or Region Sequence	(0008,2229)	Anatomic structure, space or region that has been exposed to ionizing radiation. The sequence may have zero or one Items.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
Total Time of Fluoroscopy	(0040,0300)	Total duration of X-Ray exposure during fluoroscopy in seconds (pedal time) during this Performed Procedure Step.
Total Number of Exposures	(0040,0301)	Total number of exposures made during this Performed Procedure Step. The number includes non-digital and digital exposures.
Distance Source to Detector	(0018,1110)	Distance in mm from the source to detector center. Note: This value is traditionally referred to as Source Image Receptor Distance (SID).
Distance Source to Entrance	(0040,0306)	Distance in mm from the source to the surface of the patient closest to the source during this Performed Procedure Step. Note: This may be an estimated value based on assumptions about the patient's body size and habitus.
Entrance Dose	(0040,0302)	Average entrance dose value measured in dGy at the surface of the patient during this Performed Procedure Step. Note: This may be an estimated value based on assumptions about the patient's body size and habitus.
Entrance Dose in mGy	(0040,8302)	Average entrance dose value measured in mGy at the surface of the patient during this Performed Procedure Step. Note: This may be an estimated value based on assumptions about the patient's body size and habitus.
Exposed Area	(0040,0303)	Typical dimension of the exposed area at the detector plane. If Rectangular: row dimension followed by column; if Round: diameter. Measured in mm. Notes: 1. This may be an estimated value based on assumptions about the patient's body size and

		habitus. 2. This attribute is used in the X-ray Acquisition Dose Module with units in cm (see Section C 8.7.8 Table C.8-33).
Image and Fluoroscopy Area Dose Product	(0018,115E)	Total area-dose-product to which the patient was exposed, accumulated over the complete Performed Procedure Step and measured in dGy*cm*cm, including fluoroscopy. Notes: 1. The sum of the area dose product of all images of a Series or a Study may not result in the total area dose product to which the patient was exposed. 2. This may be an estimated value based on assumptions about the patient's body size and habitus.
Comments on Radiation Dose	(0040,0310)	User-defined comments on any special conditions related to radiation dose encountered during this Performed Procedure Step.
Exposure Dose Sequence	(0040,030E)	Exposure Dose Sequence will contain Total Number of Exposures (0040,0301) items plus an item for each fluoroscopy episode not already counted as an exposure.
>Radiation Mode	(0018,115A)	Specifies X-Ray radiation mode. Enumerated Values: CONTINUOUS PULSED
>KVp	(0018,0060)	Peak kilo voltage output of the x-ray generator used. An average in the case of fluoroscopy (continuous radiation mode).
>X-ray Tube Current in µA	(0018,8151)	X-ray Tube Current in µA. An average in the case of fluoroscopy (continuous radiation mode).
>Exposure Time	(0018,1150)	Time of x-ray exposure or fluoroscopy in msec.
>Filter Type	(0018,1160)	Type of filter(s) inserted into the X-Ray beam (e.g. wedges). See C.8.7.10 and C.8.15.3.9 (for enhanced CT) for Defined Terms.
>Filter Material	(0018,7050)	The X-Ray absorbing material used in the filter. May be multi-valued. See C.8.7.10 and C.8.15.3.9 (for enhanced CT) for Defined Terms.
>Comments on Radiation Dose	(0040,0310)	User-defined comments on any special conditions related to radiation dose encountered during during the episode described by this Exposure Dose Sequence Item.

Notes: 1. The Anatomic Region may be deduced from attribute values available within the Modality Worklist Management SOP Class, such as Reason for Service Request, Reasons for Requested Procedure, Scheduled Procedure Step Description and Scheduled Protocol Code Sequence.

2. The Image Area Dose Product should take into account collimator position and filters, and the value for the Exposed Area should also take into account collimator position. If the equipment

does not provide the Entrance Dose, it may be calculated using Area Dose Product, Exposed Area, SID and an assumed body thickness.

3. The Distance Source to Detector (0018,1110) and Exposed Area (0040,0303) are only meaningful if they remain constant for all acquisitions during this Performed Procedure Step.

C.4.17 Billing and Material Management Codes

The Attributes defined in Table C.4-17 provide a means to transmit billing and material management codes from a modality to an Information System. It is beyond the scope of this Standard to define all the required coding schemes and the relevant codes.

Table C.4-17
BILLING AND MATERIAL MANAGEMENT CODE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute name	Tag	Attribute Description
Billing Procedure Step Sequence	(0040,0320)	Contains billing codes for the Procedure Type performed within the Procedure Step. The sequence may have zero or more Items.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
Film Consumption Sequence	(0040,0321)	Information about the film consumption for this Performed Procedure Step. The sequence may have zero or more Items.
>Number of Films	(2100,0170)	Number of films actually printed.
>Medium Type	(2000,0030)	Type(s) of medium on which images were printed. For Defined Terms see Table C.13-1.
>Film Size ID	(2010,0050)	Size(s) of film on which images were printed. For Defined Terms see Table C.13-3.
Billing Supplies and Devices Sequence	(0040,0324)	Chemicals, supplies and devices for billing used in the Performed Procedure Step. The sequence may have one or more Items.
>Billing Item Sequence	(0040,0296)	Code values of chemicals, supplies or devices required for billing. The sequence may have zero or one Items.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
>Quantity Sequence	(0040,0293)	Sequence containing the quantity of used chemicals or devices. The sequence may have zero or one Items.
>>Quantity	(0040,0294)	Numerical quantity value.
>>Measuring Units Sequence	(0040,0295)	Unit of measurement. The sequence may have zero or one Items.
>>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 82.*

C.4.18 General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step Relationship Module

Table C.4-18

GENERAL PURPOSE SCHEDULED PROCEDURE STEP RELATIONSHIP MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
Patient's Name	(0010,0010)	Patient's full legal name.
Patient ID	(0010,0020)	Primary hospital identification number or code for the patient.
Issuer of Patient ID	(0010,0021)	Identifier of the Assigning Authority that issued the Patient ID.
Patient's Birth Date	(0010,0030)	Date of birth of the named patient.
Patient's Sex	(0010,0040)	Sex of the named Patient. Enumerated Values: M = male F = female O = other
Referenced Request Sequence	(0040,A370)	The list of Requested Procedures the Procedure Step shall contribute to. One or more Items may be included in the sequence.
>Study Instance UID	(0020,000D)	Unique identifier for the Study.
>Referenced Study Sequence	(0008,1110)	Uniquely identifies the Study SOP Instance that represents the Requested Procedure. Zero or one Item may be included in this sequence.
>>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	Uniquely identifies the SOP Class.
>>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	Uniquely identifies the SOP Instance.
>Accession Number	(0008,0050)	A departmental IS generated number that identifies the Imaging Service Request.
>Requested Procedure Code Sequence	(0032,1064)	A sequence that conveys the Procedure Type of the Requested Procedure. Zero or one Item may be included in this sequence.
>>Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
>Placer Order Number / Imaging Service Request	(0040,2016)	The order number assigned to the Imaging Service Request by the party placing the order.
>Filler Order Number / Imaging Service Request	(0040,2017)	The order number assigned to the Imaging Service Request by the party filling the order.
>Requested Procedure ID	(0040,1001)	Identifier that identifies the Requested Procedure in the Imaging Service Request.
>Requested Procedure Description	(0032,1060)	Institution-generated description or classification of the Requested Procedure.
>Reason for the Requested Procedure	(0040,1002)	Reason for requesting this procedure.
> Reason for Requested Procedure Code Sequence	(0040,100A)	Coded reason for requesting this procedure.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*

>Requested Procedure Comments	(0040,1400)	User-defined comments on the Requested Procedure.
>Confidentiality Code	(0040,1008)	Confidentiality Constraints on the Requested Procedure by the party filling the order.
>Names of Intended Recipients of Results	(0040,1010)	Names of the physicians, who are intended recipients of results.
>Imaging Service Request Comments	(0040,2400)	User-defined comments on the Imaging Service Request.
>Requesting Physician	(0032,1032)	Physician who requested the Imaging Service Request.
>Requesting Service	(0032,1033)	Institutional department where the request initiated.
>Issue Date of Imaging Service Request	(0040,2004)	Date on which the Imaging Service Request was issued by the requester.
>Issue Time of Imaging Service Request	(0040,2005)	Time at which the Imaging Service Request was issued by the requester.
>Referring Physician's Name	(0008,0090)	Patient's primary physician for this Imaging Service Request.

Note: Attribute (0040,2001) was previously defined in DICOM. It is now retired (See PS3.3 2003).

C.4.19 General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step Information Module

Table C.4-19
GENERAL PURPOSE SCHEDULED PROCEDURE STEP INFORMATION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step Status	(0040,4001)	A status that informs the operator and the worklist management system about the progress of the scheduled General Purpose procedure step. Enumerated Values are: SCHEDULED, IN PROGRESS, SUSPENDED, COMPLETED, DISCONTINUED. See PS 3.4 for a detailed description of the meaning and usage of these values.
General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step Priority	(0040,4003)	Scheduled Procedure Step priority. Enumerated Values are: HIGH: used to indicate an urgent or emergent work item, equivalent to a STAT request. MEDIUM: used to indicate a work item that has a priority less than HIGH and higher than LOW. It can be used to further stratify work items. LOW: used to indicate a routine or non-urgent work item.
Scheduled Procedure Step ID	(0040,0009)	Identifier that identifies the Scheduled General Purpose Procedure Step.
Scheduled Procedure Step	(0040,4010)	Date and time when the General Purpose

Modification Date and Time		Scheduled Procedure Step was last modified or first created (whichever is most recent). Note: This attribute should be implicitly updated by the worklist management system whenever any modification is made to attributes of a General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step. In particular, note that creation of General Purpose Performed Procedure Steps by a performing device can modify attributes of a related General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step (e.g. the contents of Resulting General Purpose Performed Procedure Steps Sequence (0040,4015)).
Scheduled Processing Applications Code Sequence	(0040,4004)	The list of processing application instances and/or application types on which the General Purpose Procedure Step is scheduled. Zero or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
Scheduled Station Name Code Sequence	(0040,4025)	Identifying name within the enterprise of the equipment for which the General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step is scheduled. The name conveyed in the Code Value (0008,0100) may be the same as the AE Title, but does not have to be. Zero or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
Scheduled Station Class Code Sequence	(0040,4026)	Class of the equipment for which the General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step is scheduled. Zero or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
Scheduled Station Geographic Location Code Sequence	(0040,4027)	Geographic location of the equipment for which the General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step is scheduled. Zero or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
Scheduled Human Performers Sequence	(0040,4034)	The list of human performers that are scheduled to be involved or responsible for performing the Workitem in the General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step. Zero or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>Human Performer Code Sequence	(0040,4009)	Human performer that is involved or responsible for performing the Workitem. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>>Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*

>Human Performer's Name	(0040,4037)	Name of the human performer.
>Human Performer's Organization	(0040,4036)	Organization to which the human performer is accountable for the activities in the Workitem.
Scheduled Procedure Step Start Date and Time	(0040,4005)	Date and time on which the General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step is scheduled to start.
Expected Completion Date and Time	(0040,4011)	Date on which the Procedure Step is expected to be completed.
Scheduled Workitem Code Sequence	(0040,4018)	A sequence that conveys the code for the Workitem. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is CID 9231.*
Comments on the Scheduled Procedure Step	(0040,0400)	User-defined comments on the Scheduled Procedure Step.
Referenced Performed Procedure Step Sequence	(0008,1111)	List of any Modality or General Purpose Performed Procedure Steps, that may be used to perform the procedure step. This sequence may contain references to performed procedure steps resulting from previous contributions to the performance of the procedure step (e.g. an image processing procedure step interrupted, and completed later). Zero or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	Uniquely identifies the SOP Class.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	Uniquely identifies the SOP Instance.
Input Availability Flag	(0040,4020)	Flag that indicates the availability of Composite SOP Instances in the Attribute "Input Information Sequence" (0040,4021) of the General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step. Enumerated values are: PARTIAL COMPLETE The value PARTIAL denotes that the list of Composite SOP Instances may not yet be complete, and additional ones may be added at a later time. The value COMPLETE denotes that all Composite SOP Instances are available and listed. Note: It may happen that the list of Composite SOP Instances is empty when the value of the Input Availability Flag is COMPLETE. In such a case a Workitem has been scheduled that does not require input information.
Input Information Sequence	(0040,4021)	List of Composite SOP Instances that forms the input information needed to perform the scheduled procedure step. See also Input Availability Flag (0040,4020). The same Composite SOP Instance shall not be included in both the Input Information Sequence (0040,4021) and the Relevant

		Information Sequence (0040,4022). Zero or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>Include 'SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table C.17-3		
Relevant Information Sequence	(0040,4022)	List of Composite SOP Instances that refers to relevant information that is considered pertinent for the performance of the scheduled procedure step. The same Composite SOP Instance shall not be included in both the Input Information Sequence (0040,4021) and the Relevant Information Sequence (0040,4022). Zero or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>Include 'SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table C.17-3		
Study Instance UID	(0020,000D)	Unique Study identification that shall be used for the created Composite SOP Instances resulting from this General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step. Note: In most cases this will be the same Study Instance UID as for the instances in the Input Information Sequence (0040,4021).
Study Date	(0008,0020)	Date the Study started, if any previous procedure steps within the same study have already been performed. Note: This value should be the same as that in the instances in the Input Information Sequence (0040,4021).
Study Time	(0008,0030)	Time the Study started, if any previous procedure steps within the same study have already been performed. Note: This value should be the same as that in the instances in the Input Information Sequence (0040,4021).
Multiple Copies Flag	(0040,4006)	This flag indicates that multiple copies have to be made of a Composite SOP Instance that supports the notion of multiple copies. This includes the SR SOP Class. If set the Study Instance UIDs in the Referenced Request Sequence (0040,A370) shall be used for the created multiple copies. Enumerated Values: Y = Yes N = No
Resulting General Purpose Performed Procedure Steps Sequence	(0040,4015)	List of all General Purpose Performed Procedure Steps that result from the performance of the procedure step. Zero or more Items may be included in this sequence. Note: Initially this list will be empty. New entries will be added when General Purpose Performed Procedure Steps are created by performing devices that are related to this Scheduled Procedure Step. E.g, this sequence may

		contain the partial results in case a General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step is discontinued.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	Uniquely identifies the SOP Class.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	Uniquely identifies the SOP Instance.
Actual Human Performers Sequence	(0040,4035)	The list of current human performers that are actually involved or responsible for performing the Workitem. Zero or more Items may be included in this sequence. Note: Initially this list will be empty. A list of entries may be created at the status transition of the General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step Status (0040,4001) to "IN PROGRESS"
>Human Performer Code Sequence	(0040,4009)	Human performer that is involved or responsible for performing the Workitem. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>>Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
>Human Performer's Name	(0040,4037)	Name of the human performer.
>Human Performer's Organization	(0040,4036)	Organization to which the human performer is accountable for the activities in the Workitem.

C.4.20 General Purpose Performed Procedure Step Relationship Module

Table C.4.20-1 specifies the Attributes used to reference other SOP Classes and other Information Entities of the DICOM real-world model as defined in PS 3.3 Section 7.3.1.11.

Table C.4.20-1
GENERAL PURPOSE PERFORMED PROCEDURE STEP RELATIONSHIP MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
Patient's Name	(0010,0010)	Patient's full legal name.
Patient ID	(0010,0020)	Primary hospital identification number or code for the patient.
Issuer of Patient ID	(0010,0021)	Identifier of the Assigning Authority that issued the Patient ID.
Patient's Birth Date	(0010,0030)	Date of birth of the named patient.
Patient's Sex	(0010,0040)	Sex of the named Patient. Enumerated Values: M = male F = female O = other
Referenced Request Sequence	(0040,A370)	The list of Requested Procedures the Procedure Step shall contribute to. Zero or more Items may be included in the sequence.
>Study Instance UID	(0020,000D)	Unique identifier for the Study.

>Referenced Study Sequence	(0008,1110)	Uniquely identifies the Study SOP Instance associated with this Scheduled Procedure Step. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	Uniquely identifies the SOP Class.
>>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	Uniquely identifies the SOP Instance.
>Accession Number	(0008,0050)	A departmental IS generated number that identifies the order for the Study.
>Requested Procedure Code Sequence	(0032,1064)	A sequence that conveys the Procedure Type of the Requested Procedure. Zero or one Item may be included in this sequence.
>>Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
>Placer Order Number/Imaging Service Request	(0040,2016)	The order number assigned to the Imaging Service Request by the party placing the order.
>Filler Order Number/Imaging Service Request	(0040,2017)	The order number assigned to the Imaging Service Request by the party filling the order.
>Requested Procedure ID	(0040,1001)	Identifier of the related Requested Procedure.
>Requested Procedure Description	(0032,1060)	Institution-generated administrative description or classification of Requested Procedure.
Referenced General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step Sequence	(0040,4016)	Uniquely identifies the General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step SOP Instance associated with this General Purpose Performed Procedure Step. Zero or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	Uniquely identifies the SOP Class.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	Uniquely identifies the SOP Instance.
>Referenced General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step Transaction UID	(0040,4023)	Transaction UID (0008,1195) used in the N-ACTION transaction that requested the transition to the IN PROGRESS state for the referenced General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Step.
Admission ID	(0038,0010)	Identification number of the visit as assigned by the healthcare provider
Issuer of Admission ID	(0038,0011)	Name of healthcare provider that issued the Admission ID

C.4.21 General Purpose Performed Procedure Step Information Module

Table C.4.21-1
GENERAL PURPOSE PERFORMED PROCEDURE STEP INFORMATION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
Actual Human Performers Sequence	(0040,4035)	The list of human performers that were actually involved in or responsible for performing this General Purpose Performed Procedure Step. Zero or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>Human Performer Code Sequence	(0040,4009)	Human performer that is actually involved or responsible for performing the General Purpose Performed Procedure Step. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>>Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
>Human Performer's Name	(0040,4037)	Name of the human performer.
>Human Performer's Organization	(0040,4036)	Organization to which the human performer is accountable for the activities in the General Purpose Performed Procedure Step.
Performed Station Name Code Sequence	(0040,4028)	Name within the enterprise of the equipment that created the General Purpose Performed Procedure Step. This name may be the same as the AE Title, but does not have to be. Zero or one Item may be included in this sequence.
>Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
Performed Station Class Code Sequence	(0040,4029)	Class of the equipment that created the General Purpose Performed Procedure Step. Zero or one Item may be included in this sequence.
>Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
Performed Station Geographic Location Code Sequence	(0040,4030)	Geographic location of the equipment that created General Purpose Performed Procedure Step. Zero or one Item may be included in this sequence.
>Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
Performed Processing Applications Code Sequence	(0040,4007)	The list of processing application instances and/or application types on which the General Purpose Performed Procedure Step is executed. Zero or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
Performed Procedure Step Start Date	(0040,0244)	Date on which the General Purpose Performed Procedure Step started. Note: This value may be used to determine the earliest date to use as the Study Date (0008,0020) in composite instances and in updated General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Steps in order to allow Study level attributes to have consistent values if additional Procedure Steps are performed.
Performed Procedure Step Start Time	(0040,0245)	Time at which the General Purpose Performed Procedure Step started. Note: This value may be used to determine the

		earliest time to use as the Study Time (0008,0030) in composite instances and in updated General Purpose Scheduled Procedure Steps in order to allow Study level attributes to have consistent values if additional Procedure Steps are performed.
Performed Procedure Step ID	(0040,0253)	User or equipment generated identifier of that part of a Procedure that has been carried out within this procedure step.
Performed Procedure Step End Date	(0040,0250)	Date on which the General Purpose Performed Procedure Step ended.
Performed Procedure Step End Time	(0040,0251)	Time at which the General Purpose Performed Procedure Step ended.
General Purpose Performed Procedure Step Status	(0040,4002)	Contains the state of the Performed Procedure Step. Enumerated Values: IN PROGRESS = Started but not complete DISCONTINUED = Canceled or unsuccessfully terminated COMPLETED = Successfully completed
Performed Procedure Step Description	(0040,0254)	Institution-generated description or classification of the Procedure Step that was performed.
Comments on the Performed Procedure Step	(0040,0280)	User-defined comments on the Performed Procedure Step. This attribute shall not be used as a substitute for the code meaning in the Performed Workitem Code Sequence (0040,4019).
Performed Workitem Code Sequence	(0040,4019)	A sequence that conveys the (single) type of procedure performed. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is CID 9231.*

C.4.22 General Purpose Results

Table C.4.22-1 specifies attributes that describe the creation of results during the performance of the General Purpose Procedure Step and that provide references to the Results and Structured Reporting SOP Instances associated with this General Purpose Performed Procedure Step.

Table C.4.22-1
GENERAL PURPOSE RESULTS MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
Output Information Sequence	(0040,4033)	A Sequence that provides reference to one or more Composite SOP instances, that identify the Structured Reports or other results created. Zero or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>Include 'SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table C.17-3		
Requested Subsequent Workitem Code Sequence	(0040,4031)	A Sequence that provides suggested next Workitems, based on the produced results. Note: This Attribute may also be used in case a step has been done incorrectly and should be redone. Zero or more Items may be included in this sequence
>Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is CID 9231.*
Non-DICOM Output Code Sequence	(0040,4032)	A Sequence that describes any non-DICOM output produced as results. Zero or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is CID 9232.*

C.4.23 Instance Availability Notification Module

Table C.4.23-1 specifies the Attributes used to describe which Instances are available and their relationships.

Table C.4.23-1
INSTANCE AVAILABILITY NOTIFICATION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
Referenced Performed Procedure Step Sequence	(0008,1111)	Uniquely identifies the Performed Procedure Step SOP Instance to which this availability notification instance is related, if any. The Sequence shall have zero or one Item. Notes: 1. This may refer to a different PPS than that encoded in the composite instances themselves. 2. It is typically used for notification about instances created as a consequence of some scheduled activity.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class of the Performed Procedure Step.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance of the Performed Procedure Step.
>Performed Workitem Code Sequence	(0040,4019)	A sequence that conveys the (single) type of procedure performed. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>>Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is CID 9231.*
Study Instance UID	(0020,000D)	Unique identifier for the Study of which all the Instances referenced in this notification are part.

Referenced Series Sequence	(0008,1115)	Sequence of Items where each Item includes references to Instances within the same Series. One or more Items shall be included in this Sequence.
>Series Instance UID	(0020,000E)	Unique identifier of the Series of which all the Instances referenced in this Item are part.
>Referenced SOP Sequence	(0008,1199)	Sequence of Items where each Item includes a reference to a single Instance within this Series. One or more Items shall be included in this Sequence.
>>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>>Reference SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.
>>Instance Availability	(0008,0056)	The availability of the referenced Instance. See Section C.4.23.1.1
>>Retrieve AE Title	(0008,0054)	Title of the DICOM Application Entity from which the referenced Instance may or may not be retrievable, i.e. the scope for which Instance Availability (0008,0056) applies. See Section C.4.23.1.1.
>>Storage Media File-Set ID	(0088,0130)	The user or implementation specific human readable identifier that identifies the offline storage media on which the instance resides.
>>Storage Media File-Set UID	(0088,0140)	Uniquely identifies the offline storage media on which the instance resides.

C.4.23.1 Instance Availability Notification Module Attribute Definitions

C.4.23.1.1 Instance Availability

The Enumerated Values for Instance Availability (0008,0056) are:

- “ONLINE” means the instances are immediately available from the Retrieve AE Title (0008,0054), and if a C-MOVE were to be requested, it would succeed in a reasonably short time
- “NEARLINE” means the instances need to be retrieved from relatively slow media such as optical disk or tape, and if a C-MOVE were to be requested from the Retrieve AE Title (0008,0054), it would succeed, but may take a considerable time
- “OFFLINE” means that a manual intervention is needed before the instances may be retrieved, and if a C-MOVE were to be requested from the Retrieve AE Title (0008,0054), it would fail (e.g., by timeout) without such manual intervention.
- “UNAVAILABLE” means the instances cannot be retrieved from the Retrieve AE Title (0008,0054), and if a C-MOVE were to be requested, it would fail. Note that SOP Instances that are unavailable from this AE may be available from other AEs, or may have an alternate representation that is available from this AE.

C.5 RESULTS MODULES

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.6 INTERPRETATION MODULES

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.7 COMMON COMPOSITE IMAGE IOD MODULES

This Section defines the Modules that are common to all Composite Image IODs.

C.7.1 Common Patient IE Modules

The following Patient IE Module is common to all Composite Image IODs that reference the Patient IE.

C.7.1.1 Patient Module

Table C.7-1 specifies the Attributes of the Patient that describe and identify the Patient who is the subject of a diagnostic Study. This Module contains Attributes of the patient that are needed for diagnostic interpretation of the Image and are common for all studies performed on the patient. It contains Attributes that are also included in the Patient Modules in Section C.2.

Table C.7-1
PATIENT MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Patient's Name	(0010,0010)	2	Patient's full name.
Patient ID	(0010,0020)	2	Primary hospital identification number or code for the patient.
Issuer of Patient ID	(0010,0021)	3	Identifier of the Assigning Authority that issued the Patient ID.
Patient's Birth Date	(0010,0030)	2	Birth date of the patient.
Patient's Sex	(0010,0040)	2	Sex of the named patient. Enumerated Values: M = male F = female O = other
Referenced Patient Sequence	(0008,1120)	3	A sequence that provides reference to a Patient SOP Class/Instance pair. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this Sequence.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class. Required if Referenced Patient Sequence (0008,1120) is sent.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance. Required if Referenced Patient Sequence (0008,1120) is sent.
Patient's Birth Time	(0010,0032)	3	Birth time of the Patient.
Other Patient IDs	(0010,1000)	3	Other identification numbers or codes used to identify the patient.
Other Patient IDs Sequence	(0010,1002)	3	A sequence of identification numbers or codes used to identify the patient, which may or may not be human readable, and may or may not have been obtained from an implanted or attached device such as an RFID or barcode. If present, shall contain one or more items.
>Patient ID	(0010,0010)	1	An identification number or code used to identify the patient.
>Issuer of Patient ID	(0010,0021)	1	Identifier of the Assigning Authority that issued the Patient ID.
>Type of Patient ID	(0010,0022)	1	The type of identifier in this item. Defined Terms: TEXT RFID BARCODE Note: The identifier is coded as a string regardless of the type, not as a binary value.
Other Patient Names	(0010,1001)	3	Other names used to identify the patient.
Ethnic Group	(0010,2160)	3	Ethnic group or race of the patient.

Patient Comments	(0010,4000)	3	User-defined additional information about the patient.
Patient Species Description	(0010,2201)	1C	The species of the patient. Required if the patient is an animal and if Patient Species Code Sequence (0010,2202) is not present. May be present otherwise.
Patient Species Code Sequence	(0010,2202)	1C	The species of the patient. One Item shall be present. Required if the patient is an animal and if Patient Species Description (0010,2201) is not present. May be present otherwise.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Defined Context ID is 7454.*	
Patient Breed Description	(0010,2292)	2C	The breed of the patient. Required if the patient is an animal and if Patient Breed Code Sequence (0010,2293) is empty. May be present otherwise.
Patient Breed Code Sequence	(0010,2293)	2C	The breed of the patient. Zero or more Items shall be present. Required if the patient is an animal.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Defined Context ID is 7480.*	
Breed Registration Sequence	(0010,2294)	2C	Information identifying an animal within a breed registry. Zero or more Items shall be present. Required if the patient is an animal.
>Breed Registration Number	(0010,2295)	1	Identification number of an animal within the registry.
>Breed Registry Code Sequence	(0010,2296)	1	Identification of the organization with which an animal is registered. One Item shall be present.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Defined Context ID is 7481.*	
Responsible Person	(0010,2297)	2C	Name of person with medical decision making authority for the patient. Required if the patient is an animal. May be present otherwise.
Responsible Person Role	(0010,2298)	1C	Relationship of Responsible Person to the patient. Defined Terms: OWNER Required if Responsible Person is present and has a value.
Responsible Organization	(0010,2299)	2C	Name of organization with medical decision making authority for the patient. Required if patient is an animal. May be

			present otherwise.
Patient Identity Removed	(0012,0062)	3	The true identity of the patient has been removed from the Attributes and the Pixel Data Enumerated Values: YES NO
De-identification Method	(0012,0063)	1C	A description or label of the mechanism or method use to remove the patient's identity. May be multi-valued if successive de-identification steps have been performed. Note: This may be used to describe the extent or thoroughness of the de-identification, for example whether or not the de-identification is for a "Limited Data Set" (as per HIPAA Privacy Rule). Required if Patient Identity Removed (0012,0062) is present and has a value of YES and De-identification Method Code Sequence (0012,0064) is not present.
De-identification Method Code Sequence	(0012,0064)	1C	A code describing the mechanism or method use to remove the patient's identity. One or more Items shall be present. Multiple items are used if successive de-identification steps have been performed Required if Patient Identity Removed (0012,0062) is present and has a value of YES and De-identification Method (0012,0063) is not present.
>Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1			*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*

C.7.1.2 Specimen Identification Module

Table C.7-2a specifies the Attributes that identify a Specimen.

Table C.7-2a
SPECIMEN IDENTIFICATION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Specimen Accession Number	(0040,050A)	1	A departmental Information System identifier that identifies the Accession. See Section C.7.1.2.1.1 for further explanation.
Specimen Sequence	(0040,0550)	2	Detailed description of one or more specimens. Zero or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>Specimen Identifier	(0040,0551)	2C	A departmental information system identifier for the Specimen. See Section C.7.1.2.1.2 for further explanation. Required if a sequence item is present.
>Specimen Type Code Sequence	(0040,059A)	2C	Specimen Type. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this Sequence. Required if a sequence item is present and Specimen Identifier (0040,0551) is sent.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		No Baseline Context IDs are defined	
>Slide Identifier	(0040,06FA)	2C	Identifier of the Slide. Required if a sequence item is present and the Specimen is a Slide.

C.7.1.2.1 Specimen Module Attributes

C.7.1.2.1.1 Specimen Accession Number

Specimen Accession Number (0040,06CA) is the primary identifier of the Specimen.

Note: Specimen Accession Number (0040,050A) identifies tissue or fluid obtained from a Patient in a Specimen-harvest procedure. This Attribute was created to differentiate Accession Numbers, as used in Anatomic Pathology to identify specimens, from other uses of the term "Accession Number" in Information Systems. The Specimen Accession Number (0040,050A) is typically unique within the scope of the institution in which the Accession is performed. An Accession may contain multiple Specimens. Typically, an Accession contains the Specimens obtained in one Specimen-harvest procedure and submitted by one Requesting Physician. However, multiple Specimen-harvest procedures may be involved.

C.7.1.2.1.2 Specimen Identifier

Specimen Identifier (0040,050A) may be used to convey a slide number, a block number, or other secondary identifier of the Specimen.

Note: The Specimen Identifier (0040,0551) is typically unique within the scope of the institution in which the related Accession is performed. However, a value of Specimen Identifier (0040,0551) does not always exist. For example, it is common practice in some Anatomic Pathology departments to use a Specimen Identifier (0040,0551) to identify specimen-containers or blocks only if multiple containers or blocks are submitted for a single Accession. Therefore, Specimen Identifier (0040,0551) is modeled as a Type 2 Attribute.

C.7.1.3 Clinical Trial Subject Module

Table C.7-2b contains attributes that identify a Patient as a clinical trial Subject.

Table C.7-2b
CLINICAL TRIAL SUBJECT MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Clinical Trial Sponsor Name	(0012,0010)	1	The name of the clinical trial sponsor. See C.7.1.3.1.1.
Clinical Trial Protocol ID	(0012,0020)	1	Identifier for the noted protocol. See C.7.1.3.1.2.
Clinical Trial Protocol Name	(0012,0021)	2	The name of the clinical trial protocol. See C.7.1.3.1.3.
Clinical Trial Site ID	(0012,0030)	2	The identifier of the site responsible for submitting clinical trial data. See C.7.1.3.1.4.
Clinical Trial Site Name	(0012,0031)	2	Name of the site responsible for submitting clinical trial data. See C.7.1.3.1.5
Clinical Trial Subject ID	(0012,0040)	1C	The assigned identifier for the clinical trial subject. See C.7.1.3.1.6. Shall be present if Clinical Trial Subject Reading ID (0012,0042) is absent. May be present otherwise.
Clinical Trial Subject Reading ID	(0012,0042)	1C	Identifies the subject for blinded evaluations. Shall be present if Clinical Trial Subject ID (0012,0040) is absent. May be present otherwise. See C.7.1.3.1.7.

C.7.1.3.1 Clinical Trial Subject Attribute Descriptions

Identification of subjects in clinical trials generally requires a combination of the following four attributes:

1. Clinical Trial Sponsor Name (0012,0010),
2. Clinical Trial Protocol ID (0012,0020),
3. Clinical Trial Subject ID (0012,0040) (or Clinical Trial Subject Reading ID (0012,0042) for blinded evaluations), and
4. Clinical Trial Site ID (0012,0030).

For trials in which subject identifiers are unique within the scope of the Clinical Trial Protocol (e.g., if subject identifiers are centrally assigned or contain the site identifier) the Clinical Trial Site ID (0012,0030) is not required to identify subjects.

C.7.1.3.1.1 Clinical Trial Sponsor Name

The Clinical Trial Sponsor Name (0012,0010) identifies the entity responsible for conducting the clinical trial and for defining the Clinical Trial Protocol ID (0012,0020).

C.7.1.3.1.2 Clinical Trial Protocol ID

The Clinical Trial Protocol ID (0012,0020) is the number or character sequence used by the Clinical Trial Sponsor to uniquely identify the investigational protocol in which the subject has been enrolled.

C.7.1.3.1.3 Clinical Trial Protocol Name

The Clinical Trial Protocol Name (0012,0021) contains the title of the investigational protocol in which the subject has been enrolled.

Note: It is recommended that the phase of the clinical trial be noted in the Clinical Trial Protocol Name, if applicable.

C.7.1.3.1.4 Clinical Trial Site ID

The Clinical Trial Site ID (0012,0030) is the identification number or character string (issued by the entity identified by the Clinical Trial Sponsor Name (0012,0010)) used to identify the site responsible for submitting clinical trial data.

C.7.1.3.1.5 Clinical Trial Site Name

The Clinical Trial Site Name (0012,0031) is a character string used to identify the site responsible for submitting clinical trial data.

C.7.1.3.1.6 Clinical Trial Subject ID

The Clinical Trial Subject ID (0012,0040) identifies the subject within the investigational protocol specified by Clinical Trial Protocol ID (0012,0020).

C.7.1.3.1.7 Clinical Trial Subject Reading ID

The Clinical Trial Subject Reading ID (0012,0042) identifies the subject in the context of blinded evaluations.

C.7.2 Common Study IE Modules

The following Study IE Modules are common to all Composite Image IODs that reference the Study IE. These Modules contain Attributes of the patient and study that are needed for diagnostic interpretation of the image. They contain Attributes that are also in the Patient Modules in Section C.2 and Study Modules in Section C.4.

C.7.2.1 General Study Module

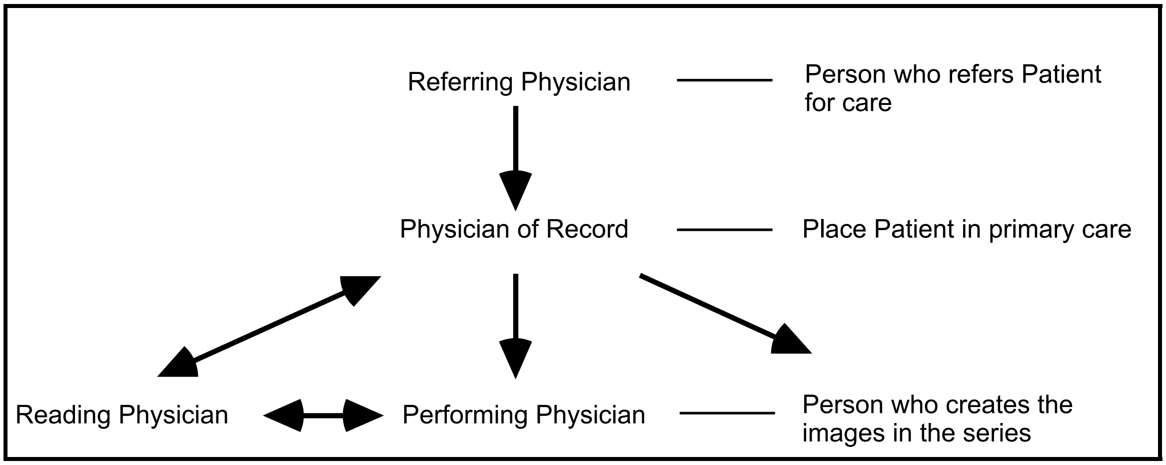
Table C.7-3 specifies the Attributes that describe and identify the Study performed upon the Patient.

Table C.7-3
GENERAL STUDY MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Study Instance UID	(0020,000D)	1	Unique identifier for the Study.
Study Date	(0008,0020)	2	Date the Study started.
Study Time	(0008,0030)	2	Time the Study started.
Referring Physician's Name	(0008,0090)	2	Name of the patient's referring physician
Referring Physician Identification Sequence	(0008,0096)	3	Identification of the patient's referring physician. Only a single item shall be permitted in this sequence.

>Include 'Person Identification Macro' Table 10-1			
Study ID	(0020,0010)	2	User or equipment generated Study identifier.
Accession Number	(0008,0050)	2	A RIS generated number that identifies the order for the Study.
Study Description	(0008,1030)	3	Institution-generated description or classification of the Study (component) performed.
Physician(s) of Record	(0008,1048)	3	Names of the physician(s) who are responsible for overall patient care at time of Study (see Section C.7.3.1 for Performing Physician)
Physician(s) of Record Identification Sequence	(0008,1049)	3	Identification of the physician(s) who are responsible for overall patient care at time of Study. One or more items shall be included in this sequence. If more than one Item, the number and order shall correspond to the value of Physician(s) of Record (0008,1048), if present.
>Include 'Person Identification Macro' Table 10-1			
Name of Physician(s) Reading Study	(0008,1060)	3	Names of the physician(s) reading the Study.
Physician(s) Reading Study Identification Sequence	(0008,1062)	3	Identification of the physician(s) reading the Study. One or more items shall be included in this sequence. If more than one Item, the number and order shall correspond to the value of Name of Physician(s) Reading Study (0008,1060), if present.
>Include 'Person Identification Macro' Table 10-1			
Referenced Study Sequence	(0008,1110)	3	A sequence that provides reference to a Study SOP Class/Instance pair. The sequence may have zero or more Items.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class. Required if Referenced Study Sequence (0008,1110) is sent.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance. Required if Referenced Study Sequence (0008,1110) is sent.
Procedure Code Sequence	(0008,1032)	3	A Sequence that conveys the type of procedure performed. One or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*	

Note: The model used for application of attributes related to different functions of Physicians involved in the care is as follows:



There can be an overlap of functions provided by any given physician. In this case, the field entries would convey the same physician name under different roles.

C.7.2.2 Patient Study Module

Table C.7-4a defines Attributes that provide information about the Patient at the time the Study was performed.

Table C.7-4a
PATIENT STUDY MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Admitting Diagnoses Description	(0008,1080)	3	Description of the admitting diagnosis (diagnoses)
Admitting Diagnoses Code Sequence	(0008,1084)	3	A sequence that conveys the admitting diagnosis (diagnoses). One or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*	
Patient's Age	(0010,1010)	3	Age of the Patient.
Patient's Size	(0010,1020)	3	Length or size of the Patient, in meters.
Patient's Weight	(0010,1030)	3	Weight of the Patient, in kilograms.
Occupation	(0010,2180)	3	Occupation of the Patient.
Additional Patient's History	(0010,21B0)	3	Additional information about the Patient's medical history.
Admission ID	(0038,0010)	3	Identification number of the visit as assigned by the healthcare provider
Issuer of Admission ID	(0038,0011)	3	Name of healthcare provider that issued the Admission ID
Patient's Sex Neutered	(0010,2203)	2C	Whether or not a procedure has been performed in an effort to render the patient sterile. Enumerated value: ALTERED = Altered/Neutered UNALTERED = Unaltered/intact

			Note: If this Attribute is present but has no value then the status is unknown. Required if patient is an animal. May be present otherwise.

C.7.2.3 Clinical Trial Study Module

Table C.7-4b contains attributes that identify a Study in the context of a clinical trial.

Table C.7-4b
CLINICAL TRIAL STUDY MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Clinical Trial Time Point ID	(0012,0050)	2	An identifier specifying the one or more studies that are grouped together as a clinical time point or submission in a clinical trial. See C.7.2.3.1.1.
Clinical Trial Time Point Description	(0012,0051)	3	A description of a set of one or more studies that are grouped together to represent a clinical time point or submission in a clinical trial. See C.7.2.3.1.1.

C.7.2.3.1 Clinical Trial Study Attribute Descriptions

C.7.2.3.1.1 Clinical Trial Time Point

The Clinical Trial Time Point ID (0012,0050) attribute identifies an imaging study within the context of an investigational protocol. This attribute is used to define a set of studies that are grouped together as a clinical time point or data submission in a clinical trial. The Clinical Trial Time Point Description (0012,0051) attribute can be used to give a description of the Clinical Trial Time Point to which the set of studies belongs.

C.7.3 Common Series IE Modules

The following Series IE Modules are common to all Composite Image IODs that reference the Series IE.

C.7.3.1 General Series Module

Table C.7-5a specifies the Attributes that identify and describe general information about the Series within a Study.

Table C.7-5a
GENERAL SERIES MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Modality	(0008,0060)	1	Type of equipment that originally acquired the data used to create the images in this Series. See C.7.3.1.1.1 for Defined Terms.
Series Instance UID	(0020,000E)	1	Unique identifier of the Series.
Series Number	(0020,0011)	2	A number that identifies this Series.
Laterality	(0020,0060)	2C	Laterality of (paired) body part examined. Required if the body part examined is a paired structure and Image Laterality (0020,0062) or Frame Laterality

			(0020,9072) are not sent. Enumerated Values: R = right L = left Note: Some IODs support Image Laterality (0020,0062) at the Image level or Frame Laterality(0020,9072) at the Frame level in the Frame Anatomy functional group macro, which can provide a more comprehensive mechanism for specifying the laterality of the body part(s) being examined.
Series Date	(0008,0021)	3	Date the Series started.
Series Time	(0008,0031)	3	Time the Series started.
Performing Physicians' Name	(0008,1050)	3	Name of the physician(s) administering the Series.
Performing Physician Identification Sequence	(0008,1052)	3	Identification of the physician(s) administering the Series. One or more items shall be included in this sequence. If more than one Item, the number and order shall correspond to the value of Performing Physicians' Name (0008,1050), if present.
>Include 'Person Identification Macro' Table 10-1			
Protocol Name	(0018,1030)	3	User-defined description of the conditions under which the Series was performed. Note: This attribute conveys series-specific protocol identification and may or may not be identical to the one presented in the Performed Protocol Code Sequence (0040,0260).
Series Description	(0008,103E)	3	User provided description of the Series
Operators' Name	(0008,1070)	3	Name(s) of the operator(s) supporting the Series.
Operator Identification Sequence	(0008,1072)	3	Identification of the operator(s) supporting the Series. One or more items shall be included in this sequence. If more than one Item, the number and order shall correspond to the value of Operators' Name (0008,1070), if present.
>Include 'Person Identification Macro' Table 10-1			
Referenced Performed Procedure Step Sequence	(0008,1111)	3	Uniquely identifies the Performed Procedure Step SOP Instance to which the Series is related (e.g. a Modality or General-Purpose Performed Procedure Step SOP Instance). The Sequence shall have zero or one Item.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class. Required if Referenced Performed Procedure Step Sequence (0008,1111) is

			sent.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance. Required if Referenced Performed Procedure Step Sequence (0008,1111) is sent.
Related Series Sequence	(0008,1250)	3	Identification of Series significantly related to this Series. Zero or more Items may be present. Notes: 1. For example, for a combined CT and PET acquisition, the CT images and PET images would be in separate series that could cross-reference each other with multiple purpose of reference codes meaning same anatomy, simultaneously acquired and same indication. 2. The related series may have different Frames of Reference and hence require some sort of registration before spatial coordinates can be directly compared. 3. This attribute is not intended for conveying localizer reference information, for which Referenced Image Sequence (0008,1140) should be used.
>Study Instance UID	(0020,000D)	1	Instance UID of Study to which the related Series belongs
>Series Instance UID	(0020,000E)	1	Instance UID of Related Series
>Purpose of Reference Code Sequence	(0040,A170)	2	Describes the purpose for which the reference is made. Zero or more Items may be present. When absent, implies that the reason for the reference is unknown.
>>Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1		*DCID 7210*	
Body Part Examined	(0018,0015)	3	Text description of the part of the body examined. Defined Terms: SKULL, CSPINE, TSPINE, LSPINE, SSPINE, COCCYX, CHEST, CLAVICLE, BREAST, ABDOMEN, PELVIS, HIP, SHOULDER, ELBOW, KNEE, ANKLE, HAND, FOOT, EXTREMITY, HEAD, HEART, NECK, LEG, ARM, JAW Note: Some IODs support the Anatomic Region Sequence (0008,2218), which can provide a more comprehensive mechanism for specifying the body part being examined.
Patient Position	(0018,5100)	2C	Patient position descriptor relative to the equipment. Required for CT and MR images; shall not be present if Patient

			Orientation Code Sequence (0054,0410) is present; may be present otherwise. See C.7.3.1.1.2 for Defined Terms and further explanation.
Smallest Pixel Value in Series	(0028,0108)	3	The minimum value of all images in this Series.
Largest Pixel Value in Series	(0028,0109)	3	The maximum value of all images in this Series.
Request Attributes Sequence	(0040,0275)	3	Sequence that contains attributes from the Imaging Service Request. The sequence may have one or more Items.
>Include Request Attributes Macro Table 10-9		*No Baseline Context IDs defined*	
Performed Procedure Step ID	(0040,0253)	3	User or equipment generated identifier of that part of a Procedure that has been carried out within this step.
Performed Procedure Step Start Date	(0040,0244)	3	Date on which the Performed Procedure Step started.
Performed Procedure Step Start Time	(0040,0245)	3	Time on which the Performed Procedure Step started.
Performed Procedure Step Description	(0040,0254)	3	Institution-generated description or classification of the Procedure Step that was performed.
Performed Protocol Code Sequence	(0040,0260)	3	Sequence describing the Protocol performed for this Procedure Step. One or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*	
>Protocol Context Sequence	(0040,0440)	3	Sequence that specifies the context for the Performed Protocol Code Sequence Item. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>Include 'Content Item Macro' Table 10-2		*No Baseline Template is defined.*	
>> Content Item Modifier Sequence	(0040,0441)	3	Sequence that specifies modifiers for a Protocol Context Content Item. One or more items may be included in this sequence. See Section C.4.10.1.
>>>Include 'Content Item Macro' Table 10-2		*No Baseline Template is defined.*	
Comments on the Performed Procedure Step	(0040,0280)	3	User-defined comments on the Performed Procedure Step.

Notes: 1. If the Modality or General Purpose Performed Procedure Step SOP Class is supported as an SCU by a Storage SCU, the SCU is strongly encouraged to support the attribute Referenced Performed Procedure Step Sequence (0008,1111). This attribute references the Performed Procedure Step SOP Instance, and extraction of this Attribute from a Composite Instance may allow retrieval of the Performed Procedure Step SOP Instance.

2. If the Storage SCU does not conform to the Modality or General Purpose Performed Procedure Step SOP Class, it is still advisable to include the attributes Performed Procedure

Step Start Date (0040,0244), Performed Procedure Step Start Time (0040,0245) and Performed Procedure Step Description (0040,0254) into the Composite Instances.

C.7.3.1.1 General Series Attribute Descriptions

C.7.3.1.1.1 Modality

Defined Terms for the Modality (0008,0060) are:

CR	= Computed Radiography	CT	= Computed Tomography
MR	= Magnetic Resonance	NM	= Nuclear Medicine
US	= Ultrasound	OT	= Other
BI	= Biomagnetic imaging	CD	= Color flow Doppler
DD	= Duplex Doppler	DG	= Diaphanography
ES	= Endoscopy	LS	= Laser surface scan
PT	= Positron emission tomography (PET)	RG	= Radiographic imaging (conventional film/screen)
ST	= Single-photon emission computed tomography (SPECT)	TG	= Thermography
XA	= X-Ray Angiography	RF	= Radio Fluoroscopy
RTIMAGE	= Radiotherapy Image	RTDOSE	= Radiotherapy Dose
RTSTRUCT	= Radiotherapy Structure Set	RTPLAN	= Radiotherapy Plan
RTRECORD	= RT Treatment Record	HC	= Hard Copy
DX	= Digital Radiography	MG	= Mammography
IO	= Intra-oral Radiography	PX	= Panoramic X-Ray
GM	= General Microscopy	SM	= Slide Microscopy
XC	= External-camera Photography	PR	= Presentation State
AU	= Audio	ECG	= Electrocardiography
EPS	= Cardiac Electrophysiology	HD	= Hemodynamic Waveform
SR	= SR Document	IVUS	= Intravascular Ultrasound
OP	= Ophthalmic Photography	SMR	= Stereometric Relationship
OCT	= Optical Coherence Tomography	OPR	= Ophthalmic Refraction
OPV	= Ophthalmic Visual Field	OPM	= Ophthalmic Mapping
KO	= Key Object Selection	SEG	= Segmentation
REG	= Registration		

Retired Defined Terms for the Modality (0008,0060) are:

DS	= Digital Subtraction Angiography (retired)	CF	= Cinefluorography (retired)
DF	= Digital fluoroscopy (retired)	VF	= Videofluorography (retired)
AS	= Angioscopy	CS	= Cystoscopy
EC	= Echocardiography	LP	= Laparoscopy
FA	= Fluorescein angiography	CP	= Culposcopy
DM	= Digital microscopy	FS	= Fundoscopy
MA	= Magnetic resonance angiography	MS	= Magnetic resonance spectroscopy

Note: 1. The XA modality incorporates the retired modality DS.

2. The RF modality incorporates the retired modalities CF, DF, VF.

3. The modality listed in the Modality Data Element (0008,0060) may not match the name of the IOD in which it appears. For example, a SOP instance from XA IOD may list the RF modality when an RF implementation produces an XA object.

4. The MR modality incorporates the retired modalities MA and MS.

C.7.3.1.1.2 Patient Position

Patient Position (0018,5100) specifies the position of the patient relative to the imaging equipment space. This attribute is intended for annotation purposes only. It does not provide an exact mathematical relationship of the patient to the imaging equipment.

When facing the front of the imaging equipment, Head First is defined as the patient's head being positioned toward the front of the imaging equipment. Feet First is defined as the patient's feet being positioned toward the front of the imaging equipment. Prone is defined as the patient's face being positioned in a downward (gravity) direction. Supine is defined as the patient's face being in an upward direction. Decubitus Right is defined as the patient's right side being in a downward direction. Decubitus Left is defined as the patient's left side being in a downward direction.

The Defined Terms are:

HFP = Head First-Prone

HFDR = Head First-Decubitus Right

FFDR = Feet First-Decubitus Right

FFP = Feet First-Prone

HFS = Head First-Supine

HFDL = Head First-Decubitus Left

FFDL = Feet First-Decubitus Left

FFS = Feet First-Supine

C.7.3.2 Clinical Trial Series Module

Table C.7-5b contains attributes that identify a Series in the context of a clinical trial.

Table C.7-5b
CLINICAL TRIAL SERIES MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Clinical Trial Coordinating Center Name	(0012,0060)	2	The name of the institution that is responsible for coordinating the medical imaging data for the clinical trial. See C.7.3.2.1.1.

C.7.3.2.1 Clinical Trial Series Attribute Descriptions

C.7.3.2.1.1 Clinical Trial Coordinating Center Name

The Clinical Trial Coordinating Center Name (0012,0060) identifies the institution responsible for coordinating the collection of images and associated data for subjects enrolled in the clinical trial.

C.7.4 Common Frame Of Reference Information Entity Modules

C.7.4.1 Frame Of Reference Module

Table C.7-6 specifies the Attributes necessary to uniquely identify a frame of reference which insures the spatial relationship of Images within a Series. It also allows Images across multiple Series to share the same Frame Of Reference. This Frame Of Reference (or coordinate system) shall be constant for all Images related to a specific Frame Of Reference.

When a Frame of Reference is identified, it is not important how the Patient is positioned relative to the imaging equipment or where the origin of the Frame Of Reference is located. It is important that the position of the Patient and the origin are constant in relationship to a specific Frame Of Reference.

Note: Since the criteria used to group images into a Series is application specific, it is possible for imaging applications to define multiple Series within a Study that share the same imaging space. Previous versions of the DICOM Standard specified that all images within the Series must be spatially related. However, insufficient information was available to determine if multiple Series within a Study were spatially related.

Table C.7-6
FRAME OF REFERENCE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Frame of Reference UID	(0020,0052)	1	Uniquely identifies the frame of reference for a Series. See C.7.4.1.1.1 for further explanation.
Position Reference Indicator	(0020,1040)	2	Part of the patient's anatomy used as a reference, such as the iliac crest, orbital-medial, sternal notch, symphysis pubis, xiphoid, lower coastal margin, external auditory meatus. See C.7.4.1.1.2 for further explanation.

C.7.4.1.1 Frame Of Reference Attribute Descriptions

C.7.4.1.1.1 Frame Of Reference UID

The Frame of Reference UID (0020,0052) shall be used to uniquely identify a frame of reference for a series. Each series shall have a single Frame of Reference UID. However, multiple Series within a Study may share a Frame of Reference UID. All images in a Series that share the same Frame of Reference UID shall be spatially related to each other.

Notes: 1. Previous versions of this Standard defined a Data Element "Location", which has been retired. Frame of Reference UID provides a completely unambiguous identification of the image location reference used to indicate position.

2. A common Frame of Reference UID may be used to spatially relate localizer images with a set of axial images. However, in some cases (eg. multiple localizer images being related to a single set of axial images) a common Frame of Reference UID may not be sufficient. The Referenced Image Sequence (0008,1140) provides an unambiguous method for relating localizer images.

C.7.4.1.1.2 Position Reference Indicator

The Position Reference Indicator (0020,1040) specifies the part of the patient’s anatomy that was used as an anatomical reference point associated with a specific Frame of Reference UID. The Position Reference Indicator may or may not coincide with the origin of the fixed frame of reference related to the Frame of Reference UID.

The Position Reference Indicator shall be used only for annotation purposes and is not intended to be used as a mathematical spatial reference.

Note: The Position Reference Indicator may be sent zero length when it has no meaning, for example, when the Frame of Reference Module is required to relate mammographic images of the breast acquired without releasing breast compression, but where there is no meaningful anatomical reference point as such.

C.7.4.2 Synchronization Module

Table C.7-7 specifies the Attributes necessary to uniquely identify a frame of reference that establishes the temporal relationship of SOP Instances. A synchronized environment may be established based on a shared time of day clock, and/or on a shared trigger event or synchronization waveform channel.

Note: Within a synchronized environment, different devices may use the shared data differently. An electrical pulse, for example, may be treated as a trigger event by one device (e.g., an x-ray imaging system), but may be recorded as a synchronization waveform by another device (e.g., a hemodynamics system).

Table C.7-7
Synchronization Module Attributes

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Synchronization Frame of Reference UID	(0020,0200)	1	UID of common synchronization environment. See C.7.4.2.1.1.
Synchronization Trigger	(0018,106A)	1	Data acquisition synchronization with external equipment Enumerated Values: SOURCE - this equipment provides synchronization channel or trigger to other equipment EXTERNAL - this equipment receives synchronization channel or trigger from other equipment PASSTHRU - this equipment receives synchronization channel or trigger and forwards it NO TRIGGER - data acquisition not synchronized by common channel or trigger
Trigger Source or Type	(0018,1061)	3	Specifies equipment ID of trigger source and/or type of trigger
Synchronization Channel	(0018,106C)	1C	Identifier of waveform channel that records the synchronization channel or trigger, see C.7.4.2.1.3. Required if synchronization channel or trigger is encoded in a waveform in this SOP Instance
Acquisition Time Synchronized	(0018,1800)	1	Acquisition Datetime (0008,002A) synchronized with external time reference. Enumerated Values: Y, N See C.7.4.2.1.4
Time Source	(0018,1801)	3	ID of equipment or system providing time reference
Time Distribution Protocol	(0018,1802)	3	Method of time distribution used to synchronize this equipment. Defined Terms: NTP - Network Time Protocol IRIG - InterRange Instrumentation Group GPS - Global Positioning System SNTP – Simple Network Time Protocol
NTP Source Address	(0018,1803)	3	IP Address of NTP time source. IPv4 addresses shall be in dotted decimal (e.g. 192.168.1.1). The IPv6 addresses shall be in colon separated hexadecimal

			(e.g. 12:34:56:78:9a:bc:de:f0). Note: Identity of this value in two instances acquired contemporaneously implies a common time base. The NTP Source Address may not persist over time.

C.7.4.2.1 Synchronization Attribute Descriptions

C.7.4.2.1.1 Synchronization Frame of Reference UID

A set of equipment may share a common acquisition synchronization environment, which is identified by a Synchronization Frame of Reference UID. All SOP Instances that share the same Synchronization Frame of Reference UID shall be temporally related to each other. If a Synchronization Frame of Reference UID is present, all SOP Instances in the Series must share the same Frame of Reference.

The UTC Synchronization UID, 1.2.840.10008.15.1.1, may be used when the equipment is synchronized to the international standard UTC. In this case the quality of synchronization may be determined by means of the Time Distribution Protocol (0018,1802) and NTP Source Address (0018,1803).

Notes: 1. The Synchronization Frame of Reference UID defines an equipment synchronization environment, and does not need to be changed for each unrelated acquisition. SOP Instances may therefore share a Synchronization Frame of Reference UID, but be clinically unrelated (e.g., apply to different patients).

2. When a synchronization environment is recalibrated, a new UID must be issued.

3. The method of distributing the Synchronization Frame of Reference UID to multiple devices is not specified.

C.7.4.2.1.2 Time Source and Time Distribution Protocol

Time may originate with a primary source (e.g., a national standards bureau) and be distributed through a chain of secondary distribution systems until reaching the imaging equipment. Time Distribution Protocol (0018,1802) specifies the immediate (last link) method used by the equipment to receive time from the immediately prior Time Source (0018,1801). It does not specify the ultimate time reference from which the Time Source may derive its synchronization.

Note: The time value distributed through the specified Time Distribution Protocol may need to be corrected to align with UTC. For example, GPS does not compensate for leap seconds.

C.7.4.2.1.3 Synchronization Channel

The Synchronization Channel (0018,106C) is specified as a pair of values (M,C), where the first value is the ordinal of the sequence item of the Waveform Sequence (5400,0100) attribute (i.e., the Multiplex Group), and the second value is the ordinal of the sequence item of the Channel Definition Sequence (003A,0200) attribute (i.e., the Waveform Channel Number) within the multiplex group.

C.7.4.2.1.4 Acquisition Time Synchronized

The Acquisition Time Synchronized (0018,1800) attribute specifies whether the Acquisition Datetime (0008,002A) attribute of the Waveform Identification Module or the General Image Module represents an accurate synchronized timestamp for the acquisition of the waveform and/or image data. For triggered multi-frame images, the Acquisition Datetime applies to the trigger for the first image frame (see attribute Image Trigger Delay (0018.1067) in the Cine Module).

Note: The degree of precision of the Acquisition Datetime and its accuracy relative to the external clock are not specified, but need to be appropriate for the clinical application.

For IODs that include the SR Document Content Module, the Acquisition Time Synchronized (0018,1800) attribute specifies whether the Observation Datetime (0040,A032) attribute of Items in the Content Sequence (0040,A730) of the SR Document Content Module represents an accurate synchronized timestamp for the Item.

C.7.5 Common Equipment IE Modules

The following Equipment IE Module is common to all Composite IODs that reference the Equipment IE.

C.7.5.1 General Equipment Module

Table C.7-8 specifies the Attributes that identify and describe the piece of equipment that produced a Series of Composite Instances.

Table C.7-8
GENERAL EQUIPMENT MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Manufacturer	(0008,0070)	2	Manufacturer of the equipment that produced the composite instances.
Institution Name	(0008,0080)	3	Institution where the equipment that produced the composite instances is located.
Institution Address	(0008,0081)	3	Mailing address of the institution where the equipment that produced the composite instances is located.
Station Name	(0008,1010)	3	User defined name identifying the machine that produced the composite instances.
Institutional Department Name	(0008,1040)	3	Department in the institution where the equipment that produced the composite instances is located.
Manufacturer's Model Name	(0008,1090)	3	Manufacturer’s model name of the equipment that produced the composite instances.
Device Serial Number	(0018,1000)	3	Manufacturer’s serial number of the equipment that produced the composite instances. Note: This identifier corresponds to the device that actually created the images, such as a CR plate reader or a CT console, and may not be sufficient to identify all of the equipment in the imaging chain, such as the generator or gantry or plate.
Software Versions	(0018,1020)	3	Manufacturer’s designation of software version of the equipment that produced the composite instances.
Gantry ID	(0018,1008)	3	Identifier of the gantry or positioner.

Spatial Resolution	(0018,1050)	3	The inherent limiting resolution in mm of the acquisition equipment for high contrast objects for the data gathering and reconstruction technique chosen. If variable across the images of the series, the value at the image center.
Date of Last Calibration	(0018,1200)	3	Date when the image acquisition device calibration was last changed in any way. Multiple entries may be used for additional calibrations at other times. See C.7.5.1.1.1 for further explanation.
Time of Last Calibration	(0018,1201)	3	Time when the image acquisition device calibration was last changed in any way. Multiple entries may be used. See C.7.5.1.1.1 for further explanation.
Pixel Padding Value	(0028,0120)	3	Value of pixels not present in the native image added to an image to pad to rectangular format. See C.7.5.1.1.2 for further explanation. Note: The Value Representation of this Attribute is determined by the value of Pixel Representation (0028,0103).

C.7.5.1.1 General Equipment Attribute Descriptions

Note: The attributes Manufacturer (0008,0070), Manufacturer's Model Name (0008,1090), Device Serial Number (0018,1000) and Software Versions (0018,1020) are intended to be a primary identification of the system that produces the data (e.g., modality or workstation application providing the content of the SOP Instance) and not the identification of the component that encodes the SOP Instance (e.g., a commonly used DICOM encoding toolkit).

C.7.5.1.1.1 Date Of Last Calibration, Time Of Last Calibration

Date of Last Calibration (0018,1200) and Time of Last Calibration (0018,1201) are used to convey the date and time of calibration. The Attribute Date of Last Calibration (0018,1200) may be supported alone, however, Time of Last Calibration (0018,1201) Attribute has no meaning unless Attribute Date of Last Calibration (0018,1200) is also supported. The order for each Attribute shall be from the oldest date/time to the most recent date/time. When the Attributes are both supported they shall be provided as pairs.

C.7.5.1.1.2 Pixel Padding Value

Pixel Padding Value (0028,0120) is used to pad images to rectangular format. The native format of some images is not rectangular. It is common for devices with this format to pad the images to the rectangular format required by the DICOM Standard with a specific pixel value that is not contained in the native image. Further, when resampling, such as after spatial registration, padding may need to be used to fill previously non-existent pixels.

Notes: 1. The "native image" is that which is being padded to the required rectangular format, e.g., the area within the circular reconstruction perimeter of a CT image.

2. The pixel padding value is explicitly described in order to prevent display applications from taking it into account when determining the dynamic range of an image, since the Pixel Padding Value will be outside the range between the minimum and maximum values of the pixels in the native image

3. No pixels in the native image will have a value equal to Pixel Padding Value.

This attribute specifies the value of this padding value.

The value shall be a valid value within the constraints defined by Bits Allocated (0028,0100), Bits Stored (0028,0101), and High Bit (0028,0102).

This Attribute shall not be present when padding is performed but the pixel value used for padding does occur in the native image.

Notes: 1. When the relationship between pixel value and X-Ray Intensity is unknown, it is recommended that the following values be used to pad with black when the image is unsigned:

0 if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) is MONOCHROME2.

$2^{BitsStored}$ - 1 if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) is MONOCHROME1.

and when the image is signed:

$-2^{BitsStored-1}$ if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) is MONOCHROME2.

$2^{BitsStored-1}$ - 1 if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) is MONOCHROME1.

2. For projection radiography, when the relationship between pixel value and X-Ray Intensity is known (for example as defined by Pixel Intensity Relationship (0028,1040) and Pixel Intensity relationship Sign (0028,1041)), it is recommended that a pixel value equivalent to, or rendered similarly to, air (least X-Ray absorbance) be used for padding. However, if such a value may occur in the native image, the Pixel Padding Value (0028,0120) Attribute itself should not be sent.

E.g., for an XRF image obtained with an image intensifier, if air is black then a padded perimeter, if any, should also appear black. Typically though, if unpadded, this area would be collimated with a circular collimator, in which case the pixels would appear natively as white (greatest X-Ray absorbance) and a circular shutter would be necessary to neutralize them as black. Whether collimated areas are detected and treated as padded, or neutralized with shutters is at the discretion of the application. See also the Display Shutter Module C.7.6.11.

When modifying equipment changes the pixel padding value in the image, it shall change the value of Pixel Padding Value (0028,0120). If modifying equipment changes the pixel padding value in the image to a value present in the native image, the attribute Pixel Padding Value (0028,0120) shall be removed.

Note: For example, if a CT image containing signed values from -1024 to 3191 and a Pixel Padding Value of -2000 and a Rescale Intercept of 0 is converted to an unsigned image with a Rescale Intercept of -1024 by adding 1024 to all pixels and clipping all more negative pixels to 0, then the padding pixels will be indistinguishable from some of the modified native image pixels, and hence Pixel Padding Value (0028,0120) needs to be removed.

C.7.5.2 Enhanced General Equipment Module

Table C.7-8b specifies the Attributes that identify and describe the piece of equipment that produced a Series of Composite Instances.

Notes: 1. This table contains a subset of the attributes of General Equipment Module (Table C.7-8) but the Type Designation is changed into Type 1. Including this module in an IOD overwrites the Type Designation of the General Equipment Module.

2. The attributes are intended to be a primary identification of the system that produces the data (e.g., modality or workstation application providing the content of the SOP Instance) and not the identification of the component that encodes the SOP Instance (e.g., a commonly used DICOM encoding toolkit).

Table C.7-8b
ENHANCED GENERAL EQUIPMENT MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Manufacturer	(0008,0070)	1	Manufacturer of the equipment that produced the composite instances.
Manufacturer's Model Name	(0008,1090)	1	Manufacturer's model name of the equipment that produced the composite instances.
Device Serial Number	(0018,1000)	1	Manufacturer's serial number of the equipment that produced the composite instances.
Software Versions	(0018,1020)	1	Manufacturer's designation of software version of the equipment that produced the composite instances.

C.7.6 Common Image IE Modules

The following Image IE Modules are common to all Composite Image IODs that reference the Image IE.

C.7.6.1 General Image Module

Table C.7-9 specifies the Attributes that identify and describe an image within a particular series.

Table C.7-9
GENERAL IMAGE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Instance Number	(0020,0013)	2	A number that identifies this image. Note: This Attribute was named Image Number in earlier versions of this Standard.
Patient Orientation	(0020,0020)	2C	Patient direction of the rows and columns of the image. Required if image does not require Image Orientation (Patient) (0020,0037) and Image Position (Patient) (0020,0032). See C.7.6.1.1.1 for further explanation. Note: IOD's may have attributes other than Patient Orientation, Image Orientation, or Image Position (Patient) to describe orientation in which case this attribute will be zero length.
Content Date	(0008,0023)	2C	The date the image pixel data creation started. Required if image is part of a series in which the images are temporally related. Note: This Attribute was formerly known as Image Date.
Content Time	(0008,0033)	2C	The time the image pixel data creation started. Required if image is part of a series in which the images are temporally

			related.
Image Type	(0008,0008)	3	Image identification characteristics. See C.7.6.1.1.2 for Defined Terms and further explanation.
Acquisition Number	(0020,0012)	3	A number identifying the single continuous gathering of data over a period of time that resulted in this image.
Acquisition Date	(0008,0022)	3	The date the acquisition of data that resulted in this image started
Acquisition Time	(0008,0032)	3	The time the acquisition of data that resulted in this image started
Acquisition Datetime	(0008,002A)	3	The date and time that the acquisition of data that resulted in this image started. Note: The synchronization of this time with an external clock is specified in the Synchronization Module in Acquisition Time Synchronized (0018,1800).
Referenced Image Sequence	(0008,1140)	3	A sequence that references other images significantly related to this image (e.g. post-localizer CT image or Mammographic biopsy or partial view images). One or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>Include 'Image SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table 10-3			
>Purpose of Reference Code Sequence	(0040,A170)	3	Describes the purpose for which the reference is made. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*Defined Context ID is 7201.*
Derivation Description	(0008,2111)	3	A text description of how this image was derived. See C.7.6.1.1.3 for further explanation.
Derivation Code Sequence	(0008,9215)	3	A coded description of how this image was derived. See C.7.6.1.1.3 for further explanation. One or more Items may be included in this Sequence. More than one Item indicates that successive derivation steps have been applied.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*Defined Context ID is 7203.*
Source Image Sequence	(0008,2112)	3	A Sequence that identifies the set of Image SOP Class/Instance pairs of the Images that were used to derive this Image. Zero or more Items may be included in this Sequence. See C.7.6.1.1.4 for further explanation.
>Include 'Image SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table 10-3			
>Purpose of Reference Code Sequence	(0040,A170)	3	Describes the purpose for which the reference is made, that is what role the source image or frame(s) played in the

			derivation of this image. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*Defined Context ID is 7202.*
>Spatial Locations Preserved	(0028,135A)	3	The extent to which the spatial locations of all pixels are preserved during the processing of the source image that resulted in the current image Enumerated Values: YES NO REORIENTED_ONLY - A projection radiograph that has been flipped, and/or rotated by a multiple of 90 degrees Notes: 1. This applies not only to images with a known relationship to a 3D space, but also to projection images. For example, a projection radiograph such as a mammogram that is processed by a point image processing operation such as contrast enhancement, or a smoothing or edge enhancing convolution, would have a value of YES for this attribute. A projection radiograph that had been magnified or warped geometrically would have a value of NO for this attribute. A projection radiograph that has been flipped, and/or rotated by a multiple of 90 degrees, such that transformation of pixel locations is possible by comparison of the values of Patient Orientation (0020,0020) would have a value of REORIENTED_ONLY. This attribute is typically of importance in relating images with Presentation Intent Type (0008,0068) values of FOR PROCESSING and FOR PRESENTATION. 2. When the value of this attribute is NO, it is not possible to locate on the current image any pixel coordinates that are referenced relative to the source image, such as for example, might be required for rendering CAD findings derived from a referenced FOR PROCESSING image on the current FOR PRESENTATION image.
>Patient Orientation	(0020,0020)	1C	The Patient Orientation values of the source image.

			Required if the value of Spatial Locations Preserved (0028,135A) is REORIENTED_ONLY.
Referenced Instance Sequence	(0008,114A)	3	A sequence which provides reference to a set of non-image SOP Class/Instance pairs significantly related to this Image, including waveforms that may or may not be temporally synchronized with this image . One or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.
>Purpose of Reference Code Sequence	(0040,A170)	1	Code describing the purpose of the reference to the Instance(s). Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Defined Context ID is CID 7004 for referenced waveforms.*	
Images in Acquisition	(0020,1002)	3	Number of images that resulted from this acquisition of data
Image Comments	(0020,4000)	3	User-defined comments about the image
Quality Control Image	(0028,0300)	3	Indicates whether or not this image is a quality control or phantom image. Enumerated Values: YES NO If this Attribute is absent, then the image may or may not be a quality control or phantom image. The phantom device in the image can be described using the Device Module. See C.7.6.12
Burned In Annotation	(0028,0301)	3	Indicates whether or not image contains sufficient burned in annotation to identify the patient and date the image was acquired. Enumerated Values: YES NO If this Attribute is absent, then the image may or may not contain burned in annotation.
Lossy Image Compression	(0028,2110)	3	Specifies whether an Image has undergone lossy compression. Enumerated Values: 00 = Image has NOT been subjected to lossy

			compression. 01 = Image has been subjected to lossy compression. See C.7.6.1.1.5
Lossy Image Compression Ratio	(0028,2112)	3	Describes the approximate lossy compression ratio(s) that have been applied to this image. See C.7.6.1.1.5 for further explanation. May be multivalued if successive lossy compression steps have been applied. Notes: 1. For example, a compression ratio of 30:1 would be described in this Attribute with a single value of 30. 2. For historical reasons, the lossy compression ratio may also be described in Derivation Description (0008,2111).
Lossy Image Compression Method	(0028,2114)	3	A label for the lossy compression method(s) that have been applied to this image. See C.7.6.1.1.5 for further explanation. May be multivalued if successive lossy compression steps have been applied; the value order shall correspond to the values of Lossy Image Compression Ratio (0028,2112). Note: For historical reasons, the lossy compression method may also be described in Derivation Description (0008,2111).
Icon Image Sequence	(0088,0200)	3	This icon image is representative of the Image.
> *Include 'Image Pixel Macro' Table C.7-11b*			See C.7.6.1.1.6 for further explanation.
Presentation LUT Shape	(2050,0020)	3	When present, specifies an identity transformation for the Presentation LUT such that the output of all grayscale transformations, if any, are defined to be in P-Values. Enumerated Values are: IDENTITY - output is in P-Values - shall be used if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) is MONOCHROME2 or any color photometric interpretation. INVERSE - output after inversion is in P-Values - shall be used if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) is MONOCHROME1. When this attribute is used with a color photometric interpretation then the

			luminance component is in P-Values.
Irradiation Event UID	(0008,3010)	3	Unique identification of the irradiation event(s) associated with the acquisition of this image. See C.7.6.1.1.7.

Note: Previous editions of this Standard specified use of the Referenced Waveform Sequence (0008,113A), but that use has been superseded by Referenced Instance Sequence (0008,114A). See PS3.3-2004.

C.7.6.1.1 General Image Attribute Descriptions

C.7.6.1.1.1 Patient Orientation

The Patient Orientation (0020,0020) relative to the image plane shall be specified by two values that designate the anatomical direction of the positive row axis (left to right) and the positive column axis (top to bottom). The first entry is the direction of the rows, given by the direction of the last pixel in the first row from the first pixel in that row. The second entry is the direction of the columns, given by the direction of the last pixel in the first column from the first pixel in that column.

Anatomical direction shall be designated by the capital letters: A (anterior), P (posterior), R (right), L (left), H (head), F (foot). Each value of the orientation attribute shall contain at least one of these characters. If refinements in the orientation descriptions are to be specified, then they shall be designated by one or two additional letters in each value. Within each value, the letters shall be ordered with the principal orientation designated in the first character.

C.7.6.1.1.2 Image Type

The Image Type (0008,0008) Attribute identifies important image identification characteristics. These characteristics are:

a. Pixel Data Characteristics
   1. is the image an ORIGINAL Image; an image whose pixel values are based on original or source data
   2. is the image a DERIVED Image; an image whose pixel values have been derived in some manner from the pixel value of one or more other images

b. Patient Examination Characteristics
   1. is the image a PRIMARY Image; an image created as a direct result of the Patient examination
   2. is the image a SECONDARY Image; an image created after the initial Patient examination

c. Modality Specific Characteristics

d. Implementation specific identifiers; other implementation specific identifiers shall be documented in an implementation's conformance statement.

The Image Type attribute is multi-valued and shall be provided in the following manner:

a. Value 1 shall identify the Pixel Data Characteristics; Enumerated Values for the Pixel Data Characteristics are:

   ORIGINAL identifies an Original Image

   DERIVED identifies a Derived Image

b. Value 2 shall identify the Patient Examination Characteristics; Enumerated Values for the Patient Examination Characteristics are:

   PRIMARY identifies a Primary Image

SECONDARY identifies a Secondary Image

c. Value 3 shall identify any Image IOD specific specialization (optional)

d. Other Values which are implementation specific (optional)

Any of the optional values (value 3 and beyond) may be sent either with a value or zero-length, independent of other optional values, unless otherwise specified by a specialization of this attribute in an IOD.

If the pixel data of the derived Image is different from the pixel data of the source images and this difference is expected to affect professional interpretation of the image, the Derived Image shall have a UID different than all the source images.

C.7.6.1.1.3 Derivation Description

If an Image is identified to be a derived image (see C.7.6.1.1.2 Image Type), Derivation Description (0008,2111) and Derivation Code Sequence (0008,9215) describe the way in which the image was derived. They may be used whether or not the Source Image Sequence (0008,2112) is provided. They may also be used in cases when the Derived Image pixel data is not significantly changed from one of the source images and the SOP Instance UID of the Derived Image is the same as the one used for the source image.

Notes: 1. Examples of Derived Images that would normally be expected to affect professional interpretation and would thus have a new UID include:

a. images resulting from image processing of another image (e.g. unsharp masking),

b. a multiplanar reformatted CT image,

c. a DSA image derived by subtracting pixel values of one image from another.

d. an image that has been decompressed after having been compressed with a lossy compression algorithm. To ensure that the user has the necessary information about the lossy compression, the approximate compression ratio may be included in Derivation Description (0008,2111).

An example of a Derived Image that would normally not be expected to affect professional interpretation and thus would not require a new UID is an image that has been padded with additional rows and columns for more display purposes.

2. An image may be lossy compressed, e.g., for long term archive purposes, and its SOP Instance UID changed. PS3.4 provides a mechanism by which a query for the original image Instance may return a reference to the UID of the lossy compressed version of the image using the Alternate Representation Sequence (0008,3001). This allows an application processing a SOP Instance that references the original image UID, e.g., a Structured Report, to obtain a reference to an accessible version of the image even if the original SOP Instance is no longer available.

C.7.6.1.1.4 Source image sequence

If an Image is identified to be a Derived image (see C.7.6.1.1.2 Image Type), Source Image Sequence (0008,2112) is an optional list of Referenced SOP Class UID (0008,1150)/ Referenced SOP Instance UID (0008,1150) pairs that identify the source images used to create the Derived image. It may be used whether or not there is a description of the way the image was derived in Derivation Description (0008,2111) or Derivation Code Sequence (0008,9215).

Note: Multiple Items may be present within Source Image Sequence (0008,2112), in which case either:

a) those images were combined to make the derived image (e.g. multiple source images to make an MPR or MIP), or

b) each of the items represents a step in the successive derivation of an image (e.g. when an image has had successive lossy compression steps applied to it),

c) some combination of the above.

The Purpose of Reference Code Sequence (0040,A170) and the Attributes within the referenced images themselves may be used to determine the history of the derivation, which is not otherwise explicitly specified.

C.7.6.1.1.5 Lossy Image Compression

The Attribute Lossy Image Compression (0028,2110) conveys that the Image has undergone lossy compression. It provides a means to record that the Image has been compressed (at a point in its lifetime) with a lossy algorithm and changes have been introduced into the pixel data. Once the value has been set to “01”, it shall not be reset.

Note: If an image is compressed with a lossy algorithm, the attribute Lossy Image Compression (0028,2110) is set to “01”. Subsequently, if the image is decompressed and transferred in uncompressed format, this attribute value remains “01”.

The value of the Lossy Image Compression (0028,2110) Attribute in SOP Instances containing multiple frames in which one or more of the frames have undergone lossy compression shall be “01”.

Note: It is recommended that the applicable frames be noted in the Attribute Derivation Description (0008,2111).

If an image is originally obtained as a lossy compressed image from the sensor, then Lossy Image Compression (0028,2110) is set to “01” and Value 1 of the Attribute Image Type (0008,0008) shall be set to ORIGINAL.

If an image is a compressed version of another image, Lossy Image Compression (0028,2110) is set to “01”, Value 1 of the Attribute Image Type (0008,0008) shall be set to DERIVED, and if the predecessor was a DICOM image, then the Image shall receive a new SOP Instance UID.

Note: 1. It is recommended that the approximate compression ratio be provided in the Attribute Derivation Description (0008,2111). Furthermore, it is recommended that Derivation Description (0008,2111) be used to indicate when pixel data changes might affect professional interpretation. (see C.7.6.1.1.3).

2. The attribute Lossy Image Compression (0028,2110) is defined as Type 3 for backward compatibility with existing IODs. It is expected to be required (i.e., defined as Type 1C) for new Image IODs and for existing IODs that undergo a major revision (e.g. a new IOD is specified).

The Defined Terms for Lossy Image Compression Method (0028,2114) are:

ISO_10918_1 = JPEG Lossy Compression
ISO_14495_1 = JPEG-LS Near-lossless Compression
ISO_15444_1 = JPEG 2000 Irreversible Compression
ISO_13818_2 = MPEG2 Compression

C.7.6.1.1.6 Icon Image Sequence

An Icon Image may be used as a key representative of an Image. It is defined as a Sequence that contains a single Item encapsulating the Data Set made of the Data Elements of the Icon Image. The Data Elements are defined by the Image Pixel Macro (see Section C.7.6.3). The restrictions defined in Section F.7 shall apply.

C.7.6.1.1.7 Irradiation Event UID

An irradiation event is the occurrence of radiation being applied to a patient in single continuous time-frame between the start (release) and the stop (cease) of the irradiation. Any on-off switching of the irradiation source during the event shall not be treated as separate events, rather the event includes the time between start and stop of irradiation as triggered by the user. E.g., a pulsed fluoro X-Ray acquisition shall be treated as a single irradiation event.

C.7.6.2 Image Plane Module

Table C.7-10 specifies the Attributes that define the transmitted pixel array of a two dimensional image plane.

Note: In previous versions of this Standard, image position and image orientation were specified relative to a specific equipment coordinate system. This equipment coordinate system was not fully defined and a number of ambiguities existed. The equipment based coordinate system has been retired and replaced by the patient based coordinate system defined in this Module.

Table C.7-10
IMAGE PLANE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Pixel Spacing	(0028,0030)	1	Physical distance in the patient between the center of each pixel, specified by a numeric pair - adjacent row spacing (delimiter) adjacent column spacing in mm. See 10.7.1.3 for further explanation.
Image Orientation (Patient)	(0020,0037)	1	The direction cosines of the first row and the first column with respect to the patient. See C.7.6.2.1.1 for further explanation.
Image Position (Patient)	(0020,0032)	1	The x, y, and z coordinates of the upper left hand corner (center of the first voxel transmitted) of the image, in mm. See C.7.6.2.1.1 for further explanation.
Slice Thickness	(0018,0050)	2	Nominal slice thickness, in mm.
Slice Location	(0020,1041)	3	Relative position of exposure expressed in mm. C.7.6.2.1.2 for further explanation.

C.7.6.2.1 Image Plane Attribute Descriptions

C.7.6.2.1.1 Image Position And Image Orientation

The Image Position (0020,0032) specifies the x, y, and z coordinates of the upper left hand corner of the image; it is the center of the first voxel transmitted. Image Orientation (0020,0037) specifies the direction cosines of the first row and the first column with respect to the patient. These Attributes shall be provide as a pair. Row value for the x, y, and z axes respectively followed by the Column value for the x, y, and z axes respectively.

The direction of the axes is defined fully by the patient's orientation. The x-axis is increasing to the left hand side of the patient. The y-axis is increasing to the posterior side of the patient. The z-axis is increasing toward the head of the patient.

The patient based coordinate system is a right handed system, i.e. the vector cross product of a unit vector along the positive x-axis and a unit vector along the positive y-axis is equal to a unit vector along the positive z-axis.

Note: If a patient lies parallel to the ground, face-up on the table, with his feet-to-head direction same as the front-to-back direction of the imaging equipment, the direction of the axes of this patient based coordinate system and the equipment based coordinate system in previous versions of this Standard will coincide.

The Image Plane Attributes, in conjunction with the Pixel Spacing Attribute, describe the position and orientation of the image slices relative to the patient-based coordinate system. In each image frame the Image Position (Patient) (0020,0032) specifies the origin of the image with respect to the patient-based coordinate system. RCS and the Image Orientation (Patient) (0020,0037) attribute values specify the orientation of the image frame rows and columns. The mapping of pixel location (i, j) to the RCS is calculated as follows:

$$\begin{bmatrix} P_x \\ P_y \\ P_z \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} X_x \Delta i & Y_x \Delta j & 0 & S_x \\ X_y \Delta i & Y_y \Delta j & 0 & S_y \\ X_z \Delta i & Y_z \Delta j & 0 & S_z \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} i \\ j \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{M} \begin{bmatrix} i \\ j \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Where:

P_{xyz} The coordinates of the voxel (i,j) in the frame's image plane in units of mm.

S_{xyz} The three values of the Image Position (Patient) (0020,0032) attributes. It is the location in mm from the origin of the RCS.

X_{xyz} The values from the row (X) direction cosine of the Image Orientation (Patient) (0020,0037) attribute.

Y_{xyz} The values from the column (Y) direction cosine of the Image Orientation (Patient) (0020,0037) attribute.

i Column index to the image plane. The first column is index zero.

*Δi*Column pixel resolution of the Pixel Spacing (0028,0030) attribute in units of mm.

j Row index to the image plane. The first row index is zero.

*Δj*Row pixel resolution of the Pixel Spacing (0028,0030) attribute in units of mm.

Additional constraints apply:

1) The row and column direction cosine vectors shall be orthogonal, i.e. their dot product shall be zero.
2) The row and column direction cosine vectors shall be normal, i.e. the dot product of each direction cosine vector with itself shall be unity.

C.7.6.2.1.2 Slice Location

The Slice Location (0020,1041) is defined as the relative position of exposure expressed in mm. This information is relative to an unspecified implementation specific reference point.

C.7.6.3 Image Pixel Module

Table C.7-11a describes the Image Pixel Module.

Table C.7-11a
IMAGE PIXEL MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Include 'Image Pixel Macro' Table C.7-11b			
Pixel Data Provider URL	(0028,7FE0)	1C	A URL of a provider service that supplies the pixel data of the Image. Required if the image is to be transferred in one of the following presentation contexts identified by Transfer Syntax UID: 1.2.840.10008.1.2.4.94 (DICOM JPIP Referenced Transfer Syntax) 1.2.840.10008.1.2.4.95 (DICOM JPIP Referenced Deflate Transfer Syntax)

Table C.7-11b specifies the common attributes that describe the pixel data of the image.

Table C.7-11b
IMAGE PIXEL MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Samples per Pixel	(0028,0002)	1	Number of samples (planes) in this image. See C.7.6.3.1.1 for further explanation.
Photometric Interpretation	(0028,0004)	1	Specifies the intended interpretation of the pixel data. See C.7.6.3.1.2 for further explanation.
Rows	(0028,0010)	1	Number of rows in the image.
Columns	(0028,0011)	1	Number of columns in the image
Bits Allocated	(0028,0100)	1	Number of bits allocated for each pixel sample. Each sample shall have the same number of bits allocated. See PS 3.5 for further explanation.
Bits Stored	(0028,0101)	1	Number of bits stored for each pixel sample. Each sample shall have the same number of bits stored. See PS 3.5 for further explanation.
High Bit	(0028,0102)	1	Most significant bit for pixel sample data. Each sample shall have the same high bit. See PS 3.5 for further explanation.
Pixel Representation	(0028,0103)	1	Data representation of the pixel samples. Each sample shall have the same pixel representation. Enumerated Values: 0000H = unsigned integer. 0001H = 2's complement
Pixel Data	(7FE0,0010)	1C	A data stream of the pixel samples that comprise the Image. See C.7.6.3.1.4 for further explanation.

			Required if Pixel Data Provider URL (0028,7FE0) is not present.
Planar Configuration	(0028,0006)	1C	Indicates whether the pixel data are sent color-by-plane or color-by-pixel. Required if Samples per Pixel (0028,0002) has a value greater than 1. See C.7.6.3.1.3 for further explanation.
Pixel Aspect Ratio	(0028,0034)	1C	Ratio of the vertical size and horizontal size of the pixels in the image specified by a pair of integer values where the first value is the vertical pixel size, and the second value is the horizontal pixel size. Required if the aspect ratio is not 1\1 and the Image Plane Module or the Pixel Measures Macro is not applicable to this Image. See C.7.6.3.1.7.
Smallest Image Pixel Value	(0028,0106)	3	The minimum actual pixel value encountered in this image.
Largest Image Pixel Value	(0028,0107)	3	The maximum actual pixel value encountered in this image.
Red Palette Color Lookup Table Descriptor	(0028,1101)	1C	Specifies the format of the Red Palette Color Lookup Table Data (0028,1201) Required if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) has a value of PALETTE COLOR or Pixel Presentation (0008,9205) at the image level equals COLOR or MIXED. See C.7.6.3.1.5 for further explanation.
Green Palette Color Lookup Table Descriptor	(0028,1102)	1C	Specifies the format of the Green Palette Color Lookup Table Data (0028,1202) Required if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) has a value of PALETTE COLOR or Pixel Presentation (0008,9205) at the image level equals COLOR or MIXED. See C.7.6.3.1.5 for further explanation.
Blue Palette Color Lookup Table Descriptor	(0028,1103)	1C	Specifies the format of the Blue Palette Color Lookup Table Data (0028,1203) Required if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) has a value of PALETTE COLOR or Pixel Presentation (0008,9205) at the image level equals COLOR or MIXED. See C.7.6.3.1.5 for further explanation.
Red Palette Color Lookup Table Data	(0028,1201)	1C	Red Palette Color Lookup Table Data. Required if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) has a value of PALETTE COLOR or Pixel Presentation (0008,9205) at the image level equals COLOR or MIXED. See C.7.6.3.1.6 for further explanation.
Green Palette Color Lookup Table	(0028,1202)	1C	Green Palette Color Lookup Table Data.

Data			Required if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) has a value of PALETTE COLOR or Pixel Presentation (0008,9205) at the image level equals COLOR or MIXED. See C.7.6.3.1.6 for further explanation.
Blue Palette Color Lookup Table Data	(0028,1203)	1C	Blue Palette Color Lookup Table Data. Required if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) has a value of PALETTE COLOR or Pixel Presentation (0008,9205) at the image level equals COLOR or MIXED. See C.7.6.3.1.6 for further explanation.
ICC Profile	(0028,2000)	3	An ICC Profile encoding the transformation of device-dependent color stored pixel values into PCS-Values. See Section C.11.15.1.1.1. When present, defines the color space of color Pixel Data (7FE0,0010) values, and the output of Palette Color Lookup Table Data (0028,1201-1203). Note: The profile applies only to the Pixel Data (7FE0,0010) attribute at the same level of the dataset and not to any icons nested within sequences, which may or may not have their own ICC profile specified.

C.7.6.3.1 Image Pixel Attribute Descriptions

C.7.6.3.1.1 Samples Per Pixel

Samples per Pixel (0028,0002) is the number of separate planes in this image. One, three, and four image planes are defined. Other numbers of image planes are allowed, but their meaning is not defined by this Standard.

For monochrome (gray scale) and palette color images, the number of planes is 1. For RGB and other three vector color models, the value of this attribute is 3. For four vector color models, the value of this attribute is 4.

All image planes shall have the same number of Rows (0028,0010), Columns (0028,0011), Bits Allocated (0028,0100), Bits Stored (0028,0101), High Bit (0028,0102), Pixel Representation (0028,0103), and Pixel Aspect Ratio (0028,0034).

The data in each pixel may be represented as a “Composite Pixel Code”. If Samples Per Pixel is one, the Composite Pixel Code is just the “n” bit pixel sample, where “n” = Bits Allocated. If Samples Per Pixel is greater than one, Composite Pixel Code is a “k” bit concatenation of samples, where “k” = Bits Allocated multiplied by Samples Per Pixel, and with the sample representing the vector color designated first in the Photometric Interpretation name comprising the most significant bits of the Composite Pixel Code, followed in order by the samples representing the next vector colors, with the sample representing the vector color designated last in the Photometric Interpretation name comprising the least significant bits of the Composite Pixel Code. For example, for Photometric Interpretation = “RGB”, the most significant “Bits Allocated” bits contain the Red sample, the next “Bits Allocated” bits contain the Green sample, and the least significant “Bits Allocated” bits contain the Blue sample.

C.7.6.3.1.2 Photometric Interpretation

The value of Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) specifies the intended interpretation of the image pixel data.

See PS 3.5 for restrictions imposed by compressed Transfer Syntaxes.

The following values are defined. Other values are permitted but the meaning is not defined by this Standard.

MONOCHROME1 = Pixel data represent a single monochrome image plane. The minimum sample value is intended to be displayed as white after any VOI gray scale transformations have been performed. See PS 3.4. This value may be used only when Samples per Pixel (0028,0002) has a value of 1.

MONOCHROME2 = Pixel data represent a single monochrome image plane. The minimum sample value is intended to be displayed as black after any VOI gray scale transformations have been performed. See PS 3.4. This value may be used only when Samples per Pixel (0028,0002) has a value of 1.

PALETTE COLOR = Pixel data describe a color image with a single sample per pixel (single image plane). The pixel value is used as an index into each of the Red, Blue, and Green Palette Color Lookup Tables (0028,1101-1103&1201-1203). This value may be used only when Samples per Pixel (0028,0002) has a value of 1. When the Photometric Interpretation is Palette Color; Red, Blue, and Green Palette Color Lookup Tables shall be present.

RGB = Pixel data represent a color image described by red, green, and blue image planes. The minimum sample value for each color plane represents minimum intensity of the color. This value may be used only when Samples per Pixel (0028,0002) has a value of 3.

HSV = *Retired.*

ARGB = *Retired.*

CMYK = *Retired.*

YBR_FULL = Pixel data represent a color image described by one luminance (Y) and two chrominance planes (C_B and C_R). This photometric interpretation may be used only when Samples per Pixel (0028,0002) has a value of 3. Black is represented by Y equal to zero. The absence of color is represented by both C_B and C_R values equal to half full scale.

Note: In the case where the Bits Allocated (0028,0100) has value of 8 half full scale is 128.

In the case where Bits Allocated (0028,0100) has a value of 8 then the following equations convert between RGB and YC_BC_R Photometric Interpretation.

$$Y = + .2990R + .5870G + .1140B$$

$$C_B = - .1687R - .3313G + .5000B + 128$$

$$C_R = + .5000R - .4187G - .0813B + 128$$

Note: The above is based on CCIR Recommendation 601-2 dated 1990.

YBR_FULL_422 = The same as YBR_FULL except that the C_B and C_R values are sampled horizontally at half the Y rate and as a result there are half as many C_B and C_R values as Y values.

This Photometric Interpretation is only allowed with Planar Configuration (0028,0006) equal to 0. Two Y values shall be stored followed by one C_B and one C_R value. The C_B and C_R values shall be sampled at the location of the first of the two Y values. For each Row of Pixels, the first C_B and C_R samples shall be at the location of the first Y sample. The next C_B and C_R samples shall be at the location of the third Y sample etc.

Note: This subsampling is often referred to as cosited sampling.

YBR_PARTIAL_422 = The same as YBR_FULL_422 except that:

1. black corresponds to Y = 16;
2. Y is restricted to 220 levels (i.e. the maximum value is 235);
3. C_B and C_R each has a minimum value of 16;
4. C_B and C_R are restricted to 225 levels (i.e. the maximum value is 240);
5. lack of color is represented by C_B and C_R equal to 128.

In the case where Bits Allocated (0028,0100) has value of 8 then the following equations convert between RGB and YBR_PARTIAL_422 Photometric Interpretation

$$Y = + .2568R + .5041G + .0979B + 16$$

$$C_B = - .1482R - .2910G + .4392B + 128$$

$$C_R = + .4392R - .3678G - .0714B + 128$$

Note: The above is based on CCIR Recommendation 601-2 dated 1990.

YBR_PARTIAL_420 = The same as YBR_PARTIAL_422 except that the C_B and C_R values are sampled horizontally and vertically at half the Y rate and as a result there are four times less C_B and C_R values than Y values, versus twice less for YBR_PARTIAL_422.

This Photometric Interpretation is only allowed with Planar Configuration (0028,0006) equal to 0. The C_B and C_R values shall be sampled at the location of the first of the two Y values. For the first Row of Pixels (etc.), the first C_B and C_R samples shall be at the location of the first Y sample. The next C_B and C_R samples shall be at the location of the third Y sample etc. The next Rows of Pixels containing C_B and C_R samples (at the same locations than for the first Row) will be the third etc.

YBR_ICT = Irreversible Color Transformation:

Pixel data represent a color image described by one luminance (Y) and two chrominance planes (C_B and C_R). This photometric interpretation may be used only when Samples per Pixel (0028,0002) has a value of 3. Black is represented by Y equal to zero. The absence of color is represented by both C_B and C_R values equal to zero.

Regardless of the value of Bits Allocated (0028,0100), the following equations convert between RGB and YC_BC_R Photometric Interpretation.

$$Y = + .29900R + .58700G + .11400B$$

$$C_B = - .16875R - .33126G + .50000B$$

$$C_R = + .50000R - .41869G - .08131B$$

Notes: 1. The above is based on ISO/IEC 15444-1 (JPEG 2000).

2. In a JPEG 2000 bitstream, DC level shifting (used if the untransformed components are unsigned) is applied before forward color transformation, and the transformed components may be signed (unlike in JPEG ISO/IEC 10918-1).

3. In JPEG 2000, spatial down-sampling of the chrominance components, if performed, is signaled in the JPEG 2000 bitstream.

YBR_RCT = Reversible Color Transformation:

Pixel data represent a color image described by one luminance (Y) and two chrominance planes (C_B and C_R). This photometric interpretation may be used only when Samples per Pixel (0028,0002) has a value of 3. Black is represented by Y equal to zero. The absence of color is represented by both C_B and C_R values equal to zero.

Regardless of the value of Bits Allocated (0028,0100), the following equations convert between RGB and YBR_RCT Photometric Interpretation.

$$Y = \lfloor (R + 2G + B) / 4 \rfloor \qquad \text{(Note: } \lfloor ... \rfloor \text{ mean floor)}$$

$$C_B = B - G$$

$$C_R = R - G$$

The following equations convert between YBR_RCT and RGB Photometric Interpretation.

$$G = Y - \lfloor (C_R + C_B) / 4 \rfloor$$

$$R = C_R + G$$

$$B = C_B + G$$

Notes: 1. The above is based on ISO/IEC 15444-1 (JPEG 2000).

2. In a JPEG 2000 bitstream, DC level shifting (used if the untransformed components are unsigned) is applied before forward color transformation, and the transformed components may be signed (unlike in JPEG ISO/IEC 10918-1).

3. This photometric interpretation is a reversible approximation to the YUV transformation used in PAL and SECAM.

C.7.6.3.1.3 Planar Configuration

Planar Configuration (0028,0006) indicates whether the color pixel data are sent color-by-plane or color-by-pixel. This Attribute shall be present if Samples per Pixel (0028,0002) has a value greater than 1. It shall not be present otherwise.

Enumerated Values:

0 = The sample values for the first pixel are followed by the sample values for the second pixel, etc. For RGB images, this means the order of the pixel values sent shall be R1, G1, B1, R2, G2, B2, ..., etc.

1 = Each color plane shall be sent contiguously. For RGB images, this means the order of the pixel values sent is R1, R2, R3, ..., G1, G2, G3, ..., B1, B2, B3, etc.

Note: Planar Configuration (0028,0006) is not meaningful when a compression transfer syntax is used that involves reorganization of sample components in the compressed bit stream. In such cases, since the Attribute is required to be sent, then an appropriate value to use may be specified in the description of the Transfer Syntax in PS 3.5, though in all likelihood the value of the Attribute will be ignored by the receiving implementation.

C.7.6.3.1.4 Pixel Data

Pixel Data (7FE0,0010) for this image. The order of pixels sent for each image plane is left to right, top to bottom, i.e., the upper left pixel (labeled 1,1) is sent first followed by the remainder of row 1, followed by the first pixel of row 2 (labeled 2,1) then the remainder of row 2 and so on.

For multi-plane images see Planar Configuration (0028,0006) in this Section.

C.7.6.3.1.5 Palette Color Lookup Table Descriptor

The three values of Palette Color Lookup Table Descriptor (0028,1101-1103) describe the format of the Lookup Table Data in the corresponding Data Element (0028,1201-1203) or (0028,1221-1223).

The first value is the number of entries in the lookup table. When the number of table entries is equal to 2^{16} then this value shall be 0. The first value shall be identical for each of the Red, Green and Blue Palette Color Lookup Table Descriptors.

The second value is the first stored pixel value mapped. This pixel value is mapped to the first entry in the Lookup Table Data. All image pixel values less than the first value mapped are also mapped to the first entry in the Lookup Table Data if the Photometric Interpretation is PALETTE COLOR.

Note: In the case of the Supplemental Palette Color LUT, the stored pixel values less than the second descriptor value are grayscale values.

An image pixel value one greater than the first value mapped is mapped to the second entry in the Lookup Table Data. Subsequent image pixel values are mapped to the subsequent entries in the Lookup Table Data up to an image pixel value equal to number of entries + first value mapped – 1, which is mapped to the last entry in the Lookup Table Data. Image pixel values greater than or equal to number of entries + first value mapped are also mapped to the last entry in the Lookup Table Data. The second value shall be identical for each of the Red, Green and Blue Palette Color Lookup Table Descriptors.

The third value specifies the number of bits for each entry in the Lookup Table Data. It shall take the value of 8 or 16. The LUT Data shall be stored in a format equivalent to 8 bits allocated when the number of bits for each entry is 8, and 16 bits allocated when the number of bits for each entry is 16, where in both cases the high bit is equal to bits allocated-1. The third value shall be identical for each of the Red, Green and Blue Palette Color Lookup Table Descriptors.

Note: Some implementations have encoded 8 bit entries with 16 bits allocated, padding the high bits; this can be detected by comparing the number of entries specified in the LUT Descriptor with the actual value length of the LUT Data entry. The value length in bytes should equal the number of entries if bits allocated is 8, and be twice as long if bits allocated is 16.

When the Palette Color Lookup Table Descriptor (0028,1101-1103) are used as part of the Palette Color Lookup Table Module or the Supplemental Palette Color Lookup Table Module, the third value shall be equal to 16.

Notes: 1. A value of 16 indicates the Lookup Table Data will range from (0,0,0) minimum intensity to (65535,65535,65535) maximum intensity.

2. Since the Palette Color Lookup Table Descriptor (0028,1101-1103) Attributes are multi-valued, in an Explicit VR Transfer Syntax, only one value representation (US or SS) may be specified, even though the first and third values are always by definition interpreted as unsigned. The explicit VR actually used is dictated by the VR needed to represent the second value, which will be consistent with Pixel Representation (0028,0103).

C.7.6.3.1.6 Palette Color Lookup Table Data

Palette Color Lookup Table Data (0028,1201-1203) contain the lookup table data corresponding to the Lookup Table Descriptor (0028,1101-1103).

Palette color values must always be scaled across the full range of available intensities. This is indicated by the fact that there are no bits stored and high bit values for palette color data.

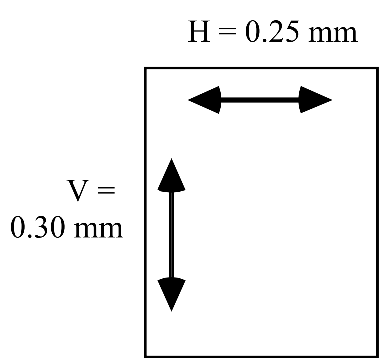
Note: For example, if there are 16 bits per entry specified and only 8 bits of value are truly used then the 8 bit intensities from 0 to 255 must be scaled to the corresponding 16 bit intensities from 0 to 65535. To do this for 8 bit values, simply replicate the value in both the most and least significant bytes.

These lookup tables shall be used only when there is a single sample per pixel (single image plane) in the image.

These lookup tables are required when the value of Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) is Palette Color. The semantics of these lookup tables is not defined otherwise.

C.7.6.3.1.7 Pixel Aspect Ratio

The pixel aspect ratio is the ratio of the vertical size and horizontal size of the pixels in the image specified by a pair of integer values where the first value is the vertical pixel size, and the second value is the horizontal pixel size. To illustrate, consider the following example pixel size:



Dimensions of pixel

Pixel Aspect Ratio = Vertical Size \ Horizontal Size = 0.30 mm \0.25 mm. Thus the Pixel Aspect Ratio could be represented as the multivalued integer string "6\5", "60\50", or any equivalent integer ratio.

C.7.6.4 Contrast/Bolus Module

Table C.7-12 specifies the Attributes that describe the contrast /bolus used in the acquisition of the Image.

Table C.7-12
CONTRAST/BOLUS MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Contrast/Bolus Agent	(0018,0010)	2	Contrast or bolus agent
Contrast/Bolus Agent Sequence	(0018,0012)	3	Sequence that identifies the contrast agent. One or more Items may be present.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 12.*	
Contrast/Bolus Route	(0018,1040)	3	Administration route of contrast agent
Contrast/Bolus Administration Route Sequence	(0018,0014)	3	Sequence that identifies the route of administration of contrast agent. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 11.*	
>Additional Drug Sequence	(0018,002A)	3	Sequence that identifies any additional drug that is administered with the contrast agent bolus. One or more Items may be present.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*	
Contrast/Bolus Volume	(0018,1041)	3	Volume injected in milliliters of diluted contrast agent
Contrast/Bolus Start Time	(0018,1042)	3	Time of start of injection
Contrast/Bolus Stop Time	(0018,1043)	3	Time of end of contrast injection
Contrast/Bolus Total Dose	(0018,1044)	3	Total amount in milliliters of the undiluted contrast agent
Contrast Flow Rate	(0018,1046)	3	Rate(s) of injection(s) in milliliters/sec
Contrast Flow Duration	(0018,1047)	3	Duration(s) of injection(s) in seconds. Each Contrast Flow Duration value shall correspond to a value of Contrast Flow Rate (0018,1046).
Contrast/Bolus Ingredient	(0018,1048)	3	Active ingredient of agent. Defined Terms: IODINE GADOLINIUM CARBON DIOXIDE BARIUM
Contrast/Bolus Ingredient Concentration	(0018,1049)	3	Milligrams of active ingredient per milliliter of (diluted) agent

Note: 1. Flow duration is an alternate method of specifying stop time

2. Flow rate allows for stepped injections by being capable of multiple values (1,N) instances.

3. For a 100 ml injection of 76% Diatrizoate and meglumine/sodium, diluted 1:1,
the Contrast/Bolus Agent would be "76% Diatrizoate" as text
the Contrast/Bolus Volume would be 100 ml,
the Contrast/Bolus Total Dose would be 50 ml,
the Contrast/Bolus Ingredient would be "IODINE",
the Contrast/Bolus Ingredient Concentration would be 370mg/ml.

C.7.6.4b Enhanced Contrast/Bolus Module

Table C.7-12b specifies the Attributes that describe the contrast/bolus used in the acquisition of the Image.

Table C.7-12b
ENHANCED CONTRAST/BOLUS MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Contrast/Bolus Agent Sequence	(0018,0012)	1	Sequence that identifies one or more contrast agents administered prior to or during the acquisition. Shall contain one or more Items.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 12.*	
>Contrast/Bolus Agent Number	(0018,9337)	1	Identifying number, unique within this SOP Instance, of the agent administered. Used to reference this particular agent from the Contrast/Bolus Functional Group Macro. The number shall be 1 for the first Item and increase by 1 for each subsequent Item.
>Contrast/Bolus Administration Route Sequence	(0018,0014)	1	Sequence that identifies the route of administration of contrast agent. Shall contain exactly one Item.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 11.*	
>Contrast/Bolus Ingredient Code Sequence	(0018,9338)	2	Active ingredient of agent. Zero or more Items may be included in the Sequence.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 13.*	
>Contrast/Bolus Volume	(0018,1041)	2	Total volume administered in milliliters of diluted contrast agent.
>Contrast/Bolus Ingredient Concentration	(0018,1049)	2	Milligrams of active ingredient per milliliter of agent.
>Contrast/Bolus Ingredient Opaque	(0018,9425)	3	Absorption of the ingredient greater than the absorption of water (tissue). Enumerated Values: YES NO See Section C.7.6.4b.1.
>Contrast Administration Profile Sequence	(0018,9340)	3	Sequence that describes one or more phases of contrast administered. If present, shall contain one or more Items.
>>Contrast/Bolus Volume	(0018,1041)	2	Volume administered during this phase in milliliters of diluted contrast agent.
>>Contrast/Bolus Start Time	(0018,1042)	3	Time of start of administration.
>>Contrast/Bolus Stop Time	(0018,1043)	3	Time of end of administration.
>>Contrast Flow Rate	(0018,1046)	3	Rate of administration in milliliters/sec. Only a single value shall be present.
>>Contrast Flow Duration	(0018,1047)	3	Duration of injection in seconds. Only a single value shall be present.

C.7.6.4b.1 Enhanced Contrast/Bolus Module Attributes

C.7.6.4b.1.1 Contrast/Bolus Ingredient Opaque for X-ray equipment

Contrast/Bolus Ingredient Opaque (0018,9425) attribute specifies the type of relative X-ray absorption of the contrast/bolus ingredient, compared to the X-ray absorption of water. The the meaning for the Enumerated Values are:

YES The contrast/bolus ingredient absorbs more X-ray photons than water;

NO The contrast/bolus ingredient absorbs less X-ray photons than water;

Note: The Contrast/Bolus Ingredient Opaque (0018,9425) attribute determines the sign of the gradient of X-Ray beam intensity from inside to outside the injected vessel, thus allowing optimal settings of the image processing applications (e.g. vessel edge detection, etc.), see Figure C.7.6.4b-1.

The relative gray level of the injected vessel with respect to the gray level of the water of Pixel Data (7FE0,0010) is determined by the Contrast/Bolus Ingredient Opaque (0018,9425) and by the Pixel Intensity Relationship Sign (0028,1041). For example, if the contrast/bolus ingredient is more radio graphically dense than water (i.e. YES), and the Pixel Intensity Relationship Sign (0028,1041) is –1, then the contrast/bolus ingredient is represented by higher values of Pixel Data than water.

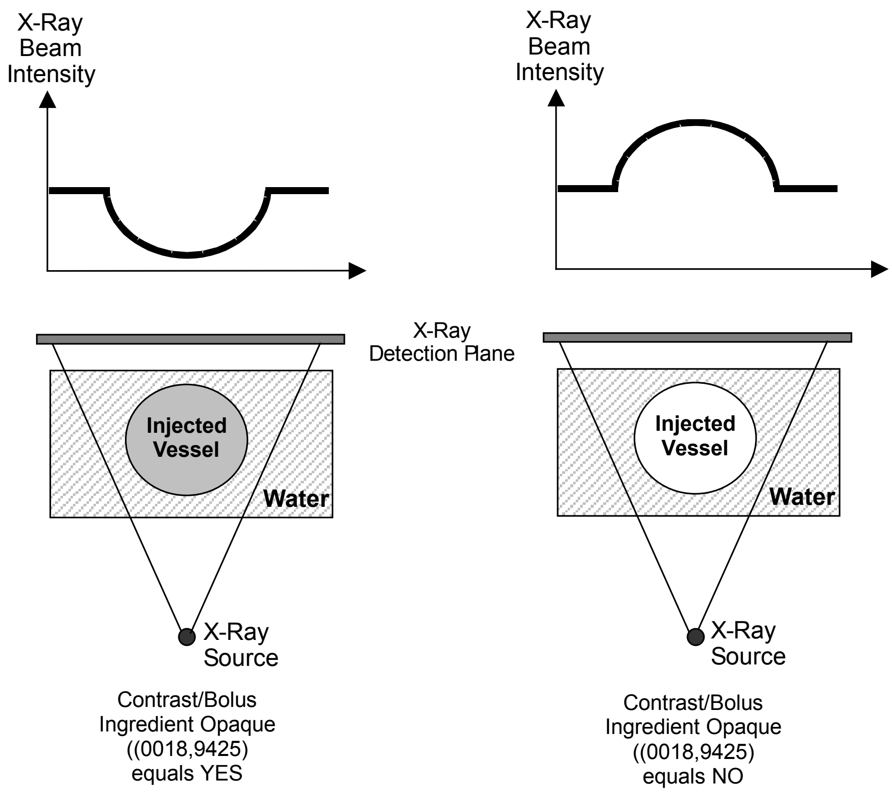


Figure C.7.6.4b-1
X-ray beam intensity vs. Contrast/Bolus Ingredient Opaque

C.7.6.5 Cine Module

Table C.7-13 specifies the Attributes of a Multi-frame Cine Image.

Table C.7-13
CINE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Preferred Playback Sequencing	(0018,1244)	3	Describes the preferred playback sequencing for a multi-frame image. Enumerated Values: 0 = Looping (1,2...n,1,2,...n,1,2,....n,...) 1 = Sweeping (1,2,...n,n-1,...2,1,2,...n,...)
Frame Time	(0018,1063)	1C	Nominal time (in msec) per individual frame. See C.7.6.5.1.1 for further explanation. Required if Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) points to Frame Time.
Frame Time Vector	(0018,1065)	1C	An array that contains the real time increments (in msec) between frames for a Multi-frame image. See C.7.6.5.1.2 for further explanation. Required if Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) points to Frame Time Vector. Note: Frame Time Vector arrays may not be properly encoded if Explicit-VR transfer syntax is used and the VL of this attribute exceeds 65534 bytes.
Start Trim	(0008,2142)	3	The frame number of the first frame of the Multi-frame image to be displayed.
Stop Trim	(0008,2143)	3	The Frame Number of the last frame of a Multi-frame image to be displayed.
Recommended Display Frame Rate	(0008,2144)	3	Recommended rate at which the frames of a Multi-frame image should be displayed in frames/second.
Cine Rate	(0018,0040)	3	Number of frames per second.
Frame Delay	(0018,1066)	3	Time (in msec) from Content Time (0008,0033) to the start of the first frame in a Multi-frame image.
Image Trigger Delay	(0018,1067)	3	Delay time in milliseconds from trigger (e.g., X-ray on pulse) to the first frame of a Multi-frame image.
Effective Duration	(0018,0072)	3	Total time in seconds that data was actually taken for the entire Multi-frame image.
Actual Frame Duration	(0018,1242)	3	Elapsed time of data acquisition in msec per each frame.
Multiplexed Audio Channels Description Code Sequence	(003A,0300)	2C	Description of any multiplexed audio channels. See Section C.7.6.5.1.3. Required if the Transfer Syntax used to encode the multi-frame image contains

			multiplexed (interleaved) audio channels, such as is possible with MPEG2. Zero or more items may be present in this sequence.
>Channel Identification Code	(003A,0301)	1	A reference to the audio channel as identified within Transfer Syntax encoded bit stream (1 for the main channel, 2 for the second channel and 3 to 9 to the complementary channels).
>Channel Mode	(003A,0302)	1	A coded descriptor qualifying the mode of the channel: Enumerated Values: MONO = 1 signal STEREO = 2 simultaneously acquired (left and right) signals
>Channel Source Sequence	(003A,0208)	1	A coded descriptor of the audio channel source. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1.		*Defined Context ID Audio Channel Source 3000.*	

C.7.6.5.1 Cine Attribute Descriptions

C.7.6.5.1.1 Frame Time

Frame Time (0018,1063) is the nominal time (in milliseconds) between individual frames of a Multi-frame image. If the Frame Increment Pointer points to this Attribute, Frame Time shall be used in the following manner to calculate 'the relative time' for each frame:

Frame 'Relative Time' (n) = Frame Delay + Frame Time * (n-1)

where: n = number of frame within the Multi-frame image and the first frame number is one

C.7.6.5.1.2 Frame Time Vector

Frame Time Vector (0018,1065) is an array that contains the time increments (in milliseconds) between the nth frame and the previous frame for a Multi-frame image. The first frame always has a time increment of 0. If the Frame Increment Pointer points to this Attribute, the Frame Time Vector shall be used in the following manner to calculate 'relative time' *T(n)* for frame *n*:

$$T(n) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \Delta t_i$$

where Δt_i is the ith Frame Time Vector component.

C.7.6.5.1.3 Multiplexed Audio

During a video acquisition, audio may be used for voice commentary of what is being observed, as well as to record sound-based physiological information such as Doppler audio.

Some Transfer Syntaxes allow for the multiplexing of interleaved audio with video data, and the Attributes of the Cine Module support this encoding paradigm. They are not intended to describe audio acquired simultaneously when it is encoded in other SOP Instances or within Attributes other than Pixel Data (7FE0,0010) of the same SOP Instance.

Synchronization between audio and video is assumed to be encoded at the Transfer Syntax level (i.e. within the encoded bit stream).

Note: If no audio was recorded, the Multiplexed Audio Channels Description Code Sequence (003A,0300) will be present and contain no sequence items.

C.7.6.6 Multi-Frame Module

Table C.7-14 specifies the Attributes of a Multi-frame pixel data Image.

Table C.7-14
MULTI-FRAME MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Number of Frames	(0028,0008)	1	Number of frames in a Multi-frame Image. See C.7.6.6.1.1 for further explanation.
Frame Increment Pointer	(0028,0009)	1	Contains the Data Element Tag of the attribute that is used as the frame increment in Multi-frame pixel data. See C.7.6.6.1.1 for further explanation.

C.7.6.6.1 Multi-Frame Attribute Descriptions

C.7.6.6.1.1 Number Of Frames And Frame Increment Pointer

A Multi-frame Image is defined as a Image whose pixel data consists of a sequential set of individual Image Pixel frames. A Multi-frame Image is transmitted as a single contiguous stream of pixels. Frame headers do not exist within the data stream.

Each individual frame shall be defined (and thus can be identified) by the Attributes in the Image Pixel Module (see C.7.6.3). All Image IE Attributes shall be related to the first frame in the Multi-frame image.

The total number of frames contained within a Multi-frame Image is conveyed in the Number of Frames (0028,0008).

The frames within a Multi-frame Image shall be conveyed as a logical sequence. The information that determines the sequential order of the frames shall be identified by the Data Element Tag or tags conveyed by the Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009). Each specific Image IOD that supports the Multi-frame Module specializes the Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) to identify the Attributes that may be used as sequences.

C.7.6.7 Bi-Plane Sequence Module (Retired)

C.7.6.8 Bi-Plane Image Module (Retired)

C.7.6.9 Frame Pointers Module

Table C.7-15 specifies the attributes of a Frame Pointer Module.

Table C.7-15
FRAME POINTERS MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Representative Frame Number	(0028,6010)	3	The frame number selected for use as a pictorial representation (e.g. icon) of the Multi-frame Image
Frame Numbers Of Interest (FOI)	(0028,6020)	3	Frame number(s) selected as frames of interest. A frame number may appear more than once.
Frame Of Interest Description	(0028,6022)	3	Description of each one of the Frame(s) of Interest selected in (0028,6020). If multiple Frames of Interest are selected and this Attribute is used, it shall contain the same number of values as are in Frame Numbers of Interest (0028,6020).
Frame of Interest Type	(0028,6023)	3	A defined term for each one of the Frame(s) of Interest (0028,6020) that identifies the significance of the frame. If multiple Frames of Interest are selected and this Attribute is used, it shall contain the same number of values as are in Frame Numbers of Interest (0028,6020). Defined Terms are: HIGHMI = a frame acquired at the time of the high power pulse that destroys acoustic contrast RWAVE = the frame closest to the R-Wave TRIGGER = a trigger frame, for example a set delay from the R Wave ENDSYSTOLE = the frame closest to end of systole, at the end of the T-wave

Notes: 1. Frame numbers begin at 1.

2. Frame of Interest Description is intended to indicate such frames as Systolic, Diastolic, Stenotic Artery, or trigger label.

C.7.6.10 Mask Module

Table C.7-16 specifies the Attributes that describe mask operations for a Multi-frame image.

Table C.7-16
MASK MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Mask Subtraction Sequence	(0028,6100)	1	Defines a sequence that describes mask subtraction operations for a Multi-frame Image.
>Mask Operation	(0028,6101)	1	Defined Term identifying the type of mask operation to be performed. See C.7.6.10.1 for further explanation.
>Subtraction Item ID	(0028,9416)	1C	Identification of the Subtraction Item used to associate a certain Mask Sub-Pixel Shift (0028,6114) in the Frame Pixel Shift Functional Group. See C.7.6.16.2.14.1. Required if SOP Class UID (0008,0016) equals “1.2.840.10008.5.1.4.1.1.12.1.1” or “1.2.840.10008.5.1.4.1.1.12.2.1”. May be present otherwise.
>Applicable Frame Range	(0028,6102)	1C	Each pair of numbers in this multi-valued attribute specify a beginning and ending frame number inclusive of a range where this particular mask operation is valid. Discontinuous ranges are represented by multiple pairs of numbers. Frames in a Multi-frame Image are specified by sequentially increasing number values beginning with 1. If this Attribute is missing in this particular sequence item, then the mask operation is applicable throughout the entire Multi-frame Image, subject to certain limits as described in C.7.6.10.1.1. Required if Mask Operation (0028,6101) equals REV_TID. May be present otherwise.
>Mask Frame Numbers	(0028,6110)	1C	Specifies the frame numbers of the pixel data used to generate this mask. Frames in a Multi-frame Image are specified by sequentially increasing number values beginning with 1. Required if the Mask Operation (0028,6101) is AVG_SUB.
>Contrast Frame Averaging	(0028,6112)	3	Specifies the number of contrast frames to average together before performing the mask operation. If the Attribute is missing, no averaging is

			performed.
>Mask Sub-pixel Shift	(0028,6114)	3	A pair of floating point numbers specifying the fractional vertical [adjacent row spacing] and horizontal [adjacent column spacing] pixel shift applied to the mask before subtracting it from the contrast frame. See Section C.7.6.10.1.2. Note: When the Frame Pixel Shift Functional Group is present the values of the Mask Pixel Shift attribute of that Functional Group prevails over the values specified in this module.
>TID Offset	(0028,6120)	2C	If Mask Operation is TID, specifies the offset to be subtracted from the current frame number in order to locate the mask frame in TID mode. If Mask Operation is REV_TID, specifies the initial offset to be subtracted from the first contrast frame number. See section C.7.6.10.1.1. If zero length, TID Offset defaults to 1. Required if Mask Operation (0028,6101) is TID or REV_TID.
>Mask Operation Explanation	(0028,6190)	3	Free form explanation of this particular mask operation.
>Mask Selection Mode	(0028,9454)	3	Specifies the method of selection of the mask operations of this item. Defined Terms: SYSTEM USER
Recommended Viewing Mode	(0028,1090)	2	Specifies the recommended viewing protocol(s). Defined terms: SUB = for subtraction with mask images; NAT = native viewing of image as sent. Note: If an implementation does not recognize the defined term for Recommended Viewing Mode (0028,1090) , reverting to native display mode is recommended.

Note: Frame numbers begin at 1.

C.7.6.10.1 Mask Subtraction Attribute Descriptions

C.7.6.10.1.1 Mask Operation

Mask Operation (0028,6101) specifies a type of mask operation to be performed. The Defined Terms identifying the mask operation to be performed are as follows:

NONE (No Subtraction) No mask subtraction operation is specified;

AVG_SUB (Average Subtraction) The frames specified by the Mask Frame Numbers (0028,6110) are averaged together, shifted by the amount specified in the Mask Sub-pixel Shift (0028,6114), then subtracted from the contrast frames in the range specified in the Applicable Frame Range (0028,6102) . Contrast Frame Averaging (0028,6112) number of frames starting with the current frame are averaged together before the subtraction. If the Applicable Frame Range is not present in this sequence item, the Applicable Frame Range is assumed to end at the last frame number of the image minus Contrast Frame Averaging (0028,6112) plus one;

TID (Time Interval Differencing) The mask for each frame within the Applicable Frame Range (0028,6102) is selected by subtracting TID Offset (0028,6120) from the respective frame number. If the Applicable Frame Range is not present in this sequence item, the Applicable Frame Range is assumed to be a range where TID offset subtracted from any frame number with the range results in a valid frame number within the Multi-frame image.

Note: A positive value for TID Offset (0028,6120) means that the mask frame numbers are lower than the subtracted frame numbers. A negative TID Offset means that the mask frame numbers are higher than the subtracted frame numbers.

REV_TID (Reversed Time Interval Differencing) The number of the mask frame for each contrast frame within the Applicable Frame Range (0028,6102) is calculated by subtracting the TID Offset (0028,6120) from the first frame within the Applicable Frame Range, the TID Offset (0028,6120) +2 from the second frame within the Applicable Frame Range, the TID Offset (0028,6120) +4 from the third frame and so on. The Applicable Frame Range (0028,6102) shall be present.

When multiple pairs of frame numbers are specified in the Applicable Frame Range attribute, the beginning frame numbers (i.e. the first frame number in each pair) shall be in increasing order.

Algorithm to calculate the Mask Frame Number:

MFN = (FCFN – TID Offset) – (CFN – FCFN)

In which:

MFN = Mask Frame Number
CFN = Contrast Frame Number
FCFN = First Contrast Frame Number, the first frame number of the first pair in the Applicable Frame Range

Note: A positive value for TID Offset (0028,6120) means that the mask frame numbers are lower than the subtracted frame numbers. A negative TID Offset means that the mask frame numbers are higher than the subtracted frame numbers.

Note: Example of TID Offset, see Figure C.7.6.10-1:

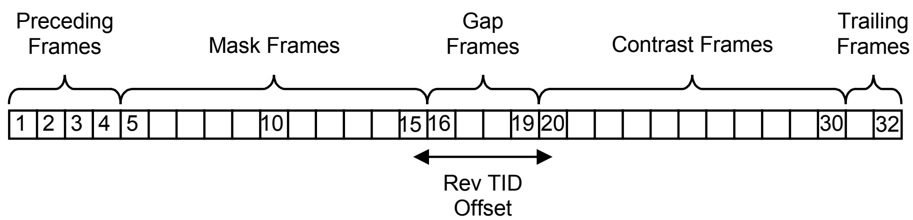


Figure C.7.6.10-1

Number of Frames:	32
Applicable Frame Range:	20 to 30
TID Offset:	5

For Calculating the TID Offset for Mask Operation REV_TID see table C.7.6.10-1:

Table C.7.6.10-1
Example Mask Frame Numbers for Mask Operation REV_TID

Contrast Frame Number (CFN) (Absolute value)	Mask Frame Number (MFN) (Absolute value)
20	15
21	14
22	13
…	…
28	7
29	6
30	5

In this example the acquisition of the mask frames starts with frame 5 and ends with frame 15. The acquisition of the contrast frames starts with frame 20 and ends with frame 30 (Applicable Frame Range). The number 5 for TID Offset indicates a gap between “end of mask frames” and “begin of contrast frames” of 4 frames, e.g. injection phase and/or time needed to drive C-arm in reverse. Additionally, in this example, the first 4 frames and the last two frames are not used for this Reversed Time Interval Differencing loop.

C.7.6.10.1.2 Mask Sub-pixel Shift

A pair of floating point numbers specifying the fractional vertical [adjacent row spacing] and horizontal [adjacent column spacing] pixel shift applied to the mask before subtracting it from the contrast frame. The row offset results in a shift of the pixels along the column axis. The column offset results in a shift of the pixels along the row axis. A positive row offset is a shift toward the pixels of the lower row of the pixel plane. A positive column offset is a shift toward the pixels of the left hand side column of the pixel plane.

C.7.6.11 Display Shutter Module

The Display shutter is a geometric mask that may be applied on the image for presentation purposes in order to neutralize the display of any of the pixels located outside of the shutter shape. Geometry of the shutter is specified with respect to a row and column coordinate system where the origin is the upper left hand pixel. This origin is specified by the values 1,1 for row/column. A row coordinate represents a row spacing (vertical) and a column coordinate represents a column spacing (horizontal). Up to three different shutter shapes may be used and superimposed.

The manner in which the display area is neutralized (black-out, gray, or other means) is defined by the Attribute Shutter Presentation Value (0018,1622), or undefined if this Attribute is absent or empty.

Table C.7-17
DISPLAY SHUTTER MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Include 'Display Shutter Macro' Table C.7-17A.			

Table C.7-17A
DISPLAY SHUTTER MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Shutter Shape	(0018,1600)	1	Shape(s) of the shutter defined for display. Enumerated Values: RECTANGULAR CIRCULAR POLYGONAL This multi-valued Attribute shall contain at most one of each Enumerated Value.
Shutter Left Vertical Edge	(0018,1602)	1C	Required if Shutter Shape (0018,1600) is RECTANGULAR. Location of the left edge of the rectangular shutter with respect to pixels in the image given as column.
Shutter Right Vertical Edge	(0018,1604)	1C	Required if Shutter Shape (0018,1600) is RECTANGULAR. Location of the right edge of the rectangular shutter with respect to pixels in the image given as column.
Shutter Upper Horizontal Edge	(0018,1606)	1C	Required if Shutter Shape (0018,1600) is RECTANGULAR. Location of the upper edge of the rectangular shutter with respect to pixels in the image given as row.
Shutter Lower Horizontal Edge	(0018,1608)	1C	Required if Shutter Shape (0018,1600) is RECTANGULAR. Location of the lower edge of the rectangular shutter with respect to pixels in the image given as row.
Center of Circular Shutter	(0018,1610)	1C	Required if Shutter Shape (0018,1600) is CIRCULAR. Location of the center of the circular shutter with respect to pixels in the image given as row and column.
Radius of Circular Shutter	(0018,1612)	1C	Required if Shutter Shape (0018,1600) is CIRCULAR. Radius of the circular shutter with respect to pixels in the image given as

			a number of pixels along the row direction.
Vertices of the Polygonal Shutter	(0018,1620)	1C	Required if Shutter Shape (0018,1600) is POLYGONAL. Multiple Values where the first set of two values are: row of the origin vertex column of the origin vertex Two or more pairs of values follow and are the row and column coordinates of the other vertices of the polygon shutter. Polygon shutters are implicitly closed from the last vertex to the origin vertex and all edges shall be non-intersecting except at the vertices.
Shutter Presentation Value	(0018,1622)	3	A single gray unsigned value used to replace those parts of the image occluded by the shutter, when rendered on a monochrome display. The units are specified in P-Values, from a minimum of 0000H (black) up to a maximum of FFFFH (white). Note: The maximum P-Value for this Attribute may be different from the maximum P-Value from the output of the Presentation LUT, which may be less than 16 bits in depth.
Shutter Presentation Color CIELab Value	(0018,1624)	3	A color triplet value used to replace those parts of the image occluded by the shutter, when rendered on a color display. The units are specified in PCS-Values, and the value is encoded as CIELab. See C.10.7.1.1.

The following figures illustrate the values of coordinate attributes for 1:1 aspect and 2:1 aspect ratio images with rectangular and circular display shutters applied.

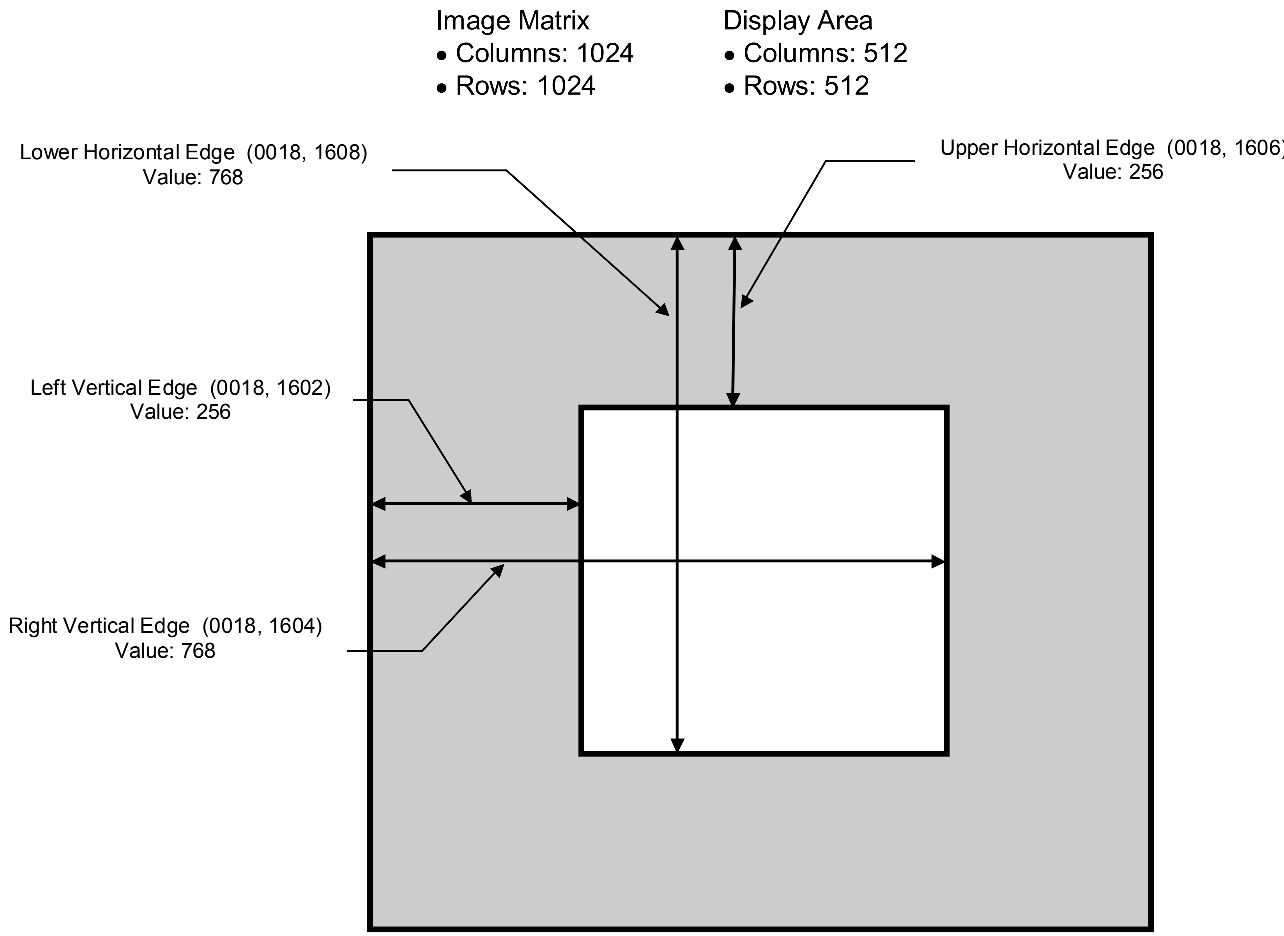


Figure C.7-1
Rectangular Display Shutter
(1:1 aspect ratio image)

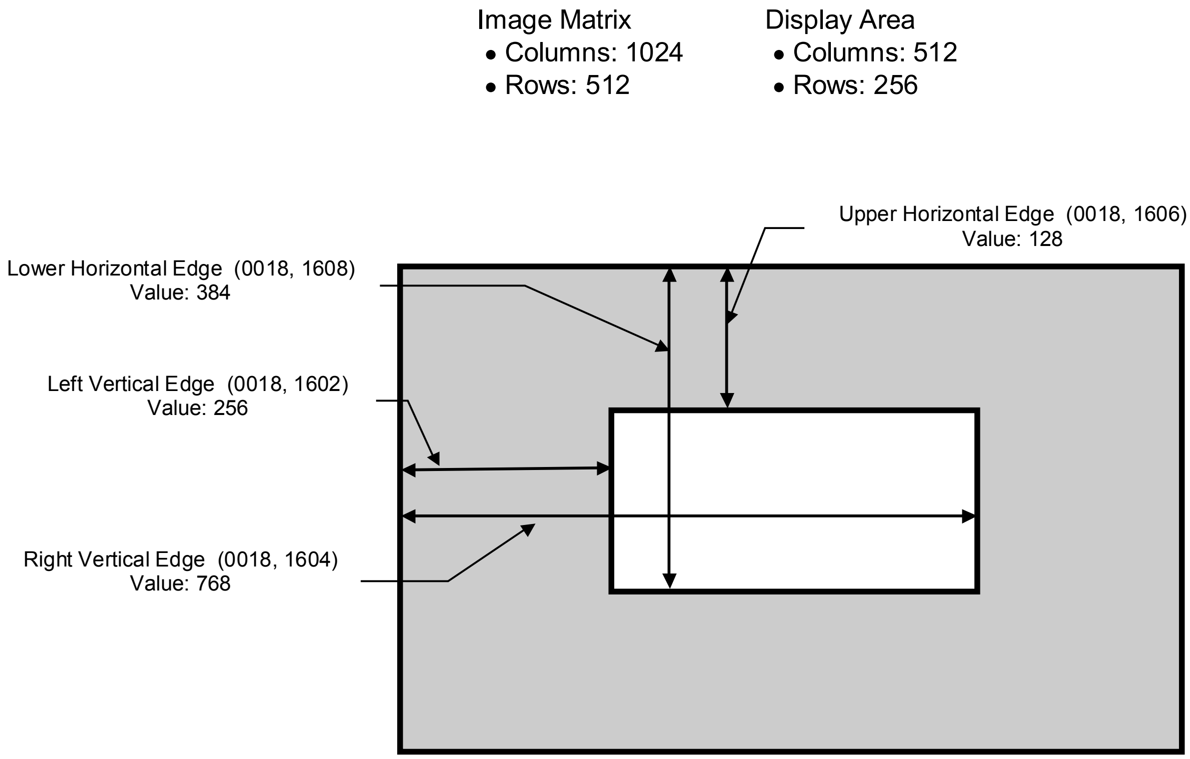


Figure C.7-2
Rectangular Display Shutter
(2:1 aspect ratio images as they would appear before interpolation for display)

Image Matrix
- Columns: 1024
- Rows: 1024

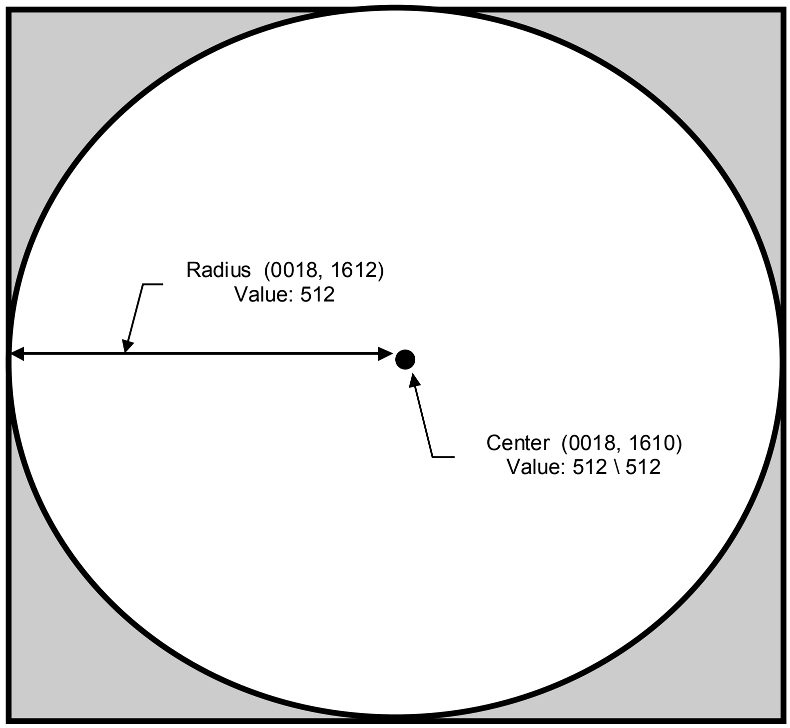


Figure C.7-3
Circular Display Shutter
(1:1 aspect ratio image)

Image Matrix
- Columns: 1024
- Rows: 512

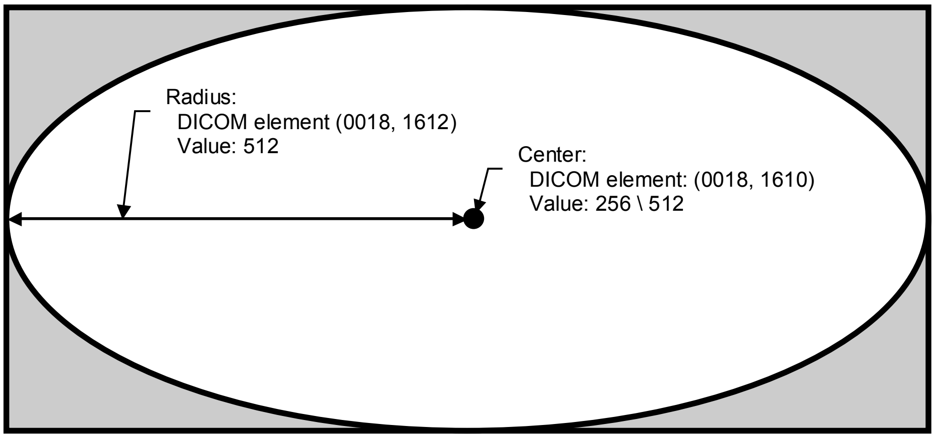


Figure C.7-4
Circular Display Shutter
(2:1 aspect ratio images as they would appear before interpolation for display)

C.7.6.12 Device Module

Table C.7-18 describes the Attributes of devices or calibration objects (e.g., catheters, markers, baskets) that are associated with a study and/or image.

Table C.7-18
DEVICE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Device Sequence	(0050,0010)	3	Introduces sequence of items describing devices used that may be visible in the image. One or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 4051.*	
>Manufacturer	(0008,0070)	3	Manufacturer of the device
>Manufacturer's Model Name	(0008,1090)	3	Manufacturer's model name of the device
>Device Serial Number	(0018,1000)	3	Manufacturer's serial number of the device
>Device ID	(0018,1003)	3	User-supplied identifier for the device
>Device Length	(0050,0014)	3	Length in mm of device. See C.7.6.12.1.1.
>Device Diameter	(0050,0016)	3	Unit diameter of device. See C.7.6.12.1.1.
>Device Diameter Units	(0050,0017)	2C	Required if Device Diameter (0050,0016) is present. Defined terms: FR = French GA = Gauge

			IN = Inch MM = Millimeter
>Device Volume	(0050,0018)	3	Volume of device in ml. See C.7.6.12.1.1..
>Inter-Marker Distance	(0050,0019)	3	Distance in mm between markers on calibrated device. See C.7.6.12.1.1.
>Device Description	(0050,0020)	3	Further description in free form text describing the device.

C.7.6.12.1 Device Attribute Descriptions

C.7.6.12.1.1 Device Type and Size

Depending on the type of device specified by the Code Value (0008,0100) in an item of the Device Sequence (0050,0010), various device size attributes (e.g., Device Length (0050,0014), Device Diameter (0050,0016), Device Volume (0050,0018), Inter Marker Distance (0050,0019)) may be required to fully characterize the device.

C.7.6.13 Intervention Module

Table C.7-19 describes the Attributes of therapies (e.g. interventions during an angiographic procedure) that are associated with a study and/or image.

Table C.7-19
INTERVENTION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Intervention Sequence	(0018,0036)	3	Introduces sequence of items describing interventional therapies or procedures. One or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 9.*	
>Intervention Status	(0018,0038)	2	Temporal relation of SOP Instance to intervention Enumerated Values: PRE INTERMEDIATE POST NONE
>Intervention Drug Sequence	(0018,0029)	3	Sequence that identifies the interventional drug. Only one item shall be included in this Sequence.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 10.*	
>Intervention Drug Start Time	(0018,0035)	3	Time of administration of the interventional drug.
>Intervention Drug Stop Time	(0018,0027)	3	Time of completion of administration of the intervention drug.
> Administration Route Code Sequence	(0054,0302)	3	Sequence that identifies the Administration Route. This sequence

			shall contain exactly one item.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 11.*	
>Intervention Description	(0018,003A)	3	Further description in free form text describing the therapy or other intervention.

Note: Therapy Description (0018,0039) was included in this Module in earlier editions, but its use has been retired. See PS 3.3-2003.

C.7.6.14 Acquisition Context Module

Table C.7.6.14-1 specifies Attributes for description of the conditions present during data acquisition.

This Module shall not contain descriptions of conditions that replace those that are already described in specific Modules or Attributes that are also contained within the IOD that contains this Module.

Notes: 1. Each item of the Acquisition Context Sequence (0040,0555) contains one item of the Concept Name Code Sequence (0040,A043) and one of the mutually-exclusive Observation-value Attributes: Concept Code Sequence (0040,A168), the pair of Numeric Value (0040,A30A) and Measurement Units Code Sequence (0040,08EA), Date (0040,A121), Time (0040,A122), Person Name (0040,A123) or Text Value (0040,A160).

2. Acquisition Context includes concepts such as: "pre-contrast", "inspiration", "valgus stress", "post-void", and date and time of contrast administration.

3. If this SOP Instance is a Multi-frame SOP Instance, each item of the Acquisition Context Sequence (0040,0555) may be configured to describe one frame, all frames, or any specifically enumerated subset set of frames of the Multi-frame SOP Instance.

Table C.7.6.14-1 - ACQUISITION CONTEXT MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Acquisition Context Sequence	(0040,0555)	2	A sequence of Items that describes the conditions present during the acquisition of the data of the SOP Instance. Zero or more items may be included in this sequence.
>Value Type	((0040,A040)	3	The type of the value encoded in this Item. Defined Terms: TEXT NUMERIC CODE DATE TIME PNAME See Section 10.2.

>Concept Name Code Sequence	(0040,A043)	1	A concept that constrains the meaning of (i.e. defines the role of) the Observation Value. The "Name" component of a Name/Value pair. This sequence shall contain exactly one item.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			No Baseline Context is defined.
>Referenced Frame Numbers	(0040,A136)	1C	References one or more frames in a Multi-frame SOP Instance. The first frame shall be denoted as frame number one. Required if this SOP Instance is a Multi-frame SOP Instance and the values in this sequence item do not apply to all frames.
>Numeric Value	(0040,A30A)	1C	This is the Value component of a Name/Value pair when the Concept implied by Concept Name Code Sequence (0040,A043) is a set of one or more numeric values. Required if the value that Concept Name Code Sequence (0040,A043) requires (implies) is a set of one or more integers or real numbers. Shall not be present otherwise.
>Measurement Units Code Sequence	(0040,08EA)	1C	Units of measurement. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this Sequence. Required if Numeric Value (0040,A30A) is sent. Shall not be present otherwise.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			Baseline Context ID is 82.
>Date	(0040,A121)	1C	This is the Value component of a Name/Value pair when the Concept implied by Concept Name Code Sequence (0040,A043) is a date. Note: The purpose or role of the date value could be specified in Concept Name Code Sequence (0040,A043). Required if the value that Concept Name Code Sequence (0040,A043) requires (implies) is a date. Shall not be present otherwise.
>Time	(0040,A122)	1C	This is the Value component of a Name/Value pair when the Concept implied by Concept Name Code Sequence (0040,A043) is a time. Note: The purpose or role of the time value could be specified in Concept Name Code Sequence (0040,A043). Required if the value that Concept Name Code Sequence (0040,A043) requires (implies) is a time. Shall not be present otherwise.
>Person Name	(0040,A123)	1C	This is the Value component of a Name/Value pair when the Concept implied by Concept Name Code Sequence (0040,A043) is a Person Name. Note: The role of the person could be specified in Concept Name Code Sequence (0040,A043).

			Required if the value that Concept Name Code Sequence (0040,A043) irequires (implies) is a person name. Shall not be present otherwise.
>Text Value	(0040,A160)	1C	This is the Value component of a Name/Value pair when the Concept implied by Concept Name Code Sequence (0040,A043) is a Text Observation Value. Required if Date (0040,A121), Time (0040,A122), and Person Name (0040,A123) do not fully describe the concept specified by Concept Name Code Sequence (0040,A043). Shall not be present otherwise.
>Concept Code Sequence	(0040,A168)	1C	This is the Value component of a Name/Value pair when the Concept implied by Concept Name Code Sequence (0040,A043) is a Coded Value. This sequence shall contain exactly one item. Required if Date (0040,A121), Time (0040,A122), Person Name (0040,A123), Text Value (0040,A160), and the pair of Numeric Value (0040,A30A) and Measurement Units Code Sequence (0040,08EA) are not present.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			No Baseline Context is defined.
Acquisition Context Description	(0040,0556)	3	Free-text description of the image-acquisition context.

C.7.6.15 Bitmap Display Shutter Module

The Bitmap Display Shutter is a bitmap that defines an arbitrary shape that may be applied on the image for presentation purposes in order to neutralize the display of any of the pixels defined in the bitmap.

The manner in which the display area is neutralized (black-out, gray, or other means) is defined by the Attribute Shutter Presentation Value (0018,1622).

The bitmap is specified as a reference to an instance of the Overlay Plane Module C.9.2. The referenced Overlay is specialized such that:

- Overlay Type (60xx,0040) shall be "G",

- Overlay Bits Allocated (60xx,0100) shall be 1,

- Overlay Bit Position (60xx,0102) shall be 0 and

- Overlay Origin (60xx,0050) shall be 1\1.

Overlay Rows (60xx,0010) and Overlay Columns (60xx,0011) shall be the same as Rows (0028,0010) and Columns (0028,0011) in the image respectively.

A value of 1 in the Overlay Data (60xx,3000) shall indicate a pixel to which the shutter is applied, i.e. replaced with Shutter Presentation Value (0018,1622).

The Overlay specified in this Attribute shall not be activated (used as a conventional overlay) by the Overlay Activation Module C.11.7.

Table C.7.6.15-1
BITMAP DISPLAY SHUTTER MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Shutter Shape	(0018,1600)	1	Shape of the shutter defined for display. Enumerated Values are: BITMAP This Attribute shall contain one Value.
Shutter Overlay Group	(0018,1623)	1	Specifies the Group (60xx) of an Overlay stored within the Presentation State IOD that contains the bitmap data, as defined in the Overlay Plane Module C.9.2.
Shutter Presentation Value	(0018,1622)	1	A single gray unsigned value used to replace those parts of the image occluded by the shutter, when rendered on a monochrome display. The units are specified in P-Values, from a minimum of 0000H (black) up to a maximum of FFFFH (white). Note: The maximum P-Value for this Attribute may be different from the maximum P-Value from the output of the Presentation LUT, which may be less than 16 bits in depth.
Shutter Presentation Color CIELab Value	(0018,1624)	3	A color triplet value used to replace those parts of the image occluded by the shutter, when rendered on a color display. The units are specified in PCS-Values, and the value is encoded as CIELab. See C.10.7.1.1.

C.7.6.16 Multi-frame Functional Groups Module

Table C.7.6.16-1 specifies the attributes of the Multi-frame Functional Groups Module. This module is included in SOP instances even if there is only one frame in the instance.

Table C.7.6.16-1
MULTI-FRAME FUNCTIONAL GROUPS MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Shared Functional Groups Sequence	(5200,9229)	2	Sequence that contains the Functional Group Macros that are shared for all frames in this SOP Instance and Concatenation. Note: The contents of this sequence are the same in all SOP Instances that comprise a Concatenation. Zero or one Item may be included in this sequence. See section C.7.6.16.1.1 for further explanation.
>Include one or more Functional Group Macros that are shared by all frames. The selected Functional Group Macros shall not be present in the Per-frame Functional Groups Sequence (5200,9230).			See section C.7.6.16.1.1 for further explanation. For each IOD that includes this module, a table is defined in which the permitted Functional Group Macros and their usage is specified.
Per-frame Functional Groups Sequence	(5200,9230)	1	Sequence that contains the Functional Group Macros corresponding to each frame of the Multi-frame Image. The first Item corresponds with the first frame, and so on. Each Item shall contain the same set of Functional Group Macros. This Sequence shall contain the same number of Items as the number of frames in the Multi-frame image. See Section C.7.6.16.1.2 for further explanation.
>Include one or more Functional Group Macros.			For each IOD that includes this module, a table is defined in which the permitted Functional Group Macros and their usage is specified.
Instance Number	(0020,0013)	1	A number that identifies this instance. The value shall be the same for all SOP Instances of a Concatenation, and different for each separate Concatenation and for each SOP Instance not within a Concatenation in a series.
Content Date	(0008,0023)	1	The date the data creation was started. Note: For instance, this is the date the pixel data is created, not the date the data is acquired.
Content Time	(0008,0033)	1	The time the data creation was started.

			Note: For instance, this is the time the pixel data is created, not the time the data is acquired.
Number of Frames	(0028,0008)	1	Number of frames in a multi-frame image. See C.7.6.6.1.1 for further explanation.
Concatenation Frame Offset Number	(0020,9228)	1C	Offset of the first frame in a multi-frame image of a concatenation. Logical frame numbers in a concatenation can be used across all its SOP instances. This offset can be applied to the implicit frame number to find the logical frame number in a concatenation. The offset is numbered from zero; i.e., the instance of a concatenation that begins with the first frame of the concatenation has a Concatenation Frame Offset Number (0020,9228) of zero. Required if Concatenation UID (0020,9161) is present.
Representative Frame Number	(0028,6010)	3	The frame number selected for use as a pictorial representation (e.g. icon) of the multi-frame Image.
Concatenation UID	(0020,9161)	1C	Identifier of all SOP Instances that belong to the same concatenation. Required if a group of multi-frame image SOP Instances within a Series are part of a Concatenation.
In-concatenation Number	(0020,9162)	1C	Identifier for one SOP Instance belonging to a concatenation. See C.7.6.16.2.2.4 for further specification. The first instance in a concatentation (that with the lowest Concatenation Frame Offset Number (0020,9228) value) shall have an In-concatenation Number (0020,9162) value of 1, and subsequent instances shall have values monotonically increasing by 1. Required if Concatenation UID (0020,9161) is present.
In-concatenation Total Number	(0020,9163)	3	The number of SOP Instances sharing the same Concatenation UID.

C.7.6.16.1 Multi-frame Functional Groups Module Attribute Description

C.7.6.16.1.1 Functional Group

A Functional Group is a set of Attributes that are logically related and may vary together. Functional Groups are defined in Macros. Those Functional Group Macros that apply to all frames are included in the Shared Functional Groups Sequence (5200,9229). Functional Group Macros whose attribute values may vary from frame to frame are included in the Per-frame Functional Groups Sequence (5200,9230).

A single Functional Group Macro shall not be included in both the Shared Functional Groups Sequence (5200,9229)and the Per-frame Functional Groups Sequence (5200,9230).

Notes: 1. In the case of a SOP Instance containing a single frame, some Functional Group Macros may be contained in the Shared Functional Groups Sequence (5200,9229) and others in the one Item of the Per-frame Functional Groups Sequence (5200,9230).

2. Even if there are no Functional Group Macros in the Per-frame Functional Groups Sequence 5200,9230) an empty Item is encoded for every frame.

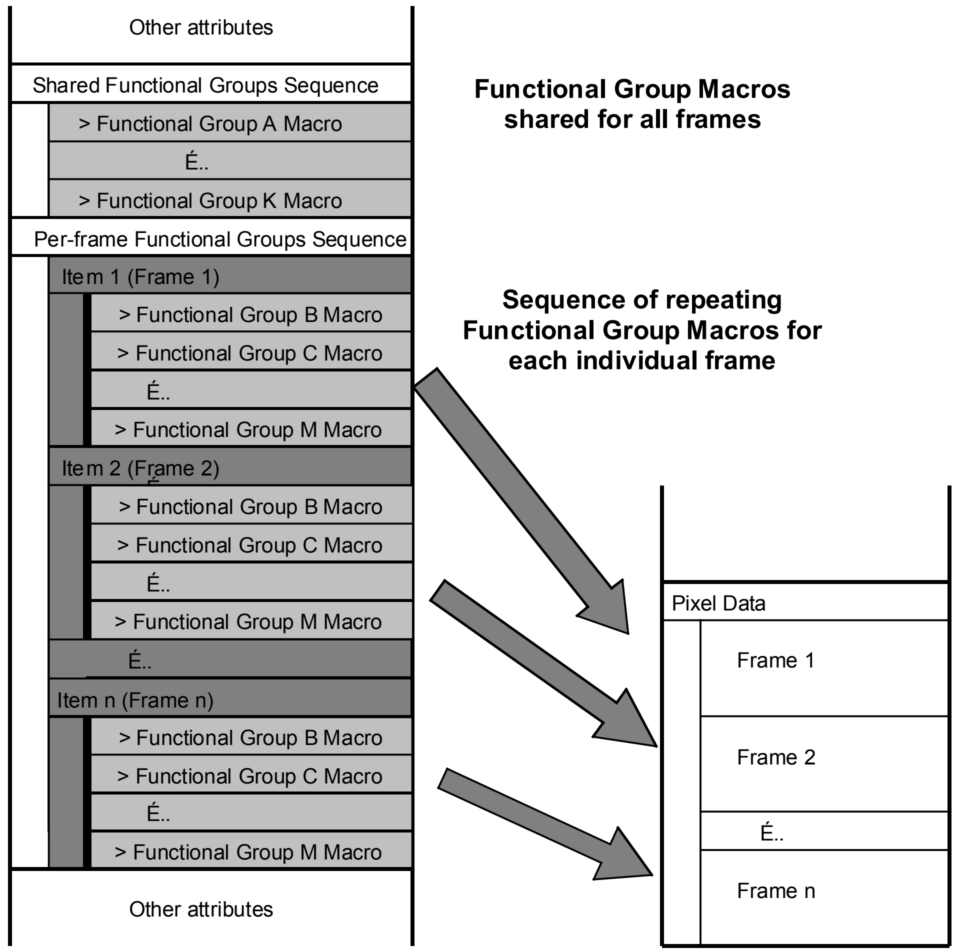
3. It may happen that a mandatory Functional Group Macro Item containing no values is required in either the Shared Functional Groups Sequence (5200,9229) or the Per-frame Functional Groups Sequence (5200,9230). In that case the Functional Group Macro is encoded as an empty Sequence (i.e. a sequence of zero length or a sequence with undefined length with only an end of sequence delimiter; see PS 3.5).

Private Functional Groups may be defined. The attributes of such a group may be standard or private attributes. A Private Functional Group may not replicate the attributes of a standard Functional Group.

A Private Functional Group can be added to either the Shared Functional Groups Sequence (5200,9229) or the Per-frame Functional Groups Sequence (5200,9230).

C.7.6.16.1.2 Per-frame Functional Groups Sequence

The Per-frame Functional Groups Sequence Attribute (5200,9230) consists of a Sequence of Items. Each Item describes the frame of the same rank in the multi-frame pixel data. The first Item describes frame 1, the second Item describes frame 2, etc. Frames are implicitly numbered starting from 1. See Figure C.7.6.16-1.



Note: The Functional Group Macros A, B, C, etc. are examples to illustrate the Multi-frame Functional Groups. The actual Functional Group Sequences are defined elsewhere.

Figure C.7.6.16-1
A Graphical Presentation of the Multi-frame Functional Groups structure

C.7.6.16.2 Common Functional Group Macros

The following sections contain Functional Group macros common to more than one IOD specification.

Note: The attribute descriptions in the Functional Group Macros are written as if they were applicable to a single frame (i.e., the macro is part of the Per-frame Functional Groups Sequence). If an attribute is applicable to all frames (i.e. the macro is part of the Shared Functional Groups Sequence) the phrase "this frame" in the attribute description shall be interpreted to mean "for all frames".

C.7.6.16.2.1 Pixel Measures Macro

Table C.7.6.16-2 specifies the attributes of the Pixel Measures Functional Group macro.

Table C.7.6.16-2
PIXEL MEASURES MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Pixel Measures Sequence	(0028,9110)	1	Identifies the physical characteristics of the pixels of this frame. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Pixel Spacing	(0028,0030)	1C	Physical distance in the patient between the centers of each pixel, specified by a numeric pair - adjacent row spacing (delimiter) adjacent column spacing in mm. See 10.7.1.3 for further explanation of the value order. Note: In the case of CT images with an Acquisition Type (0018,9302) of CONSTANT_ANGLE, the pixel spacing is that in a plane normal to the central ray of the diverging X-ray beam as it passes through the data collection center. Required if Volumetric Properties (0008,9206) is other than DISTORTED or SAMPLED. May be present otherwise.
>Slice Thickness	(0018,0050)	1C	Nominal reconstructed slice thickness, in mm. See C.7.6.2.1.1 and C.7.6.16.2.3.1 for further explanation. Required if Volumetric Properties (0008,9206) is VOLUME or SAMPLED. May be present otherwise.

C.7.6.16.2.2 Frame Content Macro

Table C.7.6.16-3 specifies the attributes of the Frame Content Functional Group macro.

This Functional Group Macro may only be part of the Per-frame Functional Groups Sequence (5200,9230) attribute.

Table C.7.6.16-3
FRAME CONTENT MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Frame Content Sequence	(0020,9111)	1	Identifies general characteristics of this frame. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Frame Acquisition Number	(0020,9156)	3	A number identifying the single continuous gathering of data over a period of time that resulted in this frame.
>Frame Reference Datetime	(0018,9151)	1C	The point in time that is most representative of when data was acquired for this frame. See C.7.6.16.2.2.1 and C.7.6.16.2.2.2 for further explanation. Note: The synchronization of this time with an external clock is specified in the synchronization Module in Acquisition Time synchronized (0018,1800). Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Frame Acquisition Datetime	(0018,9074)	1C	The date and time that the acquisition of data that resulted in this frame started. See C.7.6.16.2.2.1 for further explanation. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Frame Acquisition Duration	(0018,9220)	1C	The actual amount of time [in milliseconds] that was used to acquire data for this frame. See C.7.6.16.2.2.1 and C.7.6.16.2.2.3 for further explanation. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Cardiac Cycle Position	(0018,9236)	3	Description of the position in the cardiac cycle that is most representative of this frame. Defined Terms: END_SYSTOLE END_DIASTOLE UNDETERMINED
>Respiratory Cycle Position	(0018,9214)	3	Description of the position in the respiratory cycle that is most

			representative of this frame. Defined Terms: START _RESPIR END_RESPIR UNDETERMINED
>Dimension Index Values	(0020,9157)	1C	Contains the values of the indices defined in the Dimension Index Sequence (0020,9222) for this multi-frame header frame. The number of values is equal to the number of Items of the Dimension Index Sequence and shall be applied in the same order. See section C.7.6.17.1 for a description. Required if the value of the Dimension Index Sequence (0020,9222) contains Items.
>Temporal Position Index	(0020,9128)	3	Ordinal number (starting from 1) of the frame in the set of frames with different temporal positions.
>Stack ID	(0020,9056)	3	Identification of a group of frames, with different positions and/or orientations that belong together, within a dimension organization. See C.7.6.16.2.2.4 for further explanation
>In-Stack Position Number	(0020,9057)	1C	The ordinal number of a frame in a group of frames, with the same Stack ID Required if Stack ID (0020,9056) is present. See section C.7.6.16.2.2.4 for further explanation.
>Frame Comments	(0020,9158)	3	User-defined comments about the frame.
>Frame Label	(0020,9453)	3	Label corresponding to a specific dimension index value. Selected from a set of dimension values defined by the application. This attribute may be referenced by the Dimension Index Pointer (0020,9165) attribute in the Multi-frame Dimension Module. See C.7.6.16.2.2.5 for further explanation.

C.7.6.16.2.2.1 Timing Parameter Relationships

Figure C.7.6.16-2 shows the relationships among the various timing parameters used.

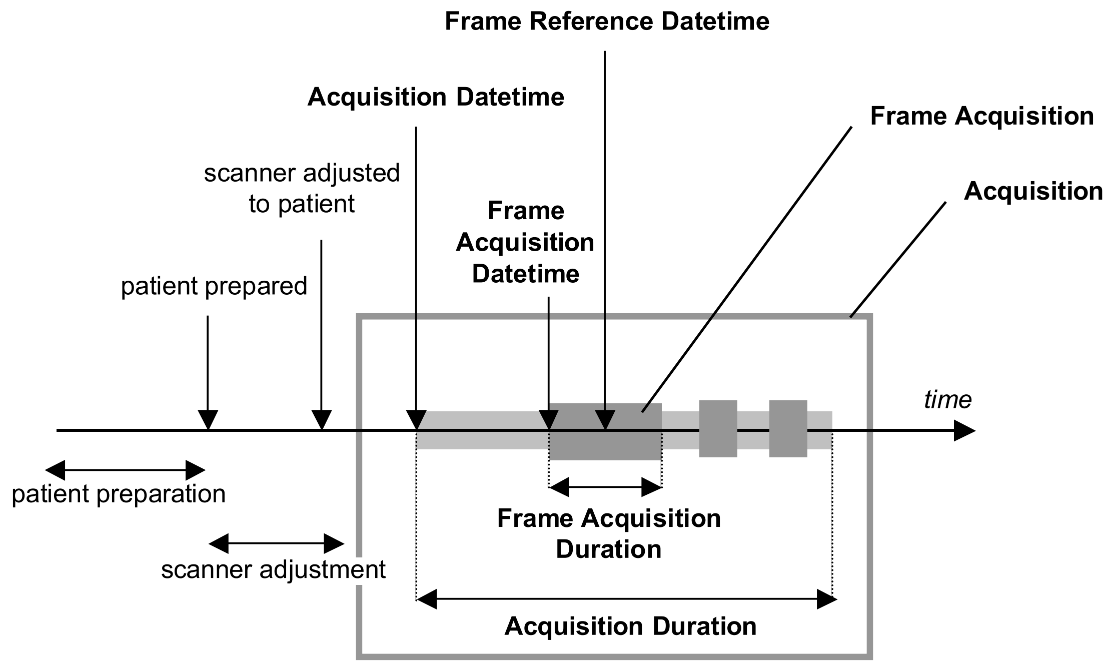


Figure C.7.6.16-2
Relationship of Timing Related Attributes

C.7.6.16.2.2.2 Frame Reference Datetime

The Frame Reference Datetime (0018,9151) is used to indicate the point in time that is most representative for that specific frame.

Note For example, in the case of MR it might be the time of acquisition of the data for the k_y=0 line in k-space (the central Fourier segment).

C.7.6.16.2.2.3 Frame Acquisition Duration

The Frame Acquisition Duration (0018,9220) is used to indicate the duration of the acquisition related to this frame.

C.7.6.16.2.2.4 Concatenations and Stacks

Due to implementation specific reasons (such as maximum object size) the information of a multi-frame image may be split into more than one SOP Instance. These SOP Instances form together a Concatenation. This is a group of SOP Instances within a Series that is uniquely identified by the Concatenation UID (0020,9133).

The Dimension Index Sequence (0020,9222) for each SOP Instance with the same Concatenation UID (0020,9133) shall contain exactly the same tags and values.

In a Concatenation the Dimension Index Sequence (0020,9222) items of the Shared Functional Groups (5200,9229) shall be identical and have the same values for all individual SOP Instances. The items of the Per-frame Functional Groups (5200,9230) shall be identical for all individual SOP Instances but the values may change per frame. For all other Attributes of all the Modules of the IOD, the same Attributes shall be present and the values shall be identical, with the exception of the following Attributes:

- Number of Frames (0028,0008)
- Concatenation Frame Offset Number (0020,9228)
- In-concatenation Number (0020,9162)
- SOP Instance UID (0008,0016)
- Instance Creation Time (0008,0013)

Note: The intent of Concatenations is to split what might have been encoded in a single SOP Instance into smaller fragments for more convenient storage or transmission. All the multiple SOP Instances of a Concatenation should be able to be assembled into a valid single SOP Instance. Hence it is not permitted to change such Attributes as Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004), Rows (0028,0010), Columns (0028,0011), etc.

Stacks describe application-specific groups of frames that have a geometric relationship. Stacks have a Stack ID (0020,9056) that contains a descriptive name that identifies the stack. A Stack ID (0020,9056) may be re-used in another SOP Instance even outside a concatenation. The value of Stack ID (0020,9056) is unique within the scope of a particular Dimension Organization UID (0020,9164) if present, otherwise it is unique within in the scope of a particular Concatenation UID (0020,9133). See Figure C7.6.16-3 for an example.

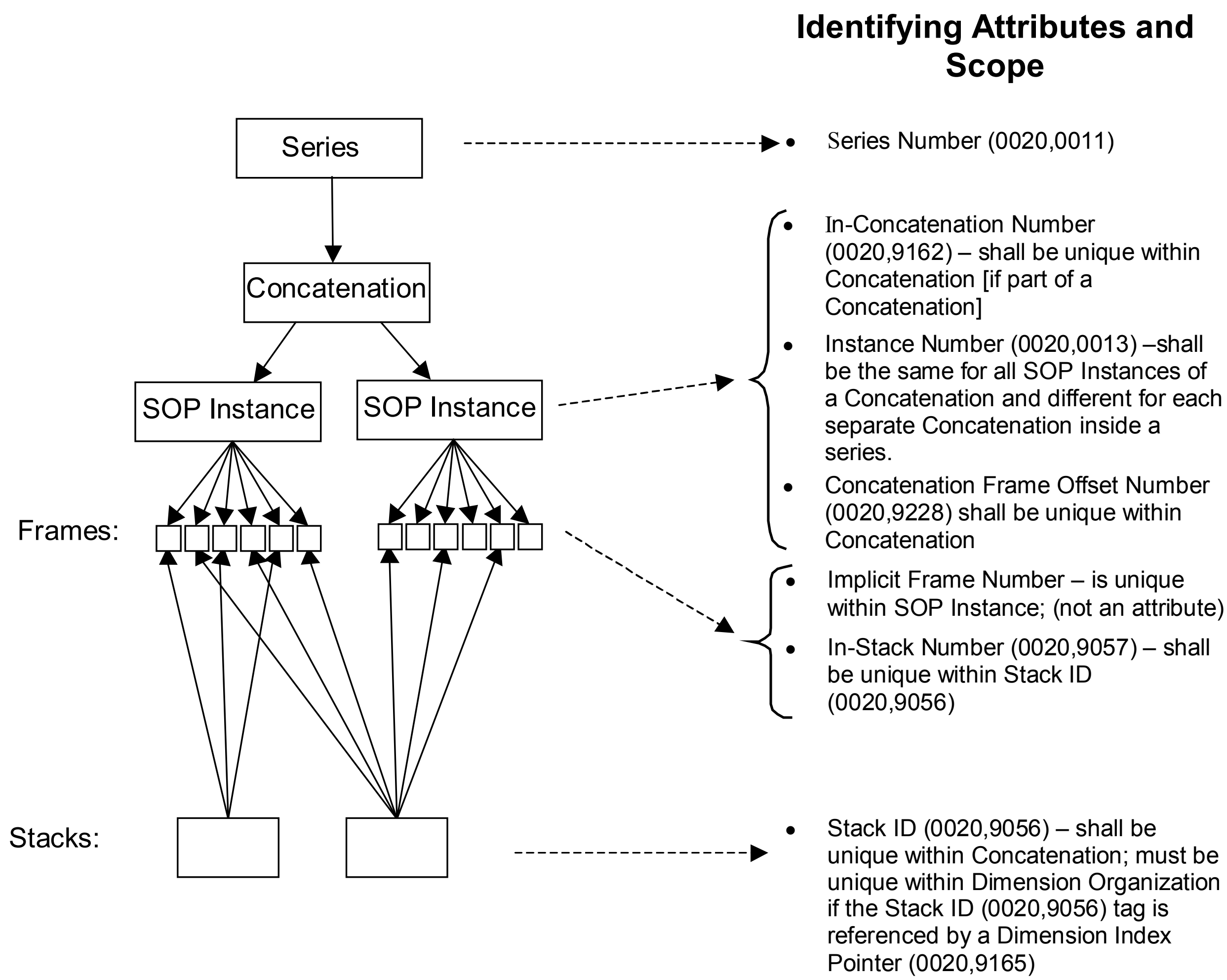


Figure C.7.6.16-3
Identifying attributes for Concatenation, SOP Instances, Frames and Stacks

Each frame in a stack has an In-Stack Position Number (0020,9057) that is the ordinal number (starting from 1) of the frame within the set of frames with the same Stack ID (0020,9056), see Figure C.7.6.16-4 for an example.

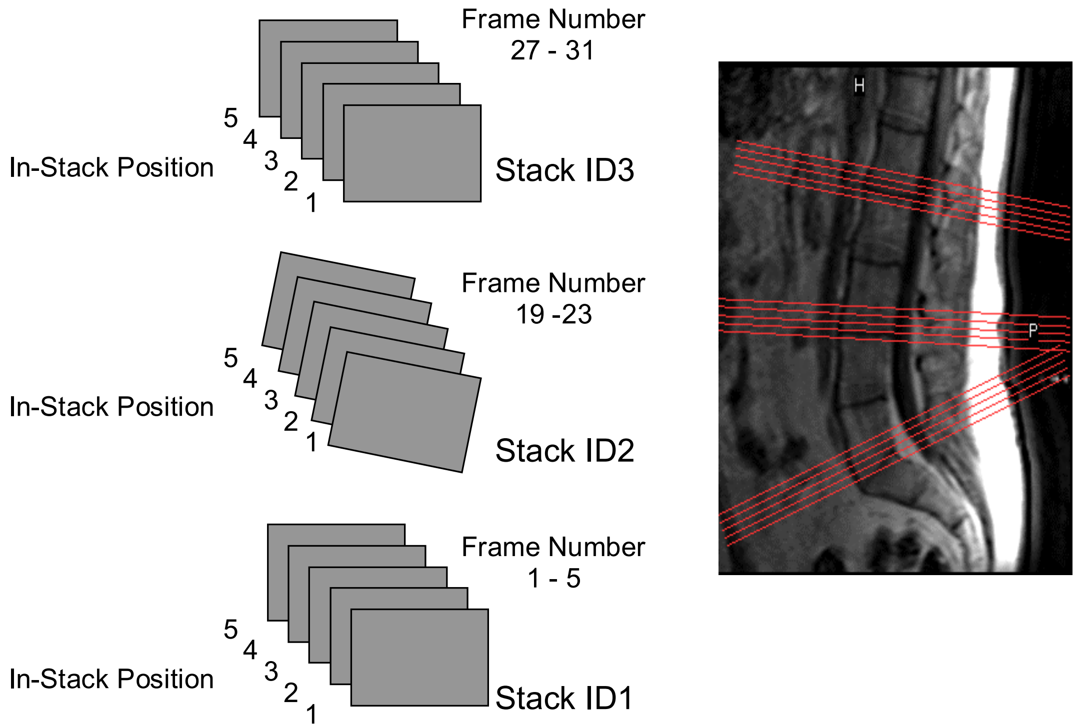


Figure C.7.6.16-4
Example of multiple stacks

In order to allow interoperable operations on stacks, 2 different frames with the same Stack ID (0020,9056) can only have the same In-Stack Position Number (0020,9057) if they have the same values for the following attributes:

1. Dimension Organization UID (0020,9164) or if absent Concatenation UID (0020,9133) to qualify the Stack ID
2. Image Position (Patient) (0020,0032)
3. Image Orientation (Patient) (0020,0037)
4. Rows (0028,0010) ∗ first value of Pixel Spacing (0028,0030) (= field of view in the row direction)
5. Columns (0028,0011) ∗ second value of Pixel Spacing (0028,0030) (= field of view in the column direction)
6. Slice Thickness (0018,0050)

C.7.6.16.2.2.5 Frame Label

The Frame Label attribute (0020,9453) can be used to label frames that need to be handled as a group in application. The Dimension Index Pointer (0020,9165) from the Dimension Module may point to this attribute if it is the base of a dimension.

C.7.6.16.2.3 Plane Position Macro

Table C.7.6.16-4 specifies the attributes of the Plane Position Functional Group macro.

Table C.7.6.16-4
PLANE POSITION MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Plane Position Sequence	(0020,9113)	1	Identifies the position of the plane of this frame. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Image Position (Patient)	(0020,0032)	1C	The x, y, and z coordinates of the upper left hand corner (center of the first voxel transmitted) of the frame, in mm. See C.7.6.2.1.1 and C.7.6.16.2.3.1 for further explanation. Note: In the case of CT images with an Acquisition Type (0018,9302) of CONSTANT_ANGLE the image plane is defined to pass through the data collection center and be normal to the central ray of the diverging X-ray beam. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL and Volumetric Properties (0008,9206) of this frame is other than DISTORTED, may be present otherwise.

C.7.6.16.2.3.1 Position and Orientation for SAMPLED Frames

In the case of Volumetric Properties (0008,9206) having a value of SAMPLED, the Image Position (0020,0032), Image Orientation (0020,0037) and Slice Thickness (0018,0050) shall represent the volume from which the frame was derived based on the orientation of the sampling performed.

Note: For example in the case of MAX_IP:

The Image Orientation shall be the direction of the ray used for projection of the center of the plane.

The image position shall contain the x, y, and z coordinates of the intersection of the mid-plane of the sampled volume with the ray used to project the upper left hand corner of the frame.

The Slice Thickness shall contain the distance that the ray used for projection of the center of the plane traveled through the volume.

C.7.6.16.2.4 Plane Orientation Macro

Table C.7.6.16-5 specifies the attributes of the Plane Orientation Functional Group macro.

Table C.7.6.16-5
PLANE ORIENTATION MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Plane Orientation Sequence	(0020,9116)	1	Identifies orientation of the plane of this frame. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Image Orientation (Patient)	(0020,0037)	1C	The direction cosines of the first row and the first column with respect to the patient. See C.7.6.2.1.1 and C.7.6.16.2.3.1 for further explanation. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL and Volumetric Properties (0008,9206) of this frame is other than DISTORTED. May be present otherwise.

C.7.6.16.2.5 Referenced Image Macro

Table C.7.6.16-6 specifies the attributes of the Referenced Image Functional Group macro.

Table C.7.6.16-6
REFERENCED IMAGE MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Referenced Image Sequence	(0008,1140)	2	A sequence that provides reference to a set of SOP Class/Instance pairs identifying images or other composite SOP Instances used to plan the acquisition or significant related images. See Section C.7.6.16.2.5.1 for further explanation. Zero or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>Include 'Image SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table 10-3			
>Purpose of Reference Code Sequence	(0040,A170)	1	Describes the purpose for which the reference is made. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence. See C.7.6.16.2.5.1 for further explanation.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*Defined Context ID is 7201.*

C.7.6.16.2.5.1 Use of Referenced Image Macro

Referenced Image Sequence (0008,1140) shall be used to provide a reference to a set of SOP Class/Instance pairs identifying other data objects used to plan the acquisition of this image where the images shall share the same Frame of Reference UID (0020,0052). For each Item that contains such a reference, the value of the Purpose of Reference Code Sequence (0040,A170) shall be ("121311", DCM, "Localizer"). Applications can use the Referenced Image Sequence (0008,1140) in combination with data in Plane Position and Plane Orientation Macros to provide projections of the position of an image with respect to the referenced image.

The Referenced Image Sequence (0008,1140) may also be present when references to other images (or frames within other images) are required for other reasons, as specified by Purpose of Reference Code Sequence (0040,A170).

Note: An Image may contain references to itself (e.g. to other frames within itself).

C.7.6.16.2.6 Derivation Image Macro

Table C.7.6.16-7 specifies the attributes of the Derivation Image Functional Group macro.

Table C.7.6.16-7
DERIVATION IMAGE MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Derivation Image Sequence	(0008,9124)	2	A sequence that that provides reference to the set of SOP Class/Instance pairs of the Images or other composite SOP Instances which were used to derive this frame. Zero or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>Derivation Description	(0008,2111)	3	A text description of how this frame data was derived. See C.7.6.1.1.3 for further explanation.
>Derivation Code Sequence	(0008,9215)	1	A coded description of how this frame was derived. See C.7.6.1.1.3 for further explanation. Zero or more Items may be included in this Sequence. More than one Item indicates that successive derivation steps have been applied.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*Defined Context ID is 7203.*
>Source Image Sequence	(0008,2112)	2	A Sequence which identifies the set of Image or other SOP Class/Instance pairs of the Instances which were used to derive this frame. Zero or more Items may be included in this Sequence. See C.7.6.1.1.4 for further explanation.
>>Include 'Image SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table 10-3			
>>Purpose of Reference Code Sequence	(0040,A170)	1	Describes the purpose for which the reference is made, that is what role the source image or frame played in the derivation of this image or frame. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*Defined Context ID is 7202.*

C.7.6.16.2.7 Cardiac Trigger Macro

Table C.7.6.16-8 specifies the attributes of the Cardiac Trigger Functional Group macro.

Table C.7.6.16-8
CARDIAC TRIGGER MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Cardiac Trigger Sequence	(0018,9118)	1	Identifies cardiac trigger delay for this frame. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Cardiac Trigger Delay Time	(0020,9153)	1	Trigger delay time in ms from the previous R-peak to the value of the Frame Reference Datetime (0018,9151). See C.7.6.16.2.7.1 for further explanation.
>R – R Interval Time Measured	(0020,9251)	1C	Measured R-peak – R-peak interval time in ms for the cardiac cycle in which this frame occurs. See C.7.6.16.2.7.1 for further explanation. Required if Cardiac Synchronization Technique (0018,9037) equals other than NONE or REALTIME. May be present otherwise.

C.7.6.16.2.7.1 Relationship of Cardiac Timing Attributes

Figure C.7.6.16-5 depicts the usage.

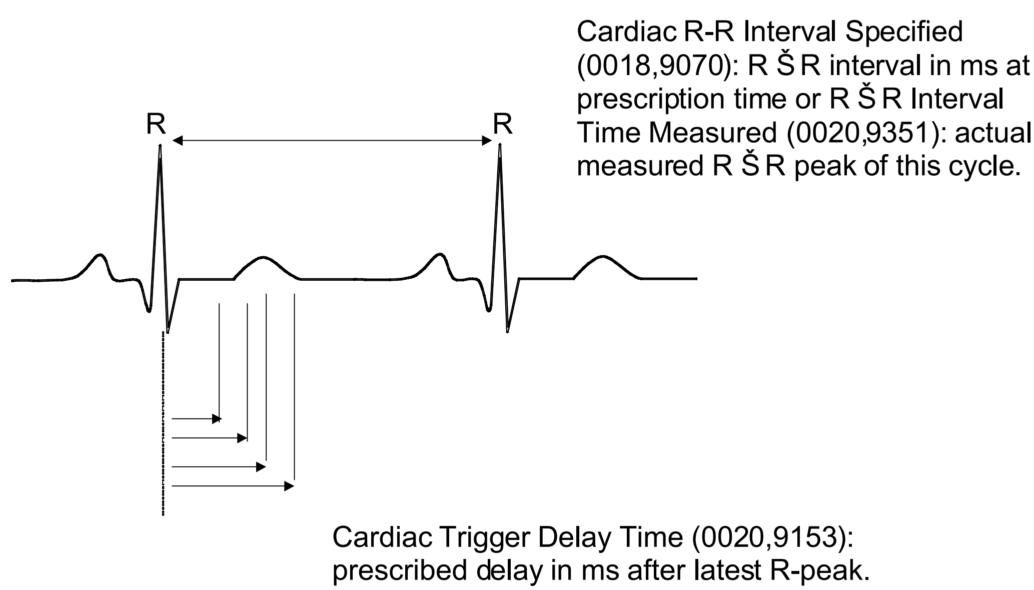


Figure C.7.6.16-5
Cardiac Timing Tags

C.7.6.16.2.8 Frame Anatomy Macro

Table C.7.6.16-9 specifies the attributes of the Frame Anatomy Functional Group macro.

Table C.7.6.16-9
FRAME ANATOMY MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Frame Anatomy Sequence	(0020,9071)	1	Identifies anatomic characteristics of this frame. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Frame Laterality	(0020,9072)	1	Laterality of (possibly paired) body parts (as described in Anatomic Region Sequence (0008,2218)) examined. Enumerated Values: R = right L = left U = unpaired B = both left and right Note: This Attribute is mandatory, in order to ensure that frames may be positioned correctly relative to one another for display. Shall be consistent with any laterality information contained in Primary Anatomic Structure Modifier Sequence (0008,2230), if present.
>Include 'General Anatomy Mandatory Macro' Table 10-5			Defined Context ID for the Anatomic Region Sequence (0008,2218) is 4030. Defined Context ID for Anatomic Region Modifier Sequence (0008,2220) and Primary Anatomic Structure Modifier Sequence (0008,2230) is 2.

C.7.6.16.2.9 Pixel Value Transformation Macro

Table C.7.6.16-10 specifies the attributes of the Pixel Value Transformation Functional Group macro.

Note: This Macro is equivalent with the Modality LUT transformation in non Multi-frame IODs.

Table C.7.6.16-10
PIXEL VALUE TRANSFORMATION MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Pixel Value Transformation Sequence	(0028,9145)	1	Contains the attributes involved in the transformation of stored pixel values. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Rescale Intercept	(0028,1052)	1	The value b in relationship between stored values (SV) and the output units. Output units = m*SV + b.
>Rescale Slope	(0028,1053)	1	m in the equation specified by Rescale Intercept (0028,1052).
>Rescale Type	(0028,1054)	1	Specifies the output units of Rescale Slope (0028,1053) and Rescale Intercept (0028,1052). See C.11.1.1.2 for further explanation. Enumerated Value: US = Unspecified if Modality (0008,0060) equals MR.

C.7.6.16.2.10 Frame VOI LUT Macro

Table C.7.6.16-11 specifies the attributes of the Frame VOI LUT Functional Group macro.

Table C.7.6.16-11
FRAME VOI LUT MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Frame VOI LUT Sequence	(0028,9132)	1	Window Center and Width values applied to the frame. Only one item is permitted in this sequence.
>Window Center	(0028,1050)	1	Window Center for display. See C.11.2.1.2 for further explanation.
>Window Width	(0028,1051)	1	Window Width for display. See C.11.2.1.2 for further explanation.
>Window Center & Width Explanation	(0028,1055)	3	Explanation of the Window Center and Width. Defined Terms for CT: BRAIN SOFT_TISSUE LUNG BONE
>VOI LUT Function	(0028,1056)	3	Describes a VOI LUT function to apply to the values of Window Center (0028,1050) and Window Width (0028,1051). See C.11.2.1.3 for further explanation. Defined terms: LINEAR SIGMOID When this attribute is not present, the interpretation of the values of Window Center (0028,1050) and Window Width (0028,1051) is linear as in C.11.2.1.2.

C.7.6.16.2.11 Real World Value Mapping Macro

Table C.7.6.16-12 specifies the attributes of the Real World Value Mapping Functional Group macro.

Table C.7.6.16-12
REAL WORLD VALUE MAPPING MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Real World Value Mapping Sequence	(0040,9096)	1	The mapping of stored values to associated real world values. One or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>Real World Value First Value Mapped	(0040,9216)	1	Specifies the first stored value mapped for the Real Word Value Intercept (0040,9224) and Real World Value Slope (0040,9225) or Real World Value LUT (0040,9212) of this Item. See C.7.6.16.2.11.1 for further

			explanation.
>Real World Value Last Value Mapped	(0040,9211)	1	Specifies the last stored value mapped for the Real Word Value Intercept (0040,9224) and Real World Value Slope (0040,9225) or Real World Value LUT (0040,9212) of this Item. See C.7.6.16.2.11.1 for further explanation.
>Real World Value Intercept	(0040,9224)	1C	The Intercept value in relationship between stored values (SV) and the real world values. See section C.7.6.16.2.11.2 for further explanation. Required if Real World Value LUT Data (0040,9212) is not present.
>Real World Value Slope	(0040,9225)	1C	The Slope value in relationship between stored values (SV) and the real world values. See section C.7.6.16.2.11.2 for further explanation. Required if Real World Value LUT Data (0040,9212) is not present.
>Real World Value LUT Data	(0040,9212)	1C	LUT Data in this Sequence. Required if Real World Value Intercept (0040,9224) is not present.
>LUT Explanation	(0028,3003)	1	Free form text explanation of the meaning of the LUT.
>LUT Label	(0040,9210)	1	Label that is used to identify this transformation.
>Measurement Units Code Sequence	(0040,08EA)	1	Units of measurement. Only a single value shall be present. See C.7.6.16.2.11.1 for further explanation.
>>*Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1*			Defined Context ID is 82

C.7.6.16.2.11.1 Real World Value representation

C.7.6.16.2.11.1.1 Real World Value Mapping Sequence

The items in the Real World Value Mapping Sequence (0040,9096) may be used to translate stored values into real world values when there is such a relationship. The Real World Value Mapping Sequence (0040,9096) is independent of the Modality LUT (or Pixel Value Transformation Macro), as illustrated in Figure C.7.6.16-6.

Each item specifies the range of stored values as well as the associated mapping function. Each item can specify either a linear mapping, using Real World Value Slope (0040,9225) and Real World Value Intercept (0040,9224), or a non-linear mapping using Real World Value LUT Data (0040,9212). More than one Real World Value Mapping Item is allowed.

The range of stored pixel values specified by different Real Value World Mapping Sequence (0040,9096) Items can overlap (as illustrated in the example in Figure C.7.6.16-7).

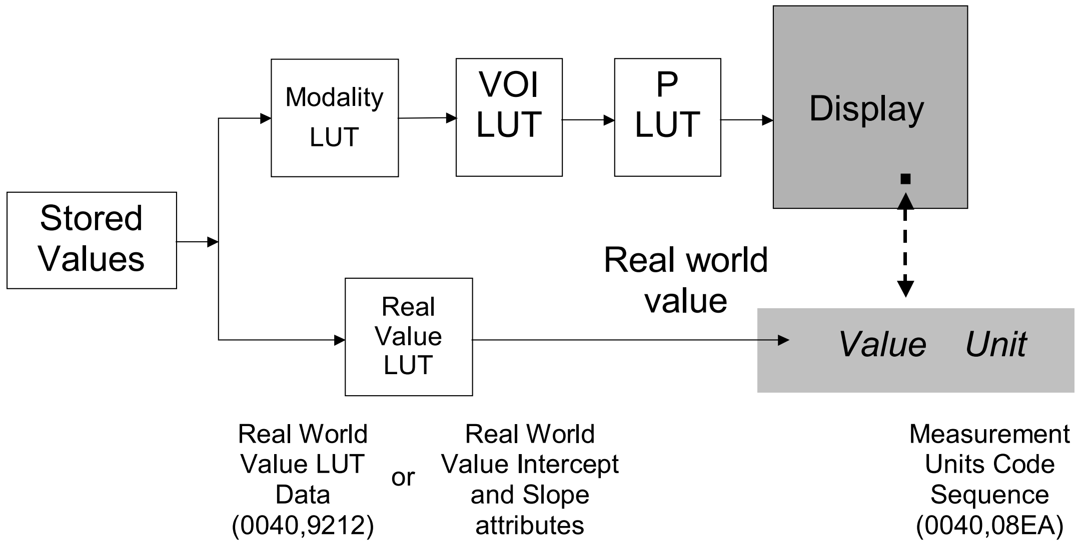


Figure C.7.6.16-6
The Real World Value LUT and the Image Viewing pipeline

Note: For example, MR images may contain data that is not only the result of the physical/chemical properties of the scanned anatomy, but may also contain information that is representing real world values, such as, temperature [in degrees C], flow [in l/min], speed [in m/sec], relative activity [in %], relative contrast enhancement [in %], diffusion [in sec/mm2], etc.

In some cases the conversion from Stored Values to Real World Values can be linear (through "slope" and "intercept") or non-linear (through look-up tables).

Both transformation methods can be applied to one range of stored values. Overlapped ranges might be used for different representations such as log versus linear scales or for different representations in units such as cm/sec versus mm/sec. Alternative methods can be identified by the labels assigned to the transformations.

C.7.6.16.2.11.1.2 Real World Values Mapping Sequence Attributes

The Real World Value First Value Mapped (0040,9216) and Real World Value Last Value Mapped (0040,9211) Attributes describe the range of stored pixel values that are mapped by the Sequence Item. Stored pixel values less than the first value mapped, or greater than the last value mapped have no real value attached.

When the Real World Value Intercept (0040,9224) and Real World Value Slope (0040,9225) attributes are supplied, the stored value (SV) is converted to a real world value (RV) using the equation:

RV = (Real World Value Slope) * SV + Real World Value Intercept

When the Real World Value LUT Data (0040,9212) attribute is supplied, Real World Values are obtained via a lookup operation. The stored pixel value of the first value mapped is mapped to the first entry in the LUT Data. Subsequent stored pixel values are mapped to the subsequent entries in the LUT Data up to a stored pixel value equal to the last value mapped.

The number of entries in the LUT data is given by:

Number of entries = Real World Value Last Value Mapped
– Real World Value First Value Mapped + 1

The physical units for the real world values obtained from the sequence item are given by the Measurement Units Code Sequence (0040,08EA).

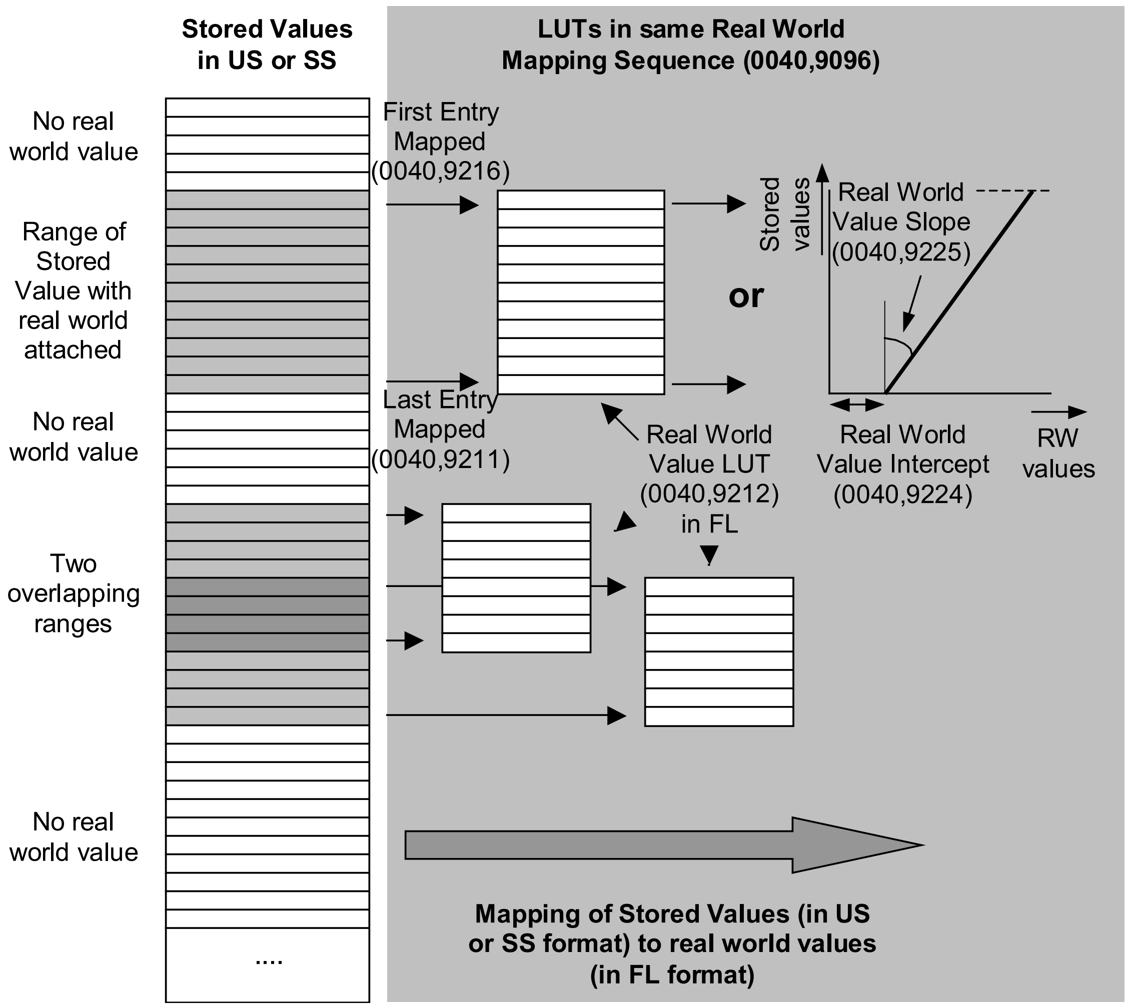


Figure C.7.6.16-7
Example of mapping stored values to real world values

C.7.6.16.2.12 Contrast/Bolus Usage Functional Group Macro

Table C.7.16-13 specifies the attributes of the Contrast/Bolus Usage Functional Group macro.

Table C.7.16-13
CONTRAST/BOLUS USAGE FUNCTIONAL GROUP MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Contrast/Bolus Usage Sequence	(0018,9341)	1	Contains the attributes describing the use of contrast for this frame. One or more Items shall be present in this sequence.
>Contrast/Bolus Agent Number	(0018,9337)	1	Identifying number corresponding to the agent described in the Enhanced Contrast/Bolus Module. The number shall be 1 for the first Item and increase by 1 for each subsequent Item.
>Contrast/Bolus Agent Administered	(0018,9342)	1	The administration of the selected agent had begun by the time this frame was acquired. Enumerated Values: YES NO
>Contrast/Bolus Agent Detected	(0018,9343)	2	The selected agent was detected in the frame. Enumerated Values: YES NO May only be zero length if the acquisition device is not capable of detecting the presence of this contrast agent in the frame.
>Contrast/Bolus Agent Phase	(0018,9344)	2C	Nominal phase of intravenous contrast administration. Defined terms: PRE_CONTRAST POST_CONTRAST IMMEDIATE DYNAMIC STEADY_STATE DELAYED ARTERIAL CAPILLARY VENOUS PORTAL_VENOUS Required if Contrast/Bolus Administration Route Sequence (0018,0014) for the Contrast/Bolus Agent Number (0018,9337) defined in the Contrast/Bolus Agent Sequence (0018,0012) is (SNM3, G-D101, “Intravenous route”).

C.7.6.16.2.13 Pixel Intensity Relationship LUT Macro

Table C.7.6.16-14 specifies the attributes of the Pixel Intensity Relationship LUT Functional Group macro.

Table C.7.6.16-14
PIXEL INTENSITY RELATIONSHIP LUT MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Pixel Intensity Relationship LUT Sequence	(0028,9422)	1	Defines a sequence of Pixel Intensity Relationship LUTs. One or more items shall be present in this sequence. At least one item with LUT Function (0028,9474) equals TO_LINEAR LUT shall be present if Pixel Intensity Relationship (0028,1040) equals LOG. Only a single item with LUT Function (0028,9474) equals TO_LINEAR LUT shall be present.
>LUT Descriptor	(0028,3002)	1	Specifies the format of the LUT Data in this Sequence. See C.11.1.1 and C.7.6.16.2.13.1 for further explanation.
>LUT Data	(0028,3006)	1	LUT Data in this Sequence.
>LUT Function	(0028,9474)	1	The transformation function this LUT applies to the stored pixel values. Defined Terms: TO_LOG TO_LINEAR

C.7.6.16.2.13.1 Pixel Intensity Relationship LUT

The purpose of this Pixel Intensity Relationship LUT Sequence is to provide information to recalculate the pixel values proportional to the X-ray beam intensity from the stored pixel values. It is intended to be used by any application that needs transformed pixel values (e.g. scaled back to acquired pixel values) pixel values for further processing and not as replacement of the Modality LUT in the display pipeline, see Figure C.7.6.16-7.

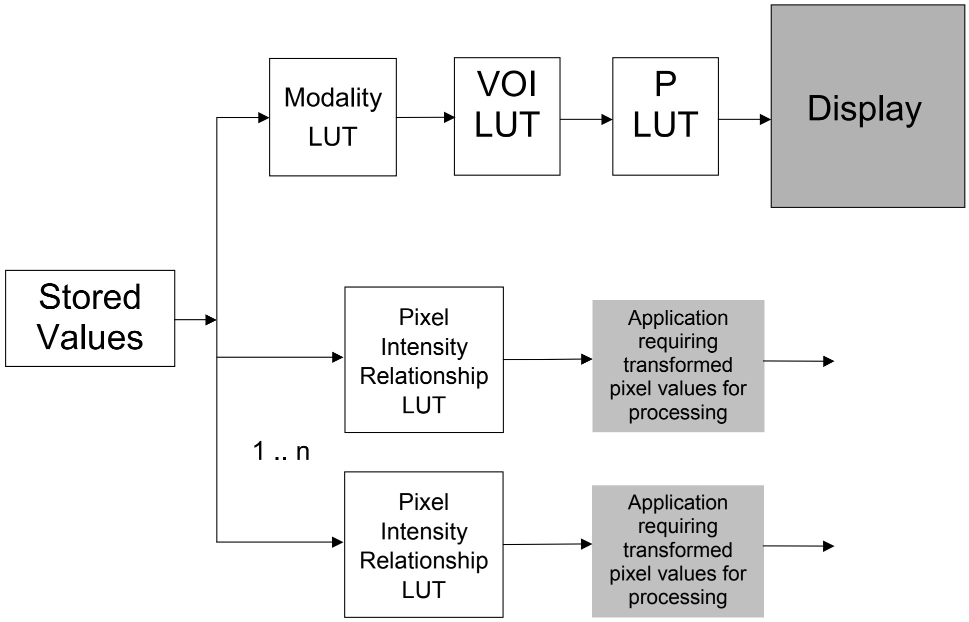


Figure C.7.6.16-7
Purpose of Pixel Intensity Relationship LUT

C.7.6.16.2.13.2 Pixel Intensity Relationship LUT Data Attribute

The number of bits in the LUT Data attribute (0028,3006) may be different from the value of Bit Stored attribute (0028,0101).

C.7.6.16.2.14 Frame Pixel Shift Macro

Table C.7.6.16-15 specifies the attributes of the Frame Pixel Shift Functional Group macro.

Table C.7.6.16-15
FRAME PIXEL SHIFT MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Frame Pixel Shift Sequence	(0028,9415)	1	Sequence containing the pixel shift for a number of masks for this frame. One or more items shall be present in this sequence.
>Subtraction Item ID	(0028,9416)	1	Identifier of the Subtraction Item in the Mask Subtraction Sequence (0028,6100) to which this pixel shift is associated. See C.7.6.16.2.14.1.
>Mask Sub-pixel Shift	(0028,6114)	1	A pair of floating point numbers specifying the fractional vertical [adjacent row spacing] and horizontal [adjacent column spacing] pixel shift applied to the mask before subtracting it from this contrast frame. Note: If no pixel shift has to be applied a pair of zero values should be specified.

			See Section C.7.6.10.1.2.

C.7.6.16.2.14.1 Subtraction Item ID Description

Subtraction Item ID (0028,9416) specifies the ID of a subtraction operation to which the Mask Sub-pixel Shift (0028,6114) is associated. The Subtraction Item ID is also present in the Mask Subtraction Sequence (0028,6100) to allow this association.

When used as per-frame macro, the Subtraction Item ID (0028,9416) allows to specify different values of Mask Sub-pixel Shift (0028,6114) individually frame by frame, and relate them to a single item of the Mask Subtraction Sequence (0028,6100).

Note: There is no restriction in the number of Subtraction Item ID's associated to each contrast frame. The same contrast frame may be present in several items of the Mask Subtraction Sequence, each item having a different value of Subtraction Item ID.

When used as shared macro, the Subtraction Item ID (0028,9416) allows to specify one or more values of Mask Sub-pixel Shift that will be applied to all the frames of the Multi-frame image.

Note: Example of usage of Subtraction Item ID in a per-frame macro, see Figure C.7.6.16-8:

In this example of Multi-Frame Image with 3 frames, one Mask Frame (i.e., Frame 1) is applied to the next two frames of the Multi-Frame image (i.e., Frames 2 and 3). Therefore, there is only one item in the Mask Subtraction Sequence, containing its own Subtraction Item ID value (i.e., 100). The Frame Pixel Shift Macro allows to define a Mask Sub-Pixel Shift different for each contrast frame.

First Frame Subtracted: Subtraction of Frame 1 (Mask) to Frame 2, with Sub-Pixel Shift 1.3\2.4

Second Frame Subtracted: Subtraction of Frame 1 (Mask) to Frame 3, with Sub-Pixel Shift 1.9\3.0

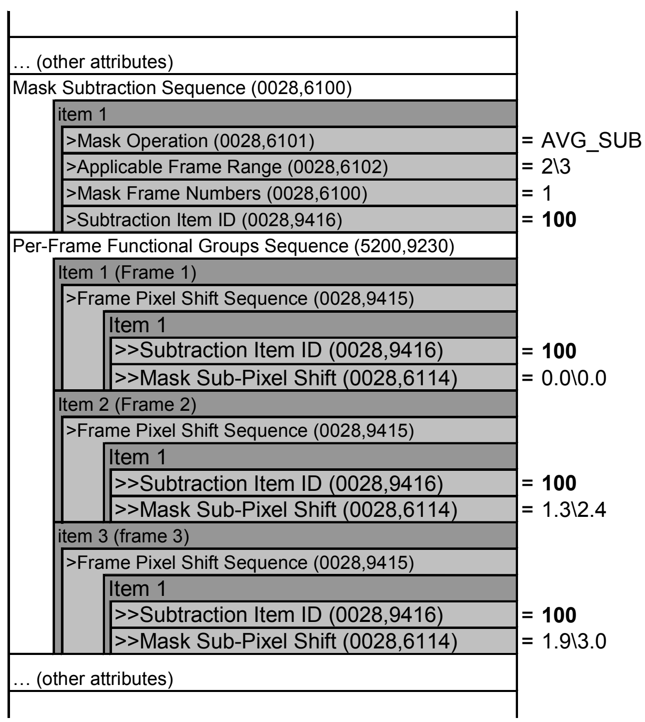


Figure C.7.6.16-8
Example of usage of Subtraction Item ID in a per-frame Macro

C.7.6.16.2.15 Patient Orientation in Frame Macro

Table C.7.6.16-16 specifies the attributes of the Patient Orientation in Frame Functional Group macro.

Table C.7.6.16-16
PATIENT ORIENTATION IN FRAME MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Patient Orientation in Frame Sequence	(0020,9450)	1	Sequence containing the row and column directions for this frame in the patient. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Patient Orientation	(0020,0020)	1	Patient direction of the rows and columns of this frame. See C.7.6.1.1.1 for further explanation.

C.7.6.16.2.16 Frame Display Shutter

Table C.7.6.16-17 specifies the attributes of the Frame Display Shutter Functional Group macro.

Table C.7.6.16-17
FRAME DISPLAY SHUTTER MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Frame Display Shutter Sequence	(0018,9472)	1	Sequence containing the display shutter parameters for this frame. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Include 'Display Shutter Macro' Table C.7-17A.			

C.7.6.16.2.17 Respiratory Trigger Macro

Table C.7.6.16-18 specifies the attributes of the Respiratory Trigger Functional Group macro.

Table C.7.6.16-18
RESPIRATORY TRIGGER MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Respiratory Trigger Sequence	(0020,9253)	1	Identifies respiratory trigger delay for this frame. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Respiratory Interval Time	(0020,9254)	1	Measured interval time in ms from maximum respiration peak to the next peak for the respiratory cycle in which this frame occurs. See C.7.6.16.2.17.1 for further explanation. Required if (Respiratory Motion Compensation Technique (0018,9170)) equals other than NONE or REALTIME) and (Respiratory Signal Source (0018,9171) is BELT). May be present otherwise.
>Respiratory Trigger Delay Time	(0020,9255)	1	Trigger delay time in ms from the time defined by value of Respiratory Trigger Delay Threshold (0020,9256) following the previous maximum value of respiration, to the value of the Frame Reference Datetime (0018,9151). See C.7.6.16.2.17.1 for further explanation.

C.7.6.16.2.17.1 Relationship of Respiratory Timing Attributes

Figure C.7.6.16-9 depicts the usage.

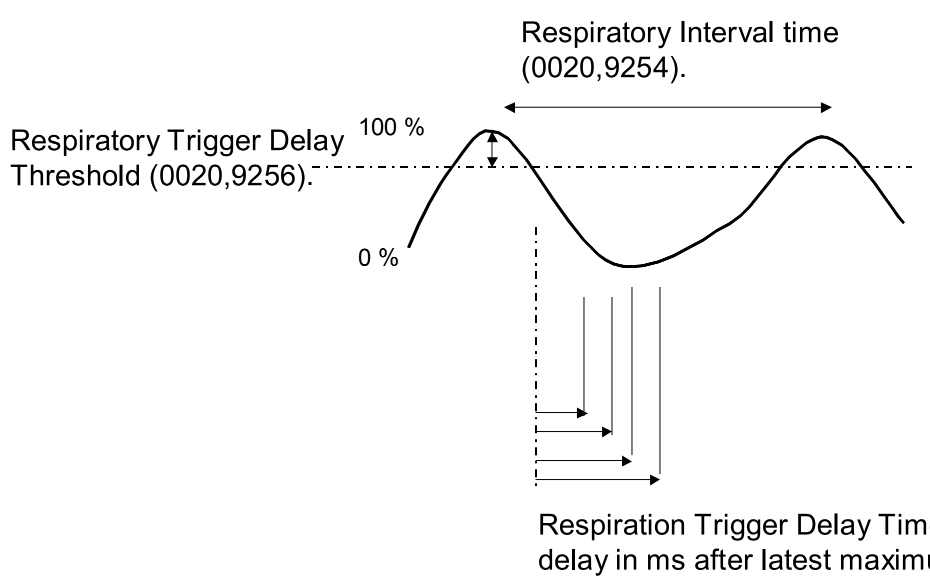


Figure C.7.6.16-9
Respiratory Timing Tags

C.7.6.16.2.18 Irradiation Event Identification Macro

Table C.7.6.16-19 specifies the attributes containing the Irradiation Event Identification Functional Group macro.

Table C.7.6.16-19
IRRADIATION EVENT IDENTIFICATION MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Irradiation Event Identification Sequence	(0018,9477)	1	Sequence containing the Irradiation Event Identification for this frame. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Irradiation Event UID	(0008,3010)	1	Unique identification of the irradiation event(s) associated with the acquisition of this image.

C.7.6.17 Multi-frame Dimension Module

The Multi-frame Dimension Module contains a sequence with items pointing to attributes defining a set of dimensions that are usually known prior to the acquisition commencing. It is up to the generating applications to decide what attributes are important to describe the multi-frame dimensions.

The application that generates the Concatenation or SOP Instances may use the order of Dimension Index Pointers (0020,9165) in the Dimension Index Sequence (0020,9222) to guide the receiving application in determining the order of the presentation of image frames. The first index has the highest ranking, the next index has a lower ranking, etc. Frames with higher values for the dimension with the highest ranking would only be presented after all frames that have values for Dimension Index Pointers (0020,9165) of the lower rankings have been presented.

If the set of Dimension Index Pointers does not provide an attribute set whose values are unique for each frame then the order for the frames with the same value set will be incompletely specified. The receiving application could use the logical frame number to resolve this ambiguity. If the attribute set contains more dimensions than are needed to specify a unique ordering, the lower order ranking attribute(s) will have no effect on the ordering.

Note: For example if there were the following indices in the following order:

- Stack ID (1-3)
- In-stack Position Number (1-2 for Stack ID 1, 1-4 for Stack ID 2, 1-3 for Stack ID 3)
- Effective Echo Time (1-2), i.e. every slice has been scanned with 2 different effective echo's

Then the frames could be presented in the following order:

(Stack ID, In-stack Position, Effective Echo Time)

(1,1,1), (1,1,2), (1,2,1), (1,2,2),

(2,1,1), (2,1,2), (2,2,1), (2,2,2), (2,3,1), (2,3,2), (2,4,1), (2,4,2)

(3,1,1), (3,1,2), (3,2,1), (3,2,2), (3,3,1), (3,3,2)

The actual order of the frames in the object is up to the generating application.

If the effective echo time was not included in the Dimension Index Pointers in the above example then the order of sorting for the frames with the same indices will be undefined – in this case there would be 2 frames with the index set (Stack ID, In-stack Position) = (1,1) and the order of these frames is not specified.

If there were another attribute appended to the Dimension Index Pointers, for example TR, then the TR index would not be used in determining the order of the frames. So the Index Frame Pointers would contain (Stack ID, In-stack Position, Effective Echo Time, TR) but the TR index would be irrelevant for frame ordering purposes.

Table C.7.6.17-1 specifies the attributes of the Multi-frame Dimension Module.

Table C.7.6.17-1
MULTI-FRAME DIMENSION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Dimension Organization Sequence	(0020,9221)	2	Sequence that lists the Dimension Organization UIDs referenced by the containing SOP Instance. See section C.7.6.17.2 for further explanation. Zero or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>Dimension Organization UID	(0020,9164)	1	Uniquely identifies a set of dimensions referenced within the containing SOP Instance. See section C.7.6.17.2 for further explanation.
>Dimension Description Label	(0020,9421)	3	Free text description that explains the meaning of the dimension.
Dimension Index Sequence	(0020,9222)	2	Identifies the sequence containing the indices used to specify the dimension of the multi-frame object. Zero or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>Dimension Index Pointer	(0020,9165)	1	Contains the Data Element Tag that is used to identify the Attribute connected with the index. See section C.7.6.17.1 for further explanation.
>Dimension Index Private Creator	(0020,9213)	1C	Identification of the creator of a group of private data elements. Required if the Dimension Index Pointer (0020,9165) value is the Data Element Tag of a Private Attribute.
>Functional Group Pointer	(0020,9167)	1C	Contains the Data Element Tag of the Functional Group Sequence that contains the Attribute that is referenced by the Dimension Index Pointer (0020,9165). See section C.7.6.17.1 for further explanation. Required if the value of the Dimension Index Pointer (0020,9165) is the Data Element Tag of an Attribute that is contained within a Functional Group Sequence.
>Functional Group Private Creator	(0020,9238)	1C	Identification of the creator of a group of private data elements. Required if the Functional Group Pointer 0020,9167) value is the Data Element Tag of a Private Attribute.
>Dimension Organization UID	(0020,9164)	1C	Uniquely identifies a set of dimensions referenced within the containing SOP Instance. In particular the dimension

			described by this sequence item is associated with this Dimension Organization UID. See section C.7.6.17.2 for further explanation. Required if the value of the Dimension Index Sequence (0020,9222) contains Items

C.7.6.17.1 Dimension Indices

With the Dimension Index Sequence (0020,9222) , Data Element Tags are specified that identify the indices used for a particular SOP Instance.

The actual index values for each frame in a multi-frame header are stored in a single Dimension Index Values Attribute (0020,9157) defined in the Frame Content Functional Group. For each SOP Instance this Attribute has a Value Multiplicity equal to the number of Items in the Sequence. The ordering of the Items in the Sequence defines the ordering in the Dimension Index Values Attribute: Item 1 of the Sequence relates to Value 1, Item 2 to Value 2, etc.

The Dimension Index Pointer (0020,9165) stores ordinal numbers that comprise logical indices for a referenced Attribute. Each Attribute referenced in the Dimension Index Sequence (0020,9222) will have an index stored in the Dimension Index Values (0020,9157) for each frame. Frames assigned the same index shall contain nominally the same value for the underlying Attribute. If the Attribute is not present for some frames, or is present but has no value, then a single index shall be assigned to indicate the lack of the value (i.e., all such frames shall have the same index value, which is different from other index values). It is at the discretion of the SOP Instance creator whether the Attribute values are equivalent, and therefore appropriate for assignment to the same index value.

The Dimension Index Pointer (0020,9165) shall contain the Data Element Tag (gggg,eeee) of the Attribute being indexed.

Notes: 1. Dimension Index Pointer (0020,9165) may point to a Sequence containing a Functional Group. In that case all the Attributes of the Sequence are associated with the index value.

2. The Dimension Index Pointer (0020,9165) may point to a Data Element Tag (gggg,eeee) which is not present for all frames of an object, or does not have a value for all frames of an object. For such frames, index values are still assigned, as described above.

The Functional Group Pointer (0020,9167) value is the Data Element Tag (gggg,eeee) of the Functional Group Sequence that contains the Attribute being indexed. If the Dimension Index Pointer 0020,9165) contains a Data Element Tag that identifies a Functional Group Sequence then the Functional Group Pointer (0020,9167) shall not be present.

If the Dimension Index Pointer (0020,9165) attribute contains a Private Data Element, then the Dimension Index Private Creator (0020,9213) shall contain the Private Creator of the block of Private Data Elements.

If the Functional Group Pointer (0020,9167) attribute contains a Private Data Element, then the Functional Group Private Creator (0020,9238) shall contain the Private Creator of the block of Private Data Elements.

Note: An example of the usage of the Dimension Index Sequence (0020,9222) and Dimension Index Values (0020,9157) attributes:

Dimension Index Sequence (0020,9222) specifies two indices:

Cardiac Trigger Delay Time (0020,9153)
Image Position (Patient) (0020,0032)

The Dimension Index Sequence (0020,9222) is filled with the following contents:

Item	Attribute	Value
1	Dimension Index Pointer	(0020,9153)
	Functional Group Pointer	(0018,9118)
	......	
2	Dimension Index Pointer	(0020,0032)
	Functional Group Pointer	(0020,9113)
	......	

The Dimension Index Values (0020,9157) (in the Frame Content Functional Group) for each frame consists of two values:

Index of Cadriac Trigger Delay Time \ Index of Image Position

The SOP Instance creator is responsible for maintaining consistency between the actual value of the attribute listed as the Dimension Index Pointer (0020,9165) and the corresponding value in the Dimension Index Values (0020,9157) attribute.

See Figure C.7.6.17-1 for an illustration of this example.

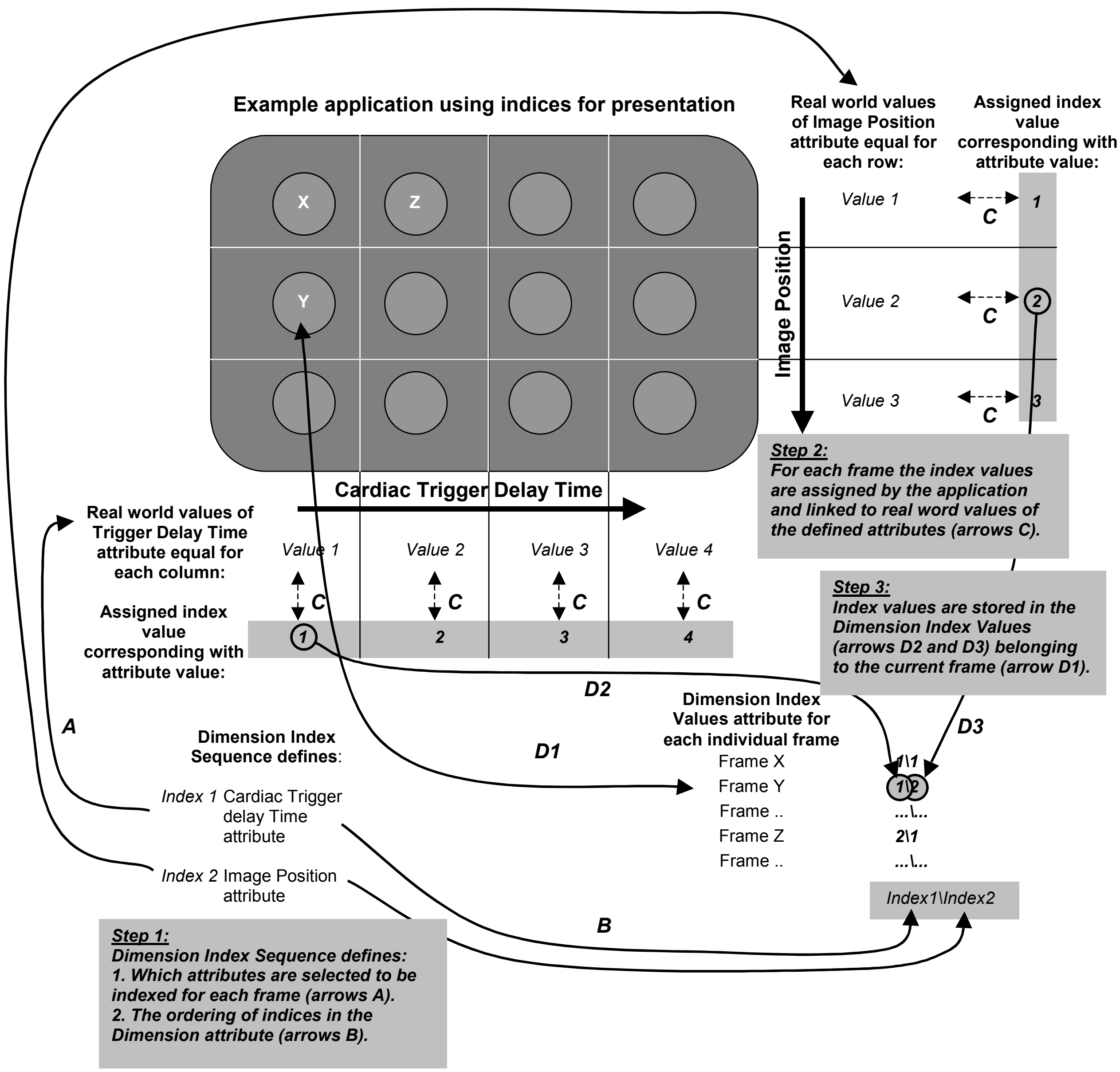


Figure C.7.6.17-1
Example of Dimension Index Sequence and Dimension Index Values attributes

C.7.6.17.2 Dimension Organization UID

The Dimension Organization UID (0020,9164) value identifies a set of dimensions to which an Item of the Dimension Index Sequence (0020,9222) belongs.

When different SOP Instances share the same Dimension Organization UID (0020,9164) for a particular Item of the Dimension Index Sequence (0020,9222), equivalent indices from the corresponding Dimension Index Values (0020,9157) shall have the same meaning across the SOP Instances.

This mechanism allows an image creator to explicitly specify that indices are intended to convey identical information across SOP Instances.

The Dimension Organization Sequence attribute (0020,9221) contains a summary of all the Dimension Organization UID (0020,9164) values used in a SOP Instance.

Note: Figure C.7.6.17-2 illustrates how this is used for a SOP Instance created by a multi-planar reformat application from a SOP Instance containing three Items in the Dimension Index Sequence. The meaning of the indices for Temporal Position Index (0020,9128), and MR Echo Sequence (0018,9114) were preserved in the derived SOP Instance, so it shares the Dimension Organization UID for these attributes with the original. Since the reformat was performed with a different orientation, the meaning of the In-Stack Position Number (0020,9057) was not preserved. Therefore a new Dimension Organization UID (0020,9164) was created.

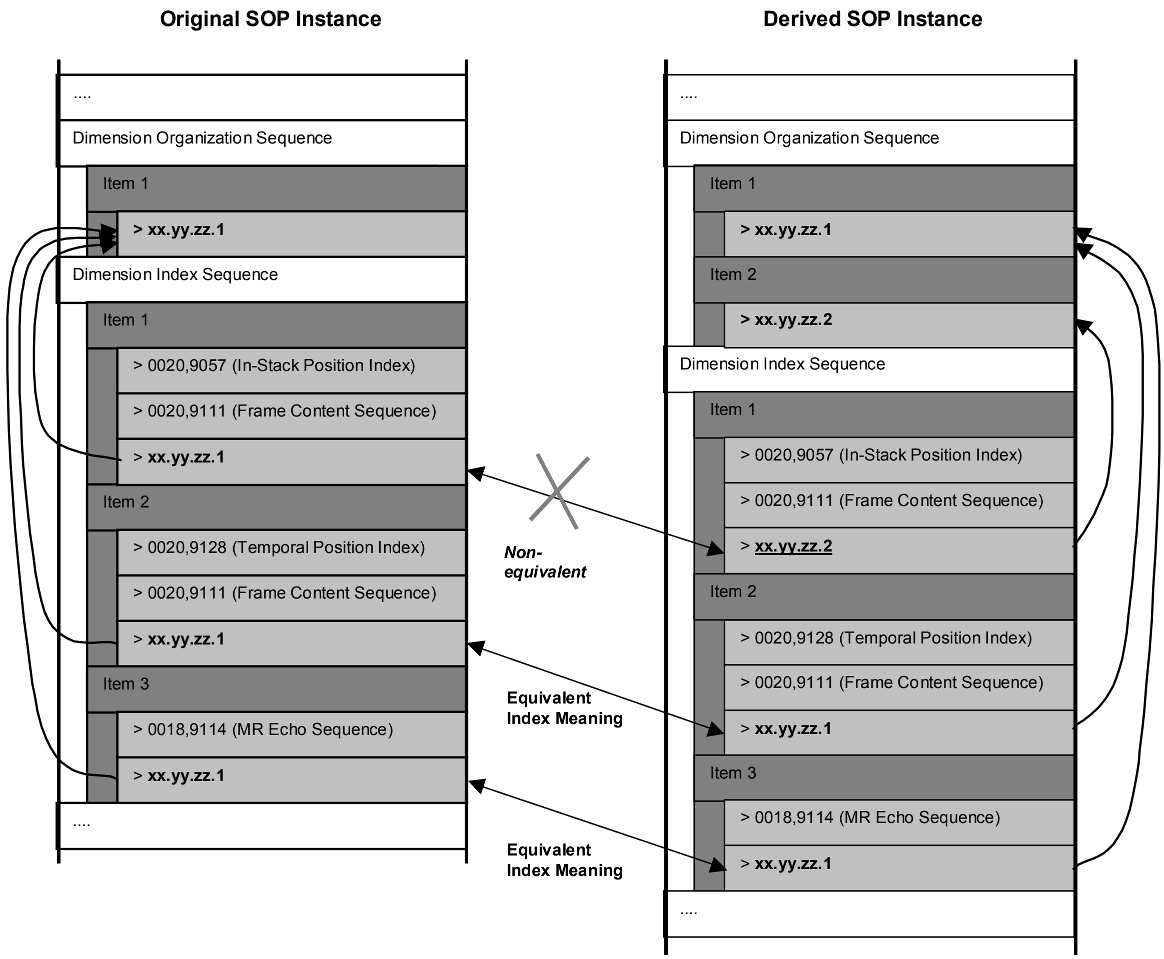


Figure C.7.6.17-2
Example of use of Dimension Organization Module

C.7.6.18 Physiological Synchronization

C.7.6.18.1 Cardiac Synchronization Module

Table C.7.6.18-1 specifies the attributes of the Cardiac Synchronization Module.

Table C.7.6.18-1
CARDIAC SYNCHRONIZATION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Cardiac Synchronization Technique	(0018,9037)	1C	Defines if a cardiac synchronization technique was applied during or after the acquisition. Enumerated Values: NONE REALTIME = total time for the acquisition is shorter than cardiac cycle, no gating is applied PROSPECTIVE = certain thresholds have been set for a gating window that defines the acceptance of measurement data during the acquisition RETROSPECTIVE = certain thresholds have been set for a gating window that defines the acceptance of measurement data after the acquisition PACED = there is a constant RR interval (e.g., Pacemaker), which makes thresholding not required Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Cardiac Signal Source	(0018,9085)	1C	Cardiac Signal Source. Defined Terms: ECG = electrocardiogram VCG = vector cardiogram PP = peripheral pulse MR = magnetic resonance, i.e. M-mode or cardiac navigator

			Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED and Cardiac Synchronization Technique (0018,9037) equals other than NONE. Otherwise may be present if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is DERIVED and Cardiac Synchronization Technique (0018,9037) equals other than NONE.
Cardiac RR Interval Specified	(0018,9070)	1C	R-R interval in ms measured prior to or during the scan. Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED and Cardiac Synchronization Technique (0018,9037) equals other than NONE. Otherwise may be present if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is DERIVED and Cardiac Synchronization Technique (0018,9037) equals other than NONE.
Cardiac Beat Rejection Technique	(0018,9169)	1C	Cardiac arrhythmia rejection technique. Defined Terms: NONE RR_INTERVAL = rejection based on deviation from average RR interval QRS_LOOP = rejection based on deviation from regular QRS loop PVC = rejection based on PVC criteria Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED and Cardiac Synchronization Technique (0018,9037) equals PROSPECTIVE or RETROSPECTIVE. Otherwise may be present if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is DERIVED and Cardiac Synchronization Technique (0018,9037) equals PROSPECTIVE or RETROSPECTIVE.
Low R-R Value	(0018,1081)	2C	R-R interval low limit for beat rejection, in ms. Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED and Cardiac Synchronization Technique (0018,9037) equals PROSPECTIVE or RETROSPECTIVE. Otherwise may be present if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is DERIVED and

			Cardiac Synchronization Technique (0018,9037) equals PROSPECTIVE or RETROSPECTIVE.
High R-R Value	(0018,1082)	2C	R-R interval high limit for beat rejection, in ms. Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED and Cardiac Synchronization Technique (0018,9037) equals PROSPECTIVE or RETROSPECTIVE. Otherwise may be present if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is DERIVED and Cardiac Synchronization Technique (0018,9037) equals PROSPECTIVE or RETROSPECTIVE.
Intervals Acquired	(0018,1083)	2C	Number of R-R intervals acquired. Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED and Cardiac Synchronization Technique (0018,9037) equals other than NONE. Otherwise may be present if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is DERIVED and Cardiac Synchronization Technique (0018,9037) equals other than NONE.
Intervals Rejected	(0018,1084)	2C	Number of R-R intervals rejected. Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED and Cardiac Synchronization Technique (0018,9037) equals other than NONE. Otherwise may be present if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is DERIVED and Cardiac Synchronization Technique (0018,9037) equals other than NONE.

C.7.6.18.2 Respiratory Synchronization Module

Table C7.6.18-2 specifies the attributes of the Respiratory Synchronization Module.

Table C.7.6.18-2
RESPIRATORY SYNCHRONIZATION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Respiratory Motion Compensation Technique	(0018,9170)	1C	Applied technique to reduce respiratory motion artifacts. Defined Terms: NONE BREATH_HOLD REALTIME = image acquisition shorter than respiratory cycle GATING = Prospective gating TRACKING =

			prospective through-plane or in-plane motion tracking PHASE_ORDERING = prospective phase ordering PHASE_RESCANNING = prospective techniques, such as real-time averaging, diminishing variance and motion adaptive gating RETROSPECTIVE = retrospective gating CORRECTION = retrospective image correction Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Respiratory Signal Source	(0018,9171)	1C	Signal source from which respiratory motion is derived. Defined Terms: NONE BELT NASAL_PROBE CO2_SENSOR NAVIGATOR = MR navigator and organ edge detection MR_PHASE = phase (of center k-space line) ECG = baseline demodulation of the ECG Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED and Respiratory Motion Compensation Technique (0018,9170) equals other than NONE. Otherwise may be present if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is DERIVED and Respiratory Motion Compensation Technique (0018,9170 equals other than NONE.
Respiratory Trigger Delay Threshold	(0020,9256)	1C	Respiratory trigger threshold in percent of the chest expansion for the frame relative to the last Respiratory-Peak. See C.7.6.16.2.17.1 for further explanation. Required if Respiratory Motion Compensation Technique (0018,9170) equals other than NONE, REALTIME or BREATH_HOLD and if Image Type

			(0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.

C.7.6.18.3 Bulk Motion Synchronization Module

Table C7.6.18-3 specifies the attributes of the Bulk Motion Synchronization Module.

Table C.7.6.18-3
BULK MOTION SYNCHRONIZATION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Bulk Motion Compensation Technique	(0018,9172)	1C	Applied technique to reduce bulk or other physiology motion artifacts. Defined Terms: NONE REALTIME = image acquisition shorter than motion cycle GATING = prospective gating TRACKING = prospective through and/or in-plane motion tracking RETROSPECTIVE = retrospective gating CORRECTION = retrospective image correction Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Bulk Motion Signal Source	(0018,9173)	1C	Signal source to measure motion. Defined Terms: JOINT = joint motion detection NAVIGATOR = MR navigator and organ edge detection MR_PHASE = phase (of center k-space line) Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED and Bulk Motion Compensation Technique (0018,9172) equals other than NONE. Otherwise may be present if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is DERIVED and Bulk Motion Compensation Technique (0018,9172) equals other than NONE.

C.7.6.19 Supplemental Palette Color Lookup Table Module

This module is used in conjunction with Multi-frame IODs that use RGB color in a number of frames. The value of the Pixel Presentation (0008,9205) for such frames equals COLOR.

Table C.7.6.19-1 specifies the Attributes that describe the Lookup table data.

Table C.7.6.19-1
SUPPLEMENTAL PALETTE COLOR TABLE LOOKUP MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Red Palette Color Lookup Table Descriptor	(0028,1101)	1	Specifies the format of the Red Palette Color Lookup Table Data (0028,1201). See C.7.6.3.1.5 for further explanation.
Green Palette Color Lookup Table Descriptor	(0028,1102)	1	Specifies the format of the Green Palette Color Lookup Table Data (0028,1202). See C.7.6.3.1.5 for further explanation.
Blue Palette Color Lookup Table Descriptor	(0028,1103)	1	Specifies the format of the Blue Palette Color Lookup table Data (0028,1203). See C.7.6.3.1.5 for further explanation.
Red Palette Color Lookup Table Data	(0028,1201)	1	Red Palette Color Lookup Table Data. See C.7.6.3.1.6 for further explanation.
Green Palette Color Lookup Table Data	(0028,1202)	1	Green Palette Color Lookup Table Data. See C.7.6.3.1.6 for further explanation.
Blue Palette Color Lookup Table Data	(0028,1203)	1	Blue Palette Color Lookup Table Data. See C.7.6.3.1.6 for further explanation.

C.7.7 Patient Summary Module

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.7.8 Study Content Module

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.7.9 Palette Color Lookup Table Module

Table C.7-22 specifies the Attributes that describe the Lookup table data for images with Palette Color photometric interpretation.

When the Palette Color Lookup Table Module is present in an Image IOD, the conditional requirements for the use of Palette Color Lookup Table Data (0028,1201-1203) and Segmented Palette Color Lookup Table Data (0028,1221-1223), described in Table C.7.9, shall take precedence over the conditional requirements described in the Image Pixel Module (See Section C.7.6.3). When the Palette Color Lookup Table Module is present in a Presentation State IOD, the Palette Color Lookup Table Data (0028,1201-1203) attributes are mandatory and the Segmented Palette Color Lookup Table Data (0028,1221-1223) shall not be present.

Table C.7-22
PALETTE COLOR LOOKUP MODULE

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Red Palette Color Lookup Table Descriptor	(0028,1101)	1C	Specifies the format of the Red Palette Color Lookup Table Data (0028,1201). Required if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) has a value of PALETTE COLOR in an Image IOD, or if the IOD is a Presentation State IOD. See C.7.6.3.1.5 for further explanation.
Green Palette Color Lookup Table Descriptor	(0028,1102)	1C	Specifies the format of the Green Palette Color Lookup Table Data (0028,1202). Required if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) has a value of PALETTE COLOR in an Image IOD, or if the IOD is a Presentation State IOD. See C.7.6.3.1.5 for further explanation.
Blue Palette Color Lookup Table Descriptor	(0028,1103)	1C	Specifies the format of the Blue Palette Color Lookup table Data (0028,1203). Required if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) has a value of PALETTE COLOR in an Image IOD, or if the IOD is a Presentation State IOD. See C.7.6.3.1.5 for further explanation.
Palette Color Lookup Table UID	(0028,1199)	3	Palette Color Lookup Table UID. See C.7.9.1 for further explanation.
Red Palette Color Lookup Table Data	(0028,1201)	1C	Red Palette Color Lookup Table Data. Required if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) has a value of PALETTE COLOR and segmented data is NOT used in an Image IOD, or if the IOD is a Presentation State IOD. See C.7.6.3.1.6 for further explanation.
Green Palette Color Lookup Table Data	(0028,1202)	1C	Green Palette Color Lookup Table Data. Required if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) has a value of PALETTE COLOR and segmented data is NOT used in an Image IOD, or if the IOD is a Presentation State IOD. See C.7.6.3.1.6 for further explanation.
Blue Palette Color Lookup Table Data	(0028,1203)	1C	Blue Palette Color Lookup Table Data. Required if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) has a value of PALETTE COLOR and segmented data is NOT used in an Image IOD, or if the IOD is a Presentation State IOD. See C.7.6.3.1.6 for further explanation.
Segmented Red Palette Color Lookup Table Data	(0028,1221)	1C	Segmented Red Palette Color Lookup Table Data. Required if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) has a value of PALETTE COLOR and segmented data is used in an Image IOD; shall not be

			present in a Presentation State IOD. See C.7.9.2 for further explanation.
Segmented Green Palette Color Lookup Table Data	(0028,1222)	1C	Segmented Green Palette Color Lookup Table Data. Required if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) has a value of PALETTE COLOR and segmented data is used in an Image IOD; shall not be present in a Presentation State IOD. See C.7.9.2 for further explanation.
Segmented Blue Palette Color Lookup Table Data	(0028,1223)	1C	Segmented Blue Palette Color Lookup Table Data. Required if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) has a value of PALETTE COLOR and segmented data is used in an Image IOD; shall not be present in a Presentation State IOD. See C.7.9.2 for further explanation.

C.7.9.1 Palette Color Lookup Table UID

This data element uniquely identifies a palette color lookup table set (red, green, blue).

Note: This can be used to avoid reloading a palette if a system already has that palette loaded without examining all the data entries in the palette.

C.7.9.2 Segmented Palette Color Lookup Table Data

The Segmented Palette Color Lookup Table Data (0028,1221-1223) is stored as a series of segments, see Table C.7-23. When the segments are expanded into the actual lookup table data, it shall have the number of table entries specified by the first value of the Palette Color Lookup Table Descriptors (0028,1101-1103), Number of Table Entries.

These lookup tables shall be used only when segmented lookup table data use is desriable and there is a single sample per pixel (single image plane) in the image.

Table C.7-23
COMPRESSED PALETTE COLOR LOOKUP TABLE DATA

Segment 0
Segment 1
...
Segment n

There are currently three types of segments: discrete, linear, and indirect. The segments type is identified by the opcodes in Table C.7-24:

Table C.7-24
SEGMENT TYPES

Opcode	Segment type
0	Discrete
1	Linear
2	Indirect
3 & above	reserved

C.7.9.2.1 Discrete Segment Type

The discrete segment is used to represent a series of palette components which are not monotonic with respect to their predecessors or successors. The SegmentLength indicates the number of lookup table entries.

The format of the Discrete Segment Type shall be as in Table C.7-25:

Table C.7-25
DISCRETE SEGMENT TYPE

Segment Opcode = 0
Segment Length
Segment Length number of lookup table entries

C.7.9.2.2 Linear Segment Type

The linear segment represents a series of palette components whose values may be represented by a straight line.

X = palette address, Y = Value contained in the palette.

(X_o, Y_o) = end of the previous segment

$(X_o$ + SegmentLength, $Y_1)$ = end of this linear segment

Where: Y_1 is contained in the data portion of this segment.

During expansion, the application should "connect" the previous segment's endpoint, (X_o, Y_o), with this segment's endpoint, $(X_o$ + SegmentLength, $Y_1)$ using a straight line, by computing the values for each point between the endpoints.

Note: Because the linear segment uses the end point from the previous segment, a linear segment can not be the first segment.

The linear segment's format shall be as as in Table C.7-26:

Table C.7-26
LINEAR SEGMENT TYPE

Segment Opcode = 1
SegmentLength
Y1

C.7.9.2.3 Indirect Segment Type

The indirect segment allows the re-use of repetitive regions within lookup table without respecifying the segment. The opcode is followed by the number of segments to copy and one offset pointer to the first segment to copy. The byte offset is relative to the beginning of the lookup table. For example, if an indirect segment wants to point to the first segment, then the offset will be zero. The offset is a 32 bit value but is stored in the segment as a least significant 16 bit value followed by a most significant 16 bit value. An indirect segment shall not point to or copy another indirect segment. This avoids the need for recursion and also avoids the possibility of infinite loops.

The indirect segment's format shall be as follows:

Table C.7-27
INDIRECT SEGMENT TYPE

Segment Opcode = 2
Number of segments to copy
Least significant 16 bits of byte offset to first segment to copy
Most significant 16 bits of byte offset to first segment to copy

C.8 MODALITY SPECIFIC MODULES

C.8.1 Computed Radiography Modules

This Section describes Computed Radiography Series and Image Modules. These Modules contain Attributes that are specific to Computed Radiography images. There is no Computed Radiography Equipment Module.

C.8.1.1 CR Series Module

Table C.8-1 contains IOD Attributes that describe a computed radiography series performed on the patient.

Table C.8-1
CR SERIES MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Body Part Examined	(0018,0015)	2	Text description of the part of the body examined. Defined Terms: SKULL CSPINE TSPINE LSPINE SSPINE COCCYX CHEST CLAVICLE BREAST ABDOMEN PELVIS HIP SHOULDER ELBOW KNEE ANKLE HAND FOOT EXTREMITY HEAD HEART NECK LEG ARM JAW
View Position	(0018,5101)	2	Radiographic view associated with Patient Position (0018,5100). Defined Terms: AP = Anterior/Posterior PA = Posterior/Anterior LL = Left Lateral RL = Right Lateral RLD = Right Lateral Decubitus LLD = Left Lateral Decubitus RLO = Right Lateral Oblique LLO = Left Lateral Oblique
Filter Type	(0018,1160)	3	Label for the type of filter inserted into the x-ray beam

Collimator/grid Name	(0018,1180)	3	Label describing any grid inserted.
Focal Spot	(0018,1190)	3	Size of the focal spot in mm. For devices with variable focal spot or multiple focal spots, small dimension followed by large dimension.
Plate Type	(0018,1260)	3	Label of the type of storage phosphor plates used in this series
Phosphor Type	(0018,1261)	3	Label of type of phosphor on the plates

C.8.1.2 CR Image Module

Table C.8-2 contains IOD Attributes that describe computed radiography images.

Table C.8-2
CR IMAGE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Photometric Interpretation	(0028,0004)	1	Specifies the intended interpretation of the pixel data. Shall have one of the following Enumerated Values: MONOCHROME1 MONOCHROME2
KVP	(0018,0060)	3	Peak kilo voltage output of the x-ray generator used
Plate ID	(0018,1004)	3	The ID or serial number of the sensing plate upon which the image was acquired
Distance Source to Detector	(0018,1110)	3	Distance in mm from source to detector center. Note: This value is traditionally referred to as Source Image Receptor Distance (SID).
Distance Source to Patient	(0018,1111)	3	Distance in mm from source to isocenter (center of field of view) . Note: This value is traditionally referred to as Source Object Distance (SOD).
Exposure Time	(0018,1150)	3	Time of x-ray exposure in msec
X-ray Tube Current	(0018,1151)	3	X-ray Tube Current in mA.
Exposure	(0018,1152)	3	The exposure expressed in mAs, for example calculated from Exposure Time and X-ray Tube Current.
Exposure in µAs	(0018,1153)	3	The exposure expressed in µAs, for example calculated from Exposure Time and X-ray Tube Current.
Imager Pixel Spacing	(0018,1164)	3	Physical distance measured at the front plane of the Image Receptor housing between the center of each pixel. Specified by a numeric pair - row spacing value (delimiter) column spacing value - in mm. In the case of CR, the front plane is defined

			to be the external surface of the CR plate closest to the patient and radiation source.
Include Basic Pixel Spacing Calibration Macro (Table 10-10)			
Generator Power	(0018,1170)	3	Power in kW to the x-ray generator.
Acquisition Device Processing Description	(0018,1400)	3	Describes device-specific processing associated with the image (e.g. Organ Description)
Acquisition Device Processing Code	(0018,1401)	3	Code representing the device-specific processing associated with the image (e.g. CR Organ Filtering code)
Cassette Orientation	(0018,1402)	3	Orientation of cassette, used to properly position the image for display. Enumerated Values: LANDSCAPE PORTRAIT
Cassette Size	(0018,1403)	3	Size of cassette. Defined Terms: 18CMX24CM 8INX10IN 24CMX30CM 10INX12IN 30CMX35CM 30CMX40CM 11INX14IN 35CMX35CM 14INX14IN 35CMX43CM 14INX17IN
Exposures on Plate	(0018,1404)	3	Total number of x-ray exposures that have been made on the plate identified in Plate ID (0018,1004)
Relative X-ray Exposure	(0018,1405)	3	Relative x-ray exposure on the plate. Meaning of values is implementation specific. May be used to adjust the dynamic range of the plate digitizer (scanner).
Sensitivity	(0018,6000)	3	Read out sensitivity.
Include 'General Anatomy Optional Macro' Table 10-7			Defined Context ID for the Anatomic Region Sequence is 4009.

C.8.2 CT Modules

This Section describes the CT Image Module. This Module contains all Attributes that are specific to CT images.

C.8.2.1 CT Image Module

The table in this Section contains IOD Attributes that describe CT images.

Table C.8-3
CT IMAGE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Image Type	(0008,0008)	1	Image identification characteristics. See C.8.2.1.1.1 for specialization.
Samples per Pixel	(0028,0002)	1	Number of samples (planes) in this image. See C.8.2.1.1.2 for specialization.
Photometric Interpretation	(0028,0004)	1	Specifies the intended interpretation of the pixel data. See C.8.2.1.1.3 for specialization.
Bits Allocated	(0028,0100)	1	Number of bits allocated for each pixel sample. Each sample shall have the same number of bits allocated. See C.8.2.1.1.4 for specialization.
Bits Stored	(0028,0101)	1	Number of bits stored for each pixel sample. Each sample shall have the same number of bits stored. See C.8.2.1.1.5 for specialization.
High Bit	(0028,0102)	1	Most significant bit for pixel sample data. Each sample shall have the same high bit. See C.8.2.1.1.6 for specialization.
Rescale Intercept	(0028,1052)	1	The value b in relationship between stored values (SV) and Hounsfield (HU). HU = m*SV+b
Rescale Slope	(0028,1053)	1	m in the equation specified in Rescale Intercept (0028,1052).
KVP	(0018,0060)	2	Peak kilo voltage output of the x-ray generator used
Acquisition Number	(0020,0012)	2	A number identifying the single continuous gathering of data over a period of time which resulted in this image
Scan Options	(0018,0022)	3	Parameters of scanning sequence.
Data Collection Diameter	(0018,0090)	3	The diameter in mm of the region over which data were collected
Reconstruction Diameter	(0018,1100)	3	Diameter in mm of the region from within which data were used in creating the reconstruction of the image. Data may exist outside this region and portions of the patient may exist outside this region.
Distance Source to Detector	(0018,1110)	3	Distance in mm from source to detector center. Note: This value is traditionally referred

			to as Source Image Receptor Distance (SID).
Distance Source to Patient	(0018,1111)	3	Distance in mm from source to isocenter (center of field of view). Note: This value is traditionally referred to as Source Object Distance (SOD).
Gantry/Detector Tilt	(0018,1120)	3	Nominal angle of tilt in degrees of the scanning gantry. Not intended for mathematical computations.
Table Height	(0018,1130)	3	The distance in mm of the top of the patient table to the center of rotation; below the center is positive.
Rotation Direction	(0018,1140)	3	Direction of rotation of the source when relevant, about nearest principal axis of equipment. Enumerated Values: CW = clockwise CC = counter clockwise
Exposure Time	(0018,1150)	3	Time of x-ray exposure in msec
X-ray Tube Current	(0018,1151)	3	X-ray Tube Current in mA.
Exposure	(0018,1152)	3	The exposure expressed in mAs, for example calculated from Exposure Time and X-ray Tube Current.
Exposure in μAs	(0018,1153)	3	The exposure expressed in µAs, for example calculated from Exposure Time and X-ray Tube Current.
Filter Type	(0018,1160)	3	Label for the type of filter inserted into the x-ray beam.
Generator Power	(0018,1170)	3	Power in kW to the x-ray generator.
Focal Spot	(0018,1190)	3	Size of the focal spot in mm. For devices with variable focal spot or multiple focal spots, small dimension followed by large dimension.
Convolution Kernel	(0018,1210)	3	A label describing the convolution kernel or algorithm used to reconstruct the data
Revolution Time	(0018,9305)	3	The time in seconds of a complete revolution of the source around the gantry orbit.
Single Collimation Width	(0018,9306)	3	The width of a single row of acquired data (in mm). Note: Adjacent physical detector rows may have been combined to form a single effective acquisition row.
Total Collimation Width	(0018,9307)	3	The width of the total collimation (in mm) over the area of active x-ray detection. Note: This will be equal the number of effective detector rows multiplied

			by single collimation width.
Table Speed	(0018,9309)	3	The distance in mm that the table moves in one second during the gathering of data that resulted in this image.
Table Feed per Rotation	(0018,9310)	3	Motion of the table (in mm) during a complete revolution of the source around the gantry orbit.
Spiral Pitch Factor	(0018,9311)	3	Ratio of the Table Feed per Rotation (0018,9310) to the Total Collimation Width (0018,9307).
Exposure Modulation Type	(0018,9323)	3	A label describing the type of exposure modulation used for the purpose of limiting the dose. Defined Terms: NONE
Estimated Dose Saving	(0018,9324)	3	A percent value of dose saving due to the use of Exposure Modulation Type (0018,9323). A negative percent value of dose savings reflects an increase of exposure.
CTDIvol	(0018,9345)	3	Computed Tomography Dose Index ($CTDI_{vol}$), im mGy according to IEC 60601-2-44, Ed.2.1 (Clause 29.1.103.4), The Volume $CTDI_{vol}$. It describes the average dose for this image for the selected CT conditions of operation.
Include 'General Anatomy Optional Macro' Table 10-7			Defined Context ID for the Anatomic Region Sequence is 4030.

C.8.2.1.1 CT Image Attribute Descriptions

C.8.2.1.1.1 Image Type

For CT Images, Image Type (0008,0008) is specified to be Type 1 and uses one of the following Defined Terms for Value 3:

AXIAL identifies a CT Axial Image
LOCALIZER identifies a CT Localizer Image

C.8.2.1.1.2 Samples Per Pixel

For CT Images, Samples per Pixel (0028,0002) shall have an Enumerated Value of 1.

C.8.2.1.1.3 Photometric Interpretation

For CT Images, Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) shall have one of the following Enumerated Values:

MONOCHROME1
MONOCHROME2

See C.7.6.3.1.1.2 for definition of these terms.

C.8.2.1.1.4 Bits Allocated

For CT Images, Bits Allocated (0028,0100) shall have the Enumerated Value of 16.

C.8.2.1.1.5 Bits Stored

For CT Images, Bits Stored (0028,0101) shall have the Enumerated Values of 12 to 16.

C.8.2.1.1.6 High Bit

For CT Images, High Bit (0028,0102) shall have only the Enumerated Value of one less than the value sent in Bits Stored.

C.8.3 MR Modules

This Section describes the MR Image Module. This Module contains all Attributes that are specific to MR images.

C.8.3.1 MR Image Module

Table C.8-4 contains the Attributes that describe MR images.

Table C.8-4
MR IMAGE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Image Type	(0008,0008)	1	Image identification characteristics. See C.8.3.1.1.1 for specialization.
Samples per Pixel	(0028,0002)	1	Number of samples (planes) in this image. See C.8.3.1.1.2 for specialization.
Photometric Interpretation	(0028,0004)	1	Specifies the intended interpretation of the pixel data. See C.8.3.1.1.3 for specialization.
Bits Allocated	(0028,0100)	1	Number of bits allocated for each pixel sample. Each sample shall have the same number of bits allocated. See C.8.3.1.1.4 for specialization.
Scanning Sequence	(0018,0020)	1	Description of the type of data taken. Enumerated Values: SE = Spin Echo IR = Inversion Recovery GR = Gradient Recalled EP = Echo Planar RM = Research Mode Note: Multi-valued, but not all combinations are valid (e.g. SE/GR, etc.).
Sequence Variant	(0018,0021)	1	Variant of the Scanning Sequence. Defined Terms: SK = segmented k-space MTC = magnetization transfer contrast SS = steady state TRSS = time reversed steady state SP = spoiled MP = MAG prepared OSP = oversampling phase NONE = no sequence variant
Scan Options	(0018,0022)	2	Parameters of scanning sequence. Defined Terms: PER = Phase Encode Reordering RG = Respiratory Gating CG = Cardiac Gating PPG = Peripheral Pulse Gating FC = Flow Compensation

			PFF = Partial Fourier - Frequency PFP = Partial Fourier - Phase SP = Spatial Presaturation FS = Fat Saturation
MR Acquisition Type	(0018,0023)	2	Identification of data encoding scheme. Enumerated Values: 2D = frequency x phase 3D = frequency x phase x phase
Repetition Time	(0018,0080)	2C	The period of time in msec between the beginning of a pulse sequence and the beginning of the succeeding (essentially identical) pulse sequence. Required except when Scanning Sequence (0018,0020) is EP and Sequence Variant (0018,0021) is not SK.
Echo Time	(0018,0081)	2	Time in ms between the middle of the excitation pulse and the peak of the echo produced (kx=0). In the case of segmented k-space, the TE(eff) is the time between the middle of the excitation pulse to the peak of the echo that is used to cover the center of k-space (i.e.-kx=0, ky=0).
Echo Train Length	(0018,0091)	2	Number of lines in k-space acquired per excitation per image.
Inversion Time	(0018,0082)	2C	Time in msec after the middle of inverting RF pulse to middle of excitation pulse to detect the amount of longitudinal magnetization. Required if Scanning Sequence (0018,0020) has values of IR.
Trigger Time	(0018,1060)	2C	Time, in msec, between peak of the R wave and the peak of the echo produced. In the case of segmented k-space, the TE(eff) is the time between the peak of the echo that is used to cover the center of k-space. Required for Scan Options (0018,0022) which include heart gating (e.g. CG, PPG, etc.)
Sequence Name	(0018,0024)	3	User defined name for the Scanning Sequence (0018,0020) and Sequence Variant (0018,0021) combination.
Angio Flag	(0018,0025)	3	Angio Image Indicator. Primary image for Angio processing. Enumerated Values: Y = Image is Angio N = Image is not Angio
Number of Averages	(0018,0083)	3	Number of times a given pulse sequence is repeated before any parameter is changed
Imaging Frequency	(0018,0084)	3	Precession frequency in MHz of the nucleus being addressed

Imaged Nucleus	(0018,0085)	3	Nucleus that is resonant at the imaging frequency. Examples: 31P, 1H
Echo Number	(0018,0086)	3	The echo number used in generating this image. In the case of segmented k-space, it is the effective Echo Number.
Magnetic Field Strength	(0018,0087)	3	Nominal field strength of MR magnet, in Tesla
Spacing Between Slices	(0018,0088)	3	Spacing between slices, in mm. The spacing is measured from the center-to-center of each slice.
Number of Phase Encoding Steps	(0018,0089)	3	Total number of lines in k-space in the 'y' direction collected during acquisition.
Percent Sampling	(0018,0093)	3	Fraction of acquisition matrix lines acquired, expressed as a percent.
Percent Phase Field of View	(0018,0094)	3	Ratio of field of view dimension in phase direction to field of view dimension in frequency direction, expressed as a percent.
Pixel Bandwidth	(0018,0095)	3	Reciprocal of the total sampling period, in hertz per pixel.
Nominal Interval	(0018,1062)	3	Average R-R interval used for the scans, in msec
Beat Rejection Flag	(0018,1080)	3	Beat length sorting has been applied. Enumerated Values: Y = yes N = No
Low R-R Value	(0018,1081)	3	R-R interval low limit for beat rejection, in msec
High R-R Value	(0018,1082)	3	R-R interval high limit for beat rejection, in msec
Intervals Acquired	(0018,1083)	3	Number of R-R intervals acquired.
Intervals Rejected	(0018,1084)	3	Number of R-R intervals rejected.
PVC Rejection	(0018,1085)	3	Description of type of PVC rejection criteria used.
Skip Beats	(0018,1086)	3	Number of beats skipped after a detected arrhythmia.
Heart Rate	(0018,1088)	3	Beats per minute.
Cardiac Number of Images	(0018,1090)	3	Number of images per cardiac cycle.
Trigger Window	(0018,1094)	3	Percent of R-R interval, based on Heart Rate (0018,1088), prescribed as a window for a valid/usable trigger.
Reconstruction Diameter	(0018,1100)	3	Diameter in mm. of the region from within which data were used in creating the reconstruction of the image. Data may exist outside this region and portions of the patient may exist outside this region.
Receive Coil Name	(0018,1250)	3	Receive coil used.

Transmit Coil Name	(0018,1251)	3	Transmit coil used.
Acquisition Matrix	(0018,1310)	3	Dimensions of the acquired frequency /phase data before reconstruction. Multi-valued: frequency rows\frequency columns\phase rows\phase columns.
In-plane Phase Encoding Direction	(0018,1312)	3	The axis of phase encoding with respect to the image. Enumerated Values: ROW = phase encoded in rows. COL = phase encoded in columns.
Flip Angle	(0018,1314)	3	Steady state angle in degrees to which the magnetic vector is flipped from the magnetic vector of the primary field.
SAR	(0018,1316)	3	Calculated whole body Specific Absorption Rate in watts/kilogram.
Variable Flip Angle Flag	(0018,1315)	3	Flip angle variation applied during image acquisition. Enumerated Values: Y = yes N = no
dB/dt	(0018,1318)	3	The rate of change of the gradient coil magnetic flux density with time (T/s).
Temporal Position Identifier	(0020,0100)	3	Temporal order of a dynamic or functional set of Images.
Number of Temporal Positions	(0020,0105)	3	Total number of temporal positions prescribed.
Temporal Resolution	(0020,0110)	3	Time delta between Images in a dynamic or functional set of Images.
Include 'General Anatomy Optional Macro' Table 10-7			Defined Context ID for the Anatomic Region Sequence is 4030.

C.8.3.1.1 MR Image Attribute Descriptions

C.8.3.1.1.1 Image Type

For MR Images, Image Type (0008,0008) is specified to be Type 1 and use one of the following Defined Terms for Value 3:

MPR	PROJECTION IMAGE	T1 MAP
T2 MAP	DIFFUSION MAP	DENSITY MAP
PHASE MAP	VELOCITY MAP	IMAGE ADDITION
PHASE SUBTRACT	MODULUS SUBTRACT	OTHER

C.8.3.1.1.2 Samples Per Pixel

For MR Images, Samples per Pixel (0028,0002) shall have an Enumerated Value of 1.

C.8.3.1.1.3 Photometric Interpretation

For MR Images, Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) shall have one of the following Enumerated Values:

MONOCHROME1

MONOCHROME2

See C.7.6.3.1.2 for definition of these terms.

C.8.3.1.1.4 Bits Allocated

For MR Images, Bits Allocated (0028,0100) shall have the Enumerated Value of 16.

C.8.4 Nuclear Medicine Modules

This Section describes Nuclear Medicine Series, Equipment, and Image Modules. These Modules contain Attributes that are specific to the NM Image IOD.

Note: There are some cases where it may be necessary to use several SOP Instances to encode a single NM acquisition. For example, the matrix size must remain constant within a SOP instance. Multiple matrix sizes require multiple SOP instances. Similarly, multiple gated stress levels require separate SOP instances for each stress level. However, a receiving AE is not expected to recombine them.

C.8.4.1 NM Series Module (Retired)

Section C.8.4.1 was defined in a previous version of the DICOM Standard. The Section is now retired.

C.8.4.2 NM Equipment Module (Retired)

Section C.8.4.2 was defined in a previous version of the DICOM Standard. The Section is now retired.

C.8.4.3 NM Image Module (Retired)

Section C.8.4.3 was defined in a previous version of the DICOM Standard. The Section is now retired.

C.8.4.4 NM SPECT Acquisition Image Module (Retired)

Section C.8.4.4 was defined in a previous version of the DICOM Standard. The Section is now retired.

C.8.4.5 NM Multi-gated Acquisition Image Module (Retired)

Section C.8.4.5 was defined in a previous version of the DICOM Standard. The Section is now retired.

C.8.4.6 NM/PET Patient Orientation Module

Table C.8-5 specifies the Attributes that describe the NM/PET Patient Orientation.

Table C.8-5
NM/PET PATIENT ORIENTATION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Patient Orientation Code Sequence	(0054,0410)	2	Sequence that describes the orientation of the patient with respect to gravity. See C.8.4.6.1.1 for further explanation.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*Baseline Context ID is 19.* *The Coding Scheme Designator (0008,0102) shall have an Enumerated Value of "99SDM" for historical reasons.* *Code Meaning (0008,0104) shall be Type 3 for historical reasons.*
> Patient Orientation Modifier Code Sequence	(0054,0412)	2C	Patient Orientation Modifier. Required if needed to fully specify the orientation of the patient with respect to gravity. See C.8.4.6.1.2 for further explanation.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*Baseline Context ID is 20.* *The Coding Scheme Designator (0008,0102) shall have an Enumerated Value of "99SDM" for historical reasons.* *Code Meaning (0008,0104) shall be Type 3 for historical reasons.*
Patient Gantry Relationship Code Sequence	(0054,0414)	2	Sequence which describes the orientation of the patient with respect to the gantry. See Section C.8.4.6.1.3 for further explanation.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*Baseline Context ID is 21.* *The Coding Scheme Designator (0008,0102) shall have an Enumerated Value of "99SDM" for historical reasons.* *Code Meaning (0008,0104) shall be Type 3 for historical reasons.*

C.8.4.6.1 NM/PET Patient Orientation Attribute Descriptions

C.8.4.6.1.1 Patient Orientation Code Sequence

The Patient Orientation Code Sequence (0054,0410) is used to describe the orientation of the patient with respect to gravity, and is independent of the position in the gantry. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.

C.8.4.6.1.2 Patient Orientation Modifier Code Sequence

The Patient Orientation Modifier Code Sequence (0054,0412) is used to modify or enhance the orientation specified by Patient Orientation Code Sequence (0054,0410). Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.

C.8.4.6.1.3 Patient Gantry Relationship Code Sequence

Patient Gantry Relationship Code Sequence (0054,0414) is used to describe the patient direction within the gantry, such as head-first or feet-first. When imaging the extremities, these directions are related to normal anatomic position.

Example: In normal anatomic position, the fingers point towards the feet.

Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.

C.8.4.7 NM Image Pixel Module

Table C.8-6 specifies the Attributes that describe the pixel data of a NM image.

Table C.8-6
NM IMAGE PIXEL MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Samples per Pixel	(0028,0002)	1	Number of samples (color planes) in this image. The value shall be 1.
Photometric Interpretation	(0028,0004)	1	Specifies the intended interpretation of the pixel data. See C.8.4.7.1.1 for further explanation.
Bits Allocated	(0028,0100)	1	Number of bits allocated for each pixel sample. Each sample shall have the same number of bits allocated. Enumerated Values: 8, 16.
Bits Stored	(0028,0101)	1	Number of bits stored for each pixel sample. Each sample shall have the same number of bits stored. The value shall be the same as the value in Bits Allocated (0028,0100).
High Bit	(0028,0102)	1	Most significant bit for pixel sample data. Each sample shall have the same high bit. Shall be one less than the value in Bits Stored (0028,0101).
Pixel Spacing	(0028,0030)	2	Physical distance in the patient between the center of each pixel, specified by a numeric pair - adjacent row spacing (delimiter) adjacent column spacing, in mm. See 10.7.1.3 for further explanation of the value order.

C.8.4.7.1 NM Image Pixel Attribute Descriptions

C.8.4.7.1.1 Photometric Interpretation

For NM Images, Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) shall have one of the following Enumerated Values:

MONOCHROME2
PALETTE COLOR

See C.7.6.3.1.2 for definition of these terms.

C.8.4.8 NM Multi-frame Module

Table C.8-7 specifies the Attributes of a NM Multi-frame Image. This module is always included in a NM SOP instance, even if there is only one frame in the image.

A NM Image object is always a multi-dimensional multi-frame image. The order and organization of the frames within each image is defined by the Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009). The Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) references one or more indexing vectors. An indexing vector is a 1 dimensional array with exactly one element for each frame in the image. The value of the n^{th} element in the indexing vector represents the index for the n^{th} frame, in that dimension. Indices are always numbered starting from 1.

Note: The scheme for encoding a multi-dimensional array of frames into a single image object is as follows. First, the definition of the data element called the Frame Increment Pointer is changed so that it can be multi-valued (i.e. its VM is now 1-n). Each value of the Frame Increment Pointer represents one of the dimensions of the array, with the last value representing the most rapidly changing index.

Each value of the Frame Increment Pointer is the tag of a data element which is an indexing vector. An indexing vector is a 1 dimensional array with exactly one element for each frame in the image. The value of the n^{th} element in the indexing vector represents the index for the n^{th} frame, in that dimension. For example, suppose you are encoding a Dynamic image consisting of 2 phases (containing 5 and 2 frames, respectively), from each of two detectors, using one isotope, which gives a total of 14 frames in the image. For a Dynamic image, the Frame Increment Pointer is defined as:

Frame Increment Pointer = Energy Window Vector (0054,0010) \ Detector Vector (0054,0020) \ Phase Vector (0054,0030) \ Time Slice Vector (0054,0100)

The Pixel Data (7FE0,0010) would contain the frames in the following order:

Frame	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
Energy Window #	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Detector #	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
Phase #	1	1	1	1	1	2	2	1	1	1	1	1	2	2
Time Slice #	1	2	3	4	5	1	2	1	2	3	4	5	1	2

and the four vectors would be defined as:

Energy Window Vector = 1,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,1
Detector Vector = 1,1,1,1,1,1,1,2,2,2,2,2,2,2
Phase Vector = 1,1,1,1,1,2,2,1,1,1,1,1,2,2
Time Slice Vector = 1,2,3,4,5,1,2,1,2,3,4,5,1,2

The receiver can tell the relationship of all the frames from these four vectors. For instance, looking at the 11^{th} value in these four vectors tells you that the 11^{th} frame in this multi-frame object is time slice 4 of phase 1 from detector 2 and isotope 1.

The Energy Window, Detector, Phase, Rotation, R-R Interval, and Time Slot Vectors have corresponding sequence elements which contain exactly one sequence item for each of the index values in the vector. The sequence item contains a set of data elements which are specific to that group of frames, but change from one group to the next. In the above example there would be a detector sequence element, an isotope sequence element and a phase sequence element (for dynamics, no frame sequence element is needed). The detector and phase sequence elements would contain two sequence items (because there were 2 detectors and 2 phases).

Table C.8-7
NM MULTI-FRAME MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Frame Increment Pointer	(0028,0009)	1	Contains the Data Element Tags of one or more frame index vectors. See C.8.4.8.1.1 for further specialization.
Energy Window Vector	(0054,0010)	1C	An array which contains the energy window number for each frame. Required if the value of the Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) includes the Tag for Energy Window Vector (0054,0010). See C.8.4.8.1.2 for specialization.
Number of Energy Windows	(0054,0011)	1	Number of energy window groupings. See C.8.4.8.1.2 for specialization.
Detector Vector	(0054,0020)	1C	An array which contains the detector number for each frame. Required if the value of the Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) includes the Tag for Detector Vector (0054,0020). See C.8.4.8.1.3 for specialization.
Number of Detectors	(0054,0021)	1	Number of detectors. See C.8.4.8.1.3 for specialization.
Phase Vector	(0054,0030)	1C	An array which contains the phase number for each frame. Required if the value of the Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) includes the Tag for Phase Vector (0054,0030). See C.8.4.8.1.4 for specialization.
Number of Phases	(0054,0031)	1C	Number of phases. Required if the value of the Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) includes the Tag for Phase Vector (0054,0030). See C.8.4.8.1.4 for specialization.
Rotation Vector	(0054,0050)	1C	An array which contains the rotation number for each frame. Required if the value of the Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) includes the Tag for Rotation Vector (0054,0050). See C.8.4.8.1.5 for specialization.
Number of Rotations	(0054,0051)	1C	Number of rotations. Required if Image Type (0008,0008), Value 3 is TOMO, GATED TOMO, RECON TOMO, or RECON GATED TOMO. See C.8.4.8.1.5 for specialization.

R-R Interval Vector	(0054,0060)	1C	An array which contains the R-R interval number for each frame. Required if the value of the Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) includes the Tag for R-R Interval Vector (0054,0060). See C.8.4.8.1.6 for specialization.
Number of R-R Intervals	(0054,0061)	1C	Number of R-R intervals. Required if the value of the Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) includes the Tag for R-R Interval Vector (0054,0060). See C.8.4.8.1.6 for specialization.
Time Slot Vector	(0054,0070)	1C	An array which contains the time slot number for each frame. Required if the value of the Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) includes the Tag for Time Slot Vector (0054,0070). See C.8.4.8.1.7 for specialization.
Number of Time Slots	(0054,0071)	1C	Number of time slots. Required if the value of the Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) includes the Tag for Time Slot Vector (0054,0070). See C.8.4.8.1.7 for specialization.
Slice Vector	(0054,0080)	1C	An array which contains the spatial slice number for each frame. Required if the value of the Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) includes the Tag for Slice Vector (0054,0080). See C.8.4.8.1.8 for specialization.
Number of Slices	(0054,0081)	1C	Number of slices. Required if the value of the Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) includes the Tag for Slice Vector (0054,0080). See C.8.4.8.1.8 for specialization.
Angular View Vector	(0054,0090)	1C	An array which contains the angular view number for each frame. Required if the value of the Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) includes the Tag for Angular View Vector (0054,0090). See C.8.4.8.1.9 for specialization.
Time Slice Vector	(0054,0100)	1C	An array which contains the time slice number for each frame. Required if the value of the Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) includes the Tag for Time Slice Vector (0054,0100). See C.8.4.8.1.10 for specialization.

Note: Per the rules in PS 3.5, if a data element of Type 1C or 2C is not required, it shall not be included.

C.8.4.8.1 NM Multi-Frame Attribute Descriptions

C.8.4.8.1.1 Frame Increment Pointer

By definition, NM Images are multi-dimensional Multi-frame Images. The value of the Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) contains the Tag for one or more frame indexing vectors. This determines the number of dimensions of frame indices in the image, and the order in which these indices vary from one frame to the next, with the last Tag indicating the most rapidly changing index. The Enumerated Values for the Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) are determined by the Image Type (0008,0008), Value 3, as shown in Table C.8-8.

Table C.8-8
ENUMERATED VALUES FOR FRAME INCREMENT POINTER

Image Type (0008,0008), Value 3	Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009)
STATIC or WHOLE BODY	0054H 0010H \ 0054H 0020H Sequencing is by Energy Window Vector (0054,0010), Detector Vector (0054,0020).
DYNAMIC	0054H 0010H \ 0054H 0020H \ 0054H 0030H \ 0054H 0100H Sequencing is by Energy Window Vector (0054,0010), Detector Vector (0054,0020), Phase Vector (0054,0030), Time Slice Vector (0054,0100)
GATED	0054H 0010H \ 0054H 0020H \ 0054H 0060H \ 0054H 0070H Sequencing is by Energy Window Vector (0054,0010), Detector Vector (0054,0020), R-R Interval Vector(0054,0060), Time Slot Vector (0054,0070)
TOMO	0054H 0010H \ 0054H 0020H \ 0054H 0050H \ 0054H 0090H Sequencing is by Energy Window Vector (0054,0010), Detector Vector (0054,0020), Rotation Vector (0054,0050), Angular View Vector (0054,0090)
GATED TOMO	0054H 0010H \ 0054H 0020H \ 0054H 0050H \ 0054H 0060H \ 0054H 0070H \ 0054H 0090H Sequencing is by Energy Window Vector (0054,0010), Detector Vector (0054,0020), Rotation Vector (0054,0050), R-R Interval Vector (0054,0060), Time Slot Vector (0054,0070), Angular View Vector (0054,0090).
RECON TOMO	0054H 0080H Sequencing is by Slice Vector (0054,0080)
RECON GATED TOMO	0054H 0060H \ 0054H 0070H \ 0054H 0080H Sequencing is by R-R Interval Vector (0054,0060), Time Slot Vector (0054,0070), Slice Vector (0054,0080)

C.8.4.8.1.2 Number of Energy Windows and Energy Window Vector

Number of Energy Windows (0054,0011) is the number of distinct energy window groupings acquired in this image. See C.8.4.10.1. When Image Type (0008,0008), Value 3, is RECON TOMO or RECON GATED TOMO, then the Number of Energy Windows (0054,0011) shall be 1.

Energy Window Vector (0054,0010) is an indexing vector. The value of the n^{th} element of this vector is the energy window number for the n^{th} frame in this image, and shall have a value from 1 to Number of Energy Windows (0054,0011).

C.8.4.8.1.3 Number of Detectors and Detector Vector

Number of Detectors (0054,0021) is the number of separate detectors which differentiate the frames in this image. When Image Type (0008,0008), Value 3, is RECON TOMO or RECON GATED TOMO, then the Number of Detectors (0054,0021) shall be 1.

Note: Number of Detectors (0054,0021) does not necessarily represent the actual number of detectors used during data acquisition.

Example 1: In a TOMO acquisition in which frames from 2 or more detectors are interleaved to form one continuous set of frames, then no distinction is made between frames on the basis of which detector created them. In this case, the Number of Detectors (0054,0021) would be 1.

Example 2: In a WHOLE BODY acquisition in which a single detector acquires anterior and posterior views in two separate passes, the Number of Detectors (0054,0021) would be 2.

Detector Vector (0054,0020) is an indexing vector. The value of the n^{th} element of this vector is the detector number of the n^{th} frame in this image, and shall have a value from 1 to Number of Detectors (0054,0021).

C.8.4.8.1.4 Number of Phases and Phase Vector

Number of Phases (0054,0031) is the number of dynamic phases, independent of the number of Detectors and Isotopes. See Section C.8.4.14 for definition of a phase.

Phase Vector (0054,0030) is an indexing vector. The value of the n^{th} element of this vector is the phase number of the n^{th} frame in this image, and shall have a value from 1 to Number of Phases (0054,0031).

C.8.4.8.1.5 Number of Rotations and Rotation Vector

Number of Rotations (0054,0051) is the number of separate rotations. See Section C.8.4.12 for definition of a rotation. When Image Type (0008,0008), Value 3, is RECON TOMO, GATED TOMO or RECON GATED TOMO, then the Number of Rotations (0054,0051) shall be 1.

Rotation Vector (0054,0050) is an indexing vector. The value of the n^{th} element of this vector is the rotation number of the n^{th} frame in this image, and shall have a value from 1 to Number of Rotations (0054,0051).

C.8.4.8.1.6 Number of R-R Intervals and R-R Interval Vector

Number of R-R Intervals (0054,0061) is the number of ranges of heartbeat durations collected. A gated acquisition may employ one R-R Interval to collect data from normal beats, a second R-R Interval to collect data from ectopic beats, and possibly others. Each R-R Interval accepts beats whose duration is greater than its Low R-R Value (0018,1081) and shorter than its High R-R Value (0018,1082). Beats which do not fall within these ranges may be accepted by another R-R Interval, or may be rejected.

The Number of R-R Intervals (0054,0061) is the total number of such ranges.

R-R Interval Vector (0054,0060) is an indexing vector. The value of the n^{th} element of this vector is the interval number of the n^{th} frame in this image, and shall have a value from 1 to Number of R-R Intervals (0054,0061).

C.8.4.8.1.7 Number of Time Slots and Time Slot Vector

Number of Time Slots (0054,0071) is the number of frames into which each gating event is divided in a gated acquisition. For example, in a cardiac gated acquisition, data from a number of heartbeats are then combined by summing together the first frames from all beats into a summed first frame, all the second frames into a summed second frame, and so on. The result has the same number of frames as the Number of Time Slots in each beat.

Time Slot Vector (0054,0070) is an indexing vector. The value of the n^{th} element of this vector is the time slot number of the n^{th} frame in this image, and shall have a value from 1 to Number of Time Slots (0054,0071).

C.8.4.8.1.8 Number of Slices and Slice Vector

Number of Slices (0054,0081) is the number of slices in each separate volume.

Note: For images with Image Type (0008,0008), Value 3, equal to RECON GATED TOMO this implies that Number of Slices (0054,0081) is the same for all R-R Intervals and Time Slots.

Slice Vector (0054,0080) is an indexing vector. The value of the n^{th} element of this vector is the slice number of the n^{th} frame in this image, and shall have a value from 1 to Number of Slices (0054,0081).

C.8.4.8.1.9 Angular View Vector

Angular View Vector (0054,0090) is an indexing vector. The value of the n^{th} element of this vector is the angular view number of the n^{th} frame in this image. If Image Type (0008,0008), Value 3, is TOMO or GATED TOMO, then the value shall be from 1 to Number of Frames in Rotation (0054,0053).

C.8.4.8.1.10 Time Slice Vector

Time Slice Vector (0054,0100) is an indexing vector. The value of the n^{th} element of this vector is the time slice number of the n^{th} frame in this image, and shall have a value from 1 to Number of Frames in Phase (0054,0033).

C.8.4.9 NM Image Module

Table C.8-9 contains the Attributes that describe Nuclear Medicine Images.

Table C.8-9
NM IMAGE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Image Type	(0008,0008)	1	Image identification characteristics. See C.8.4.9.1.1 for specialization.
Image ID	(0054,0400)	3	User or equipment generated Image identifier.
Lossy Image Compression	(0028,2110)	1C	Specifies whether an Image has undergone lossy compression. Enumerated Values: 00 = Image has NOT been subjected to lossy compression. 01 = Image has been subjected to lossy compression. See C.7.6.1.1.5 Required if Lossy Compression has been performed on the Image.
Counts Accumulated	(0018,0070)	2	Sum of all gamma events for all frames in the image. See C.8.4.9.1.2 for specialization.
Acquisition Termination Condition	(0018,0071)	3	Description of how the data collection was stopped. Defined Terms: CNTS = counts DENS = density MANU = manual OVFL = data overflow TIME = time TRIG = physiological trigger See C.8.4.9.1.3 for specialization.
Table Height	(0018,1130)	3	The height of the patient table in mm. The range and values of this element are determined by the manufacturer. Should not be included if Image Type (0008,0008), Value 3, is TOMO, GATED TOMO, RECON TOMO or RECON GATED TOMO.
Table Traverse	(0018,1131)	3	Location of the patient table (or gantry relative to the table) in mm. The range and values of this element are determined by the manufacturer. Should not be included if Image Type (0008,0008), Value 3, is TOMO, GATED TOMO, RECON TOMO or

			RECON GATED TOMO.
Actual Frame Duration	(0018,1242)	1C	Elapsed time for data acquisition in msec. Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 3 is: WHOLE BODY or STATIC. See C.8.4.9.1.4 for specialization.
Count Rate	(0018,1243)	3	Maximum count rate achieved during the acquisition in counts/sec.
Processing Function	(0018,5020)	3	Code or description of processing functions applied to the data.
Corrected Image	(0028,0051)	3	A value that indicates which, if any, corrections have been applied to the image. Corrections are applied to all frames in the image. Defined Terms: UNIF = flood corrected COR = center of rotation corrected NCO = non-circular orbit corrected DECY = decay corrected ATTN = attenuation corrected SCAT = scatter corrected DTIM = dead time corrected NRGY = energy corrected LIN = linearity corrected MOTN = motion corrected CLN = count loss normalization; Any type of normalization applied to correct for count loss in Time Slots.
Whole Body Technique	(0018,1301)	3	The type of scan performed. Used only if Image Type (0008,0008), Value 3, contains the value WHOLE BODY. Enumerated Values: 1PS = one pass 2PS = two pass PCN = patient contour following employed MSP = multiple static frames collected into a whole body frame.
Scan Velocity	(0018,1300)	2C	The speed of the camera motion over the body in mm/sec. Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 3 contains the value WHOLE BODY.
Scan Length	(0018,1302)	2C	Size of the imaged area in the direction of scanning motion, in mm. Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 3 contains the value WHOLE BODY.
Trigger Source or Type	(0018,1061)	3	Text indicating trigger source. Defined Term: EKG

Include 'General Anatomy Optional Macro' Table 10-7	No Context ID for the Anatomic Region Sequence is defined.

Notes: 1. Content Date (0008,0023) and Content Time (0008,0033) are included in the General Image Module, Table C.7-7, whenever the images are temporally related. For this purpose, all NM Images are considered temporally related, so that these elements are included in an NM Image.

2. Referenced Overlay Sequence (0008,1130) and Referenced Curve Sequence (0008,1145) were previously included in this Module as optional Attributes but have been retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.8.4.9.1 NM Image Module Attribute Descriptions

C.8.4.9.1.1 Image Type

For NM images, Image Type (0008,0008) Value 3 is specified to be Type 1 and use one of the following Enumerated Values:

STATIC
DYNAMIC
GATED
WHOLE BODY
TOMO
GATED TOMO
RECON TOMO
RECON GATED TOMO

For NM images, Image Type (0008,0008) Value 4 is specified to use one of the following Enumerated Values:

EMISSION
TRANSMISSION

Note: For NM images, Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 will be ORIGINAL for all raw data and reconstructed images. DERIVED may be appropriate for some other results images.

For NM images, Image Type (0008,0008) Value 2 will be PRIMARY.

C.8.4.9.1.2 Counts Accumulated

Counts Accumulated (0018,0070) is the total of all gamma events accumulated in all frames of this Image. This attribute applies to acquisition data, and often does not apply to processed images (DERIVED, SECONDARY).

C.8.4.9.1.3 Acquisition Termination Condition

Acquisition Termination Condition (0018,0071) is the method of acquisition termination which was actually applied to the data collection. The Defined Terms and definitions are:

CNTS	=	preset count limit was reached
DENS	=	preset count density was reached
MANU	=	acquisition was terminated manually
OVFL	=	acquisition was terminated automatically by pixel data overflow condition
TIME	=	preset time limit was reached
TRIG	=	preset number of physiological triggers was reached

C.8.4.9.1.4 Actual Frame Duration

Actual Frame Duration (0018,1242) is defined as the elapsed time in msec for a single frame of an acquisition. For some types of multi-frame images, Actual Frame Duration (0018,1242) may have a more specialized meaning as defined in the appropriate IOD Module.

C.8.4.10 NM Isotope Module

Table C.8-10 contains Attributes that describe the isotope administered for the acquisition.

Table C.8-10
NM ISOTOPE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Energy Window Information Sequence	(0054,0012)	2	Sequence of Repeating Items that describe the energy window groups used. The number of items shall be equal to Number of Energy Windows (0054,0011). The first item corresponds to frames with value of 1 in the Energy Window Vector (0054,0010), the second item with value 2, etc.
>Energy Window Name	(0054,0018)	3	A user defined name which describes this Energy Window.
>Energy Window Range Sequence	(0054,0013)	3	Sequence of Repeating Items that describes this energy window group.
>>Energy Window Lower Limit	(0054,0014)	3	The lower limit of the energy window in KeV. See C.8.4.10.1.1 for further explanation.
>>Energy Window Upper Limit	(0054,0015)	3	The upper limit of the energy window in KeV. See C.8.4.10.1.2 for further explanation.
Radiopharmaceutical Information Sequence	(0054,0016)	2	Sequence of Repeating Items that describe isotope information. Zero or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>Radionuclide Code Sequence	(0054,0300)	2C	Sequence that identifies the radionuclide. This sequence shall contain exactly one item. Required if a sequence Item is present.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 18.* *The Coding Scheme Designator (0008,0102) shall have an Enumerated Value of "99SDM" for historical reasons.* *Code Meaning (0008,0104) shall be Type 3 for historical reasons.*	
>Radiopharmaceutical Route	(0018,1070)	3	Route of injection.
>Administration Route Code Sequence	(0054,0302)	3	Sequence that identifies the administration route for the radiopharmaceutical. This sequence shall contain exactly one item.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 11.*	

		Code Meaning (0008,0104) shall be Type 3 for historical reasons.	
>Radiopharmaceutical Volume	(0018,1071)	3	Volume of injection in cubic cm.
>Radiopharmaceutical Start Time	(0018,1072)	3	Time of start of injection. See C.8.4.10.1.5 for further explanation.
>Radiopharmaceutical Stop Time	(0018,1073)	3	Time of end of injection. See C.8.4.10.1.6 for further explanation.
>Radionuclide Total Dose	(0018,1074)	3	Total amount of radionuclide injected. See C.8.4.10.1.7 for further explanation.
>Calibration Data Sequence	(0054,0306)	3	Sequence that contains calibration data.
>>Energy Window Number	(0054,0308)	1C	The Item number in the Energy Window Information Sequence to which the following calibration data relates. The Items are numbered starting from 1. Required if a sequence Item is present.
>>Syringe Counts	(0018,1045)	3	Pre-injection syringe count rate in counts/sec. See C.8.4.10.1.8 for further explanation.
>>Residual Syringe Counts	(0054,0017)	3	Post-injection residue syringe count rate in counts/sec. See C.8.4.10.1.9 for further explanation.
>Radiopharmaceutical	(0018,0031)	3	Name of the radiopharmaceutical.
>Radiopharmaceutical Code Sequence	(0054,0304)	3	Sequence that identifies the radiopharmaceutical. This sequence shall contain exactly one item.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 25.* *Code Meaning (0008,0104) shall be Type 3 for historical reasons.*	
Intervention Drug Information Sequence	(0018,0026)	3	Sequence of Repeating Items that describes the intervention drugs used. Zero or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>Intervention Drug Name	(0018,0034)	3	Name of intervention drug.
>Intervention Drug Code Sequence	(0018,0029)	3	Sequence that identifies the intervention drug name.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 10.* *Code Meaning (0008,0104) shall be Type 3 for historical reasons.*	
>Administration Route Code Sequence	(0054,0302)	3	Sequence that identifies the administration route for the intervention drug. This sequence shall contain exactly one item.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 11.* *Code Meaning (0008,0104) shall be Type 3 for historical reasons.*	
>Intervention Drug Start Time	(0018,0035)	3	Time of administration of the intervention drug, using the same time base as for the Acquisition Start Time (0008,0032).

>Intervention Drug Stop Time	(0018,0027)	3	Time of completion of administration of the intervention drug, using the same time base as for the Acquisition Start Time (0008,0032).
>Intervention Drug Dose	(0018,0028)	3	Intervention drug dose, in mg.

C.8.4.10.1 NM Isotope Module Attribute Descriptions

C.8.4.10.1.1 Energy Window Lower Limit

Energy Window Lower Limit (0054,0014) is the acquisition energy window lower limit in KeV for acceptance of scintillation events into this Isotope.

C.8.4.10.1.2 Energy Window Upper Limit

Energy Window Upper Limit (0054,0015) is the acquisition energy window upper limit in KeV for acceptance of scintillation events into this Isotope.

C.8.4.10.1.3 (Retired)

C.8.4.10.1.4 (Retired)

C.8.4.10.1.5 Radiopharmaceutical Start Time

Radiopharmaceutical Start Time (0018,1072) is the actual time of radiopharmaceutical administration to the patient for imaging purposes, using the same time base as for the Acquisition Start Time (0008,0032).

C.8.4.10.1.6 Radiopharmaceutical Stop Time

Radiopharmaceutical Stop Time (0018,1073) is the actual ending time of radiopharmaceutical administration to the patient for imaging purposes, using the same time base as for the Acquisition Start Time (0008,0032).

C.8.4.10.1.7 Radionuclide Total Dose

Radionuclide Total Dose (0018,1074) is the radiopharmaceutical dose administered to the patient measured in MegaBecquerels (Mbq) at the Radiopharmaceutical Start Time.

C.8.4.10.1.8 Syringe Counts

Syringe Counts (0018,1045) is the pre-injection syringe acquisition count rate measured in counts/sec, corrected to the Acquisition Start Time (0008,0032) if necessary.

C.8.4.10.1.9 Residual Syringe Counts

Residual Syringe Counts (0054,0017) is the syringe acquisition count rate following patient injection, measured in counts/sec, corrected to the Acquisition Start Time (0008,0032) if necessary.

C.8.4.10.1.10 (Retired)

C.8.4.10.1.11 (Retired)

C.8.4.11 NM Detector Module

Table C.8-11 contains IOD Attributes that describe Nuclear Medicine Detectors used to produce an image.

Table C.8-11
NM DETECTOR MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Detector Information Sequence	(0054,0022)	2	Sequence of Repeating Items that describe the detectors used. The number of items shall be equal to Number of Detectors (0054,0021). The first item corresponds to frames with value of 1 in the Detector Vector (0054,0020), the second item with value 2, etc.
>Collimator/Grid Name	(0018,1180)	3	Label describing the collimator used (LEAP, hires, etc.)
>Collimator Type	(0018,1181)	2C	Collimator type. Defined Terms: PARA = Parallel (default) PINH = Pinhole FANB = Fan-beam CONE = Cone-beam SLNT = Slant hole ASTG = Astigmatic DIVG = Diverging NONE = No collimator UNKN = Unknown Required if a sequence Item is present.
>Field of View Shape	(0018,1147)	3	Shape of the field of view of the Nuclear Medicine detector. Defined Terms: RECTANGLE ROUND HEXAGONAL
>Field of View Dimension(s)	(0018,1149)	3	Dimensions of the field of view, in mm. If Field of View Shape (0018,1147) is: RECTANGLE: row dimension followed by column. ROUND: diameter. HEXAGONAL: diameter of a circumscribed circle.
>Focal Distance	(0018,1182)	2C	Focal distance, in mm. A value of 0 means infinite distance for parallel collimation. See C.8.4.11.1.1 for further specialization. Required if a sequence Item is present.
>X Focus Center	(0018,1183)	3	Center of focus along a row. See C.8.4.11.1.2 for further explanation.
>Y Focus Center	(0018,1184)	3	Center of focus along a column. See C.8.4.11.1.2 for further explanation.

>Zoom Center	(0028,0032)	3	The amount of offset from (0,0) applied to each pixel in the image before application of the zoom factor, specified by a numeric pair: row value (delimiter) column value (in mm). See C.8.4.11.1.3 for further explanation.
>Zoom Factor	(0028,0031)	3	The amount of magnification applied to each pixel in the image, specified by a numeric pair: row value (delimiter) column value. See C.8.4.11.1.4 for further explanation.
>Center of Rotation Offset	(0018,1145)	3	Average center of rotation offset of Nuclear Medicine detector in mm. See C.8.4.11.1.5 for further explanation.
>Gantry/Detector Tilt	(0018,1120)	3	Angle of tilt in degrees of the detector. See C.8.4.11.1.6 for further explanation.
>Distance Source to Detector	(0018,1110)	2C	Distance in mm from transmission source to the detector face. Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 4 is TRANSMISSION, Value 3 is not TOMO, and a sequence Item is present.
>Start Angle	(0054,0200)	3	Position of the detector about the patient for the start of the acquisition, in degrees. Zero degrees is referenced to the origin at the patient's back. Viewing from the patient's feet, angle increases in a counter-clockwise direction (detector normal rotating from the patient's back towards the patient's left side). Should not be included if Image Type (0008,0008), Value 3, is TOMO, GATED TOMO, RECON TOMO or RECON GATED TOMO.
> Radial Position	(0018,1142)	3	Radial distance of the detector from the center of rotation, in mm. Should not be included if Image Type (0008,0008), Value 3, is TOMO, GATED TOMO, RECON TOMO or RECON GATED TOMO.
>Image Orientation (Patient)	(0020,0037)	2C	The direction cosines of the first row and the first column with respect to the patient. See C.7.6.2.1.1 for further explanation. Required if a sequence Item is present.
>Image Position (Patient)	(0020,0032)	2C	The x, y, and z coordinates of the upper left hand corner (center of the first voxel transmitted) of the image, in mm. See C.7.6.2.1.1 for further explanation. Required if a sequence Item is present.

>View Code Sequence	(0054,0220)	3	Sequence that describes the projection of the anatomic region of interest on the image receptor. See Section C.8.4.11.1.7 for further explanation.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 26 .* *Code Meaning (0008,0104) shall be Type 3 for historical reasons.*	
>>View Modifier Code Sequence	(0054,0222)	2C	View Modifier. Required if needed to fully specify the View. See Section C.8.4.11.1.8 for further explanation.
>>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 23.* *Code Meaning (0008,0104) shall be Type 3 for historical reasons.*	

C.8.4.11.1 NM Detector Attribute Descriptions

C.8.4.11.1.1 Focal Distance

Focal Distance (0018,1182) for NM Image data is the focal distance, in mm for converging or diverging collimators, measured from the front face of the detector to the focus. Positive values indicate converging and negative values indicate diverging collimators. A value of 0 means infinite distance for parallel collimation.

C.8.4.11.1.2 Focus Center

X Focus Center (0018,1183) and Y Focus Center (0018,1184) for NM Image data is used to define the projection of the focus for a converging or diverging collimator within the un-zoomed Field of View. It is defined in mm for row and column relative to the center of the un-zoomed Field of View.

C.8.4.11.1.3 Zoom Center

Zoom Center (0028,0032) is the offset between the un-zoomed camera field of view and field of view, measured from the center of the un-zoomed camera field of view to the center the of the zoomed field of view. The offset is measured in mm in the un-zoomed camera FOV dimensions. Positive values are to the right and down from the un-zoomed center, as viewed from the image plane. When this attribute is not given, the Zoom Center is assumed to be 0\0.

C.8.4.11.1.4 Zoom Factor

Zoom Factor (0028,0031) is the magnification factor that was used during the acquisition. When this attribute is not given, it is assumed to be 1.0\1.0.

Note: Zoom Factor (0028,0031) is informational only. Pixel Spacing (0028,0030) already takes account of this and any other changes to pixel size.

C.8.4.11.1.5 Center of Rotation Offset

Center of Rotation Offset (0018,1145) is the average amount of offset in mm between the Detector Field of View center and the physical center of rotation of the gantry for circular orbital scans. Positive values indicate the physical center is to the right of the image plane center.

If:

1) Image Type (0008,0008) Value 3 is TOMO or GATED TOMO, and
2) Corrected Image (0028,0051) does not include the value "COR", and

3) Center of Rotation Offset (0018,1145) is non-zero,

then the receiver should assume that Center of Rotation correction has not already been done.

If the Center of Rotation Offset is zero, no correction shall be applied.

C.8.4.11.1.6 Gantry/Detector Tilt

Gantry/Detector Tilt (0018,1120) for NM Image data is the angle in degrees of the detector face relative to the patient's major (Head to Feet) axis (or the table supporting the patient). Positive tilt is towards the patient's feet.

C.8.4.11.1.7 View Code Sequence

Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.

C.8.4.11.1.8 View Modifier Code Sequence

Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.

C.8.4.12 NM TOMO Acquisition Module

This Module applies to a TOMO Multi-frame Image. This module is present when the Image Type (0008,0008) Value 3, is equal to TOMO, GATED TOMO, RECON TOMO, or RECON GATED TOMO. The elements found in this module describe the acquisition of the Image.

Table C.8-12
NM TOMO ACQUISITION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Rotation Information Sequence	(0054,0052)	2	Sequence of Repeating Items that describe TOMO rotational groups. A new rotation is defined whenever the direction of the detector motion changes, or the Table Traverse (0018,1131) changes. The number of items shall be equal to Number of Rotations (0054,0051). If Rotation Vector (0054,0050) is present, the first item corresponds to frames with value of 1 in the Rotation Vector (0054,0050), the second item with value 2, etc.
>Start Angle	(0054,0200)	1C	Position of the detector about the patient for the start of this rotation, in degrees. Zero degrees is referenced to the origin at the patient's back. Viewing from the patient's feet, angle increases in a counter-clockwise direction (detector normal rotating from the patient's back towards the patient's left side). Required if a sequence Item is present.
>Angular Step	(0018,1144)	1C	The angular scan arc step between views of the TOMO acquisition, in degrees. See C.8.4.12.1.1 for further explanation. Required if a sequence Item is present.
>Rotation Direction	(0018,1140)	1C	Direction of rotation of the detector about the patient. See Start Angle (0054,0200) for further explanation of direction. Enumerated Values:

			CW = clockwise (decreasing angle) CC = counter-clockwise (increasing angle). Required if a sequence Item is present.
>Scan Arc	(0018,1143)	1C	The effective angular range of the scan data in degrees. The value shall be positive. Required if a sequence Item is present.
>Actual Frame Duration	(0018,1242)	1C	Nominal acquisition time per angular position, in msec. Required if a sequence Item is present.
>Radial Position	(0018,1142)	3	Radial distance of the detector from the center of rotation, in mm. It shall have a single value which is an average value for this rotation, or it shall have one value per angular view.
>Distance Source to Detector	(0018,1110)	2C	Distance in mm from transmission source to the detector face. Required if Image Type (0008,0008), Value 4, is TRANSMISSION and a sequence Item is present.
>Number of Frames in Rotation	(0054,0053)	1C	Number of angular views in this rotation. Required if a sequence Item is present.
>Table Traverse	(0018,1131)	3	Location of the patient table (or gantry relative to the table) in mm.The range and values of this element are determined by the manufacturer.
>Table Height	(0018,1130)	3	The distance in mm of the top of the patient table to the center of rotation. Table height below the center of rotation has a positive value.
Type of Detector Motion	(0054,0202)	3	Describes the detector motion during acquisition. Enumerated Values: STEP AND SHOOT = Interrupted motion, acquire only while stationary. CONTINUOUS = Gantry motion and acquisition are simultaneous and continuous. ACQ DURING STEP = Interrupted motion, acquisition is continuous.

C.8.4.12.1 NM TOMO Acquisition Attribute Descriptions

C.8.4.12.1.1 Angular Step

Angular Step (0018,1144) is the nominal frame-to-frame incremental angle for TOMO and GATED TOMO acquisition images, defined in degrees. The Angular Step (0018,1144) shall be a positive number. Summation of Angular Step values is not defined to give accurate Angular Position or Scan Arc values. The Angular Step is the effective angular spacing between resultant frames of the Multi-framed planar image data.

C.8.4.13 NM Multi-gated Acquisition Module

Table C.8-13 contains Attributes that describe a multi-gated acquisition image performed on the patient. This refers to frames acquired while the patient is connected to a gating device.

Table C.8-13
NM MULTI-GATED ACQUISITION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Beat Rejection Flag	(0018,1080)	3	Heart beat duration sorting has been applied. Enumerated Values: Y = yes N = no
PVC Rejection	(0018,1085)	3	Description of type of arrhythmic beat rejection criteria used.
Skip Beats	(0018,1086)	3	Number of beats skipped after a detected arrhythmia
Heart Rate	(0018,1088)	3	Average number of heart beats per minute for the collection period for these frames. This shall include all accepted beats as well as rejected beats.
Gated Information Sequence	(0054,0062)	2C	Sequence of Repeating Items that describe R-R intervals. Each gated interval is defined by an upper and lower range of heart beat durations. Required if the Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) contains the Tag for R-R Interval Vector (0054,0060). The number of items shall be equal to Number of R-R Intervals (0054,0061). The first item corresponds to frames with value of 1 in the R-R Interval Vector (0054,0060), the second item with value 2, etc.
>Trigger Time	(0018,1060)	3	Time interval measured in msec from the start of the R-wave to the beginning of the data taking.
>Framing Type	(0018,1064)	3	Description of type of framing performed such as forward, backward, forward/backward by percentage.
>Data Information Sequence	(0054,0063)	2C	Sequence of Repeating Items that describe gating criteria. See C.8.4.13.1.1. Required if a sequence Item is present.
>>Frame Time	(0018,1063)	1C	Nominal time per individual frame in msec. Required if a sequence Item is present.
>>Nominal Interval	(0018,1062)	3	Average duration of accepted beats, in msec.
>>Low R-R Value	(0018,1081)	3	R-R interval lower limit for beat rejection, in msec
>>High R-R Value	(0018,1082)	3	R-R interval upper limit for beat rejection, in msec

>>Intervals Acquired	(0018,1083)	3	Number of heartbeats that fall within Low R-R Value (0018,1081) and High R-R Value (0018,1082), and were therefore accepted and contribute gamma events to this R-R Interval.
>>Intervals Rejected	(0018,1084)	3	Number of heartbeats that fall outside Low R-R (0018,1081) and High R-R Value (0018,1082), and do not contribute gamma events to this R-R Interval. However, they may contribute gamma events to other R-R Intervals.
>>Time Slot Information Sequence	(0054,0072)	2C	Sequence of Repeating Items that describe Time Slot Information. Required if the Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) contains the Tag for Time Slot Vector (0054,0070). The number of items shall be equal to Number of Time Slots (0054,0071). The first item corresponds to frames with value of 1 in the Time Slot Vector (0054,0070), the second item with value 2, etc.
>>>Time Slot Time	(0054,0073)	3	The total amount of time, in msec, that the acquisition accumulates gamma events into this frame. See C.8.4.13.1.2.

C.8.4.13.1 NM Multi-gated Acquisition Attribute Descriptions

C.8.4.13.1.1 Data Information Sequence

Data Information Sequence (0054,0063) shall contain a single sequence item which applies to the sum of all angular views, except when Image Type (0008,0008) Value 3 is GATED TOMO. In this case it shall have either a single item which applies to the sum of all angular views, or it shall have one item for each angular view.

C.8.4.13.1.2 Time Slot Time

The Time Slot Time (0054,0073) records the effective imaging time of each Time Slot. For example, if some of the accepted beats are shorter than others then the last frames may not receive a contribution from the shorter beats. The Time Slot Time for a Time Slot is the total acquisition time for that Time Slot. It is approximately equal to the Frame Time (0018,1063) multiplied by the number of accepted beats contributing to the Time Slot.

C.8.4.14 NM Phase Module

Table C.8-14 contains Attributes that describe dynamic phases of a dynamic acquisition image performed on the patient. This module is present only when Image Type (0008,0008), Value 3, is equal to DYNAMIC. A phase is defined as a collection of frames in which the acquisition time per frame and the time delay between frames remains constant. A new phase shall be defined whenever there is a change in the time between frames, the acquisition time per frame, or the position of the patient relative to the detector.

Table C.8-14
NM PHASE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Phase Information Sequence	(0054,0032)	2C	Sequence of Repeating Items that describes each dynamic phase. Required if the Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) contains the Tag for Phase Vector (0054,0030). The number of items shall be equal to Number of Phases (0054,0031). The first item corresponds to frames with value of 1 in the Phase Vector (0054,0030), the second item with value 2, etc.
>Phase Delay	(0054,0036)	1C	Time paused between the last frame of the previous phase and the first frame of this phase, in msec. Required if a sequence Item is present.
>Actual Frame Duration	(0018,1242)	1C	Nominal time of acquisition per individual frame, in msec. Required if a sequence Item is present.
>Pause Between Frames	(0054,0038)	1C	Time paused between each frame of this phase (in msec). Required if a sequence Item is present.
>Number of Frames in Phase	(0054,0033)	1C	Number of frames in this phase. Required if a sequence Item is present.
>Trigger Vector	(0054,0210)	3	An array of trigger times when gating information is acquired simultaneously with the dynamic image data. See Section C.8.4.14.1.1 for further explanation.
>Number of Triggers in Phase	(0054,0211)	1C	The number of entries in the Trigger Vector (0054,0210) for this phase. Required if Trigger Vector (0054,0210) is present.
>Phase Description	(0054,0039)	3	Description of this phase of the Dynamic image. Defined Terms: FLOW WASHOUT UPTAKE EMPTYING EXCRETION

C.8.4.14.1 NM Phase Module Attributes Description

C.8.4.14.1.1 Trigger Vector

Trigger Vector (0054,0210) is an array containing a list of the inter-trigger interval times in milliseconds in the order in which they were acquired, with the first being measured from the start time of the first frame of the image data in the Phase. If this element is used, the start times are required to be the same so that a mathematical correlation can be made between trigger times and frame start times.

C.8.4.15 NM Reconstruction Module

Table C.8-15 contains Attributes that describe Nuclear Medicine reconstructed volumes. Reconstructed volumes are created by applying a transformation (reconstruction) process to the acquired TOMO frames. This module is present only when the Image Type (0008,0008), Value 3, is equal to RECON TOMO or RECON GATED TOMO**.**

Table C.8-15
NM RECONSTRUCTION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Spacing Between Slices	(0018,0088)	2	Spacing between slices, in mm, measured from center-to-center of each slice along the normal to the first image. The sign of the Spacing Between Slices (0018,0088) determines the direction of stacking. The normal is determined by the cross product of the direction cosines of the first row and first column of the first frame, such that a positive spacing indicates slices are stacked behind the first slice and a negative spacing indicates slices are stacked in front of the first slice. See Image Orientation (0020,0037) in the NM Detector module.
Reconstruction Diameter	(0018,1100)	3	Diameter, in mm, of the region from within which the data was used in creating the reconstruction of the image. Data may exist outside this region and portions of the patient may exist outside this region.
Convolution Kernel	(0018,1210)	3	A label describing the convolution kernel or algorithm used to reconstruct the data.
Slice Thickness	(0018,0050)	2	Nominal slice thickness, in mm.
Slice Location	(0020,1041)	3	Relative position of exposure expressed in mm. See C.7.6.2.1.2 for further explanation.
Slice Progression Direction	(0054,0500)	3	Describes the anatomical direction that slices are progressing as the slices are considered in order (as defined by the Slice Vector (0054,0080)). Meaningful only for cardiac images. When View Code Sequence (0054,0220) indicates a short axis view, then Enumerated Values are: APEX_TO_BASE BASE_TO_APEX

C.8.5 Ultrasound Modules

This Section describes Ultrasound Frame of Reference and Image Modules. These Modules contain Attributes that are specific to Ultrasound images.

C.8.5.1 US Frame of Reference Module (Retired)

Section C.8.4.1 was defined in a previous version of the DICOM Standard. The Section is now retired.

C.8.5.2 US Region Calibration (Retired)

Section C.8.4.2 was defined in a previous version of the DICOM Standard. The Section is now retired.

C.8.5.3 US Image Module (Retired)

Section C.8.4.3 was defined in a previous version of the DICOM Standard. The Section is now retired.

C.8.5.4 US Frame of Reference Module

Section C.8.5.4 was defined in a previous version of the DICOM Standard. The Section is now retired. See PS 3.3 2003.

C.8.5.5 US Region Calibration Module

The US Region Calibration Module has been introduced into the ultrasound IOD to provide access to the full range of data that may be present in a single US image. US images often contain multiple regions that have independent data regions, e.g. quad screen loops that may have different calibration information. The data presented in the various regions of a US image can represent a multiplicity of physical parameters, e.g., spatial distance, blood velocity, time, volume, etc., and these are often contained in the value of the pixel itself. It is therefore imperative that physical information be available for the various regions of a single region independent of each other.

Table C.8-17 contains IOD Attributes that describe an ultrasound region calibration.

Table C.8-17
US REGION CALIBRATION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Sequence of Ultrasound Regions	(0018,6011)	1	Defines a sequence of Ultrasound Regions. One or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>Region Location Min x_0	(0018,6018)	1	The bounds of a rectangle specifying the location of the region, x_0,y_0,x_1,y_1. See C.8.5.5.1.14 for further explanation.
>Region Location Min y_0	(0018,601A)	1	The bounds of a rectangle specifying the location of the region, x_0,y_0,x_1,y_1. See C.8.5.5.1.14 for further explanation.
>Region Location Max x_1	(0018,601C)	1	The bounds of a rectangle specifying the location of the region, x_0,y_0,x_1,y_1. See C.8.5.5.1.14 for further explanation.
>Region Location Max y_1	(0018,601E)	1	The bounds of a rectangle specifying the location of the region, x_0,y_0,x_1,y_1.

			See C.8.5.5.1.14 for further explanation.
>Physical Units X Direction	(0018,6024)	1	The physical units of the dimensions of the region. See C.8.5.5.1.15 for Enumerated Values.
>Physical Units Y Direction	(0018,6026)	1	The physical units of the dimensions of the region. See C.8.5.5.1.15 for Enumerated Values.
>Physical Delta X	(0018,602C)	1	The physical value increments per positive X pixel increment. The units are as specified in the Physical Units X Direction (0018,6024). See C.8.5.5.1.17 for further explanation.
>Physical Delta Y	(0018,602E)	1	The physical value increments per positive Y pixel increment. The units are as specified in the Physical Units Y Direction (0018,6026). See C.8.5.5.1.17 for further explanation.
>Reference Pixel x_0	(0018,6020)	3	This coordinate pair, x_0,y_0 defines the location of a virtual "reference" pixel. See C.8.5.5.1.16 for further explanation.
>Reference Pixel y_0	(0018,6022)	3	This coordinate pair, x_0,y_0 defines the location of a virtual "reference" pixel. See C.8.5.5.1.16 for further explanation.
>Ref. Pixel Physical Value X	(0018,6028)	3	The Physical Value at the reference pixel x location. The units are specified in the Physical Units field.
>Ref. Pixel Physical Value Y	(0018,602A)	3	The Physical Value at the reference pixel y location. The units are specified in the Physical Units field.
>Region Spatial Format	(0018,6012)	1	The spatial organization of the data within the region. See C.8.5.5.1.1 for Enumerated Values.
>Region Data Type	(0018,6014)	1	The type of data within the region. See C.8.5.5.1.2 for Enumerated Values.
>Region Flags	(0018,6016)	1	Flags used for special handling of the region. See C.8.5.5.1.3 for Enumerated Values and further explanation.
>Pixel Component Organization	(0018,6044)	1C	Describes how the components of a pixel can be described. Required if pixel component calibration exists for this region. See C.8.5.5.1.4 for Enumerated Values and further explanation.
>Pixel Component Mask	(0018,6046)	1C	This value is ANDed with the composite pixel code for each pixel within the region, then shifted right by the number of

			contiguous least significant zeros in the mask to obtain what will be referred to as the "Shifted Masked Composite Pixel Code" (SMCPC). Required if Pixel Component Organization = Bit aligned. See C.8.5.5.1.5 for further explanation.
>Pixel Component Range Start	(0018,6048)	1C	Defines the start of the numeric range of values within the composite pixel where calibration is to be defined by the "pixel physical calibration table". To be used only when ranges are used to describe the portion of the composite pixel. Required if Pixel Component Organization = Ranges.
>Pixel Component Range Stop	(0018,604A)	1C	Defines the stop of the numeric range of values within the composite pixel where calibration is to be defined by the "pixel physical calibration table". To be used only when ranges are used to describe the portion of the composite pixel. Required if Pixel Component Organization = Ranges.
>Pixel Component Physical Units	(0018,604C)	1C	The physical units to be applied to the pixel component. Required if Pixel Component Organization exists. See C.8.5.5.1.6 for further explanation.
>Pixel Component Data Type	(0018,604E)	1C	The type of data for the pixel component. Required if Pixel Component Organization exists. See C.8.5.5.1.7 for further explanation.
>Number of Table Break Points	(0018,6050)	1C	The number of break point coordinate pairs used to describe a piece wise linear curve. Required if Pixel Component Organization equals 0 or 1. Otherwise not used. See C.8.5.5.1.8 for further explanation.
>Table of X Break Points	(0018,6052)	1C	An array of X values used to create the piece wise linear curve. Required if Pixel Component Organization equals 0 or 1. Otherwise not used. See C.8.5.5.1.9 for further explanation.
>Table of Y Break Points	(0018,6054)	1C	An array of Y values used to create the piece wise linear curve. Required if Pixel Component Organization equals 0 or 1. Otherwise not used. See C.8.5.5.1.9 for further explanation.
>Number of Table Entries	(0018,6056)	1C	The number of entries in the Table of Pixel

			Values. Required if the value of Pixel Component Organization (0018,6044) is 2 or 3. Otherwise not used. See C.8.5.5.1.11 for further explanation.
>Table of Pixel Values	(0018,6058)	1C	A table of Pixel Values used in conjunction with the Table of Parameter Values (0018,605A) or Pixel Value Mapping Code Sequence (0040,9098) to provide a mapping from Pixel Value to a real world value. Required if the Pixel Component Organization equals 2. Otherwise not used. See C.8.5.5.1.12 for further explanation.
>Table of Parameter Values	(0018,605A)	1C	A table of Parameter Values used in conjunction with the Table of Pixel Values (0018,6058) to provide a mapping from Pixel Value to Parameter Value. Required if the value of Pixel Component Organization (0018,6044) is 2. Otherwise not used. See C.8.5.5.1.13 for further explanation
> Pixel Value Mapping Code Sequence	(0040,9098)	1C	Sequence that, in conjunction with the Table of Pixel Values (0018,6058), provides a mapping from a Pixel Value to an associated Coded Concept. One or more Items shall be present; the number of Items shall be equal to the value of Number of Table Entries (0018,6056). Required if the value of Pixel Component Organization (0018,6044) is 3 (Code Sequence look up). See Sections C.8.5.6.1.18 for further explanation.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID for IVUS is 3497; no Context ID is otherwise defined.*	
>Tranducer Frequency	(0018,6030)	3	The manufacturer defined description of center frequency of the interrogating ultrasound energy. The units are kilohertz.
>Pulse Repetition Frequency	(0018,6032)	3	The ultrasound pulse repetition frequency, as defined by the manufacturer, used to collect data in the region. The units are in hertz.
>Doppler Correction Angle	(0018,6034)	3	The Doppler correction angle. The units are degrees.
>Steering Angle	(0018,6036)	3	The steering angle, as defined by the manufacturer, used for a steered 2D image. The units are degrees.

>Doppler Sample Volume X Position	(0018,6039)	3	The x displacement, in pixels, from the Reference pixel to the center of the Doppler sample volume.
>Doppler Sample Volume Y Position	(0018,603B)	3	The y displacement, in pixels, from the Reference pixel to the center of the Doppler sample volume.
>TM-Line Position x_0	(0018,603D)	3	The starting and ending coordinates pairs of the m-line. Where the X_0,Y_0 are the starting point and X_1,Y_1 are the end point of the tm-line. See C.8.5.5.1.10 for further explanation.
>TM-Line Position y_0	(0018,603F)	3	The starting and ending coordinates pairs of the m-line. Where the X_0,Y_0 are the starting point and X_1,Y_1 are the end point of the tm-line. See C.8.5.5.1.10 for further explanation.
>TM-Line Position x_1	(0018,6041)	3	The starting and ending coordinates pairs of the m-line. Where the X_0,Y_0 are the starting point and X_1,Y_1 are the end point of the tm-line. See C.8.5.5.1.10 for further explanation.
>TM-Line Position y_1	(0018,6043)	3	The starting and ending coordinates pairs of the m-line. Where the X_0,Y_0 are the starting point and X_1,Y_1 are the end point of the tm-line. See C.8.5.5.1.10 for further explanation.

C.8.5.5.1 US Region Calibration Attribute Descriptions

C.8.5.5.1.1 Region Spatial Format

Enumerated Values for Region Spatial Format (0018,6012) indicate the spatial organization of the data within the region.

Value	Meaning	Value	Meaning
0000H	None or not applicable	0001H	2D(tissue or flow)
0002H	M-Mode(tissue or flow)	0003H	Spectral(CW or PW Doppler)
0004H	Wave form(physiological traces, doppler traces,....)	0005H	Graphics

C.8.5.5.1.2 Region Data Type

Enumerated Values for Region Data Type (0018,6014) indicate the type of data within the region.

Value	Meaning	Value	Meaning
0000H	None or not applicable	0001H	Tissue
0002H	Color Flow	0003H	PW Spectral Doppler
0004H	CW Spectral Doppler	0005H	Doppler Mean Trace

0006H	Doppler Mode Trace	0007H	Doppler Max Trace
0008H	Volume Trace	0009H	d(volume)/dt Trace
000AH	ECG Trace	000BH	Pulse Trace
000CH	Phonocardiogram Trace	000DH	Gray bar
000EH	Color bar	000FH	Integrated Backscatter
0010H	Area Trace	0011H	d(area)/dt
0012H	Other Physiological (Amplitude vs. Time) input		

C.8.5.5.1.3 Region Flags

Region Flags (0018,6016) specify characteristics of US Regions.

Bit 0 of the Region Flags specifies the relative priority of the pixel component calibration specified by an US Region in the case where the US Region intersects with other US Regions. The calibration supplied by one or more of the regions may not be valid in the area that they intersect. Enumerated Values for Bit 0 (lsb):

1 = Region pixels are low priority

0 = Region pixels are high priority

A high priority region overwrites data of a low priority region when they overlap, thus invalidating any pixel component calibration specified for a low priority region. pixel component calibration of overlapping regions of the same priority is indeterminate where they overlap. Figure C.8-6 shows an example of intersecting regions.

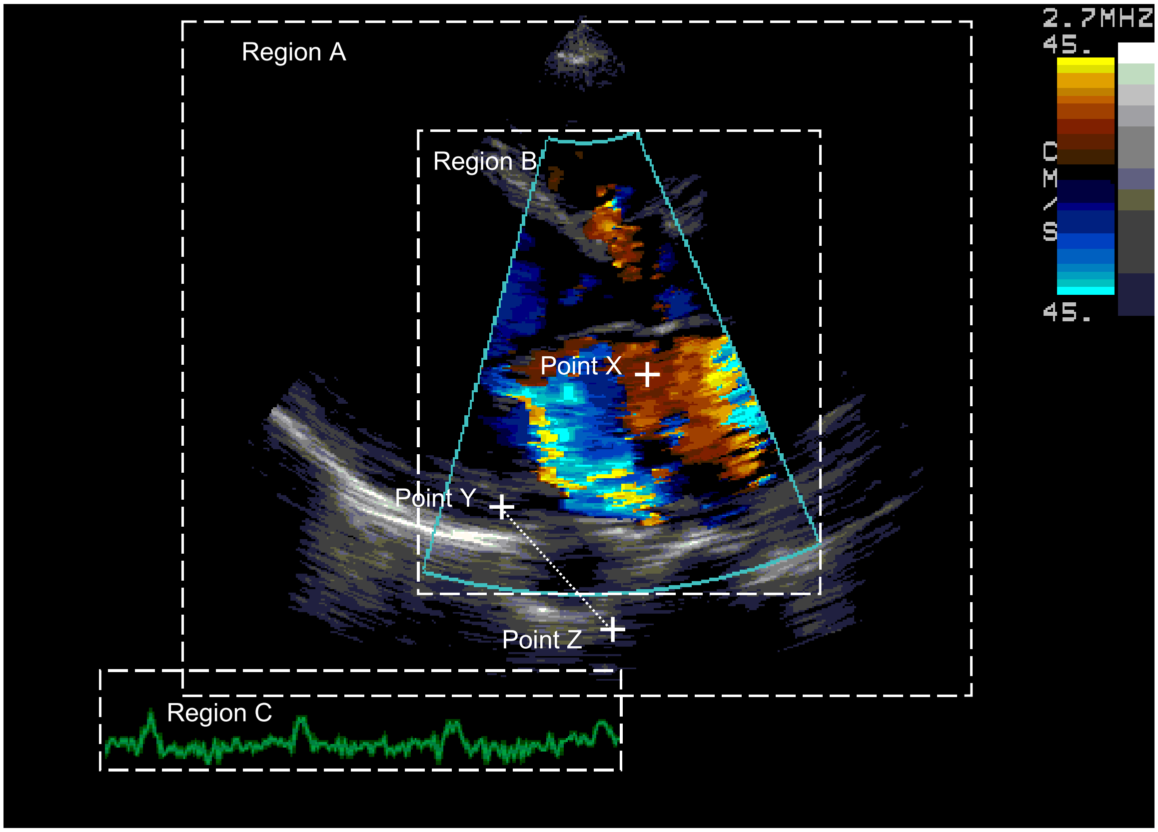


Figure C.8-6
Intersecting Spatial Format Regions and Overlapping Measurement

In this example, Region B is Color Flow while Region A is Tissue Echo. If Region B Color Flow values share the same bit planes as Region A Tissue Echo values, then it is indeterminate whether a pixel in this region is a Color Flow pixel or a Tissue Echo pixel. Since the pixels of the Color Flow region overwrite those of the Tissue Echo region, the Region Flag of the Tissue Echo region is assigned low priority and the Region Flag of the color region is assigned high priority. This means that if both the Tissue Echo and Color Flow regions define pixel component calibration that only the calibration specified by the Color Flow region can be applied to the pixel data value at Point X.

The measurement in Figure C.8-6 is a line between Point Y and Point Z. Both points are in Region A so the distance between them can be calculated using the Region A scaling (assuming that Region A defines both the Physical Units X Direction and Y Direction as being cm). If the points are in Region B, and hence also in Region A, it is still possible to calculate the distance because the region scaling is identical in both regions. The lower priority of Region B only applies to its pixel component calibration, not its X and Y direction scaling.

Enumerated Values for Bit 1 Scaling Protection:

1 = Protected

0 = Not Protected

Ultrasound systems should set this to 1 if the image is scaled automatically by the ultrasound system. If the image is frame-grabbed and scaling is not available then it should be set to 0. If the region is protected, the region can not be manually rescaled. That is the data defined by the region calibration Module can not be overridden by a reader of that image.

Enumerated Values for Bit 2 Doppler Scale Type:

1 = Frequency
0 = Velocity

Valid for PW and CW regions only. Indicates which type of Doppler scale is used.

Enumerated Values for Bit 3-4 Scrolling Region:

00 = Unspecified
01 = Scrolling
10 = Sweeping
11 = Sweeping then Scrolling

Bit 5-31 Reserved for future use, shall be set to zero.

C.8.5.5.1.4 Pixel Component Organization

Pixel Component Organization (0018,6044) provides an Enumerated Value describing how the components of a pixel can be described. The absence of this data element means that pixel component calibration does not exist for this region. Where:

0 = Bit aligned positions
1 = Ranges
2 = Table look up
3 = Code Sequence look up

Other values reserved for future use.

Pixel Component Organization defines the way in which the composite pixel values are mapped into real world values with physical units, as illustrated in Figure C.8-7.

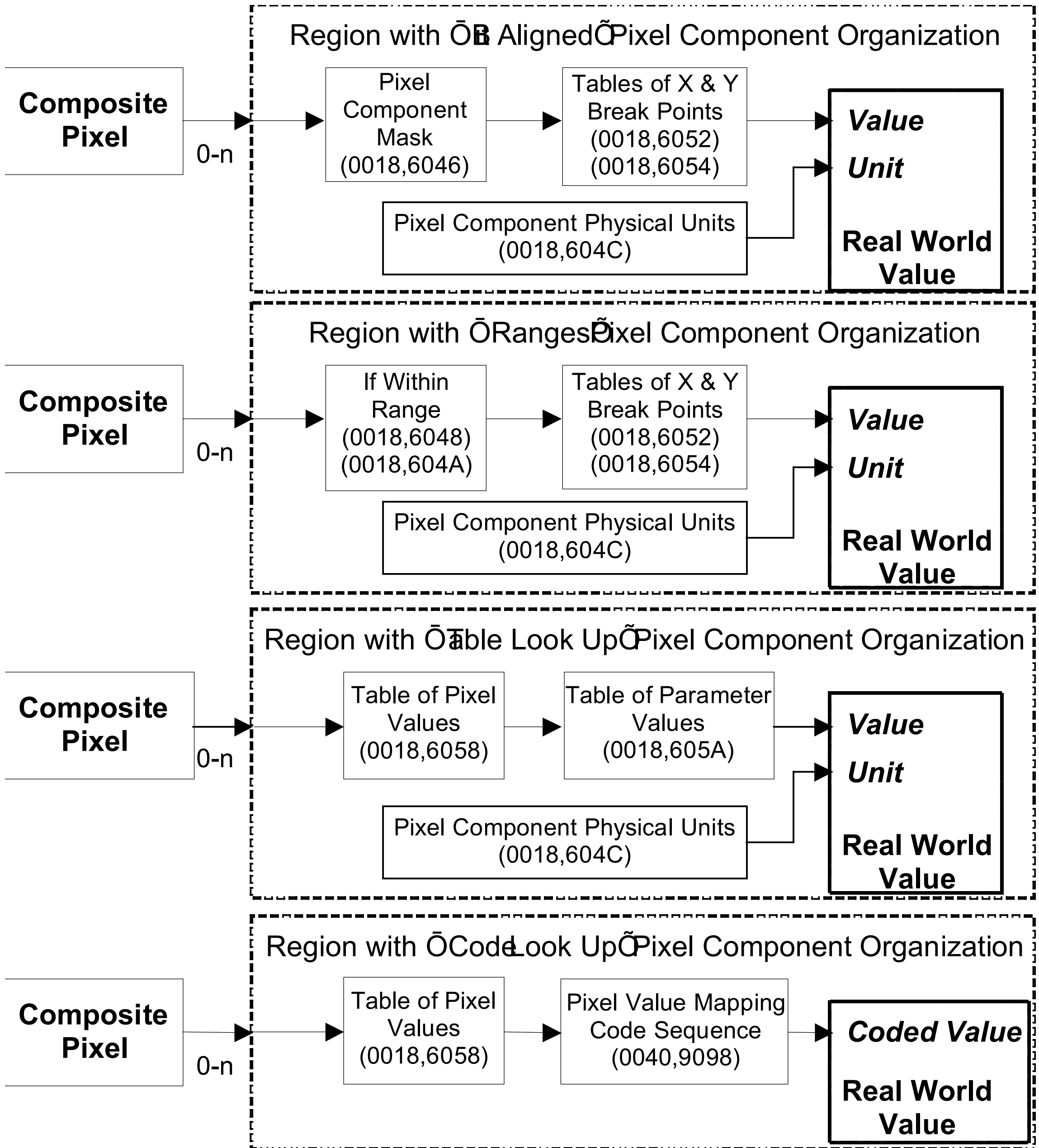


Figure C.8-7
Pixel Component Calibration

An example of Component Calibration for an ultrasound image is shown in Figure C.8-8.

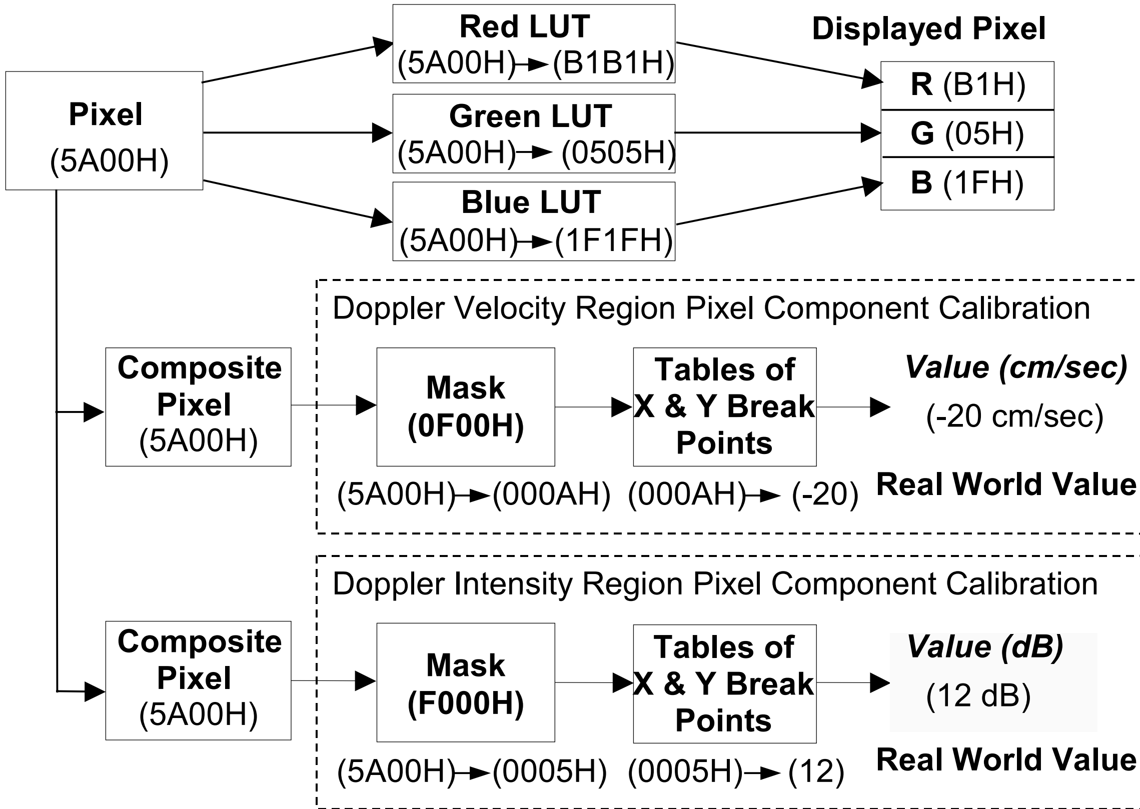


Figure C.8-8
Pixel Component Calibration Example

In this example, some pixels lie within two Regions. One Region specifies pixel component calibration for Doppler velocity values. The second Region specifies pixel component calibration for Doppler magnitude. A particular Pixel Data (7FE0,0010) value will thus map to a displayed value, a Doppler velocity and magnitude value.

The example has a Palette Color Photometric Interpretation with 16 Bits Allocated and Bits Stored per sample. The Palette Color Lookup Tables also have 16 bits for each entry. The fact that the example has just one sample per pixel means that each composite pixel value is identical to the single Pixel Data value. An example Pixel Data value is shown in brackets along with the output values resulting from each step where it is processed.

The Pixel Data value is mapped to red, green, and blue values from the supplied Palette Color Lookup Tables before being displayed. The display device supports 8 bits per sample and thus requires the scaling of the output values from the 16 bit per entry LUTs.

The Doppler Velocity Region maps each pixel value in the Region to the Doppler velocity. The Pixel Component Organization (0018,6044) has a value of zero, indicating bit aligned positions with a bit mask. The Pixel Component Mask (0018,6046) specifies that the least significant 4 bits of the most significant byte convey the Doppler velocity of each pixel. The Pixel Component Physical Units (0018,604C) are cm/sec, and the Pixel Component Data Type (0018,604E) indicates color flow velocity. The Table of X Break Points (0018,6052) and Table of Y Break Points (0018,6054) map each masked composite pixel value to a Doppler velocity value in cm/sec.

The Doppler Magnitude Region maps each pixel value in the Region to the Doppler magnitude. The Pixel Component Organization (0018,6044) has a value of zero, indicating bit aligned positions with a bit mask. The Pixel Component Mask (0018,6046) specifies that the most significant 4 bits of the most significant byte convey the Doppler magnitude of each pixel. The Pixel Component Physical Units (0018,604C) is set to dB, and the Pixel Component Data Type (0018,604E) indicates color flow magnitude. The Table of X Break Points (0018,6052) and Table of Y Break Points (0018,6054) map each masked composite pixel value to a Doppler magnitude value in dB.

C.8.5.5.1.5 Pixel Component Mask

Pixel Component Mask (0018,6046) is ANDed with the Composite Pixel Code (see Section C.7.6.3.1.1) for each pixel within the region, then shifted right by the number of contiguous least significant zeros in the mask to obtain what will be referred to as the "Shifted Masked Composite Pixel Code".

The mask will most likely (but not necessarily) contain a block of contiguous ones, surrounded by leading and trailing zeros. The purpose of this mask is to keep only those bits within the composite pixel code that pertain to the region. It is to be used only when Pixel Organization is bit aligned positions.

C.8.5.5.1.6 Pixel Component Physical Units

For Pixel Component Physical Units (0018,604C), the Enumerated Values describing the physical units to be applied to the pixel component are:

Value	Meaning	Value	Meaning
0000H	None or not applicable	0001H	Percent
0002H	dB	0003H	cm
0004H	seconds	0005H	hertz(seconds^{-1})
0006H	dB/seconds	0007H	cm/sec
0008H	cm^2	0009H	cm^2/sec
000AH	cm^3	000BH	cm^3/sec
000CH	degrees		

C.8.5.5.1.7 Pixel Component Data Type

For Pixel Component Data Type (0018,604E), the Enumerated Values indicating the type of data for the pixel component are:

Value	Meaning	Value	Meaning
0000H	None or not applicable	0001H	Tissue
0002H	Spectral doppler	0003H	Color Flow Velocity
0004H	Color Flow Variance	0005H	Color Flow Intensity
0006H	Gray bar	0007H	Color bar
0008H	Integrated Backscatter	0009H	Computed Border
000AH	Tissue Classification		

C.8.5.5.1.8 Number of Table Break Points

The Number of Table Break Points (0018,6050) gives the number of entries in each of two tables: the Table of X Break Points (0018,6052) and Table of Y Break Points (0018,6054). These tables are used to designate a curve mapping the value of a pixel component to its actual physical value, as described in Section C.8.5.5.1.9.

C.8.5.5.1.9 Table of X Break Points and Table of Y Break Points

Table of X Break Points (0018,6052) and Table of Y Break Points (0018,6054) are individual arrays of coordinates which interpreted together are used to create a piecewise linear curve. Each X value from the Table of X Break Points is matched with the corresponding Y value from the Table of Y Break Points yielding an (X,Y) coordinate. The set of (X,Y) coordinates describes a piecewise linear curve mapping the value of a pixel component to its actual physical value (in units defined in Pixel Component Physical Units data element (0018,604C)).

The X direction on the curve has no units, and represents actual pixel component values. If the Pixel Component Organization (0018,6044) is "Bit aligned positions", and the width of the Pixel Component Mask is *n* bits then the X coordinates are in the range 0 through $2^{n}-1$. If the Pixel Component Organization is *Ranges*, then the X coordinates are in the range 0 through $2^{\text{number of bits in the composite pixel}} - 1$.

Note: The X value is NOT relative to the Pixel Component Range Start (0018,6048). Not all possible X values in the range need be covered by the curve.

For any pixel component value in the range of the curve described by this table, the corresponding Y value is the actual physical value for that pixel, in units specified in the Pixel Component Physical Units data element (0018,604C). If the pixel component value is NOT within the range of specified X values for the curve, then no pixel calibration is defined by this region. It may be possible for pixel calibration to be defined by other spatial regions intersecting this one.

C.8.5.5.1.10 TM-Line Position X_0 , TM-Line Position Y_0, TM-Line Position X_1 ,TM-Line Position Y_1

The TM-Line Position X_0 (0018,603D) and TM-Line Position Y_0 (0018,603F) are the coordinates of the starting point and TM-Line Position X_1 (0018,6041), TM-Line Position Y_1 (0018,6043) are the coordinates of the end point of the TM-line. The coordinate is defined as the displacement, in pixels, from the Reference pixel. Typically used for M-mode line and CW Doppler.

C.8.5.5.1.11 Number of Table Entries

The Number of Table Entries (0018,6056) gives the number of entries in the Table of Pixel Values, the number of entries in the Table of Parameter Values (0018,605A), if present, and the number of items in the Pixel Value Mapping Code Sequence (0040,9098) , if present.

C.8.5.5.1.12 Table of Pixel Values

The Table of Pixel Values (0018,6058) specifies the pixel values that are mapped to real world parameter values or coded concepts (tissue characterizations). The number of entries in the table is given by Number of Table Entries (0018,6056).

A pixel is calibrated (mapped to a real-world value) by finding an entry in the Table of Pixel Values that matches its Composite Pixel Code (see Section C.7.6.3.1.1). The offset index of this entry is used as an index into the Parameter Value Table (0018,605A) or as a sequence item number in the Pixel Value Mapping Code Sequence (0040,9098) to select the real world value. The first Table of Pixel Values entry corresponds to sequence item 1.

Note: If a Composite Pixel Code has no matching value in the Pixel Value Table then there is no unambiguous way to determine the corresponding Parameter Value. A method may exist to determine a valid Parameter Value but the specification of such a method is outside the scope of the DICOM standard. No assumption should be made that linear interpolation will produce a valid result.

C.8.5.5.1.13 Table of Parameter Values

The Table of Parameter Values (0018,605A) provides the real world values for pixel values identified in the Table of Pixel Values (0018,6058). The number of table entries is given by Number of Table Entries (0018,6056) and the physical units are given by Pixel Component Physical Units (0018,604C). Values may repeat when a parameter value is associated with more than one Composite Pixel Code value.

C.8.5.5.1.14 Region Location Min x_0, Region Location Min y_0, Region Location Max x_1, Region Location Max y_1

These attributes specify the location of the region, Region Location Min x_0 (0018,6018), Region Location Min y_0 (0018,601A), Region Location Max x_1 (0018,601C), Region Location Max y_1 (0018,601E) expressed as offsets to the pixel coordinates. The upper left corner of the entire image is x=0,y=0 and the lower right corner is x=image width - 1, and y=image length - 1. Thus, a region will be specified as within these bounds. Where x_0,y_0 is the coordinate of the upper left corner of the region and x_1,y_1 is the coordinate of the lower right corner of the region.

C.8.5.5.1.15 Physical Units X Direction And Physical Units Y Direction

Physical Units X Direction (0018,6024) and Physical Units Y Direction (0018,6026) provide Enumerated Values indicating the physical units of the dimensions of the region.

Value	Meaning	Value	Meaning
0000H =	None or not applicable	0001H =	Percent
0002H =	dB	0003H =	cm
0004H =	seconds	0005H =	hertz(seconds^{-1})
0006H =	dB/seconds	0007H =	cm/sec
0008H =	cm^2	0009H =	cm^2/sec
000AH =	cm^3	000BH =	cm^3/sec
000CH =	degrees		

C.8.5.5.1.16 Reference Pixel x_0 and Reference Pixel y_0

This coordinate pair, Reference Pixel x_0 (0018,6020), Reference Pixel y_0 (0018,6022) defines the location of a virtual "reference" pixel. This reference pixel location is used to tie the image's pixel coordinate system to the physical coordinate system. For example, the reference pixel could be defined where a depth of zero centimeters occurs in the 2D image, or it could define where the baseline (i.e.: zero frequency) resides in a spectral display. The reference pixel location is the relative offset from the Region Location Min x_0 (0018,6018) and Region Location Min y_0 (0018,601A), not the image origin. The location is not required to be within the region or even within the image boundary. For this reason, the Reference Pixel x_0 and Reference Pixel $y_0$values can be positive or negative.

The reference pixel location varies depending on the type and spatial organization of the data within the region.

C.8.5.5.1.16.1 2D - Tissue or Color Flow

Tissue data is tissue echo intensity displayed as grayscale. The Region Data Type (0018,6014) value is 0001H (Tissue). Color flow is Doppler signal displayed as color and encoded as some function of Doppler magnitude and velocity of blood flow or tissue motion. The Region Data Type value is 0002H (Color flow). For 2D, the Region Spatial Format (0018,6012) is 0001H (2D), meaning that the region is a tomographic image. For such 2D regions the reference pixel location is typically at the center of the transducer face on the tissue-transducer interface (skin line).

Figure C.8-1 shows 2D attribute values of reference pixel location along with Region Location Min and Region Location Max. for 2D–Tissue and 2D–Color Flow Regions:

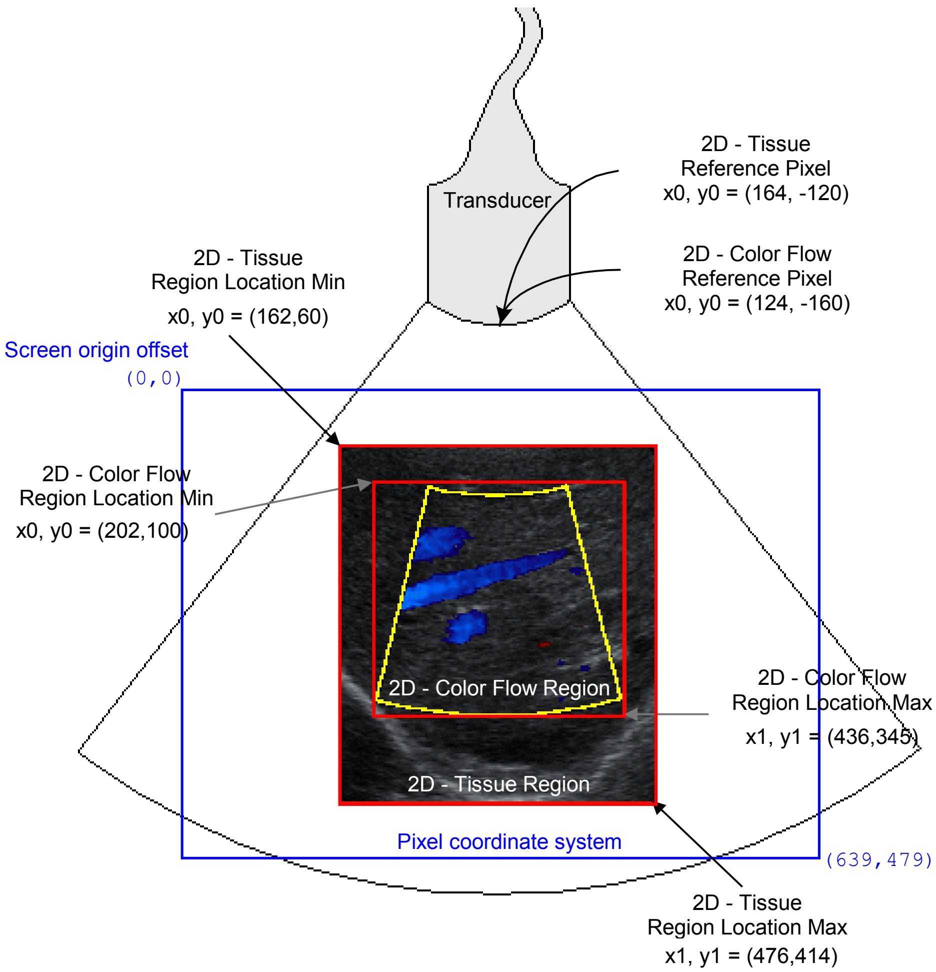


Figure C.8-1
2D Regions with Reference Pixel

Both the 2D regions–Tissue and Color Flow–share the same physical location at the skin line but the reference pixel location values (Reference Pixel x_0 and Reference Pixel y_0) are relative to their respective region origins at the skin line.

C.8.5.5.1.16.2 Spectral - CW or PW Doppler or Doppler Trace

Spectral Doppler is the time varying magnitude of Doppler signal as function of frequency. Region Data Type (0018,6014) value is 0003H (pulsed wave Doppler) or 0004H (continuous wave Doppler). Spectral Doppler regions display the magnitude of Doppler signal with frequency or velocity as the vertical dimension and time as the horizontal dimension. Spectral Doppler regions have a Region Spatial Format (0018,6012) of 0003H (Spectral). The time dimension for the Region Spatial Format displays horizontally with data scrolling toward the left or sweeping toward the right. The reference pixel location is the pixel in the frame where:

- the time is the time of frame capture (i.e. the time origin for the frame)
- and on the Doppler Baseline (i.e. where the velocity and frequency are zero).

Figure C.8-2 shows an example of reference pixel locations in an image with both a Tissue and a scrolling Spectral (CW or PW Doppler) Region. The user adjusts the depth and position of the Doppler sample volume. The system annotates the sample volume position on the 2D region and specifies the location in Doppler Sample Volume X Position (0018,6039) and Doppler Sample Volume Y Position (0018,603B).

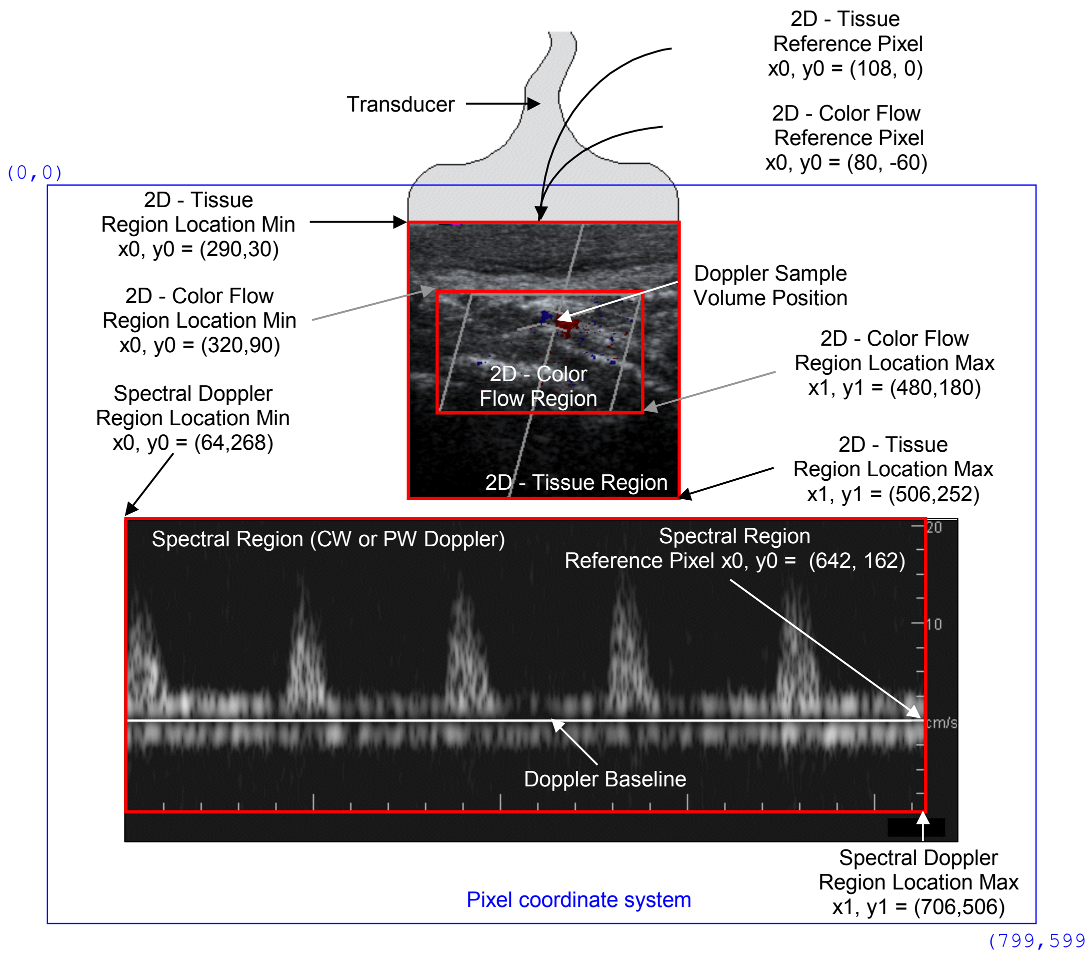


Figure C.8-2
2D & Doppler Regions with Reference Pixel

The scrolling Spectral Region reference pixel location specifies the horizontal location at the time of the current image frame. Data to the left of this location in the Spectral Region was acquired in the past. Because time increases to the right, the Physical Delta X (0018,602C) for this Region is positive. To specify the location of the most recent data the Reference Pixel x_0 specifies the time of acquisition, and the Ref. Pixel Physical Value X (0018,6028) specifies the reference time to be zero. The Physical Units X Direction (0018,6024) is seconds. For an explanation of how to handle sweeping regions refer to C.8.5.5.1.16.7 Treatment of Sweeping Regions.

The Ref. Pixel Physical Value Y (0018,602A) value specifies the baseline where velocity or frequency are zero. Typically spectral Doppler regions display positive velocity (cm/Sec) or frequency shift (Hz) above the baseline. This indicates flow toward the transducer face. Negative velocity or frequency information is displayed below the baseline. This indicates flow away from the transducer face. The Physical Delta Y (0018,602E) value is therefore negative because vertical coordinates increment downward.

C.8.5.5.1.16.3 M-Mode - Tissue or Color Flow

M-Mode is tissue or color flow with a Region Spatial Format (0018,6012) of 0002H (M-mode). The vertical reference pixel location is the transducer face.

The horizontal reference pixel location is the pixel in the frame where:

- the time is the time of frame capture (i.e. the time origin for the frame)
- and zero depth from the transducer face

Figure C.8-3 shows an example of reference pixel locations for 2D Tissue and M-Mode Regions within the same image frame. The system annotates the sample line position on the 2D tissue region and specifies its position with the TM-Line Position attributes (0018,603D), (0018,603F), (0018,6041), and (0018,6043).

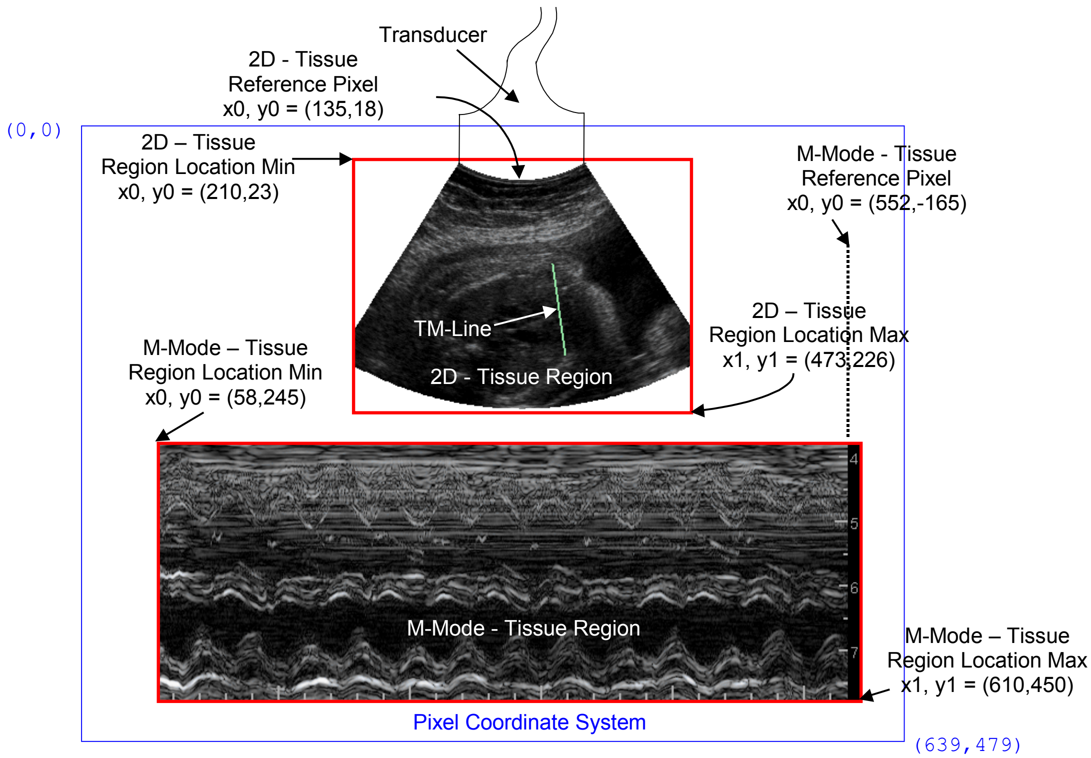


Figure C.8-3
2D & M-Mode Regions with Reference Pixel Example

The physical length of the TM-Line corresponds directly to the physical height of the M-Mode Region. The M-Mode region's Reference Pixel y0 can be used to calculate the depth of the M-Mode region and facilitate depth measurements. In this example the M-Mode Region Reference Pixel y0 has a negative value corresponding to the distance between the face of the ultrasound probe and the TM-Line starting point. Note that the negative offset in pixel units is determined using the pixel height-width scaling of the M-Mode - Tissue Region as this could differ from the scaling of the 2D – Tissue Region (as it does in this example).

C.8.5.5.1.16.4 Waveform - ECG, Phonocardiogram and Pulse Traces

Waveforms are traces with a Region Spatial Format (0018,6012) value of 0004H (Waveform). The Reference Pixel x_0 (0018,6020) specifies the time origin as the time of frame capture. There is typically no baseline position for ECG traces; the Reference Pixel y_0 (0018,6022) is arbitrary.

Figure C.8-4 shows an example of reference pixel location for 2D Tissue, M-Mode, and ECG Waveform Regions within the same image frame:

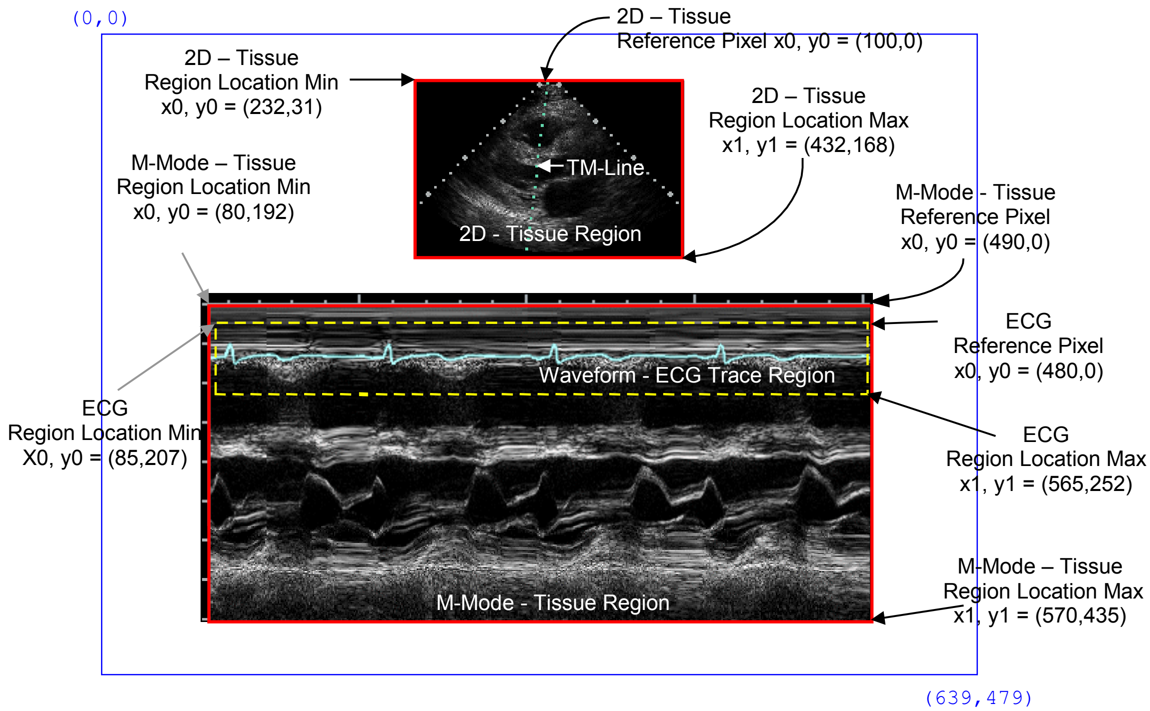


Figure C.8-4
2D, M-Mode, & Waveform Regions with Reference Pixel

C.8.5.5.1.16.5 Waveform - Doppler Mode, Mean and Max Trace

Doppler Traces have a Region Spatial Format (0018,6012) value of 0004H (Waveform) and a Region Data Type value of 0005H (Doppler Mean Trace), 0006H (Doppler Mode Trace) or 0007H (Doppler Max Trace). The Reference Pixel x_0 (0018,6020) specifies the time origin as the time of frame capture. The Reference Pixel y0 (0018,6022) is the Doppler Baseline position (zero velocity / frequency position).

C.8.5.5.1.16.6 Graphics Spatial Formats

For regions with Region Spatial Format (0018,6012) value of 0005H (Graphics) the reference pixel location has no meaning.

C.8.5.5.1.16.7 Treatment of Sweeping Regions

Time-based display of data may scroll the acquired data from a fixed horizontal location to the left. Alternatively, sweep-based display increments the horizontal location of the acquired data, overwriting previously acquired data to the right. When the horizontal location corresponding to zero time has completely swept over the older data, writing wraps from the left of the region. Thus, sweep-based displays have a time discontinuity. The measurement of time intervals across the discontinuity requires special treatment. The time interval between two points across the discontinuity is equal to the region’s time width minus the point separation. The sweeping area can be treated as a single region. The Reference Pixel x0 should indicate the time origin for the multi-frame image, which will be the location of the sweeping region's discontinuity line for the first frame of the multi-frame image. In order to specify that this is actually the location of the discontinuity line, the Ref. Pixel Physical Value X (0018,6028) must be set to 0 seconds. This indicates that this location corresponds to the time at which the first frame was acquired.

It is useful to be able to calculate the location of the discontinuity line for subsequent frames of a multi-frame image. This is necessary if one is to determine whether two points are on opposite sides of the discontinuity line and also to correctly calculate the difference in time between such points. The x-axis location of the discontinuity line, x, for a given frame number, y, can be calculated from the Reference Pixel x0, x0, the Reference Pixel x1, x1, the time offset for frame y, t, (determined from the Frame Time Vector (0018,1065) or Frame Time (0018,1063)) and the Physical Delta X (0018,602C), p_x, as follows:

$$x = x0 + \text{modulus}(\ (t / p_x) / (x1 - x0)\ )$$

Alternatively, two regions can be used, one on each side of the time discontinuity. Figure C.8-5 shows the use of two regions. Note that the two region approach is not valid for multi-frame images, as the same region scaling must apply to all the frames.

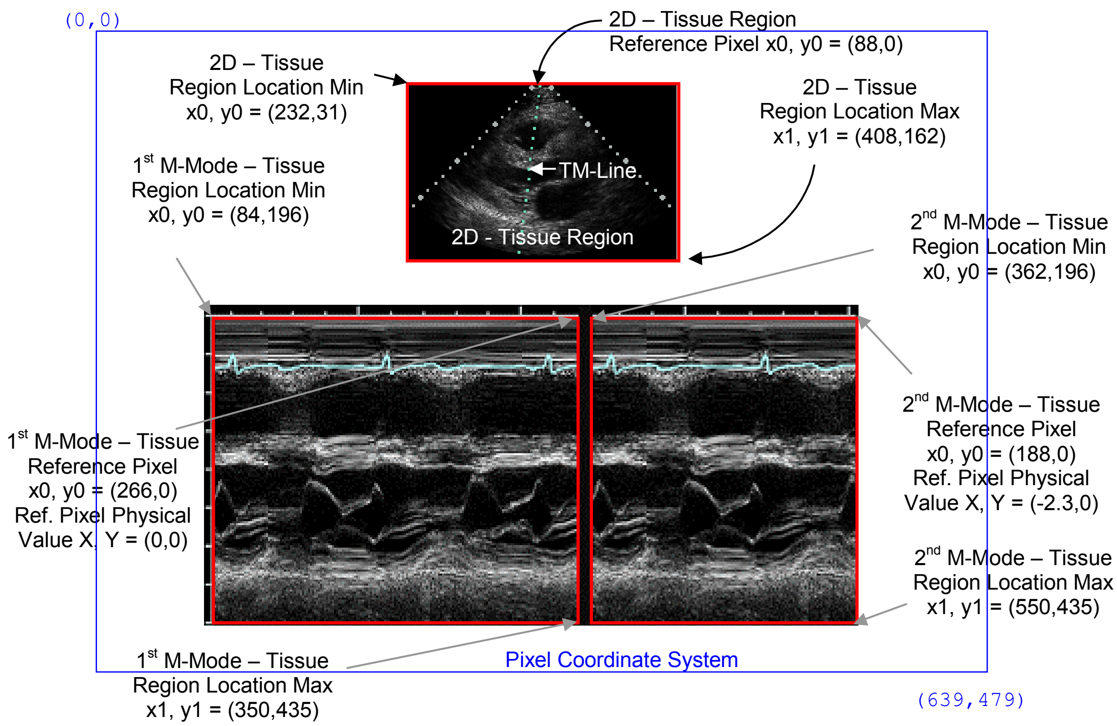


Figure C.8-5
Sweep Example using Two Regions

The two region approach may also be used in Doppler or physiological sweeping regions.

Time-based display of data may also be a combination of sweeping and scrolling. Sweep-based display is used at the start of acquisition, incrementing the horizontal location of the acquired data from left to right. After the horizontal location corresponding to zero time has completely swept to the right hand limit of the region, writing scrolls to the left from the right hand limit rather than wrapping from the left. A single region should be specified when this combination of behavior is used. The x-axis (zero time) location, x, for a given frame number, y, can be calculated from the Reference Pixel x0, x0, the Reference Pixel x1, x1, the time offset for frame y, t, (determined from the Frame Time Vector (0018,1065) or Frame Time (0018,1063)) and the Physical Delta X, p_x, as follows:

$$X = \text{Min} (x0 + (t / p_x), x1)$$

C.8.5.5.1.17 Physical Delta X And Physical Delta Y

The Physical Delta X (0018,602C) is the physical value increment per positive X pixel increment, which is left to right. The Physical Delta Y (0018,602E) is the physical value increment per positive Y pixel increment which is top to bottom.

Note: When displaying Doppler data, ultrasound applications typically display the Doppler strip horizontally, with data sweeping (moving time origin) from left (oldest) to right (newest) or scrolling (static time origin) from right to left. The default display of positive velocity values normally indicates flow toward the transducer; negative velocity values indicate flow away from the transducer. In this case a negative Physical Delta Y is required to specify that the direction of positive velocities or frequencies is upward.

C.8.5.5.1.18 Pixel Value Mapping Code Sequence

The Pixel Value Mapping Code Sequence (0040,9098) provides the real world values for pixel values identified in the Table of Pixel Values (0018,6058). The number of items in the sequence is given by Number of Table Entries (0018,6056).

Note: Pixel Component Physical Units (0018,604C) does not apply to Sequence of Pixel Value Codes and should be set to 0000H (none or not applicable).

C.8.5.6 US Image Module

Table C.8-18 specifies the Attributes that describe ultrasound images.

Table C.8-18
US IMAGE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Samples Per Pixel	(0028,0002)	1	Number of samples (planes) in this image. See C.8.5.6.1.12 for specialization
Photometric Interpretation	(0028,0004)	1	Specifies the intended interpretation of the pixel data. See C.8.5.6.1.2 for specialization.
Bits Allocated	(0028,0100)	1	Number of bits allocated for each pixel sample. See C.8.5.6.1.13 for specialization.
Bits Stored	(0028,0101)	1	Number of bits stored for each pixel sample. See C.8.5.6.1.14 for specialization.
High Bit	(0028,0102)	1	Most significant bit for pixel sample data. See C.8.5.6.1.15 for specialization.
Planar Configuration	(0028,0006)	1C	Indicates whether the pixel data are sent color-by-plane or color-by-pixel. Required if Samples per Pixel (0028,0002) has a value greater than 1. See C.8.5.6.1.16 for specialization.

Pixel Representation	(0028,0103)	1	Data representation of pixel samples. See C.8.5.6.1.3 for specialization.
Frame Increment Pointer	(0028,0009)	1C	Contains the Data Element Tag of the attribute which is used as the frame increment in Multi-frame pixel data (see C.7.6.6). Required if Number of Frames is sent. See C.8.5.6.1.4 for specialization.
Image Type	(0008,0008)	2	Image identification characteristics. See C.8.5.6.1.1 for specialization.
Lossy Image Compression	(0028,2110)	1C	Specifies whether an Image has undergone lossy compression. Enumerated Values: 00 = Image has NOT been subjected to lossy compression. 01 = Image has been subjected to lossy compression. See C.7.6.1.1.5 Required if Lossy Compression has been performed on the Image.
Number of Stages	(0008,2124)	2C	Number of Stages in this protocol. Required if image was acquired in a Staged protocol.
Number of Views in Stage	(0008,212A)	2C	Number of views in this Stage. Required if image was acquired in a Staged protocol.
R Wave Time Vector	(0018,6060)	3	The time offset(s) of the reported R Wave peaks, each relative to the time of the start of the acquisition of the first frame in msec. Multi-valued, with one value per reported R Wave.
Ultrasound Color Data Present	(0028,0014)	3	This element indicates if any ultrasound color data is present in an image. Enumerated Values: 00 = Ultrasound color data not present in image 01 = Ultrasound color data is present in image. See C.8.5.6.10
Stage Name	(0008,2120)	3	A Stage is a particular time slice of a protocol in which a set of images are collected. The names can be free form text. Recommended text for Stress Echo stage names are: PRE-EXERCISE, POST-EXERCISE, PEAK-EXERCISE, RECOVERY, BASELINE,

			LOW DOSE, PEAK DOSE
Stage Code Sequence	(0040,000A)	3	Sequence of items describing the performed Ultrasound Protocol Stage(s).
>Include "Code Sequence Macro" Table 8.8-1.		*Baseline Context ID is 12002.*	
Stage Number	(0008,2122)	3	A number that identifies the Stage. Stage Number starts at one.
View Name	(0008,2127)	3	A View is a particular combination of the position and orientation when a set of images are acquired. Images are acquired at the same View in different Stages for the purpose of comparison.
View Number	(0008,2128)	3	A number that identifies the View. View Number starts at one.
Number of Event Timers	(0008,2129)	3	The number of event timers used at the time of acquisition of a Multi-frame image.
Event Elapsed Time(s)	(0008,2130)	3	An array of values associated with each event timer. Units in milliseconds.
Event Timer Name(s)	(0008,2132)	3	Name that identifies the event timer.
Include 'General Anatomy Optional Macro' Table 10-7			For intravascular ultrasound, DCIDs 3010 and 3015 are specified for the Anatomic Region Sequence and DCID 3019 is specified for the Anatomic Region Modifier Sequence. No other Context IDs are specified.
View Code Sequence	(0054,0220)	3	Sequence that describes the view of the patient anatomy in this image. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this Sequence. See Section C.8.5.6.1.19.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*See Section C.8.5.6.1.19 for Context Group IDs.*	
>View Modifier Code Sequence	(0054,0222)	3	Sequence that provides modifiers for the view of the patient anatomy. Zero or more Items shall be permitted in this Sequence. See Section C.8.5.6.1.19.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*See Section C.8.5.6.1.19 for Context Group IDs.*	
Acquisition Datetime	(0008,002A)	1C	The date and time that the acquisition of data that resulted in this image started. Required if Modality (0008,0060) = IVUS May be present otherwise. Note: The synchronization of this time with an external clock is specified in the Synchronization Module in Acquisition Time Synchronized (0018,1800).
Trigger Time	(0018,1060)	3	Time interval measured in msec from the

			start of the R-wave to the beginning of data taking
Nominal Interval	(0018,1062)	3	Average R-R interval used for these data, in msec
Beat Rejection Flag	(0018,1080)	3	Beat length sorting has been applied. Enumerated Values: Y = yes N = no
Low R-R Value	(0018,1081)	3	R-R interval low limit for beat rejection, in msec
High R-R Value	(0018,1082)	3	R-R interval high limit for beat rejection, in msec
Heart Rate	(0018,1088)	3	Beats per minute.
IVUS Acquisition	(0018,3100)	1C	Defined Terms: MOTOR_PULLBACK MANUAL_PULLBACK SELECTIVE GATED_PULLBACK See C.8.5.6.1.21 Required if Modality (0008,0060) = IVUS
IVUS Pullback Rate	(0018,3101)	1C	Required if IVUS Acquisition (0018,3100) value is MOTOR_PULLBACK. Specified in units of mm/sec. See C.8.5.6.1.22
IVUS Gated Rate	(0018,3102)	1C	Required if IVUS Acquisition (0018,3100) value is GATED_PULLBACK. Specified in units of mm/beat. See C.8.5.6.1.23
IVUS Pullback Start Frame Number	(0018,3103)	1C	Required if IVUS Acquisition (0018,3100) value is MOTOR_PULLBACK or GATED_PULLBACK. See C.8.5.6.1.24
IVUS Pullback Stop Frame Number	(0018,3104)	1C	Required if IVUS Acquisition (0018,3100) value is MOTOR_PULLBACK or GATED_PULLBACK. See C.8.5.6.1.25
Lesion Number	(0018,3105)	3	Identifier(s) of the lesion(s) of interest imaged within the current SOP Instance. Each lesion shall have a unique numeric integer identifier within the study. See C.8.5.6.1.26.
Output Power	(0018,5000)	3	Manufacturer defined character string description of ultrasound output level(s) used in generating a given image. Data may be expressed in dB, %, W/cm^2, etc.
Transducer Data	(0018,5010)	3	Manufacturer defined code or description

			of ultrasound transducer used.
Transducer Type	(0018,6031)	3	Defined Terms: SECTOR_PHASED SECTOR_MECH SECTOR_ANNULAR LINEAR CURVED LINEAR SINGLE CRYSTAL SPLIT XTAL CWD IV_PHASED IV_ROT XTAL IV_ROT MIRROR ENDOCAV_PA ENDOCAV_MECH ENDOCAV_CLA ENDOCAV_AA ENDOCAV_LINEAR VECTOR_PHASED
Focus Depth	(0018,5012)	3	The depth, from the transducer face, of the manufacturer defined beam focus used for the image, in cm.
Preprocessing Function	(0018,5020)	3	Manufacturer defined description of processing of echo information. Data may include code or description of gain (initial, overall, TGC, dynamic range, etc.), preprocessing, postprocessing, Doppler processing parameters, e.g. cutoff filters, etc., as used in generating a given image.
Mechanical Index	(0018,5022)	3	See C.8.5.6.1.8 for Description.
Bone Thermal Index	(0018,5024)	3	See C.8.5.6.1.8 for Description.
Cranial Thermal Index	(0018,5026)	3	See C.8.5.6.1.8 for Description.
Soft Tissue Thermal Index	(0018,5027)	3	See C.8.5.6.1.8 for Description.
Soft Tissue-focus Thermal Index	(0018,5028)	3	See C.8.5.6.1.8 for Description.
Soft Tissue-surface Thermal Index	(0018,5029)	3	See C.8.5.6.1.8 for Description.
Depth of Scan Field	(0018,5050)	3	The depth, in mm, from the transducer face to the deepest point included in the displayed image– the field of view.
Overlay Subtype	(60xx,0045)	3	Defined term which identifies the intended purpose of the ROI Overlay Type. See C.8.5.6.1.11 for specialization.

Note: Referenced Overlay Sequence (0008,1130) and Referenced Curve Sequence (0008,1145) were previously included in this Module as optional Attributes but have been retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.8.5.6.1 US Image Attribute Descriptions

C.8.5.6.1.1 Image Type

For US Images, Image Type (0008,0008) is specified to be Type 2. The Defined Terms for Value 3 are:

ABDOMINAL	BREAST	CHEST
ENDOCAVITARY	ENDORECTAL	ENDOVAGINAL
EPICARDIAL	FETAL HEART	GYNECOLOGY
INTRACARDIAC	INTRAOPERATIVE	INTRAVASCULAR
MUSCULOSKELETAL	NEONATAL HEAD	OBSTETRICAL
OPHTHALMIC	PEDIATRIC	PELVIC
RETROPERITONEAL	SCROTAL	SMALL PARTS
TEE	THYROID	TRANSCRANIAL
TTE	US BIOPSY	VASCULAR

Value 4 is constructed as a modality bit map to allow for a description of multi-modality displays. In using this bit map, the sum of the values of the various modalities will unambiguously determine the constituent modalities.

0001 = 2D Imaging	0002 = M-Mode	0004 = CW Doppler
0008 = PW Doppler	0010 = Color Doppler	0020 = Color M-Mode
0040 = 3D Rendering	0100 = Color Power Mode	0200 = Tissue Characterization

Notes: 1. All Values are hexadecimal encoded as a CS. See PS 3.5.

2. For example, Color Flow with CW spectral Doppler would have a value 4 = 0015. Note that no assumption should be made in Color Doppler or Color M-Mode regarding underlying B or M-Mode, respectively.

C.8.5.6.1.2 Photometric Interpretation

For US Images, Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) is specified to use the following Defined Terms:

MONOCHROME2	PALETTE COLOR	RGB
ARGB (retired)	YBR_FULL	YBR_FULL_422
YBR_PARTIAL_422	YBR_RCT	YBR_ICT
YBR_PARTIAL_420		

Note: It is recommended that future implementations should not use ARGB photometric interpretation.

See PS 3.5 for restrictions imposed by compressed Transfer Syntaxes.

C.8.5.6.1.3 Pixel Representation

For US Images, Pixel Representation (0028,0103) is specified to use the following Enumerated Value:

0000H = unsigned integer

C.8.5.6.1.4 Frame Increment Pointer

For US Multi-frame images, the Attribute Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) of the Multi-frame Module (see Section C.7.6.6) is specified by the following Defined Terms:

00181063 = sequencing by Frame Time (0018,1063)

00181065 = sequencing by Frame Time Vector (0018,1065)

C.8.5.6.1.5 Retired

C.8.5.6.1.6 Retired

C.8.5.6.1.7 Retired

C.8.5.6.1.8 Mechanical Index, Bone Thermal Index, Cranial Thermal Index, Soft Tissue Thermal Index

The thermal and/or mechanical indices, when made available by a manufacturer, are defined according to the *Standard for Real-Time Display of Thermal and Mechanical Acoustic Output Indices on Diagnostic Ultrasound Equipment*, a voluntary performance standard jointly published by AIUM and NEMA.

C.8.5.6.1.9 Image Transformation Matrix and Image Translation Vector

This section was defined in a previous version of the DICOM Standard. The Section is now retired. See PS 3.3 2003.

C.8.5.6.1.10 Ultrasound Color Data Present

Note: This data element can be used to indicate if an image contains any Ultrasound color data.

For example: Some Ultrasound images may have a Photometric Interpretation equal to RGB but the image will have no color information if R=G=B for all pixels.

For consistency within a particular implementation Monochrome Ultrasound images may be coded using a color photometric interpretation. In that case inclusion of this data element can significantly speed up processing. Since all components are known to be equal only one need be handled. The enhancements can be significant when compressed Transfer Syntaxes are used.

C.8.5.6.1.11 Overlay Subtype

For US Images, Overlay Subtype (60xx,0045) shall use the following Defined Terms:

ACTIVE 2D/BMODE IMAGE AREA = identification of the active area of a 2D/B-mode image.

C.8.5.6.1.12 Samples Per Pixel

For US Images, Samples Per Pixel (0028,0002) is specified to use the following values for specific Photometric Interpretations:

Table C.8-19
US SAMPLES PER PIXEL

Photometric Interpretation	Samples Per Pixel Value
MONOCHROME2	1
RGB	3
YBR_FULL	3
YBR_FULL_422	3
YBR_PARTIAL_422	3
YBR_RCT	3
YBR_ICT	3

YBR_PARTIAL_420	3
PALETTE COLOR	1

C.8.5.6.1.13 Bits Allocated

For US Images, Bits Allocated (0028,0100) is specified to use the following values for specific Photometric Interpretations:

Table C.8-20
US BITS ALLOCATED

Photometric Interpretation	Bits Allocated Value
MONOCHROME2	8
RGB	8
YBR_FULL	8
YBR_FULL_422	8
YBR_PARTIAL_422	8
YBR_RCT	8
YBR_ICT	8
YBR_PARTIAL_420	8
PALETTE COLOR	8 - 8 bit palette, or 16 - 16 bit palette

C.8.5.6.1.14 Bits Stored

For US Images, Bits Stored (0028,0101) is specified to use the following values for specific Photometric Interpretations:

Table C.8-21
US BITS STORED

Photometric Interpretation	Bits Stored Value
MONOCHROME2	8
RGB	8
YBR_FULL	8
YBR_FULL_422	8
YBR_PARTIAL_422	8
YBR_RCT	8
YBR_ICT	8
YBR_PARTIAL_420	8
PALETTE COLOR	8 - 8 bit palette, or 16 - 16 bit palette

C.8.5.6.1.15 High Bit

For US Images, High Bit (0028,0102) is specified to use the following values for specific Photometric Interpretations:

Table C.8-22
US HIGH BIT

Photometric Interpretation	High Bit Value
MONOCHROME2	7
RGB	7
YBR_FULL	7
YBR_FULL_422	7
YBR_PARTIAL_422	7
YBR_RCT	7
YBR_ICT	7
YBR_PARTIAL_420	7
PALETTE COLOR	7 - 8 bit palette, or 15 - 16 bit palette

C.8.5.6.1.16 Planar Configuration

For US Images, Planar Configuration (0028,0006) is specified to use the following values for specific Photometric Interpretations:

Table C.8-23
US PLANAR CONFIGURATION

Photometric Interpretation	Planar Configuration Value
RGB	0 - color-by-pixel, or 1 - color-by-plane
YBR_FULL	1
YBR_FULL_422	0
YBR_PARTIAL_422	0
YBR_RCT	0
YBR_ICT	0
YBR_PARTIAL_420	0

C.8.5.6.1.19 View Code Sequence

The view of the patient anatomy may be described using coded terminology in the View Code Sequence (0054,0220). The view is typically specified by transducer position relative to the patient anatomy and/or transducer orientation,

The view may be described by a single Code Sequence Item, or by combination of post-coordinated Code Sequence Items. The principal coded item is specified in View Code Sequence, and modifier terms in the View Modifier Code Sequence (0054,0222). The Baseline Context IDs for post-coordinated encoding of view are:

- BCID 4 Anatomic Region (typically used for the primary coded item)
- BCID 5 Transducer Approach
- BCID 6 Transducer Orientation
- BCID 7 Ultrasound Beam Path

Any of these Context Groups may be used in either the View Code Sequence or the View Modifier Code Sequence.

For cardiac imaging, a Baseline Context ID with pre-coordinated view codes is specified:

- BCID 12226 Echocardiography Image View

Note: Transducer Position Sequence (0008,2240) and Transducer Orientation Sequence (0008,2244), defined in this module in an earlier edition of the Standard (see PS3.3-2004), are retired.

C.8.5.6.1.20 (Retired)

C.8.5.6.1.21 IVUS Acquisition

This attribute denotes which of the following defined terms describes the method used to acquire the IVUS Images.

MOTOR_PULLBACK: The IVUS imaging catheter is positioned in the blood vessel under examination distal to the anatomical structures to be examined. Then the catheter is attached to a motorized mechanism capable of withdrawing the catheter through the vessel at a constant velocity specified by the attribute IVUS Pullback Rate (0018,3101) from the defined IVUS Pullback Start Frame Number (0018,3103) (see C.8.5.6.1.24) to the IVUS Pullback Stop Frame Number (0018,3104) (see C.8.5.6.1.25).

MANUAL_PULLBACK: The IVUS imaging catheter is positioned in the blood vessel under examination distal to the anatomical structures to be examined. Then the catheter is manually withdrawn through the vessel region of interest.

SELECTIVE: The IVUS imaging catheter is positioned in the blood vessel under examination near the anatomical structures to be examined. Then the catheter is manually withdrawn or advanced through the vessel region of interest.

GATED_PULLBACK: The IVUS imaging catheter is positioned in the blood vessel under examination distal to the anatomical structures to be examined. Then the catheter is attached to a motorized mechanism capable of withdrawing the catheter through the vessel at a rate specified by the attribute IVUS Gated Rate (0018,3102), once per heart cycle, from the defined IVUS Pullback Start Frame Number (0018,3103) (see C.8.5.6.1.24) to the IVUS Pullback Stop Frame Number (0018,3104) (see C.8.5.6.1.25).

C.8.5.6.1.22 IVUS Pullback Rate

The attribute IVUS Pullback Rate (0018,3101) is required when IVUS Acquisition (0018,3100) is MOTOR_PULLBACK and it specifies the velocity of withdrawal of the IVUS imaging catheter in millimeters per second.

C.8.5.6.1.23 IVUS Gated Rate

The attribute IVUS Gated Rate (0018,3102) is required when IVUS Acquisition (0018,3100) is GATED_PULLBACK and it specifies the velocity of withdrawal of the IVUS imaging catheter in millimeters per beat.

C.8.5.6.1.24 IVUS Pullback Start Frame Number

The IVUS Pullback Start Frame Number (0018,3103) specifies the frame number of a IVUS multi-frame acquisition upon which motorized or gated pullback begins.

C.8.5.6.1.25 IVUS Pullback Stop Frame Number

The IVUS Pullback Stop Frame Number (0018,3104) specifies the frame number of a IVUS multi-frame acquisition upon which motorized or gated pullback ends.

C.8.5.6.1.26 Lesion Number

Attribute Lesion Number identifies the lesion(s) of interest imaged within the current SOP Instance. Each lesion shall have a unique numeric integer identifier within the study. If during a study the same lesion is imaged more than once, the same Lesion Number should be used for both SOP Instances.

Notes: 1.Lesion Number is not a DICOM UID.

2.An IVUS pullback may contain multiple values in Lesion Number.

C.8.6 Secondary Capture Modules

C.8.6.1 SC Equipment Module

This Module describes equipment used to convert images into a DICOM format.

Table C.8-24
SC EQUIPMENT MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Conversion Type	(0008,0064)	1	Describes the kind of image conversion. Defined Terms : DV = Digitized Video DI = Digital Interface DF = Digitized Film WSD = Workstation SD = Scanned Document SI = Scanned Image DRW = Drawing SYN = Synthetic Image
Modality	(0008,0060)	3	Source equipment for the image. This type definition shall override the definition in the General Series Module. See C.7.3.1.1.1 for Defined Terms.
Secondary Capture Device ID	(0018,1010)	3	User defined identification of the device that converted the image
Secondary Capture Device Manufacturer	(0018,1016)	3	Manufacturer of the Secondary Capture Device
Secondary Capture Device Manufacturer's Model Name	(0018,1018)	3	Manufacturer's model number of the Secondary Capture Device
Secondary Capture Device Software Version	(0018,1019)	3	Manufacturer's designation of software version of the Secondary Capture Device
Video Image Format Acquired	(0018,1022)	3	Original format of the captured video image (e.g. NTSC, PAL, Videomed-H)
Digital Image Format Acquired	(0018,1023)	3	Additional information about digital interface used to acquire the image

Notes: 1. The Attributes specified in the General equipment Module (see Table C.7-6) describe the equipment which created the image being captured. The Attributes of the SC Equipment Module define the equipment that captured the image. The following table illustrates typical scenarios for different conversion types:

Conversion Type (0008,0064)	General Equipment	Secondary Capture Equipment
Digitized Video (DV)	The equipment generating the video signal.	The equipment digitizing the video signal.
Digital Interface (DI)	The equipment on the sending side of the digital interface.	The equipment on the receiving side of the digital interface.
Digitized Film (DF)	The equipment which created the film.	The equipment digitizing the film.
Workstation (WSD)	Application dependent, but often the equipment which placed the	The equipment which captured the image from the screen, or

	image on the workstation screen, or created the modified image.	which placed the modified image into a DICOM SOP Instance.
Scanned Document (SD)	The equipment which created the document.	The equipment digitizing the document.
Scanned Image (SI)	The equipment which created the image that was digitized.	The equipment digitizing the image.
Drawing (DRW)	The equipment which created the drawing.	The equipment digitizing (or rasterizing) the drawing.
Synthetic Image (SYN)	The equipment creating the original images from which the synthetic image was derived.	The equipment creating the synthetic image.

2. The Attribute Modality (0008,0060) specified in the General Series Module (see Table C.7-4) has been specialized by this Module and is defined as a Type 3 Attribute.

C.8.6.2 SC Image Module

Table C.8-25 contains IOD Attributes that describe Secondary Capture Images.

Table C.8-25
SC IMAGE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Date of Secondary Capture	(0018,1012)	3	The date the Secondary Capture Image was captured.
Time of Secondary Capture	(0018,1014)	3	The time the Secondary Capture Image was captured.
Nominal Scanned Pixel Spacing	(0018,2010)	3	Physical distance on the media being digitized or scanned between the center of each pixel, specified by a numeric pair - adjacent row spacing (delimiter) adjacent column spacing in mm. See 10.7.1.3 for further explanation of the value order. Shall be consistent with Pixel Aspect Ratio (0028,0034), if present.
Include Basic Pixel Spacing Calibration Macro (Table 10-10)			

Note: The Attributes specified in the General Image Module (see Table C.7-7) describe this image (ie. the secondary capture image). For example, Instance Number (0020,0013) is the image number of the secondary capture image. Source Image Sequence (0008,2112) may reference the DICOM image from which this image was generated.

C.8.6.3 SC Multi-frame Image Module

Table C.8-25b contains IOD Attributes that describe SC Multi-frame images.

Table C.8-25b
SC MULTI-FRAME IMAGE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Burned In Annotation	(0028,0301)	1	Indicates whether or not image contains sufficient burned in annotation to identify the patient and date the image was acquired.

			Enumerated Values: YES NO
Presentation LUT Shape	(2050,0020)	1C	Specifies an identity transformation for the Presentation LUT, such that the output of all grayscale transformations defined in the IOD containing this Module are defined to be P-Values. Enumerated Values: IDENTITY - output is in P-Values. Required if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) is MONOCHROME2, and BitsStored (0028,0101) is greater than 1. Note: If the VOI LUT Module is required by the IOD but no VOI LUT Sequence (0028,3010) or Window Center (0028,1050) is present, then the VOI LUT stage is an identity transformation.
Illumination	(2010,015E)	3	Luminance of a hypothetical viewing device illuminating a piece of monochrome transmissive film, or for the case of reflective media, luminance obtainable from diffuse reflection of the illumination present. Expressed as L_0, in candelas per square meter (cd/m^2). Note: May be used together with Reflected Ambient Light (2010,0160) to recover Optical Density information from P-Values. See C.8.6.3.1.
Reflected Ambient Light	(2010,0160)	3	For scanned monochrome transmissive film viewed on a hypothetical viewing device, the luminance contribution due to reflected ambient light. Expressed as L_a, in candelas per square meter (cd/m^2). Note: May be used together with Illumination (2010,015E) to recover Optical Density information from P-Values. See C.8.6.3.1.
Rescale Intercept	(0028,1052)	1C	The value b in the relationship between stored values (SV) in Pixel Data (7FE0,0010) and the output units specified in Rescale Type (0028,1054). Output units = m*SV + b. Enumerated Value: 0 Required if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) is MONOCHROME2, and BitsStored () is greater than 1. Note: This specifies an identity Modality LUT transformation.

Rescale Slope	(0028,1053)	1C	m in the equation specified by Rescale Intercept (0028,1052). Enumerated Value: 1 Required if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) is MONOCHROME2, and BitsStored (0028,0101) is greater than 1. Note: This specifies an identity Modality LUT transformation.
Rescale Type	(0028,1054)	1C	Specifies the output units of Rescale Slope (0028,1053) and Rescale Intercept (0028,1052). Enumerated Value: US = Unspecified Required if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) is MONOCHROME2, and BitsStored (0028,0101) is greater than 1. Note: This specifies an identity Modality LUT transformation.
Frame Increment Pointer	(0028,0009)	1C	Contains the Data Element Tag of the attribute which is used as the frame increment in Multi-frame pixel data. See C.7.6.6.1.1 for further explanation. Shall be present if Number of Frames is greater than 1, overriding (specializing) the Type 1 requirement on this attribute in the Multi-frame Module.
Nominal Scanned Pixel Spacing	(0018,2010)	1C	Physical distance on the media being digitized or scanned between the center of each pixel, specified by a numeric pair - adjacent row spacing (delimiter) adjacent column spacing in mm. See 10.7.1.3 for further explanation of the value order. Required if Conversion Type (0008,0064) is DF (Digitized Film). May also be present if Conversion Type (0008,0064) is SD (Scanned Document) or SI (Scanned Image). Shall be consistent with Pixel Aspect Ratio(0028,0034), if present.
Include Basic Pixel Spacing Calibration Macro (Table 10-10)			
Digitizing Device Transport Direction	(0018,2020)	3	Enumerated Values: ROW COLUMN
Rotation of Scanned Film	(0018,2030)	3	Angle of the edge of the film relative to the transport direction in degrees greater than or equal to -45 and less than or equal to +45.

C.8.6.3.1 Scanned Film, Optical Density and P-Values

Illumination (2010,015E) and Reflected Ambient Light (2010,0160) may be used to recover Optical Density information from P-Values.

Monochrome media that is being digitized is often measured in Optical Density values. These values need to be converted to P-Values for storage and display. The P-Values used in an image correspond to the perception of a human observer viewing the film on a hypothetical viewing device (such as a light box), using the specified values of Illumination (2010,015E) and Reflected Ambient Light (2010,0160).

The Grayscale Standard Display Function defined in PS 3.14 is used to convert Luminance to P-Values. In the case of scanned film, the Luminance is derived from Optical Density using the specified values of Illumination (2010,015E) and Reflected Ambient Light (2010,0160). An example of this derivation, as well as typical "default" values for these parameters, is specified in PS 3.14.

C.8.6.4 SC Multi-frame Vector Module

Table C.8-25c contains IOD Attributes that may be the target of the Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) for SC Multi-frame images.

Table C.8-25c
SC MULTI-FRAME VECTOR MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Frame Time Vector	(0018,1065)	1C	An array which contains the real time increments (in msec) between frames for a Multi-frame image. See C.7.6.5.1.2 for further explanation. Required if Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) points to Frame Time Vector (0018,1065). Note: Frame Time Vector arrays may not be properly encoded if Explicit-VR transfer syntax is used and the VL of this attribute exceeds 65534 bytes.
Page Number Vector	(0018,2001)	1C	An array which contains, for each of the image frames, the corresponding page numbers of the original document. Required if Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) points to Page Number Vector (0018,2001).
Frame Label Vector	(0018,2002)	1C	An array which contains, for each of the image frames, a descriptive label. Required if Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) points to Frame Label Vector (0018,2002).
Frame Primary Angle Vector	(0018,2003)	1C	An array which contains, for each of the image frames, the primary angle of rotation about an undefined axis, in degrees. May be used for annotative purposes for "cine loops" of 3D reprojected images

			Required if Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) points to Frame Primary Angle Vector (0018,2003).
Frame Secondary Angle Vector	(0018,2004)	1C	An array which contains, for each of the image frames, the secondary angle of rotation about an undefined axis that is orthogonal to that used for Frame Primary Angle Vector (0018,2003), in degrees. May be used for annotative purposes for “cine loops” of 3D reprojected images Required if Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) points to Frame Secondary Angle Vector (0018,2004).
Slice Location Vector	(0018,2005)	1C	Relative position of exposure expressed in mm, as defined for Slice Location (0020,1041). See C.7.6.2.1.2 for further explanation. Required if Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) points to Slice Location Vector (0018,2005).
Display Window Label Vector	(0018,2006)	1C	An array which contains, for each of the image frames, a label or number of the display window of a graphical user interface from which the frame was captured. Required if Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) points to Display Window Label Vector (0018,2006).

C.8.7 X-Ray Modules

This Section describes Modules used in one or more X-Ray IODs. These Modules contain Attributes that are specific to X-Ray images.

C.8.7.1 X-Ray Image Module

Table C.8-26
X-RAY IMAGE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Frame Increment Pointer	(0028,0009)	1C	Required if Multi-Frame Image. Contains the Data Element Tag of the attribute that is used as the Frame increment in Multi-frame image pixel data (See C.7.6.6). Specialized for X-Ray as Enumerated Value: 00181063H = Frame Time (0018,1063); 00181065H = Frame Time Vector (0018,1065).
Lossy Image Compression	(0028,2110)	1C	Specifies whether an Image has undergone lossy compression. Enumerated Values: 00 = Image has NOT been subjected to lossy compression. 01 = Image has been subjected to lossy compression. See C.7.6.1.1.5 Required if Lossy Compression has been performed on the Image.
Image Type	(0008,0008)	1	Image identification characteristics. See C.8.7.1.1.1 for specialization.
Pixel Intensity Relationship	(0028,1040)	1	The relationship between the Pixel sample values and the X-Ray beam intensity. See Section C.8.7.1.1.2.
Samples per Pixel	(0028,0002)	1	Number of samples (color planes) in this image shall have a value of 1.
Photometric Interpretation	(0028,0004)	1	Specifies the intended interpretation of the pixel data. Only MONOCHROME2 may be used.
Bits Allocated	(0028,0100)	1	Number of bits allocated for each pixel sample. See Section C.8.7.1.1.6.
Bits Stored	(0028,0101)	1	Number of bits stored for each pixel sample. See Section C.8.7.1.1.7.
High Bit	(0028,0102)	1	Most significant bit for pixel sample data. See Section C.8.7.1.1.8.

Pixel Representation	(0028,0103)	1	Data representation of the pixel samples. Shall have the value: 0000H = Unsigned Integer.
Scan Options	(0018,0022)	3	Parameters of scanning sequence. See Section C. 8.7.1.1.4.
Include 'General Anatomy Optional Macro' Table 10-7			No Context ID for the Anatomic Region Sequence is defined.
R Wave Pointer	(0028,6040)	3	Marks the location(s) of the R Wave in the cardiac cycles by referencing frame numbers; frame numbers begin with 1.
Referenced Image Sequence	(0008,1140)	1C	A sequence which provides reference to a set of Image SOP Class/Instance identifying other images significantly related to this image. Shall be present if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 3 is BIPLANE A or BIPLANE B. May be present otherwise. One or more items may be included in this sequence.. See Section C.8.7.1.1.12.
>Include 'Image SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table 10-3			
>Purpose of Reference Code Sequence	(0040,A170)	2	Describes the purpose for which the reference is made. Onlya single Item shall be permitted in this Sequence.
>>Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1			*Defined Context ID 7201*
Derivation Description	(0008,2111)	3	A text description of how this image was derived. See C.8.7.1.1.5 for further explanation.
Acquisition Device Processing Description	(0018,1400)	3	Indicates any visual processing performed on the images prior to exchange. See Section C.8.7.1.1.3.
Frame Label Vector	(0018,2002)	3	A multi-valued attribute that contains a descriptive label for each of the image frames. The number of values shall equal the number of frames.
Frame Dimension Pointer	(0028,000A)	3	Contains the Data Element Tags of one or more attributes that vary or increment for the frames of a multi-frame image. See C.8.7.1.1.12. Shall not be present if it would contain only one value and that value would be Frame Time (0018,1063) or Frame Time Vector (0018,1065).
Calibration Image	(0050,0004)	3	Indicates whether a reference object (phantom) of known size is present in the image and was used for calibration. Enumerated Values: YES

			NO Device is identified using the Device module. See C.7.6.12.

C.8.7.1.1 X-Ray Image Attribute Descriptions

C.8.7.1.1.1 Image Type

The Image Type attribute identifies important image characteristics in a multiple valued data element. For X-Ray, Image Type is specialized as follows:

a. Value 1 shall identify the Pixel Data Characteristics in accordance with Section C.7.6.1.1.2; Enumerated Values are: ORIGINAL and DERIVED;

b. Value 2 shall identify the Patient Examination Characteristics in accordance with Section C.7.6.1.1.2; Enumerated Values are: PRIMARY and SECONDARY.

Note: X-Ray images generally use PRIMARY value for images captured from patient exposure.

c. Value 3 shall identify the image set in terms of the imaging planes. Enumerated Values are:

SINGLE PLANE	Image is a single plane acquisition;
BIPLANE A	Image is the first plane (e.g., Frontal) of a Bi-plane acquisition;
BIPLANE B	Image is the second plane (e.g., Lateral) of a Bi-plane acquisition

d. Other Values are implementation specific (optional).

C.8.7.1.1.2 Pixel Intensity Relationship

Pixel Intensity Relationship (0028,1040) shall identify the relationship of the pixel values to the X-Ray beam intensity. Defined terms are:

LIN	Approximately proportional to X-Ray beam intensity;
LOG	Non-linear " Log Function"; A Modality LUT shall be included with the image to allow it to be scaled back to its proportional value to X-Ray beam intensity;
DISP	Ready to be displayed; A Modality LUT may be included with the image to allow it to be scaled back to its proportional value to X-Ray beam intensity. The Attribute Acquisition Device Processing Description may be used to provide some indication on the pre-processing performed to create the ready to be displayed image.

C.8.7.1.1.3 Acquisition Device Processing Description

Acquisition Device Processing Description (0018,1400) provides some indication in human readable text of the digital processing on the images before exchange. Examples of this processing are: edge enhanced, subtracted, time filtered, gamma corrected, convolved (spatially filtered).

C.8.7.1.1.4 Scan Options

The Scan Options attribute identifies any acquisition technique which was used during the acquisition of the image. Defined Terms are:

EKG	EKG Event Trigger
PHY	Physiological Event Trigger
TOMO	Tomography
CHASE	Bolus Chasing
STEP	Stepping
ROTA	Rotation

C.8.7.1.1.5 Derivation Description

If an Image is identified to be a Derived image (see C.8.9.1.1.1 Image Type), Derivation Description (0008,2111) is an optional and implementation specific text description of the way the image was derived from an original image. As applied to X-Ray images, it may be used to describe derivation operations such as edge enhancement, temporal filtering, digital subtraction, or other linear and non-linear transformations.

C.8.7.1.1.6 Bits Allocated

For X-Ray Images, Bits Allocated (0028,0100) shall have the Enumerated Value of 8 or 16.

C.8.7.1.1.7 Bits Stored

For X-Ray Images, Bits Stored (0028,0101) shall have the Enumerated Values of 8, 10, 12, or 16.

C.8.7.1.1.8 High Bit

For X-Ray Images, High Bit (0028,0102) shall have the Enumerated Value of one less than the value in Bit Stored.

C.8.7.1.1.9 Synchronization of Frame and Waveform Times

The synchronization of a multiframe X-ray image with a waveform (e.g., ECG, pressure, or respiration) encoded in a different SOP Instance is managed through the attributes of the Synchronization Module (see Section C.7.4.2) of the Frame of Reference IE.

Note: The use of a Curve IE within the X-Ray IODs was previously defined in DICOM (see PS3.3-2004). That use has been retired in favor of encoding waveform data in a separate IOD.

C.8.7.1.1.12 Frame Dimension Pointer

Frame Dimension Pointer (0028,000A) identifies attributes that vary or increment with each frame, and which are clinically significant for viewing or processing the image. This is intended for SOP Instances whose preferred clinical presentation is dependent on frame relationships other than simply time.

Defined Terms for multiframe cine from the Cine Module (see C.7.6.5) are:

00181063H = Frame Time (0018,1063)
00181065H = Frame Time Vector (0018,1065)

Defined Terms for rotational acquisition from the XA Positioner Module (see C.8.7.5) are:

00181520H = Positioner Primary Angle Increment (0018,1520)
00181521H = Positioner Secondary Angle Increment (0018,1521)

Defined Terms for stepped acquisition from the X-Ray Table Module (see C.8.7.4) are:

00181135H = Table Vertical Increment (0018,1135)
00181137H = Table Longitudinal Increment (0018,1137)
00181136H = Table Lateral Increment (0018,1136)

Defined Terms for an arbitrary labeled increment:

00182002H = Frame Label Vector (0018,2002)

Notes: 1. Previous editions of the standard did not include the optional Frame Dimension Pointer (0028,000A), but instead depended entirely on the mandatory Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009), and envisaged that only time and no other dimension would relate frames. Image creators that add the Frame Dimension Pointer (0028,000A) must anticipate that many implementations will ignore or discard this attribute when displaying or storing images and continue to assume that frames are temporally related.

2. Frame Time (0018,1063) or Frame Time Vector (0018,1065) will also be present and will contain appropriate values consistent with the times of acquisition of the frames.

C.8.7.1.1.13 Referenced Image Sequence

When Image Type (0008,0008) Value 3 is BIPLANE A or BIPLANE B, Referenced Image Sequence (0008,1140) shall be used to identify the corresponding SOP Instance of the Biplane acquisition. In this case, either:

- only a single item shall be present, or
- multiple items may be present, each with the Purpose of Reference Code Sequence (0040,A170) present, and only the first item having the Purpose of Reference value (121314, DCM, “Other image of biplane pair”).

C.8.7.2 X-Ray Acquisition Module

Table C.8-27
X-RAY ACQUISITION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
KVP	(0018,0060)	2	Peak kilo voltage output of the X-Ray generator used.
Radiation Setting	(0018,1155)	1	Identify the general level of X-Ray dose exposure. Enumerated values are: SC = low dose exposure generally corresponding to fluoroscopic settings (e.g. preparation for diagnostic quality image acquisition); GR = high dose for diagnostic quality image acquisition (also called digital spot or cine);
X-Ray Tube Current	(0018,1151)	2C	X-Ray Tube Current in mA. Required if Exposure (0018,1152) is not present.
X-Ray Tube Current in μA	(0018,8151)	3	X-Ray Tube Current in μA.

Exposure Time	(0018,1150)	2C	Duration of X-Ray exposure in msec. See 8.7.2.1.1. Required if Exposure (0018,1152) is not present.
Exposure Time in μS	(0018,8150)	3	Duration of X-Ray exposure in μsec.
Exposure	(0018,1152)	2C	The exposure expressed in mAs, for example calculated from Exposure Time and X-ray Tube Current. Required if either Exposure Time (0018,1150) or X-Ray Tube Current (0018,1151) are not present.
Exposure in μAs	(0018,1153)	3	The exposure expressed in μAs, for example calculated from Exposure Time and X-ray Tube Current.
Grid	(0018,1166)	3	Identify the grid. Only a single value shall be present. Defined Terms are: IN = A Grid is positioned; NONE = No Grid is used.
Average Pulse Width	(0018,1154)	3	Average width of X-Ray pulse in msec.
Radiation Mode	(0018,115A)	3	Specifies X-Ray radiation mode. Defined Terms: CONTINUOUS PULSED
Type of Filters	(0018,1161)	3	Type of filter(s) inserted into the X-Ray beam (e.g. wedges).
Intensifier Size	(0018,1162)	3	Diameter of X-Ray intensifier in mm
Field of View Shape	(0018,1147)	3	Shape of the Image Intensifier Field of View. See C.8.7.2.1.2. Defined Terms are: ROUND RECTANGLE
Field of View Dimension(s)	(0018,1149)	3	Dimensions of the Image Intensifier Field of View in mm. If Rectangle, row dimension followed by column; if Round, diameter.
Imager Pixel Spacing	(0018,1164)	3	Physical distance measured at the front plane of the Image Receptor housing between the center of each pixel specified by a numeric pair - row spacing value(delimiter) column spacing value in mm. See 10.7.1.3 for further explanation of the value order. The value of this attribute shall never be adjusted to account for correction for the effect of geometric magnification or calibration against an object of known size; Pixel Spacing (0028,0030) is specified for that purpose.
Include Basic Pixel Spacing Calibration Macro (Table 10-10)			
Focal Spot	(0018,1190)	3	Nominal focal spot size in mm used to acquire this image.

Image and Fluoroscopy Area Dose Product	(0018,115E)	3	X-Ray dose, measured in dGy*cm*cm, to which the patient was exposed for the acquisition of this image plus any non-digitally recorded fluoroscopy which may have been performed to prepare for the acquisition of this image. Note: The sum of the area dose product of all images of a Series or a Study may not result in the total area dose product to which the patient was exposed.

C.8.7.2.1 X-Ray Acquisition Attribute Descriptions

C.8.7.2.1.1 Exposure Time

Exposure time is the cumulative time the patient received X-Ray exposure during this image (Multi-frame image acquisition). Calculation is pulse width * number of frames.

C.8.7.2.1.2 Field of View

The Field of View Attribute describes the shape and dimensions of the Image Intensifier Field of View (zoom mode). This could be further restricted by the Collimator. See Section C.8.7.3.

C.8.7.3 X-Ray Collimator

An X-Ray Collimator is a device placed close to the X-Ray Source to restrict the span of the X-Ray beam. It is often made of lead shutters. Figure C.8-9 presents in a graphical form its relationship with the Field Of View Dimensions (0018,1149).

Geometry of the collimator is specified with respect to a row and column coordinate system where the origin is the upper left hand pixel. This origin is specified by the values 1,1 for row/column. A row coordinate represent a number of raw spacing (vertical) and a column coordinate represents a column spacing (horizontal). Up to three different collimator shapes may be used and superimposed.

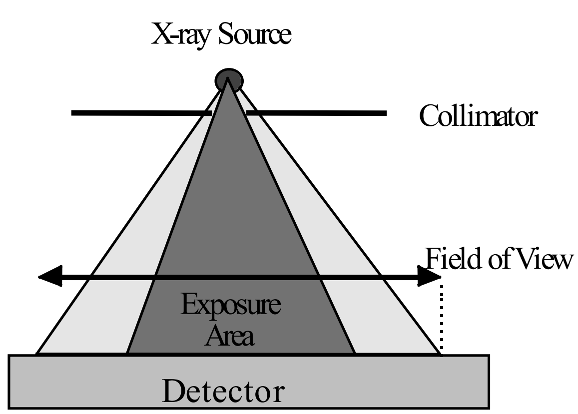


Figure C.8-9
Relationships of X-Ray Collimator

Table C.8-28
X-RAY COLLIMATOR MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Collimator Shape	(0018,1700)	1	Shape(s) of the collimator. Enumerated Values: RECTANGULAR CIRCULAR POLYGONAL This multi-valued Attribute shall contain at most one of each Enumerated Value.
Collimator Left Vertical Edge	(0018,1702)	1C	Required if Collimator Shape (0018,1700) is RECTANGULAR. Location of the left edge of the rectangular collimator with respect to pixels in the image given as column. See C.8.7.3.1.1.
Collimator Right Vertical Edge	(0018,1704)	1C	Required if Collimator Shape (0018,1700) is RECTANGULAR. Location of the right edge of the rectangular collimator with respect to pixels in the image given as column. See C.8.7.3.1.1.
Collimator Upper Horizontal Edge	(0018,1706)	1C	Required if Collimator Shape (0018,1700) is RECTANGULAR. Location of the upper edge of the rectangular collimator with respect to pixels in the image given as row. See C.8.7.3.1.1.
Collimator Lower Horizontal Edge	(0018,1708)	1C	Required if Collimator Shape (0018,1700) is RECTANGULAR. Location of the lower edge of the rectangular collimator with respect to pixels in the image given as row. See C.8.7.3.1.1.
Center of Circular Collimator	(0018,1710)	1C	Required if Collimator Shape (0018,1700) is CIRCULAR. Location of the center of the circular collimator with respect to pixels in the image given as row and column. See C.8.7.3.1.1.
Radius of Circular Collimator	(0018,1712)	1C	Required if Collimator Shape (0018,1700) is CIRCULAR. Radius of the circular collimator with respect to pixels in the image given as a number of pixels along the row direction. See C.8.7.3.1.1.
Vertices of the Polygonal Collimator	(0018,1720)	1C	Required if Collimator Shape (0018,1700) is POLYGONAL. Multiple Values where the first set of two values are: row of the origin vertex; column of the origin vertex. Two or more pairs of values follow and are the row and column coordinates of the other vertices of the polygon collimator. Polygon collimators are implicitly closed

			from the last vertex to the origin vertex and all edges shall be non-intersecting except at the vertices.

C.8.7.3.1 X-Ray Collimator Attribute Descriptions

C.8.7.3.1.1 Collimator Vertical and Horizontal Edges

These attributes specify the pixel row or column where the X-ray beam is fully obscured by a rectangular collimator:

- if the left edge of the collimator is not visible, Collimator Left Vertical Edge (0018,1702) shall have a value of 0;
- if the right edge of the collimator is not visible, Collimator Right Vertical Edge (0018,1704) value shall be 1 greater than the value of the Columns (0028,0011) attribute;
- if the top edge of the collimator is not visible, Collimator Upper Horizontal Edge (0018,1706) shall have a value of 0;
- if the bottom edge of the collimator is not visible, Collimator Lower Horizontal Edge (0018,1708) value shall be 1 greater than the value of the Rows (0028,0010) attribute.

C.8.7.4 X-Ray Table Module

Table C.8-29 contains Attributes that describe X-Ray images acquired with movement of the patient imaging table.

Table C.8-29
X-RAY TABLE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Table Motion	(0018,1134)	2	Defined terms: STATIC DYNAMIC
Table Vertical Increment	(0018,1135)	2C	Incremental change in Vertical position of the table relative to first frame of Multi-frame image given in mm. Required if Table Motion is DYNAMIC.
Table Longitudinal Increment	(0018,1137)	2C	Incremental change in Longitudinal position of the table relative to first frame of Multi-frame image in mm. Table motion towards +90°position of the primary angle of the positioner is positive. See C.8.7.4.1.2. Required if Table Motion is DYNAMIC.
Table Lateral Increment	(0018,1136)	2C	Incremental change in Lateral position of the table relative to first frame of Multi-frame image given in mm. Table motion towards +90°position of the secondary angle of the positioner is positive. See C.8.7.4.1.3. Required if Table Motion is DYNAMIC.
Table Angle	(0018,1138)	3	Angle of table plane in degrees relative to

			horizontal plane [Gravity plane]. Positive values indicate that the head of the table is upwards.

C.8.7.4.1 X-Ray Table Attribute Descriptions

C.8.7.4.1.1 Table Motion Increments

This section is replaced by section C.8.7.4.1.4

C.8.7.4.1.2 Table Longitudinal Increment

The direction of the longitudinal movement is perpendicular to the primary axis of rotation of the positioner. A positive value of Table Longitudinal Increment (0018,1137) attributes indicates a movement towards the +90° position of the positioner, see figure C.8-9a.

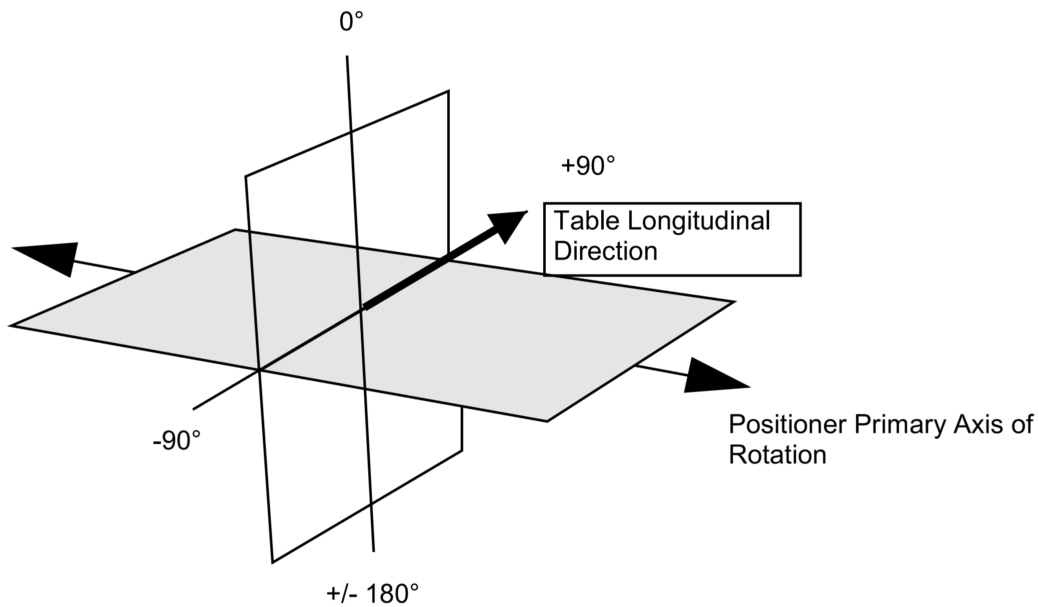


Figure C.8-9a
Table Longitudinal Movement

C.8.7.4.1.3 Table Lateral Increment

The direction of the lateral movement is perpendicular to the secondary axis of rotation of the positioner. A positive value of Table Lateral Increment (0018,1136) attributes indicates a movement towards the +90° position of the positioner, see figure C.8-9b.

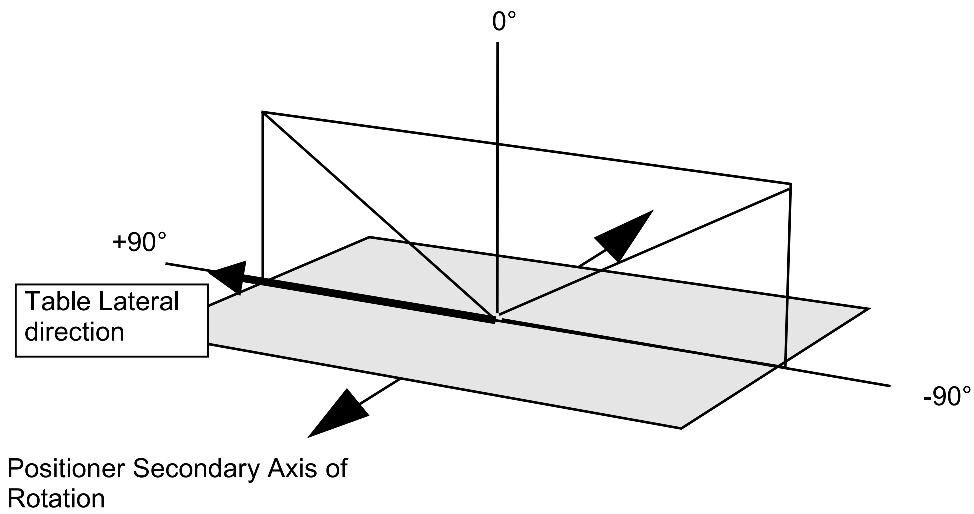


Figure C.8-9b
Table Lateral Movement

Note: The terms “longitudinal” and “lateral” are relative to an operator standing tableside, and facing the patient. Thus lateral movement is to the left and right of the operator, and longitudinal movement is towards or away from the operator.

C.8.7.4.1.4 Table Motion with Patient in relation to Imaging Chain

The table moves the Patient with respect to the imaging chain. This is being tracked as a motion of the imaging chain with respect to a coordinate system (X, Y, Z) attached to the patient (assumption is that the patient does not move with respect to the table). The coordinate system origin is fixed with respect to the patient at the time of the first frame. The X-axis is increasing to the left hand side of the patient. The Y-axis is increasing to the posterior side of the patient. The Z-axis is increasing toward the head of the patient (see Section C.7.6.2.1.1). The Patient Plane is then defined by the X and Z-axes as drawn in Figure C.8-10).

Notes: 1. Table motion causes the apparent locus of imaging to move in the opposite direction. For instance, with the patient supine and the table motion towards +90°of the primary axis of rotation of the positioner, the area of the patient imaged moves toward the right hand side of the patient.

2. When the patient is positioned prone or supine (Figure C.8-2 showing the supine position) the Table Longitudinal Increment (0018,1137) table motion takes place along the patient X-axis and the Table Lateral Increment (0018,0036) along the Z-axis. For patient positioned left or right decubitus, the Table Longitudinal Increment takes place along the Y-axis, the other direction is not changed.

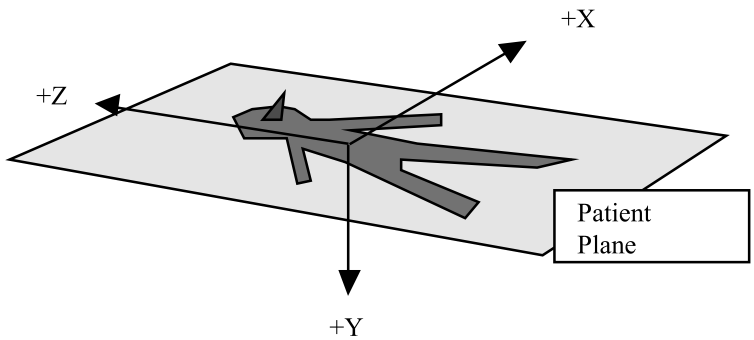


Figure C.8-10
Table Motion Vector Coordinates

C.8.7.5 XA Positioner Module

Table C.8-30 contains IOD Attributes that describe a c-arm positioner typically used in acquiring X-Ray Angiographic Images. The coordinate system used to track the positioner is defined in reference to the patient. The definition of coordinates with respect to the equipment is not supported. Furthermore, this module does not describe the movement of the Patient.

Note: The scope of the XA IOD is to address images produced on acquisition equipment equipped with an X-Ray source and an image Receptor positioned by what is general called a c-arm For clinical areas other than Angiography which are using a c-arm to position the X-Ray source and image receptor (e.g. Interventional Procedures and Myelography and Biopsy/Localization), the X-Ray Angiography Image Object should be also used. Although the object is optimized for c-arm systems, it may also be used by other systems which support a similar coordinate system, such as some RF systems.

Table C.8-30
XA POSITIONER MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Distance Source to Patient	(0018,1111)	3	Distance in mm from source to isocenter (center of field of view). Note: This value is traditionally referred to as Source Object Distance (SOD).
Distance Source to Detector	(0018,1110)	3	Distance in mm from source to detector center. Note: This value is traditionally referred to as Source Image Receptor Distance (SID).
Estimated Radiographic Magnification Factor	(0018,1114)	3	Ratio of Source Image Receptor Distance (SID) over Source Object Distance (SOD).
Positioner Motion	(0018,1500)	2C	Used to describe the activity of the imaging devices. Defined terms: DYNAMIC, STATIC. Required if Multi-frame data. See C.8.7.5.1.1.
Positioner Primary Angle	(0018,1510)	2	Position of the X-Ray Image Intensifier

			about the patient from the RAO to LAO direction where movement from RAO to vertical is positive. See C.8.7.5.1.2.
Positioner Secondary Angle	(0018,1511)	2	Position of the X-Ray Image Intensifier about the patient from the CAU to CRA direction where movement from CAU to vertical is positive. See C.8.7.5.1.2
Positioner Primary Angle Increment	(0018,1520)	2C	Incremental change in primary positioner angle for each frame. See C.8.7.5.1.3. Required if Positioner Motion is DYNAMIC.
Positioner Secondary Angle Increment	(0018,1521)	2C	Incremental change in secondary positioner angle for each frame. See C.8.7.5.1.3. Required if Positioner Motion is DYNAMIC.
Detector Primary Angle	(0018,1530)	3	Angle of the X-Ray beam in the row direction in degrees relative to the normal to the detector plane. Positive values indicate that the X-Ray beam is tilted towards higher numbered columns. Negative values indicate that the X-Ray beam is tilted towards lower numbered columns. See C.8.7.5.1.4.
Detector Secondary Angle	(0018,1531)	3	Angle of the X-Ray beam in the column direction in degrees relative to the normal to the detector plane. Positive values indicate that the X-Ray beam is tilted towards lower numbered rows. Negative values indicate that the X-Ray beam is tilted towards higher numbered rows. See C.8.7.5.1.4.

C.8.7.5.1 XA Positioner Attribute Descriptions

C.8.7.5.1.1 Positioner Motion

Positioner Motion attribute is STATIC if the imaging table moves during a multi-frame acquisition, but the X-Ray positioner do not move.

Note: If the positioner undergoes translation (non-rotational movement) during the acquisition, then that motion shall be described by an opposite table motion (See Section C.8.7.4).

C.8.7.5.1.2 Positioner Primary and Secondary Angles

The definitions of Positioner Angles shall be with respect to the patient as illustrated in Figures C.8-11 and C.8-12 Zero degree is referenced to the origin perpendicular to the patient's chest. The Positioner Primary Angle definition is like longitude (in the equatorial plan); the Positioner Secondary Angle definition is like latitude (in the sagittal plane). The Positioner Angle attributes apply to the first frame of a multi-frame image. The valid range of Primary Positioner Angle is -180 to +180 degrees and the Secondary Positioner Angle range is -90 to + 90 degrees.

The Patient Plane is defined by the isocenter of the imaging device and slices through the patient such that it is perpendicular to the sagittal plane of the body. The Primary Axis of rotation is defined at the intersection of the Patient Plane and of the Sagittal Plane. The Positioner Primary Angle is defined in the transaxial plane at the isocenter with zero degrees in the direction perpendicular to the patient's chest and + 90 degrees at the Patient left hand side (LAO) and -90 at the Patient right hand side (RAO). The valid range of Primary Positioner Angle is -180 to +180 degrees.

The Secondary Axis is in the Patient Plane and is perpendicular to the Primary Axis at the isocenter. The Positioner Secondary Angle is defined in the Sagittal Plane at the isocenter with zero degrees in the direction perpendicular to the patient's chest. +90 degrees corresponds to the cranial direction. The Secondary Positioner Angle range is -90 to + 90 degrees.

At a 0 angle for both the Primary Angle (0018,1510) and Secondary Angle (0018,1511), the patient faces the Image Intensifier.

The Positioner Primary Angle (0018,1510) and Secondary Angle (0018,1511) apply to the first frame of a multi-frame image.

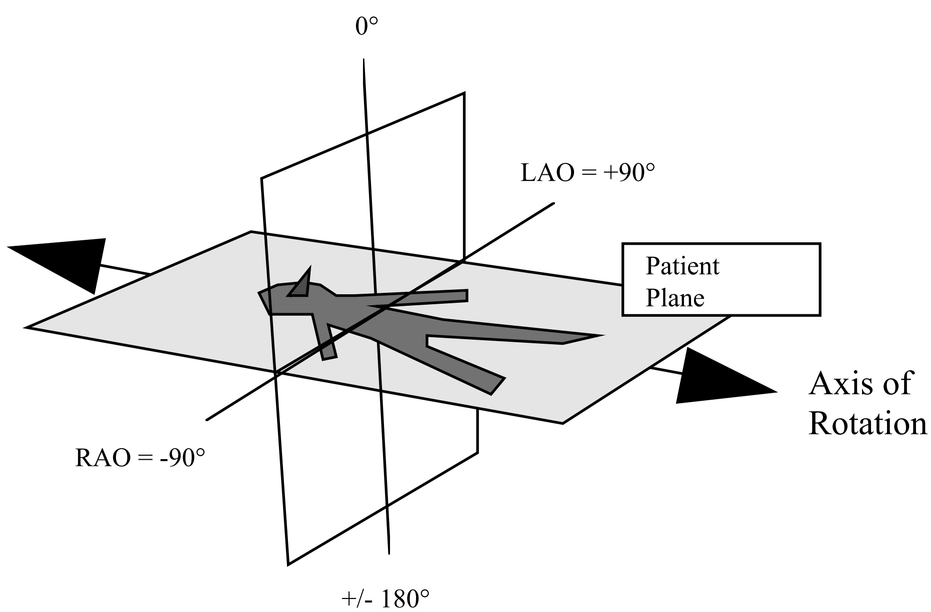


Figure C.8-11
Positioner Primary Angle

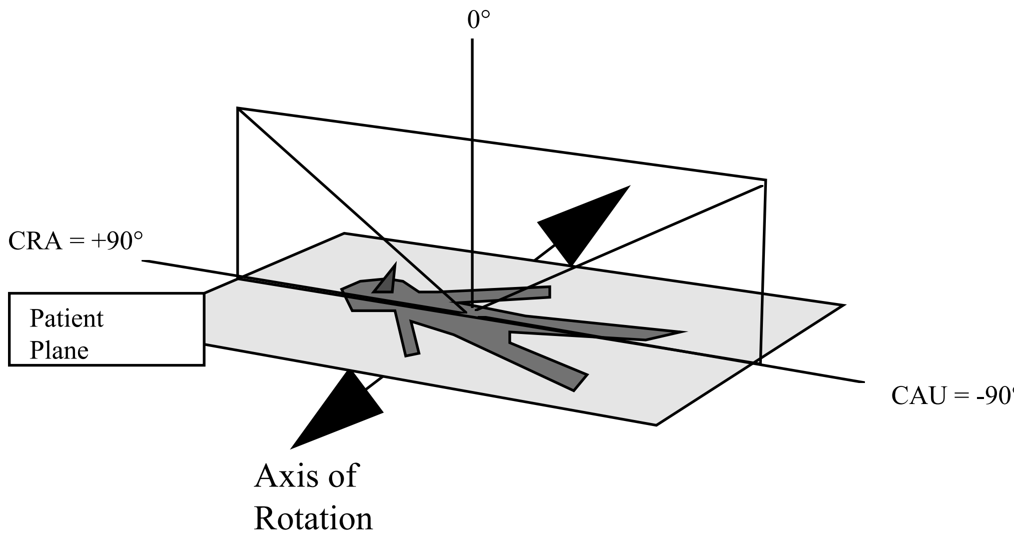


Figure C.8-12
Positioner Secondary Angle

C.8.7.5.1.3 Positioner Angle Increments

If the positioner angles change during acquisition of a multi-frame image, the Positioner Angle Increment attributes describe the angular change per frame.

If the change in positioner angle is nominally constant for each frame, these fields may contain a single value of the average angular change per frame. Alternatively, the fields may contain a vector of offsets from the (initial) Positioner Angle attributes, with one value for each frame in the multi-frame image. The number of values in the Positioner Angle Increment attributes must be one, or must be equal to the Number of Frames attribute (0028,0008) in the Multi-Frame Module (see Section C.7.6.6).

Note: It is permissible to generate a vector of the absolute positioner angles in the Positioner Angle Increment attributes, and set the Positioner Primary and Secondary Angle attributes to value 0.

C.8.7.5.1.4 Detector Primary and Secondary Angles

Detector Angles are defined in a fashion similar to the positioner angles, except that the angle of the central x-ray beam vector is relative to the detector plane rather than the patient plane. The central x-ray beam vector is defined as the vector from the x-ray source through the isocenter to the detector plane. Zero degree is referenced to the normal to the detector plane pointing away from the x-ray source. The Detector Angle attributes apply to the first frame of a multi-frame image. The valid range of the Detector Angles is -90 to + 90 degrees.

The Primary Axis of rotation is defined along the line in the column direction of the detector plane which intersects the central x-ray beam vector. The Detector Primary Angle is defined in the plane perpendicular to the Primary Axis of rotation at the point where the central x-ray beam vector intersects the detector plane, with zero degrees in the direction normal to the detector plane and -90 degrees at the left hand side of the image (i.e., toward column 1) and +90 at the right hand side of the image (i.e., toward the highest numbered column). The valid range of Primary Detector Angle is -90 to +90 degrees.

The Secondary Axis is in the detector plane and is perpendicular to the Primary Axis at the intersection of the beam vector with the detector plane (i.e., it is along the row direction). The Detector Secondary Angle is defined in the plane perpendicular to the Secondary Axis at the point where the central x-ray beam vector intersects the detector plane, with zero degrees in the direction normal to the detector plane. +90 degrees corresponds to the direction toward the top of the image. The Secondary Detector Angle range is -90 to + 90 degrees.

C.8.7.6 XRF Positioner Module

Table C.8-31
XRF POSITIONER MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Distance Source to Detector	(0018,1110)	3	Distance in mm from source to detector center. Note: This value is traditionally referred to as Source Image Receptor Distance (SID).
Distance Source to Patient	(0018,1111)	3	Distance in mm from source to isocenter (center of field of view). Note: This value is traditionally referred to as Source Object Distance (SOD).
Estimated Radiographic Magnification Factor	(0018,1114)	3	Ratio of SID (Source Image Receptor Distance) over SOD (Source Object Distance).
Column Angulation	(0018,1450)	3	Angle of the X-Ray beam in degree relative to an orthogonal axis to the detector plane. Positive values indicate that the tilt is towards the head of the table. Note: The detector plane is assumed to be parallel to the table plane.

C.8.7.7 X-Ray Tomography Acquisition Module

This Module describes the attributes of a Tomography acquisition (translation of X-Ray source during the acquisition of a single frame image).

Table C.8-32
X-RAY TOMOGRAPHY ACQUISITION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Tomo Layer Height	(0018,1460)	1	Distance in mm between the table surface and the sharp image plane.
Tomo Angle	(0018,1470)	3	Angle span in degrees of rotation of X-Ray Source during X-Ray acquisition.
Tomo Time	(0018,1480)	3	Time in seconds the source has taken to rotate the Tomo Angle during X-Ray acquisition.
Tomo Type	(0018,1490)	3	Type of tomography. Defined Terms: LINEAR SPIRAL POLYCYCLOIDAL CIRCULAR

Tomo Class	(0018,1491)	3	Form of tomography: Defined Terms: MOTION TOMOSYNTHESIS
Number of Tomosynthesis Source Images	(0018,1495)	3	The number of source images used to construct this tomosynthetic image. Only meaningful if Tomo Class (0018,1491) is TOMOSYNTHESIS. These may be listed in Source Image Sequence (0008,2112) of the General Image Module.

C.8.7.8 X-Ray Acquisition Dose Module

This Module describes the attributes related to dose delivery from an X-Ray source during the acquisition of an X-Ray image.

Table C.8-33
X-RAY ACQUISITION DOSE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
KVP	(0018,0060)	3	Peak kilo voltage output of the X-Ray generator used.
X-Ray Tube Current	(0018,1151)	3	X-Ray Tube Current in mA.
X-Ray Tube Current in µA	(0018,8151)	3	X-Ray Tube Current in µA.
Exposure Time	(0018,1150)	3	Duration of X-Ray exposure in msec.
Exposure Time in µS	(0018,8150)	3	Duration of X-Ray exposure in µsec.
Exposure	(0018,1152)	3	The exposure expressed in mAs, for example calculated from Exposure Time and X-ray Tube Current.
Exposure in µAs	(0018,1153)	3	The exposure expressed in µAs, for example calculated from Exposure Time and X-ray Tube Current.
Distance Source to Detector	(0018,1110)	3	Distance in mm from source to detector center. Note: This value is traditionally referred to as Source Image Receptor Distance (SID).
Distance Source to Patient	(0018,1111)	3	Distance in mm from source to the table, support or bucky side that is closest to the Imaging Subject, as measured along the central ray of the X-Ray beam. Note: 1. This definition is less useful in terms of estimating geometric magnification than a measurement to a defined point within the Imaging Subject, but accounts for what is realistically measurable in an automated fashion in a clinical setting. 2. This measurement does not take into account any air gap between the Imaging Subject and

			the “front” of the table or bucky. 3. If the detector is not mounted in a table or bucky, then the actual position relative to the patient is implementation or operator defined. 4. This value is traditionally referred to as Source Object Distance (SOD).
Image and Fluoroscopy Area Dose Product	(0018,115E)	3	X-Ray dose, measured in dGy*cm*cm, to which the patient was exposed for the acquisition of this image plus any non-digitally recorded fluoroscopy which may have been performed to prepare for the acquisition of this image. Notes: 1. The sum of the area dose product of all images of a Series or a Study may not result in the total area dose product to which the patient was exposed. 2. This may be an estimated value based on assumptions about the patient’s body size and habitus.
Body Part Thickness	(0018,11A0)	3	The average thickness in mm of the body part examined when compressed, if compression has been applied during exposure.
Relative X-Ray Exposure	(0018,1405)	3	Indication of the applied dose, in manufacturer specific units. Notes: 1. This value is intended to provide a single location where manufacturer specific information can be found for annotation on a display or film, that has meaning to a knowledgeable observer. 2. This may be a calculated or measured value. Examples are the detector entrance dose (K_B), the CR sensitivity value (S), or the logarithmic median (lgM).
Entrance Dose	(0040,0302)	3	Average entrance dose value measured in dGy at the surface of the patient during the acquisition of this image. Note: This may be an estimated value based on assumptions about the patient’s body size and habitus.
Entrance Dose in mGy	(0040,8302)	3	Average entrance dose value measured in mGy at the surface of the patient during the acquisition of this image. Note: This may be an estimated value based on assumptions about the patient’s body size and habitus.
Exposed Area	(0040,0303)	3	Typical dimension of the exposed area at the detector plane. If Rectangular: row

			dimension followed by column; if Round: diameter. Measured in cm. Notes: 1. The exposed area should be consistent with values specified in the X-Ray Collimator Module, if present. 2. This may be an estimated value based on assumptions about the patient's body size and habitus. 3. This attribute is used in the Radiation Dose Module with units in mm (see Section C.4.16 Table C.4-16).
Distance Source to Entrance	(0040,0306)	3	Distance in mm from the source to the surface of the patient closest to the source during the acquisition of this image. Note: This may be an estimated value based on assumptions about the patient's body size and habitus.
Comments on Radiation Dose	(0040,0310)	3	User-defined comments on any special conditions related to radiation dose encountered during the acquisition of this image.
X-Ray Output	(0040,0312)	3	The X-Ray output at the patient entrance surface and kVp used to acquire the image, measured in mGy/mAs. Note: This value may be a calibrated value rather than measured during the exposure.
Half Value Layer	(0040,0314)	3	The thickness of Aluminum in mm required to reduce the X-Ray Output (0040,0312) by a factor of two. Note: This value may be a calibrated value rather than measured during the exposure.
Organ Dose	(0040,0316)	3	Average organ dose value measured in dGy during the acquisition of this image. Note: This may be an estimated value.
Organ Exposed	(0040,0318)	3	Organ to which Organ Dose (0040,0316) applies. Defined Terms: BREAST GONADS BONE MARROW FETUS LENS Note: The anatomic regions described by these terms are those that are particularly radiosensitive and for which it is conventional to obtain organ specific dose parameters.
Anode Target Material	(0018,1191)	3	The primary material in the anode of the

			X-Ray source. Defined Terms: TUNGSTEN MOLYBDENUM RHODIUM
Filter Material	(0018,7050)	3	The X-Ray absorbing material used in the filter. May be multi-valued. Defined Terms: MOLYBDENUM ALUMINUM COPPER RHODIUM NIOBIUM EUROPIUM LEAD
Filter Thickness Minimum	(0018,7052)	3	The minimum thickness in mm of the X-Ray absorbing material used in the filters. May be multi-valued, with values corresponding to the respective values in Filter Material (0018,7050).
Filter Thickness Maximum	(0018,7054)	3	The maximum thickness in mm of the X-Ray absorbing material used in the filters. May be multi-valued, with values corresponding to the respective values in Filter Material (0018,7050).
Rectification Type	(0018,1156)	3	Type of rectification used in the X-Ray generator. Defined Terms: SINGLE PHASE THREE PHASE CONST POTENTIAL

C.8.7.9 X-Ray Generation Module

This Module describes the attributes related to generation of X-rays during the acquisition of an X-Ray image.

Table C.8-34
X-RAY GENERATION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
KVP	(0018,0060)	3	Peak kilo voltage output of the X-Ray generator used.
X-Ray Tube Current	(0018,1151)	3	X-Ray Tube Current in mA.
X-Ray Tube Current in μA	(0018,8151)	3	X-Ray Tube Current in μA.
Exposure Time	(0018,1150)	3	Duration of X-Ray exposure in msec.
Exposure Time in μS	(0018,8150)	3	Duration of X-Ray exposure in μsec.
Exposure	(0018,1152)	3	The exposure expressed in mAs, for example calculated from Exposure Time

			and X-ray Tube Current.
Exposure in μAs	(0018,1153)	3	The exposure expressed in μAs, for example calculated from Exposure Time and X-ray Tube Current.
Exposure Control Mode	(0018,7060)	3	Type of exposure control. Defined Terms: MANUAL AUTOMATIC
Exposure Control Mode Description	(0018,7062)	3	Text description of the mechanism of exposure control. May describe the number and type of exposure sensors or position of the sensitive area of the imaging detector.
Exposure Status	(0018,7064)	3	Whether the exposure was normally completed or not. Defined Terms: NORMAL ABORTED
Phototimer Setting	(0018,7065)	3	Nominal percentage phototimer setting, where a more positive value indicates greater exposure and a more negative value indicates less exposure.
Focal Spot	(0018,1190)	3	Nominal focal spot size in mm used to acquire this image.
Anode Target Material	(0018,1191)	3	The primary material in the anode of the X-Ray source. Defined Terms: TUNGSTEN MOLYBDENUM RHODIUM
Rectification Type	(0018,1156)	3	Type of rectification used in the X-Ray generator. Defined Terms: SINGLE PHASE THREE PHASE CONST POTENTIAL
Generator ID	(0018,1005)	3	Identifier of the generator

C.8.7.10 X-Ray Filtration Module

This Module describes the attributes related to the filtration of X-rays during the acquisition of an X-Ray image.

Table C.8-35
X-RAY FILTRATION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Filter Type	(0018,1160)	3	Type of filter(s) inserted into the X-Ray beam (e.g. wedges).

			Defined Terms: STRIP WEDGE BUTTERFLY MULTIPLE NONE
Filter Material	(0018,7050)	3	The X-Ray absorbing material used in the filter. May be multi-valued. Defined Terms: MOLYBDENUM ALUMINUM COPPER RHODIUM NIOBIUM EUROPIUM LEAD
Filter Thickness Minimum	(0018,7052)	3	The minimum thickness in mm of the X-Ray absorbing material used in the filters. May be multi-valued, with values corresponding to the respective values in Filter Material (0018,7050).
Filter Thickness Maximum	(0018,7054)	3	The maximum thickness in mm of the X-Ray absorbing material used in the filters. May be multi-valued, with values corresponding to the respective values in Filter Material (0018,7050).

C.8.7.11 X-Ray Grid Module

This Module describes the attributes related to the use of a grid to reduce scatter of X-rays during the acquisition of an X-Ray image.

Table C.8-36
X-RAY GRID MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Grid	(0018,1166)	3	Identifies the grid. May be multi-valued. Defined Terms are: FIXED FOCUSED RECIPROCATING PARALLEL CROSSED NONE
Grid Absorbing Material	(0018,7040)	3	The X-Ray absorbing material used in the grid.
Grid Spacing Material	(0018,7041)	3	The spacing material used in the grid.
Grid Thickness	(0018,7042)	3	The thickness in mm of the X-Ray absorbing material used in the grid.
Grid Pitch	(0018,7044)	3	The pitch in mm of the X-Ray absorbing material used in the grid.

Grid Aspect Ratio	(0018,7046)	3	Ratio of the vertical spacing and horizontal spacing of the X-Ray absorbing material used in the grid. Specified by a pair of integer values where the first value is the vertical size, and the second value is the horizontal size.
Grid Period	(0018,7048)	3	Period in mSec of reciprocation cycle. Only meaningful if Grid (0018,1166) is RECIPROCATING.
Grid Focal Distance	(0018,704C)	3	Focal distance in mm of a FOCUSED grid.
Grid ID	(0018,1006)	3	Identifier of the grid

C.8.8 Radiotherapy Modules

This Section describes Radiotherapy-specific modules.

Modules defined here make reference to “IEC” coordinate systems and standards. These standards are defined in IEC Standard 61217, “Radiotherapy Equipment - Coordinates, Movements and Scales” (Reference CEI/IEC 61217: 1996).

Note: IEC document 62C/269/CDV “Amendment to IEC 61217: Radiotherapy Equipment – Coordinates, movements and scales” also defines a patient-based coordinate system, and specifies the relationship between the DICOM Patient Coordinate System (see Section C.7.6.2.1.1) and the IEC PATIENT Coordinate System. Rotating the IEC PATIENT Coordinate System described in IEC 62C/269/CDV (1999) by 90 degrees counter-clockwise (in the negative direction) about the x-axis yields the DICOM Patient Coordinate System, i.e. (X_{DICOM}, Y_{DICOM}, Z_{DICOM}) = (X_{IEC}, $-Z_{IEC}$, Y_{IEC}). Refer to the latest IEC documentation for the current definition of the IEC PATIENT Coordinate System.

Many of the dosimetry concepts referred to in this document can be found in ICRU Report 50, Prescribing, Recording, and Reporting Photon Beam Therapy, International Commission on Radiation Units and Measurements, 1993.

C.8.8.1 RT Series Module

There exist significant differences in the manner in which RT objects as compared to diagnostic objects. An RT object can be one of several types, and a series of a given object type may be created over a temporal span of several weeks. The RT Series Module has been created to satisfy the requirements of the standard DICOM Query/Retrieve model while including only those attributes relevant to the identification and selection of radiotherapy objects.

Table C.8-37 - RT SERIES MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Modality	(0008,0060)	1	Type of equipment that originally acquired the data. Enumerated Values: RTIMAGE = RT Image RTDOSE = RT Dose RTSTRUCT = RT Structure Set RTPLAN = RT Plan RTRECORD = RT Treatment Record See C.8.8.1.1.
Series Instance UID	(0020,000E)	1	Unique identifier of the series.
Series Number	(0020,0011)	2	A number that identifies this series.
Series Description	(0008,103E)	3	User provided description of the series.
Referenced Performed Procedure Step Sequence	(0008,1111)	3	Uniquely identifies the Performed Procedure Step SOP Instance to which the Series is related (e.g. a Modality or General-Purpose Performed Procedure Step SOP Instance). One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class. Required if Referenced Performed Procedure Step Sequence (0008,1111) is sent.

>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance. Required if Referenced Performed Procedure Step Sequence (0008,1111) is sent.
Request Attributes Sequence	(0040,0275)	3	Sequence that contains attributes from the Imaging Service Request. The sequence may have one or more Items.
>Include Request Attributes Macro Table 10-9		*No Baseline Context IDs defined*	
Performed Procedure Step ID	(0040,0253)	3	User or equipment generated identifier of that part of a Procedure that has been carried out within this step.
Performed Procedure Step Start Date	(0040,0244)	3	Date on which the Performed Procedure Step started.
Performed Procedure Step Start Time	(0040,0245)	3	Time on which the Performed Procedure Step started.
Performed Procedure Step Description	(0040,0254)	3	Institution-generated description or classification of the Procedure Step that was performed.
Performed Protocol Code Sequence	(0040,0260)	3	Sequence describing the Protocol performed for this Procedure Step. One or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*	
>Protocol Context Sequence	(0040,0440)	3	Sequence that specifies the context for the Performed Protocol Code Sequence Item. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>Include 'Content Item Macro' Table 10-2		*No Baseline Template is defined.*	
>> Content Item Modifier Sequence	(0040,0441)	3	Sequence that specifies modifiers for a Protocol Context Content Item. One or more items may be included in this sequence. See Section C.4.10.1.
>>>Include 'Content Item Macro' Table 10-2		*No Baseline Template is defined.*	

C.8.8.1.1 Modality

The Enumerated Value for Modality (0008,0060) shall determined by the IOD:

RTIMAGE if RT Image IOD,

RTDOSE if RT Dose IOD,

RTSTRUCT if RT Structure Set IOD,

RTPLAN if RT Plan IOD or RT Ion Plan IOD,

RTRECORD if RT Beams Treatment Record IOD, RT Ion Beams Treatment Record IOD, RT Brachy Treatment Record IOD, or RT Treatment Summary Record IOD.

Note: DICOM specifies that a given series shall contain objects of only one Modality, and shall be created by a single device (described in the General Equipment Module). However, in general there may be many series defined for a given modality/device pair. Note that a radiotherapy series is generally created over an extended time interval (unlike in radiology, where all images in an image series are generally created together).

C.8.8.2 RT Image Module

Table C.8-38 contains attributes that describe RT-specific characteristics of a projection image. The image described by these attributes must be a radiotherapy image acquired or calculated using a conical imaging geometry.

Table C.8-38—RT IMAGE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Samples per Pixel	(0028,0002)	1	Number of samples (planes) in this image. See C.8.8.2.6.1 for specialization.
Photometric Interpretation	(0028,0004)	1	Specifies the intended interpretation of the pixel data. See C.8.8.2.6.2 for specialization.
Bits Allocated	(0028,0100)	1	Number of bits allocated for each pixel sample. Each sample shall have the same number of bits allocated. See C.8.8.2.6.3 for specialization.
Bits Stored	(0028,0101)	1	Number of bits stored for each pixel sample. Each sample shall have the same number of bits stored. See C.8.8.2.6.4 for specialization.
High Bit	(0028,0102)	1	Most significant bit for each pixel sample. Each sample shall have the same high bit. See C.8.8.2.6.5 for specialization.
Pixel Representation	(0028,0103)	1	Data representation of the pixel samples. Each sample shall have the same pixel representation. See C.8.8.2.6.6 for specialization.
Pixel Intensity Relationship	(0028,1040)	3	The relationship between the Pixel sample values and the X-Ray beam intensity. Enumerated Values: LIN = Linearly proportional to X-Ray beam intensity

			LOG = Logarithmically proportional to X-Ray beam intensity See C.8.11.3.1.2 for further explanation.
Pixel Intensity Relationship Sign	(0028,1041)	1C	The sign of the relationship between the Pixel sample values stored in Pixel Data (7FE0,0010) and the X-Ray beam intensity. Required if Pixel Intensity Relationship (0028,1040) is present. Enumerated Values; 1 = Lower pixel values correspond to less X-Ray beam intensity -1 = Higher pixel values correspond to less X-Ray beam intensity See C.8.11.3.1.2 for further explanation.
RT Image Label	(3002,0002)	1	User-defined label for RT Image.
RT Image Name	(3002,0003)	3	User-defined name for RT Image.
RT Image Description	(3002,0004)	3	User-defined description of RT Image.
Operators' Name	(0008,1070)	2	Name of operator(s) acquiring or creating RT Image.
Image Type	(0008,0008)	1	Image identification characteristics (see Section C.7.6.1.1.2). RT Images shall use one of the following Defined Terms for Value 3: DRR = digitally reconstructed radiograph PORTAL = digital portal image or portal film image SIMULATOR = conventional simulator image RADIOGRAPH = radiographic image BLANK = image pixels set to background value FLUENCE = fluence map
Conversion Type	(0008,0064)	2	Describes the kind of image conversion. Defined Terms: DV = Digitized Video DI = Digital Interface DF = Digitized Film WSD = Workstation
Reported Values Origin	(3002,000A)	2C	Describes the origin of the parameter values reported in the image. Required if Value 3 of Image Type (0008,0008) is SIMULATOR or PORTAL. Enumerated Values: OPERATOR = manually entered by operator

			PLAN = planned parameter values ACTUAL = electronically recorded
RT Image Plane	(3002,000C)	1	Describes whether or not image plane is normal to beam axis. Enumerated Values: NORMAL = image plane normal to beam axis NON_NORMAL = image plane non-normal to beam axis
X-Ray Image Receptor Translation	(3002,000D)	3	Position in (x,y,z) coordinates of origin of IEC X-RAY IMAGE RECEPTOR System in the IEC GANTRY coordinate system (mm). See Note 2.
X-Ray Image Receptor Angle	(3002,000E)	2	X-Ray Image Receptor Angle i.e. orientation of IEC X-RAY IMAGE RECEPTOR coordinate system with respect to IEC GANTRY coordinate system (degrees). See C.8.8.2.2.
RT Image Orientation	(3002,0010)	2C	The direction cosines of the first row and the first column with respect to the IEC X-RAY IMAGE RECEPTOR coordinate system. Required if RT Image Plane (3002,000C) is NON_NORMAL. May be present otherwise.
Image Plane Pixel Spacing	(3002,0011)	2	Physical distance (in mm) between the center of each image pixel, specified by a numeric pair - adjacent row spacing (delimiter) adjacent column spacing. See C.8.8.2.3 and 10.7.1.3 for further explanation.
RT Image Position	(3002,0012)	2	The x and y coordinates (in mm) of the upper left hand corner of the image, in the IEC X-RAY IMAGE RECEPTOR coordinate system. This is the center of the first pixel transmitted. See C.8.8.2.7.
Radiation Machine Name	(3002,0020)	2	User-defined name identifying radiation machine used in acquiring or computing image (i.e. name of conventional simulator, electron accelerator, X-ray device, or machine modeled when calculating DRR).
Primary Dosimeter Unit	(300A,00B3)	2	Measurement unit of machine dosimeter. Enumerated Values: MU = Monitor Unit MINUTE = minute
Radiation Machine SAD	(3002,0022)	2	Radiation source to Gantry rotation axis distance of radiation machine used in acquiring or computing image (mm).
Radiation Machine SSD	(3002,0024)	3	Source to patient surface distance (in mm) of radiation machine used in acquiring or

			computing image.
RT Image SID	(3002,0026)	2	Distance from radiation machine source to image plane (in mm) along radiation beam axis. See C.8.8.2.3.
Source to Reference Object Distance	(3002,0028)	3	Source to reference object distance (in mm), as used for magnification calculation of RADIOGRAPH and SIMULATOR images.
Referenced RT Plan Sequence	(300C,0002)	3	Introduces sequence of one Class/Instance pair describing RT Plan associated with image. Only a single item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class. Required if Referenced RT Plan Sequence (300C,0002) is sent.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance. Required if Referenced RT Plan Sequence (300C,0002) is sent.
Referenced Beam Number	(300C,0006)	3	Uniquely identifies the corresponding N-segment treatment beam specified by Beam Number (300A,00C0) within Beam Sequence in RT Beams Module within the RT Plan referenced in Referenced RT Plan Sequence (300C,0002).
Referenced Fraction Group Number	(300C,0022)	3	Identifier of Fraction Group within RT Plan referenced in Referenced RT Plan Sequence (300C,0002).
Fraction Number	(3002,0029)	3	Fraction Number of fraction during which image was acquired, within Fraction Group referenced by Referenced Fraction Group Number (300C,0022) within RT Plan referenced in Referenced RT Plan Sequence (300C,0002).
Start Cumulative Meterset Weight	(300C,0008)	3	Cumulative Meterset Weight within Beam referenced by Referenced Beam Number (300C,0006) at which image acquisition starts.
End Cumulative Meterset Weight	(300C,0009)	3	Cumulative Meterset Weight within Beam referenced by Referenced Beam Number (300C,0006) at which image acquisition ends.
Exposure Sequence	(3002,0030)	3	Introduces sequence of Exposure parameter sets, corresponding to exposures used in generating the image. One or more items may be included in this sequence. See C.8.8.2.4.
>Referenced Frame Number	(0008,1160)	1C	Identifies corresponding image frame in multi-frame image. Required if Exposure Sequence (3002,0030) is sent, there is more than one item in Exposure Sequence (3002,0030), and image is a multi-frame

			image.
>KVP	(0018,0060)	2C	Peak kilo voltage output (kV) of X-ray generator used to acquire image. Required if Value 3 of Image Type (0008,0008) is PORTAL, SIMULATOR or RADIOGRAPH and Exposure Sequence (3002,0030) is sent.
>X-Ray Tube Current	(0018,1151)	2C	Imaging device X-ray Tube Current (mA). Required if Value 3 of Image Type (0008,0008) is SIMULATOR or RADIOGRAPH and Exposure Sequence (3002,0030) is sent.
>Exposure Time	(0018,1150)	2C	Time of X-ray exposure (msec). Required if Value 3 of Image Type (0008,0008) is SIMULATOR or RADIOGRAPH and Exposure Sequence (3002,0030) is sent.
>Meterset Exposure	(3002,0032)	2C	Treatment machine Meterset duration over which image has been acquired, specified in Monitor units (MU) or minutes as defined by Primary Dosimeter Unit (300A,00B3). Required if Value 3 of Image Type (0008,0008) is PORTAL and Exposure Sequence (3002,0030) is sent.
>Diaphragm Position	(3002,0034)	3	Positions of diaphragm jaw pairs (in mm) in IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE coordinate axis in the IEC order X1, X2, Y1, Y2.
>Beam Limiting Device Sequence	(300A,00B6)	3	Introduces sequence of beam limiting device (collimator) jaw or leaf (element) positions for given exposure. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>RT Beam Limiting Device Type	(300A,00B8)	1C	Type of beam limiting device (collimator). Required if Beam Limiting Device Sequence (300A,00B6) is sent. Enumerated Values: X = symmetric jaw pair in IEC X direction Y = symmetric jaw pair in IEC Y direction ASYMX = asymmetric jaw pair in IEC X direction ASYMY = asymmetric pair in IEC Y direction MLCX = multileaf (multi-element) jaw pair in IEC X direction MLCY = multileaf (multi-element) jaw pair in IEC Y direction
>>Source to Beam Limiting Device Distance	(300A,00BA)	3	Radiation source to beam limiting device (collimator) distance (mm).
>>Number of Leaf/Jaw Pairs	(300A,00BC)	1C	Number of leaf (element) or jaw pairs (equal to 1 for standard beam limiting device jaws). Required if Beam Limiting

			Device Sequence (300A,00B6) is sent.
>>Leaf Position Boundaries	(300A,00BE)	2C	Boundaries (in mm) of beam limiting device (collimator) leaves (elements) in IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE coordinate axis appropriate to RT Beam Limiting Device Type (300A,00B8), i.e. X-axis for MLCY, Y-axis for MLCX. Contains N+1 values, where N is the Number of Leaf/Jaw Pairs (300A,00BC), starting from Leaf (Element) Pair 1. Required if RT Beam Limiting Device Type (300A,00B8) is MLCX or MLCY.
>>Leaf/Jaw Positions	(300A,011C)	1C	Positions of beam limiting device (collimator) leaf or jaw (element) pairs (in mm) in IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE coordinate axis appropriate to RT Beam Limiting Device Type (300A,00B8), e.g. X-axis for MLCX, Y-axis for MLCY). Contains 2N values, where N is the Number of Leaf/Jaw Pairs (300A,00BC), in IEC leaf (element) subscript order 101, 102, ... 1N, 201, 202, ... 2N. Required if Beam Limiting Device Sequence (300A,00B6) is sent.
>Applicator Sequence	(300A,0107)	3	Introduces sequence of Applicators associated with Beam. Only a single item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>>Applicator ID	(300A,0108)	1C	User or machine supplied identifier for Applicator. Required if Applicator Sequence (300A,0107) is sent.
>>Applicator Type	(300A,0109)	1C	Type of Applicator. Required if Applicator Sequence (300A,0107) is sent. Defined Terms: ELECTRON_SQUARE = square electron applicator ELECTRON_RECT = rectangular electron applicator ELECTRON_CIRC = circular electron applicator ELECTRON_SHORT = short electron applicator ELECTRON_OPEN = open (dummy) electron applicator INTRAOPERATIVE = intraoperative (custom) applicator STEREOTACTIC = stereotactic applicator
>>Applicator Description	(300A,010A)	3	User-defined description for Applicator.
>Number of Blocks	(300A,00F0)	1C	Number of shielding blocks associated with Beam. Required if Exposure Sequence (3002,0030) is sent.

>Block Sequence	(300A,00F4)	2C	Introduces sequence of blocks associated with Beam. Required if Number of Blocks (300A,00F0) is non-zero. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>Block Tray ID	(300A,00F5)	3	User-supplied identifier for block tray.
>>Source to Block Tray Distance	(300A,00F6)	2C	Radiation Source to attachment edge of block tray assembly (mm). Required if Block Sequence (300A,00F4) is sent.
>>Block Type	(300A,00F8)	1C	Type of block. Required if Block Sequence (300A,00F4) is sent. Enumerated Values: SHIELDING = blocking material is inside contour APERTURE = blocking material is outside contour
>>Block Divergence	(300A,00FA)	2C	Indicates presence or otherwise of geometrical divergence. Required if Block Sequence (300A,00F4) is sent. Enumerated Values: PRESENT = block edges are shaped for beam divergence ABSENT = block edges are not shaped for beam divergence
>>Block Mounting Position	(300A,00FB)	3	Indicates on which side of the Block Tray the block is mounted. Enumerated Values: PATIENT_SIDE = the block is mounted on the side of the Block Tray which is towards the patient. SOURCE_SIDE = the block is mounted on the side of the Block Tray which is towards the radiation source.
>>Block Number	(300A,00FC)	1C	Identification Number of the Block. The value of Block Number (300A,00FC) shall be unique within the Beam in which it is created. Required if Block Sequence (300A,00F4) is sent.
>>Block Name	(300A,00FE)	3	User-defined name for block.
>>Material ID	(300A,00E1)	2C	User-supplied identifier for material used to manufacture Block. Required if Block Sequence (300A,00F4) is sent.
>>Block Thickness	(300A,0100)	3	Physical thickness of block (in mm) parallel to radiation beam axis.
>>Block Number of Points	(300A,0104)	2C	Number of (x,y) pairs defining the block edge. Required if Block Sequence (300A,00F4) is sent.
>>Block Data	(300A,0106)	2C	A data stream of (x,y) pairs which comprise the block edge. The number of pairs shall

			be equal to Block Number of Points (300A,0104), and the vertices shall be interpreted as a closed polygon. Coordinates are projected onto the machine isocentric plane in the IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE coordinate system (mm). Required if Block Sequence (300A,00F4) is sent.
Fluence Map Sequence	(3002,0040)	1C	A Sequence of data describing the fluence map attributes for a radiotherapy beam. Only one item may be included in this sequence. Required if the third value of Image Type (0008,0008) is FLUENCE.
>Fluence Data Source	(3002,0041)	1	Source of fluence data. Enumerated Values: CALCULATED = Calculated by a workstation MEASURED=Measured by exposure to a film or detector.
>Fluence Data Scale	(3002,0042)	3	The meterset corresponding with a fluence map cell value of 1.0 expressed in units specified by Primary Dosimeter Units (300A,00B3). This is the meterset value used for treatment, not the meterset used to expose the film as defined by Meterset Exposure (3002,0032).
Gantry Angle	(300A,011E)	3	Treatment machine gantry angle, i.e. orientation of IEC GANTRY coordinate system with respect to IEC FIXED REFERENCE coordinate system (degrees).
Gantry Pitch Angle	(300A,014A)	3	Gantry Pitch Angle. i.e. the rotation of the IEC GANTRY coordinate system about the X-axis of the IEC GANTRY coordinate system (degrees). See C.8.8.25.6.5.
Beam Limiting Device Angle	(300A,0120)	3	Treatment machine beam limiting device (collimator) angle, i.e. orientation of IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE coordinate system with respect to IEC GANTRY coordinate system (degrees).
Patient Support Angle	(300A,0122)	3	Patient Support angle, i.e. orientation of IEC PATIENT SUPPORT coordinate system with respect to IEC FIXED REFERENCE coordinate system (degrees).
Table Top Eccentric Axis Distance	(300A,0124)	3	Distance (positive) from the IEC PATIENT SUPPORT vertical axis to the IEC TABLE TOP ECCENTRIC vertical axis (mm).
Table Top Eccentric Angle	(300A,0125)	3	Table Top (non-isocentric) angle, i.e.

			orientation of IEC TABLE TOP ECCENTRIC coordinate system with respect to IEC PATIENT SUPPORT system (degrees).
Table Top Vertical Position	(300A,0128)	3	Table Top Vertical position in IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system (mm).
Table Top Longitudinal Position	(300A,0129)	3	Table Top Longitudinal position in IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system (mm).
Table Top Lateral Position	(300A,012A)	3	Table Top Lateral position in IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system (mm).
Isocenter Position	(300A,012C)	3	Isocenter coordinates (x,y,z), in mm. Specifies the location of the machine isocenter in the patient-based coordinate system associated with the Frame of Reference. It allows transformation from the equipment-based IEC coordinate system to the patient-based coordinate system.
Patient Position	(0018,5100)	1C	Patient position descriptor relative to the patient support device. Required if Isocenter Position (300A,012C) is present. May be present otherwise. See Section C.7.3.1.1.2 for Defined Terms and further explanation. Note: The orientation of the patient relative to the patient support device is denoted in the same manner as in the RT Patient Setup module. It defines the relation of the patient-based DICOM coordinate system identified by the frame of reference module of the RT Image to the IEC coordinate system and together with the Isocenter Position (300A,012C) allows the RT Image to be placed into the patient frame of reference. It also allows a system using an RT Image to verify that the patient is setup in a similar position relative to the patient support device.

Notes: 1. The numeric beam data parameters recorded with the RT Image correspond to the parameters as they were known at the time the image was created or taken. The parameters may or may not correspond to an actual RT Plan instance that is created for a patient. If the Reported Values Origin (3002,000A) has an enumerated value of OPERATOR or ACTUAL and there is an RT Plan reference present, the numeric beam data parameters may or may not be the same in the two objects.

2. The Z coordinate of the X-Ray Image Receptor Translation (3002,000D) will be equal to the Radiation Machine SAD (3002,0022) minus the RT Image SID (3002,0026). If the image receptor is further from the beam source than the machine isocenter, the Z coordinate will be negative (see IEC 61217).

C.8.8.2.1 Multi-frame image data

In either multiple exposure multi-frame images or cine images, only the attributes inside of the Exposure Sequence (3002,0030) shall differ between frames. For example, attributes such as beam limiting device (collimator) leaf (element) positions and block information may change, whereas attributes such as gantry and beam limiting device (collimator) angle shall not change.

C.8.8.2.2 X-Ray Image Receptor Angle

The X-Ray Image Receptor Angle (3002,000E) specifies the rotation of the image receptor device in the IEC X-RAY IMAGE RECEPTOR PLANE. A positive angle corresponds to a counter-clockwise rotation of the X-Ray Image Receptor as viewed from the radiation source in the IEC GANTRY coordinate system. The normal (non-rotated) value for this parameter is zero degrees.

C.8.8.2.3 Image Plane Pixel Spacing and RT Image SID

The Image Plane Pixel Spacing (3002,0011) attribute shall always be defined on the image plane, i.e. at the radiation machine source to image plane distance specified by RT Image SID (3002,0026). For images where the source-image distance is undefined or unknown (e.g. DRR images), RT Image SID (3002,0026) shall equal Radiation Machine SAD (3002,0022) and Image Plane Pixel Spacing (3002,0011) shall be defined on this common plane.

C.8.8.2.4 Exposure Sequence

The Exposure Sequence (3002,0030) allows specification of imaging parameters and aperture definitions for single exposure images (single item sequence) or multiple exposures (multiple item sequence). A multiple exposure image can be expressed as a multi-frame image containing either a single frame, or more than one frame. Referenced Frame Number (0008,1160) shall be specified for each Exposure Sequence item for multiple exposure images expressed using more than one frame.

C.8.8.2.5 Single frame and multi-frame images

If the Multi-frame Module is present and the Cine Module is not present then the Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) shall have the Enumerated Value of 00200013 (Instance Number). If the Multi-frame Module and Cine Module are both present then the Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) shall have an Enumerated Value of either 00181063 (Frame Time) or 00181065 (Frame Time Vector).

C.8.8.2.6 Image Pixel Module Attributes

C.8.8.2.6.1 Samples per Pixel

For RT Images, Samples per Pixel (0028,0002) shall have the Enumerated Value of 0001H.

C.8.8.2.6.2 Photometric Interpretation

For RT Images, Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) shall have the Enumerated Value of MONOCHROME2.

C.8.8.2.6.3 Bits Allocated

For RT Images, Bits Allocated (0028,0100) shall have an Enumerated Value of 8 or 16.

C.8.8.2.6.4 Bits Stored

For RT Images, Bits Stored (0028,0101) shall have an Enumerated Value of:

8	when Bits Allocated (0028,0100) is 8
12-16	when Bits Allocated (0028,0100) is 16

C.8.8.2.6.5 High Bit

For RT Images, High Bit (0028,0102) shall have the Enumerated Value of one less than the value sent in Bits Stored (0028,0101).

C.8.8.2.6.6 Pixel Representation

For RT Images, Pixel Representation (0028,0103) shall have the Enumerated Value of 0000H (unsigned integer).

C.8.8.2.7 RT Image Plane, Position and Orientation

When RT Image Plane (3002,000C) is NORMAL and RT Image Orientation (3002,0010) is not provided, the orientation is defined as follows: The image viewing direction goes from the radiation source to the image (i.e. in the sense of a beam's eye view, or along the negative Zr direction of the IEC X-RAY IMAGE RECEPTOR coordinate system). The direction of rows goes along the positive Xr direction and the direction of the columns goes along the negative Yr direction of the IEC X-RAY IMAGE RECEPTOR coordinate system. Other interpretations shall be documented in an implementation's conformance statement.

C.8.8.3 RT Dose Module

The RT Dose module is used to convey 2D or 3D radiation dose data generated from treatment planning systems or similar devices. The attributes defined within the module support dose for a single radiation beam (potentially comprised of multiple segments, as delivered in a dynamic treatment) or a group of beams comprising either a fraction group (see C.8.8.13) or a complete treatment plan (potentially the sum of multiple fraction groups).

The RT Dose module provides the mechanism to transmit a 3D array of dose data as a set of 2D dose planes that may or may not be related to CT or MR image planes. This mechanism works via the DICOM Multi-Frame module which is required if multi-frame pixel data are sent.

Table C.8-39—RT DOSE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Samples per Pixel	(0028,0002)	1C	Number of samples (planes) in this image. See C.8.8.3.4.1 for specialization. Required if Pixel Data (7FE0,0010) is present.
Photometric Interpretation	(0028,0004)	1C	Specifies the intended interpretation of the pixel data. See C.8.8.3.4.2 for specialization. Required if Pixel Data (7FE0,0010) is present.
Bits Allocated	(0028,0100)	1C	Number of bits allocated for each pixel sample. Each sample shall have the same number of bits allocated. See C.8.8.3.4.3 for specialization. Required Pixel Data (7FE0,0010) is present.
Bits Stored	(0028,0101)	1C	Number of bits stored for each pixel sample. Each sample shall have the same number of bits stored. See C.8.8.3.4.4 for specialization. Required if Pixel Data (7FE0,0010) is present.
High Bit	(0028,0102)	1C	Most significant bit for each pixel sample. Each sample shall have the same high bit. See C.8.8.3.4.5 for specialization. Required if Pixel Data (7FE0,0010) is

			present.
Pixel Representation	(0028,0103)	1C	Data representation of the pixel samples. Each sample shall have the same pixel representation. See C.8.8.3.4.6 for specialization. Required Pixel Data (7FE0,0010) is present.
Dose Units	(3004,0002)	1	Units used to describe dose. Enumerated Values: GY = Gray RELATIVE = dose relative to implicit reference value
Dose Type	(3004,0004)	1	Type of dose. Defined Terms: PHYSICAL = physical dose EFFECTIVE = physical dose after correction for biological effect using user-defined modeling technique ERROR = difference between desired and planned dose
Instance Number	(0020,0013)	3	A number that identifies this object instance.
Dose Comment	(3004,0006)	3	User-defined comments for dose data.
Normalization Point	(3004,0008)	3	Coordinates (x, y, z) of normalization point in the patient based coordinate system described in C.7.6.2.1.1 (mm). See C.8.8.3.1.
Dose Summation Type	(3004,000A)	1	Type of dose summation. Defined Terms: PLAN = dose calculated for entire RT Plan FRACTION = dose calculated for a single Fraction Group within RT Plan BEAM = dose calculated for one or more Beams within RT Plan BRACHY = dose calculated for one or more Brachy Application Setups within RT Plan CONTROL_POINT = dose calculated for one or more Control Points within a Beam
Referenced RT Plan Sequence	(300C,0002)	1C	Introduces sequence of one Class/Instance pair describing RT Plan associated with dose. Required if Dose Summation Type (3004,000A) is PLAN, FRACTION, BEAM, BRACHY or CONTROL_POINT. Only a single item shall be permitted in this sequence. See Note 1.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class. Required if Referenced RT Plan

			Sequence (300C,0002) is sent.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance. Required if Referenced RT Plan Sequence (300C,0002) is sent.
>Referenced Fraction Group Sequence	(300C,0020)	1C	Introduces sequence of one Fraction Group containing beams or brachy application setups contributing to dose. Required if Dose Summation Type (3004,000A) is FRACTION, BEAM, BRACHY or CONTROL_POINT. Only a single item shall be permitted in this sequence. See Note 1.
>>Referenced Fraction Group Number	(300C,0022)	1C	Uniquely identifies Fraction Group specified by Fraction Group Number (300A,0071) in Fraction Group Sequence of RT Fraction Scheme Module within RT Plan referenced in Referenced RT Plan Sequence (300C,0002). Required if Referenced Fraction Group Sequence (300C,0020) is sent.
>>Referenced Beam Sequence	(300C,0004)	1C	Introduces sequence of Beams in current Fraction Group contributing to dose. Required if Dose Summation Type (3004,000A) is BEAM or CONTROL_POINT. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>>Referenced Beam Number	(300C,0006)	1C	Uniquely identifies Beam specified by Beam Number (300A,00C0) in Beam Sequence of RT Beams Module within RT Plan referenced in Referenced RT Plan Sequence (300C,0002). Required if Referenced Beam Sequence (300C,0004) is sent.
>>>Referenced Control Point Sequence	(300C,00F2)	1C	Sequence defining the Control Points in current Beam contributing to dose. Required if Dose Summation Type (3004,000A) is CONTROL_POINT. Only a single item shall be present in this sequence.
>>>>Referenced Start Control Point Index	(300C,00F4)	1	Identifies Control Point specified by Control Point Index (300A,0112) within Beam referenced by Referenced Beam Number (300C,0006). This is the first of the two Control Points from which the Dose contribution to the Control Point can be calculated.
>>>>Referenced Stop Control Point Index	(300C,00F6)	1	Identifies Control Point specified by Control Point Index (300A,0112) within Beam referenced by Referenced Beam Number (300C,0006). This is the second of the two Control Points from which the Dose

			contribution to the Control Point can be calculated. The Control Point Index (300A,0112) referenced by Referenced Stop Control Point Index (300C,00F6) shall be the Control Point Index (300A,0112) immediately following the Control Point Index (300A,0112) referenced by Referenced Start Control Point Index (300C,00F4) within the Referenced Beam Number (300C,0006).
>>Referenced Brachy Application Setup Sequence	(300C,000A)	1C	Introduces sequence of Brachy Application Setups in current Fraction Group contributing to dose. Required if Dose Summation Type (3004,000A) is BRACHY. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>>Referenced Brachy Application Setup Number	(300C,000C)	1C	Uniquely identifies Brachy Application Setup specified by Brachy Application Setup Number (300A,0234) in Brachy Application Setup Sequence (300A,0230) of RT Brachy Application Setups Module within RT Plan referenced in Referenced RT Plan Sequence (300C,0002). Required if Referenced Brachy Application Setup Sequence (300C,000A) is sent.
Grid Frame Offset Vector	(3004,000C)	1C	An array which contains the dose image plane offsets (in mm) of the dose image frames in a multi-frame dose. Required if multi-frame pixel data are present and Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) points to Grid Frame Offset Vector (3004,000C). See C.8.8.3.2.
Dose Grid Scaling	(3004,000E)	1	Scaling factor that when multiplied by the dose grid data found in the Pixel Data (7FE0,0010) attribute of the Image Pixel Module, yields grid doses in the dose units as specified by Dose Units (3004,0002).
Tissue Heterogeneity Correction	(3004,0014)	3	Specifies a list of patient heterogeneity characteristics used for calculating dose. This Atttibute shall be multi-valued if beams used to compute the dose have differing correction techniques. Enumerated Values: IMAGE = image data ROI_OVERRIDE = one or more ROI densities override image or water values where they exist WATER = entire volume treated as water equivalent

Note: In order to prevent misrepresentation of dose summation components, if the Dose Summation Type (3004,000A) is PLAN then only a single instance of RT Plan is referenced (i.e. component fraction groups are not referenced). Similarly, if the Dose Summation Type (3004,000A) is FRACTION then only a single instance of RT Plan and a single Fraction Group are referenced (i.e. component beams or brachy application setups are not referenced).

C.8.8.3.1 Normalization Point

The Normalization Point (3004,0008) aids in the interpretation and subsequent use of the transmitted data. If used, it shall be a point receiving dose contributions from all referenced components of the dose summation.

C.8.8.3.2 Grid Frame Offset Vector

Grid Frame Offset Vector (3004,000C) shall be provided if a dose distribution is sent as a multi-frame image. Values of the Grid Frame Offset Vector (3004,000C) shall vary monotonically and are to be interpreted as follows:

a. If Grid Frame Offset Vector (3004,000C) is present and its first element is zero, this attribute contains an array of n elements indicating the plane location of the data in the right-handed image coordinate system, relative to the position of the first dose plane transmitted, i.e., the point at which the Image Position (Patient) (0020,0032) attribute is defined, with positive offsets in the direction of the cross product of the row and column directions.
b. If Grid Frame Offset Vector (3004,000C) is present, its first element is equal to the third element of Image Position (Patient) (0020,0032), and Image Orientation (Patient) (0020,0037) has the value (1,0,0,0,1,0), then Grid Frame Offset Vector contains an array of n elements indicating the plane location (patient z coordinate) of the data in the patient coordinate system.

In future implementations, use of option a) is strongly recommended.

This attribute is conditional since the RT Dose module may be included even if pixel doses are not being transmitted, or the image may be a single-frame image. If the Multi-frame Module is present, Frame Increment Pointer (0028,0009) shall have the Enumerated Value of 3004000C (Grid Frame Offset Vector).

Note: Option (a) can represent a rectangular-parallelepiped dose grid with any orientation with respect to the patient, while option (b) can only represent a rectangular-parallelepiped dose grid whose planes are in the axial patient dimension and whose x- and y-axes are parallel to the patient x- and y-axes.

Example: Figure C.8.8.3-1 shows an example of plane positions for a dose grid with axial planes.

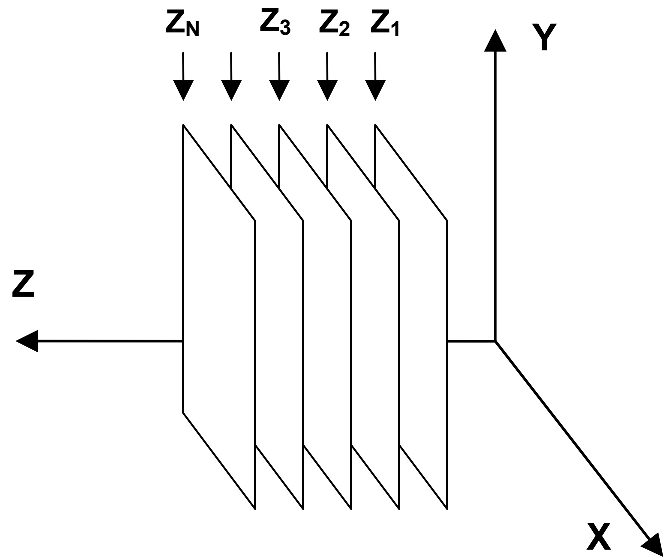


Figure C.8.8.3-1 Dose Grid Frame Example

For this example, Table C.8.39b gives the values of elements in the Grid Frame Offset Vector (3004,000C) for both relative (option (a)) and absolute (option (b)) interpretations, under the following conditions:

1. The value of Image Orientation (Patient) (0020,0037) is (1,0,0,0,1,0). I.e., the dose grid is axial with x- and y-axes parallel to the patient x- and y-axes;

2. The value of Image Position (Patient) (0020,0032), i.e. the position of the first element of the dose grid, is (4, 5, 6); and

3. The spacing between adjacent dose grid planes is 2mm (uniform).

Table C.8-39b. Values of Dose Grid Frame Offset Vector under Relative (a) and Absolute (b) Interpretations

Grid Frame Offset Vector Element	Option (a) Relative Coordinates	Option (b) Absolute Coordinates
Z1	0	6
Z2	2	8
Z3	4	10
ZN	2(N-1)	6 + 2(N-1)

C.8.8.3.3 Dose Units

Dose Units are specified in both the RT Dose and RT Dose ROI modules. The attribute Dose Type present in the RT Dose module shall apply to all doses present in the RT Dose IOD.

C.8.8.3.4 Image Pixel Module Attributes

C.8.8.3.4.1 Samples per Pixel

For RT Doses, Samples per Pixel (0028,0002) shall have the Enumerated Value of 1.

C.8.8.3.4.2 Photometric Interpretation

For RT Doses, Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) shall have the Enumerated Value of MONOCHROME2.

C.8.8.3.4.3 Bits Allocated

For RT Doses, Bits Allocated (0028,0100) shall have an Enumerated Value of 16 or 32.

C.8.8.3.4.4 Bits Stored

For RT Doses, Bits Stored (0028,0101) shall have an Enumerated Value equal to Bits Allocated (0028,0100).

C.8.8.3.4.5 High Bit

For RT Doses, High Bit (0028,0102) shall have the Enumerated Value of one less than the value sent in Bits Stored (0028,0101).

C.8.8.3.4.6 Pixel Representation

For RT Doses, Pixel Representation (0028,0103) is specified to use the following Enumerated Values:

0001H = two's complement integer, when Dose Type (3004,0004) = ERROR

0000H = unsigned integer, otherwise.

C.8.8.4 RT DVH Module

The RT DVH module provides for the inclusion of differential or cumulative dose volume histogram data. The data contained within this module may supplement dose data in the RT Dose and/or RT Dose ROI modules, or it may be present in the absence of other dose data.

Table C.8-40—RT DVH MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Referenced Structure Set Sequence	(300C,0060)	1	Introduces sequence of one class/instance pair describing Structure Set containing structures which are used to calculate Dose-Volume Histograms (DVHs). Only a single item shall be permitted in this sequence. See C.8.8.4.1.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.
DVH Normalization Point	(3004,0040)	3	Coordinates (x, y, z) of common DVH normalization point in the patient based coordinate system described in C.7.6.2.1.1 (mm).
DVH Normalization Dose Value	(3004,0042)	3	Dose Value at DVH Normalization Point (3004,0040) used as reference for individual DVHs when Dose Units (3004,0002) is RELATIVE.

DVH Sequence	(3004,0050)	1	Introduces sequence of DVHs. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>DVH Referenced ROI Sequence	(3004,0060)	1	Introduces sequence of referenced ROIs used to calculate DVH.
>>Referenced ROI Number	(3006,0084)	1	Uniquely identifies ROI used to calculate DVH specified by ROI Number (3006,0022) in Structure Set ROI Sequence (3006,0020) in Structure Set Module within RT Structure Set referenced by referenced RT Plan in Referenced RT Plan Sequence (300C,0002) in RT Dose Module.
>>DVH ROI Contribution Type	(3004,0062)	1	Specifies whether volume within ROI is included or excluded in DVH. See C.8.8.4.2. Enumerated Values: INCLUDED, EXCLUDED.
>DVH Type	(3004,0001)	1	Type of DVH. Enumerated Values: DIFFERENTIAL = differential dose-volume histogram CUMULATIVE = cumulative dose-volume histogram NATURAL = natural dose volume histogram
>Dose Units	(3004,0002)	1	Dose axis units. Enumerated Values: GY = Gray RELATIVE = dose relative to reference value specified in DVH Normalization Dose Value (3004,0042)
>Dose Type	(3004,0004)	1	Type of dose. Defined Terms: PHYSICAL = physical dose EFFECTIVE = physical dose after correction for biological effect using user-defined modeling technique ERROR = difference between desired and planned dose
>DVH Dose Scaling	(3004,0052)	1	Scaling factor that when multiplied by the dose bin widths found in DVH Data (3004,0058), yields dose bin widths in the dose units as specified by Dose Units (3004,0002).
>DVH Volume Units	(3004,0054)	1	Volume axis units. Defined Terms: CM3 = cubic centimeters PERCENT = percent

			PER_U= volume per u with u(dose)=dose$^{-3/2}$. See C.8.8.4.3.
>DVH Number of Bins	(3004,0056)	1	Number of bins n used to store DVH Data (3004,0058).
>DVH Data	(3004,0058)	1	A data stream describing the dose bin widths D_n and associated volumes V_n in DVH Volume Units (3004,0054) in the order D_1V_1, D_2V_2, ... D_nV_n. Note: DVH Data arrays may not be properly encoded if Explicit-VR transfer syntax is used and the VL of this attribute exceeds 65534 bytes.
>DVH Minimum Dose	(3004,0070)	3	Minimum calculated dose to ROI(s) described by DVH Referenced ROI Sequence (3004,0060).
>DVH Maximum Dose	(3004,0072)	3	Maximum calculated dose to ROI(s) described by DVH Referenced ROI Sequence (3004,0060).
>DVH Mean Dose	(3004,0074)	3	Mean calculated dose to ROI(s) described by DVH Referenced ROI Sequence (3004,0060).

C.8.8.4.1 Referenced Structure Set Sequence

The Referenced Structure Set Sequence (300C,0060) is required for direct cross-reference of the dose bin data with the corresponding ROI(s) from which they were derived. ROIs referenced by the DVH Referenced ROI Sequence (3004,0050) shall only contain contours with a Contour Geometric Type (3006,0042) of POINT or CLOSED_PLANAR.

C.8.8.4.2 DVH ROI Contribution Type

The volume used to calculate the DVH shall be the geometric union of ROIs where DVH ROI Contribution Type (3004,0062) is INCLUDED, minus the geometric union of ROIs where DVH ROI Contribution Type (3004,0062) is EXCLUDED.

C.8.8.4.3 DVH Volume Units

The unit PER_U is defined in: Anderson, LL: “A “natural” volume-dose histogram for brachytherapy”, Medical Physics 13(6) pp 898-903, 1986.

C.8.8.5 Structure Set Module

A structure set defines a set of areas of significance. Each area can be associated with a Frame of Reference and zero or more images. Information that can be transferred with each region of interest (ROI) includes geometrical and display parameters, and generation technique.

Table C.8-41—STRUCTURE SET MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Structure Set Label	(3006,0002)	1	User-defined label for Structure Set.
Structure Set Name	(3006,0004)	3	User-defined name for Structure Set.
Structure Set Description	(3006,0006)	3	User-defined description for Structure Set.
Instance Number	(0020,0013)	3	A number that identifies this object

			instance.
Structure Set Date	(3006,0008)	2	Date at which Structure Set was last modified.
Structure Set Time	(3006,0009)	2	Time at which Structure Set was last modified.
Referenced Frame of Reference Sequence	(3006,0010)	3	Introduces sequence of items describing Frames of Reference in which the ROIs are defined. One or more items may be included in this sequence. See C.8.8.5.1.
>Frame of Reference UID	(0020,0052)	1C	Uniquely identifies Frame of Reference within Structure Set. Required if Referenced Frame of Reference Sequence (3006,0010) is sent.
>Frame of Reference Relationship Sequence	(3006,00C0)	3	Introduces sequence of transforms that relate other Frames of Reference to this Frame of Reference.
>>Related Frame of Reference UID	(3006,00C2)	1C	Frame of Reference Coordinate System to be transformed to the current Frame of Reference. Required if Frame of Reference Relationship Sequence (3006,00C0) is sent.
>>Frame of Reference Transformation Type	(3006,00C4)	1C	Type of Transformation. Required if Frame of Reference Relationship Sequence (3006,00C0) is sent. Defined Terms: HOMOGENEOUS
>>Frame of Reference Transformation Matrix	(3006,00C6)	1C	Four-by-four transformation Matrix from Related Frame of Reference to current Frame of Reference. Matrix elements shall be listed in row-major order. Required if Frame of Reference Relationship Sequence (3006,00C0) is sent. See C.8.8.5.2.
>>Frame of Reference Transformation Comment	(3006,00C8)	3	Comment regarding the transformation between the related and current Frames of Reference.
>RT Referenced Study Sequence	(3006,0012)	3	Introduces sequence of Studies containing series to be referenced. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class. Required if RT Referenced Study Sequence (3006,0012) is sent.
>>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance. Required if RT Referenced Study Sequence (3006,0012) is sent.
>>RT Referenced Series Sequence	(3006,0014)	1C	Introduces sequence of items describing series of images within the referenced study which are used in defining the Structure Set. Required if RT Referenced Study Sequence (3006,0012) is sent. One

			or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>>Series Instance UID	(0020,000E)	1C	Unique identifier for the series containing the images. Required if RT Referenced Series Sequence (3006,0014) is sent.
>>>Contour Image Sequence	(3006,0016)	1C	Introduces sequence of items describing images in a given series used in defining the Structure Set (typically CT or MR images). Required if RT Referenced Series Sequence (3006,0014) is sent. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>>>*Include 'Image SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table 10-3*			
Structure Set ROI Sequence	(3006,0020)	3	Introduces sequence of ROIs for current Structure Set. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>ROI Number	(3006,0022)	1C	Identification number of the ROI. The value of ROI Number (3006,0022) shall be unique within the Structure Set in which it is created. Required if Structure Set ROI Sequence (3006,0020) is sent.
>Referenced Frame of Reference UID	(3006,0024)	1C	Uniquely identifies Frame of Reference in which ROI is defined, specified by Frame of Reference UID (0020,0052) in Referenced Frame of Reference Sequence (3006,0010). Required if Structure Set ROI Sequence (3006,0020) is sent.
>ROI Name	(3006,0026)	2C	User-defined name for ROI. Required if Structure Set ROI Sequence (3006,0020) is sent.
>ROI Description	(3006,0028)	3	User-defined description for ROI.
>ROI Volume	(3006,002C)	3	Volume of ROI (cubic centimeters).
>ROI Generation Algorithm	(3006,0036)	2C	Type of algorithm used to generate ROI. Required if Structure Set ROI Sequence (3006,0020) is sent. Defined Terms: AUTOMATIC = calculated ROI SEMIAUTOMATIC = ROI calculated with user assistance MANUAL = user-entered ROI
>ROI Generation Description	(3006,0038)	3	User-defined description of technique used to generate ROI.

C.8.8.5.1 Frames of Reference

The Referenced Frame of Reference Sequence (3006,0010) describes a set of frames of reference in which some or all of the ROIs are expressed. Since the Referenced Frame of Reference UID (3006,0024) is required for each ROI, each frame of reference used to express the coordinates of an ROI shall be listed in the Referenced Frame of Reference Sequence (3006,0010) once and only once.

Notes: 1.As an example, a set of ROIs defined using a single image series would list the image series in a single Referenced Frame of Reference Sequence (3006,0010) item, providing the UID for this referenced frame of reference (obtained from the source images), and listing all pertinent images in the Contour Image Sequence (3006,0016).

2. As an example, a set of ROIs containing ROIs referencing more than one frame of reference would list the referenced images in two or more different Referenced Frame of Reference Sequence (3006,0010) items, providing in each case the UID for this referenced frame of reference (obtained from the source images), and listing all pertinent images in the Contour Image Sequence (3006,0016). Each ROI would then reference the appropriate Frame of Reference UID (0020,0052).

C.8.8.5.2 Frame of Reference Transformation Matrix

In a rigid body system, two coordinate systems can be related using a single 4 x 4 transformation matrix to describe any rotations and/or translations necessary to transform coordinates from the related coordinate system (frame of reference) to the primary system. The equation performing the transform from a point (X',Y',Z') in the related coordinate system to a point (X,Y,Z) in the current coordinate system can be shown as follows, where for homogeneous transforms M_{41} = M_{42} = M_{43} = 0 and M_{44} = 1:

$$
\begin{matrix} X \\ Y \\ Z \\ 1 \end{matrix} = \begin{matrix} M_{11} & M_{12} & M_{13} & M_{14} \\ M_{21} & M_{22} & M_{23} & M_{24} \\ M_{31} & M_{32} & M_{33} & M_{34} \\ M_{41} & M_{42} & M_{43} & M_{44} \end{matrix} \times \begin{matrix} X' \\ Y' \\ Z' \\ 1 \end{matrix}
$$

C.8.8.6 ROI Contour Module

In general, a ROI can be defined by either a sequence of overlays or a sequence of contours. This module, if present, is used to define the ROI as a set of contours. Each ROI contains a sequence of one or more contours, where a contour is either a single point (for a point ROI) or more than one point (representing an open or closed polygon).

Table C.8-42—ROI CONTOUR MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
ROI Contour Sequence	(3006,0039)	1	Introduces sequence of Contour Sequences defining ROIs. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>Referenced ROI Number	(3006,0084)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced ROI described in the Structure Set ROI Sequence (3006,0020).
>ROI Display Color	(3006,002A)	3	RGB triplet color representation for ROI, specified using the range 0-255.
>Contour Sequence	(3006,0040)	3	Introduces sequence of Contours defining ROI. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>Contour Number	(3006,0048)	3	Identification number of the contour. The value of Contour Number (3006,0048) shall be unique within the Contour Sequence (3006,0040) in which it is defined. No semantics or ordering shall be inferred from this attribute.
>>Attached Contours	(3006,0049)	3	List of Contour Number (3006,0048) defining lower-numbered contour(s) to which the current contour is connected.
>>Contour Image Sequence	(3006,0016)	3	Introduces sequence of images containing the contour. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>>Include 'Image SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table 10-3			
>>Contour Geometric Type	(3006,0042)	1C	Geometric type of contour. Required if Contour Sequence (3006,0040) is sent. See C.8.8.6.1. Enumerated Values: POINT = single point OPEN_PLANAR = open contour containing coplanar points OPEN_NONPLANAR = open contour containing non-coplanar points CLOSED_PLANAR = closed contour (polygon) containing coplanar points
>>Contour Slab Thickness	(3006,0044)	3	Thickness of slab (in mm) represented by contour, where the Contour Data (3006,0050) defines a plane in the center of the slab, offset by the Contour Offset Vector (3006,0045) if it is present. See C.8.8.6.2.

>>Contour Offset Vector	(3006,0045)	3	Vector (x,y,z) in the the patient based coordinate system described in C.7.6.2.1.1 which is normal to plane of Contour Data (3006,0050), describing direction and magnitude of the offset (in mm) of each point of the central plane of a contour slab from the corresponding original point of Contour Data (3006,0050). See C.8.8.6.2.
>>Number of Contour Points	(3006,0046)	1C	Number of points (triplets) in Contour Data (3006,0050). Required if Contour Sequence (3006,0040) is sent.
>>Contour Data	(3006,0050)	1C	Sequence of (x,y,z) triplets defining a contour in the patient based coordinate system described in C.7.6.2.1.1 (mm). Required if Contour Sequence (3006,0040) is sent. See C.8.8.6.1 and C.8.8.6.3. Note: Contour Data may not be properly encoded if Explicit-VR transfer syntax is used and the VL of this attribute exceeds 65534 bytes.

C.8.8.6.1 Contour Geometric Type

A contour can be one of the following geometric types:

- A Contour Geometric Type (3006,0042) of POINT indicates that the contour is a single point, defining a specific location of significance.

- A Contour Geometric Type (3006,0042) of OPEN_PLANAR indicates that the last vertex shall *not* be connected to the first point, and that all points in Contour Data (3006,0050) shall be coplanar.

- A Contour Geometric Type (3006,0042) of OPEN_NONPLANAR indicates that the last vertex shall *not* be connected to the first point, and that the points in Contour Data (3006,0050) may be non-coplanar. Contours having a Geometric Type (3006,0042) of OPEN_NONPLANAR can be used to represent objects best described by a single, possibly non-coplanar curve, such as a brachytherapy applicator.

- A Contour Geometric Type (3006,0042) of CLOSED_PLANAR indicates that the last point shall be connected to the first point, where the first point is not repeated in the Contour Data (3006,0050). All points in Contour Data (3006,0050) shall be coplanar.

C.8.8.6.2 Contour Slab Thickness

A set of Contour slabs may define a multi-slab Volume of Interest. Contour Slab Thickness (3006,0044) shall specify the thickness of a slab, the central plane of which shall be defined by the set of points offset from Contour Data (3006,0050) by the value of Contour Offset Vector (3006,0045). One contour slab may contain one to many sets of Contour Data (3006,0050) that may define regions of one complex Volume of Interest. If no valid value of Contour Slab Thickness (3006,0044) is sent, then the offset value shall be (0,0,0) and the original Contour Data (3006,0050) shall define the central plane of the Contour slab.

C.8.8.6.3 Representing Inner and Outer Contours on an Image

When a single ROI describes an excluded inner volume, this can be encoded with a single contour, using a “keyhole” technique. In this method, an arbitrarily narrow channel is used to connect the outer contour to the inner contour, so that it is drawn as a single contour. An example of such a structure is shown in Figure C.8.8.6-1

Points in space lying along the path defined by the contour are considered to be inside the ROI.

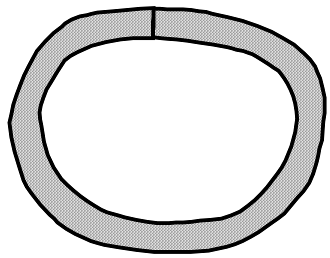


Figure C.8.8.6-1
Example of ROI with excluded inner volume

C.8.8.7 RT Dose ROI Module

RT Dose ROI provides ancillary dose-related information to the ROI data defined within the Structure Set and ROI Contour modules, which may be included in the RT Dose IOD composite object. These modules in combination provide for the definition of dose data in the form of *isodose curves* or named or unnamed dose points. Isodose curves in radiation oncology are simply contours identifying a set of points with the same dose value.

Table C.8-43—RT DOSE ROI MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
RT Dose ROI Sequence	(3004,0010)	1	Introduces sequence of items specifying dose levels for isodose curves or dose points described in the ROI module. One or more items may be included in this sequence. See C.8.8.7.1.
>Referenced ROI Number	(3006,0084)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced ROI within the current RT Dose. See Note 1 and C.8.8.7.2.
>Dose Units	(3004,0002)	1	Units used for ROI Dose. Enumerated Values: GY = Gray RELATIVE = dose relative to implicit reference value
>Dose Value	(3004,0012)	1	Dose value for ROI, in units defined by Dose Units (3004,0002). See C.8.8.7.3.

Notes: 1. The Structure Set ROI Sequence (3006,0020) defining the dose point and surfaces is defined in the Structure Set module. The ROI Number (3006,0022) attribute is unique within the

Structure Set ROI Sequence, and is referenced from the RT Dose ROI module using Referenced ROI Number (3006,0084).

2. The RT Dose ROI module defines the attributes that describe references to ROIs contained within the associated Structure Set and RT ROI Contour modules. Note that the RT Dose module table specifies that either all or none of the modules Structures Set, ROI Contour, and RT Dose ROI must be present in the RT Dose IOD.

C.8.8.7.1 Contour Geometric Type of Referenced ROI

ROIs referenced in the RT Dose ROI Module shall have a Contour Geometric Type (3006,0042) of POINT, OPEN_PLANAR or CLOSED_PLANAR.

C.8.8.7.2 Referenced ROI Number

There shall be a one-to-one correspondence between Referenced ROI Number (3006,0084) and the sequence of ROIs defined in the Structure Set and ROI Contour modules. The RT Dose ROI module shall only contain references to structures which are dose-related (i.e. dose points and isodose curves).

C.8.8.7.3 Dose Value

Dose Value (3004,0012) shall be the dose value corresponding to the referenced isodose curve, named dose point, or unnamed dose point.

C.8.8.8 RT ROI Observations Module

The RT ROI Observations module specifies the identification and interpretation of an ROI specified in the Structure Set and ROI Contour modules.

Table C.8-44—RT ROI OBSERVATIONS MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
RT ROI Observations Sequence	(3006,0080)	1	Introduces sequence of observations related to ROIs defined in the ROI Module. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>Observation Number	(3006,0082)	1	Identification number of the Observation. The value of Observation Number (3006,0082) shall be unique within the RT ROI Observations Sequence (3006,0080).
>Referenced ROI Number	(3006,0084)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced ROI described in the Structure Set ROI Sequence (3006,0020).
>ROI Observation Label	(3006,0085)	3	User-defined label for ROI Observation.
>ROI Observation Description	(3006,0088)	3	User-defined description for ROI Observation.
>RT Related ROI Sequence	(3006,0030)	3	Introduces sequence of significantly related ROIs, e.g. CTVs contained within a PTV. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>Referenced ROI Number	(3006,0084)	1C	Uniquely identifies the related ROI described in the Structure Set ROI Sequence (3006,0020). Required if RT Related ROI Sequence (3006,0030) is sent.
>>RT ROI Relationship	(3006,0033)	3	Relationship of referenced ROI with

			respect to referencing ROI. Defined Terms: SAME = ROIs represent the same entity ENCLOSED = referenced ROI completely encloses referencing ROI ENCLOSING = referencing ROI completely encloses referenced ROI
>RT ROI Identification Code Sequence	(3006,0086)	3	Introduces sequence containing Code used to identify ROI. If this sequence is included, only one item shall be present. Baseline Context ID Number = 96. See Section 5.3 for further explanation.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 96 .*	
>Related RT ROI Observations Sequence	(3006,00A0)	3	Introduces sequence of related ROI Observations. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>Observation Number	(3006,0082)	1C	Uniquely identifies a related ROI Observation. Required if Related RT ROI Observations Sequence (3006,00A0) is sent.
>RT ROI Interpreted Type	(3006,00A4)	2	Type of ROI. See C.8.8.8.1. Defined Terms: EXTERNAL = external patient contour PTV = Planning Target Volume (as defined in ICRU50) CTV = Clinical Target Volume (as defined in ICRU50) GTV = Gross Tumor Volume (as defined in ICRU50) TREATED_VOLUME = Treated Volume (as defined in ICRU50) IRRAD_VOLUME = Irradiated Volume (as defined in ICRU50) BOLUS = patient bolus to be used for external beam therapy AVOIDANCE = region in which dose is to be minimized ORGAN = patient organ MARKER = patient marker or marker on a localizer REGISTRATION = registration ROI ISOCENTER = treatment isocenter to be used for external beam therapy CONTRAST_AGENT = volume into which a contrast agent has been injected CAVITY = patient anatomical cavity BRACHY_CHANNEL = brachytherapy

			channel BRACHY_ACCESSORY = brachytherapy accessory device BRACHY_SRC_APP = brachytherapy source applicator BRACHY_CHNL_SHLD = brachytherapy channel shield SUPPORT = external patient support device FIXATION = external patient fixation or immobilisation device DOSE_REGION = ROI to be used as a dose reference CONTROL = ROI to be used in control of dose optimization and calculation
>ROI Interpreter	(3006,00A6)	2	Name of person performing the interpretation.
>Material ID	(300A,00E1)	3	User-supplied identifier for ROI material.
>ROI Physical Properties Sequence	(3006,00B0)	3	Introduces sequence describing physical properties associated with current ROI interpretation. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>ROI Physical Property	(3006,00B2)	1C	Physical property specified by ROI Physical Property Value (3006,00B4). Required if ROI Physical Properties Sequence (3006,00B0) is sent. Defined Terms: REL_MASS_DENSITY = mass density relative to water REL_ELEC_DENSITY = electron density relative to water EFFECTIVE_Z = effective atomic number EFF_Z_PER_A = ratio of effective atomic number to mass (AMU^{-1}) REL_STOP_RATIO = linear stopping power ratio relative to water
>>ROI Physical Property Value	(3006,00B4)	1C	User-assigned value for physical property. Required if ROI Physical Properties Sequence (3006,00B0) is sent.

C.8.8.8.1 RT ROI Interpreted Type

RT ROI Interpreted Type (3006,00A4) shall describe the class of ROI (e.g. CTV, PTV). Individual instances of each class of structure (e.g. CTV1, CTV2) can be distinguished using ROI Observation Label (3006,0085).

C.8.8.9 RT General Plan Module

Table C.8-45—RT GENERAL PLAN MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
RT Plan Label	(300A,0002)	1	User-defined label for treatment plan.
RT Plan Name	(300A,0003)	3	User-defined name for treatment plan.
RT Plan Description	(300A,0004)	3	User-defined description of treatment plan.
Instance Number	(0020,0013)	3	A number that identifies this object instance.
Operators' Name	(0008,1070)	2	Name of operator(s) creating treatment plan.
RT Plan Date	(300A,0006)	2	Date treatment plan was last modified.
RT Plan Time	(300A,0007)	2	Time treatment plan was last modified.
Treatment Protocols	(300A,0009)	3	Planned treatment protocols.
Plan Intent	(300A,000A)	3	Intent of this plan. Defined Terms: CURATIVE = curative therapy on patient PALLIATIVE = palliative therapy on patient PROPHYLACTIC = preventative therapy on patient VERIFICATION = verification of patient plan using phantom MACHINE_QA= Quality assurance of the delivery machine (independently of a specific patient) RESEARCH = Research project SERVICE = Machine repair or maintenance operation
Treatment Sites	(300A,000B)	3	Planned treatment sites.
RT Plan Geometry	(300A,000C)	1	Describes whether RT Plan is based on patient or treatment device geometry. See C.8.8.9.1. Defined Terms: PATIENT = RT Structure Set exists TREATMENT_DEVICE = RT Structure Set does not exist
Referenced Structure Set Sequence	(300C,0060)	1C	Introduces sequence of one Class/Instance pair describing instance of RT Structure Set on which the RT Plan is based. Only a single item shall be permitted in this sequence. Required if RT Plan Geometry (300A,000C) is PATIENT.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class. Required if Referenced Structure Set Sequence (300C,0060) is sent.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance. Required if Referenced Structure Set Sequence (300C,0060) is sent.

Referenced Dose Sequence	(300C,0080)	3	Introduces sequence of related SOP Class/Instance pairs describing related instances of RT Dose (for grids and named/unnamed point doses). One or more items may be included in this sequence. See Note 1.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class. Required if Referenced RT Dose Sequence (300C,0080) is sent.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance. Required if Referenced RT Dose Sequence (300C,0080) is sent.
Referenced RT Plan Sequence	(300C,0002)	3	Introduces sequence of related SOP Class/Instance pairs describing related instances of RT Plan. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class. Required if Referenced RT Plan Sequence (300C,0002) is sent.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance. Required if Referenced RT Plan Sequence (300C,0002) is sent.
>RT Plan Relationship	(300A,0055)	1C	Relationship of referenced plan with respect to current plan. Required if Referenced RT Plan Sequence (300C,0002) is sent. Defined Terms: PRIOR = plan delivered prior to current treatment ALTERNATIVE = alternative plan prepared for current treatment PREDECESSOR = plan used in derivation of current plan VERIFIED_PLAN = plan which is verified using the current plan. This value shall only be used if Plan Intent (300A,000A) is present and has a value of VERIFICATION.

Note: An RT Dose IOD referenced within the Referenced Dose Sequence (300C,0080) can be used for storing grid-based (pixel) data, individual dose points (with optional dose point names), isodose curves, and DVH's.

C.8.8.9.1 Referenced Structure Set Sequence

An RT Plan Geometry (300A,000C) of PATIENT shall signify that an RT Structure Set has been defined upon which the plan geometry is based, and this RT Structure Set shall be specified in the Referenced Structure Set Sequence (300C,0060). An RT Plan Geometry (300A,000C) of TREATMENT_DEVICE shall indicate that no patient geometry is available, and that the RT Plan is being defined with respect to the IEC FIXED Coordinate System.

C.8.8.10 RT Prescription Module

Table C.8-46—RT PRESCRIPTION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Prescription Description	(300A,000E)	3	User-defined description of treatment prescription.
Dose Reference Sequence	(300A,0010)	3	Introduces sequence of Dose References. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>Dose Reference Number	(300A,0012)	1C	Identification number of the Dose Reference. The value of Dose Reference Number (300A,0012) shall be unique within the RT Plan in which it is created. Required if Dose Reference Sequence (300A,0012) is sent.
>Dose Reference UID	(300A,0013)	3	A unique identifier for a Dose Reference that can be used to link the same entity across multiple RT Plan objects.
>Dose Reference Structure Type	(300A,0014)	1C	Structure type of Dose Reference. Required if Dose Reference Sequence (300A,0010) is sent. Defined Terms: POINT = dose reference point specified as ROI VOLUME = dose reference volume specified as ROI COORDINATES = point specified by Dose Reference Point Coordinates (300A,0018) SITE = dose reference clinical site
>Dose Reference Description	(300A,0016)	3	User-defined description of Dose Reference.
>Referenced ROI Number	(3006,0084)	1C	Uniquely identifies ROI representing the dose reference specified by ROI Number (3006,0022) in Structure Set ROI Sequence (3006,0020) in Structure Set Module within RT Structure Set in Referenced Structure Set Sequence (300C,0060) in RT General Plan Module. Required if Dose Reference Structure Type (300A,0014) is POINT or VOLUME and Dose Reference Sequence (300A,0010) is sent.
>Dose Reference Point Coordinates	(300A,0018)	1C	Coordinates (x,y,z) of Reference Point in the patient based coordinate system described in C.7.6.2.1.1 (mm). Required if Dose Reference Structure Type (300A,0014) is COORDINATES and Dose Reference Sequence (300A,0010) is sent.
>Nominal Prior Dose	(300A,001A)	3	Dose (in Gy) from prior treatment to this Dose Reference (e.g. from a previous

			course of treatment).
>Dose Reference Type	(300A,0020)	1C	Type of Dose Reference. Required if Dose Reference Sequence (300A,0010) is sent. Defined Terms: TARGET = treatment target (corresponding to GTV, PTV, or CTV in ICRU50) ORGAN_AT_RISK = Organ at Risk (as defined in ICRU50)
>Constraint Weight	(300A,0021)	3	Relative importance of satisfying constraint, where high values represent more important constraints.
>Delivery Warning Dose	(300A,0022)	3	The dose (in Gy) which when reached or exceeded should cause some action to be taken.
>Delivery Maximum Dose	(300A,0023)	3	The maximum dose (in Gy) which can be delivered to the dose reference.
>Target Minimum Dose	(300A,0025)	3	Minimum permitted dose (in Gy) to Dose Reference if Dose Reference Type (300A,0020) is TARGET.
>Target Prescription Dose	(300A,0026)	3	Prescribed dose (in Gy) to Dose Reference if Dose Reference Type (300A,0020) is TARGET.
>Target Maximum Dose	(300A,0027)	3	Maximum permitted dose (in Gy) to Dose Reference if Dose Reference Type (300A,0020) is TARGET.
>Target Underdose Volume Fraction	(300A,0028)	3	Maximum permitted fraction (in percent) of Target to receive less than the Target Prescription Dose if Dose Reference Type (300A,0020) is TARGET and Dose Reference Structure Type (300A,0014) is VOLUME. See C.8.8.10.1.
>Organ at Risk Full-volume Dose	(300A,002A)	3	Maximum dose (in Gy) to entire Dose Reference if Dose Reference Type (300A,0020) is ORGAN_AT_RISK and Dose Reference Structure Type (300A,0014) is VOLUME.
>Organ at Risk Limit Dose	(300A,002B)	3	Maximum permitted dose (in Gy) to any part of Dose Reference if Dose Reference Type (300A,0020) is ORGAN_AT_RISK and Dose Reference Structure Type (300A,0014) is VOLUME.
>Organ at Risk Maximum Dose	(300A,002C)	3	Maximum dose (in Gy) to non-overdosed part of Dose Reference if Dose Reference Type (300A,0020) is ORGAN_AT_RISK and Dose Reference Structure Type (300A,0014) is VOLUME.
>Organ at Risk Overdose Volume Fraction	(300A,002D)	3	Maximum permitted fraction (in percent) of the Organ at Risk to receive more than the Organ at Risk Maximum Dose if Dose

			Reference Type (300A,0020) is ORGAN_AT_RISK and Dose Reference Structure Type (300A,0014) is VOLUME.

C.8.8.10.1 Target Underdose Volume Fraction

If the Target Underdose Volume Fraction (300A,0028) is not present, it shall be interpreted as zero.

C.8.8.11 RT Tolerance Tables Module

Table C.8-47—RT TOLERANCE TABLES MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Tolerance Table Sequence	(300A,0040)	3	Introduces sequence of tolerance tables to be used for delivery of treatment plan. One or more items may be included in this sequence. See Note 1.
>Tolerance Table Number	(300A,0042)	1C	Identification number of the Tolerance Table. The value of Tolerance Table Number (300A,0042) shall be unique within the RT Plan in which it is created. Required if Tolerance Table Sequence (300A,0040) is sent.
>Tolerance Table Label	(300A,0043)	3	User-defined label for Tolerance Table.
>Gantry Angle Tolerance	(300A,0044)	3	Maximum permitted difference (in degrees) between planned and delivered Gantry Angle.
>Gantry Pitch Angle Tolerance	(300A,014E)	3	Maximum permitted difference (in degrees) between planned and delivered Gantry Pitch Angle.
>Beam Limiting Device Angle Tolerance	(300A,0046)	3	Maximum permitted difference (in degrees) between planned and delivered Beam Limiting Device Angle.
>Beam Limiting Device Tolerance Sequence	(300A,0048)	3	Introduces sequence of beam limiting device (collimator) tolerances. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>RT Beam Limiting Device Type	(300A,00B8)	1C	Type of beam limiting device (collimator). Required if Beam Limiting Device Tolerance Sequence (300A,0048) is sent. Enumerated Values: X = symmetric jaw pair in IEC X direction Y = symmetric jaw pair in IEC Y direction ASYMX = asymmetric jaw pair in IEC X direction ASYMY = asymmetric pair in IEC Y direction MLCX = multileaf (multi-element) jaw pair in IEC X direction MLCY = multileaf (multi-element) jaw pair in IEC Y direction

>>Beam Limiting Device Position Tolerance	(300A,004A)	1C	Maximum permitted difference (in mm) between planned and delivered leaf (element) or jaw positions for current beam limiting device (collimator). Required if Beam Limiting Device Tolerance Sequence (300A,0048) is sent.
>Patient Support Angle Tolerance	(300A,004C)	3	Maximum permitted difference (in degrees) between planned and delivered Patient Support Angle.
>Table Top Eccentric Angle Tolerance	(300A,004E)	3	Maximum permitted difference (in degrees) between planned and delivered Table Top Eccentric Angle.
>Table Top Vertical Position Tolerance	(300A,0051)	3	Maximum permitted difference (in mm) between planned and delivered Table Top Vertical Position.
>Table Top Longitudinal Position Tolerance	(300A,0052)	3	Maximum permitted difference (in mm) between planned and delivered Table Top Longitudinal Position.
>Table Top Lateral Position Tolerance	(300A,0053)	3	Maximum permitted difference (in mm) between planned and delivered Table Top Lateral Position.

Note: Tolerance Tables may be used to compare planned with delivered machine parameters. If the absolute difference between the planned and delivered values exceeds the Tolerance Table value, treatment may be inhibited or the operator may be warned.

C.8.8.12 RT Patient Setup Module

The RT Patient Setup Module contains information describing the positioning of the patient with respect to the treatment machine, along with any fixation devices used. It also describes the shielding devices applied to the patient. The module contains a sequence of patient setup descriptions, each of which may be referenced by one of more beams or brachy application setups.

Table C.8-48—RT PATIENT SETUP MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Patient Setup Sequence	(300A,0180)	1	Introduces sequence of patient setup data for current plan. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>Patient Setup Number	(300A,0182)	1	Identification number of the Patient Setup. The value of Patient Setup Number (300A,0182) shall be unique within the RT Plan in which it is created.
>Patient Setup Label	(300A,0183)	3	The user-defined label for the patient setup.
>Patient Position	(0018,5100)	1C	Patient position descriptor relative to the equipment. Required if Patient Additional Position (300A,0184) is not present. See Section C.7.3.1.1.2 for Defined Terms and further explanation.

>Patient Additional Position	(300A,0184)	1C	User-defined additional description of patient position. Required if Patient Position (0018,5100) is not present.
>Referenced Setup Image Sequence	(300A,0401)	3	Introduces sequence of setup verification images for this patient setup. One or more items may be included in this sequence. See C.8.8.12.1.1
>>Setup Image Comment	(300A,0402)	3	Comment on the Setup Image.
>>Include 'Image SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table 10-3			
>Fixation Device Sequence	(300A,0190)	3	Introduces sequence of Fixation Devices used in Patient Setup. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>Fixation Device Type	(300A,0192)	1C	Type of Fixation Device used during in Patient Setup. Required if Fixation Device Sequence (300A,0190) is sent. Defined Terms: BITEBLOCK HEADFRAME MASK MOLD CAST HEADREST BREAST_BOARD BODY_FRAME VACUUM_MOLD WHOLE_BODY_POD RECTAL_BALLOON
>>Fixation Device Label	(300A,0194)	2C	User-defined label identifier for Fixation Device. Required if Fixation Device Sequence (300A,0190) is sent.
>>Fixation Device Description	(300A,0196)	3	User-defined description of Fixation Device.
>>Fixation Device Position	(300A,0198)	3	Position/Notch number of Fixation Device.
>>Fixation Device Pitch Angle	(300A,0199)	3	The Fixation Device Pitch Angle, i.e. orientation of PITCHED FIXATION DEVICE coordinate system with respect to IEC PATIENT SUPPORT coordinate system (degrees). Pitching is the rotation around IEC PATIENT SUPPORT X-axis.
>>Fixation Device Roll Angle	(300A,019A)	3	The Fixation Device Roll Angle, i.e. orientation of ROLLED FIXATION DEVICE coordinate system with respect to IEC PITCHED FIXATION DEVICE coordinate system (degrees). Rolling is the rotation around IEC PATIENT SUPPORT Y-axis.
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An identifier for the accessory intended to

			be read by a device such as a bar-code reader.
>Shielding Device Sequence	(300A,01A0)	3	Introduces sequence of Shielding Devices used in Patient Setup. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>Shielding Device Type	(300A,01A2)	1C	Type of Shielding Device used in Patient Setup. Required if Shielding Device Sequence (300A,01A0) is sent. Defined Terms: GUM EYE GONAD
>>Shielding Device Label	(300A,01A4)	2C	User-defined label for Shielding Device. Required if Shielding Device Sequence (300A,01A0) is sent.
>>Shielding Device Description	(300A,01A6)	3	User-defined description of Shielding Device.
>>Shielding Device Position	(300A,01A8)	3	Position/Notch number of Shielding Device.
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An identifier for the accessory intended to be read by a device such as a bar-code reader.
>Setup Technique	(300A,01B0)	3	Setup Technique used in Patient Setup. Defined Terms: ISOCENTRIC FIXED_SSD TBI BREAST_BRIDGE SKIN_APPOSITION
>Setup Technique Description	(300A,01B2)	3	User-defined description of Setup Technique.
>Setup Device Sequence	(300A,01B4)	3	Introduces sequence of devices used for patient alignment in Patient Setup. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>Setup Device Type	(300A,01B6)	1C	Type of Setup Device used for Patient alignment. Required if Setup Device Sequence (300A,01B4) is sent. Defined Terms: LASER_POINTER DISTANCE_METER TABLE_HEIGHT MECHANICAL_PTR ARC
>>Setup Device Label	(300A,01B8)	2C	User-defined label for Setup Device used for patient alignment. Required if Setup

			Device Sequence (300A,01B4) is sent.
>>Setup Device Description	(300A,01BA)	3	User-defined description for Setup Device used for patient alignment.
>>Setup Device Parameter	(300A,01BC)	2C	Setup Parameter for Setup Device in appropriate IEC 61217 coordinate system. Units shall be mm for distances and degrees for angles. Required if Setup Device Sequence (300A,011B4) is sent.
>>Setup Reference Description	(300A,01D0)	3	User-defined description of Setup Reference used for patient alignment.
>Table Top Vertical Setup Displacement	(300A,01D2)	3	Vertical Displacement in IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system (in mm) relative to initial Setup Position, i.e. vertical offset between patient positioning performed using setup and treatment position.
>Table Top Longitudinal Setup Displacement	(300A,01D4)	3	Longitudinal Displacement in IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system (in mm) relative to initial Setup Position, i.e. longitudinal offset between patient positioning performed using setup and treatment position.
>Table Top Lateral Setup Displacement	(300A,01D6)	3	Lateral Displacement in IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system (in mm) relative to initial Setup Position, i.e. lateral offset between patient positioning performed using setup and treatment position.
>Motion Synchronization Sequence	(300A,0410)	3	Introduces sequence of Motion Synchronization. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>Respiratory Motion Compensation Technique	(0018,9170)	1	Technique applied to reduce respiratory motion artifacts. Defined Terms: NONE BREATH_HOLD REALTIME = image acquisition shorter than respiratory cycle GATING = Prospective gating TRACKING = prospective through-plane or in-plane motion tracking PHASE_ORDERING = prospective phase ordering PHASE_RESCANNING = prospective techniques, such as real-time averaging, diminishing variance and motion adaptive gating RETROSPECTIVE = retrospective gating CORRECTION = retrospective image correction UNKNOWN = technique not known

>>Respiratory Signal Source	(0018,9171)	1	Signal source from which respiratory motion is derived. Defined Terms: NONE BELT NASAL_PROBE CO2_SENSOR NAVIGATOR = MR navigator and organ edge detection MR_PHASE = phase (of center k-space line) ECG = baseline demodulation of the ECG SPIROMETER = Signal derived from flow sensor EXTERNAL_MARKER = Signal determined from external motion surrogate INTERNAL_MARKER = Signal determined from internal motion surrogate IMAGE = Signal derived from an image UNKNOWN = Signal source not known
>>Respiratory Motion Compensation Technique Description	(0018,9185)	3	Description of respiratory motion compensation technique.
>>Respiratory Signal Source ID	(0018,9186)	3	Identifies the device providing the respiratory signal.

C.8.8.12.1 RT Patient Setup Module Attributes

C.8.8.12.1.1 Referenced Setup Image Sequence

Images with modality SC or VL serve as visible light photos for visual setup control. Images with modality RTIMAGE serve as reference images on plan level. RT Images present in this sequence shall not be referenced in the Referenced Reference Image Sequence (300C,0042) of the RT Beams module.

C.8.8.13 RT Fraction Scheme Module

The RT Fraction Scheme module contains attributes that describe a single or multiple scheme of dose descriptions. Each sequence item contains dose specification information, fractionation patterns, and either beam or brachytherapy application setup specifications. The design of the RT Fraction Scheme module allows a beam or brachytherapy application setup to be used in multiple fraction schemes.

Table C.8-49—RT FRACTION SCHEME MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Fraction Group Sequence	(300A,0070)	1	Introduces sequence of Fraction Groups in current Fraction Scheme. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>Fraction Group Number	(300A,0071)	1	Identification number of the Fraction Group. The value of Fraction Group Number (300A,0071) shall be unique within

			the RT Plan in which it is created.
>Fraction Group Description	(300A,0072)	3	The user defined description for the fraction group.
>Referenced Dose Sequence	(300C,0080)	3	Introduces sequence of related SOP Class/Instance pairs describing related instances of RT Dose (for grids, isodose curves and named/unnamed point doses). One or more items may be included in this sequence. See Note 1.
>>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class. Required if Referenced Dose Sequence (300C,0080) is sent.
>>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance. Required if Referenced Dose Sequence (300C,0080) is sent.
>Referenced Dose Reference Sequence	(300C,0050)	3	Introduces sequence of Dose References for the current Fraction Group. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>Referenced Dose Reference Number	(300C,0051)	1C	Uniquely identifies Dose Reference specified by Dose Reference Number (300A,0012) within Dose Reference Sequence (300A,0010) in RT Prescription Module. Required if Referenced Dose Reference Sequence (300C,0050) is sent.
>>Constraint Weight	(300A,0021)	3	Relative importance of satisfying constraint, where high values represent more important constraints.
>>Delivery Warning Dose	(300A,0022)	3	The dose (in Gy) which when reached or exceeded should cause some action to be taken.
>>Delivery Maximum Dose	(300A,0023)	3	The maximum dose (in Gy) which can be delivered to the dose reference.
>>Target Minimum Dose	(300A,0025)	3	Minimum permitted dose (in Gy) to Dose Reference if Dose Reference Type (300A,0020) of referenced Dose Reference is TARGET.
>>Target Prescription Dose	(300A,0026)	3	Prescribed dose (in Gy) to Dose Reference if Dose Reference Type (300A,0020) of referenced Dose Reference is TARGET.
>>Target Maximum Dose	(300A,0027)	3	Maximum permitted dose (in Gy) to Dose Reference if Dose Reference Type (300A,0020) of referenced Dose Reference is TARGET.
>>Target Underdose Volume Fraction	(300A,0028)	3	Maximum permitted fraction (in percent) of Target to receive less than the Target Prescription Dose (300A,0027) if Dose Reference Type (300A,0020) of referenced Dose Reference is TARGET and Dose Reference Structure Type (300A,0014) of

			referenced Dose Reference is VOLUME.
>>Organ at Risk Full-volume Dose	(300A,002A)	3	Maximum dose (in Gy) to entire Dose Reference if Dose Reference Type (300A,0020) of referenced Dose Reference is ORGAN_AT_RISK and Dose Reference Structure Type (300A,0014) of referenced Dose Reference is VOLUME.
>>Organ at Risk Limit Dose	(300A,002B)	3	Maximum permitted dose (in Gy) to any part of Dose Reference if Dose Reference Type (300A,0020) of referenced Dose Reference is ORGAN_AT_RISK and Dose Reference Structure Type (300A,0014) of referenced Dose Reference is VOLUME.
>>Organ at Risk Maximum Dose	(300A,002C)	3	Maximum dose (in Gy) to non-overdosed part of Dose Reference if Dose Reference Type (300A,0020) of referenced Dose Reference is ORGAN_AT_RISK and Dose Reference Structure Type (300A,0014) of referenced Dose Reference is VOLUME.
>>Organ at Risk Overdose Volume Fraction	(300A,002D)	3	Maximum permitted fraction (in percent) of Organ at Risk to receive more than the Organ at Risk Maximum Dose if Dose Reference Type (300A,0020) of referenced Dose Reference is ORGAN_AT_RISK and Dose Reference Structure Type (300A,0014) of referenced Dose Reference is VOLUME.
>Number of Fractions Planned	(300A,0078)	2	Total number of treatments (Fractions) prescribed for current Fraction Group.
>Number of Fraction Pattern Digits Per Day	(300A,0079)	3	Number of digits in Fraction Pattern (300A,007B) used to represent one day. See Note 2.
>Repeat Fraction Cycle Length	(300A,007A)	3	Number of weeks needed to describe treatment pattern. See Note 2.
>Fraction Pattern	(300A,007B)	3	String of 0's (no treatment) and 1's (treatment) describing treatment pattern. Length of string is 7 x Number of Fraction Pattern Digits Per Day x Repeat Fraction Cycle Length. Pattern shall start on a Monday. See Note 2.
>Number of Beams	(300A,0080)	1	Number of Beams in current Fraction Group. If Number of Beams is greater then zero, Number of Brachy Application Setups (300A,00A0) shall equal zero.
>Referenced Beam Sequence	(300C,0004)	1C	Introduces sequence of treatment beams in current Fraction Group. Required if Number of Beams (300A,0080) is greater than zero. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>Referenced Beam Number	(300C,0006)	1C	Uniquely identifies Beam specified by Beam Number (300A,00C0) within Beam

			Sequence (300A,00B0) in RT Beams Module. Required if Referenced Beam Sequence (300C,0004) is sent.
>>Beam Dose Specification Point	(300A,0082)	3	Coordinates (x,y,z) of point at which Beam Dose is specified in the patient based coordinate system described in C.7.6.2.1.1 (mm). See Note 3.
>>Beam Dose	(300A,0084)	3	Dose (in Gy) at Beam Dose Specification Point (300A,0082) due to current Beam.
>>Beam Dose Point Depth	(300A,0088)	3	The depth (in mm) in the patient along a ray from the source to the dose point specified by the Beam Dose Specification Point (300A,0082).
>>Beam Dose Point Equivalent Depth	(300A,0089)	3	The radiological depth in mm (water-equivalent depth, taking tissue heterogeneity into account) in the patient along a ray from the source to the dose point specified by the Beam Dose Specification Point (300A,0082).
>>Beam Dose Point SSD	(300A,008A)	3	Source to patient surface distance along a ray from the source to the dose point specified by the Beam Dose Specification Point (300A,0082).
>>Beam Meterset	(300A,0086)	3	Machine setting to be delivered for current Beam, specified in Monitor Units (MU) or minutes as defined by Primary Dosimeter Unit (300A,00B3) (in RT Beams Module) for referenced Beam. See Note 4.
>Number of Brachy Application Setups	(300A,00A0)	1	Number of Brachy Application Setups in current Fraction Group. If Number of Brachy Application Setups is greater then zero, Number of Beams (300A,0080) shall equal zero.
>Referenced Brachy Application Setup Sequence	(300C,000A)	1C	Introduces sequence of treatment Brachy Application Setups in current Fraction Group. Required if Number of Brachy Application Setups (300A,00A0) is greater than zero. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>Referenced Brachy Application Setup Number	(300C,000C)	1C	Uniquely identifies Brachy Application Setup specified by Brachy Application Setup Number (300A,0234) within Brachy Application Setup Sequence (300A,0230) in RT Brachy Application Setups Module. Required if Referenced Brachy Application Setup Sequence (300C,000A) is sent.
>>Brachy Application Setup Dose Specification Point	(300A,00A2)	3	Coordinates (x,y,z) of point in the patient based coordinate system described in C.7.6.2.1.1 at which Brachy Application Setup Dose (300A,00A4) is specified (mm).
>>Brachy Application Setup Dose	(300A,00A4)	3	Dose (in Gy) at Brachy Application Setup

			Dose Specification Point (300A,00A2) due to current Brachy Application Setup.

Notes: 1. An RT Dose IOD referenced within the Referenced Dose Sequence (300C,0080) can be used for storing grid-based (pixel) data, isodose curves, and/or individual dose points (with optional dose point names) for the current Fraction Group.

2. The fractionation pattern does not indicate the actual start of treatment, or the order or timing of fraction delivery. If treatment does not commence as outlined in the pattern, it is the application's responsibility to make any necessary adjustments.

Examples of Fractionation Pattern Schemes:

a) 1 fraction group, 1 fraction per day (Monday to Friday):

Number of Fraction Pattern Digits per Day = 1, Repeat Fraction Cycle Length = 1, Fraction Pattern = 1111100

b) 2 fraction groups, 1 fraction per day, first fraction group Monday, Wednesday, and Friday, second fraction group Tuesday and Thursday:

Fraction Group 1: Number of Fraction Pattern Digits Per Day = 1, Repeat Fraction Cycle Length = 1, Fraction Pattern = 1010100

Fraction Group 2: Number of Fraction Pattern Digits Per Day = 1, Repeat Fraction Cycle Length = 1, Fraction Pattern = 0101000

c) 2 fraction groups, 1 fraction per day, alternating fraction groups every day of treatment (Monday to Friday):

Fraction Group 1: Number of Fraction Pattern Digits Per Day = 1, Repeat Fraction Cycle Length = 2, Fraction Pattern = 10101000101000

Fraction Group 2: Number of Fraction Pattern Digits Per Day = 1, Repeat Fraction Cycle Length = 2, Fraction Pattern = 01010001010100

d) 1 fraction group, 2 fractions per day (Monday to Friday):

Fraction Group 1: Number of Fraction Pattern Digits Per Day = 2, Repeat Fraction Cycle Length = 1, Fraction Pattern = 11111111110000

e) 2 fraction groups, 2 fractions per day, alternating fraction groups every treatment (Monday to Friday):

Fraction Group 1: Number of Fraction Pattern Digits Per Day = 1, Repeat Fraction Cycle Length = 1, Fraction Pattern = 1111100

Fraction Group 2: Number of Fraction Pattern Digits Per Day = 2, Repeat Fraction Cycle Length = 1, Fraction Pattern = 11111111110000

3. The Beam Dose Specification Point (300A,0082) and Brachy Application Setup Dose Specification Point (300A,00A2) contain the coordinates of the single point used for dose normalization. This point is distinct from the Referenced Dose Reference Sequence (300C,0050) in the RT Beams module and the Brachy Referenced Dose Reference Sequence (300A,0055) in the RT Brachy Application Setups module, which are used for plan evaluation and dose tracking.

4. The Meterset at a given Control Point (see RT Beams Module) is equal to the Beam Meterset (300A,0086) multiplied by the Cumulative Meterset Weight (300A,0134) for the Control Point, divided by the Final Cumulative Meterset Weight (300A,010E).

5. Attribute Referenced Patient Setup Number (300C,006A) was previously defined. Its use in this Module is now retired (see PS3.3 2004).

C.8.8.14 RT Beams Module

The RT Beams Module contains information defining equipment parameters for delivery of external radiation beams.

Table C.8-50—RT BEAMS MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Beam Sequence	(300A,00B0)	1	Introduces sequence of treatment beams for current RT Plan. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>Beam Number	(300A,00C0)	1	Identification number of the Beam. The value of Beam Number (300A,00C0) shall be unique within the RT Plan in which it is created. See Note 1.
>Beam Name	(300A,00C2)	3	User-defined name for Beam. See Note 1.
>Beam Description	(300A,00C3)	3	User-defined description for Beam. See Note 1.
>Beam Type	(300A,00C4)	1	Motion characteristic of Beam. See Note 5. Enumerated Values: STATIC = All Control Point Sequence (300A,0111) attributes remain unchanged between consecutive pairs of control points with changing Cumulative Meterset Weight (300A,0134). DYNAMIC = One or more Control Point Sequence (300A,0111) attributes change between one or more consecutive pairs of control points with changing Cumulative Meterset Weight (300A,0134).
>Radiation Type	(300A,00C6)	2	Particle type of Beam. Defined Terms: PHOTON ELECTRON NEUTRON PROTON
>High-Dose Technique Type	(300A,00C7)	1C	Type of high-dose treatment technique. Defined Terms: NORMAL = Standard treatment TBI = Total Body Irradiation HDR = High Dose Rate Required if treatment technique requires a dose that would normally require overriding of treatment machine safety controls.
>Treatment Machine Name	(300A,00B2)	2	User-defined name identifying treatment machine to be used for beam delivery. See Note 2.
>Manufacturer	(0008,0070)	3	Manufacturer of the equipment to be used for beam delivery.

>Institution Name	(0008,0080)	3	Institution where the equipment is located that is to be used for beam delivery.
>Institution Address	(0008,0081)	3	Mailing address of the institution where the equipment is located that is to be used for beam delivery.
>Institutional Department Name	(0008,1040)	3	Department in the institution where the equipment is located that is to be used for beam delivery.
>Manufacturer's Model Name	(0008,1090)	3	Manufacturer's model name of the equipment that is to be used for beam delivery.
>Device Serial Number	(0018,1000)	3	Manufacturer's serial number of the equipment that is to be used for beam delivery.
>Primary Dosimeter Unit	(300A,00B3)	3	Measurement unit of machine dosimeter. See C.8.8.14.1. Enumerated Values: MU = Monitor Unit MINUTE = minute
>Referenced Tolerance Table Number	(300C,00A0)	3	Uniquely identifies Tolerance Table specified by Tolerance Table Number (300A,0042) within Tolerance Table Sequence in RT Tolerance Tables Module. These tolerances are to be used for verification of treatment machine settings.
>Source-Axis Distance	(300A,00B4)	3	Radiation source to Gantry rotation axis distance of the equipment that is to be used for beam delivery (mm).
>Beam Limiting Device Sequence	(300A,00B6)	1	Introduces sequence of beam limiting device (collimator) jaw or leaf (element) sets. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>RT Beam Limiting Device Type	(300A,00B8)	1	Type of beam limiting device (collimator). Enumerated Values: X = symmetric jaw pair in IEC X direction Y = symmetric jaw pair in IEC Y direction ASYMX = asymmetric jaw pair in IEC X direction ASYMY = asymmetric pair in IEC Y direction MLCX = multileaf (multi-element) jaw pair in IEC X direction MLCY = multileaf (multi-element) jaw pair in IEC Y direction
>>Source to Beam Limiting Device Distance	(300A,00BA)	3	Radiation source to beam limiting device (collimator) distance of the equipment that is to be used for beam delivery (mm).

>>Number of Leaf/Jaw Pairs	(300A,00BC)	1	Number of leaf (element) or jaw pairs (equal to 1 for standard beam limiting device jaws).
>>Leaf Position Boundaries	(300A,00BE)	2C	Boundaries of beam limiting device (collimator) leaves (in mm) in IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE coordinate axis appropriate to RT Beam Limiting Device Type (300A,00B8), i.e. X-axis for MLCY, Y-axis for MLCX. Contains N+1 values, where N is the Number of Leaf/Jaw Pairs (300A,00BC), starting from Leaf (Element) Pair 1. Required if Beam Limiting Device Sequence (300A,00B6) is sent and RT Beam Limiting Device Type (300A,00B8) is MLCX or MLCY. See Note 3.
>Referenced Patient Setup Number	(300C,006A)	3	Uniquely identifies Patient Setup to be used for current beam, specified by Patient Setup Number (300A,0182) within Patient Setup Sequence of RT Patient Setup Module.
>Referenced Reference Image Sequence	(300C,0042)	3	Introduces sequence of reference images used for validation of current beam. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class. Required if Referenced Reference Image Sequence (300C,0042) is sent.
>>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance. Required if Referenced Reference Image Sequence (300C,0042) is sent.
>>Reference Image Number	(300A,00C8)	1C	Uniquely identifies Reference Image within Referenced Reference Image Sequence (300A,0042). Required if Referenced Reference Image Sequence (300A,0042) is sent.
>>Start Cumulative Meterset Weight	(300C,0008)	3	Cumulative Meterset Weight within current Beam at which image acquisition starts.
>>End Cumulative Meterset Weight	(300C,0009)	3	Cumulative Meterset Weight within current Beam at which image acquisition ends.
>Planned Verification Image Sequence	(300A,00CA)	3	Introduces sequence of planned verification images to be acquired during current beam. One or more items may be included in this sequence. See C.8.8.14.2.
>>Start Cumulative Meterset Weight	(300C,0008)	3	Cumulative Meterset Weight within current Beam at which image acquisition will start.
>>Meterset Exposure	(3002,0032)	3	Meterset duration over which image is to be acquired, specified in Monitor units (MU) or minutes as defined by Primary Dosimeter Unit (300A,00B3).

>>End Cumulative Meterset Weight	(300C,0009)	3	Cumulative Meterset Weight within current Beam at which image acquisition will end.
>>RT Image Plane	(3002,000C)	3	Describes whether or not image plane is normal to beam axis. Enumerated Values: NORMAL = image plane normal to beam axis NON_NORMAL = image plane non-normal to beam axis
>>X-Ray Image Receptor Angle	(3002,000E)	3	X-Ray Image Receptor Angle i.e. orientation of IEC X-RAY IMAGE RECEPTOR coordinate system with respect to IEC GANTRY coordinate system (degrees). See C.8.8.14.3.
>>RT Image Orientation	(3002,0010)	3	The direction cosines of the first row and the first column with respect to the IEC X-RAY IMAGE RECEPTOR coordinate system.
>>RT Image Position	(3002,0012)	3	The x and y coordinates (in mm) of the upper left hand corner of the image, in the IEC X-RAY IMAGE RECEPTOR coordinate system. This is the center of the first pixel transmitted.
>>RT Image SID	(3002,0026)	3	Radiation machine source to image plane distance (mm).
>>Imaging Device-Specific Acquisition Parameters	(300A,00CC)	3	User-specified device-specific parameters that describe how the imager will acquire the image.
>>Referenced Reference Image Number	(300C,0007)	3	Uniquely identifies Reference Image to which planned verification image is related, specified by Reference Image Number (300A,00C8) within Referenced Reference Image Sequence (300A,0042).
>Treatment Delivery Type	(300A,00CE)	3	Delivery Type of treatment. Defined Terms: TREATMENT = normal patient treatment OPEN_PORTFILM = portal image acquisition with open field TRMT_PORTFILM = portal image acquisition with treatment port CONTINUATION = continuation of interrupted treatment SETUP = no treatment beam is applied for this RT Beam. To be used for specifying the gantry, couch, and other machine positions where X-ray set-up images or measurements are to be taken
>Referenced Dose Sequence	(300C,0080)	3	Introduces sequence of related SOP Class/Instance pairs describing related

			instances of RT Dose (for grids, isodose curves, and named/unnamed point doses). One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class. Required if Referenced Dose Sequence (300C,0080) is sent.
>>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance. Required if Referenced Dose Sequence (300C,0080) is sent.
>Number of Wedges	(300A,00D0)	1	Number of wedges associated with current Beam.
>Wedge Sequence	(300A,00D1)	1C	Introduces sequence of treatment wedges. Required if Number of Wedges (300A,00D0) is non-zero. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>Wedge Number	(300A,00D2)	1C	Identification number of the Wedge. The value of Wedge Number (300A,00D2) shall be unique within the Beam in which it is created. Required if Wedge Sequence (300A,00D1) is sent.
>>Wedge Type	(300A,00D3)	2C	Type of wedge (if any) defined for Beam. Required if Wedge Sequence (300A,00D1) is sent. Defined Terms: STANDARD = standard (static) wedge DYNAMIC = moving beam limiting device (collimator) jaw simulating wedge MOTORIZED = single wedge which can be removed from beam remotely
>>Wedge ID	(300A,00D4)	3	User-supplied identifier for Wedge.
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An identifier for the accessory intended to be read by a device such as a bar-code reader.
>>Wedge Angle	(300A,00D5)	2C	Nominal wedge angle (degrees). Required if Wedge Sequence (300A,00D1) is sent.
>>Wedge Factor	(300A,00D6)	2C	Nominal wedge factor under machine calibration conditions at the beam energy specified by the Nominal Beam Energy (300A,0114) of the first Control Point of the Control Point Sequence (300A,0111). Required if Wedge Sequence (300A,00D1) is sent.
>>Wedge Orientation	(300A,00D8)	2C	Orientation of wedge, i.e. orientation of IEC WEDGE FILTER coordinate system with respect to IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE coordinate system (degrees). Required if Wedge Sequence (300A,00D1) is sent.
>>Source to Wedge Tray Distance	(300A,00DA)	3	Radiation source to wedge tray attachment

			edge distance (in mm) for current wedge.
>Number of Compensators	(300A,00E0)	1	Number of compensators associated with current Beam.
>Total Compensator Tray Factor	(300A,00E2)	3	Compensator Tray transmission factor (between 0 and 1), at the beam energy specified by the Nominal Beam Energy (300A,0114) of the first Control Point of the Control Point Sequence (300A,0111).
>Compensator Sequence	(300A,00E3)	1C	Introduces sequence of treatment compensators. Required if Number of Compensators (300A,00E0) is non-zero. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>Compensator Number	(300A,00E4)	1C	Identification number of the Compensator. The value of Compensator Number (300A,00E4) shall be unique within the Beam in which it is created. Required if Number of Compensators (300A,00E0) is non-zero.
>>Compensator Type	(3004,00EE)	3	Type of compensator (if any). Defined Terms: STANDARD = physical (static) compensator DYNAMIC = moving Beam Limiting Device (collimator) simulating physical compensator
>>Material ID	(300A,00E1)	2C	User-supplied identifier for material used to manufacture Compensator. Required if Number of Compensators (300A,00E0) is non-zero.
>>Compensator ID	(300A,00E5)	3	User-supplied identifier for compensator.
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An identifier for the accessory intended to be read by a device such as a bar-code reader.
>>Source to Compensator Tray Distance	(300A,00E6)	2C	Radiation source to compensator tray attachment edge distance (in mm) for current compensator. Required if Compensator Sequence (300A,00E3) is sent.
>>Compensator Divergence	(300A,02E0)	3	Indicates presence or absence of geometrical divergence of the compensator. Enumerated Values: PRESENT = the compensator is shaped according to the beam geometrical divergence. ABSENT = the compensator is not shaped according to the beam geometrical divergence.
>>Compensator Mounting Position	(300A,02E1)	3	Indicates on which side of the Compensator Tray the compensator is

			mounted. Enumerated Values: PATIENT_SIDE = the compensator is mounted on the side of the Compensator Tray which is towards the patient. SOURCE_SIDE = the compensator is mounted on the side of the Compensator Tray which is towards the radiation source. DOUBLE_SIDED = the compensator has a shaped (i.e. non-flat) surface on both sides of the Compensator Tray.
>>Compensator Rows	(300A,00E7)	1C	Number of rows in the compensator. Required if Compensator Sequence (300A,00E3) is sent.
>>Compensator Columns	(300A,00E8)	1C	Number of columns in the compensator. Required if Compensator Sequence (300A,00E3) is sent.
>>Compensator Pixel Spacing	(300A,00E9)	1C	Physical distance (in mm) between the center of each pixel projected onto machine isocentric plane. Specified by a numeric pair - adjacent row spacing (delimiter) adjacent column spacing. See 10.7.1.3 for further explanation of the value order. Required if Compensator Sequence (300A,00E3) is sent.
>>Compensator Position	(300A,00EA)	1C	The x and y coordinates of the upper left hand corner (first pixel transmitted) of the compensator, projected onto the machine isocentric plane in the IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE coordinate system (mm). Required if Compensator Sequence (300A,00E3) is sent.
>>Compensator Transmission Data	(300A,00EB)	1C	A data stream of the pixel samples which comprise the compensator, expressed as broad-beam transmission values (between 0 and 1) along a ray line passing through the pixel, at the beam energy specified by the Nominal Beam Energy (300A,0114) of the first Control Point of the Control Point Sequence (300A,0111). The order of pixels sent is left to right, top to bottom, i.e., the upper left pixel is sent first followed by the remainder of the first row , followed by the first pixel of the 2nd row, then the remainder of the 2nd row and so on) when viewed from the radiation source. Required if Compensator Sequence (300A,00E3) is sent and Material ID (300A,00E1) is zero-length. See C.8.8.14.10. Note: Compensator Transmission Data may not be properly encoded if Explicit-VR transfer syntax is used and the VL of this attribute exceeds 65534 bytes.

>>Compensator Thickness Data	(300A,00EC)	1C	A data stream of the pixel samples which comprise the compensator, expressed as thicknesses (in mm). The order of pixels sent is left to right, top to bottom, i.e., the upper left pixel is sent first followed by the remainder of the first row , followed by the first pixel of the 2nd row, then the remainder of the 2nd row and so on) when viewed from the radiation source. Required if Compensator Sequence (300A,00E3) is sent and Material ID (300A,00E1) is non-zero length. See C.8.8.14.9 and C.8.8.14.10. Note: Compensator Thickness Data may not be properly encoded if Explicit-VR transfer syntax is used and the VL of this attribute exceeds 65534 bytes.
>>Source to Compensator Distance	(300A,02E2)	1C	A data stream of the pixel samples which comprise the distance from the radiation source to the compensator surface closest to the radiation source (in mm). The order of pixels sent is left to right, top to bottom (upper left pixel, followed by the remainder of row 1, followed by the remainder of the columns). Required if Compensator Sequence (300A,00E3) is sent, Material ID (300A,00E1) is non-zero length, and Compensator Mounting Position (300A,02E1) is DOUBLE_SIDED. See C.8.8.14.9.
>Number of Boli	(300A,00ED)	1	Number of boli associated with current Beam.
>Referenced Bolus Sequence	(300C,00B0)	1C	Introduces sequence of boli associated with Beam. Required if Number of Boli (300A,00ED) is non-zero. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>Referenced ROI Number	(3006,0084)	1C	Uniquely identifies ROI representing the Bolus specified by ROI Number (3006,0022) in Structure Set ROI Sequence (3006,0020) in Structure Set Module within RT Structure Set in Referenced Structure Set Sequence (300C,0060) in RT General Plan Module. Required if Referenced Bolus Sequence (300C,00B0) is sent.
>>Bolus ID	(300A,00DC)	3	User-supplied identifier for the Bolus.
>>Bolus Description	(300A,00DD)	3	User-defined description for the Bolus.
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An identifier for the accessory intended to be read by a device such as a bar-code reader.
>Number of Blocks	(300A,00F0)	1	Number of shielding blocks associated with

			Beam.
>Total Block Tray Factor	(300A,00F2)	3	Total block tray transmission for all block trays (between 0 and 1) at the beam energy specified by the Nominal Beam Energy (300A,0114) of the first Control Point of the Control Point Sequence (300A,0111).
>Block Sequence	(300A,00F4)	1C	Introduces sequence of blocks associated with Beam. Required if Number of Blocks (300A,00F0) is non-zero. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>Block Tray ID	(300A,00F5)	3	User-supplied identifier for block tray.
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An identifier for the accessory intended to be read by a device such as a bar-code reader.
>>Source to Block Tray Distance	(300A,00F6)	2C	Radiation Source to attachment edge of block tray assembly (mm). Required if Block Sequence (300A,00F4) is sent.
>>Block Type	(300A,00F8)	1C	Type of block. Required if Block Sequence (300A,00F4) is sent. See C.8.8.14.4. Enumerated Values: SHIELDING = blocking material is inside contour APERTURE = blocking material is outside contour
>>Block Divergence	(300A,00FA)	2C	Indicates presence or otherwise of geometrical divergence. Required if Block Sequence (300A,00F4) is sent. Enumerated Values: PRESENT = block edges are shaped for beam divergence ABSENT = block edges are not shaped for beam divergence
>>Block Mounting Position	(300A,00FB)	3	Indicates on which side of the Block Tray the block is mounted. Enumerated Values: PATIENT_SIDE = the block is mounted on the side of the Block Tray which is towards the patient. SOURCE_SIDE = the block is mounted on the side of the Block Tray which is towards the radiation source.
>>Block Number	(300A,00FC)	1C	Identification number of the Block. The value of Block Number (300A,00FC) shall be unique within the Beam in which it is created. Required if Block Sequence (300A,00F4) is sent.
>>Block Name	(300A,00FE)	3	User-defined name for block.

>>Material ID	(300A,00E1)	2C	User-supplied identifier for material used to manufacture Block. Required if Block Sequence (300A,00F4) is sent.
>>Block Thickness	(300A,0100)	2C	Physical thickness of block (in mm) parallel to radiation beam axis. Required if Block Sequence (300A,00F4) is sent and Material ID (300A,00E1) is non-zero length. See C.8.8.14.4.
>>Block Transmission	(300A,0102)	2C	Transmission through the block (between 0 and 1) at the beam energy specified by the Nominal Beam Energy (300A,0114) of the first Control Point of the Control Point Sequence (300A,0111). Required if Block Sequence (300A,00F4) is sent and Material ID (300A,00E1) is zero length. See C.8.8.14.4.
>>Block Number of Points	(300A,0104)	2C	Number of (x,y) pairs defining the block edge. Required if Block Sequence (300A,00F4) is sent.
>>Block Data	(300A,0106)	2C	A data stream of (x,y) pairs which comprise the block edge. The number of pairs shall be equal to Block Number of Points (300A,0104), and the vertices shall be interpreted as a closed polygon. Coordinates are projected onto the machine isocentric plane in the IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE coordinate system (mm). Required if Block Sequence (300A,00F4) is sent. See Note 4.
>Applicator Sequence	(300A,0107)	3	Introduces sequence of Applicators associated with Beam. Only a single item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>>Applicator ID	(300A,0108)	1C	User or machine supplied identifier for Applicator. Required if Applicator Sequence (300A,0107) is sent.
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An identifier for the accessory intended to be read by a device such as a bar-code reader.
>>Applicator Type	(300A,0109)	1C	Type of Applicator. Required if Applicator Sequence (300A,0107) is sent. Defined Terms: ELECTRON_SQUARE = square electron applicator ELECTRON_RECT = rectangular electron applicator ELECTRON_CIRC = circular electron applicator ELECTRON_SHORT = short electron applicator ELECTRON_OPEN = open (dummy)

			electron applicator INTRAOPERATIVE = intraoperative (custom) applicator STEREOTACTIC = stereotactic applicator
>>Applicator Description	(300A,010A)	3	User-defined description for Applicator.
>Final Cumulative Meterset Weight	(300A,010E)	1C	Value of Cumulative Meterset Weight (300A,0134) for final Control Point in Control Point Sequence (300A,0111). Required if Cumulative Meterset Weight is non-null in Control Points specified within Control Point Sequence (300A,0111). See C.8.8.14.1.
>Number of Control Points	(300A,0110)	1	Number of control points in Beam.
>Control Point Sequence	(300A,0111)	1	Introduces sequence of machine configurations describing treatment beam. Two or more items may be included in this sequence. See C.8.8.14.5 and C.8.8.14.6.
>>Control Point Index	(300A,0112)	1C	Index of current Control Point, starting at 0 for first Control Point. Required if Control Point Sequence (300A,0111) is sent.
>>Cumulative Meterset Weight	(300A,0134)	2C	Cumulative weight to current control point. Cumulative Meterset Weight for the first item in Control Point Sequence shall always be zero. Cumulative Meterset Weight for the final item in Control Point Sequence shall always be equal to Final Cumulative Meterset Weight. Required if Control Point Sequence (300A,0111) is sent. See C.8.8.14.1.
>>Referenced Dose Reference Sequence	(300C,0050)	3	Introduces a sequence of Dose References for current Beam. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>>Referenced Dose Reference Number	(300C,0051)	1C	Uniquely identifies Dose Reference specified by Dose Reference Number (300A,0012) in Dose Reference Sequence (300A,0010) in RT Prescription Module. Required if Referenced Dose Reference Sequence (300C,0050) is sent.
>>>Cumulative Dose Reference Coefficient	(300A,010C)	2C	Coefficient used to calculate cumulative dose contribution from this Beam to the referenced Dose Reference at the current Control Point. Required if Referenced Dose Reference Sequence (300C,0050) is sent. See C.8.8.14.7.
>>Referenced Dose Sequence	(300C,0080)	1C	Sequence describing related instances of RT Dose (for grids, isodose curves, and named/unnamed point doses). One or more items may be included in this sequence. Required if RT Dose is being sent, and

			Dose Summation Type (3004,000A) equals CONTROL_POINT.
>>>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>>>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.
>>Nominal Beam Energy	(300A,0114)	3	Nominal Beam Energy at control point (MV/MeV).
>>Dose Rate Set	(300A,0115)	3	Dose Rate to be set on treatment machine for segment beginning at current control point (e.g. MU/min).
>>Wedge Position Sequence	(300A,0116)	3	A Sequence of Items describing Wedge Positions for the current control point. Required for first item of Control Point Sequence if Number of Wedges (300A,00D0) is non-zero, and in subsequent control points if Wedge Position (300A,0118) changes during Beam. See C.8.8.14.5. The number of items in this sequence shall equal the value of Number of Wedges (300A,00D0).
>>>Referenced Wedge Number	(300C,00C0)	1C	Uniquely references Wedge described by Wedge Number (300A,00D2) in Wedge Sequence (300A,00D1). Required if Wedge Position Sequence (300A,0116) is sent.
>>>Wedge Position	(300A,0118)	1C	Position of Wedge at current Control Point. Required if Wedge Position Sequence (300A,0116) is sent. Enumerated Values: IN OUT
>>Beam Limiting Device Position Sequence	(300A,011A)	1C	Introduces sequence of beam limiting device (collimator) jaw or leaf (element) positions. Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Beam Limiting Device changes during Beam. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>>RT Beam Limiting Device Type	(300A,00B8)	1C	Type of beam limiting device (collimator). The value of this attribute shall correspond to RT Beam Limiting Device Type (300A,00B8) defined in an item of Beam Limiting Device Sequence (300A,00B6). Required if Beam Limiting Device Position Sequence (300A,011A) is sent. Enumerated Values: X = symmetric jaw pair in IEC X direction Y = symmetric jaw pair in IEC Y direction

			ASYMX = asymmetric jaw pair in IEC X direction ASYMY = asymmetric pair in IEC Y direction MLCX = multileaf (multi-element) jaw pair in IEC X direction MLCY = multileaf (multi-element) jaw pair in IEC Y direction
>>>Leaf/Jaw Positions	(300A,011C)	1C	Positions of beam limiting device (collimator) leaf (element) or jaw pairs (in mm) in IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE coordinate axis appropriate to RT Beam Limiting Device Type (300A,00B8), e.g. X-axis for MLCX, Y-axis for MLCY. Contains 2N values, where N is the Number of Leaf/Jaw Pairs (300A,00BC) in Beam Limiting Device Sequence (300A,00B6). Values shall be listed in IEC leaf (element) subscript order 101, 102, ... 1N, 201, 202, ... 2N. Required if Beam Limiting Device Position Sequence (300A,011A) is sent. See Note 2.
>>Gantry Angle	(300A,011E)	1C	Gantry angle of radiation source, i.e. orientation of IEC GANTRY coordinate system with respect to IEC FIXED REFERENCE coordinate system (degrees). Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Gantry Angle changes during Beam.
>>Gantry Rotation Direction	(300A,011F)	1C	Direction of Gantry Rotation when viewing gantry from isocenter, for segment following Control Point. Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Gantry Rotation Direction changes during Beam. See C.8.8.14.8. Enumerated Values: CW = clockwise CC = counter-clockwise NONE = no rotation
>>Gantry Pitch Angle	(300A,014A)	3	Gantry Pitch Angle. i.e. the rotation of the IEC GANTRY coordinate system about the X-axis of the IEC GANTRY coordinate system (degrees). If used, must be present for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if used and Gantry Pitch Rotation Angle changes during Beam, must be present. See C.8.8.25.6.5.
>>Gantry Pitch Rotation Direction	(300A,014C)	3	Direction of Gantry Pitch Angle when viewing along the positive X-axis of the IEC GANTRY coordinate system, for segment following Control Point. If used, must be

			present for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if used and Gantry Pitch Rotation Direction changes during Beam, must be present. See C.8.8.14.8 and C.8.8.25.6.5. Enumerated Values: CW = clockwise CC = counter-clockwise NONE = no rotation
>>Beam Limiting Device Angle	(300A,0120)	1C	Beam Limiting Device angle, i.e. orientation of IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE coordinate system with respect to IEC GANTRY coordinate system (degrees). Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Beam Limiting Device Angle changes during Beam.
>>Beam Limiting Device Rotation Direction	(300A,0121)	1C	Direction of Beam Limiting Device Rotation when viewing beam limiting device (collimator) from radiation source, for segment following Control Point. Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Beam Limiting Device Rotation Direction changes during Beam. See C.8.8.14.8. Enumerated Values: CW = clockwise CC = counter-clockwise NONE = no rotation
>>Patient Support Angle	(300A,0122)	1C	Patient Support angle, i.e. orientation of IEC PATIENT SUPPORT (turntable) coordinate system with respect to IEC FIXED REFERENCE coordinate system (degrees). Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Patient Support Angle changes during Beam.
>>Patient Support Rotation Direction	(300A,0123)	1C	Direction of Patient Support Rotation when viewing table from above, for segment following Control Point. Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Patient Support Rotation Direction changes during Beam. See C.8.8.14.8. Enumerated Values: CW = clockwise CC = counter-clockwise NONE = no rotation
>>Table Top Eccentric Axis Distance	(300A,0124)	3	Distance (positive) from the IEC PATIENT SUPPORT vertical axis to the IEC TABLE TOP ECCENTRIC vertical axis (mm).
>>Table Top Eccentric Angle	(300A,0125)	1C	Table Top (non-isocentric) angle, i.e. orientation of IEC TABLE TOP

			ECCENTRIC coordinate system with respect to IEC PATIENT SUPPORT coordinate system (degrees). Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Table Top Eccentric Angle changes during Beam.
>>Table Top Eccentric Rotation Direction	(300A,0126)	1C	Direction of Table Top Eccentric Rotation when viewing table from above, for segment following Control Point. Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Table Top Eccentric Rotation Direction changes during Beam. See C.8.8.14.8. Enumerated Values: CW = clockwise CC = counter-clockwise NONE = no rotation
>>Table Top Vertical Position	(300A,0128)	2C	Table Top Vertical position in IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system (mm). Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Table Top Vertical Position changes during Beam. See C.8.8.14.6.
>>Table Top Longitudinal Position	(300A,0129)	2C	Table Top Longitudinal position in IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system (mm). Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Table Top Longitudinal Position changes during Beam. See C.8.8.14.6.
>>Table Top Lateral Position	(300A,012A)	2C	Table Top Lateral position in IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system (mm). Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Table Top Lateral Position changes during Beam. See C.8.8.14.6.
>>Isocenter Position	(300A,012C)	2C	Isocenter coordinates (x,y,z) in the patient based coordinate system described in C.7.6.2.1.1 (mm). Required for first item of Segment Control Point Sequence, or if Segment Isocenter Position changes during Beam.
>>Surface Entry Point	(300A,012E)	3	Patient surface entry point coordinates (x,y,z) in the patient based coordinate system described in C.7.6.2.1.1 (mm).
>>Source to Surface Distance	(300A,0130)	3	Source to Patient Surface distance (mm).

Notes: 1. Beam Number (300A,00C0) is provided to link related information across modules, and its value should not be required to have any real-world interpretation. Beam Name (300A,00C2), a Type 3 attribute, is intended to store the primary beam identifier (often referred to as “field identifier”). Beam Description (300A,00C3), a Type 3 attribute, is intended to store additional beam identifying information (often referred to as “field name”). Equipment supporting both these attributes should state this clearly in the Conformance Statement.

2. The DICOM standard does not support the transmission of treatment unit modeling information such as depth doses and beam profiles.

3. Implementors should take note that Leaf Position Boundaries (300A,00BE) are the positions of the mechanical boundaries (projected to the isocentric plane) between beam limiting device (collimator) leaves, fixed for a given beam limiting device (collimator). Leaf/Jaw Positions (300A,011C) are values specific to a given beam control point, specifying the beam limiting device (collimator) leaf (element) openings.

4. Block coordinates may not be transmitted when such data is not available from the transmitting system. However, the receiving system may not have internal mechanisms to use or store such data. For example, a plan sent from an treatment planning system to a Record and Verify (R&V) system will contain the block data for blocked beams. Subsequent transfer of beam data from the R&V system may omit this data since the R&V system may not have stored it.

5. Refer to C.8.8.14.5 for examples of STATIC and DYNAMIC Beam Type. Note that beams having Wedge Type = DYNAMIC as the only moving parameter are not considered DYNAMIC according to the definition of Beam Type (300A,00C4).

C.8.8.14.1 Meterset calculations

The Meterset at a given Control Point is equal to the Beam Meterset (300A,0086) specified in the Referenced Beam Sequence (300C,0004) of the RT Fraction Scheme Module, multiplied by the Cumulative Meterset Weight (300A,0134) for the Control Point, divided by the Final Cumulative Meterset Weight (300A,010E). The Meterset is specified in units defined by Primary Dosimeter Unit (300A,00B3). If the calculation for Meterset results in a meterset value which is not an exact multiple of the primary meterset resolution, then the result shall be rounded to the nearest allowed meterset value (i.e. less than a half resolution unit shall be rounded down to the nearest resolution unit, and equal or greater than half a resolution unit shall be rounded up to the nearest resolution unit).

Note also that if Final Cumulative Meterset Weight (300A,010E) is equal to 100, then Cumulative Meterset Weight (300A,0134) becomes equivalent to the percentage of Beam Meterset (300A,0086) delivered at each control point. If Final Cumulative Meterset Weight (300A,010E) is equal to Beam Meterset (300A,0086), then the Cumulative Meterset Weight (300A,0134) at each control point becomes equal to the cumulative Meterset delivered at that control point.

C.8.8.14.2 Planned Verification Image Sequence

The Planned Verification Image Sequence (300A,00CA) contains attributes which describe the planned verification images to be acquired during current beam. The Start Cumulative Meterset Weight (300C,0008) specifies the Cumulative Meterset Weight at which image acquisition is to begin. If Meterset Exposure (3002,0032) is present in a sequence item and End Cumulative Meterset Weight (300C,0009) is not present then a single image shall be acquired using the meterset duration specified in Meterset Exposure (3002,0032). If End Cumulative Meterset Weight (300C,0009) is present in a sequence item and Meterset Exposure (3002,0032) is not present then a single image shall be acquired over the beam delivery from Start Cumulative Meterset Weight (300C,0008) to End Cumulative Meterset Weight (300C,0009). If both Meterset Exposure (3002,0032) and End Cumulative Meterset Weight (300C,0009) are present in a sequence item then images shall be acquired every Meterset Exposure (3002,0032) from Start Cumulative Meterset Weight (300C,0008) to End Cumulative Meterset Weight (300C,0009). No images shall extend past End Cumulative Meterset Weight (300C,0009).

C.8.8.14.3 X-Ray Image Receptor Angle

The X-Ray Image Receptor Angle (3002,000E) specifies the rotation of the image receptor device in the IEC X-RAY IMAGE RECEPTOR PLANE. A positive angle corresponds to a counter-clockwise rotation of the X-Ray Image Receptor as viewed from the radiation source in the IEC GANTRY coordinate system. The normal (non-rotated) value for this parameter is zero degrees.

C.8.8.14.4 Multiple aperture blocks

All blocks with Block Type (300A,00F8) of APERTURE for a given beam shall have equal values of Block Transmission (300A,0102) and/or Block Thickness (300A,0100) if they are specified.

The composite aperture shall be evaluated as the union of the individual apertures within a single Block. Shielding block transmission(s) shall be applied multiplicatively after the (composite) aperture has been evaluated.

C.8.8.14.5 Control Point Sequence

The DICOM RT Beams Module uses a single beam model to handle static, arc, and dynamic delivery of external beam radiation by a medical accelerator or gamma beam therapy equipment (cobalt unit). All applicable parameters shall be specified at Control Point 0, with the exception of couch positions (see C.8.8.14.6). All parameters that change at any control point of a given beam shall be specified explicitly at all control points (including those preceding the change). No assumptions are made about the behavior of machine parameters between specified control points, and communicating devices shall agree on this behavior outside the current standard.

Gantry Rotation Direction (300A,011F), Beam Limiting Device Rotation Direction (300A,0121), Patient Support Rotation Direction (300A,0123), and Table Top Eccentric Rotation Direction (300A,0126) are defined as applying to the segment following the control point, and changes to these parameters during treatment may be specified without use of a “non-irradiation” segment. All other Control Point Sequence attributes are defined only at the control point. To unambiguously encode changes in discrete-valued attributes such as Wedge Position (300A,0118) and Nominal Beam Energy (300A,0114), a non-irradiation segment where Cumulative Meterset Weight (300A,0134) does not change, shall be used.

Some examples of beam specification using control points are as follows:

a) *Static delivery:*

Control Point 0: All applicable treatment parameters defined, Cumulative Meterset Weight = 0

Control Point 1: Cumulative Meterset Weight = 1, no other parameters defined

b) *Arc delivery:*

Control Point 0: All applicable treatment parameters defined, Cumulative Meterset Weight = 0, Gantry Rotation Direction = *rotation direction*, Gantry Angle = *initial angle*

Control Point 1: Cumulative Meterset Weight = 1, Gantry Rotation Direction = NONE, Gantry Angle = *final angle*

c) *Dynamic delivery of two equally weighted segments*:

Control Point 0: All applicable treatment parameters defined, Cumulative Meterset Weight = 0

Control Point 1: All changing treatment parameters defined (including those which do not change at this control point), Cumulative Meterset Weight = 0.5

Control Point 2: All changing treatment parameters defined (including those which do not change at this control point), Cumulative Meterset Weight = 1

d) *Dynamic Delivery of two unequally weighted segments with a step change in table angle*:

Control Point 0: All applicable treatment parameters defined, Patient Support Angle = *initial angle*, Patient Support Rotation Direction = NONE, Cumulative Meterset Weight = 0

Control Point 1: All changing parameters defined (including those that do not change at this control point), Cumulative Meterset Weight = 0.3, Patient Support Angle = *initial angle*, Patient Support Rotation Direction = *rotation direction*

Control Point 2: All changing parameters defined (although none should change at this control point), Cumulative Meterset Weight = 0.3, Patient Support Angle = *new angle*, Patient Support Rotation Direction = NONE

Control Point 3: All changing parameters defined (including those that do not change at this control point), Cumulative Meterset Weight = 1, Patient Support Angle = *new angle*, Patient Support Rotation Direction = NONE

C.8.8.14.6 Absolute and relative machine coordinates

All treatment machine parameters except couch translations are specified in absolute machine coordinates as defined by IEC 61217. For the Table Top Vertical Position (300A,0128), Table Top Longitudinal Position (300A,0129), and Table Top Lateral Position (300A,012A), if the first Control Point contains a value of non-zero length, all subsequent Control Point position values are absolute values in their respective coordinate system. If the first Control Point contains a zero-length value, all subsequent Control Point position values are specified relative to the (unknown) initial value.

C.8.8.14.7 Cumulative Dose Reference Coefficient

The Cumulative Dose Reference Coefficient (300A,010C) is the value by which Beam Dose (300A,0084) is multiplied to obtain the dose to the referenced dose reference site at the current control point (and after previous control points have been successfully administered). The Cumulative Dose Reference Coefficient (300A,010C) is by definition zero for the initial control point. The Cumulative Dose Reference Coefficient (300A,010C) of the final control point multiplied by Beam Dose (300A,0084) results in the final dose to the referenced dose reference site for the current beam. Dose calculation for dose reference sites other than points is not well defined.

C.8.8.14.8 Machine rotations

For the machine rotation angles Gantry Angle (300A,011E), Beam Limiting Device Angle (300A,0120), Patient Support Angle (300A,0122) , and Table Top Eccentric Angle (300A,0125), rotation direction is specified as clockwise (CW), counter-clockwise (CC), or NONE. The maximum permitted rotation between two Control Points is 360 degrees. Examples:

a) Gantry Angle moves from 5 degrees to 5 degrees, Gantry Rotation Direction = NONE:
No movement.

b) Gantry Angle moves from 5 degrees to 5 degrees, Gantry Rotation Direction = CW:
Full clockwise rotation (360 degrees).

c) Table Angle moves from 170 degrees to 160 degrees, Table Rotation Direction = CC:
Counter-clockwise rotation by 350 degrees (note direction of increasing table angle as defined by IEC 61217).

C.8.8.14.9 Compensator Thickness Data and Source to Compensator Distance

The values stored in Compensator Thickness Data (300A,00EC) and Source to Compensator Distance (300A,02E2) shall be parallel to the radiation beam axis if Compensator Divergence (300A,02E0) equals ABSENT, or divergent according to the beam geometrical divergence if Compensator Divergence (300A,02E0) equals PRESENT. If Compensator Divergence (300A,02E0) is not sent, then the parallel or divergent nature of the thicknesses is as if ABSENT was specified for Compensator Divergence (300A,02E0).

C.8.8.14.10 Compensator Transmission and Thickness Data Direction

The direction of the rows and columns in Compensator Transmission Data (300A,00EB) and Compensator Thickness Data (300A,00EC) is defined as follows: The direction of rows goes along the positive Xb direction and the direction of the columns does along the negative Yb direction of the IEC X-BEAM LIMITING DEVICE coordinate system. Other interpretations shall be documented in an implementation's conformance statement.

C.8.8.15 RT Brachy Application Setups Module

The RT Brachy Application Setups Module describes the application of a brachytherapy radiotherapy treatment. It contains one or more sources, each associated with one or more Channels. A Channel is a device by which a source is placed in its intended treatment position or positions. A Channel may consist of a Source Applicator plus a Transfer Tube, a Source Applicator alone, a rigid or flexible linear source, or a seed. A number of Channels (for example applicators, sources or seeds) are generally arranged in an Application Setup which may be considered a “logical” device. It is important not to confuse Application Setup with Applicator. The model used here has been primarily built around the concept of remote afterloading, but extended to support other brachytherapy applications such as manual applicators and molds, seeds, and sources. Additional devices that are not Channels are described as Brachy Accessory Devices. Examples of Accessory Devices include shields, which modify the dose distribution from all sources in the treatment. However, Channel shields modify the dose only for the source(s) in that Channel.

The data in the module are arranged as follows:

Treatment Machine Sequence	*;treatment machine information (single item)*
Source Sequence	*;library of sources used in brachy application*
Application Setup Sequence	*;one or more applicators, sources, seeds etc*
Brachy Accessory Device Sequence	*;application level shields etc*
Channel Sequence	*;applicator, line source(s), seed(s) etc*
Channel Shield Sequence	*;channel-specific shields*
Brachy Control Point Sequence	*;mechanism to support individual source dwell times*

Table C.8-51—RT BRACHY APPLICATION SETUPS MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Brachy Treatment Technique	(300A,0200)	1	Type of brachytherapy treatment technique. Enumerated Values: INTRALUMENARY INTRACAVITARY INTERSTITIAL CONTACT INTRAVASCULAR PERMANENT See C.8.8.15.1.
Brachy Treatment Type	(300A,0202)	1	Type of brachytherapy treatment. Defined Terms: MANUAL = manually positioned HDR = High dose rate MDR = Medium dose rate LDR = Low dose rate PDR = Pulsed dose rate
Treatment Machine Sequence	(300A,0206)	1	Introduces single item sequence describing treatment machine to be used for treatment delivery. Only one item may be included in

			this sequence.
>Treatment Machine Name	(300A,00B2)	2	User-defined name identifying treatment machine to be used for treatment delivery.
>Manufacturer	(0008,0070)	3	Manufacturer of the equipment to be used for treatment delivery.
>Institution Name	(0008,0080)	3	Institution where the equipment is located that is to be used for treatment delivery.
>Institution Address	(0008,0081)	3	Mailing address of the institution where the equipment is located that is to be used for treatment delivery.
>Institutional Department Name	(0008,1040)	3	Department in the institution where the equipment is located that is to be used for treatment delivery.
>Manufacturer's Model Name	(0008,1090)	3	Manufacturer's model name of the equipment that is to be used for treatment delivery.
>Device Serial Number	(0018,1000)	3	Manufacturer's serial number of the equipment that is to be used for treatment delivery.
Source Sequence	(300A,0210)	1	Introduces sequence of Sources to be used within Application Setups. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>Source Number	(300A,0212)	1	Identification number of the Source. The value of Source Number (300A,0212) shall be unique within the RT Plan in which it is created.
>Source Type	(300A,0214)	1	Type of Source. Defined Terms: POINT LINE CYLINDER SPHERE
>Source Manufacturer	(300A,0216)	3	Manufacturer of Source.
>Active Source Diameter	(300A,0218)	3	Diameter of active Source (mm).
>Active Source Length	(300A,021A)	3	Length of active Source (mm).
>Material ID	(300A,00E1)	3	User-supplied identifier for encapsulation material of active Source.
>Source Encapsulation Nominal Thickness	(300A,0222)	3	Nominal thickness of wall of encapsulation (mm). See C.8.8.15.12.
>Source Encapsulation Nominal Transmission	(300A,0224)	3	Nominal transmission through wall of encapsulation (between 0 and 1). See C.8.8.15.12
>Source Isotope Name	(300A,0226)	1	Name of Isotope.
>Source Isotope Half Life	(300A,0228)	1	Half-life of Isotope (days).
>Source Strength Units	(300A,0229)	1C	Measurement unit of Source Strength. Required if the source is not a gamma-

			emitting (photon) source. May be present otherwise. Enumerated Values: AIR_KERMA_RATE = Air Kerma Rate if Source is Gamma emitting Isotope. DOSE_RATE_WATER = Dose Rate in Water if Source is Beta emitting Isotope.
>Reference Air Kerma Rate	(300A,022A)	1	Air Kerma Rate in air of Isotope specified at Air Kerma Rate Reference Date (300A,022C) and Air Kerma Rate Reference Time (300A,022E) (in μGy h^{-1} at 1 m). Value shall be zero for non-gamma sources.
>Source Strength	(300A,022B)	1C	Source Strength of Isotope at Source Strength Reference Date (300A,022C) and Source Strength Reference Time (300A,022E), in units specified in Source Strength Units (300A,0229). Required if the source is not a gamma-emitting (photon) source. See C.8.8.15.13.
>Source Strength Reference Date	(300A,022C)	1	Reference date for Reference Air Kerma Rate (300A,022A) or Source Strength (300A,022B) of Isotope.
>Source Strength Rate Reference Time	(300A,022E)	1	Reference time for Air Kerma Rate (300A,022A) or Source Strength (300A,022B) of Isotope.
Application Setup Sequence	(300A,0230)	1	Introduces sequence of Application Setups for current RT Plan. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>Application Setup Type	(300A,0232)	1	Type of Application Setup. Defined Terms: FLETCHER_SUIT DELCLOS BLOEDORN JOSLIN_FLYNN CHANDIGARH MANCHESTER HENSCHKE NASOPHARYNGEAL OESOPHAGEAL ENDOBRONCHIAL SYED_NEBLETT ENDORECTAL PERINEAL
>Application Setup Number	(300A,0234)	1	Identification number of the Application Setup. The value of Application Setup Number (300A,0234) shall be unique within the RT Plan in which it is created.

>Application Setup Name	(300A,0236)	3	User-defined name for Application Setup.
>Application Setup Manufacturer	(300A,0238)	3	Manufacturer of Application Setup.
>Template Number	(300A,0240)	3	Identification number of the Template. The value of Template Number (300A,0240) shall be unique within the Application Setup in which it is created.
>Template Type	(300A,0242)	3	User-defined type for Template Device.
>Template Name	(300A,0244)	3	User-defined name for Template Device.
>Referenced Reference Image Sequence	(300C,0042)	3	Introduces sequence of reference images used for validation of current Application Setup. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class. Required if Referenced Reference Image Sequence (300C,0042) is sent.
>>Referenced SOP Class Instance	(0008,1155)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance. Required if Referenced Reference Image Sequence (300C,0042) is sent.
>Total Reference Air Kerma	(300A,0250)	1	Total Reference Air Kerma for current Application Setup, i.e. the product of Air Kerma Rate of all Sources in all Channels with their respective Channel Times (µGy at 1 m). Value shall be zero for non-gamma sources.
>Brachy Accessory Device Sequence	(300A,0260)	3	Introduces sequence of Brachy Accessory Devices associated with current Application Setup. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>Brachy Accessory Device Number	(300A,0262)	2C	Identification number of the Brachy Accessory Device. The value of Brachy Accessory Device Number (300A,0262) shall be unique within the Application Setup in which it is created. Required if Brachy Accessory Device Sequence (300A,0260) is sent.
>>Brachy Accessory Device ID	(300A,0263)	2C	User or machine supplied identifier for Brachy Accessory Device. Required if Brachy Accessory Device Sequence (300A,0260) is sent.
>>Brachy Accessory Device Type	(300A,0264)	1C	Type of Brachy Accessory Device. Required if Brachy Accessory Device Sequence (300A,0260) is sent. Defined Terms: SHIELD DILATATION MOLD PLAQUE FLAB

>>Brachy Accessory Device Name	(300A,0266)	3	User-defined name for Brachy Accessory Device.
>>Material ID	(300A,00E1)	3	User-supplied identifier for material of Brachy Accessory Device. See Note.
>> Brachy Accessory Device Nominal Thickness	(300A,026A)	3	Nominal thickness of Brachy Accessory Device (mm). See C.8.8.15.12.
>> Brachy Accessory Device Nominal Transmission	(300A,026C)	3	Nominal Transmission through Brachy Accessory Device (between 0 and 1). See C.8.8.15.12.
>>Referenced ROI Number	(3006,0084)	2C	Uniquely identifies ROI representing the Brachy Accessory specified by ROI Number (3006,0022) in Structure Set ROI Sequence (3006,0020) in Structure Set Module within RT Structure Set referenced by Referenced RT Structure Set Sequence (300C,0060) in RT General Plan Module. Required if Brachy Accessory Device Sequence (300A,0260) is sent. See C.8.8.15.2.
>Channel Sequence	(300A,0280)	1	Introduces sequence of Channels for current Application Setup. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>Channel Number	(300A,0282)	1	Identification number of the Channel. The value of Channel Number (300A,0282) shall be unique within the Application Setup in which it is created.
>>Channel Length	(300A,0284)	2	Length of Channel (mm). See C.8.8.15.3.
>>Channel Total Time	(300A,0286)	1	Total amount of time between first and final Control Points of the Brachy Control Point Sequence (300A,02D0) for current Channel (sec). Channel Total Time calculation is based upon the Reference Air Kerma Rate (300A,022A) of the Referenced Source Number (300C,000E).
>>Source Movement Type	(300A,0288)	1	Type of Source movement. See C.8.8.15.4. Defined Terms: STEPWISE FIXED OSCILLATING UNIDIRECTIONAL
>>Number of Pulses	(300A,028A)	1C	Number of Pulses per fraction for current Channel. Required if Brachy Treatment Type (300A,0202) is PDR.
>>Pulse Repetition Interval	(300A,028C)	1C	Pulse repetition interval (sec) for current Channel. Required if Brachy Treatment Type (300A,0202) is PDR.
>>Source Applicator Number	(300A,0290)	3	Identification number of the Source Applicator. The value of Source Applicator Number (300A,0290) shall be unique within

			the Channel in which it is created.
>>Source Applicator ID	(300A,0291)	2C	User or machine supplied identifier for Source Applicator. Required if Source Applicator Number (300A,0290) is sent.
>>Source Applicator Type	(300A,0292)	1C	Type of Source Applicator. Required if Source Applicator Number (300A,0290) is sent. Defined Terms: FLEXIBLE RIGID
>>Source Applicator Name	(300A,0294)	3	User-defined name for Source Applicator.
>>Source Applicator Length	(300A,0296)	1C	Length of Source Applicator (mm), defined as the distance between the connector of the applicator and the distal-most position of the source. Required if Source Applicator Number (300A,0290) is sent.
>>Source Applicator Manufacturer	(300A,0298)	3	Manufacturer of Source Applicator.
>>Material ID	(300A,00E1)	3	User-supplied identifier for material of Source Applicator wall. See Note.
>> Source Applicator Wall Nominal Thickness	(300A,029C)	3	Nominal Thickness of Source Applicator wall (mm). See C.8.8.15.12.
>> Source Applicator Wall Nominal Transmission	(300A,029E)	3	Nominal Transmission through Source Applicator wall (between 0 and 1). See C.8.8.15.12.
>>Source Applicator Step Size	(300A,02A0)	1C	Distance of path along channel (in mm) between adjacent (potential) dwell positions. Required if Source Movement Type (300A,0288) is STEPWISE.
>>Referenced ROI Number	(3006,0084)	2C	Uniquely identifies ROI representing the Source Applicator specified by ROI Number (3006,0022) in Structure Set ROI Sequence (3006,0020) in Structure Set Module within RT Structure Set referenced by Referenced RT Structure Set Sequence (300C,0060) in RT General Plan Module. Required if Source Applicator Number (300A,0290) is sent. See C.8.8.15.2.
>>Transfer Tube Number	(300A,02A2)	2	Identification number of the Transfer Tube. The value of Transfer Tube Number (300A,02A2) shall be unique within the Channel in which it is created.
>>Transfer Tube Length	(300A,02A4)	2C	Length of Transfer Tube of current afterloading Channel (mm). Required if value Transfer Tube Number (300A,02A2) is non-null.
>>Channel Shield Sequence	(300A,02B0)	3	Introduces sequence of Channel Shields associated with current Channel. One or more items may be included in this sequence. See C.8.8.15.5.
>>>Channel Shield Number	(300A,02B2)	1C	Identification number of the Channel

			Shield. The value of Channel Shield Number (300A,02B2) shall be unique within the Channel in which it is created. Required if Channel Shield Sequence (300A,02B0) is sent.
>>>Channel Shield ID	(300A,02B3)	2C	User or machine supplied identifier for Channel Shield. Required if Channel Shield Sequence (300A,02B0) is sent.
>>>Channel Shield Name	(300A,02B4)	3	User-defined name for Channel Shield.
>>>Material ID	(300A,00E1)	3	User-supplied identifier for material of Channel Shield. See Note.
>>>Channel Shield Nominal Thickness	(300A,02B8)	3	Nominal Thickness of Channel Shield (mm). See C.8.8.15.12.
>>>Channel Shield Nominal Transmission	(300A,02BA)	3	Nominal Transmission of Channel Shield (between 0 and 1). See C.8.8.15.12.
>>>Referenced ROI Number	(3006,0084)	2C	Uniquely identifies ROI representing the Channel Shield specified by ROI Number (3006,0022) in Structure Set ROI Sequence (3006,0020) in Structure Set Module within RT Structure Set referenced by Referenced RT Structure Set Sequence (300C,0060) in RT General Plan Module. Required if Channel Shield Sequence (300A,02B0) is sent. See C.8.8.15.2.
>>Referenced Source Number	(300C,000E)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced Source within the Source Sequence (300A,0210) for current Application Setup.
>>Number of Control Points	(300A,0110)	1	Number of control points in Channel. For an N-segment Channel there will be 2N (stepwise movement) or N+1 (continuous movement) control points.
>>Final Cumulative Time Weight	(300A,02C8)	1C	Value of Cumulative Time Weight (300A,02D6) for final Control Point in Brachy Control Point Sequence (300A,02D0). Required if Cumulative Time Weight (300A,02D6) is non-null in Control Points specified within Brachy Control Point Sequence (300A,02D0). See C.8.8.15.6.
>>Brachy Control Point Sequence	(300A,02D0)	1	Introduces sequence of machine configurations describing this Channel. Two or more items may be included in this sequence. See C.8.8.15.7.
>>>Control Point Index	(300A,0112)	1	Index of current Control Point, starting at 0 for first Control Point.
>>>Cumulative Time Weight	(300A,02D6)	2	Cumulative time weight to current Control Point (where the weighting is proportional to time values delivered). Cumulative Time Weight for first item in Brachy Control Point Sequence (300A,02D0) is always zero.

			See C.8.8.15.6 and C.8.8.15.8.
>>>Control Point Relative Position	(300A,02D2)	1	Distance between current Control Point Position and the distal-most possible Source position in current Channel (mm). See C.8.8.15.9.
>>>Control Point 3D Position	(300A,02D4)	3	Coordinates (x, y, z) of Control Point in the patient based coordinate system described in C.7.6.2.1.1 (mm). See C.8.8.15.10.
>>>Brachy Referenced Dose Reference Sequence	(300C,0055)	3	Introduces a sequence of Dose References for current Channel. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>>>Referenced Dose Reference Number	(300C,0051)	1C	Uniquely identifies Dose Reference described in Dose Reference Sequence. (300A,0010) within RT Prescription Module of current RT Plan. Required if Brachy Referenced Dose Reference Sequence (300C,0055) is sent.
>>>>Cumulative Dose Reference Coefficient	(300A,010C)	1C	Coefficient used to calculate cumulative dose contribution from this Source to the referenced Dose Reference at the current Control Point. Required if Brachy Referenced Dose Reference Sequence (300C,0055) is sent. See C.8.8.15.11.

Note: Material ID (300A,00E1) may also be specified within a referenced ROI, if an ROI is used to describe the object.

C.8.8.15.1 Permanent Implants

In permanent implant techniques the value for Channel Total Time (300A,0286) shall be mean life time of the isotope. The Brachy Control Point Sequence (300A,02D0) shall consist of two items: the first having Cumulative Time Weight (300A,02D6) = 0 and the second having Cumulative Time Weight (300A,02D6) = Final Cumulative Time Weight (300A,02C8).

C.8.8.15.2 Referenced ROI Number

The Structure Set ROI shall be used in the Brachy Application Setups Module to describe the 3D coordinates of Accessory Devices, Applicators and Channel Shields, but not individual source positions (see C.8.8.15.9 and C.8.8.15.10).

C.8.8.15.3 Channel Length

If specified, the Channel Length (300A,0284) shall be the sum of the Source Applicator Length (300A,0296) and Transfer Tube Length (300A,02A4).

C.8.8.15.4 Oscillating source movement

In brachytherapy treatment techniques involving oscillating source movement (i.e. when Source Movement Type (300A,0288) is OSCILLATING), the Brachy Control Point Sequence (300A,02D0) shall consist of two items. The first Control Point shall have Cumulative Time Weight (300A,02D6) = 0, and Control Point Relative Position (300A,02D2) equal to one end point of the oscillation. The second Control Point shall have Cumulative Time Weight (300A,02D6) = Final Cumulative Time Weight (300A,02C8), and Control Point Relative Position (300A,02D2) equal to the other end point of the oscillation. Transit time shall not be modeled explicitly for oscillating techniques.

C.8.8.15.5 Channel shields

The effect of Channel Shields on dose contributions shall be specific to the Channel for which they are specified. There shall be no effect of these shields on the dose contributions from any other Channels.

C.8.8.15.6 Time calculations

The treatment time at a given Control Point is equal to the Channel Total Time (300A,0286), multiplied by the Cumulative Time Weight (300A,02D6) for the Control Point, divided by the Final Cumulative Time Weight (300A,02C8). If the calculation for treatment time results in a time value which is not an exact multiple of the timer resolution, then the result shall be rounded to the nearest allowed timer value (i.e. less than a half resolution unit shall be rounded down to the nearest resolution unit, and equal or greater than half a resolution unit shall be rounded up to the nearest resolution unit).

Note also that if Final Cumulative Time Weight (300A,02C8) is equal to 100, then Cumulative Time Weight (300A,02D6) becomes equivalent to the percentage of Channel Total Time (300A,0286) delivered at each control point. If Final Cumulative Time Weight (300A,02C8) is equal to Channel Total Time (300A,0286), then the Cumulative Time Weight (300A,02D6) at each control point becomes equal to the cumulative treatment time delivered at that control point.

If Treatment Type (300A,0202) is PDR, then the Channel Total Time (3008,0286) shall specify the duration of a single pulse.

C.8.8.15.7 Brachy Control Point Sequence

The Control Points shall be arranged such that the first Control Point for a particular Channel describes the first dwell position and the final Control Point for the Channel describes the final dwell position. If Brachy Treatment Type (300A,0202) is PDR, the Brachy Control Point Sequence (300A,02D0) shall specify the sequence of machine configurations for a single pulse. Similarly, if Source Movement Type (300A,0288) is OSCILLATING, the Brachy Control Point Sequence (300A,02D0) shall specify the sequence of machine configurations for a single period.

Some examples of Brachytherapy specification using control points are as follows:

a) Stepwise motion; Four equally weighted dwell positions; Step size = 10; Final Cumulative Time Weight = 100:

Control Point 0:	Control Point Relative Position = 30, Cumulative Time Weight = 0
Control Point 1:	Control Point Relative Position = 30, Cumulative Time Weight = 25
Control Point 2:	Control Point Relative Position = 20, Cumulative Time Weight = 25
Control Point 3:	Control Point Relative Position = 20, Cumulative Time Weight = 50
Control Point 4:	Control Point Relative Position = 10, Cumulative Time Weight = 50
Control Point 5:	Control Point Relative Position = 10, Cumulative Time Weight = 75
Control Point 6:	Control Point Relative Position = 0, Cumulative Time Weight = 75
Control Point 7:	Control Point Relative Position = 0, Cumulative Time Weight = 100

b) Fixed (manually placed) sources; Final Cumulative Time Weight = 100:

Control Point 0:	Control Point Relative Position = 0, Control Point 3D Position = (x,y,z), Cumulative Time Weight = 0
Control Point 1:	Control Point Relative Position = 0, Control Point 3D Position = (x,y,z), Cumulative Time Weight = 100

c) Oscillating movement; Final Cumulative Time Weight = 100:

Control Point 0:	Control Point Relative Position = 100, Cumulative Time Weight = 0
Control Point 1:	Control Point Relative Position = 0, Cumulative Time Weight = 100

d) Unidirectional movement; Final Cumulative Time Weight = 100:

Control Point 0:	Control Point Relative Position = 0, Cumulative Time Weight = 0
Control Point 1:	Control Point Relative Position = 100, Cumulative Time Weight = 100

e) Stepwise motion with consideration of source transit times between dwell positions; Three equally weighted dwell positions; Step size = 10; Final Cumulative Time Weight = 79:

Control Point 0:	Control Point Relative Position = 30, Cumulative Time Weight = 0
Control Point 1:	Control Point Relative Position = 30, Cumulative Time Weight = 25
Control Point 2:	Control Point Relative Position = 20, Cumulative Time Weight = 27
Control Point 3:	Control Point Relative Position = 20, Cumulative Time Weight = 52
Control Point 4:	Control Point Relative Position = 10, Cumulative Time Weight = 54
Control Point 5:	Control Point Relative Position = 10, Cumulative Time Weight = 79

f) Stepwise motion with consideration of source transit times between dwell positions and to first and from last dwell position; Three equally weighted dwell positions; Step size = 10; Final Cumulative Time Weight = 383:

Control Point 0:	Control Point Relative Position = 1200, Cumulative Time Weight = 0
Control Point 1:	Control Point Relative Position = 30, Cumulative Time Weight = 150
Control Point 2:	Control Point Relative Position = 30, Cumulative Time Weight = 175
Control Point 3:	Control Point Relative Position = 20, Cumulative Time Weight = 177
Control Point 4:	Control Point Relative Position = 20, Cumulative Time Weight = 202
Control Point 5:	Control Point Relative Position = 10, Cumulative Time Weight = 204
Control Point 6:	Control Point Relative Position = 10, Cumulative Time Weight = 229
Control Point 7:	Control Point Relative Position = 1200, Cumulative Time Weight = 383

C.8.8.15.8 Source transit time

The Source transit times between dwell positions of a remote afterloader may be considered by specifying a non-zero increment in the Cumulative Time Weight (300A,02D6) when the Source moves between Control Points. In this case the Channel Total Time (300A,0286) shall include the overall Source transit time for the Channel.

C.8.8.15.9 Control Point Relative Position

Control Point Relative Position (300A,02D2) shall describe where a given source in a channel is located with respect to the end of the channel. This position shall correspond to the end of the afterloader applicator, *not* the “safe position”.

C.8.8.15.10 Control Point 3D Position

Control Point 3D Position (300A,02D4) shall describe the absolute 3D coordinates of a source. This position shall correspond to the *center* of a source in an applicator during a remote or manually controlled afterloading treatment.

C.8.8.15.11 Cumulative Dose Reference Coefficient

The Cumulative Dose Reference Coefficient (300A,010C) is the value by which Brachy Application Setup Dose (300A,00A4) is multiplied to obtain the dose to the referenced dose reference site at the current control point (and after previous control points have been successfully administered). The Cumulative Dose Reference Coefficient (300A,010C) is by definition zero for the initial control point. The Cumulative Dose Reference Coefficient (300A,010C) of the final control point multiplied by Brachy Application Setup Dose (300A,00A4) results in the final dose to the referenced dose reference site for the current channel. Dose calculation for dose reference sites other than points is not well defined.

If Treatment Type (300A,0202) is PDR, then the Cumulative Dose Reference Coefficient (3008,010C) shall specify the dose delivered to the dose reference during a single pulse. The total dose delivered to the dose reference shall then be expressed by Cumulative Dose Reference Coefficient (3008,010C) multiplied by Number of Pulses (300A,028A) multiplied by Brachy Application Setup Dose (300A,00A4).

C.8.8.15.12 Nominal Thickness and Nominal Transmission

If provided, Source Encapsulation Nominal Thickness (300A,0222), Brachy Accessory Device Nominal Thickness (300A,026A), Source Applicator Wall Nominal Thickness (300A,029C), and Channel Shield Nominal Thickness (300A,02B8) shall indicate that the related objects are of uniform thickness with the specified value. If this is not the case, these attributes shall not be provided.

If provided, Source Encapsulation Nominal Transmission (300A,0224), Brachy Accessory Device Nominal Transmission (300A,026C), Source Applicator Wall Nominal Transmission (300A,029E), and Channel Shield Nominal Transmission (300A,02BA) shall indicate that the related objects are of uniform transmission with the specified value. If this is not the case, these attributes shall not be provided.

No assumptions are made about the source characteristics beyond the parameters specified here.

C.8.8.15.13 Reference Point for calibration of beta emitting isotopes

For beta emitting isotopes, the Source Strength (300A,022B) shall be defined at reference point (r0,θ0), where r0 is the radial distance of 2 mm from the source longitudinal axis, and θ0 is the angle of 90 degrees between the source longitudinal axis and the line defined by the center of the source and the reference point. Refer to:

- IEC 60601-2-17 (Medical electrical equipment – Particular requirements for the safety of automatically-controlled brachytherapy afterloading equipment), where the beta source strength is defined as: ABSORBED DOSE RATE [Gy s-1] in water at 2 mm along the perpendicular bisector from a RADIOACTIVE SOURCE emitting beta RADIATION.

- Nath et. al.: Intravascular brachytherapy physics: Report of the AAPM Radiation Therapy Committee Task Group No. 60, Med. Phys 26 (2) Feb 1999, pp 119-152.

C.8.8.16 Approval Module

Table C.8-52—APPROVAL MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Approval Status	(300E,0002)	1	Approval status at the time the SOP Instance was created. Enumerated Values: APPROVED = Reviewer recorded that object met an implied criterion

			UNAPPROVED = No review of object has been recorded REJECTED = Reviewer recorded that object failed to meet an implied criterion
Review Date	(300E,0004)	2C	Date on which object was reviewed. Required if Approval Status (300E,0002) is APPROVED or REJECTED.
Review Time	(300E,0005)	2C	Time at which object was reviewed. Required if Approval Status (300E,0002) is APPROVED or REJECTED.
Reviewer Name	(300E,0008)	2C	Name of person who reviewed object. Required if Approval Status (300E,0002) is APPROVED or REJECTED.

C.8.8.17 RT General Treatment Record Module

Table C.8-53—RT GENERAL TREATMENT RECORD MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Instance Number	(0020,0013)	1	Instance number identifying this particular instance of the object.
Treatment Date	(3008,0250)	2	Date when current fraction was delivered, or Date last fraction was delivered in case of RT Treatment Summary Record IOD. See Note.
Treatment Time	(3008,0251)	2	Time when current fraction was delivered (begun), or Time last fraction was delivered (begun) in case of RT Treatment Summary Record IOD. See Note.
Referenced RT Plan Sequence	(300C,0002)	2	A sequence which provides reference to a RT Plan SOP Class/Instance pair. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this Sequence.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class. Required if Referenced RT Plan Sequence (300C,0002) is sent.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance. Required if Referenced RT Plan Sequence (300C,0002) is sent.
Referenced Treatment Record Sequence	(3008,0030)	3	A sequence which provides reference to RT Treatment Record SOP Class/Instance pairs to which the current RT Treatment Record is significantly related. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class. Required if Referenced Treatment Record Sequence (3008,0030) is sent.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance. Required if Referenced Treatment Record Sequence (3008,0030)

			is sent.

Note: Treatment Date (3008,0250) and Treatment Time (3008,0251) can be used to chronologically order a sequence of treatments, where each treatment is represented by an instance of a RT Beams Treatment Record or RT Brachy Treatment Record. In the case of a RT Treatment Summary Record, it can be used to identify the period for which the treatment summary is valid. Therefore, implementers are strongly advised to include values for these attributes whenever possible.

C.8.8.18 RT Treatment Machine Record Module

Table C.8-54—RT TREATMENT MACHINE RECORD MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Treatment Machine Sequence	(300A,0206)	1	Introduces sequence describing treatment machine used for treatment delivery. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this Sequence.
>Treatment Machine Name	(300A,00B2)	2	User-defined name identifying treatment machine used for treatment delivery.
>Manufacturer	(0008,0070)	2	Manufacturer of the equipment used for treatment delivery.
>Institution Name	(0008,0080)	2	Institution where the equipment is located that was used for treatment delivery.
>Institution Address	(0008,0081)	3	Mailing address of the institution where the equipment is located that was used for treatment delivery.
>Institutional Department Name	(0008,1040)	3	Department in the institution where the equipment is located that was used for treatment delivery.
>Manufacturer's Model Name	(0008,1090)	2	Manufacturer's model name of the equipment used for treatment delivery.
>Device Serial Number	(0018,1000)	2	Manufacturer's serial number of the equipment used for treatment delivery.

C.8.8.19 Measured Dose Reference Record Module

Table C.8-55—MEASURED DOSE REFERENCE RECORD MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Measured Dose Reference Sequence	(3008,0010)	1	Introduces sequence of doses measured during treatment delivery, summed over entire session. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>Referenced Dose Reference Number	(300C,0051)	1C	Uniquely identifies Dose Reference specified by Dose Reference Number (300A,0012) in Dose Reference Sequence (300A,0010) in RT Prescription Module of referenced RT Plan. Required only if Measured Dose Reference Number (3008,0064) is not sent. It shall not be present otherwise.
>Measured Dose Reference Number	(3008,0064)	1C	Unique identifier of measured dose point.

			Required only if Referenced Dose Reference Number (300C,0051) is not sent. It shall not be present otherwise.
>Dose Units	(3004,0002)	1	Units used to describe measured dose. Enumerated Values: GY = Gray RELATIVE = Dose relative to implicit reference value
>Measured Dose Value	(3008,0016)	2	Measured Dose in units specified by Dose Units (3004,0002).
>Measured Dose Type	(3008,0014)	2	Type of dose measurement. Defined Terms: DIODE = semiconductor diode TLD = thermoluminescent dosimeter ION_CHAMBER = ion chamber GEL = dose sensitive gel EPID = electronic portal imaging device FILM = dose sensitive film
>Measured Dose Description	(3008,0012)	3	User-defined description of Dose Reference (e.g. “Exit dose”, “Point A”).

C.8.8.20 Calculated Dose Reference Record Module

Table C.8-56—CALCULATED DOSE REFERENCE RECORD MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Calculated Dose Reference Sequence	(3008,0070)	1	Introduces sequence of doses estimated for each treatment delivery. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>Referenced Dose Reference Number	(300C,0051)	1C	Uniquely identifies Dose Reference specified by Dose Reference Number (300A,0012) in Dose Reference Sequence (300A,0010) in RT Prescription Module of referenced RT Plan. Required only if Calculated Dose Reference Number (3008,0072) is not sent. It shall not be present otherwise.
>Calculated Dose Reference Number	(3008,0072)	1C	Unique identifier of dose reference point within RT Treatment Record IOD. Required only if Referenced Dose Reference Number (300C,0051) is not sent. It shall not be present otherwise.
>Calculated Dose Reference Dose Value	(3008,0076)	2	Calculated Dose (Gy).
>Calculated Dose Reference Description	(3008,0074)	3	User-defined description of Calculated Dose Reference.

C.8.8.21 RT Beams Session Record Module

Table C.8-57—RT BEAMS SESSION RECORD MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Operators' Name	(0008,1070)	2	Name of operator administering treatment session.
Referenced Fraction Group Number	(300C,0022)	3	Identifier of Fraction Group within referenced RT Plan.
Number of Fractions Planned	(300A,0078)	2	Total number of treatments (Fractions) planned for current Fraction Group.
Primary Dosimeter Unit	(300A,00B3)	1	Measurement unit of machine dosimeter. Enumerated Values: MU = Monitor Unit MINUTE = minute
Treatment Session Beam Sequence	(3008,0020)	1	Introduces sequence of Beams administered during treatment session. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>Referenced Beam Number	(300C,0006)	3	References Beam specified by Beam Number (300A,00C0) in Beam Sequence (300A,00B0) in RT Beams Module within referenced RT Plan.
>Beam Name	(300A,00C2)	3	User-defined name for delivered Beam.
>Beam Description	(300A,00C3)	3	User-defined description for delivered Beam.
>Beam Type	(300A,00C4)	1	Motion characteristic of delivered Beam. Enumerated Values: STATIC = all beam parameters remain unchanged during delivery DYNAMIC = one or more beam parameters changes during delivery
>Radiation Type	(300A,00C6)	1	Particle type of delivered Beam. Defined Terms: PHOTON, ELECTRON, NEUTRON, PROTON.
>High-Dose Technique Type	(300A,00C7)	1C	Type of high-dose treatment technique. Defined Terms: NORMAL = Standard treatment TBI = Total Body Irradiation HDR = High Dose Rate Required if treatment technique requires a dose that would normally require overriding of treatment machine safety controls.
>Referenced Verification Image Sequence	(300C,0040)	3	Introduces sequence of verification images obtained during delivery of current beam. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class. Required if Referenced Verification Image Sequence (300C,0040) is sent.

>>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance. Required if Referenced Verification Image Sequence (300C,0040) is sent.
>>Start Meterset	(3008,0078)	3	Cumulative Meterset Weight within Beam referenced by Referenced Beam Number at which image acquisition starts.
>>End Meterset	(3008,007A)	3	Cumulative Meterset Weight within Beam referenced by Referenced Beam Number at which image acquisition ends.
>Referenced Measured Dose Reference Sequence	(3008,0080)	3	Introduces sequence of doses measured during treatment delivery for current Beam. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>>Referenced Dose Reference Number	(300C,0051)	1C	Uniquely references Dose Reference specified by Dose Reference Number (300A,0012) in Dose Reference Sequence (300A,0010) in RT Prescription Module of referenced RT Plan. Required if Referenced Measured Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0080) is sent and Referenced Measured Dose Reference Number (3008,0082) is not sent. It shall not be present otherwise.
>>Referenced Measured Dose Reference Number	(3008,0082)	1C	Uniquely references Measured Dose Reference specified by Measured Dose Reference Number (3008,0064) in Measured Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0010). Required if Referenced Measured Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0080) is sent and Referenced Dose Reference Number (300C,0051) is not sent. It shall not be present otherwise.
>>Measured Dose Value	(3008,0016)	1C	Measured Dose in units specified by Dose Units (3004,0002) in sequence referenced by Measured Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0010) or Dose Reference Sequence (300A,0010) in RT Prescription Module of referenced RT Plan as defined above. Required if Referenced Measured Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0080) is sent.
>Referenced Calculated Dose Reference Sequence	(3008,0090)	3	Introduces sequence of doses estimated for each treatment delivery. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>>Referenced Dose Reference Number	(300C,0051)	1C	Uniquely identifies Dose Reference specified by Dose Reference Number (300A,0012) in Dose Reference Sequence (300A,0010) in RT Prescription Module of referenced RT Plan. Required if Referenced Calculated Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0090) is sent and Referenced Calculated Dose Reference

			Number (3008,0092) is not sent.
>>Referenced Calculated Dose Reference Number	(3008,0092)	1C	Uniquely identifies Calculated Dose Reference specified by Calculated Dose Reference Number (3008,0072) within Calculated Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0070). Required if Referenced Calculated Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0090) is sent and Referenced Dose Reference Number (300C,0051) is not sent.
>>Calculated Dose Reference Dose Value	(3008,0076)	1C	Calculated Dose (Gy). Required if Referenced Calculated Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0090) is sent.
>Source-Axis Distance	(300A,00B4)	3	Radiation source to gantry rotation axis distance of the equipment that was used for beam delivery (mm).
>Beam Limiting Device Leaf Pairs Sequence	(3008,00A0)	1	Introduces sequence of beam limiting device (collimator) jaw or leaf (element) leaf pair values. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>>RT Beam Limiting Device Type	(300A,00B8)	1	Type of beam limiting device (collimator). Enumerated Values: X = symmetric jaw pair in IEC X direction Y = symmetric jaw pair in IEC Y direction ASYMX = asymmetric jaw pair in IEC X direction ASYMY = asymmetric pair in IEC Y direction MLCX = multileaf (multi-element) jaw pair in IEC X direction MLCY = multileaf (multi-element) jaw pair in IEC Y direction
>>Number of Leaf/Jaw Pairs	(300A,00BC)	1	Number of leaf (element) or jaw pairs (equal to 1 for standard beam limiting device jaws).
>Referenced Patient Setup Number	(300C,006A)	3	Uniquely identifies Patient Setup used within current beam, specified by Patient Setup Number (300A,0182) within Patient Setup Sequence (300A,0180) of RT Treatment Record.
>Number of Wedges	(300A,00D0)	1	Number of wedges associated with current delivered Beam.
>Recorded Wedge Sequence	(3008,00B0)	1C	Introduces sequence of treatment wedges present during delivered Beam. Required if Number of Wedges (300A,00D0) is non-zero. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>>Wedge Number	(300A,00D2)	3	Identification number of the Wedge. The

			value of Wedge Number (300A,00D2) shall be unique within the wedge sequence.
>>Wedge Type	(300A,00D3)	2C	Type of wedge defined for delivered Beam. Required if Recorded Wedge Sequence (3008,00B0) is sent. Defined Terms: STANDARD = standard (static) wedge DYNAMIC = moving Beam Limiting Device (collimator) jaw simulating wedge MOTORIZED = single wedge which can be removed from beam remotely
>>Wedge ID	(300A,00D4)	3	User-supplied identifier for wedge.
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An identifier for the accessory intended to be read by a device such as a bar-code reader.
>>Wedge Angle	(300A,00D5)	3	Nominal wedge angle delivered (degrees).
>>Wedge Orientation	(300A,00D8)	3	Orientation of wedge, i.e. orientation of IEC WEDGE FILTER coordinate system with respect to IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE coordinate system (degrees).
>Number of Compensators	(300A,00E0)	2	Number of compensators associated with current delivered Beam.
>Recorded Compensator Sequence	(3008,00C0)	3	Introduces sequence of treatment compensators associated with current Beam. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>>Referenced Compensator Number	(300C,00D0)	1C	Uniquely identifies compensator specified by Compensator Number (300A,00E4) within Beam referenced by Referenced Beam Number (300C,0006). Required if Recorded Compensator Sequence (3008,00C0) is sent.
>>Compensator Type	(300A,00EE)	2C	Type of compensator (if any). Required if Recorded Compensator Sequence (3008,00C0) is sent. Defined Terms: STANDARD = physical (static) compensator DYNAMIC = moving Beam Limiting Device (collimator) simulating compensator
>>Compensator ID	(300A,00E5)	3	User-supplied identifier for compensator.
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An identifier for the accessory intended to be read by a device such as a bar-code reader.
>Number of Boli	(300A,00ED)	2	Number of boli used with current Beam.
>Referenced Bolus Sequence	(300C,00B0)	3	Introduces sequence of boli associated with Beam. The sequence may contain one or more items.

>>Referenced ROI Number	(3006,0084)	1C	Uniquely identifies ROI representing the bolus specified by ROI Number (3006,0022) in Structure Set ROI Sequence (3006,0020) in Structure Set Module within RT Structure Set IOD referenced by referenced RT Plan in Referenced RT Plan Sequence (300C,0002) in RT General Treatment Record Module. Required if Referenced Bolus Sequence (300C,00B0) is sent.
>>Bolus ID	(300A,00DC)	3	User-supplied identifier for the Bolus.
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An identifier for the accessory intended to be read by a device such as a bar-code reader.
>Number of Blocks	(300A,00F0)	2	Number of shielding blocks or Electron Inserts associated with Beam.
>Recorded Block Sequence	(3008,00D0)	3	Introduces sequence of blocks associated with current Beam. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>>Block Tray ID	(300A,00F5)	3	User-supplied identifier for block tray or Electron Insert.
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An identifier for the accessory intended to be read by a device such as a bar-code reader.
>>Referenced Block Number	(300C,00E0)	3	Uniquely identifies block specified by Block Number (300A,00FC) within Beam referenced by Referenced Beam Number (300C,0006).
>>Block Name	(300A,00FE)	2C	User-defined name for block. Required if Recorded Block Sequence (3008,00D0) is sent.
>Applicator Sequence	(300A,0107)	3	Introduces sequence of Applicators associated with Beam. Only a single item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>>Applicator ID	(300A,0108)	1C	User or machine supplied identifier for Applicator. Required if Applicator Sequence (300A,0107) is sent.
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An identifier for the accessory intended to be read by a device such as a bar-code reader.
>>Applicator Type	(300A,0109)	1C	Type of Applicator. Required if Applicator Sequence (300A,0107) is sent. Defined Terms: ELECTRON_SQUARE = square electron applicator ELECTRON_RECT = rectangular electron applicator ELECTRON_CIRC = circular electron applicator

			ELECTRON_SHORT = short electron applicator ELECTRON_OPEN = open (dummy) electron applicator INTRAOPERATIVE = intraoperative (custom) applicator STEREOTACTIC = stereotactic applicator
>>Applicator Description	(300A,010A)	3	User-defined description for Applicator.
>Current Fraction Number	(3008,0022)	2	Fraction number for this beam administration.
>Treatment Delivery Type	(300A,00CE)	2	Delivery Type of treatment. Defined Terms: TREATMENT = normal patient treatment OPEN_PORTFILM = portal image acquisition with open field TRMT_PORTFILM = portal image acquisition with treatment port CONTINUATION = continuation of interrupted treatment SETUP = no treatment beam is applied for this RT Beam. To be used for specifying the gantry, couch, and other machine positions where X-ray set-up images or measurements are to be taken
>Treatment Termination Status	(3008,002A)	1	Conditions under which treatment was terminated. Enumerated Values: NORMAL = treatment terminated normally OPERATOR = operator terminated treatment MACHINE = machine terminated treatment UNKNOWN = status at termination unknown
>Treatment Termination Code	(3008,002B)	3	Treatment machine termination code. This code is dependent upon the particular application and equipment.
>Treatment Verification Status	(3008,002C)	2	Conditions under which treatment was verified by a verification system. Enumerated Values: VERIFIED = treatment verified VERIFIED_OVR = treatment verified with at least one out-of-range value overridden NOT_VERIFIED = treatment verified manually
>Specified Primary Meterset	(3008,0032)	3	Desired machine setting of primary meterset.

>Specified Secondary Meterset	(3008,0033)	3	Desired machine setting of secondary meterset.
>Delivered Primary Meterset	(3008,0036)	3	Machine setting actually delivered as recorded by primary meterset.
>Delivered Secondary Meterset	(3008,0037)	3	Machine setting actually delivered as recorded by secondary meterset.
>Specified Treatment Time	(3008,003A)	3	Treatment Time set (sec).
>Delivered Treatment Time	(3008,003B)	3	Treatment Time actually delivered (sec).
>Number of Control Points	(300A,0110)	1	Number of control points delivered.
>Control Point Delivery Sequence	(3008,0040)	1	Introduces sequence of beam control points for current treatment beam. The sequence may contain one or more items. See C.8.8.21.1.
>>Referenced Control Point Index	(300C,00F0)	3	Uniquely identifies Control Point specified by Control Point Index (300A,0112) within Beam referenced by Referenced Beam Number (300C,0006).
>>Treatment Control Point Date	(3008,0024)	1	Date administration of treatment beam began.
>>Treatment Control Point Time	(3008,0025)	1	Time administration of treatment beam began.
>>Specified Meterset	(3008,0042)	2	Desired machine setting for current control point. See C.8.8.21.2.
>>Delivered Meterset	(3008,0044)	1	Machine setting actually delivered at current control point. See C.8.8.21.2.
>>Dose Rate Set	(300A,0115)	2	Dose Rate set on treatment machine for segment beginning at current control point (meterset/min).
>>Dose Rate Delivered	(3008,0048)	2	Dose Rate actually delivered for segment beginning at current control point (meterset/min).
>>Nominal Beam Energy	(300A,0114)	3	Nominal Beam Energy at control point.
>>Nominal Beam Energy Unit	(300A,0015)	1C	Units used for Nominal Beam Energy (300A,0114). Required if Nominal Beam Energy (300A,0114) is sent. Defined Terms: MV = Megavolt MEV = Mega electron-Volt If Radiation Type (300A,00C6) is PHOTON, Nominal Beam Energy Unit (300A,0015) shall be MV. If Radiation Type (300A,00C6) is ELECTRON, Nominal Beam Energy Unit (300A,0015) shall be MEV.
>>Wedge Position Sequence	(300A,0116)	3	Introduces sequence of Wedge positions for current control point. The sequence may contain one or more items.

>>>Referenced Wedge Number	(300C,00C0)	1C	Uniquely identifies wedge specified by Wedge Number (300A,00D2) within Beam referenced by Referenced Beam Number (300C,0006). Required if Wedge Position Sequence (300A,0116) is sent.
>>>Wedge Position	(300A,0118)	1C	Position of Wedge at current control point. Required if Wedge Position Sequence (300A,0116) is sent. Enumerated Values: IN, OUT.
>>Beam Limiting Device Position Sequence	(300A,011A)	1C	Introduces sequence of beam limiting device (collimator) jaw or leaf (element) positions. Required for Control Point 0 of Control Point Delivery Sequence (3008,0040) or if beam limiting device (collimator) changes during beam administration. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>>>RT Beam Limiting Device Type	(300A,00B8)	1C	Type of beam limiting device. The value of this attribute shall correspond to RT Beam Limiting Device Type (300A,00B8) defined in an element of Beam Limiting Device Leaf Pairs Sequence (3008,00A0). Required if Beam Limiting Device Position Sequence (300A,011A) is sent. Enumerated Values: X = symmetric jaw pair in IEC X direction Y = symmetric jaw pair in IEC Y direction ASYMX = asymmetric jaw pair in IEC X direction ASYMY = asymmetric pair in IEC Y direction MLCX = multileaf (multi-element) jaw pair in IEC X direction MLCY = multileaf (multi-element) jaw pair in IEC Y direction
>>>Leaf/Jaw Positions	(300A,011C)	1C	Positions of beam limiting device (collimator) leaf (element) or jaw pairs (mm) in IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE coordinate axis appropriate to RT Beam Limiting Device Type (300A,00B8), e.g. X-axis for MLCX, Y-axis for MLCY. Contains 2N values, where N is the Number of Leaf/Jaw Pairs (300A,00BC) defined in element of Beam Limiting Device Leaf Pairs Sequence (3008,00A0). Values shall be in IEC leaf subscript order 101, 201, 102, 202, … 1N, 2N. Required if Beam Limiting Device Position Sequence (300A,011A) is sent.
>>Gantry Angle	(300A,011E)	1C	Treatment machine gantry angle, i.e. orientation of IEC GANTRY coordinate

			system with respect to IEC FIXED REFERENCE coordinate system (degrees). Required for Control Point 0 of Control Point Delivery Sequence (3008,0040) or if Gantry Angle changes during beam administration.
>>Gantry Rotation Direction	(300A,011F)	1C	Direction of Gantry Rotation when viewing gantry from isocenter, for segment beginning at current Control Point. Required for Control Point 0 of Control Point Delivery Sequence (3008,0040), or if Gantry Rotation Direction changes during beam administration. Enumerated Values: CW = clockwise CC = counter-clockwise NONE = no rotation
>>Gantry Pitch Angle	(300A,014A)	3	Gantry Pitch Angle. i.e. the rotation of the IEC GANTRY coordinate system about the X-axis of the IEC GANTRY coordinate system (degrees). If used, must be present for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if used and Gantry Pitch Rotation Angle changes during Beam, must be present. See C.8.8.25.6.5.
>>Gantry Pitch Rotation Direction	(300A,014C)	3	Direction of Gantry Pitch Angle when viewing along the positive X-axis of the IEC GANTRY coordinate system, for segment following Control Point. If used, must be present for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if used and Gantry Pitch Rotation Direction changes during Beam, must be present. See C.8.8.14.8 and C.8.8.25.6.5. Enumerated Values: CW = clockwise CC = counter-clockwise NONE = no rotation
>>Beam Stopper Position	(3008,0230)	3	Position of Beam Stopper during beam administration. Enumerated Values: EXTENDED = Beam Stopper extended RETRACTED = Beam Stopper retracted UNKNOWN = Position unknown
>>Beam Limiting Device Angle	(300A,0120)	1C	Beam Limiting Device (collimator) angle, i.e. orientation of IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE coordinate system with respect to IEC GANTRY coordinate system (degrees). Required for Control Point 0 of

			Control Point Delivery Sequence (3008,0040) or if beam limiting device (collimator) angle changes during beam delivery.
>>Beam Limiting Device Rotation Direction	(300A,0121)	1C	Direction of Beam Limiting Device Rotation when viewing beam limiting device (collimator) from radiation source, for segment beginning at current Control Point. Required for Control Point 0 of Control Point Delivery Sequence (3008,0040) or if Beam Limiting Device Rotation Direction changes during beam administration. Enumerated Values: CW = clockwise CC = counter-clockwise NONE = no rotation
>>Patient Support Angle	(300A,0122)	1C	Patient Support angle, i.e. orientation of IEC PATIENT SUPPORT (turntable) coordinate system with respect to IEC FIXED REFERENCE coordinate system (degrees). Required for Control Point 0 of Control Point Delivery Sequence (3008,0040) or if Patient Support Angle changes during beam administration.
>>Patient Support Rotation Direction	(300A,0123)	1C	Direction of Patient Support Rotation when viewing table from above, for segment beginning at current Control Point. Required for Control Point 0 of Control Point Delivery Sequence (3008,0040), or if Patient Support Rotation Direction changes during beam administration. Enumerated Values: CW = clockwise CC = counter-clockwise NONE = no rotation
>>Table Top Eccentric Axis Distance	(300A,0124)	3	Distance (positive) from the IEC PATIENT SUPPORT vertical axis to the IEC TABLE TOP ECCENTRIC vertical axis (mm).
>>Table Top Eccentric Angle	(300A,0125)	1C	Table Top (non-isocentric) angle, i.e. orientation of IEC TABLE TOP ECCENTRIC coordinate system with respect to IEC PATIENT SUPPORT coordinate system (degrees). Required for Control Point 0 of Control Point Delivery Sequence (3008,0040) or if Table Top Eccentric Angle changes during beam administration.
>>Table Top Eccentric Rotation Direction	(300A,0126)	1C	Direction of Table Top Eccentric Rotation when viewing table from above, for

			segment beginning at current Control Point. Required for Control Point 0 of Control Point Delivery Sequence (3008,0040) or if Table Top Eccentric Rotation Direction changes during beam administration. Enumerated Values: CW = clockwise CC = counter-clockwise NONE = no rotation
>>Table Top Vertical Position	(300A,0128)	2C	Table Top Vertical position in IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system (mm). This value is interpreted as an absolute, rather than relative, Table setting. Required for Control Point 0 of Control Point Delivery Sequence (3008,0040) or if Table Top Vertical Position changes during beam administration.
>>Table Top Longitudinal Position	(300A,0129)	2C	Table Top Longitudinal position in IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system (mm). This value is interpreted as an absolute, rather than relative, Table setting. Required for Control Point 0 of Control Point Delivery Sequence (3008,0040) or if Table Top Longitudinal Position changes during beam administration.
>>Table Top Lateral Position	(300A,012A)	2C	Table Top Lateral position in IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system (mm). This value is interpreted as an absolute, rather than relative, Table setting. Required for Control Point 0 of Control Point Delivery Sequence (3008,0040) or if Table Top Lateral Position changes during beam administration.
>>Corrected Parameter Sequence	(3008,0068)	3	Introduces a sequence of items describing any corrections made to any attributes prior to delivery of the next control point. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>>>Parameter Sequence Pointer	(3008,0061)	1	Contains the Data Element Tag of the parent sequence containing the attribute that was corrected. The value is limited in scope to the Treatment Session Beam Sequence (3008,0020) and all nested sequences therein.
>>>Parameter Item Index	(3008,0063)	1	Contains the sequence item index (starting at 1) of the corrected attribute within its parent sequence.
>>>Parameter Pointer	(3008,0065)	1	Contains the Data Element Tag of the attribute that was corrected.

>>>Correction Value	(3008,006A)	1	The value applied to the attribute that was referenced by the Parameter Sequence Pointer (3008,0061), Parameter Item Index (3008,0063) and Parameter Pointer (3008,0065).
>>Override Sequence	(3008,0060)	3	Introduces sequence of parameters that were overridden during the administration of the beam segment immediately prior to the current control point. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>>>Override Parameter Pointer	(3008,0062)	2C	Contains the Data Element Tag of the attribute that was overridden. Required if Override Sequence (3008,0060) is sent.
>>>Parameter Sequence Pointer	(3008,0061)	3	Contains the Data Element Tag of the parent sequence containing the attribute that was overridden. The value is limited in scope to the Treatment Session Beam Sequence (3008,0020) and all nested sequences therein.
>>>Parameter Item Index	(3008,0063)	3	Contains the sequence item index (monotonically increasing from 1) of the overridden attributes within its parent sequence. The value is limited in scope to the Treatment Session Beam Sequence (3008,0020) and all nested sequences therein.
>>>Operators' Name	(0008,1070)	2C	Name of operator who authorized override. Required if Override Sequence (3008,0060) is sent.
>>>Override Reason	(3008,0066)	3	User-defined description of reason for override of parameter specified by Override Parameter Pointer (3008,0062).

C.8.8.21.1 Control point machine delivery parameters

All treatment machine delivery parameters (including table angles and positions) in the RT Treatment Session Record Module shall be specified as absolute, not relative, values at the Control Point.

C.8.8.21.2 Specified and Delivered Meterset Values

Specified Meterset (3008,0042) contains the MU as specified in the corresponding RT Plan at a given control point.

Delivered Meterset (3008,0044) shall contain one of the following three values:

- the Meterset value at which the delivery of the current beam started
- the Specified Meterset
- the Meterset value at which the delivery of the current beam ended

Control points which already have been treated in an earlier session shall contain the Meterset value at which the delivery of the current beam started. Control points which have been completely treated during the current session shall contain the Specified Meterset value for this Control Point. Control Points which have not yet been treated or not completely shall contain the total delivered MU up to the point where the interruption has occurred (i.e. the last control point treated).

This can be expressed by the following equation:

$$DelMS[CP_n] = MAX\ (\ StartMS,\ MIN\ (\ SpecMS[CP_n],\ EndMS\ ))$$

with

DelMS[CP_n]: Delivered Meterset value at control point n

SpecMS[CP_n]: Specified Meterset value at control point n

StartMS: Meterset value where delivery of current beam started

EndMS: Meterset value where delivery of current beam ended

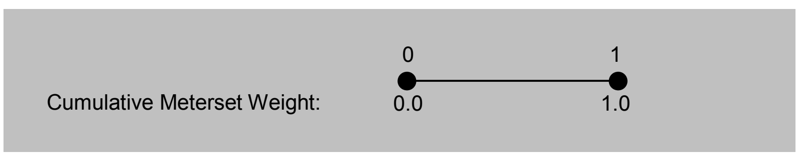
By this definition it is unambigously recorded, which ‘segments’ of control points have been delivered in case of partial treatments.

Example 1: 2 Control Points, 2 complete Partial Treatments

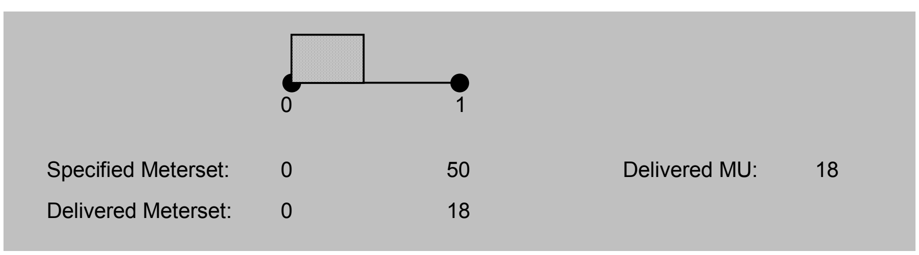
Total Meterset: 50

Interruption at: 18 MU

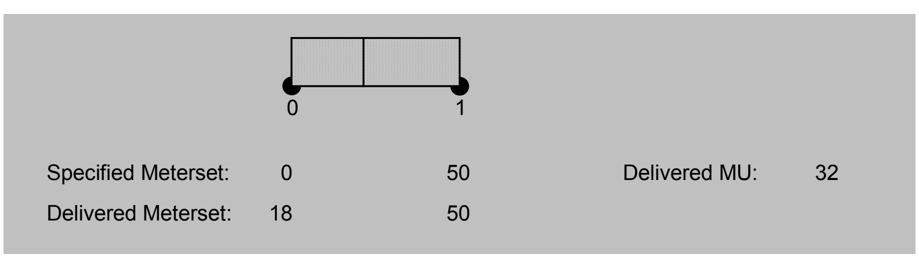
RT Plan:



RT Treatment Record 1 of 2



RT Treatment Record 2 of 2

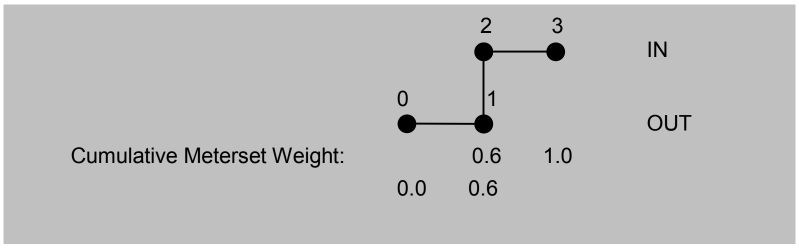


Example 2: 4 Control Points, 3 complete Partial Treatments

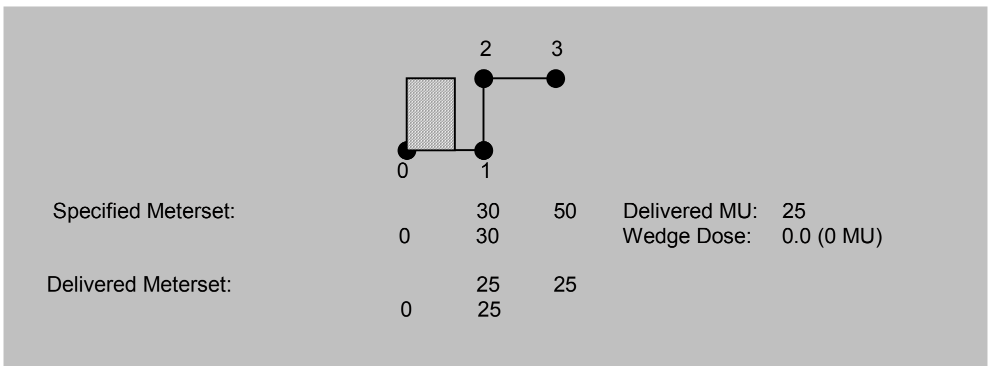
Total Meterset: 50

Interruption at: 25, 30 MU

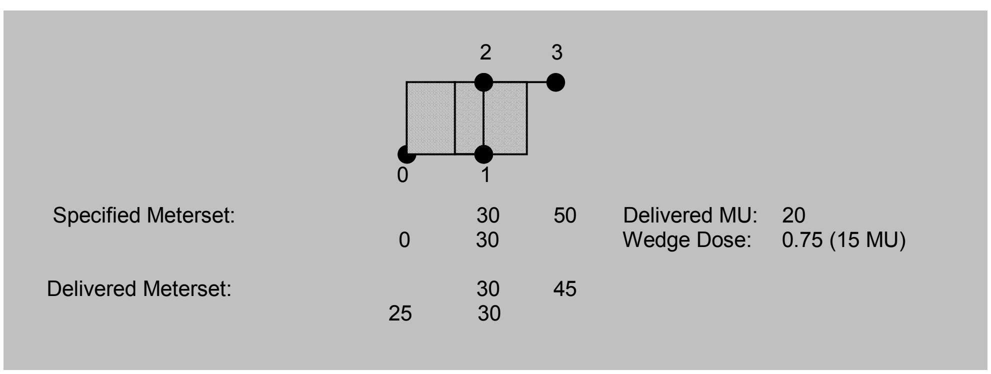
RT Plan:



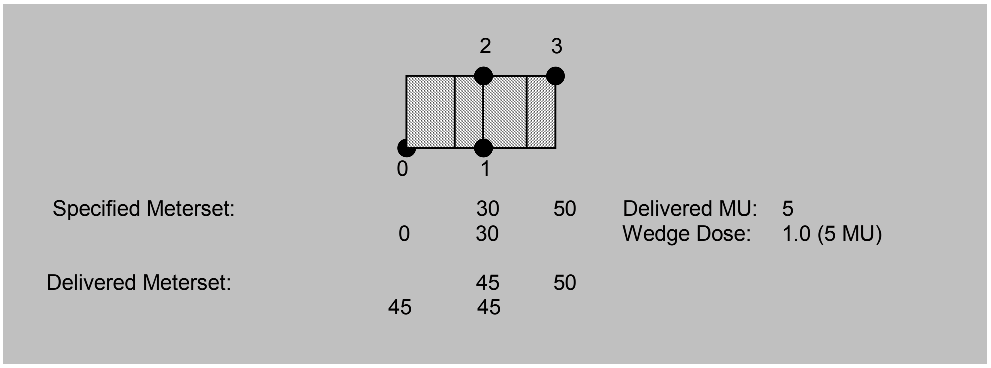
RT Treatment Record 1 of 3



RT Treatment Record 2 of 3



RT Treatment Record 3 of 3

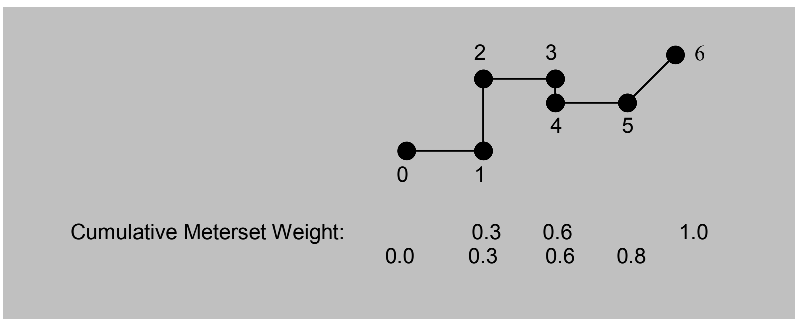


Example 3: 7 Control Points, 2 Partial Treatments with small gap

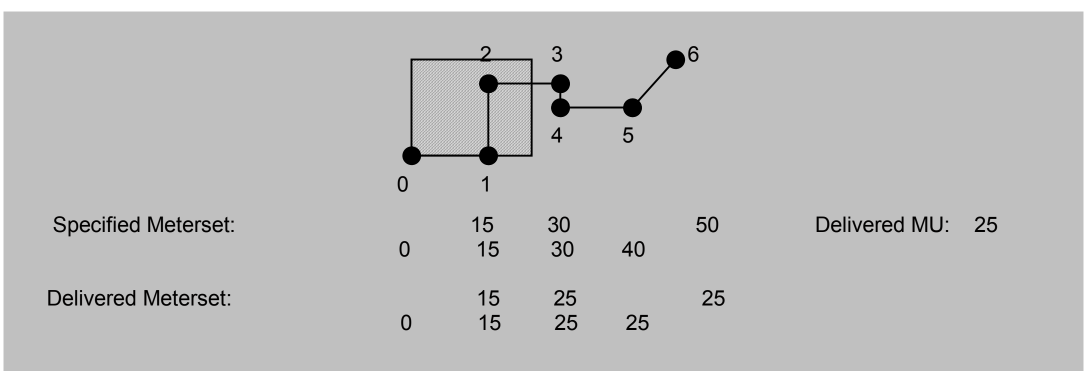
Total Meterset: 50

Interuption at: 25 MU, Resumption at 30 MU

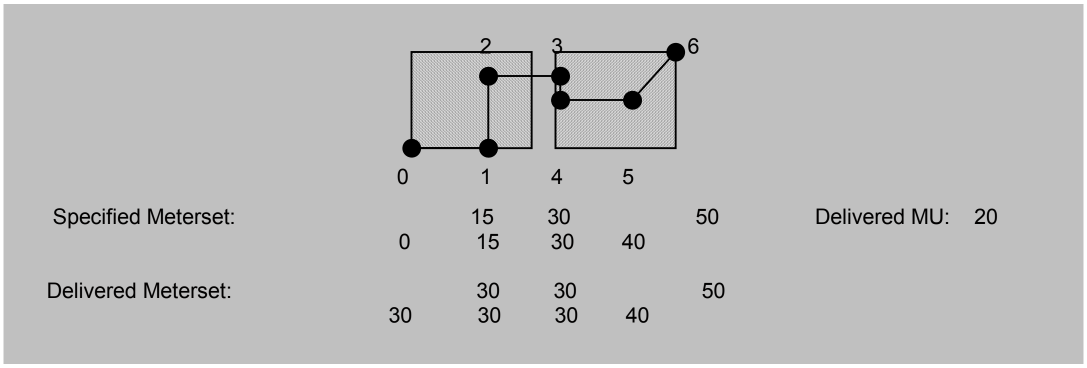
RT Plan:



RT Treatment Record 1 of 2



RT Treatment Record 2 of 2



C.8.8.22 RT Brachy Session Record Module

Table C.8-58—RT BRACHY SESSION RECORD MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Operators' Name	(0008,1070)	2	Name of operator administering treatment session.
Referenced Fraction Group Number	(300C,0022)	3	Identifier of Fraction Group within referenced RT Plan.
Number of Fractions Planned	(300A,0078)	2	Total number of treatments (Fractions) planned for current Fraction Group.
Brachy Treatment Technique	(300A,0200)	1	Type of brachytherapy treatment technique. Enumerated Values: INTRALUMENARY, INTRACAVITARY, INTERSTITIAL, CONTACT, INTRAVASCULAR, PERMANENT. See RT Plan IOD.
Brachy Treatment Type	(300A,0202)	1	Type of brachytherapy treatment. Defined Terms: MANUAL = manually positioned HDR = High dose rate MDR = Medium dose rate LDR = Low dose rate PDR = Pulsed dose rate
Recorded Source Sequence	(3008,0100)	1	Introduces sequence of Sources to be used within Application Setups. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>Source Number	(300A,0212)	1	Identification number of the Source. The value of Source Number (300A,0212) shall be unique within the Recorded Source Sequence (3008,0100) in which it is created.
>Source Type	(300A,0214)	1	Type of Source. Defined Terms: POINT, LINE, CYLINDER, SPHERE.
>Source Manufacturer	(300A,0216)	2	Manufacturer of source.

>Source Serial Number	(3008,0105)	2	Serial Number of source.
>Source Isotope Name	(300A,0226)	1	User-defined name of Isotope.
>Source Isotope Half Life	(300A,0228)	1	Half-life of Isotope (days).
>Source Strength Units	(300A,0229)	1C	Measurement unit of Source Strength. Required if the source is not a gamma-emitting (photon) source. May be present otherwise. Enumerated Values: AIR_KERMA_RATE = Air Kerma Rate if Source is Gamma emitting Isotope. DOSE_RATE_WATER = Dose Rate in Water if Source is Beta emitting Isotope.
>Reference Air Kerma Rate	(300A,022A)	1	Air Kerma Rate in air of Isotope specified at Air Kerma Rate Reference Date (300A,022C) and Air Kerma Rate Reference Time (300A,022E) (in µGy h^{-1} at 1 m). Value shall be zero for non-gamma sources.
>Source Strength	(300A,022B)	1C	Source Strength of Isotope at Source Strength Reference Date (300A,022C) and Source Strength Reference Time (300A,022E), in units specified in Source Strength Units (300A,0229). Required if the source is not a gamma-emitting (photon) source. See C.8.8.15.13.
>Source Strength Reference Date	(300A,022C)	1	Reference date for Reference Air Kerma Rate (300A,022A) or Source Strength (300A,022B) of Isotope.
>Source Strength Reference Time	(300A,022E)	1	Reference time for Air Kerma Rate (300A,022A) or Source Strength (300A,022B) of Isotope.
Treatment Session Application Setup Sequence	(3008,0110)	1	Introduces sequence of Application Setups for RT Treatment Record for current RT Plan. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>Application Setup Type	(300A,0232)	1	Type of Application Setup. Defined Terms: FLETCHER_SUIT, DELCLOS, BLOEDORN, JOSLIN_FLYNN, CHANDIGARH, MANCHESTER, HENSCHKE, NASOPHARYNGEAL, OESOPHAGEAL, ENDOBRONCHIAL, SYED_NEBLETT, ENDORECTAL, PERINEAL.
>Referenced Brachy Application Setup Number	(300C,000C)	3	References application setup specified by Application Setup Number (300A,0234) in Application Setup Sequence (300A,0230) in RT Brachy Applications Module within referenced RT Plan.
>Application Setup Name	(300A,0236)	3	User-defined name for Application Setup.

>Application Setup Manufacturer	(300A,0238)	3	Manufacturer of Application Setup.
>Template Number	(300A,0240)	3	Identification number of the Template.
>Template Type	(300A,0242)	3	User-defined type for Template Device.
>Template Name	(300A,0244)	3	User-defined name for Template Device.
>Application Setup Check	(3008,0116)	3	Results of check-wire travel through all channels of current Application Setup. Enumerated Values: PASSED = Passed check FAILED = Failed check UNKNOWN = Unknown status
>Referenced Verification Image Sequence	(300C,0040)	3	Introduces sequence of verification images obtained during delivery of current beam. The sequence may contain one or more items. See Note.
>>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class. Required if Referenced Verification Image Sequence (300C,0040) is sent.
>>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance. Required if Referenced Verification Image Sequence (300C,0040) is sent.
>Total Reference Air Kerma	(300A,0250)	1	Total Reference Air Kerma for current Application Setup, i.e. the sum of the products of the Air Kerma Rates of each Source in each Channel with its respective Channel Time (µGy at 1 m). Value shall be zero for non-gamma sources.
>Referenced Measured Dose Reference Sequence	(3008,0080)	3	Introduces sequence of doses measured during treatment delivery, summed over entire session. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>>Referenced Dose Reference Number	(300C,0051)	1C	Uniquely references Dose Reference specified by Dose Reference Number (300A,0012) in Dose Reference Sequence (300A,0010) in RT Prescription Module of referenced RT Plan. Required if Referenced Measured Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0080) is sent and Referenced Measured Dose Reference Number (3008,0082) is not sent. It shall not be present otherwise.
>>Referenced Measured Dose Reference Number	(3008,0082)	1C	Uniquely references Measured Dose Reference specified by Measured Dose Reference Number (3008,0064) in Measured Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0010). Required if Referenced Measured Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0080) is sent and Referenced Dose Reference Number (300C,0051) is not

			sent. It shall not be present otherwise.
>>Measured Dose Value	(3008,0016)	1C	Measured Dose in units specified by Dose Units (3004,0002) in sequence referenced by Measured Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0010) or Dose Reference Sequence (300A,0010) in RT Prescription Module of referenced RT Plan as defined above. Required if Referenced Measured Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0080) is sent.
>Referenced Calculated Dose Reference Sequence	(3008,0090)	3	Introduces sequence of doses estimated for each treatment delivery. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>>Referenced Dose Reference Number	(300C,0051)	1C	Uniquely identifies Dose Reference specified by Dose Reference Number (300A,0012) in Dose Reference Sequence (300A,0010) in RT Prescription Module of referenced RT Plan. Required if Referenced Calculated Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0090) is sent and Referenced Calculated Dose Reference Number (3008,0092) is not sent. It shall not be present otherwise.
>>Referenced Calculated Dose Reference Number	(3008,0092)	1C	Uniquely identifies Calculated Dose Reference specified by Calculated Dose Reference Number (3008,0072) within Calculated Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0070). Required if Referenced Calculated Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0090) is sent and Referenced Dose Reference Number (300C,0051) is not sent. It shall not be present otherwise.
>>Calculated Dose Reference Dose Value	(3008,0076)	1C	Calculated Dose (Gy). Required if Referenced Calculated Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0090) is sent.
>Current Fraction Number	(3008,0022)	2	Fraction number for this application setup.
>Treatment Delivery Type	(300A,00CE)	2	Delivery Type of treatment. Defined Terms: TREATMENT = normal patient treatment CONTINUATION = continuation of interrupted treatment
>Treatment Termination Status	(3008,002A)	1	Conditions under which treatment was terminated. Enumerated Values: NORMAL = treatment terminated normally OPERATOR = operator terminated treatment MACHINE = machine terminated treatment for other than NORMAL condition UNKNOWN = status at termination

			unknown
>Treatment Termination Code	(3008,002B)	3	Treatment machine termination code. This code is dependent upon the particular application and equipment.
>Treatment Verification Status	(3008,002C)	2	Conditions under which treatment was verified by a verification system. Enumerated Values: VERIFIED = treatment verified VERIFIED_OVR = treatment verified with at least one out-of-range value overridden NOT_VERIFIED = treatment verified manually
>Recorded Brachy Accessory Device Sequence	(3008,0120)	3	Introduces sequence of Brachy Accessory Devices associated with current Application Setup. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>>Referenced Brachy Accessory Device Number	(3008,0122)	2C	Identification number of the Brachy Accessory Device. The value of Brachy Accessory Device Number (300A,0262) shall be unique within the Application Setup in which it is created. Required if Recorded Brachy Accessory Device Sequence (3008,0120) is sent.
>>Brachy Accessory Device ID	(300A,0263)	2C	User or machine supplied identifier for Brachy Accessory Device. Required if Recorded Brachy Accessory Device Sequence (3008,0120) is sent.
>>Brachy Accessory Device Type	(300A,0264)	1C	Type of Brachy Accessory Device. Required if Recorded Brachy Accessory Device Sequence (3008,0120) is sent. Defined Terms: SHIELD, DILATATION, MOLD, PLAQUE, FLAB.
>>Brachy Accessory Device Name	(300A,0266)	3	User-defined name for Brachy Accessory Device.
>Recorded Channel Sequence	(3008,0130)	1	Introduces sequence of Channels for current Application Setup. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>>Channel Number	(300A,0282)	1	Identification number of the Channel. The value of Channel Number (300A,0282) shall be unique within the Application Setup in which it is created.
>>Channel Length	(300A,0284)	2	Length of Channel (mm). See RT Plan IOD.
>>Specified Channel Total Time	(3008,0132)	1	Total amount of time specified between Control Point 0 and final Control Point of the Brachy Control Point Sequence (300A,02D0) for current Channel (sec).
>>Delivered Channel Total Time	(3008,0134)	1	Total amount of time actually delivered between Control Point 0 and final Control

			Point of the Brachy Control Point Sequence (300A,02D0) for current Channel (sec).
>>Source Movement Type	(300A,0288)	1	Type of Source movement. Defined Terms: STEPWISE, FIXED, OSCILLATING, UNIDIRECTIONAL.
>>Specified Number of Pulses	(3008,0136)	1C	Number of Pulses specified per fraction for current Channel. Required if Brachy Treatment Type (300A,0202) is PDR. See C.8.8.22.1.
>>Delivered Number of Pulses	(3008,0138)	1C	Number of Pulses actually delivered per fraction for current Channel. Required if Brachy Treatment Type (300A,0202) is PDR. See C.8.8.22.1.
>>Specified Pulse Repetition Interval	(3008,013A)	1C	Pulse repetition interval (sec) specified for current Channel. Required if Brachy Treatment Type (300A,0202) is PDR. See C.8.8.22.1
>>Delivered Pulse Repetition Interval	(3008,013C)	1C	Pulse repetition interval (sec) actually delivered for current Channel. Required if Brachy Treatment Type (300A,0202) is PDR. See C.8.8.22.1.
>>Referenced Measured Dose Reference Sequence	(3008,0080)	3	Introduces sequence of doses measured during treatment delivery, summed over entire session. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>>>Referenced Dose Reference Number	(300C,0051)	1C	Uniquely references Dose Reference specified by Dose Reference Number (300A,0012) in Dose Reference Sequence (300A,0010) in RT Prescription Module of referenced RT Plan. Required if Referenced Measured Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0080) is sent and Referenced Measured Dose Reference Number (3008,0082) is not sent. It shall not be present otherwise.
>>>Referenced Measured Dose Reference Number	(3008,0082)	1C	References Measured Dose Reference specified by Measured Dose Reference Number (3008,0064) in Measured Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0010). Required if Referenced Measured Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0080) is sent and Referenced Dose Reference Number (300C,0051) is not sent. It shall not be present otherwise.
>>>Measured Dose Value	(3008,0016)	1C	Measured Dose. Required if Referenced Measured Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0080) is sent.
>>Referenced Calculated Dose Reference Sequence	(3008,0090)	3	Introduces sequence of doses estimated for each treatment delivery. The sequence may contain one or more items.

>>>Referenced Dose Reference Number	(300C,0051)	1C	Uniquely identifies Dose Reference specified by Dose Reference Number (300A,0012) in Dose Reference Sequence (300A,0010) in RT Prescription Module of referenced RT Plan. Required if Referenced Calculated Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0090) is sent and Referenced Calculated Dose Reference Number (3008,0092) is not sent. It shall not be present otherwise.
>>>Referenced Calculated Dose Reference Number	(3008,0092)	1C	Uniquely identifies Calculated Dose Reference specified by Calculated Dose Reference Number (3008,0072) within Calculated Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0070). Required if Referenced Calculated Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0090) is sent and Referenced Dose Reference Number (300C,0051) is not sent. It shall not be present otherwise.
>>>Calculated Dose Reference Dose Value	(3008,0076)	1C	Calculated Dose (Gy). Required if Referenced Calculated Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0090) is sent.
>>Recorded Source Applicator Sequence	(3008,0140)	3	Introduces sequence of recorded Source Applicators. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>>>Referenced Source Applicator Number	(3008,0142)	2	Identification number of the Source Applicator. The value of Source Applicator Number (300A,0290) shall be unique within the Channel in which it is created.
>>>Source Applicator ID	(300A,0291)	2C	User or machine supplied identifier for Source Applicator. Required if Recorded Source Applicator Sequence (3008,0140) is sent.
>>>Source Applicator Type	(300A,0292)	1C	Type of Source Applicator. Required if Recorded Source Applicator Sequence (3008,0140) is sent. Enumerated Values: FLEXIBLE, RIGID.
>>>Source Applicator Name	(300A,0294)	3	User-defined name for Source Applicator.
>>>Source Applicator Length	(300A,0296)	1C	Length of Source Applicator (mm), defined as the distance between the connector of the applicator and the distal-most position of the source. Required if Recorded Source Applicator Sequence (3008,0140) is sent.
>>>Source Applicator Manufacturer	(300A,0298)	3	Manufacturer of Source Applicator.
>>>Source Applicator Step Size	(300A,02A0)	1C	Distance of path along channel (mm) between adjacent (potential) dwell positions. Required if Source Movement Type (300A,0288) is STEPWISE.
>>Transfer Tube Number	(300A,02A2)	2	Identification number of the Transfer Tube. The value of Transfer Tube Number (300A,02A2) shall be unique within the

			Channel in which it is created.
>>Transfer Tube Length	(300A,02A4)	2C	Length of Transfer Tube of current afterloading Channel (mm). Required if value Transfer Tube Number (300A,02A2) is not zero length.
>>Recorded Channel Shield Sequence	(3008,0150)	3	Introduces sequence of Channel Shields associated with current Channel. The sequence may contain one or more items. See RT Plan IOD for description of Channel Shields.
>>>Referenced Channel Shield Number	(3008,0152)	2C	Identification number of the Channel Shield. The value of Channel Shield Number (300A,02B2) shall be unique within the Channel in which it is created. Required if Recorded Channel Shield Sequence (3008,0150) is sent.
>>>Channel Shield ID	(300A,02B3)	2C	User or machine supplied identifier for Channel Shield. Required if Recorded Channel Shield Sequence (3008,0150) is sent.
>>>Channel Shield Name	(300A,02B4)	3	User-defined name for Channel Shield.
>>Referenced Source Number	(300C,000E)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced Source within the Recorded Source Sequence (3008,0100) for current Application Setup.
>>Safe Position Exit Date	(3008,0162)	1C	Date on which the source(s) exited the safe. Required if Recorded Channel Sequence (3008,0130) is sent and Brachy Treatment Type (300A,0202) is not MANUAL.
>>Safe Position Exit Time	(3008,0164)	1C	Time on which the source(s) exited the safe. Required if Recorded Channel Sequence (3008,0130) is sent and Brachy Treatment Type (300A,0202) is not MANUAL.
>>Safe Position Return Date	(3008,0166)	1C	Date on which the source(s) returned to the safe. Required if Recorded Channel Sequence (3008,0130) is sent and Brachy Treatment Type (300A,0202) is not MANUAL.
>>Safe Position Return Time	(3008,0168)	1C	Time on which the source(s) returned to the safe. Required if Recorded Channel Sequence (3008,0130) is sent and Brachy Treatment Type (300A,0202) is not MANUAL.
>>Number of Control Points	(300A,0110)	1	Number of control points in Channel. For an N-segment Channel there will be 2N (stepwise movement) or N+1 (continuous movement) control points.
>>Brachy Control Point Delivered Sequence	(3008,0160)	1	Introduces sequence of machine configurations describing this Channel. The sequence may contain two or more items.

			See RT Plan IOD and C.8.8.22.1 for description of Brachy Control Point Delivered Sequence.
>>>Referenced Control Point Index	(300C,00F0)	3	Index of current Control Point, starting at 0 for first Control Point.
>>>Treatment Control Point Date	(3008,0024)	1	Date when current Control Point occurred.
>>>Treatment Control Point Time	(3008,0025)	1	Time when current Control Point occurred.
>>>Control Point Relative Position	(300A,02D2)	1	Distance between current Control Point Position and the distal-most possible Source position in current Channel (mm). See RT Plan IOD.
>>>Override Sequence	(3008,0060)	3	Introduces sequence of parameters which were overridden during the administration of the treatment immediately prior to the current control point. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>>>>Override Parameter Pointer	(3008,0062)	2C	Contains the Data Element Tag of the attribute which was overridden. Required if Override Sequence (3008,0060) is sent.
>>>>Operators' Name	(0008,1070)	2C	Name of operator who authorized override. Required if Override Sequence (3008,0060) is sent.
>>>>Override Reason	(3008,0066)	3	User-defined description of reason for override of parameter specified by Override Parameter Pointer (3008,0062).

Note: The Referenced Verification Image Sequence (300C,0040) may contain either images taken specifically for verification of the brachy application setup or reference images used in place of verification images, as might be done in HDR treatment planning.

C.8.8.22.1 PDR (Pulsed Dose Rate) Treatment

In Brachytherapy treatment techniques where Brachy Treatment Type (300A,0202) is PDR, the Brachy Control Point Sequence (300A,02D0) shall consist of 2N items, where N = Delivered Number of Pulses (3008,0138). Each control point pair shall specify the start and end of a single pulse.

C.8.8.23 RT Treatment Summary Record Module

Table C.8-59—RT TREATMENT SUMMARY RECORD MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Current Treatment Status	(3008,0200)	1	Status of the Treatment at the time the Treatment Summary was created. Enumerated Values: NOT_STARTED, ON_TREATMENT, ON_BREAK, SUSPENDED, STOPPED, COMPLETED. See C.8.8.23.1.
Treatment Status Comment	(3008,0202)	3	Comment on current treatment status.
First Treatment Date	(3008,0054)	2	Date of delivery of the first treatment.
Most Recent Treatment Date	(3008,0056)	2	Date of delivery of the most recent

			administration.
Fraction Group Summary Sequence	(3008,0220)	3	Introduces sequence describing current state of planned vs. delivered fraction groups. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>Referenced Fraction Group Number	(300C,0022)	3	References Fraction Group Number (300A,0071) in Fraction Group Sequence (300A,0070) in the referenced RT Plan.
>Fraction Group Type	(3008,0224)	2C	Indicates type of fraction group. Required if Fraction Group Summary Sequence (3008,0220) is sent. Enumerated Values: EXTERNAL_BEAM, BRACHY.
>Number of Fractions Planned	(300A,0078)	2C	Number of fractions planned for this fraction group. Required if Fraction Group Summary Sequence (3008,0220) is sent.
>Number of Fractions Delivered	(3008,005A)	2C	Number of fractions delivered as of Treatment Summary Report. Required if Fraction Group Summary Sequence (3008,0220) is sent.
>Fraction Status Summary Sequence	(3008,0240)	3	Introduces sequence describing status of fractions in Fraction Group. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>>Referenced Fraction Number	(3008,0223)	1C	Identifies fraction. Required if Fraction Status Summary Sequence (3008,0240) is sent.
>>Treatment Date	(3008,0250)	2C	Date when fraction was delivered. Required if Fraction Status Summary Sequence (3008,0240) is sent.
>>Treatment Time	(3008,0251)	2C	Time when fraction was delivered. Required if Fraction Status Summary Sequence (3008,0240) is sent.
>>Treatment Termination Status	(3008,002A)	2C	Conditions under which treatment was terminated. Required if Fraction Status Summary Sequence (3008,0240) is sent. Enumerated Values: NORMAL = treatment terminated normally OPERATOR = operator terminated treatment MACHINE = machine terminated treatment for other than NORMAL condition UNKNOWN = status at termination unknown
Treatment Summary Measured Dose Reference Sequence	(3008,00E0)	3	Introduces sequence of references to Measured Dose References. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>Referenced Dose Reference Number	(300C,0051)	3	Uniquely identifies Dose Reference specified by Dose Reference Number (300A,0012) in Dose Reference Sequence (300A,0010) in RT Prescription Module of

			referenced RT Plan referenced in Referenced RT Plan Sequence (300C,0002) of RT General Treatment Record Module.
>Dose Reference Description	(300A,0016)	3	User-defined description of Dose Reference.
>Cumulative Dose to Dose Reference	(3008,0052)	1C	Cumulative Dose delivered to Dose Reference (Gy). Required if Treatment Summary Dose Reference Sequence (3008,00E0) is sent.
Treatment Summary Calculated Dose Reference Sequence	(3008,0050)	3	Introduces sequence of references to Calculated Dose References. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>Referenced Dose Reference Number	(300C,0051)	3	Uniquely identifies Dose Reference specified by Dose Reference Number (300A,0012) in Dose Reference Sequence (300A,0010) in RT Prescription Module of referenced RT Plan referenced in Referenced RT Plan Sequence (300C,0002) of RT General Treatment Record Module.
>Dose Reference Description	(300A,0016)	3	User-defined description of Dose Reference.
>Cumulative Dose to Dose Reference	(3008,0052)	1C	Cumulative Dose delivered to Dose Reference (Gy). Required if Treatment Summary Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0050) is sent.

Note: The RT Treatment Summary Record IOD may contain references to related RT Treatment Session Record IODs. These references are contained within the Referenced Treatment Record Sequence (3008,0030) of the RT General Treatment Record Module.

C.8.8.23.1 Current Treatment Status

The definition of the enumerated values for Current Treatment Status (3008,0200) are defined as follows:

NOT_STARTED Patient has not yet begun treatment.

ON_TREATMENT Patient is currently undergoing treatment.

ON_BREAK Patient is currently not undergoing treatment, but a resumption date is known.

SUSPENDED Patient is currently not undergoing treatment, but resumption of treatment is planned at an unknown date.

STOPPED Patient has stopped treatment without completing the planned course.

COMPLETED Patient completed the planned course of treatment.

A change in the Current Treatment Status (or any other field) in a RT Treatment Summary Record Object shall define a new instance of the RT Treatment Summary Record IOD.

C.8.8.24 RT Ion Tolerance Tables Module

The RT Ion Tolerance Tables Module contains information describing the maximum allowed differences between the planned and measured attributes for Ion therapy.

Table C.8.8.24-1
RT ION TOLERANCE TABLES MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
Ion Tolerance Table Sequence	(300A,03A0)	1	Introduces sequence of ion tolerance tables to be used for delivery of treatment plan. One or more items shall be included in this sequence. See Note 1.
>Tolerance Table Number	(300A,0042)	1	Identification number of the Tolerance Table. The value of Tolerance Table Number (300A,0042) shall be unique within the RT Ion Plan in which it is created.
>Tolerance Table Label	(300A,0043)	3	User-defined label for Tolerance Table.
>Gantry Angle Tolerance	(300A,0044)	3	Maximum permitted difference (in degrees) between planned and delivered Gantry Angle.
>Beam Limiting Device Angle Tolerance	(300A,0046)	3	Maximum permitted difference (in degrees) between planned and delivered Beam Limiting Device Angle.
>Beam Limiting Device Tolerance Sequence	(300A,0048)	3	Introduces sequence of beam limiting device (collimator) tolerances. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>RT Beam Limiting Device Type	(300A,00B8)	1	Type of beam limiting device (collimator). Enumerated Values: X = symmetric jaw pair in IEC X direction Y = symmetric jaw pair in IEC Y direction ASYMX = asymmetric jaw pair in IEC X direction ASYMY = asymmetric pair in IEC Y direction MLCX = multileaf (multi-element) jaw pair in IEC X direction MLCY = multileaf (multi-element) jaw pair in IEC Y direction
>>Beam Limiting Device Position Tolerance	(300A,004A)	1	Maximum permitted difference (in mm) between planned and delivered leaf (element) or jaw positions for current beam limiting device (collimator).
>Patient Support Angle Tolerance	(300A,004C)	3	Maximum permitted difference (in degrees) between planned and delivered Patient Support Angle.
>Table Top Vertical Position Tolerance	(300A,0051)	3	Maximum permitted difference (in mm) between planned and delivered Table Top Vertical Position.

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
>Table Top Longitudinal Position Tolerance	(300A,0052)	3	Maximum permitted difference (in mm) between planned and delivered Table Top Longitudinal Position.
>Table Top Lateral Position Tolerance	(300A,0053)	3	Maximum permitted difference (in mm) between planned and delivered Table Top Lateral Position.
>Table Top Pitch Angle Tolerance	(300A,004F)	3	Maximum permitted difference (in degrees) between planned and delivered Table Top Pitch Angle.
>Table Top Roll Angle Tolerance	(300A,0050)	3	Maximum permitted difference (in degrees) between planned and delivered Table Top Roll Angle.
>Snout Position Tolerance	(300A,004B)	3	Maximum permitted difference (in mm) between planned and delivered Snout Position.

Note 1: Tolerance Tables may be used to compare planned values to actual machine values. If the absolute difference between the planned and actual values exceeds the Tolerance Table value, treatment may be inhibited or the operator may be warned.

C.8.8.25 RT Ion Beams Module

The RT Ion Beams Module contains information defining equipment parameters for delivery of external Ion radiation beams.

Table C.8.8.25-1
RT ION BEAMS MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
Ion Beam Sequence	(300A,03A2)	1	Introduces sequence of setup and/or treatment beams for current RT Ion Plan. One or more items shall be included in this sequence.
>Beam Number	(300A,00C0)	1	Identification number of the Beam. The value of Beam Number (300A,00C0) shall be unique within the RT Ion Plan in which it is created. See section C.8.8.25.1.
>Beam Name	(300A,00C2)	1	User-defined name for Beam. See section C.8.8.25.1.
>Beam Description	(300A,00C3)	3	User-defined description for Beam. See section C.8.8.25.1.
>Beam Type	(300A,00C4)	1	Motion characteristic of Beam. Enumerated Values: STATIC = all beam parameters remain unchanged during delivery DYNAMIC = one or more beam parameters changes during delivery
>Radiation Type	(300A,00C6)	1	Particle type of Beam.

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
			Defined Terms: PHOTON PROTON ION
>Radiation Mass Number	(300A,0302)	1C	Mass number of radiation. Required if Radiation Type (300A,00C6) is ION
>Radiation Atomic Number	(300A,0304)	1C	Atomic number of radiation. Required if Radiation Type (300A,00C6) is ION
>Radiation Charge State	(300A,0306)	1C	Charge state of radiation. Required if Radiation Type (300A,00C6) is ION
>Scan Mode	(300A,0308)	1	The method of beam scanning to be used during treatment. Defined Terms: NONE = No beam scanning is performed. UNIFORM = The beam is scanned between control points to create a uniform lateral fluence distribution across the field. MODULATED = The beam is scanned between control points to create a modulated lateral fluence distribution across the field.
>Treatment Machine Name	(300A,00B2)	2	User-defined name identifying treatment machine to be used for beam delivery. See section C.8.8.25.2.
>Manufacturer	(0008,0070)	3	Manufacturer of the equipment to be used for beam delivery.
>Institution Name	(0008,0080)	3	Institution where the equipment is located that is to be used for beam delivery.
>Institution Address	(0008,0081)	3	Mailing address of the institution where the equipment is located that is to be used for beam delivery.
>Institutional Department Name	(0008,1040)	3	Department in the institution where the equipment is located that is to be used for beam delivery.
>Manufacturer's Model Name	(0008,1090)	3	Manufacturer's model name of the equipment that is to be used for beam delivery.
>Device Serial Number	(0018,1000)	3	Manufacturer's serial number of the equipment that is to be used for beam delivery.
>Primary Dosimeter Unit	(300A,00B3)	1	Measurement unit of machine dosimeter. Enumerated Values: MU = Monitor Unit NP = number of particles
>Referenced Tolerance Table Number	(300C,00A0)	3	Uniquely identifies Tolerance Table

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
			specified by Tolerance Table Number (300A,0042) within Tolerance Table Sequence in RT Ion Tolerance Tables Module. These tolerances are to be used for verification of treatment machine settings.
>Virtual Source-Axis Distances	(300A,030A)	1	Distance (in mm) from virtual source position to gantry rotation axis or nominal isocenter position (fixed beam-lines) of the equipment to be used for beam delivery. Specified by a numeric pair - the VSAD in the IEC Gantry X direction followed by the VSAD in the IEC Gantry Y direction. The VSAD is commonly used for designing apertures in contrast to the effective source-axis-distance (ESAD) that is commonly used with the inverse square law for calculating the dose decrease with distance. See section C.8.8.25.4.
>Ion Beam Limiting Device Sequence	(300A,03A4)	3	Introduces sequence of beam limiting device (collimator) jaw or leaf (element) sets. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>RT Beam Limiting Device Type	(300A,00B8)	1	Type of beam limiting device (collimator). Enumerated Values: X = symmetric jaw pair in IEC X direction Y = symmetric jaw pair in IEC Y direction ASYMX = asymmetric jaw pair in IEC X direction ASYMY = asymmetric pair in IEC Y direction MLCX = multileaf (multi-element) jaw pair in IEC X direction MLCY = multileaf (multi-element) jaw pair in IEC Y direction
>>Isocenter to Beam Limiting Device Distance	(300A,00BB)	2	Isocenter to beam limiting device (collimator) distance (in mm) of the equipment that is to be used for beam delivery. See section C.8.8.25.4.
>>Number of Leaf/Jaw Pairs	(300A,00BC)	1	Number of leaf (element) or jaw pairs (equal to 1 for standard beam limiting device jaws).
>>Leaf Position Boundaries	(300A,00BE)	1C	Boundaries of beam limiting device (collimator) leaves (in mm) in IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE coordinate axis appropriate to RT Beam Limiting Device Type (300A,00B8), i.e. X-axis for MLCY, Y-

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
			axis for MLCX. Contains N+1 values, where N is the Number of Leaf/Jaw Pairs (300A,00BC), starting from Leaf (Element) Pair 1. Required if RT Beam Limiting Device Type (300A,00B8) is MLCX or MLCY. See section C.8.8.25.3.
>Referenced Patient Setup Number	(300C,006A)	3	Uniquely identifies Patient Setup to be used for current beam, specified by Patient Setup Number (300A,0182) within Patient Setup Sequence of RT Patient Setup Module.
>Referenced Reference Image Sequence	(300C,0042)	3	Introduces sequence of reference images used for validation of current beam. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>Include SOP Instance Reference Macro Table 10-11			
>>Reference Image Number	(300A,00C8)	1	Uniquely identifies Reference Image within Referenced Reference Image Sequence (300C,0042).
>Treatment Delivery Type	(300A,00CE)	1	Delivery Type of treatment. Defined Terms: TREATMENT = normal patient treatment OPEN_PORTFILM = portal image acquisition with open field (the source of radiation is specified by Radiation Type (300A,00C6)) TRMT_PORTFILM = portal image acquisition with treatment port (the source of radiation is specified by Radiation Type (300A,00C6)) CONTINUATION = continuation of interrupted treatment SETUP = no treatment beam is applied for this RT Beam. To be used for specifying the gantry, couch, and other machine positions where X-ray set-up images or measurements shall be taken.
>Referenced Dose Sequence	(300C,0080)	3	Introduces sequence of related SOP Class/Instance pairs describing related instances of RT Dose (for grids, isodose curves, and named/unnamed point doses). One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>Include SOP Instance Reference Macro Table 10-11			*The Referenced Class SOP UID shall be that of the RT Dose SOP Class (1.2.840.10008.5.1.4.1.1.481.2)*
>Number of Wedges	(300A,00D0)	1	Number of wedges associated with current

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
			beam.
>Total Wedge Tray Water-Equivalent Thickness	(300A,00D7)	3	Shift of the wedge tray induced on the range of the ion beam as measured in water (in mm).
>Ion Wedge Sequence	(300A,03AA)	1C	Introduces sequence of treatment wedges. Required if Number of Wedges (300A,00D0) is non-zero. The number of items shall be identical to the value of Number of Wedges (300A,00D0).
>>Wedge Number	(300A,00D2)	1	Identification number of the Wedges. The value of Wedge Number (300A,00D2) shall be unique within the Beam in which it was created.
>>Wedge Type	(300A,00D3)	2	Typer of wedge (if any) defined for Beam. Defined Terms: STANDARD = standard (static) wedge MOTORIZED = single wedge that can be removed from beam remotely. PARTIAL_STANDARD = wedge does not extend across the whole field and is operated manually. PARTIAL_MOTORIZ = wedge does not extend across the whole field and can be removed from beam remotely.
>>Wedge ID	(300A,00D4)	3	User-supplied identifier for Wedge.
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An accessory identifier to be read by a device such as a bar code reader.
>>Wedge Angle	(300A,00D5)	2	Nominal wedge angle (degrees).
>>Wedge Orientation	(300A,00D8)	2	Orientation of wedge, i.e. orientation of IEC WEDGE FILTER coordinate system with respect to the IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE coordinate systems (degrees).
>>Isocenter to Wedge Tray Distance	(300A,00D9)	1	Isocenter to downstream edge of wedge tray (mm). See section C.8.8.25.4
>Number of Compensators	(300A,00E0)	1	Number of compensators associated with current Beam.
>Total Compensator Tray Water-Equivalent Thickness	(300A,02E3)	3	Water-Equivalent thickness of the compensator tray (in mm) parallel to radiation beam axis.
>Ion Range Compensator Sequence	(300A,02EA)	1C	Introduces sequence of compensators. Required if Number of Compensators (300A,00E0) is non-zero. The number of items shall be identical to the value of Number of Compensators (300A,00E0).

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
>>Compensator Number	(300A,00E4)	1	Identification number of the Compensator. The value of Compensator Number (300A,00E4) shall be unique within the Beam in which it is created.
>>Material ID	(300A,00E1)	2	User-supplied identifier for material used to manufacture Compensator.
>>Compensator ID	(300A,00E5)	3	User-supplied identifier for the compensator.
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An accessory identifier to be read by a device such as a bar code reader.
>>Isocenter to Compensator Tray Distance	(300A,02E4)	1C	Isocenter to compensator tray attachment edge distance (in mm) for current range compensator. Required if Compensator Mounting Position (300A,02E1) is not DOUBLE_SIDED. See section C.8.8.25.4
>>Compensator Divergence	(300A,02E0)	1	Indicates presence or absence of geometrical divergence of the range compensator. Enumerated Values: PRESENT = the range compensator is shaped according to the beam geometrical divergence. ABSENT = the range compensator is not shaped according to the beam geometrical divergence.
>>Compensator Mounting Position	(300A,02E1)	1	Indicates on which side of the Compensator Tray the compensator is mounted. Enumerated Values: PATIENT_SIDE = the Compensator is mounted on the side of the Compensator Tray that is towards the patient. SOURCE_SIDE = the Compensator is mounted on the side of the Compensator Tray that is towards the radiation source. DOUBLE_SIDED = the Compensator has a shaped (i.e. non-flat) surface on both sides of the Compensator Tray.
>>Compensator Rows	(300A,00E7)	1	Number of rows in the range compensator.
>>Compensator Columns	(300A,00E8)	1	Number of columns in the range compensator.
>>Compensator Pixel Spacing	(300A,00E9)	1	Physical distance (in mm) between the center of each pixel projected onto machine isocentric plane. Specified by a numeric pair - adjacent row spacing followed by adjacent column spacing. See 10.7.1.3 for further explanation of the value order.
>>Compensator Position	(300A,00EA)	1	The x and y coordinates of the upper left

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
			hand corner (first pixel transmitted) of the range compensator, projected onto the machine isocentric plane in the IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE coordinate system (mm).
>>Compensator Column Offset	(300A,02E5)	1C	The offset distance (in mm) applied to the x coordinate of the Compensator Position (300A,00EA) for even numbered rows. Required if the compensator pattern is hexogonal.
>>Compensator Thickness Data	(300A,00EC)	1	A data stream of the pixel samples that comprise the range compensator, expressed as physical thickness (in mm), either parallel to radiation beam axis if Compensator Divergence (300A,02E0) equals ABSENT, or divergent according to the beam geometrical divergence if Compensator Divergence (300A,02E0) equals PRESENT. The order of pixels sent is left to right, top to bottom (upper left pixel, followed by the remainder of row 1, followed by the remainder of the rows).
>>Isocenter to Compensator Distances	(300A,02E6)	1C	A data stream of the pixel samples that comprise the distance from the isocenter to the compensator surface closest to the radiation source (in mm). The order of pixels sent is left to right, top to bottom (upper left pixel, followed by the remainder of row 1, followed by the remainder of the rows). Required if Material ID (300A,00E1) is non-zero length, and Compensator Mounting Position (300A,02E1) is DOUBLE_SIDED. See sections C.8.8.14.9 and C.8.8.25.4
>>Compensator Relative Stopping Power Ratio	(300A,02E7)	3	Compensator Linear Stopping Power Ratio, relative to water, at the beam energy specified by the Nominal Beam Energy (300A,0114) of the first Control Point of the Ion Control Point Sequence (300A,03A8).
>>Compensator Milling Tool Diameter	(300A,02E8)	3	The diameter (in mm) of the milling tool to be used to create the compensator. The diameter is expressed as the actual physcial size and not a projected size at isocenter.
>Number of Boli	(300A,00ED)	1	Number of boli associated with current Beam.
>Referenced Bolus Sequence	(300C,00B0)	1C	Introduces sequence of boli associated with Beam. Required if Number of Boli (300A,00ED) is non-zero. The number of items shall be identical to the value of Number of Boli (300A,00ED).

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
>>Referenced ROI Number	(3006,0084)	1	Uniquely identifies ROI representing the Bolus specified by ROI Number (3006,0022) in Structure Set ROI Sequence (3006,0020) in Structure Set Module within RT Structure Set in Referenced Structure Set Sequence (300C,0060) in RT General Plan Module.
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An accessory identifier to be read by a device such as a bar code reader.
>Number of Blocks	(300A,00F0)	1	Number of shielding blocks associated with Beam.
>Total Block Tray Water-Equivalent Thickness	(300A,00F3)	3	Water-Equivalent thickness of the block tray (in mm) parallel to radiation beam axis.
>Ion Block Sequence	(300A,03A6)	1C	Introduces sequence of blocks associated with Beam. Required if Number of Blocks (300A,00F0) is non-zero. The number of items shall be identical to the value of Number of Blocks (300A,00F0).
>>Block Tray ID	(300A,00F5)	3	User-supplied identifier for block tray.
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An accessory identifier to be read by a device such as a bar code reader.
>>Isocenter to Block Tray Distance	(300A,00F7)	1	Isocenter to downstream edge of block tray (mm). Required if Block Sequence (300A,00F4) is sent. See section C.8.8.25.4
>>Block Type	(300A,00F8)	1	Type of block. See section C.8.8.14.4. Enumerated Values: SHIELDING = blocking material is inside contour APERTURE = blocking material is outside contour
>>Block Divergence	(300A,00FA)	1	Indicates presence or otherwise of geometrical divergence. Enumerated Values: PRESENT = block edges are shaped for beam divergence ABSENT = block edges are not shaped for beam divergence
>>Block Mounting Position	(300A,00FB)	1	Indicates on which side of the Block Tray the block is mounted. Enumerated Values; PATIENT_SIDE = the block is mounted on the side of the Block Tray that is towards the patient. SOURCE_SIDE = the block is mounted on the side of the Block Tray that is towards

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
			the radiation source.
>>Block Number	(300A,00FC)	1	Identification number of the Block. The value of Block Number (300A,00FC) shall be unique within the Beam in which it is created.
>>Block Name	(300A,00FE)	3	User-defined name for block.
>>Material ID	(300A,00E1)	2	User-supplied identifier for material used to manufacture Block.
>>Block Thickness	(300A,0100)	1	Physical thickness of block (in mm) parallel to radiation beam axis. See section C.8.8.14.4.
>>Block Number of Points	(300A,0104)	1	Number of (x,y) pairs defining the block edge.
>>Block Data	(300A,0106)	1	A data stream of (x,y) pairs that comprise the block edge. The number of pairs shall be equal to Block Number of Points (300A,0104), and the vertices shall be interpreted as a closed polygon. Coordinates are projected onto the machine isocentric plane in the IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE coordinate system (mm).
>Snout Sequence	(300A,030C)	3	Introduces sequence of Snouts associated with Beam. Only a single item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>>Snout ID	(300A,030F)	1	User or machine supplied identifier for Snout.
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An accessory identifier to be read by a device such as a bar code reader.
>Applicator Sequence	(300A,0107)	3	Introduces sequence of Applicators associated with Beam. Only a single item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>>Applicator ID	(300A,0108)	1	User or machine supplied identifier for Applicator. See section C.8.8.14.12
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An accessory identifier to be read by a device such as a bar code reader.
>>Applicator Type	(300A,0109)	1	Type of applicator. Defined Terms: ION_SQUARE = square ion applicator ION_RECT = rectangluar ion applicator ION_CIRC = circular ion applicator ION_SHORT = short ion applicator ION_OPEN = open (dummy) ion applicator INTEROPERATIVE = interoperative

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
			(custom) applicator STEREOTACTIC = stereotactic applicator
>>Applicator Description	(300A,010A)	3	User-defined description for Applicator.
>Number of Range Shifters	(300A,0312)	1	Number of range shifters associated with current beam.
>Range Shifter Sequence	(300A,0314)	1C	Introduces sequence of range shifters associated with Beam. Required if Number of Range Shifters (300A,0312) is non-zero. The number of items shall be identical to the value of Number of Range Shifters (300A,0312).
>>Range Shifter Number	(300A,0316)	1	Identification number of the Range Shifter. The value of Range Shifter Number (300A,0316) shall be unique within the Beam in which it is created.
>>Range Shifter ID	(300A,0318)	1	User or machine supplied identifier for Range Shifter.
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An accessory identifier to be read by a device such as a bar code reader.
>>Range Shifter Type	(300A,0320)	1	Type of Range Shifter. Defined Terms: ANALOG = Device is variable thickness and is composed of opposing sliding wedges, water column or similar mechanism. BINARY = Device is composed of different thickness materials that can be moved in or out of the beam in various stepped combinations.
>>Range Shifter Description	(300A,0322)	3	User defined description of Range Shifter.
>Number of Lateral Spreading Devices	(300A,0330)	1	Number of lateral spreading devices associated with current beam.
>Lateral Spreading Device Sequence	(300A,0332)	1C	Introduces sequence of lateral spreading devices associated with Beam. Required if Number of Lateral Spreading Devices (300A,0330) is non-zero. The number of items shall be identical to the value of Number of Lateral Spreading Devices (300A,0330).
>>Lateral Spreading Device Number	(300A,0334)	1	Identification number of the Lateral Spreading Device. The value of Lateral Spreading Device Number (300A,0334) shall be unique within the Beam in which it is created.
>>Lateral Spreading Device ID	(300A,0336)	1	User or machine supplied identifier for Lateral Spreading Device.
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An accessory identifier to be read by a

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
			device such as a bar code reader.
>>Lateral Spreading Device Type	(300A,0338)	1	Type of Lateral Spreading Device. Defined Terms: SCATTERER = metal placed into the beam path to scatter charged particles laterally. MAGNET = nozzle configuration of magnet devices to expand beam laterally.
>>Lateral Spreading Device Description	(300A,033A)	3	User-defined description for lateral spreading device.
>Number of Range Modulators	(300A,0340)	1	Number of range modulators associated with current beam.
>Range Modulator Sequence	(300A,0342)	1C	Introduces sequence of range modulators associated with Beam. Required if Number of Range Modulators (300A,0340) is non-zero. The number of items shall be identical to the value of Number of Range Modulators (300A,0340).
>>Range Modulator Number	(300A,0344)	1	Identification number of the Range Modulator. The value of Range Modulator Number (300A,0344) shall be unique within the Beam in which it is created.
>>Range Modulator ID	(300A,0346)	1	User or machine supplied identifier for Range Modulator.
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An accessory identifier to be read by a device such as a bar code reader.
>>Range Modulator Type	(300A,0348)	1	Type of Range Modulator. Defined Terms: FIXED = fixed modulation width and weights using ridge filter or constant speed wheel with constant beam current WHL_FIXEDWEIGHTS = selected wheel/track (Range Modulator ID) is spinning at constant speed. Modulation width is adjusted by switching constant beam current on and off at wheel steps indicated by Range Modulator Gating Values. WHL_MODWEIGHTS = selected wheel/track (Range Modulator ID) is spinning at constant speed. Weight per wheel step is adjusted by modulating beam current according to selected Beam Current Modulation ID (300A,034C). Only one item in the Range Modulator Sequence (300A,0342) can have a Range Modulator Type (300A,0348) of WHL_MODWEIGHTS.

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
>>Range Modulator Description	(300A,034A)	3	User-defined description of Range Modulator.
>>Beam Current Modulation ID	(300A,034C)	1C	User-supplied identifier for the beam current modulation pattern. Required if Range Modulator Type (300A,0348) is WHL_MODWEIGHTS
>Include Patient Support Identification Macro Table C.8.8.28-1			
>Fixation Light Azimuthal Angle	(300A,0356)	3	Azimuthal angle (degrees) of the fixation light coordinate around IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE Y-axis. Used for eye treatments. See section C.8.8.25.6.4.
>Fixation Light Polar Angle	(300A,0358)	3	Polar angle (degrees) of the fixation light coordinate. Used for eye treatments. See section C.8.8.25.6.4.
>Final Cumulative Meterset Weight	(300A,010E)	1C	Value of Cumulative Meterset Weight (300A,0134) for final Control Point in Ion Control Point Sequence (300A,03A8). Required if Cumulative Meterset Weight is non-null in Control Points specified within Ion Control Point Sequence. See section C.8.8.14.1.
>Number of Control Points	(300A,0110)	1	Number of control points in Beam. Value shall be greater than or equal to 2.
>Ion Control Point Sequence	(300A,03A8)	1	Introduces sequence of machine configurations describing Ion treatment beam. The number of items shall be identical to the value of Number of Control Points (300A,0110).
>>Control Point Index	(300A,0112)	1	Index of current Control Point, starting at 0 for first Control Point.
>>Cumulative Meterset Weight	(300A,0134)	2	Cumulative weight to current control point. Cumulative Meterset Weight for the first item in Control Point Sequence shall always be zero. Cumulative Meterset Weight for the final item in Ion Control Point Sequence shall always be equal to Final Cumulative Meterset Weight.
>>Referenced Dose Reference Sequence	(300C,0050)	3	Introduces a sequence of Dose References for current Beam. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>>Referenced Dose Reference Number	(300C,0051)	1	Uniquely identifies Dose Reference specified by Dose Reference Number (300A,0012) in Dose Reference Sequence (300A,0010) in RT Prescription Module.
>>>Cumulative Dose Reference Coefficient	(300A,010C)	2	Coefficient used to calculate cumulative dose contribution from this Beam to the referenced Dose Reference at the current Control Point.

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
>>Nominal Beam Energy	(300A,0114)	1C	Nominal Beam Energy at control point in MeV per nucleon. Defined at nozzle entrance before all Beam Modifiers. Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Nominal Beam Energy changes during Beam, and KVp (0018,0060) is not present.
>>KVp	(0018,0060)	1C	Peak kilo voltage output of the setup X-Ray generator to be used. Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if KVp changes during setup, and Nominal Beam Energy (300A,0114) is not present.
>>Meterset Rate	(300A,035A)	3	Specifies the speed of delivery of the specified dose in units specified by Primary Dosimeter Unit (300A,00B3) per minute.
>>Ion Wedge Position Sequence	(300A,03AC)	1C	Introduces sequence of Wedge positions for current control point. Required for first item of Ion Control Point Sequence if Number of Wedges (300A,00D0) is non-zero, and in subsequent control points if Wedge Position (300A,0118) or Wedge Thin Edge Position (300A,00DB) changes during beam. The number of items shall be identical to the value of Number of Wedges (300A,00D0).
>>>Referenced Wedge Number	(300C,00C0)	1	Uniquely references Wedge described by Wedge Number (300A,00D2) in Wedge Sequence (300A,00D1).
>>>Wedge Position	(300A,0118)	1	Position of Wedge at current Control Point. Enumerated Values: IN OUT
>>>Wedge Thin Edge Position	(300A,00DB)	1C	Closest distance from the central axis of the beam along a wedge axis to the thin edge as projected to the machine isocentric plane (mm). Value is positive is the wedge does not cover the central axis, negative if it does. Required if Wedge Type (300A,00D3) of the wedge referenced by Referenced Wedge Number (300C,00C0) is PARTIAL_STANDARD or PARTIAL_MOTORIZ. See section C.8.8.25.6.4.
>>Range Shifter Settings Sequence	(300A,0360)	1C	Introduces sequence of Range Shifter settings for the current control point. One or more items shall be included in this sequence. Required for first item of Control

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
			Point Sequence if Number of Range Shifters (300A,0312) is non-zero, or if Range Shifter Setting (300A,0362) changes during Beam.
>>>Referenced Range Shifter Number	(300C,0100)	1	Uniquely references Range Shifter described by Range Shifter Number (300A,0316) in Range Shifter Sequence (300A,0314).
>>>Range Shifter Setting	(300A,0362)	1	Machine specific setting attribute for the range shifter. The specific encoding of this value should be documented in a Conformance Statement. See section C.8.8.25.5.
>>>Isocenter to Range Shiffter Distance	(300A,0364)	3	Isocenter to downstream edge of range shifter (mm) at current control point. See section C.8.8.25.4
>>>Range Shifter Water Equivalent Thickness	(300A,0366)	3	Water equivalent thickness (in mm) of the range shifter at the central axis for the beam energy incident upon the device.
>>Lateral Spreading Device Settings Sequence	(300A,0370)	1C	Introduces sequence of Lateral Spreading Device settings for the current control point. One or more items shall be included in this sequence. Required for first item of Control Point Sequence if Number of Lateral Spreading Devices (300A,0330) is non-zero, or if Lateral Spreading Device Setting (300A,0372) changes during Beam.
>>>Referenced Lateral Spreading Device Number	(300C,0102)	1	Uniquely references Lateral Spreading Device described by Lateral Spreading Device Number (300A,0334) in Lateral Spreading Device Sequence (300A,0332).
>>>Lateral Spreading Device Setting	(300A,0372)	1	Machine specific setting attribute for the lateral spreading device. The specific encoding of this value should be documented in a Conformance Statement. See section C.8.8.25.5.
>>>Isocenter to Lateral Spreading Device Distance	(300A,0374)	3	Isocenter to downstream edge of Lateral Spreading Device (mm) at current control point. See section C.8.8.25.4
>>>Lateral Spreading Device Water Equivalent Thickness	(300A,033C)	3	Water equivalent thickness (in mm) of the lateral spreading device at the central axis for the beam energy incident upon the device.
>>Range Modulator Settings Sequence	(300A,0380)	1C	Introduces sequence of Range Modulator Settings for current control point. One or more items shall be included in this sequence. Required for first item of Control Point Sequence if Number of Range Modulators (300A,0340) is non-zero, or if Range Modulator Setting changes during

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
			Beam.
>>>Referenced Range Modulator Number	(300C,0104)	1	Uniquely references Range Modulator described by Range Modulator Number (300A,0344) in Range Modulator Sequence (300A,0342).
>>>Range Modulator Gating Start Value	(300A,0382)	1C	Start position defines the range modulator position at which the beam is switched on. Required if Range Modulator Type (300A,0348) of the range modulator referenced by Referenced Range Modulator Number (300C,0104) is WHL_MODWEIGHTS or WHL_FIXEDWEIGHTS
>>>Range Modulator Gating Stop Value	(300A,0384)	1C	Stop position defines the range modulator position at which the beam is switched off. Required if Range Modulator Type (300A,0348) of the range modulator referenced by Referenced Range Modulator Number (300C,0104) is WHL_MODWEIGHTS or WHL_FIXEDWEIGHTS
>>>Range Modulator Gating Start Water Equivalent Thickness	(300A,0386)	3	If Range Modulator Type (300A,0348) is WHL_MODWEIGHTS or WHL_FIXEDWEIGHTS: Water equivalent thickness (in mm) of the range modulator at the position specified by Range Modulator Gating Start Value (300A,0382). If Range Modulator Type (300A,0348) is FIXED: Minimum water equivalent thickness (in mm) of the range modulator.
>>>Range Modulator Gating Stop Water Equivalent Thickness	(300A,0388)	3	If Range Modulator Type (300A,0348) is WHL_MODWEIGHTS or WHL_FIXEDWEIGHTS: Water equivalent thickness (in mm) of the range modulator at the position specified by Range Modulator Gating Stop Value (300A,0384). If Range Modulator Type (300A,0348) is FIXED: Maximum water equivalent thickness (in mm) of the range modulator.
>>>Isocenter to Range Modulator Distance	(300A,038A)	3	Isocenter to downstream edge of range modulator (mm) at current control point. See section C.8.8.25.4
>>Include Beam Limiting Device Position Macro Table C.8.8.27-1			
>>Gantry Angle	(300A,011E)	1C	Gantry angle of radiation source, i.e.

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
			orientation of IEC GANTRY coordinate system with respect to IEC FIXED REFERENCE coordinate system (degrees). Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Gantry Angle changes during Beam.
>>Gantry Rotation Direction	(300A,011F)	1C	Direction of Gantry Rotation when viewing gantry from isocenter, for segment following Control Point. Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Gantry Rotation Direction changes during Beam. See section C.8.8.14.8. Enumerated Values: CW = clockwise CC = counter-clockwise NONE = no rotation
>>Gantry Pitch Angle	(300A,014A)	2C	Gantry Pitch Angle of the radiation source, i.e. the rotation of the IEC GANTRY coordinate system about the X-axis of the IEC GANTRY coordinate system (degrees). Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Gantry Pitch Rotation Angle changes during Beam. See C.8.8.25.6.5.
>>Gantry Pitch Rotation Direction	(300A,014C)	2C	Direction of Gantry Pitch Angle when viewing along the positive X-axis of the IEC GANTRY coordinate system, for segment following Control Point. Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Gantry Pitch Rotation Direction changes during Beam. See C.8.8.14.8 and C.8.8.25.6.5. Enumerated Values: CW = clockwise CC = counter-clockwise NONE = no rotation
>>Beam Limiting Device Angle	(300A,0120)	1C	Beam Limiting Device angle, i.e. orientation of IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE coordinate system with respect to IEC GANTRY coordinate system (degrees). Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Beam Limiting Device Angle changes during Beam.
>>Beam Limiting Device Rotation Direction	(300A,0121)	1C	Direction of Beam Limiting Device Rotation when viewing beam limiting device (collimator) from radiation source, for segment following Control Point. Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Beam Limiting Device Rotation Direction

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
			changes during Beam. See section C.8.8.14.8. Enumerated Values: CW = clockwise CC = counter-clockwise NONE = no rotation
>>Scan Spot Tune ID	(300A,0390)	1C	User-supplied or machine code identifier for machine configuration to produce beam spot. This may be the nominal spot size or some other machine specific value. Required if Scan Mode (300A,0308) is MODULATED.
>>Number of Scan Spot Positions	(300A,0392)	1C	Number of spot positions used to specify scanning pattern for current segment beginning at control point. Required if Scan Mode (300A,0308) is MODULATED.
>>Scan Spot Position Map	(300A,0394)	1C	The x and y coordinates of the scan spots are defined as projected onto the machine isocentric plane in the IEC GANTRY coordinate system (mm). Required if Scan Mode (300A,0308) is MODULATED. Contains 2N values where N is the Number of Scan Spot Positions (300A,0392).
>>Scan Spot Meterset Weights	(300A,0396)	1C	A data set of meterset weights corresponding to scan spot positions. The order of weights matches the positions in Scan Spot Positions (300A,0394). The sum contained in all meterset weights shall match the difference of the cumulative meterset weight of the current control point to the following control point. Required if Scan Mode (300A,0308) is MODULATED.
>>Scanning Spot Size	(300A,0398)	3	The Scanning Spot Size as calculated using the Full Width Half Maximum (FWHM). Specified by a numeric pair - the size measured in air at isocenter in IEC GANTRY X direction followed by the size in the IEC GANTRY Y direction (mm).
>>Number of Paintings	(300A,039A)	1C	The number of times the scan pattern given by Scan Spot Position Map (300A,0394) and Scan Spot Meterset Weights (300A,0396) shall be applied at the current control point. To obtain the meterset weight per painting, the values in the Scan Spot Meterset Weights (300A,0396) should be divided by the value of this attribute. Required if Scan Mode (300A,0308) is MODULATED.
>>Patient Support Angle	(300A,0122)	1C	Patient Support angle, i.e. orientation of IEC PATIENT SUPPORT (turntable)

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
			coordinate system with respect to IEC FIXED REFERENCE coordinate system (degrees). Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Patient Support Angle changes during Beam.
>>Patient Support Rotation Direction	(300A,0123)	1C	Direction of Patient Support Rotation when viewing table from above, for segment following Control Point. Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Patient Support Rotation Direction changes during Beam. See section C.8.8.14.8. Enumerated Values: CW = clockwise CC = counter-clockwise NONE = no rotation
>>Table Top Pitch Angle	(300A,0140)	2C	Table Top Pitch Angle, i.e. the rotation of the IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system about the X-axis of the IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system (degrees). Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Table Top Pitch Angle changes during Beam. See section C.8.8.25.6.2.
>>Table Top Pitch Rotation Direction	(300A,0142)	2C	Direction of Table Top Pitch Rotation when viewing the table along the positive X-axis of the IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system, for segment following Control Point. Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Table Top Pitch Rotation Direction changes during Beam. See C.8.8.14.8 and C.8.8.25.6.2. Enumerated Values: CW = clockwise CC = counter-clockwise NONE = no rotation
>>Table Top Roll Angle	(300A,0144)	2C	Table Top Roll Angle, i.e. the rotation of the IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system about the Y-axis of the IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system (degrees). Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Table Top Roll Angle changes during Beam. See section C.8.8.25.6.2.
>>Table Top Roll Rotation Direction	(300A,0146)	2C	Direction of Table Top Roll Rotation when viewing the table along the positive Y-axis of the IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system, for segment following Control Point. Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Table Top Roll Rotation Direction changes during Beam. See C.8.8.14.8 and C.8.8.25.6.2.

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
			Enumerated Values: CW = clockwise CC = counter-clockwise NONE = no rotation.
>>Head Fixation Angle	(300A,0148)	3	Angle (in degrees) of the head fixation for eye treatments with respect to the Table Top Pitch Angle (300A,0140) coordinate system. Positive head fixation angle is the same direction as positive Table Top pitch. See section C.8.8.25.6.4.
>>Table Top Vertical Position	(300A,0128)	2C	Table Top Vertical position in IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system (mm). Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Table Top Vertical Position changes during Beam. See section C.8.8.14.6.
>>Table Top Longitudinal Position	(300A,0129)	2C	Table Top Longitudinal position in IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system (mm). Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Table Top Longitudinal Position changes during Beam. See section C.8.8.14.6.
>>Table Top Lateral Position	(300A,012A)	2C	Table Top Lateral position in IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system (mm). Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Table Top Lateral Position changes during Beam. See section C.8.8.14.6.
>>Snout Position	(300A,030D)	2C	Axial position of the snout (in mm) measured from isocenter to the downstream side of the snout (without consideration of variable length elements such as blocks, MLC and/or compensators). Required for first item in Control Point Sequence, or if Snout Position changes during Beam.
>>Isocenter Position	(300A,012C)	2C	Isocenter coordinates (x,y,z) in the patient based coordinate system described in C.7.6.2.1.1 (mm). Required for first item of Segment Control Point Sequence, or if Segment Isocenter Position changes during Beam.
>>Surface Entry Point	(300A,012E)	3	Patient surface entry point coordinates (x,y,z), along the central axis of the beam, in the patient based coordinate system described in C.7.6.2.1.1 (mm).

C.8.8.25.1 Beam Identifying Information

Beam Number (300A,00C0) is provided to link related information across modules, and its value has no real-world interpretation. Beam Name (300A,00C2), a Type 1 attribute, is intended to store the primary beam identifier (often referred to as “Field ID”). Beam Description (300A,00C3), a Type 3 attribute, is intended to store additional beam identifying information (often referred to as “Field Name”).

C.8.8.25.2 Treatment Machine Name

The DICOM standard does not support the transmission of treatment unit modeling information such as depth doses and beam profiles. In the case of Ion therapy, the Treatment Machine Name attribute is used to uniquely identify a treatment port (or beam line), since there is in effect only one treatment machine (i.e. synchrotron).

C.8.8.25.3 Leaf Position Boundaries

The Leaf Position Boundaries (300A,00BE) shall be the positions of the mechanical boundaries (projected to the isocentric plane) between beam limiting device (collimator) leaves, fixed for a given beam limiting device (collimator). Leaf/Jaw positions (300A,011C) are values specific to a given control point, specifying the beam limiting device (collimator) leaf (element) openings.

C.8.8.25.4 Virtual Source-Axis Distances and the use of trays in ion therapy

The apparent source position in ion therapy is not constant or can be different in x or y direction. The apparent source position (as measured from field size projections) shall be called Virtual Source, the distance from the virtual source to isocenter the Virtual SAD.

Most of the cases, no trays are used for blocks, compensators and wedges. However, the concept of trays together with the mounting position is useful for specifying exactly at which point the position of these devices shall be measured. Therefore, trays shall always be sent, even though they are only virtual trays.

Figure C.8.8.25-1 shows an example.

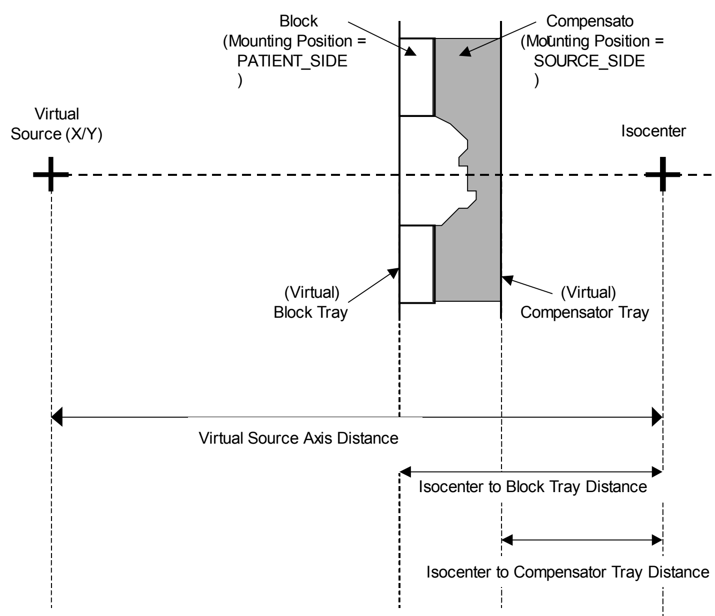


Figure C.8.8.25-1 Virtual Source-Axis Distances

Examples: The use of the above attributes for snout positioning and block/compensator manufacturing:

a.) Snout positioning:

The mounting positions as depicted in the drawing are only examples. As the block tray does not really exist in most of the cases, it is only used as a reference position. As some machines use the downstream face of the block as a reference position for their snout positioning, it could make sense to define for example that the block mounting position must be SOURCE_SIDE. In this case, one uses the downstream face of the block as the reference position, which is the same side as used by the machine. This definition is always independent of the actual thickness of the block. The Isocenter-Block Distance is defined and the machine can deduce the position of the snout from this value.

b.) Scaling of block/compensator data for manufacturing

The Isocenter position is always used as the reference position for all distances measured 'from isocenter'. Real size block and compensator manufacturing should be based on the distance from the Virtual Source (X/Y) to the device, i.e. VirtualSourceToDeviceDistance = VirtualSAD – IsocenterToDeviceDistance.

C.8.8.25.5 Range Shifter and Lateral Spreading Device Settings

The Range Shifter and Lateral Spreading Device Settings attributes are used to capture machine specific values related to these devices. For example, some machines may specify the Range Shifter setting as the desired Water-Equivalent Thickness (in mm). Others contain a series of interchangeable plates, whose position in or out of the beam is specified by a series of ones and zeros (i.e. 100010 would specify that plates #1 and #5 are in the beam. If the device does not a specific setting, but rather is defined by the ID, then the enumerated values IN/OUT shall be used for the setting.

C.8.8.25.6 Coordinate Systems

Where explicitly specified, the coordinate systems defined by IEC 61217 shall be applied, with the exception of the IEC Patient Coordinate System.

In addition, the following sections define the coordinate systems to be used in situations where IEC 61217 coordinate systems are not applicable. No other coordinate systems shall be used.

C.8.8.25.6.1 Fixed Beam Line

The direction of fixed beam-line can be described as a gantry system, provided that the position of the (virtual) gantry bearing is defined. The relation between their patient support coordinate system axes and the choice of the 'gantry' angle, e.g. 90 or 270 deg, shall be consistent with a standard gantry coordinate system. All coordinate systems derived from the IEC GANTRY coordinate system (BEAM LIMITING DEVICE, WEDGE, X-RAY IMAGE RECEPTOR) automatically follow in the same way as defined in a 'real' gantry system.

The IEC PATIENT SUPPORT system is linked to the IEC GANTRY coordinate system through its common parent system, the IEC FIXED coordinate system. The Y-axis of IEC GANTRY points towards the (virtual) gantry bearing. The Y-axis of the IEC FIXED coordinate system has to point in the same direction. Z-axis in IEC FIXED coordinate system is always pointing upwards. With Y and Z-axes defined, the X-axis of IEC FIXED is also given.

Figure C.8.8.25-2 shows IEC FIXED (F), GANTRY (G) and PATIENT SUPPORT (S) coordinate systems for a horizontal fixed beam-line.

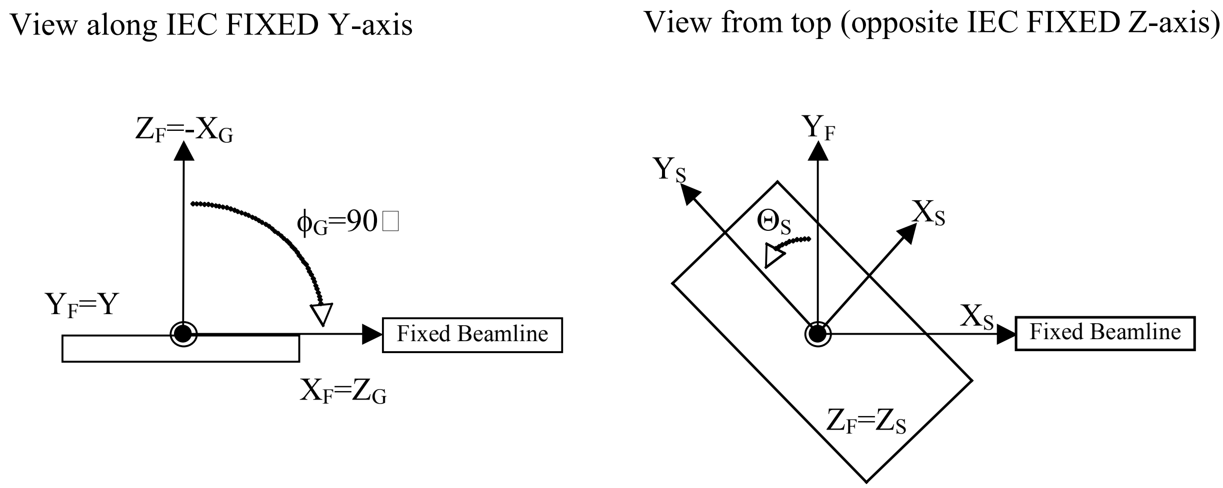


Figure C.8.8.25-2 Fixed Beam Line

C.8.8.25.6.2 Table Top Pitch and Table Top Roll

Pitch and Roll Coordinate Systems of the Table Top are not defined in IEC 61217. These angles are defined in the DICOM standard in a way compatible with the current notion of IEC by introducing them as rotations of the IEC Table Top System as indicated below.

The Table Top Pitch Angle is defined as the rotation of the coordinate axes Yt, Zt about axis Xt by an angle ψt; see Figure C.8.8.25-3. An increase in the value of angle ψt corresponds to the clockwise rotation of the Table Top as viewed from the Table Top coordinate system origin along the positive Xt axis.

The Table Top Roll Angle is defined as the rotation of the coordinate axes Xt, Zt about axis Yt by an angle φt; see Figure C.8.8.25-4. An increase in the value of angle φt corresponds to the clockwise rotation of the Table Top as viewed from the Table Top coordinate system origin along the positive Yt axis.

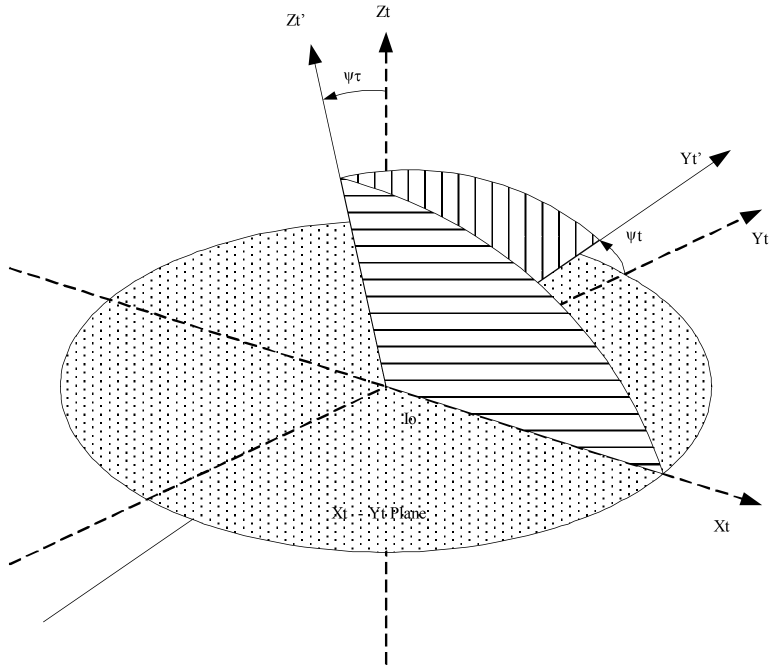


Figure C.8.8.25-3 Table Top Pitch Angle

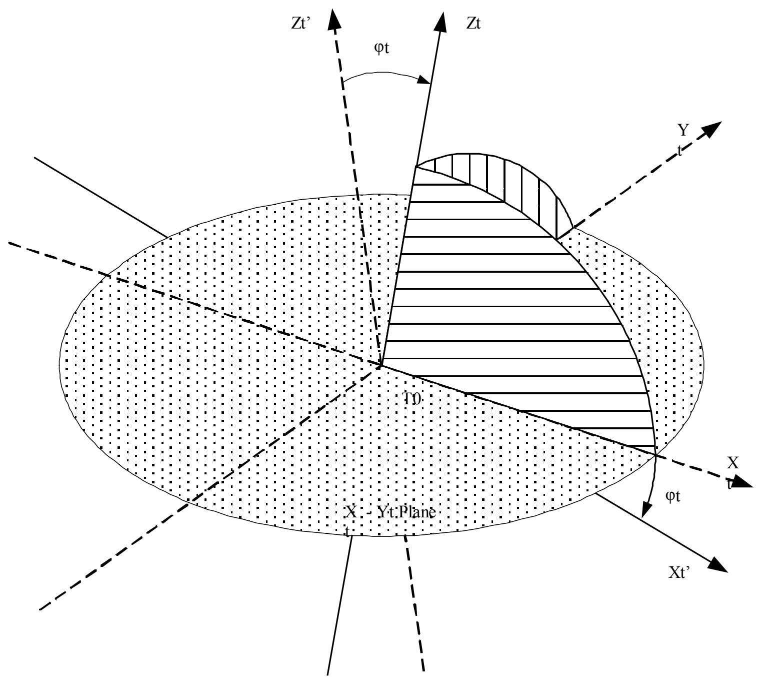


Figure C.8.8.25-4 Table Top Roll Angle

C.8.8.25.6.3 Seated Treatments

RT Ion Plan contains an attribute Patient Support Type (300A,0350), which can be CHAIR or TABLE. The patient support type CHAIR does not change the coordinate axes of the patient support coordinate systems relative to their parent systems. It is more an attribute of the type like the patient position in imaging (i.e. HFS, HFP, …).

The orientation of the treatment chair shall be defined with the chair positioned in such way, that the patient looks towards the gantry bearing (or along the Y axis of the IEC FIXED system) if all angles, especially IEC PATIENT SUPPORT angle are 0°. All other parameters follow straight forward, once this definition is accepted. I.e. chair rotation is a rotation of IEC PATIENT SUPPORT coordinate system; a backward tilt of the chair is a positive rotation of the PITCHED TABLE TOP coordinate system. A translation of the chair is a translation of the IEC TABLE TOP system.

The roll angle is typically 0º.

For a seated treatment on a horizontal beam-line, the following angles are therefore defined:
If IEC GANTRY angle is 90º (270º), IEC PATIENT SUPPORT angle is 270º (90º) for the position where the patient looks into the beam port.

C.8.8.25.6.4 Ocular Treatments

C.8.8.25.6.4.1 Gantry Beam Line

Eye treatments on the gantry shall use all existing IEC coordinate systems with their standard definition. This applies especially to IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE, IEC WEDGE FILTER, IEC X-RAY IMAGE RECEPTOR.

IEC PATIENT SUPPORT, and IEC TABLE TOP coordinate systems are defined as above. Additionally, a rotation of the head fixation device is possible. The Head Fixation Angle (300A,0148) shall be defined as the angle of the head fixation device with respect to the TABLE TOP coordinate system. Positive head fixation angle is in the same direction as positive PATIENT SUPPORT pitch, i.e. backwards.

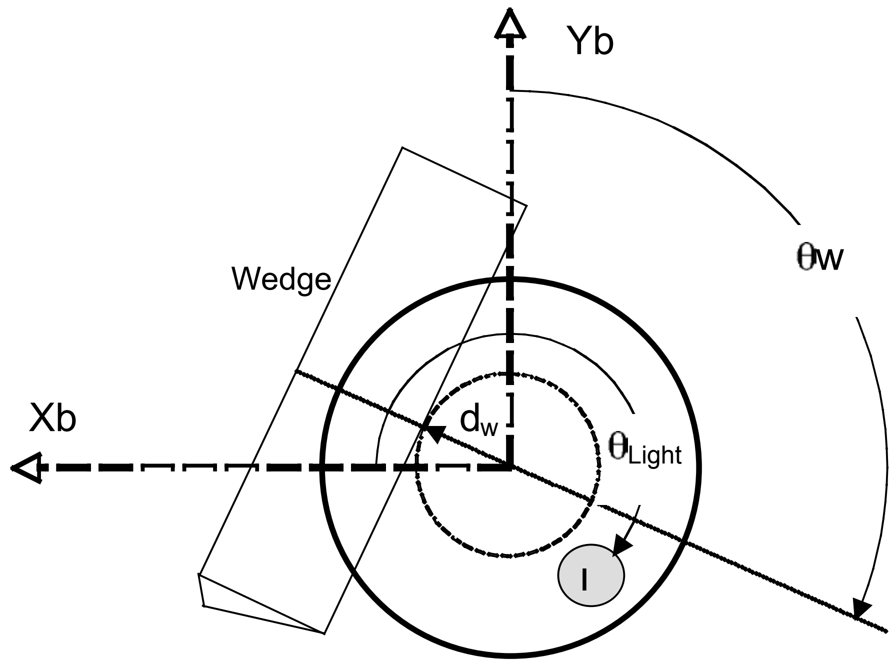
Proton eye treatments require an additional coordinate system for the placement of the fixation light. Since it is usually mounted onto the beam port the ‘natural’ coordinate system for devices mounted there is the IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE coordinate system. The angles for the fixation light positions shall therefore be defined as follows:

Rotation of the fixation light about the IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE Z-axis (Zb) is defined as Azimuthal Angle. The Azimuthal Angle is equal to 0° when the fixation light is positioned on the axis Xb of the IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE coordinate system. An increase in the value of the Azimuthal Angle corresponds to clockwise rotation of the fixation light as view along the axis Zb towards the virtual source.

The polar angle is always positive and defined as the angle between IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE Z-axis and the line connecting isocenter with the fixation light position.

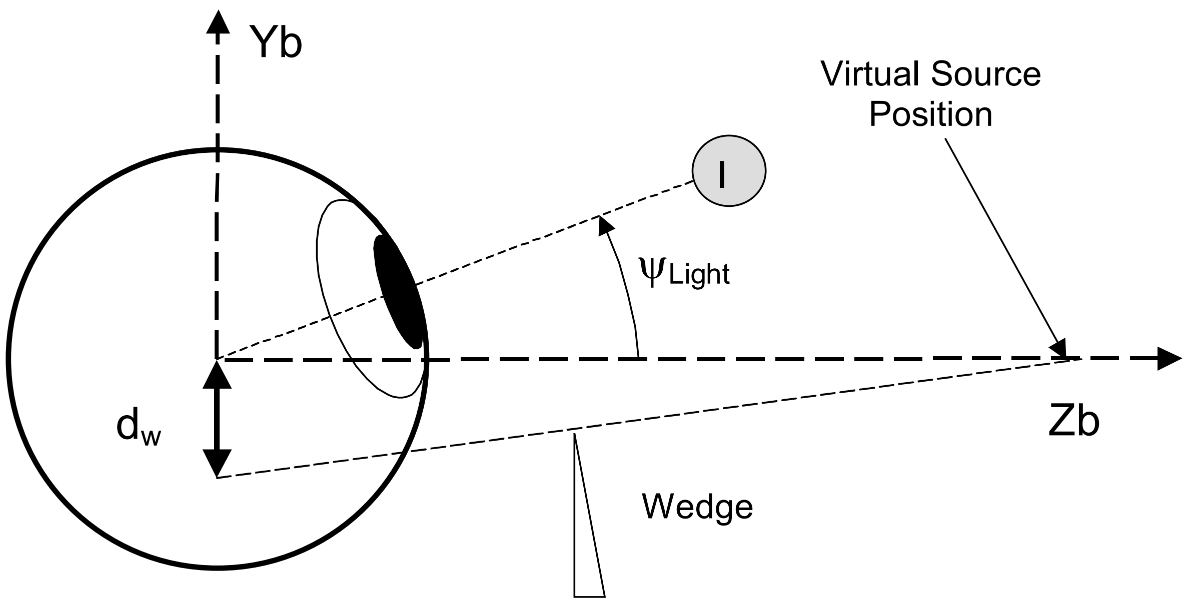
Proton eye treatments require the wedge thin edge position as one additional. The wedge thin edge position allows the specification of a wedge, which does not cover the full open field. The wedge thin edge position is positive, if the wedge does not cover the isocenter position and negative, if it does cover.

Figures C.8.8.25-5 and C.8.8.25-6 show the angles and attributes as described above.



L: Fixation light
θ_{Light}: Fixation light azimuthal angle
Xb, Yb: axes of the IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE coordinate system
d_w: Wedge thin edge position
θw: Wedge orientation

Figure C.8.8.25-5 Patient's eye view



L: Fixation light

ψ_{Light}: Fixation light polar angle

Yb, Zb: axes of the IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE coordinate system

d_w: Wedge thin edge position

Figure C.8.8.25-6 Lateral view along the positive axis Xb

C.8.8.25.6.4.2 Fixed Beam Line

The coordinate systems for the treatment chair are defined above and shall also be applied to seated eye treatments.

In this case, it is recommended that a beam limiting device angle of 90º be formally applied (provided the gantry angle is defined to be 90º (and not 270º). This results in the same coordinates of the fixation light and wedge relative to the patient as in the treatment situation with the patient lying on the table.

C.8.8.25.6.5 Gantry Pitch Angle

The Gantry Pitch angle is not defined in IEC 61217. This angle is defined in the DICOM standard in a way compatible with the current notion of IEC by introducing it as rotation of the IEC GANTRY System as indicated below.

The Gantry Pitch Angle is defined as the rotation of the coordinate axes Yg, Zg about axis Xg by an angle ψg; see Figure C.8.8.25-7. An increase in the value of angle ψg corresponds to the clockwise rotation as viewed from the isocenter along the positive Xg axis

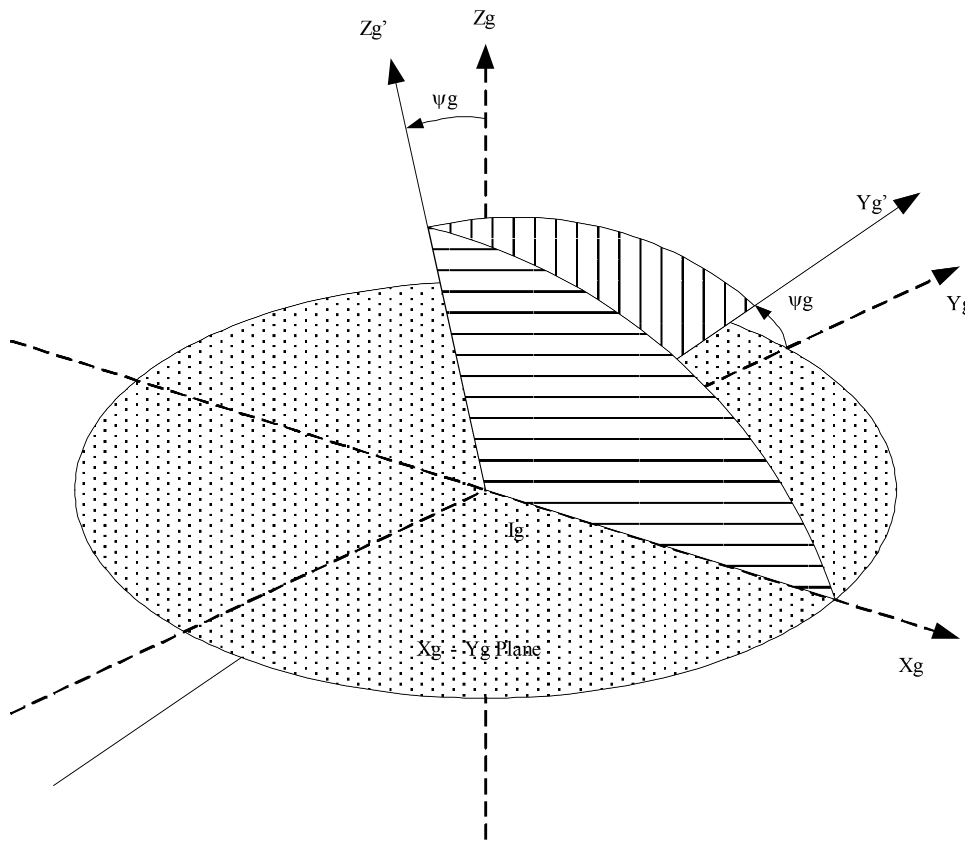


Figure C.8.8.25-7 Gantry Pitch Angle

C.8.8.26 RT Ion Beams Session Record Module

Table C.8.8.26-1 specifies the Attributes that describe the measured and recorded settings aquired during Ion Radiation Treatments.

Table C.8.8.26-1
RT ION BEAMS SESSION RECORD MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
Operators' Name	(0008,1070)	2	Name of operator administering treatment session.
Referenced Fraction Group Number	(300C,0022)	3	Identifier of fraction group within referenced RT Ion Plan.
Number of Fractions Planned	(300A,0078)	2	Total number of treatments (fractions) planned for current fraction group.
Primary Dosimeter Unit	(300A,00B3)	1	Measurement unit of the machine dosimeter. Enumerated Values:

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
			MU = Monitor Units NP = Number of Particles
Treatment Session Ion Beam Sequence	(3008,0021)	1	Introduces sequence of setup and/or treatment beams administered during treatment session. One or more items shall be included in this sequence.
>Referenced Beam Number	(300C,0006)	1	References Beam specified by Beam Number (300A,00C0) in Ion Beam Sequence (300A,03A2) in RT Ion Beams Module within the referenced RT Ion Plan.
>Beam Name	(300A,00C2)	1	User-defined name for Beam. See section C.8.8.25.1.
>Beam Description	(300A,00C3)	3	User-defined description for Beam. See section C.8.8.25.1.
>Beam Type	(300A,00C4)	1	Motion characteristic of Beam. Enumerated Values: STATIC = all beam parameters remain unchanged during delivery DYNAMIC = one or more beam parameters changes during delivery
>Radiation Type	(300A,00C6)	1	Particle type of Beam. Defined Terms: PHOTON PROTON ION
>Radiation Mass Number	(300A,0302)	1C	Mass number of radiation. Required if Radiation Type (300A,00C6) is ION
>Radiation Atomic Number	(300A,0304)	1C	Atomic number of radiation. Required if Radiation Type (300A,00C6) is ION
>Radiation Charge State	(300A,0306)	1C	Charge state of radiation. Required if Radiation Type (300A,00C6) is ION
>Scan Mode	(300A,0308)	1	The method of beam scanning used during treatment. Defined Terms: NONE = No beam scanning is performed. UNIFORM = The beam is scanned between control points to create a uniform lateral fluence distribution across the field. MODULATED = The beam is scanned between control points to create a modulated lateral fluence distribution across the field.
>Referenced Tolerance Table Number	(300C,00A0)	3	Uniquely identifies Ion Tolerance Table specified by Tolerance Table Number (300A,0042) within Ion Tolerance Table

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
			Sequence in RT Ion Tolerance Tables Module. These tolerances are to be used for verification of treatment machine settings.
>Beam Limiting Device Leaf Pairs Sequence	(3008,00A0)	3	Introduces sequence of beam limiting device (collimator) jaw or leaf (element) sets. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>RT Beam Limiting Device Type	(300A,00B8)	1	Type of beam limiting device (collimator). Enumerated Values: X = symmetric jaw pair in IEC X direction Y = symmetric jaw pair in IEC Y direction ASYMX = asymmetric jaw pair in IEC X direction ASYMY = asymmetric pair in IEC Y direction MLCX = multileaf (multi-element) jaw pair in IEC X direction MLCY = multileaf (multi-element) jaw pair in IEC Y direction
>>Number of Leaf/Jaw Pairs	(300A,00BC)	1	Number of leaf (element) or jaw pairs (equal to 1 for standard beam limiting device jaws).
>Referenced Patient Setup Number	(300C,006A)	3	Uniquely identifies Ion Patient Setup to be used for current beam, specified by Patient Setup Number (300A,0182) within Patient Setup Sequence of RT Patient Setup Module.
>Referenced Verification Image Sequence	(300C,0040)	3	Introduces sequence of verification images obtained during delivery of current beam. One or more items may be included in this sequence. See C.8.8.14.2.
>>Include SOP Instance Reference Macro Table 10-11			
>Referenced Measured Dose Reference Sequence	(3008,0080)	3	Introduces sequence of doses measured during treatment delivery for current Beam. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>>Referenced Dose Reference Number	(300C,0051)	1C	Uniquely references Dose Reference specified by Dose Reference Number (300A,0012) in Dose Reference Sequence (300A,0010) in RT Prescription Module of referenced RT Ion Plan. Required if Referenced Measured Dose Reference Number (3008,0082) is not sent.
>>Referenced Measured Dose Reference Number	(3008,0082)	1C	Uniquely references Measured Dose Reference specified by Measured Dose Reference Number (3008,0064) in Measured Dose Reference Sequence

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
			(3008,0010). Required if Referenced Dose Reference Number (300C,0051) is not sent.
>>Measured Dose Value	(3008,0016)	1	Measured Dose in units specified by Dose Units (3004,0002) in sequence referenced by Measured Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0010) or Dose Reference Sequence (300A,0010) in RT Prescription Module of Referenced RT Ion Plan as defined above.
>Referenced Calculated Dose Reference Sequence	(3008,0090)	3	Introduces sequence of doses estimated for each treatment delivery. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>>Referenced Dose Reference Number	(300C,0051)	1C	Uniquely identifies Dose Reference specified by Dose Reference Number (300A,0012) in Dose Reference Sequence (300A,0010) in RT Prescription Module of referenced RT Ion Plan. Required if Referenced Calculated Dose Reference Number (3008,0092) is not sent.
>>Referenced Calculated Dose Reference Number	(3008,0092)	1C	Uniquely identifies Calculated Dose Reference specified by Calculated Dose Reference Number (3008,0072) within Calculated Dose Reference Sequence (3008,0070). Required if Referenced Dose Reference Number (300C,0051) is not sent.
>>Calculated Dose Reference Dose Value	(3008,0076)	1	Calculated Dose (Gy).
>Number of Wedges	(300A,00D0)	1	Number of wedges associated with current beam.
>Recorded Wedge Sequence	(3008,00B0)	1C	Introduces sequence of treatment wedges. Required if Number of Wedges (300A,00D0) is non-zero. The number of items shall be identical to the value of Number of Wedges (300A,00D0).
>>Wedge Number	(300A,00D2)	1	Identification number of the Wedges. The value of Wedge Number (300A,00D2) shall be unique within the Beam in which it was created.
>>Wedge Type	(300A,00D3)	2	Type of wedge (if any) defined for Beam. Defined Terms: STANDARD = standard (static) wedge MOTORIZED = single wedge that can be removed from beam remotely. PARTIAL_STANDARD = wedge does not extend across the whole field and is operated manually. PARTIAL_MOTORIZ = wedge does not extend across the whole field and can be

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
			removed from beam remotely.
>>Wedge ID	(300A,00D4)	3	User-supplied identifier for Wedge.
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An accessory identifier to be read by a device such as a bar code reader.
>>Wedge Angle	(300A,00D5)	2	Nominal wedge angle (degrees).
>>Wedge Orientation	(300A,00D8)	2	Orientation of wedge, i.e. orientation of IEC WEDGE FILTER coordinate system with respect to the IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE coordinate systems (degrees).
>Number of Compensators	(300A,00E0)	1	Number of range compensators associated with current Beam.
>Recorded Compensator Sequence	(3008,00C0)	1C	Introduces sequence of treatment compensators. Required if Number of Compensators (300A,00E0) is non-zero. The number of items shall be identical to the value of Number of Compensators (300A,00E0).
>>Referenced Compensator Number	(300C,00D0)	1	Uniquely identifies compensator specified by Compensator Number (300A,00E4) within Beam referenced by Referenced Beam Number (300C,0006).
>>Compensator ID	(300A,00E5)	3	User-supplied identifier for compensator.
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An accessory identifier to be read by a device such as a bar code reader.
>Number of Boli	(300A,00ED)	1	Number of boli associated with current Beam.
>Referenced Bolus Sequence	(300C,00B0)	1C	Introduces sequence of boli associated with Beam. Required if Number of Boli (300A,00ED) is non-zero. The number of items shall be identical to the value of Number of Boli (300A,00ED).
>>Referenced ROI Number	(3006,0084)	1	Uniquely identifies ROI representing the Bolus specified by ROI Number (3006,0022) in Structure Set ROI Sequence (3006,0020) in Structure Set Module within RT Structure Set in Referenced Structure Set Sequence (300C,0060) in RT General Plan Module.
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An accessory identifier to be read by a device such as a bar code reader.
>Number of Blocks	(300A,00F0)	1	Number of shielding blocks associated with Beam.
>Recorded Block Sequence	(3008,00D0)	1C	Introduces sequence of blocks associated with Beam. Required if Number of Blocks (300A,00F0) is non-zero. The number of items shall be identical to the value of Number of Blocks (300A,00F0).

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
>>Block Tray ID	(300A,00F5)	3	User-supplied identifier for block tray.
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An accessory identifier to be read by a device such as a bar code reader.
>>Referenced Block Number	(300C,00E0)	1	Uniquely identifies block specified by Block Number (300A,00FC) within Beam referenced by Referenced Beam Number (300C,0006).
>>Block Name	(300A,00FE)	3	User-defined name for block.
>Recorded Snout Sequence	(3008,00F0)	1C	Introduces sequence of Snouts associated with Beam. Required if Snout Sequence (300A,030C) is included in the RT Ion Plan referenced within the Referenced RT Plan Sequence (300C,0002). Only a single item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>>Snout ID	(300A,030F)	1	User or machine supplied identifier for Snout.
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An accessory identifier to be read by a device such as a bar code reader.
>Applicator Sequence	(300A,0107)	1C	Introduces sequence of Applicators associated with Beam. Required if Applicator Sequence (300A,0107) is included in the RT Ion Plan referenced within the Referenced RT Plan Sequence (300C,0002). Only a single item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>>Applicator ID	(300A,0108)	1	User or machine supplied identifier for Applicator. See C.8.8.14.12
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An accessory identifier to be read by a device such as a bar code reader.
>>Applicator Type	(300A,0109)	1	Type of applicator. Defined Terms: ION_SQUARE = square ion applicator ION_RECT = rectangluar ion applicator ION_CIRC = circular ion applicator ION_SHORT = short ion applicator ION_OPEN = open (dummy) ion applicator INTEROPERATIVE = interoperative (custom) applicator STEREOTACTIC = stereotactic applicator
>>Applicator Description	(300A,010A)	3	User-defined description for Applicator.

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
>Number of Range Shifters	(300A,0312)	1	Number of range shifters associated with current beam.
>Recorded Range Shifter Sequence	(3008,00F2)	1C	Introduces sequence of range shifters recorded with Beam. Required if Number of Range Shifters (300A,0312) is non-zero. The number of items shall be identical to the value of Number of Range Shifters (300A,0312).
>>Referenced Range Shifter Number	(300C,0100)	1	Uniquely identifies range shifter specified by Range Shifter Number (300A,0316) within Beam referenced by Referenced Beam Number (300C,0006).
>>Range Shifter ID	(300A,0318)	1	User or machine supplied identifier for Range Modulator.
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An accessory identifier to be read by a device such as a bar code reader.
>Number of Lateral Spreading Devices	(300A,0330)	1	Number of lateral spreading devices associated with current beam.
>Recorded Lateral Spreading Device Sequence	(3008,00F4)	1C	Introduces sequence of lateral spreading devices associated with Beam. Required if Number of Lateral Spreading Devices (300A,0330) is non-zero. The number of items shall be identical to the value of Number of Lateral Spreading Devices (300A,0330).
>>Referenced Lateral Spreading Device Number	(300C,0102)	1	Uniquely identifies lateral spreading device specified by Lateral Spreading Device Number (300A,0334) within Beam referenced by Referenced Beam Number (300C,0006).
>>Lateral Spreading Device ID	(300A,0336)	1	User or machine supplied identifier for Lateral Spreading Device.
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An accessory identifier to be read by a device such as a bar code reader.
>Number of Range Modulators	(300A,0340)	1	Number of range modulators associated with current beam.
>Recorded Range Modulator Sequence	(3008,00F6)	1C	Introduces sequence of range modulators associated with Beam. Required if Number of Range Modulators (300A,0340) is non-zero. The number of items shall be identical to the value of Number of Range Modulators (300A,0340).
>>Referenced Range Modulator Number	(300C,0104)	1	Uniquely identifies range modulator specified by Range Modulator Number (300A,0344) within Beam referenced by Referenced Beam Number (300C,0006).
>>Range Modulator ID	(300A,0346)	1	User or machine supplied identifier for Range Modulator.

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
>>Accessory Code	(300A,00F9)	3	An accessory identifier to be read by a device such as a bar code reader.
>>Range Modulator Type	(300A,0348)	1	Type of Range Modulator. Defined Terms: FIXED = fixed modulation width and weights using ridge filter or constant speed wheel with constant beam current WHL_FIXEDWEIGHTS = selected wheel/track (Range Modulator ID) is spinning at constant speed. Modulation width is adjusted by switching constant beam current on and off at wheel steps indicated by Range Modulator Interrupt Values WHL_MODWEIGHTS = selected wheel/track (Range Modulator ID) is spinning at constant speed. Weight per wheel step is adjusted by modulating beam current according to selected Beam Current Modulation ID (300A,034C) Only one item in the Recorded Range Modulator Sequence (3008,00F6) can have a Range Modulator Type (300A,0348) of WHL_MODWEIGHTS.
>>Beam Current Modulation ID	(300A,034C)	1C	User-supplied identifier for the beam current modulation pattern. Required if Range Modulator Type (300A,0348) is WHL_MODWEIGHTS
>Include Patient Support Identification Macro Table C.8.8.28-1			
>Fixation Light Azimuthal Angle	(300A,0356)	3	Azimuthal angle (degrees) of the fixation light coordinate around IEC PATIENT SUPPORT Y-axis. Used for eye treatments. See section C.8.8.25.6.4.
>Fixation Light Polar Angle	(300A,0358)	3	Polar angle (degrees) of the fixation light coordinate. Used for eye treatments. See section C.8.8.25.6.4.
>Current Fraction Number	(3008,0022)	2	Fraction number for this beam administration.
>Treatment Delivery Type	(300A,00CE)	2	Delivery Type of treatment. Defined Terms: TREATMENT = normal patient treatment OPEN_PORTFILM = portal image acquisition with open field (the source of radiation is specified by Radiation Type (300A,00C6)) TRMT_PORTFILM = portal image acquisition with treatment port (the source

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
			of radiation is specified by Radiation Type (300A,00C6)) CONTINUATION = continuation of interrupted treatment SETUP = no treatment beam was applied for this RT Beam. To be used for specifying the gantry, couch, and other machine positions where X-ray set-up images or measurements were taken.
>Treatment Termination Status	(3008,002A)	1	Conditions under which treatment was terminated. Enumerated Values: NORMAL = treatment terminated normally OPERATOR = operator terminated treatment MACHINE = machine terminated treatment UNKNOWN = status at termination unknown
>Treatment Termination Code	(3008,002B)	3	Treatment machine termination code. This code is dependent upon the particular application and equipment.
>Treatment Verification Status	(3008,002C)	2	Conditions under which treatment was verified by a verification system. Enumerated Values: VERIFIED = treatment verified VERIFIED_OVR = treatment verified with at least one out-of-range value overridden NOT_VERIFIED = treatment verified manually
>Specified Primary Meterset	(3008,0032)	3	Desired machine setting of primary meterset in units specified by Primary Dosimeter Unit (300A,00B3).
>Specified Secondary Meterset	(3008,0033)	3	Desired machine setting of secondary meterset.
>Delivered Primary Meterset	(3008,0036)	3	Machine setting actually delivered as recorded by primary meterset in units specified by Primary Dosimeter Unit (300A,00B3).
>Delivered Secondary Meterset	(3008,0037)	3	Machine setting actually delivered as recorded by secondary meterset.
>Specified Treatment Time	(3008,003A)	3	Treatment Time set (sec).
>Delivered Treatment Time	(3008,003B)	3	Treatment Time actually delivered (sec).
>Number of Control Points	(300A,0110)	1	Number of control points in Beam.
>Ion Control Point Delivery Sequence	(3008,0041)	1	Introduces sequence of beam control points for current ion treatment beam. The number of items shall be identical to the

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
			value of Number of Control Points (300A,0110). See section C.8.8.21.1.
>>Referenced Control Point Index	(300C,00F0)	1	Uniquely identifies Control Point specified by Control Point Index (300A,0112) within the Beam referenced by Referenced Beam Number (300C,0006).
>>Treatment Control Point Date	(3008,0024)	1	Date administration of treatment beam began.
>>Treatment Control Point Time	(3008,0025)	1	Time administration of treatment beam began.
>>Specified Meterset	(3008,0042)	2	Desired machine setting for current control point in units specified by Primary Dosimeter Unit (300A,00B3).
>>Delivered Meterset	(3008,0044)	1	Machine setting actually delivered at current control point in units specified by Primary Dosimeter Unit (300A,00B3).
>>Meterset Rate Set	(3008,0045)	3	The specified speed of delivery of the specified dose in units specified by Primary Dosimeter Unit (300A,00B3) per minute.
>>Meterset Rate Delivered	(3008,0046)	3	The delivered speed of delivery of the specified dose in units specified by Primary Dosimeter Unit (300A,00B3) per minute.
>>Nominal Beam Energy	(300A,0114)	1C	Nominal Beam Energy at control point in MeV per nucleon. Defined at nozzle entrance before all Beam Modifiers. Required for Control Point 0 of Ion Control Point Delivery Sequence (3008,0041) or if Nominal Beam Energy (300A,0114) changes during beam administration, and KVp (0018,0060) is not present.
>>KVp	(0018,0060)	1C	Peak kilo voltage output of the setup X-Ray generator used. Required for Control Point 0 of Ion Control Point Delivery Sequence (3008,0041), or if KVp changes during setup, and Nominal Beam Energy (300A,0114) is not present.
>>Ion Wedge Position Sequence	(300A,03AC)	1C	Introduces sequence of Wedge positions for current control point. Required for first item of Ion Control Point Sequence if Number of Wedges (300A,00D0) is non-zero, and in subsequent control points if Wedge Position (300A,0118) or Wedge Thin Edge Position (300A,00DB) changes during beam. The number of items shall be identical to the value of Number of Wedges (300A,00D0). The number of items shall be identical to the value of Number of Wedges

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
			(300A,00D0).
>>>Referenced Wedge Number	(300C,00C0)	1	Uniquely references Wedge described by Wedge Number (300A,00D2) in Wedge Sequence (300A,00D1).
>>>Wedge Position	(300A,0118)	1	Position of Wedge at current control point. Enumerated Values: IN, OUT.
>>>Wedge Thin Edge Position	(300A,00DB)	1C	Closest distance from the central axis of the beam along a wedge axis to the thin edge as projected to the machine isocentric plane (mm). Value is positive is the wedge does not cover the central axis, negative if it does. Required if Wedge Type (300A,00D3) of the wedge referenced by Referenced Wedge Number (300C,00C0) is PARTIAL_STANDARD or PARTIAL_MOTORIZ. See section C.8.8.25.6.4.
>>Include Beam Limiting Device Position Macro Table C.8.8.27-1			
>>Range Shifter Settings Sequence	(300A,0360)	1C	Introduces sequence of Range Shifter settings for the current control point. One or more items may be included in this sequence. Required for Control Point 0 of Ion Control Point Delivery Sequence (3008,0041) or if Range Shifter Setting (300A,0362) changes during beam administration, and Number of Range Shifters (300A,0312) is non-zero.
>>>Referenced Range Shifter Number	(300C,0100)	1	Uniquely references Range Shifter described by Range Shifter Number (300A,0316) in Range Shifter Sequence (300A,0314).
>>>Range Shifter Setting	(300A,0362)	1	Machine specific setting attribute for the range shifter. The specific encoding of this value should be documented in a Conformance Statement. See section C.8.8.25.5.
>>Lateral Spreading Device Settings Sequence	(300A,0370)	1C	Introduces sequence of Lateral Spreading Device settings for the current control point. One or more items may be included in this sequence. Required for Control Point 0 of Ion Control Point Delivery Sequence (3008,0041) or if Lateral Spreading Device Setting (300A,0372) changes during beam administration, and Number of Lateral Spreading Devices (300A,0330) is non-zero.
>>>Referenced Lateral Spreading Device Number	(300C,0102)	1	Uniquely references Lateral Spreading Device described by Lateral Spreading Device Number (300A,0334) in Lateral

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
			Spreading Device Sequence (300A,0332).
>>>Lateral Spreading Device Setting	(300A,0372)	1	Machine specific setting attribute for the lateral spreading device. The specific encoding of this value should be documented in a Conformance Statement. See section C.8.8.25.5.
>>Range Modulator Settings Sequence	(300A,0380)	1C	Introduces sequence of Range Modulator Settings for current control point. Required for Control Point 0 of Ion Control Point Delivery Sequence (3008,0041), or if Range Modulator Settings change during beam administration, and Number of Range Modulators (300A,0340) is non-zero.
>>>Referenced Range Modulator Number	(300C,0104)	1	Uniquely references Range Modulator described by Range Modulator Number (300A,0344) in Range Modulator Sequence (300A,0342).
>>>Range Modulator Gating Start Value	(300A,0382)	1C	Start position defines the range modulator position at which the beam is switched on. Required if Range Modulator Type (300A,0348) of the range modulator referenced by Referenced Range Modulator Number (300C,0104) is WHL_MODWEIGHTS or WHL_FIXEDWEIGHTS
>>>Range Modulator Gating Stop Value	(300A,0384)	1C	Stop position defines the range modulator position at which the beam is switched off. Required if Range Modulator Type (300A,0348) of the range modulator referenced by Referenced Range Modulator Number (300C,0104) is WHL_MODWEIGHTS or WHL_FIXEDWEIGHTS
>>Gantry Angle	(300A,011E)	1C	Treatment machine gantry angle, i.e. orientation of IEC GANTRY coordinate system with respect to IEC FIXED REFERENCE coordinate system (degrees). Required for Control Point 0 of Ion Control Point Delivery Sequence (3008,0041) or if Gantry Angle changes during beam administration.
>>Gantry Rotation Direction	(300A,011F)	1C	Direction of Gantry Rotation when viewing gantry from isocenter, for segment beginning at current Control Point. Required for Control Point 0 of Ion Control Point Delivery Sequence (3008,0041), or if Gantry Rotation Direction changes during beam administration. Enumerated Values:

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
			CW = clockwise CC = counter-clockwise NONE = no rotation
>>Gantry Pitch Angle	(300A,014A)	2C	Gantry Pitch Angle. i.e. the rotation of the IEC GANTRY coordinate system about the X-axis of the IEC GANTRY coordinate system (degrees). Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Gantry PitchRotation Angle changes during Beam. See C.8.8.25.6.5.
>>Gantry Pitch Rotation Direction	(300A,014C)	2C	Direction of Gantry PitchAngle when viewing along the positive X-axis of the IEC GANTRY coordinate system, for segment following Control Point. Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Gantry PitchRotation Direction changes during Beam. See C.8.8.14.8 and C.8.8.25.6.5. Enumerated Values: CW = clockwise CC = counter-clockwise NONE = no rotation
>>Beam Limiting Device Angle	(300A,0120)	1C	Beam Limiting Device (collimator) angle, i.e. orientation of IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE coordinate system with respect to IEC GANTRY coordinate system (degrees). Required for Control Point 0 of Ion Control Point Delivery Sequence (3008,0041) or if beam limiting device (collimator) angle changes during beam administration.
>>Beam Limiting Device Rotation Direction	(300A,0121)	1C	Direction of Beam Limiting Device Rotation when viewing beam limiting device (collimator) from radiation source, for segment beginning at current Control Point. Required for Control Point 0 of Ion Control Point Delivery Sequence (3008,0041) or if Beam Limiting Device Rotation Direction changes during beam administration. Enumerated Values: CW = clockwise CC = counter-clockwise NONE = no rotation
>>Scan Spot Tune ID	(300A,0390)	1C	User-supplied or machine code identifier for machine configuration to produce beam spot. This may be the nominal spot size or some other machine specific value.

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
			Required if Scan Mode (300A,0308) is MODULATED.
>>Number of Scan Spot Positions	(300A,0392)	1C	Number of spot positions used to specify scanning pattern for current segment beginning at control point. Required if Scan Mode (300A,0308) is MODULATED.
>>Scan Spot Position Map	(300A,0394)	1C	The x and y coordinates of the scan spots are defined as projected onto the machine isocentric plane in the IEC GANTRY coordinate system (mm). Required if Scan Mode (300A,0308) is MODULATED. Contains 2N values were N is the Number of Scan Spot Positions (300A,0392).
>>Scan Spot Metersets Delivered	(3008,0047)	1C	A data set of metersets delivered to the scan spot positions. The order of metersets matches the positions in Scan Spot Position Map (300A,0394). The sum contained in all metersets shall match the difference of the Delivered Meterset of the current control point to the following control point. Required if Scan Mode (300A,0308) is MODULATED.
>>Scanning Spot Size	(300A,0398)	3	The Scanning Spot Size as calculated using the Full Width Half Maximum (FWHM). Specified by a numeric pair - the size measured in air at isocenter in IEC GANTRY X direction followed by the size in the IEC GANTRY Y direction (mm).
>>Number of Paintings	(300A,039A)	1C	The intended number of times the scan pattern given by Scan Spot Position Map (300A,0394) and Scan Spot Meterset Weights (300A,0396) in the Referenced RT Plan was to be applied at the current control point. Note: The actual number of paintings is not known or recorded. The Scan Spot Metersets Delivered (3008,0047) contains the sum of all complete and partial repaints. Required if Scan Mode (300A,0308) is MODULATED.
>>Patient Support Angle	(300A,0122)	1C	Patient Support angle, i.e. orientation of IEC PATIENT SUPPORT (turntable) coordinate system with respect to IEC FIXED REFERENCE coordinate system (degrees). Required for Control Point 0 of Ion Control Point Delivery Sequence (3008,0041) or if Patient Support Angle changes during beam administration.
>>Patient Support Rotation Direction	(300A,0123)	1C	Direction of Patient Support Rotation when viewing table from above, for segment

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
			beginning at current Control Point. Required for Control Point 0 of Ion Control Point Delivery Sequence (3008,0041), or if Patient Support Rotation Direction changes during beam administration. Enumerated Values: CW = clockwise CC = counter-clockwise NONE = no rotation
>>Table Top Pitch Angle	(300A,0140)	2C	Table Top Pitch Angle, i.e. the rotation of the IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system about the X-axis of the IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system (degrees). Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Table Top Pitch Angle changes during Beam. See section C.8.8.25.6.2.
>>Table Top Pitch Rotation Direction	(300A,0142)	2C	Direction of Table Top Pitch Rotation when viewing the table along the positive X-axis of the IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system, for segment following Control Point. Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Table Top Pitch Rotation Direction changes during Beam. See C.8.8.14.8 and C.8.8.25.6.2. Enumerated Values: CW = clockwise CC = counter-clockwise NONE = no rotation
>>Table Top Roll Angle	(300A,0144)	2C	Table Top Roll Angle, i.e. the rotation of the IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system about the Y-axis of the IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system (degrees). Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Table Top Roll Angle changes during Beam. See section C.8.8.25.6.2.
>>Table Top Roll Rotation Direction	(300A,0146)	2C	Direction of Table Top Roll Rotation when viewing the table along the positive Y-axis of the IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system, for segment following Control Point. Required for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Table Top Roll Rotation Direction changes during Beam. See C.8.8.14.8 and C.8.8.25.6.2. Enumerated Values: CW = clockwise CC = counter-clockwise NONE = no rotation

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
>>Head Fixation Angle	(300A,0148)	3	Angle (in degrees) of the head fixation for eye treatments with respect to the Table Top Pitch Angle (300A,0140) coordinate system. Positive head fixation angle is the same direction as positive Table Top Pitch. See section C.8.8.25.6.4.
>>Table Top Vertical Position	(300A,0128)	2C	Table Top Vertical position in IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system (mm). This value is interpreted as an absolute, rather than relative, Table setting. Required for Control Point 0 of Ion Control Point Delivery Sequence (3008,0041) or if Table Top Vertical Position changes during beam administration.
>>Table Top Longitudinal Position	(300A,0129)	2C	Table Top Longitudinal position in IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system (mm). This value is interpreted as an absolute, rather than relative, Table setting. Required for Control Point 0 of Ion Control Point Delivery Sequence (3008,0041) or if Table Top Longitudinal Position changes during beam administration.
>>Table Top Lateral Position	(300A,012A)	2C	Table Top Lateral position in IEC TABLE TOP coordinate system (mm). This value is interpreted as an absolute, rather than relative, Table setting. Required for Control Point 0 of Ion Control Point Delivery Sequence (3008,0041) or if Table Top Lateral Position changes during beam administration.
>>Snout Position	(300A,030D)	2C	Axial position of the snout (in mm) measured from isocenter to the downstream side of the snout (without consideration of variable length elements such as blocks, MLC and/or compensators). Required for Control Point 0 of Ion Control Point Delivery Sequence (3008,0041) or if Snout Position changes during beam administration.
>>Corrected Parameter Sequence	(3008,0068)	3	Introduces a sequence of items describing corrections made to any attributes prior to delivery of the next control point. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>>>Parameter Sequence Pointer	(3008,0061)	1	Contains the Data Element Tag of the parent sequence containing the attribute that was corrected. The value is limited in scope to the Treatment Session Ion Beam Sequence (3008,0021) and all nested sequences therein.
>>>Parameter Item Index	(3008,0063)	1	Contains the ones-based sequence item index of the corrected attribute within its

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
			parent sequence as indicated by Parameter Sequence Pointer (3008,0061).
>>>Parameter Pointer	(3008,0065)	1	Contains the Data Element Tag of the attribute that was corrected.
>>>Correction Value	(3008,006A)	1	The value that was added the value referenced by the Parameter Sequence Pointer (3008,0061), Parameter Item Index (3008,0063) and Parameter Pointer (3008,0065).
>>Override Sequence	(3008,0060)	3	Introduces sequence of parameters that were overridden during the administration of the beam segment immediately prior to the current control point. The sequence may contain one or more items.
>>>Parameter Sequence Pointer	(3008,0061)	1	Contains the Data Element Tag of the parent sequence containing the attribute that was overriden. The value is limited in scope to the Treatment Session Ion Beam Sequence (3008,0021) and all nested sequences therein.
>>>Override Parameter Pointer	(3008,0062)	1	Contains the Data Element Tag of the attribute that was overridden.
>>>Parameter Item Index	(3008,0063)	1	Contains the ones-based sequence item index of the overriden attributes within it's parent sequence. The value is limited in scope to the Treatment Session Ion Beam Sequence (3008,0021) and all nested sequences therein.
>>>Operators' Name	(0008,1070)	2	Name of operator who authorized override.
>>>Override Reason	(3008,0066)	3	User-defined description of reason for override of parameter specified by Override Parameter Pointer (3008,0062).

C.8.8.27 Beam Limiting Device Position Macro

Table C.8.8.27-1 specifies the attributes that specify the Beam Limiting Device Sequence.

Table C.8.8.27-1
BEAM LIMITING DEVICE POSITION MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
Beam Limiting Device Position Sequence	(300A,011A)	1C	Introduces sequence of beam limiting device (collimator) jaw or leaf (element) positions. Required if Ion Beam Limiting Device Sequence (300A,03A4) is included and for first item of Control Point Sequence, or if Beam Limiting Device changes during Beam. One or more items shall be included in this sequence.
>RT Beam Limiting Device Type	(300A,00B8)	1	Type of beam limiting device (collimator). The value of this attribute shall correspond

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
			to RT Beam Limiting Device Type (300A,00B8) defined in an item of Ion Beam Limiting Device Sequence (300A,03A4). Enumerated Values: X = symmetric jaw pair in IEC X direction Y = symmetric jaw pair in IEC Y direction ASYMX = asymmetric jaw pair in IEC X direction ASYMY = asymmetric pair in IEC Y direction MLCX = multileaf (multi-element) jaw pair in IEC X direction MLCY = multileaf (multi-element) jaw pair in IEC Y direction
>Leaf/Jaw Positions	(300A,011C)	1	Positions of beam limiting device (collimator) leaf (element) or jaw pairs (in mm) in IEC BEAM LIMITING DEVICE coordinate axis appropriate to RT Beam Limiting Device Type (300A,00B8), e.g. X-axis for MLCX, Y-axis for MLCY. Contains 2N values, where N is the Number of Leaf/Jaw Pairs (300A,00BC) in Ion Beam Limiting Device Sequence (300A,03A4). Values shall be listed in IEC leaf (element) subscript order 101, 102, ... 1N, 201, 202, ... 2N. See section C.8.8.25.3.

C.8.8.28 Patient Support Identification Macro

Table C.8.8.28-1 specifies the attributes that identify the Patient Support System.

Table C.8.8.28-1
PATIENT SUPPORT IDENTIFICATION MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Description
Patient Support Type	(300A,0350)	1	Defined terms: TABLE = Treatment delivery system table CHAIR = Treatment delivery system chair See section C.8.8.25.6.3.
Patient Support ID	(300A,0352)	3	User-specified identifier for manufacturer specific patient support devices.
Patient Support Accessory Code	(300A,0354)	3	A Patient Support accessory identifier to be read by a device such as a bar code reader.

C.8.9 PET Information Module Definitions

This Section describes Positron Emission Tomography series and image Modules. These Modules contain Attributes that are specific to Positron Emission Tomography images.

C.8.9.1 PET Series Module

Table C.8-60 contains IOD Attributes that describe a PET Series.

Table C.8-60 - PET SERIES MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Series Date	(0008,0021)	1	Date the Series started. See C.8.9.1.1.2 for specialization.
Series Time	(0008,0031)	1	Time the Series started. See C.8.9.1.1.2 for specialization.
Units	(0054,1001)	1	Pixel value units. See C.8.9.1.1.3 for explanation. Defined terms: CNTS, NONE, CM2, PCNT, CPS, BQML, MGMINML, UMOLMINML, MLMING, MLG, 1CM, UMOLML, PROPCNTS, PROPCPS, MLMINML, MLML, GML, STDDEV
Counts Source	(0054,1002)	1	The primary source of counts. The primary source leads to the underlying image Units (0054,1001), as opposed to secondary sources which are used during reconstruction correction. Enumerated Values: EMISSION TRANSMISSION
Series Type	(0054,1000)	1	A multi-valued indicator of the type of Series. See C.8.9.1.1.4 for explanation. Value 1 Enumerated Values: STATIC DYNAMIC GATED WHOLE BODY Value 2 Enumerated Values: IMAGE REPROJECTION
Reprojection Method	(0054,1004)	2C	Method for projecting volumetric data onto planar projection. Required if Series Type (0054,1000), Value 2 is REPROJECTION. Defined terms: SUM MAX PIXEL
Number of R-R Intervals	(0054,0061)	1C	The maximum number of R-R Intervals that may exist in this Series. Required if Series Type (0054,1000), Value 1 is GATED.
Number of Time Slots	(0054,0071)	1C	The maximum number of Time Slots that may exist in this Series. Required if Series Type (0054,1000), Value 1 is GATED.

Number of Time Slices	(0054,0101)	1C	The maximum number of Time Slices that may exist in this Series. Required if Series Type (0054,1000), Value 1 is DYNAMIC.
Number of Slices	(0054,0081)	1	The maximum number of Slices that may exist in this Series.
Corrected Image	(0028,0051)	2	A value that indicates which, if any, corrections have been applied to the images in this series. Defined terms: DECY=decay corrected ATTN=attenuation corrected SCAT=scatter corrected DTIM=dead time corrected MOTN=gantry motion corrected (e.g. wobble, clamshell) PMOT=patient motion corrected CLN=count loss normalization (correction for count loss in gated Time Slots). RAN=randoms corrected RADL=non-uniform radial sampling corrected DCAL=sensitivity calibrated using dose calibrator NORM=detector normalization
Randoms Correction Method	(0054,1100)	3	Type of randoms correction processing. Defined terms: NONE = no randoms correction DLYD = delayed event subtraction SING = singles estimation
Attenuation Correction Method	(0054,1101)	3	A textual description of the attenuation correction processing. e.g. measured vs. calculated, transmission source type (ring, line, point), assumed patient geometry (polygon, ellipse, segmented, attenuation coefficient, skull thickness), post-injection transmission, smoothing.
Scatter Correction Method	(0054,1105)	3	A textual description of the scatter correction processing. e.g. convolution-subtraction, dual energy window, model-based, use of attenuation data.
Decay Correction	(0054,1102)	1	The real-world event to which images in this Series were decay corrected. See C.8.9.1.1.5 for explanation. Defined terms: NONE = no decay correction START= acquisition start time ADMIN = radiopharmaceutical administration time
Reconstruction Diameter	(0018,1100)	3	Diameter, in mm, of the region within which the data was used in creating the reconstruction of the image. Data may exist outside this region and portions of the

			patient may exist outside this region.
Convolution Kernel	(0018,1210)	3	Textual description of the convolution kernel(s) used to reconstruct the data (e.g. name, cutoff, radial/axial/angular, mathematical form, DC handling)
Reconstruction Method	(0054,1103)	3	Textual description of reconstruction processing, e.g. 2D filtered backprojection, 2D iterative, 3D PROMIS, 3D FAVOR, 3D iterative.
Detector Lines of Response Used	(0054,1104)	3	Textual description of which detector lines of response were used, mashed, or otherwise processed during tomographic reconstruction.
Acquisition Start Condition	(0018,0073)	3	Description of how the data collection was started. Defined terms: DENS = density (counts/sec) RDD = relative density difference (change in counts/sec) MANU = manual TIME = time AUTO = automatic, when ready TRIG = physiological trigger See C.8.9.1.1.6 for explanation.
Acquisition Start Condition Data	(0018,0074)	3	Count density, change in count density, or physiological triggers causing data collection to start.
Acquisition Termination Condition	(0018,0071)	3	Description of how the data collection for the series was stopped. Defined terms: CNTS = counts DENS = density (counts/sec) RDD = relative density difference (change in counts/sec) MANU = manual OVFL = data overflow TIME = time TRIG = physiological trigger See C.8.4.9.1.3 for explanation.
Acquisition Termination Condition Data	(0018,0075)	3	Number of counts, count density, change in count density, or physiological triggers causing the termination.
Field of View Shape	(0018,1147)	3	Shape of the field of view of the PET camera. Defined Terms: CYLINDRICAL RING HEXAGONAL MULTIPLE PLANAR
Field of View Dimensions	(0018,1149)	3	Dimensions of the field of view, in mm. Transverse detector diameter followed by axial width.
Gantry/Detector Tilt	(0018,1120)	3	Angle of tilt in degrees of the gantry. See C.8.9.1.1.7 for explanation.

Gantry/Detector Slew	(0018,1121)	3	Angle of slew in degrees of the gantry. Positive slew is moving the gantry on the patient's left toward the patient's superior, when the patient is supine.
Type of Detector Motion	(0054,0202)	3	Describes the detector motion during acquisition. Defined Terms: NONE = stationary gantry STEP AND SHOOT = Interrupted motion, acquire only while stationary CONTINUOUS = Gantry motion and acquisition are simultaneous and continuous WOBBLE = wobble motion CLAMSHELL = clamshell motion
Collimator Type	(0018,1181)	2	Collimator Type. Defined Terms: NONE = no collimator RING = transverse septa
Collimator/Grid Name	(0018,1180)	3	Label describing the collimator used.
Axial Acceptance	(0054,1200)	3	Maximum axial angle accepted, in degrees.
Axial Mash	(0054,1201)	3	Number of adjacent axial lines of response mashed together. See C.8.9.1.1.8 for explanation.
Transverse Mash	(0054,1202)	3	Number of adjacent transverse lines of response mashed together. See C.8.9.1.1.9 for explanation.
Detector Element Size	(0054,1203)	3	Size of an individual detector element, in mm. Transverse dimension followed by axial dimension. For a discrete crystal, this is the crystal size. For a continuous detector, this is the pixel bin size.
Coincidence Window Width	(0054,1210)	3	The width of the coincidence timing window, in nsec. The maximum time difference accepted between two single events.
Energy Window Range Sequence	(0054,0013)	3	Sequence of Repeating Items that describes the energy windows used for this Series. This sequence may contain zero or more items. See C.8.9.1.1.10 for explanation.
>Energy Window Lower Limit	(0054,0014)	3	The lower limit of the energy window, in KeV.
>Energy Window Upper Limit	(0054,0015)	3	The upper limit of the energy window, in KeV.
Secondary Counts Type	(0054,1220)	3	Array defining the type of additional counts accumulated during acquisition. Defined terms: DLYD=delayed events SCAT=scattered events in secondary window

			SING=singles DTIM=events lost due to deadtime

C.8.9.1.1 PET Series Attribute Descriptions

Note: The meaning of a General Series in DICOM is determined by the attributes in the General Series Module and by the Source Entities (Patient, Study, Frame of Reference, Equipment) that originate the Series. The Source Entities are the single-valued entities of the 1->n relationship, where the Series is the multi-valued entity. Therefore, a Series is a group of images that: are from the same patient and study; are from the same Equipment; and, are from the same spatial Frame of Reference.

The PET Image IOD further refines a PET Series IE by the attributes in the PET Series Module, the PET Isotope Module, the PET Multi-gated Acquisition Module and the Acquisition Context Module. These are the attributes that shall not change from Image to Image. Therefore, in addition to the criteria above for a General Series (same patient, study, frame of reference, equipment), the attributes in the PET Series IE define a PET series as a group of images that: are from the same temporal frame of reference; have the same fundamental meaning (e.g. same units: either activity density, metabolism, or attenuation); are derived from the same activity source (emission or transmission); are from the same isotope and radiopharmaceutical; were derived from the same reconstruction processing; and, originated from the same acquisition setup and parameters, including the patient conditions (cardiac stress or rest) if applicable.

C.8.9.1.1.1 Specialization of Image Plane Module and Image Pixel Module Attributes

For PET Series, the following Image Pixel Module attributes shall not vary from Image to Image :

Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004)
Rows (0028,0010)
Columns (0028,0011)
Bits Allocated (0028,0100)
Bits Stored (0028,0101)
Pixel Representation (0028,0103)

For PET Series, the following Image Plane Module attributes shall not vary from Image to Image :

Pixel Spacing (0028,0030)

For PET Series where Series Type (0054,1000), Value 2 is IMAGE, the following Image Plane Module attributes shall not vary from Image to Image :

Image Orientation (Patient) (0020,0037)

Note: This means that for a Series Type (0054,1000) Value 2 of IMAGE, all images in the PET Series lie on parallel planes. The images, however, may have non-uniform spacing along the normals to the planes.

For PET Series where Series Type (0054,1000), Value 2 is REPROJECTION, the Image Orientation (0020,0037) attribute shall vary such that the images rotate about a single axis. Geometrically, the normal to each image plane is defined by the cross product of its row and column vectors. Each reprojection image has one Center Normal that passes through the center of the image. Reprojection images within a PET Series shall have their Center Normals be co-planar and pass through a single point.

C.8.9.1.1.2 Series Date, Series Time

For PET Series, Series Date (0008,0021) and Series Time (0008,0031) are specified to be Type 1. The Series Date (0008,0021) and Series Time (0008,0031) are used as the reference time for all PET Image attributes that are temporally related, including activity measurements. The Series

Date (0008,0021) and Series Time (0008,0031) are not tied to any real-world event (e.g. acquisition start, radiopharmaceutical administration) and their real-world meaning are implementation dependent.

C.8.9.1.1.3 Units

The units of the pixel values obtained after conversion from the stored pixel values (SV) (Pixel Data (7FE0,0010)) to pixel value units (U), as defined by Rescale Intercept (0028,1052) and Rescale Slope (0028,1053). Defined Terms:

CNTS = counts
NONE = unitless
CM2 = centimeter**2
PCNT = percent
CPS = counts/second
BQML = Becquerels/milliliter
MGMINML = milligram/minute/milliliter
UMOLMINML = micromole/minute/milliliter
MLMING = milliliter/minute/gram
MLG = milliliter/gram
1CM = 1/centimeter
UMOLML = micromole/milliliter
PROPCNTS = proportional to counts
PROPCPS = proportional to counts/sec
MLMINML = milliliter/minute/milliliter
MLML = milliliter/milliliter
GML = grams/milliliter
STDDEV = standard deviations

C.8.9.1.1.4 Series Type

The Series Type (0054,1000), Value 1 is used to identify the spatial location and temporal nature of the images within a PET Series. The Enumerated Values and their definitions are:

STATIC = a group of images at varying spatial locations at the same time
DYNAMIC = a group of images at a set of spatial locations (e.g. slices) at varying time slices, with all spatial locations acquired at all time slices
GATED = a group of images at the same spatial location, same starting and ending time, but acquired in different time slots of (possibly) different R-R intervals
WHOLE BODY = same as STATIC, except covering multiple axial fields of view (and therefore acquired at a different time).

Notes: 1. Using this definition and the comments in C.8.9.1.1.1, here are some examples of PET series and the encoding of Series Type (0054,1000) Value 1.

Static acquisition: a group of n transverse images at varying superior<->inferior locations, all acquired between the same starting and ending time. Series Type = STATIC.

Dynamic acquisition: a group of n*m transverse images at n superior<->inferior locations, acquired with m different starting and ending times. Series Type = DYNAMIC.

Gated acquisition: a group of n*m*p transverse images at n superior<->inferior locations, all acquired between the same starting and ending time, acquired in m different R-R Intervals (as determined by Low R-R Value (0018,1081) and High R-R Value (0018,1082)), and acquired in p time slots of a given R-R Interval (as determined by Trigger Time (0054,1000)). Series Type = GATED.

Whole body acquisition: a group of n transverse images at varying superior<->inferior locations covering a significant fraction of the entire body. Series Type = WHOLE BODY.

Multiple axial fields of view: a group of n transverse images at varying superior<->inferior locations. Series Type = WHOLE BODY.

Interleaved: group of 2*n transverse images acquired at overlapped AFOVs to increase axial sampling. Series Type = WHOLE BODY.

Sagittal (Coronal, Oblique): sagittal (coronal, oblique) re-sliced images derived by reformatting transverse images. The Series Type is STATIC, DYNAMIC, GATED, or WHOLE BODY depending on source Series Type.

Arithmetic: images derived by an arithmetic operation on operand images. The Series Type is STATIC, DYNAMIC, GATED, or WHOLE BODY depending on source Series Type.

Metabolic: images derived by a metabolic model. The Series Type is STATIC, DYNAMIC, GATED, or WHOLE BODY depending on source Series Type.

2. Using this definition, here are some images that are not stored in the same PET Series:

Two images from the same scan that were reconstructed differently.

Emission and transmission images for the same Patient and Study, even if acquired simultaneously (because emission and transmission images have different reconstruction processing).

Two images of same patient, one after NH3 injection and one after FDG injection.

Two images: an original image created from reconstructed scan data and its derived image based on a metabolic model.

The Series Type (0054,1000), Value 2 is used to identify the volumetric meaning of the images within a PET Series. The Enumerated Values and their definitions are:

IMAGE = a tomographic image slice

REPROJECTION = a projection image derived from forward projection through slices of tomographic images, using the algorithm defined in Reprojection Method (0054,1004).

C.8.9.1.1.5 Decay Correction

The Decay Correction (0054,1102) is the real-world event to which images in this Series were decay corrected. If decay correction is applied, all images in the Series shall be decay corrected to the same time. The Defined Terms and definitions are:

NONE = no decay correction
START= acquisition start time, Acquisition Time (0008,0032)
ADMIN = radiopharmaceutical administration time, Radiopharmaceutical Start Time (0018,1072)

The time to which images have been decay corrected can be derived from Decay Factor (0054,1321), Frame Reference Time (0054,1300), Radionuclide Half Life (0018,1075), Series Date (0008,0021), and Series Time (0008,0031).

C.8.9.1.1.6 Acquisition Start Condition

Acquisition Start Condition (0018,0073) is the method of starting acquisition data collection. The Defined Terms and definitions are:

DENS = preset count density (counts/sec) was reached
RDD = preset relative count density difference (change in counts/sec) was reached
MANU = acquisition was started manually
TIME = preset time limit was reached
AUTO = start automatically, when ready
TRIG = preset number of physiological triggers was reached

C.8.9.1.1.7 Gantry/Detector Tilt

Gantry/Detector Tilt (0018,1120) for PET Image data is the angle in degrees of the gantry relative to the patient's major (Head to Feet) axis (or the table supporting the patient). Positive tilt is moving the top of the gantry towards the patient's feet.

C.8.9.1.1.8 Axial Mash

Axial Mash (0054,1201) is multi-valued and is defined as the number of unique axial Lines of Response (LOR) that were mashed together (center of the axial field of view only). Value 1 is the number of LORs mashed for an odd slice. Value 2 is the number of LORs mashed for an even slice. For discrete crystal scanners, each unique LOR corresponds to a pair of crystals. For continuous detectors whose bin size is variable, the number of LORs mashed is determined by the actual bin size divided by the Detector Element Size (0054,1203), Value 2. The value of Axial Mash (0054,1201) is the same regardless of whether the mashing was done during acquisition or reconstruction.

Note: As an example on a discrete crystal scanner, if a ring difference of -2,0,+2 are binned as an odd slice and a ring difference of -1,+1 are binned as an even slice, then the Axial Mash (0054,1201) is equal to 3\2 .

C.8.9.1.1.9 Transverse Mash

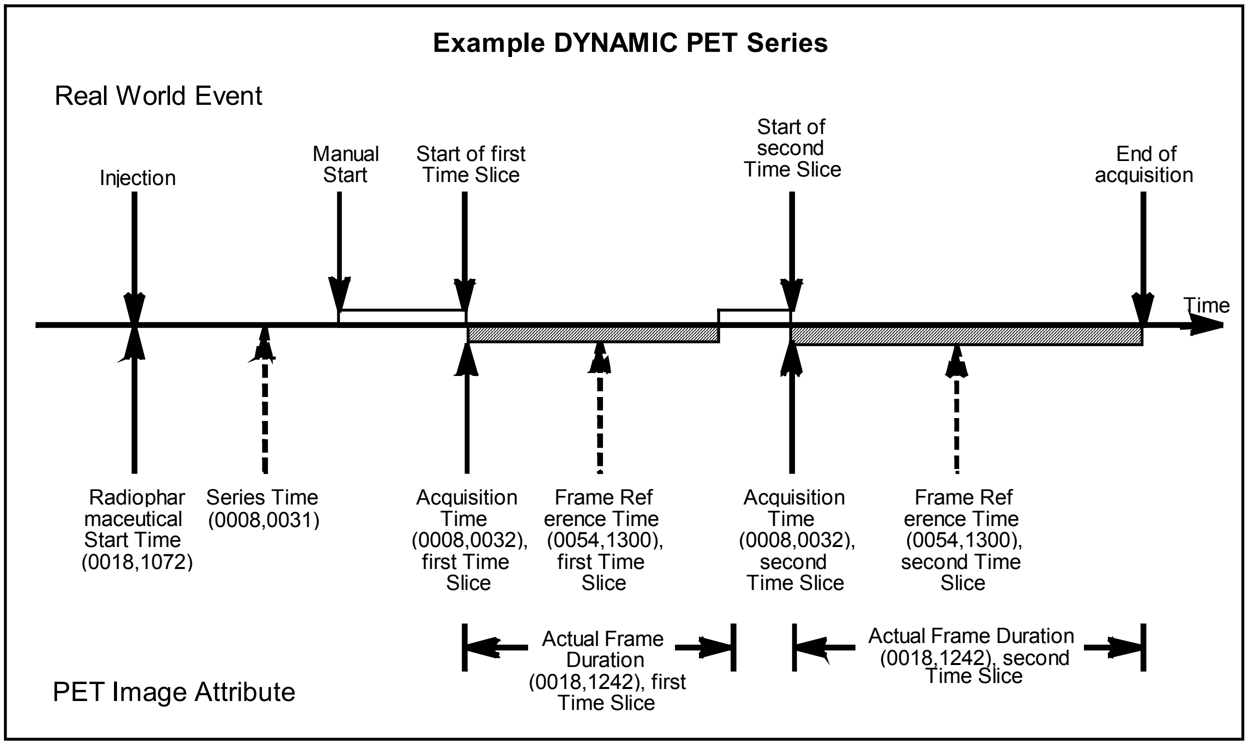
Transverse Mash (0054,1202) is defined as the number of unique transverse Lines of Response (LOR) that were mashed together. For discrete crystal scanners, each unique LOR corresponds to a pair of crystals. For continuous detectors whose bin size is variable, the number of LORs mashed is determined by the actual bin size divided by the Detector Element Size (0054,1203), Value 1. The value of Transverse Mash (0054,1202) is the same regardless of whether the mashing was done during acquisition or reconstruction.

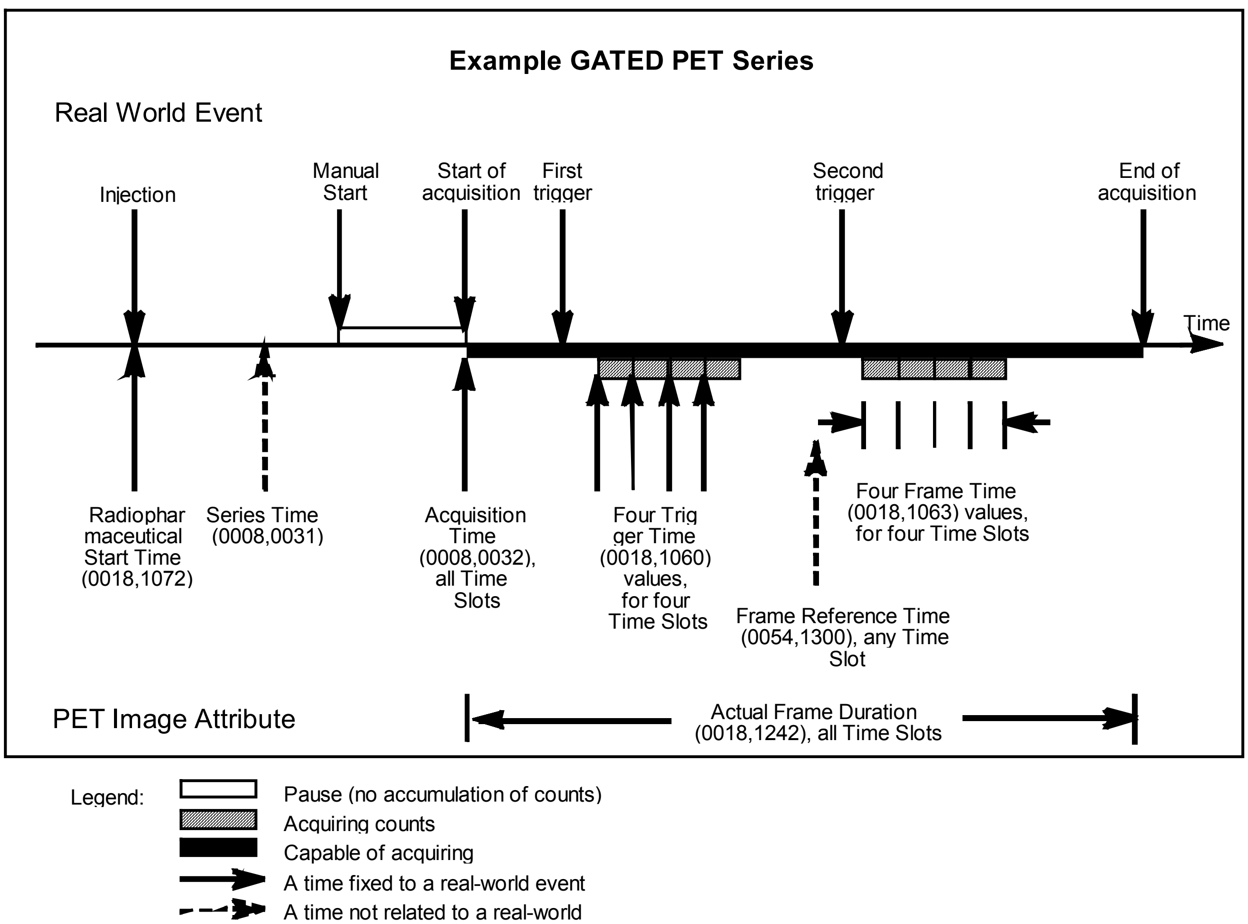
C.8.9.1.1.10 Energy Window Range Sequence

Multiple energy windows are allowed in order to allow coincidence events based on additional Energy Windows (e.g. Compton events scattered in the detector). All energy windows are assumed to contribute to all images in the PET Series.

C.8.9.1.1.11 Temporal Relationships of Images in PET Series

The following diagram shows the temporal relationships of images within a PET Series.


Example DYNAMIC PET Series
Real World Event
Injection
Manual Start
Start of first Time Slice
Start of second Time Slice
End of acquisition
Time
Radiophar maceutical Start Time (0018,1072)
Series Time (0008,0031)
Acquisition Time (0008,0032), first Time Slice
Frame Ref erence Time (0054,1300), first Time Slice
Acquisition Time (0008,0032), second Time Slice
Frame Ref erence Time (0054,1300), second Time Slice
Actual Frame Duration (0018,1242), first Time Slice
Actual Frame Duration (0018,1242), second Time Slice
PET Image Attribute


Example GATED PET Series
Real World Event
Injection
Manual Start
Start of acquisition
First trigger
Second trigger
End of acquisition
Time
Radiophar maceutical Start Time (0018,1072)
Series Time (0008,0031)
Acquisition Time (0008,0032), all Time Slots
Four Trig ger Time (0018,1060) values, for four Time Slots
Four Frame Time (0018,1063) values, for four Time Slots
Frame Reference Time (0054,1300), any Time Slot
Actual Frame Duration (0018,1242), all Time Slots
PET Image Attribute
Legend:
Pause (no accumulation of counts)
Acquiring counts
Capable of acquiring
A time fixed to a real-world event
A time not related to a real-world

C.8.9.2 PET Isotope Module

Table C.8-61 contains IOD Attributes that describe a PET Isotope.

Table C.8-61 - PET ISOTOPE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Radiopharmaceutical Information Sequence	(0054,0016)	2	Sequence of Items that describe isotope information. Zero or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>Radionuclide Code Sequence	(0054,0300)	2	Sequence that identifies the radionuclide. This sequence shall contain exactly one item.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 4020 .*	
>Radiopharmaceutical Route	(0018,1070)	3	Route of administration.
>Administration Route Code Sequence	(0054,0302)	3	Sequence that identifies the administration route of the radiopharmaceutical. This sequence shall contain exactly one item.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 11 .*	
>Radiopharmaceutical Volume	(0018,1071)	3	Volume of administered radiopharmaceutical in cubic cm.
>Radiopharmaceutical Start Time	(0018,1072)	3	Time of start of administration. The actual time of radiopharmaceutical administration to the patient for imaging purposes, using the same time base as Series Time (0008,0031). The use of this Attribute is deprecated in favor of Radiopharmaceutical Start Datetime (0018,1078). Note: The use of a time alone can cause confusion when the procedure spans midnight.
>Radiopharmaceutical Start Datetime	(0018,1078)	3	Date and time of start of administration. The actual date and time of radiopharmaceutical administration to the patient for imaging purposes, using the same time base as Series Time (0008,0031).
>Radiopharmaceutical Stop Time	(0018,1073)	3	Time of end of administration. The actual ending time of radiopharmaceutical administration to the patient for imaging purposes, using the same time base as Series Time (0008,0031). The use of this Attribute is deprecated in favor of Radiopharmaceutical Stop Datetime (0018,1079). Note: The use of a time alone can cause confusion when the procedure spans midnight.
>Radiopharmaceutical Stop Datetime	(0018,1079)	3	Date and time of end of administration. The actual ending date and time of radiopharmaceutical administration to the

			patient for imaging purposes, using the same time base as Series Time (0008,0031).
>Radionuclide Total Dose	(0018,1074)	3	The radiopharmaceutical dose administered to the patient measured in Becquerels (Bq) at the Radiopharmaceutical Start Time (0018,1072). Note: In other IODs, such as the NM IOD, this same attribute is specified in MegaBecquerels (MBq).
>Radionuclide Half Life	(0018,1075)	3	The radionuclide half life, in seconds, that was used in the correction of this image.
>Radionuclide Positron Fraction	(0018,1076)	3	The radionuclide positron fraction (fraction of decays that are by positron emission) that was used in the correction of this image.
>Radiopharmaceutical Specific Activity	(0018,1077)	3	The activity per unit mass of the radiopharmaceutical, in Bq/micromole, at the Radiopharmaceutical Start Time (0018,1072).
>Radiopharmaceutical	(0018,0031)	3	Name of the radiopharmaceutical.
>Radiopharmaceutical Code Sequence	(0054,0304)	3	Sequence that identifies the radiopharmaceutical. This sequence shall contain exactly one item.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 4021 .*	
Intervention Drug Information Sequence	(0018,0026)	3	Sequence of Repeating Items that describes the intervention drugs used. Zero or more items may be included in this sequence.
>Intervention Drug Name	(0018,0034)	3	Name of the intervention drug.
>Intervention Drug Code Sequence	(0018,0029)	3	Sequence that identifies the intervention drug name.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 10 .*	
>Intervention Drug Start Time	(0018,0035)	3	Time of administration of the intervention drug, using the same time base as for the Series Time (0008,0031).
>Intervention Drug Stop Time	(0018,0027)	3	Time of completion of administration of the intervention drug, using the same time base as for the Series Time (0008,0031).
>Intervention Drug Dose	(0018,0028)	3	Intervention drug dose, in mg.

C.8.9.3 PET Multi-gated Acquisition Module

Table C.8-62 contains IOD Attributes that describe a PET Multi-gated Acquisition.

Table C.8-62 - PET MULTI-GATED ACQUISITION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Beat Rejection Flag	(0018,1080)	2	Heart beat duration sorting has been

			applied. Enumerated values: Y = yes N = no
Trigger Source or Type	(0018,1061)	3	Text indicating trigger source. Defined terms: EKG
PVC Rejection	(0018,1085)	3	Description of the type of PVC rejection criteria used.
Skip Beats	(0018,1086)	3	Number of beats skipped after a detected arrhythmia.
Heart Rate	(0018,1088)	3	Average number of heart beats per minute for the collection period for this image. This shall include all accepted beats as well as rejected beats.
Framing Type	(0018,1064)	3	Description of type of framing performed. Defined Terms: FORW = forward BACK = backward PCNT = forward/backward by percentage

C.8.9.4 PET Image Module

Table C.8-63 contains IOD Attributes that describe PET images.

Table C.8-63 - PET IMAGE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Image Type	(0008,0008)	1	Image identification characteristics. See C.8.9.4.1.1 for specialization.
Samples per Pixel	(0028,0002)	1	Number of samples (planes) in this image. This value shall be 1.
Photometric Interpretation	(0028,0004)	1	Specifies the intended interpretation of the pixel data. See C.8.9.4.1.2 for specialization.
Bits Allocated	(0028,0100)	1	Number of bits allocated for each pixel sample. Each sample shall have the same number of bits allocated. Enumerated values: 16.
Bits Stored	(0028,0101)	1	Number of bits stored for each pixel sample. Each sample shall have the same number of bits stored. The value shall be the same as the value in Bits Allocated (0028,0100).
High Bit	(0028,0102)	1	Most significant bit for pixel sample data. Each sample shall have the same high bit. Shall be one less than the value in Bits Stored (0028,0101).
Rescale Intercept	(0028,1052)	1	The value b in relationship between stored values (SV) and pixel value units (U) defined in Units (0054,1001): U = m*SV+b. The Rescale Intercept is always zero for PET images.
Rescale Slope	(0028,1053)	1	m in the equation specified in Rescale Intercept (0028,1052).
Frame Reference Time	(0054,1300)	1	The time that the pixel values in the image occurred. Frame Reference Time is the offset, in msec, from the Series reference time. See explanation in C.8.9.4.1.5.
Trigger Time	(0018,1060)	1C	Time interval, in msec, from the start of the trigger to the beginning of data acquisition for this image. Required if Series Type (0054,1000), Value 1 is GATED.
Frame Time	(0018,1063)	1C	Nominal duration per individual frame, in msec. Required if Series Type (0054,1000), Value 1 is GATED. See C.8.9.4.1.3 for explanation.
Low R-R Value	(0018,1081)	1C	R-R interval lower limit for beat rejection, in msec. Required if Series Type (0054,1000), Value 1 is GATED and Beat Rejection Flag (0018,1080) is Y.
High R-R Value	(0018,1082)	1C	R-R interval upper limit for beat rejection, in msec. Required if Series Type

			(0054,1000), Value 1 is GATED and Beat Rejection Flag (0018,1080) is Y.
Lossy Image Compression	(0028,2110)	1C	Specifies whether an Image has undergone lossy compression. Enumerated values: 00 = Image has NOT been subjected to lossy compression. 01 = Image has been subjected to lossy compression. See C.7.6.1.1.5. Required if Lossy Compression has been performed on the image.
Image Index	(0054,1330)	1	An index identifying the position of this image within a PET Series. See C.8.9.4.1.9 for explanation.
Acquisition Date	(0008,0022)	2	The date the acquisition of data that resulted in this image started. See C.8.9.4.1.4 for specialization.
Acquisition Time	(0008,0032)	2	The time the acquisition of data that resulted in this image started. See C.8.9.4.1.4 for specialization.
Actual Frame Duration	(0018,1242)	2	Elapsed time of the data acquisition for this image, in msec. See C.8.9.4.1.6 for explanation.
Nominal Interval	(0018,1062)	3	Average duration of accepted beats, in msec, of the R-R interval.
Intervals Acquired	(0018,1083)	3	Number of heartbeats that fall within Low R-R Value (0018,1081) and High R-R Value (0018,1082), and were therefore accepted and contribute coincidence events to this R-R Interval.
Intervals Rejected	(0018,1084)	3	Number of heartbeats that fall outside Low R-R Value (0018,1081) and High R-R Value (0018,1082), and do not contribute coincidence events to this R-R Interval. However, they may contribute coincidence events to other R-R Intervals.
Primary (Prompts) Counts Accumulated	(0054,1310)	3	The sum of events that occur in the primary event channel. The counts include Trues +Scatter+ Randoms if Randoms Correction Method (0054,1100) is NONE; otherwise the counts are Trues +Scatter.
Secondary Counts Accumulated	(0054,1311)	3	Sum of counts accumulated in secondary channels. See C.8.9.4.1.7 for explanation.
Slice Sensitivity Factor	(0054,1320)	3	The slice-to-slice sensitivity correction factor that was used to correct this image. The value shall be one if no slice sensitivity correction was applied.
Decay Factor	(0054,1321)	1C	The decay factor that was used to scale

			this image. Required if Decay Correction (0054,1102) is other than NONE. If decay correction is applied, all images in the Series shall be decay corrected to the same time.
Dose Calibration Factor	(0054,1322)	3	Factor that was used to scale this image from counts/sec to Bq/ml using a dose calibrator. The value shall be one if no dose calibration was applied. See C.8.9.4.1.8 for explanation.
Scatter Fraction Factor	(0054,1323)	3	An estimate of the fraction of acquired counts that were due to scatter and were corrected in this image. The value shall be zero if no scatter correction was applied.
Dead Time Factor	(0054,1324)	3	The average dead time correction factor that was applied to this image. The value shall be one if no dead time correction was applied.
Include 'General Anatomy Optional Macro' Table 10-7			No Context ID for the Anatomic Region Sequence is defined.
Slice Progression Direction	(0054,0500)	3	Describes the anatomical direction that slices are progressing as the slices are considered in order (as defined by the Slice Index. See section C.8.9.4.1.9 for a definition of Slice Index). Meaningful only for cardiac images. When View Code Sequence (0054,0220) indicates a short axis view, then Enumerated Values are: APEX_TO_BASE BASE_TO_APEX
View Code Sequence	(0054,0220)	3	Sequence that describes the projection of the anatomic region of interest. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
> Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 26.*	
> View Modifier Code Sequence	(0054,0222)	2C	View Modifier. Required if needed to fully specify the View. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>> Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 23.*	

Note: Referenced Overlay Sequence (0008,1130) and Referenced Curve Sequence (0008,1145) were previously included in this Module as optional Attributes but have been retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.8.9.4.1 PET Image Module Attribute Descriptions

C.8.9.4.1.1 Image Type

For PET Images, Image Type (0008,0008) is specified to be Type 1.

Note: For PET images, Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 will be ORIGINAL for reconstructed images. DERIVED may be appropriate for some other results images. For PET images, Image Type (0008,0008) Value 2 will be PRIMARY.

C.8.9.4.1.2 Photometric Interpretation

For PET images, Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) shall have one of the following Enumerated Values:

MONOCHROME2

See C.7.6.3.1.2 for definition of this term.

C.8.9.4.1.3 Frame Time

The Frame Time (0018,1063) is the explicit duration of the gated frame when Framing Type (0018,1064) is equal to FORW or BACK. Frame Time (0018,1063) is the nominal duration of the gated frame when Framing Type (0018,1064) is equal to PCNT.

C.8.9.4.1.4 Acquisition Date, Acquisition Time

For PET Images, Acquisition Date (0008,0022) and Acquisition Time (0008,0032) are specified to be Type 2. The Acquisition Date (0008,0022) and Acquisition Time (0008,0032) use the same time base as Series Time (0008,0031).

For Series Type (0054,1000) Value 1 equal to STATIC, WHOLE BODY, or DYNAMIC, the Acquisition Time (0008,0032) is the real-world beginning of the accumulation of events into this Image. For STATIC, WHOLE BODY, or DYNAMIC Series, the Acquisition Time (0008,0032) may vary from Image to Image within a PET Series.

For Series Type (0054,1000) Value 1 equal to GATED, the Acquisition Time (0008,0032) is the real-world beginning of the *capability* of accumulating events into this Image. (The *actual* accumulation of events has only occurred during an R-R Interval.) For GATED Series, the Acquisition Time (0008,0032) shall not vary from Image to Image within a PET Series.

C.8.9.4.1.5 Frame Reference Time

Frame Reference Time (0054,1300) is the time that the pixel values in the Image occurred. Frame Reference Time is defined as the time offset, in msec, from the Series Reference Time, where the Series Reference Time is defined by the combination of Series Date (0008,0021) and Series Time (0008,0031).

Note: Frame Reference Time (0054,1300) is implementation dependent and may or may not be tied to any real-world event. To illustrate the meaning of Frame Reference Time (0054,1300), the following are some examples of possible implementations:

Example 1: For a long-lived radionuclide and a non-time-varying radiopharmaceutical distribution, an implementation sets the Frame Reference Time (0054,1300) to the midpoint of the Actual Frame Duration (0018,1242).

Example 2: For a short-lived radionuclide and a non-time-varying radiopharmaceutical distribution, an implementation sets the Frame Reference Time (0054,1300) to the time at which the average activity occurs for a decaying radionuclide, T_{ave} . If image acquisition started at the Series Reference Time and the image has not been decay corrected, then T_{ave} will be:

$$T_{ave} = \frac{1}{\lambda} \ln \frac{\lambda T}{1 - e^{-\lambda T}}$$

where: lambda = decay constant = (ln 2)/$T_{1/2}$
$T_{1/2}$ = Radionuclide Half Life (0018,1075)
T = Actual Frame Duration (0018,1242)

Note that T_{ave} will be sooner than the midpoint of the Actual Frame Duration (0018,1242).

Example 3: For a short-lived radionuclide and a time-varying radiopharmaceutical distribution, an implementation with supplementary data (e.g. scanner count rates or blood sample data) sets the Frame Reference Time (0054,1300) to a derived time determined to be its best estimate of the time that the pixel values occurred.

C.8.9.4.1.6 Actual Frame Duration

The accumulation of counts for a PET Image shall occur entirely between:

(1) the acquisition starting time (as specified by Acquisition Date (0008,0022) and Acquisition Time (0008,0032)), and

(2) the acquisition ending time, which is equal to the acquisition starting time in (1) plus the Actual Frame Duration (0018,1242).

If the Series Type (0054,1000), Value 1 is GATED, then the actual accumulation of counts has only occurred during an R-R Interval.

C.8.9.4.1.7 Secondary Counts Accumulated

Secondary Counts Accumulated (0054,1311) is multi-valued and, if supplied, has Values corresponding to the Secondary Counts Type (0054,1220). The number and order of the Values in Secondary Counts Accumulated (0054,1311) shall be the same as Secondary Counts Type (0054,1220).

C.8.9.4.1.8 Dose Calibration Factor

The Dose Calibration Factor (0054,1322) is the factor that was used to scale this image from counts/sec to Bq/ml using an external dose calibrator. The value shall be one if no dose calibration was applied. The application of a dose calibration correction is specified by Corrected Image (0028,0051) equal to DCAL.

Note: Dose Calibration Factor (0054,1322) is not equal to the inverse of the sensitivity (kcps/Bq/ml) of the scanner, which is usually measured for a given radiopharmaceutical distribution and excluding the effects of attenuation.

C.8.9.4.1.9 Image Index

Image Index (0054,1330) is an index identifying the position of this image within a PET Series.

Note: The scheme for encoding Image Index (0054,1330) is as follows. Images within a PET Series can be viewed as a multi-dimensional array whose possible dimensions include R-R Intervals, Time Slots, Time Slices, and Slices. The dimensions of the array are defined by the Series Type (0054,1000) Value 1. Each dimension of the array has an index that identifies the position of this image in the array. The indices are: R-R Interval Index, Time Slot Index, Time Slice Index, Slice Index. The indices are calculated as follows:

Index	Range of Index	Order of Images along that Dimension

R-R Interval Index	1 to Number of R-R Intervals (0054,0061)	Increasing Low R-R Value (0018,1081)
Time Slot Index	1 to Number of Time Slots (0054,0071)	Increasing Trigger Time (0018,1060)
Time Slice Index	1 to Number of Time Slices (0054,0101)	Increasing Frame Reference Time (0054,1300)
Slice Index	1 to Number of Slices (0054,0081)	If Series Type (0054,1000) Value 2 is IMAGE: Order is in increasing position along the normal, where the normal is determined by the cross product of the direction cosines of the row and column of the image. See Image Orientation (0020,0037) in the Image Plane Module. If Series Type (0054,1000) Value 2 is REPROJECTION: Order is in increasing or decreasing angle of the normal, where the normal is determined by the cross product of the direction cosines of the row and column of the image. See Image Orientation (0020,0037) in the Image Plane Module. (Note that reprojection images rotate about only a single axis as described in C.8.9.1.1.1. Therefore, all normals are co-planar and make a single angle with respect to each other.)

Using these index values the position of this image within the multi-dimensional array (the Image Index (0054,1330)) is calculated as follows:

Series Type (0054,1000), Value 1	Dimensions of Array (Last dimension is most rapidly changing)	Encoding of Image Index (0054,1330)
STATIC	Slice	Slice Index
WHOLE BODY	Slice	Slice Index
DYNAMIC	Time Slice \\ Slice	((Time Slice Index - 1) * (Number of Slices (0054,0081))) + Slice Index
GATED	R-R Interval \\ Time Slot \\ Slice	((R-R Interval Index - 1) * (Number of Time Slots (0054,0071)) * (Number of Slices (0054,0081))) + ((Time Slot Index - 1) * (Number of Slices (0054,0081))) + Slice Index

C.8.9.5 PET Curve Module

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.8.10 Hardcopy Modules

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.8.11 DX Modules

C.8.11.1 DX Series Module

The Digital X-Ray IODs use the General Series module described in section C.7.3.1, specialized by the DX Series Module, to describe the DICOM Series Entity described in A.1.2.3, and to define what constitutes a Series for the context of projection Digital X-Ray.

Note: In an abstract sense, a series may be viewed from the perspective of an acquisition device or a display device.

In the former case, it is convenient to group images related by commonality of acquisition parameters, such as the imaging subject's physical relationship to the equipment (such as a patient lying in a particular position with respect to the equipment), a single acquisition initiation (such as an MR pulse sequence or spiral CT run), or a single workflow action on the part of the operator (such as the reading of a collection of CR plates from the same examination).

In the latter case, it is often convenient to organize images for viewing or browsing into series based upon other criteria such as physical or temporal proximity that may not necessarily correspond with the order or grouping in which the images were acquired.

This conflict is most apparent in the existing CR Image IOD C.8.1, where the definition of View Position at the Series Level in CR Series C.8.1.1 implies, for example, that a Lateral and PA Chest X-Ray may not be grouped into a single series. While this may be in keeping with the traditional CT and MR notions that a change in an imaging subject's physical orientation with respect to the imaging equipment implies a new series, it is most unnatural from the point of view of a reader viewing or browsing a collection of projection radiographic images.

A similar example pertains in the case of the traditional set of views of the maxillary and mandibular dentition, in which all the images are logically grouped in one sequence, but the imaging equipment moves with respect to the imaging subject, and the size of the detector may vary between images.

Accordingly, the constraint (apparent from the CT, MR and CR IODs) that a change in position, detector, body part or laterality implies a new series has been relaxed in the DX IODs, through the use of the DX Anatomy Imaged Module and the DX Positioning Module which define Attributes at the Image level that specify these concepts with finer granularity. This approach is consistent with that used in the XA, XRF, US and NM IODs.

Images within a series are still required, if the Condition for the inclusion of the Frame of Reference Module is met, to be relative to the same Frame of Reference.

Table C.8-68 specifies the Attributes that identify and describe general information about the DX Series.

Table C.8-68
DX SERIES MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Modality	(0008,0060)	1	Type of equipment that originally acquired the data used to create the images in this Series. Enumerated Values: DX PX IO MG See section C.7.3.1.1.1 for further explanation.

Referenced Performed Procedure Step Sequence	(0008,1111)	1C	Uniquely identifies the Performed Procedure Step SOP Instance to which the Series is related (e.g. a Modality or General-Purpose Performed Procedure Step SOP Instance). The Sequence shall have one Item. Required if the Modality Performed Procedure Step SOP Class, General Purpose Performed Procedure Step SOP Class is supported.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class. Required if Referenced Performed Procedure Step Sequence (0008,1111) is sent.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance. Required if Referenced Performed Procedure Step Sequence (0008,1111) is sent.
Presentation Intent Type	(0008,0068)	1	Identifies the intent of the images that are contained within this Series. Enumerated Values: FOR PRESENTATION FOR PROCESSING See C.8.11.1.1.1 for further explanation.

C.8.11.1.1 DX Series Attribute Descriptions

C.8.11.1.1.1 Presentation Intent Type

Presentation Intent Type (0008,0068) shall identify the intent for the purposes of display or other presentation of all Images within this Series.

Notes: 1. Since this is a Series level attribute, all Images within a Series have the same value for this Attribute.

2. The intent of this restriction is to ensure that FOR PRESENTATION and FOR PROCESSING images are placed in separate Series, so that no confusion can arise as to which images are suitable for diagnostic reading as determined by local policy.

A Series of Images intended for viewing by an observer, after application of any grayscale transformations specified in the image object such as VOI LUT, shall have an Enumerated Value of FOR PRESENTATION.

Notes: 1. These images may still be of Image Type (0008,0008) ORIGINAL rather than DERIVED despite the possibility that they may have undergone some processing, such as unsharp masking. In this case a DERIVED image would have undergone yet further processing to make it substantially different from the original. See Figure C.8-13.

2. These images may still be subjected to processing or further processing, if appropriate, depending on the application.

3. These images are intended for display on a device, without (further) processing, since that device may not be capable of image processing. The quality of the displayed image or its suitability for any purpose is beyond the scope of the DICOM Standard.

Images that have been corrected to account for characteristics of the detector but which are intended to be further processed before being displayed, shall have an Enumerated Value of FOR PROCESSING.

Note: This type is provided to allow the functions of image acquisition and image processing for presentation to be separated and yet have images conveyed between the two processes using a DICOM object. Individual sites or users may choose to substitute their own specialized processing in place of that supplied by the implementor.

Images available at this stage of processing may be useful for quality control and problem solving purposes, as well as academic research.

Images of this type may also be archived, retrieved and processed with different algorithms or parameters in order to alter the appearance of specific features for clinical purposes.

The nature of the detector correction that may have been applied before sending an image of type FOR PROCESSING is not specified. In particular, acquisitions that acquire several sets of matrices of pixel values (such as image data, gain offset and a defect map) must perform some processing (detector correction) before a DX Image object can be instantiated.

The nature of the processing that may have been applied before sending an image of type FOR PRESENTATION is also not specified.

It is expected that individual implementors will use Private Attributes to convey specifics of the processing applied that may be of use for further processing by those aware of the parameters and algorithms. The diversity of detector types and processing algorithms make it undesirable to standardize such parameters.

Whether or not the spatial locations of all pixels are preserved during the processing of the source image that resulted in the current image can be indicated by Spatial Locations Preserved (0028,135A) in a Source Image Sequence (0008,2112) reference from the FOR PRESENTATION image to a FOR PROCESSING predecessor.

If images from the same exposure exist with different Values of Presentation Intent Type (0008,0068), then they shall have different SOP Instance UIDs.

Notes: 1. Source Image Sequence (0008,2112) may be used to relate these images.

2. The SOP Class UIDs of the two images will also be different.

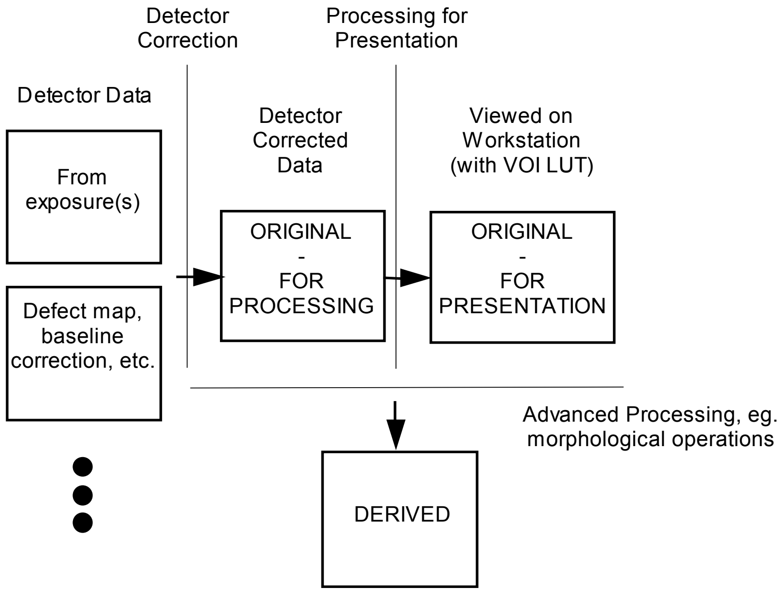


Figure C.8-13 - Explanation of Presentation Intent Type

C.8.11.2 DX Anatomy Imaged Module

Table C.8-69 contains IOD Attributes that describe the anatomy contained in a DX IOD.

Table C.8-69
DX ANATOMY IMAGED MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Image Laterality	(0020,0062)	1	Laterality of (possibly paired) body part (as described in Anatomic Region Sequence (0008,2218)) examined. Enumerated Values: R = right L = left U = unpaired B = both left and right Note: This Attribute is mandatory, in order to ensure that images may be positioned correctly relative to one another for display. Shall be consistent with any laterality information contained in Primary Anatomic Structure Modifier Sequence (0008,2230), if present. Note: Laterality (0020,0060) is a Series level Attribute and must be the same for all Images in the Series, hence it must be absent.
Include 'General Anatomy Required Macro' Table 10-6			Defined Context ID for the Anatomic Region Sequence is 4009. This is the anatomic region that is placed on the table

	or bucky for examination. Note: It is strongly recommended that Anatomic Region Sequence (0008,2218) be sent with a value, in order to ensure that images may be positioned correctly relative to one another for display.

C.8.11.2.1 DX Anatomy Imaged Attribute Descriptions

The Attributes in this Module extend the function of Body Part Examined (0018,0015) as used in other IODs, and are intended to be used to facilitate the management of images and series in terms of routing, storage and display, as well as to dictate certain Conditions on Attributes and Modules in the DX IOD.

C.8.11.3 DX Image Module

Table C.8-70 contains IOD Attributes that describe a DX Image by specializing Attributes of the General Image and Image Pixel Modules, and adding additional Attributes.

Table C.8-70
DX IMAGE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Image Type	(0008,0008)	1	Image identification characteristics. See C.8.11.3.1.1 for specialization.
Samples per Pixel	(0028,0002)	1	Number of samples in this image. Shall have an Enumerated Value of 1.
Photometric Interpretation	(0028,0004)	1	Specifies the intended interpretation of the pixel data. Enumerated Values: MONOCHROME1 MONOCHROME2
Bits Allocated	(0028,0100)	1	Number of bits allocated for each pixel sample. Enumerated Values: 8, 16
Bits Stored	(0028,0101)	1	Number of bits stored for each pixel sample. Enumerated Values: 6 to 16
High Bit	(0028,0102)	1	Most significant bit for pixel sample data. Shall have an Enumerated Value of one less than the value in Bit Stored (0028,0101).
Pixel Representation	(0028,0103)	1	Data representation of the pixel samples. Shall have the Enumerated Value: 0000H = Unsigned Integer.
Pixel Intensity Relationship	(0028,1040)	1	The relationship between the Pixel sample values and the X-Ray beam intensity. Enumerated Values: LIN = Linearly proportional to X-Ray beam intensity

			LOG = Logarithmically proportional to X-Ray beam intensity See C.8.11.3.1.2 for further explanation.
Pixel Intensity Relationship Sign	(0028,1041)	1	The sign of the relationship between the Pixel sample values stored in Pixel Data (7FE0,0010) and the X-Ray beam intensity. Enumerated Values; 1 = Lower pixel values correspond to less X-Ray beam intensity -1 = Higher pixel values correspond to less X-Ray beam intensity See C.8.11.3.1.2 for further explanation.
Rescale Intercept	(0028,1052)	1	The value b in the relationship between stored values (SV) in Pixel Data (7FE0,0010) and the output units specified in Rescale Type (0028,1054). Output units = m*SV + b. Enumerated Value: 0 See C.8.11.3.1.2 for further explanation.
Rescale Slope	(0028,1053)	1	m in the equation specified by Rescale Intercept (0028,1052). Enumerated Value: 1 See C.8.11.3.1.2 for further explanation.
Rescale Type	(0028,1054)	1	Specifies the output units of Rescale Slope (0028,1053) and Rescale Intercept (0028,1052). Enumerated Value: US = Unspecified See C.8.11.3.1.2 for further explanation.
Presentation LUT Shape	(2050,0020)	1	Specifies an identity transformation for the Presentation LUT, other than to account for the value of Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004), such that the output of all grayscale transformations defined in the IOD containing this Module are defined to be P-Values. Enumerated Values: IDENTITY - output is in P-Values - shall be used if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) is MONOCHROME2. INVERSE - output after inversion is in P-Values - shall be used if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) is MONOCHROME1. See C.8.11.3.1.2 for further explanation.
Lossy Image Compression	(0028,2110)	1	Specifies whether an Image has undergone lossy compression. Enumerated Values: 00 = Image has NOT been subjected

			to lossy compression. 01 = Image has been subjected to lossy compression. See C.7.6.1.1.5 for further explanation.
Lossy Image Compression Ratio	(0028,2112)	1C	See C.7.6.1.1.5 for further explanation. Required if Lossy Compression has been performed on the Image.
Derivation Description	(0008,2111)	3	A text description of how this image was derived. See C.8.11.3.1.4 for further explanation.
Acquisition Device Processing Description	(0018,1400)	3	Indicates any visual processing performed on the images prior to exchange. See C.8.11.3.1.3 for further explanation.
Acquisition Device Processing Code	(0018,1401)	3	Code representing the device-specific processing associated with the image (e.g. Organ Filtering code) Note: This Code is manufacturer specific but provides useful annotation information to the knowledgeable observer.
Patient Orientation	(0020,0020)	1	Patient direction of the rows and columns of the image. See C.7.6.1.1.1 for further explanation.
Calibration Image	(0050,0004)	3	Indicates whether a reference object (phantom) of known size is present in the image and was used for calibration. Enumerated Values: YES NO Device is identified using the Device module. See C.7.6.12 for further explanation.
Burned In Annotation	(0028,0301)	1	Indicates whether or not image contains sufficient burned in annotation to identify the patient and date the image was acquired. Enumerated Values: YES NO
VOI LUT Sequence	(0028,3010)	1C	Defines a sequence of VOI LUTs. See C.8.11.3.1.5 for further explanation. Required if Presentation Intent Type (0008,0068) is FOR PRESENTATION and Window Center (0028,1050) is not present. May also be present if Window Center (0028,1050) is present.
>LUT Descriptor	(0028,3002)	1C	Specifies the format of the LUT Data in this Sequence.

			See C.8.11.3.1.5 for further explanation. Required if the VOI LUT Sequence (0028,3010) is sent.
>LUT Explanation	(0028,3003)	3	Free form text explanation of the meaning of the LUT.
>LUT Data	(0028,3006)	1C	LUT Data in this Sequence. Required if the VOI LUT Sequence (0028,3010) is sent.
Window Center	(0028,1050)	1C	Defines a Window Center for display. See C.8.11.3.1.5 for further explanation. Required if Presentation Intent Type (0008,0068) is FOR PRESENTATION and VOI LUT Sequence (0028,3010) is not present. May also be present if VOI LUT Sequence (0028,3010) is present.
Window Width	(0028,1051)	1C	Window Width for display. See C.8.11.3.1.5 for further explanation. Required if Window Center (0028,1050) is sent.
Window Center & Width Explanation	(0028,1055)	3	Free form explanation of the meaning of the Window Center and Width. Multiple values correspond to multiple Window Center and Width values.

C.8.11.3.1 DX Image Attribute Descriptions

C.8.11.3.1.1 Image Type

Value 1 shall identify the Pixel Data Characteristics in accordance with Section C.7.6.1.1.2 where the Enumerated Values are defined to be ORIGINAL or DERIVED.

Note: DX images may still be of type ORIGINAL rather than DERIVED despite the possibility that they may have undergone some processing. In this case a DERIVED image would have undergone yet further processing to make it substantially different from the original.

Value 2 shall identify the Patient Examination Characteristics in accordance with Section C.7.6.1.1.2 where the Enumerated Values are defined to be PRIMARY or SECONDARY.

Note: DX images generally use PRIMARY value for images captured from patient exposure.

If images from the same exposure exist with different Values of Image Type, then they shall have different SOP Instance UIDs.

Note: Source Image Sequence (0008,2112) may be used to relate these images.

Value 3 (which is specific to the IOD) shall be present and have zero length (null value).

Other Values (4 and beyond) are optional and implementation specific.

C.8.11.3.1.2 Pixel Intensity Relationship and Grayscale Transformations

Pixel Intensity Relationship (0028,1040) and Pixel Intensity Relationship Sign (0028,1041) describe how the stored pixel values in Pixel Data (7FE0,0010) are related to the X-Ray beam intensity incident on the detector.

They do not define a transformation intended to be applied to the pixel data for presentation.

Note: For example, if Pixel Intensity Relationship (0028,1040) is LIN and Pixel Intensity Relationship Sign (0028,1041) is -1, then lower values of Pixel Data (7FE0,0010) indicate higher X-Ray beam intensities corresponding to less radiographically dense regions projected on the image such as through air, and higher values of Pixel Data (7FE0,0010) indicate lower X-Ray beam intensities corresponding to more radiographically dense regions projected on the image such as through bone and radio-opaque contrast agents.

The transformation to be applied to the pixel data for presentation is defined by the successive application of the conceptual Modality LUT, the VOI Attributes and the conceptual Presentation LUT. This shall result in the output of P-Values.

Rescale Slope (0028,1053) and Rescale Intercept (0028,1052) define a linear subset of a conceptual Modality LUT transformation. For IODs that include this Module, these Attributes define an identity transformation. IODs that include the DX Image Module shall not include the Modality LUT Module.

The Presentation LUT Shape (2050,0020) defines a subset of a conceptual Presentation LUT. For IODs that include this Module, this Attribute defines an identity transformation or inverse identity transformation. IODs that include the DX Image Module shall not include the Presentation LUT Module.

Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) indicates whether lower values that are the output of the VOI Attributes should be displayed as darker or lighter. Since the output of the equivalent of a conceptual Presentation LUT is in P-Values, which are defined in PS 3.14 such that lower values correspond to lower luminance levels, then the definition of the Presentation LUT Shape (2050,0020), otherwise intended to be an identity transformation, must take into account the effect of the value specified for Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004).

Note: Regardless of the values of Pixel Intensity Relationship (0028,1040) and Pixel Intensity Relationship Sign (0028,1041), the grayscale transformations to be applied to the Pixel Data (7FE0,0010) are defined by the equivalent of the Modality LUT (Rescale Slope (0028,1053) and Rescale Intercept (0028,1052)), Value of Interest Attributes, Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) and the equivalent of the Presentation LUT (Presentation LUT Shape (2050,0020)). However, the combination of the grayscale transformations and the description of the pixel intensity relationship, together define whether, for example, air is expected to be displayed as black or white.

C.8.11.3.1.3 Acquisition Device Processing Description

Acquisition Device Processing Description (0018,1400) provides some indication in human readable text of the digital processing on the images before exchange. Examples of this processing are: edge enhanced, subtracted, time filtered, gamma corrected, convolved (spatially filtered).

C.8.11.3.1.4 Derivation Description

If an Image is identified to be a Derived image in Image Type (0008,0008), Derivation Description (0008,2111) is an optional and implementation specific text description of the way the image was derived from an original image. As applied to DX images, it may be used to describe derivation operations such as edge enhancement, temporal filtering, digital subtraction, or other linear and non-linear transformations.

C.8.11.3.1.5 VOI Attributes

The Attributes of the VOI LUT Module (C.11.2) are specialized in the DX Image Module.

Window Center (0028,1050) and Window Width (0028,1051) specify a linear conversion (unless otherwise specified by the value of VOI LUT Function (0028,1056); see C.11.2.1.3) from the output of the (conceptual) Modality LUT values to the input to the (conceptual) Presentation LUT. Window Center contains the value that is the center of the window. Window Width contains the width of the window.

The application of the Window Center (0028,1050) and Window Width (0028,1051) shall not produce a signed result.

Note: If the Presentation LUT Shape (2050,0020) is IDENTITY, then the result of applying the Window Center (0028,1050) and Window Width (0028,1051) is P-Values.

If multiple values are present, both Attributes shall have the same number of values and shall be considered as pairs. Multiple values indicate that multiple alternative views should be presented.

The VOI LUT Sequence specifes a (potentially non-linear) conversion from the output of the (conceptual) Modality LUT values to the input to the (conceptual) Presentation LUT.

If multiple items are present in VOI LUT Sequence (0028,3010), only one shall be applied. Multiple items indicate that multiple alternative views should be presented.

If any VOI LUT Attributes are included by an Image, a Window Width and Window Center or the VOI LUT Table, but not both, shall be applied to the Image for display. Inclusion of both indicates that multiple alternative views should be presented.

The three values of the LUT Descriptor (0028,3002) describe the format of the LUT Data (0028,3006).

The first value is the number of entries in the lookup table.

The second value is the first stored pixel value mapped. This pixel value is mapped to the first entry in the LUT. All image pixel values less than the first value mapped are also mapped to the first entry in the LUT Data. An image pixel value one greater than the first value mapped is mapped to the second entry in the LUT Data. Subsequent image pixel values are mapped to the subsequent entries in the LUT Data up to an image pixel value equal to number of entries + first value mapped - 1 which is mapped to the last entry in the LUT Data. Image pixel values greater than number of entries + first value mapped are also mapped to the last entry in the LUT Data.

The third value specifies the number of bits for each entry in the LUT Data (analogous to “bits stored”). It shall be between 10-16. The LUT Data shall be stored in a format equivalent to 16 “bits allocated” and “high bit” equal to “bits stored” - 1. The third value conveys the range of LUT entry values. These unsigned LUT entry values shall range between 0 and 2^n -1, where n is the third value of the LUT Descriptor.

Notes: 1. The third value is restricted in the VOI LUT Module to 8 or 16 but is specialized here.
2. The first and second values are not specialized and are the same as in the VOI LUT Module.

The LUT Data (0028,3006) contains the LUT entry values.

C.8.11.4 DX Detector Module

Table C.8-71 contains IOD Attributes that describe a DX detector.

Table C.8-71
DX DETECTOR MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Include 'Digital X-Ray Detector Macro' Table C.8-71b			
Detector Active Time	(0018,7014)	3	Time in mSec that the detector is active during acquisition of this image. Note: This activation window overlaps the time of the X-Ray exposure as defined by Exposure Time (0018,1150) and Detector Activation Offset From Exposure (0018,7016).
Detector Activation Offset From Exposure	(0018,7016)	3	Offset time in mSec that the detector becomes active after the X-Ray beam is turned on during acquisition of this image. May be negative.
Field of View Shape	(0018,1147)	3	Shape of the Field of View, that is the image pixels stored in Pixel Data (7FE0,0010). Enumerated Values: RECTANGLE ROUND HEXAGONAL
Field of View Dimension(s)	(0018,1149)	3	Dimensions in mm of the Field of View, that is the image pixels stored in Pixel Data (7FE0,0010). If Field of View Shape (0018,1147) is: RECTANGLE: row dimension followed by column. ROUND: diameter. HEXAGONAL: diameter of a circumscribed circle.
Field of View Origin	(0018,7030)	1C	Offset of the TLHC of a rectangle circumscribing the Field of View, that is the image pixels stored in Pixel Data (7FE0,0010), before rotation or flipping, from the TLHC of the physical detector area measured in physical detector pixels as a row offset followed by a column offset. Required if Field of View Rotation (0018,7032) or Field of View Horizontal Flip (0018,7034) is present. See C.8.11.4.1.1 for further explanation.
Field of View Rotation	(0018,7032)	1C	Clockwise rotation in degrees of Field of View, that is the image pixels stored in Pixel Data (7FE0,0010), relative to the physical detector. Enumerated Values:

			0, 90, 180, 270 Required if Field of View Horizontal Flip (0018,7034) is present. See C.8.11.4.1.1 for further explanation.
Field of View Horizontal Flip	(0018,7034)	1C	Whether or not a horizontal flip has been applied to the Field of View, that is the image pixels stored in Pixel Data (7FE0,0010), after rotation relative to the physical detector as described in Field of View Rotation (0018,7032). Enumerated Values: NO YES Required if Field of View Rotation (0018,7032) is present. See C.8.11.4.1.1 for further explanation.
Imager Pixel Spacing	(0018,1164)	1	Physical distance measured at the front plane of the detector housing between the center of each image pixel specified by a numeric pair - row spacing value(delimiter) column spacing value in mm. See 10.7.1.3 for further explanation of the value order. The value of this attribute shall never be adjusted to account for correction for the effect of geometric magnification or calibration against an object of known size; Pixel Spacing (0028,0030) is specified for that purpose.
Include Basic Pixel Spacing Calibration Macro (Table 10-10)			
Cassette ID	(0018,1007)	3	Identifier of the cassette that contains the photostimulable phosphor plate, for CR acquisitions.
Plate ID	(0018,1004)	3	Identifier of the photostimulable phosphor plate, for CR acquisitions.

Table C.8-71b contains common attributes that describe digital X-ray detector.

Table C.8-71b
DIGITAL X-RAY DETECTOR MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Detector Type	(0018,7004)	2	The type of detector used to acquire this image. Defined Terms: DIRECT = X-Ray photoconductor SCINTILLATOR = Phosphor used STORAGE = Storage phosphor FILM = Scanned film/screen
Detector Configuration	(0018,7005)	3	The physical configuration of the detector.

			Defined Terms: AREA = single or tiled detector SLOT = scanned slot, slit or spot
Detector Description	(0018,7006)	3	Free text description of detector.
Detector Mode	(0018,7008)	3	Text description of operating mode of detector (implementation specific).
Detector ID	(0018,700A)	3	The ID or serial number of the detector used to acquire this image.
Date of Last Detector Calibration	(0018,700C)	3	The date on which the detector used to acquire this image as identified in Detector ID (0018,700A) was last calibrated.
Time of Last Detector Calibration	(0018,700E)	3	The time at which the detector used to acquire this image as identified in Detector ID (0018,700A) was last calibrated.
Exposures on Detector Since Last Calibration	(0018,7010)	3	Total number of X-Ray exposures that have been made on the detector used to acquire this image as identified in Detector ID (0018,700A) since it was calibrated.
Exposures on Detector Since Manufactured	(0018,7011)	3	Total number of X-Ray exposures that have been made on the detector used to acquire this image as identified in Detector ID (0018,700A) since it was manufactured.
Detector Time Since Last Exposure	(0018,7012)	3	Time in Seconds since an exposure was last made on this detector prior to the acquisition of this image.
Detector Binning	(0018,701A)	3	Number of active detectors used to generate a single pixel. Specified as number of row detectors per pixel then column.
Detector Manufacturer Name	(0018,702A)	3	Name of the manufacturer of the detector component of the acquisition system
Detector Manufacturer's Model Name	(0018,702B)	3	Model name of the detector component of the acquisition system
Detector Conditions Nominal Flag	(0018,7000)	3	Whether or not the detector is operating within normal tolerances during this image acquisition. Enumerated Values: YES NO Note: This flag is intended to indicate whether or not there may have been some compromise of the diagnostic quality of the image due to some condition such as over-temperature, etc.
Detector Temperature	(0018,7001)	3	Detector temperature during exposure in degrees Celsius.
Sensitivity	(0018,6000)	3	Detector sensitivity in manufacturer specific units.

			Note: This value is intended to provide a single location where manufacturer specific information can be found for annotation on a display or film, that has meaning to a knowledgeable observer.
Detector Element Physical Size	(0018,7020)	3	Physical dimensions of each detector element that comprises the detector matrix, in mm. Expressed as row dimension followed by column. Note: This may not be the same as Detector Element Spacing (0018,7022) due to the presence of spacing material between detector elements.
Detector Element Spacing	(0018,7022)	3	Physical distance between the center of each detector element, specified by a numeric pair - row spacing value(delimiter) column spacing value in mm. See 10.7.1.3 for further explanation of the value order. Note: This may not be the same as the Imager Pixel Spacing (0018,1164), and should not be assumed to describe the stored image.
Detector Active Shape	(0018,7024)	3	Shape of the active area. Enumerated Value: RECTANGLE ROUND HEXAGONAL Note: This may be different from the Field of View Shape (0018,1147), and should not be assumed to describe the stored image.
Detector Active Dimension(s)	(0018,7026)	3	Dimensions in mm of the active area. If Detector Active Shape(0018,7024) is: RECTANGLE: row dimension followed by column. ROUND: diameter. HEXAGONAL: diameter of a circumscribed circle. Note: This may be different from the Field of View Dimensions (0018,1149), and should not be assumed to describe the stored image.
Detector Active Origin	(0018,7028)	3	Offset of the TLHC of a rectangle circumscribing the active detector area from the TLHC of a rectangle circumscribing the physical detector area, measured in physical detector pixels as a row offset followed by a column offset.

			See C.8.11.4.1.1 for further explanation.

C.8.11.4.1 DX Detector Attribute Descriptions

C.8.11.4.1.1 Physical, Active, Field of View, Exposed and Displayed Areas

The relationship between the Physical Detector Area, the Active Detector Area, the Field of View (what is stored in the Pixel Data (7FE0,0010)), the Exposed Area (after X-Ray Collimation) and the Displayed Area is illustrated in the following diagrams.

Note: Some of these Attributes relate the image data to manufacturer specific characteristics of the detector that may be used for quality control purposes, e.g. correlation of image artifacts with a detector defect map, analysis of noise performance, etc.

The Displayed Area is defined in pixel coordinates relative to the stored image pixel values by the Attributes of the Display Shutter Module (see section C.7.6.11). If this Module is not present or supported, then the Displayed Area is equal to the Field of View.

The Exposed Area is defined in pixel coordinates relative to the stored image pixel values by the Attributes of the X-Ray Collimator Module (see section C.8.7.3).

For the Digital X-Ray IODs, the Field of View is usually rectangular in shape and the same size as the stored Pixel Data (7FE0,0010). The shape and size of the Field of View and the spacing of the pixels are defined by the following Attributes:

- Field of View Shape (0018,1147),
- Field of View Dimensions (0018,1149),
- Imager Pixel Spacing (0018,1164),
- Rows (0028,0010),
- Columns (0028,0011)

The following Attributes define the relationship of the Field of View to the Physical Detector Area:

- Field of View Origin (0018,7030),
- Field of View Rotation (0018,7032),
- Field of View Horizontal Flip (0018,7034).

For the Digital X-Ray IODs, the Active Area, i.e. that part of the detector matrix that was activated for this exposure, is usually rectangular in shape. The shape and size of the Active Area and the size and spacing of the detectors are defined by the following Attributes:

- Detector Active Shape (0018,7024),
- Detector Active Dimensions (0018,7026),
- Detector Element Physical Size (0018,7020),
- Detector Element Spacing (0018,7022).

Notes: 1. The Detector Element Physical Size (0018,7020) and Detector Element Spacing (0018,7022) may be different if there are insensitive regions between each detector.

2. This model of description is not able to accurately describe multiple matrices of detectors that are “tiled” to produce a single image.

The following optional Attribute defines the relationship of the Active Area to the Physical Detector Area:

- Detector Active Origin (0018,7028).

The relationship between detectors and stored image pixels is defined by Detector Binning (0018,701A) which specifies how many detectors, in each of the row and column directions, contribute to (are pooled or averaged to form) a single stored image pixel.

Note: Detector Binning (0018,701A) may have values less than one if sub-sampling is used to derive an image with higher spatial resolution than the detector matrix.

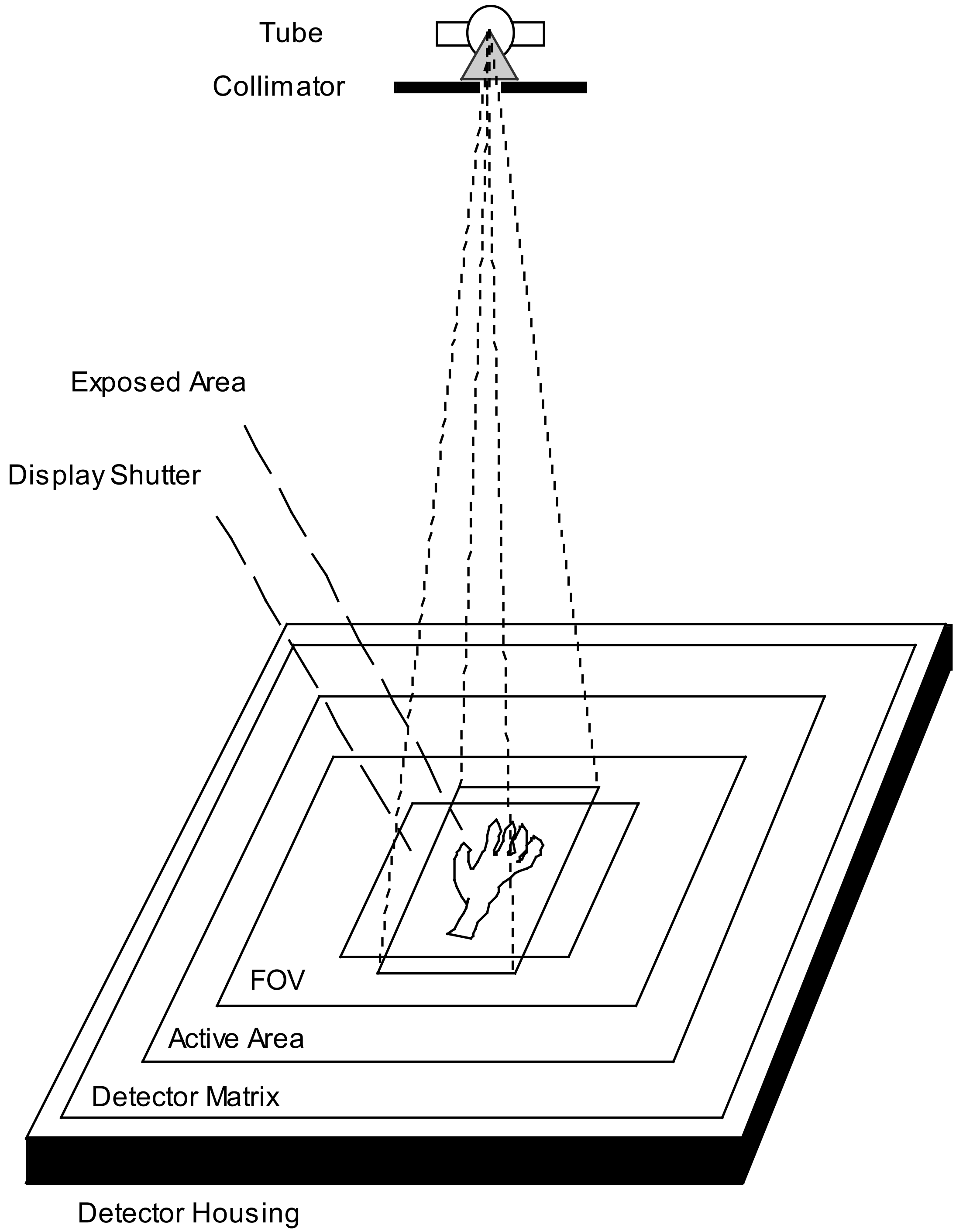


Figure C.8-14
Explanation of DX Detector Attributes

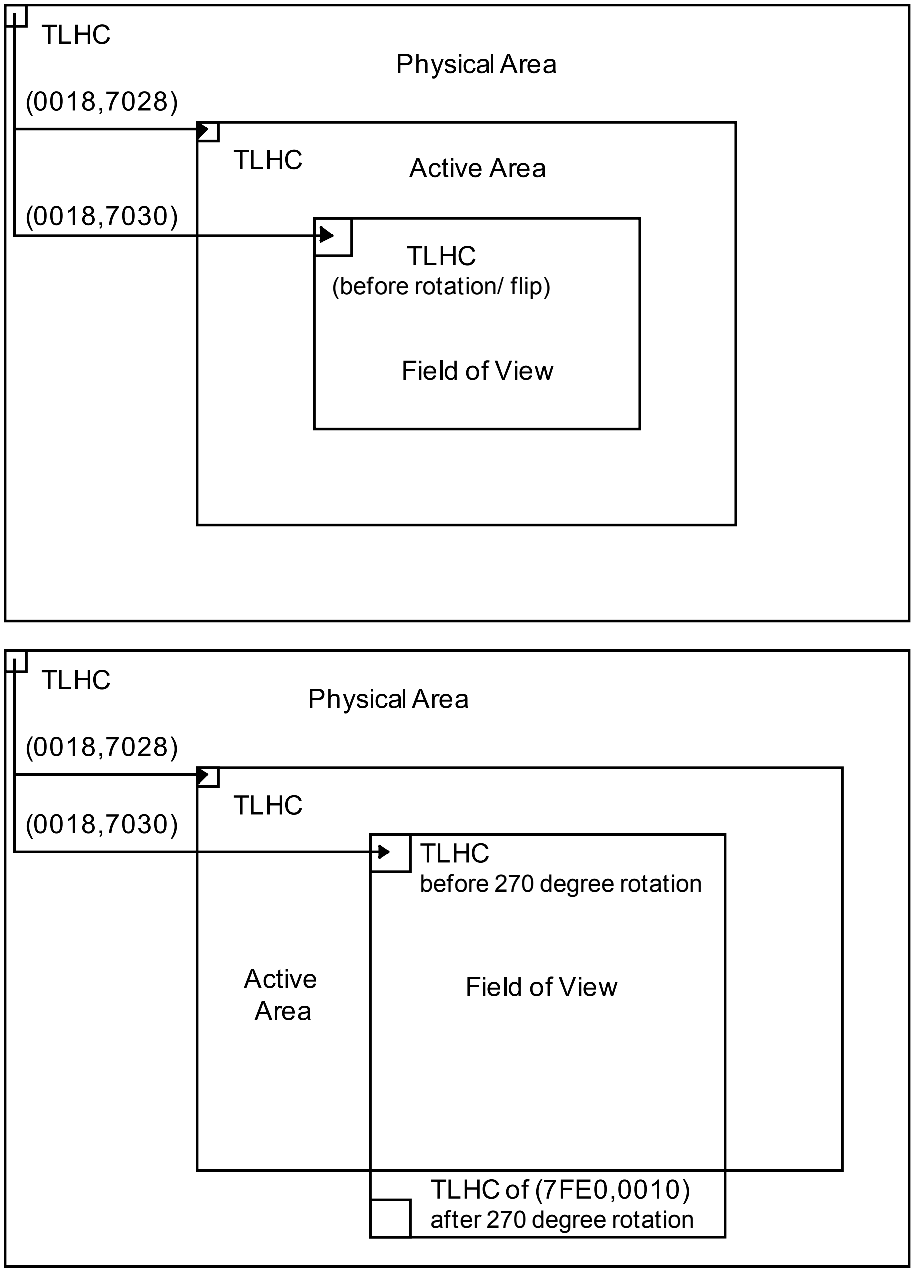


Figure C.8-15
Explanation of DX Detector Attributes

C.8.11.5 DX Positioning Module

Table C.8-72 contains IOD Attributes that describe the positioning used in acquiring Digital X-Ray Images.

Table C.8-72
DX POSITIONING MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Projection Eponymous Name Code Sequence	(0018,5104)	3	A Sequence that describes the radiographic method of patient, tube and detector positioning to achieve a well

			described projection or view. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this Sequence. Shall be consistent with the other Attributes in this Module, if present, but may more specifically describe the image acquisition.
>*Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1.*		Baseline Context ID 4012	
Patient Position	(0018,5100)	3	Description of imaging subject's position relative to the equipment. See C.7.3.1.1.2 for Defined Terms and further explanation. If present, shall be consistent with Patient Gantry Relationship Code Sequence (0054,0414) and Patient Orientation Modifier Code Sequence (0054,0412).
View Position	(0018,5101)	3	Radiographic view of the image relative to the imaging subject's orientation. Shall be consistent with View Code Sequence (0054,0220). See C.8.11.5.1.1 for further explanation.
View Code Sequence	(0054,0220)	3	Sequence that describes the projection of the anatomic region of interest on the image receptor. Note: It is strongly recommended that this Attribute be present, in order to ensure that images may be positioned correctly relative to one another for display. Shall be consistent with View Position (0018,5101). See C.8.11.5.1.1 for further explanation. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this Sequence.
>*Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1.*		Baseline Context ID 4010	
>View Modifier Code Sequence	(0054,0222)	3	View modifier. Zero or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>>*Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1.*		Baseline Context ID 4011	
Patient Orientation Code Sequence	(0054,0410)	3	Sequence that describes the orientation of the patient with respect to gravity. See C.8.11.5.1.2 for further explanation. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this Sequence.
>*Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1.*		Baseline Context ID 19	
> Patient Orientation Modifier Code	(0054,0412)	3	Patient Orientation Modifier.

Sequence			Required if needed to fully specify the orientation of the patient with respect to gravity. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this Sequence.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1.		Baseline Context ID 20	
Patient Gantry Relationship Code Sequence	(0054,0414)	3	Sequence which describes the orientation of the patient with respect to the gantry. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this Sequence.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1.		Baseline Context ID 21	
Distance Source to Patient	(0018,1111)	3	Distance in mm from source to the table, support or bucky side that is closest to the Imaging Subject, as measured along the central ray of the X-Ray beam. Note: 1. This definition is less useful in terms of estimating geometric magnification than a measurement to a defined point within the Imaging Subject, but accounts for what is realistically measurable in an automated fashion in a clinical setting. 2. This measurement does not take into account any air gap between the Imaging Subject and the "front" of the table or bucky. 3. If the detector is not mounted in a table or bucky, then the actual position relative to the patient is implementation or operator defined. 4. This value is traditionally referred to as Source Object Distance (SOD). See C.8.11.7 Mammography Image Module for explanation if Positioner Type (0018,1508) is MAMMOGRAPHIC.
Distance Source to Detector	(0018,1110)	3	Distance in mm from source to detector center. Note: This value is traditionally referred to as Source Image Receptor Distance (SID). See C.8.11.7 Mammography Image Module for explanation if Positioner Type (0018,1508) is MAMMOGRAPHIC.
Estimated Radiographic Magnification Factor	(0018,1114)	3	Ratio of Source Image Receptor Distance (SID) over Source Object Distance (SOD).
Positioner Type	(0018,1508)	2	Defined Terms: CARM COLUMN

			MAMMOGRAPHIC PANORAMIC CEPHALOSTAT RIGID NONE Notes: 1. The term CARM can apply to any positioner with 2 degrees of freedom of rotation of the X-Ray beam about the Imaging Subject. 2. The term COLUMN can apply to any positioner with 1 degree of freedom of rotation of the X-Ray beam about the Imaging Subject.
Positioner Primary Angle	(0018,1510)	3	Position of the X-Ray beam about the patient from the RAO to LAO direction where movement from RAO to vertical is positive, if Positioner Type (0018,1508) is CARM. See C.8.7.5 XA Positioner Module for further explanation if Positioner Type (0018,1508) is CARM. See C.8.11.7 Mammography Image Module for explanation if Positioner Type (0018,1508) is MAMMOGRAPHIC.
Positioner Secondary Angle	(0018,1511)	3	Position of the X-Ray beam about the patient from the CAU to CRA direction where movement from CAU to vertical is positive, if Positioner Type (0018,1508) is CARM. See C.8.7.5 XA Positioner Module for further explanation if Positioner Type (0018,1508) is CARM. See C.8.11.7 Mammography Image Module for explanation if Positioner Type (0018,1508) is MAMMOGRAPHIC.
Detector Primary Angle	(0018,1530)	3	Angle of the X-Ray beam in the row direction in degrees relative to the normal to the detector plane. Positive values indicate that the X-Ray beam is tilted toward higher numbered columns. Negative values indicate that the X-Ray beam is tilted toward lower numbered columns. See C.8.7.5 XA Positioner Module for further explanation. See C.8.11.7 Mammography Image Module for explanation if Positioner Type (0018,1508) is MAMMOGRAPHIC.
Detector Secondary Angle	(0018,1531)	3	Angle of the X-Ray beam in the column direction in degrees relative to the normal to the detector plane. Positive values indicate that the X-Ray beam is tilted

			toward lower numbered rows. Negative values indicate that the X-Ray beam is tilted toward higher numbered rows. See C.8.7.5 XA Positioner Module for further explanation. See C.8.11.7 Mammography Image Module for explanation if Positioner Type (0018,1508) is MAMMOGRAPHIC.
Column Angulation	(0018,1450)	3	Angle of the X-Ray beam in degree relative to an orthogonal axis to the detector plane. Positive values indicate that the tilt is toward the head of the table. Note: The detector plane is assumed to be parallel to the table plane. Only meaningful if Positioner Type (0018,1508) is COLUMN.
Table Type	(0018,113A)	3	Defined Terms: FIXED TILTING NONE
Table Angle	(0018,1138)	3	Angle of table plane in degrees relative to horizontal plane [Gravity plane]. Positive values indicate that the head of the table is upward. Only meaningful if Table Type (0018,113A) is TILTING.
Body Part Thickness	(0018,11A0)	3	The average thickness in mm of the body part examined when compressed, if compression has been applied during exposure.
Compression Force	(0018,11A2)	3	The compression force applied to the body part during exposure, measured in Newtons.

C.8.11.5.1 DX Positioning Attribute Descriptions

C.8.11.5.1.1 View Code Sequence

View Code Sequence (0054,0220) replaces the function of View Position (0018,5101), and describes the radiographic view of the image relative to the real-world patient orientation as described in PS 3.17 annex on Explanation of Patient Orientation.

C.8.11.5.1.2 Patient Orientation Code Sequence

This Attribute is not related to Patient Orientation (0020,0020) and conveys a different concept entirely.

C.8.11.6 Mammography Series Module

Table C.8-73 specifies the Attributes which identify and describe general information about a Digital Mammography Series.

Table C.8-73
MAMMOGRAPHY SERIES MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Modality	(0008,0060)	1	Type of equipment that originally acquired the data used to create the images in this Series. Enumerated Value: MG See section C.7.3.1.1.1 for further explanation.
Request Attributes Sequence	(0040,0275)	3	Sequence that contains attributes from the Imaging Service Request. The sequence may have one or more Items.
>Include Request Attributes Macro Table 10-9			*For Reason for Requested Procedure Code Sequence (0040,100A) the Baseline Context IDs are 6051 and 6055. No Baseline Context IDs are defined for other Attributes.* Note: For example, Requested Procedure Code Sequence (0040,100A) may be used to convey whether the images in the Series were taken for screening or diagnostic purposes.

C.8.11.7 Mammography Image Module

Table C.8-74 contains IOD Attributes that describe a Digital Mammography X-Ray Image including its acquisition and positioning.

Table C.8-74
MAMMOGRAPHY IMAGE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Positioner Type	(0018,1508)	1	Enumerated Values: MAMMOGRAPHIC NONE
Distance Source to Detector	(0018,1110)	3	Distance in mm from source to detector center on the chest wall line Notes: 1. This value is traditionally referred to as Source Image Distance (SID). 2. See C.8.11.7.1.1.
Distance Source to Patient	(0018,1111)	3	Distance in mm from source to the bucky side that is closest to the Imaging Subject, as measured along the X-Ray beam vector. Notes: 1. This value is traditionally referred to as Source Object Distance (SOD). 2. See notes for this attribute in C.8.11.5 DX Positioning Module. 3. See C.8.11.7.1.1 for description of X-Ray beam vector.

Positioner Primary Angle	(0018,1510)	3	Position in degrees of the X-Ray beam vector in the coronal anatomical plane as if the patient were standing where movement of the X-Ray source from right to vertical is positive, and vertical is zero.
Positioner Secondary Angle	(0018,1511)	3	Position in degrees of the X-Ray beam vector in the sagittal anatomical plane as if the patient were standing where movement of the X-Ray source from anterior to posterior is positive, and vertical is zero.
Image Laterality	(0020,0062)	1	Laterality of the region examined. Enumerated Values: R = right L = left B = both (e.g. cleavage)
Organ Exposed	(0040,0318)	1	Organ to which Organ Dose (0040,0316) applies. Enumerated Value: BREAST Note: In the Mammography IOD, Organ Dose (0040,0316) refers to the mean glandular dose.
Implant Present	(0028,1300)	3	Whether or not an implant is present. Enumerated Values: YES NO
Partial View	(0028,1350)	3	Indicates whether this image is a partial view, that is a subset of a single view of the breast. Enumerated Values: YES, NO If this Attribute is absent, then the image may or may not be a partial view. Note: This may occur when a breast is larger than the active area of the detector. If this Attribute is present, its value shall be NO if there is a View Modifier Code Sequence (0054,0222) Item of value (R-102D6, SNM3, “Magnification”) or (R-102D7, SNM3, “Spot Compression”).
Partial View Description	(0028,1351)	3	Free text description of the portion of the breast captured in a partial view image. This Attribute shall not be present if there is a View Modifier Code Sequence (0054,0222) Item of value (R-102D6, SNM3, “Magnification”) or (R-102D7, SNM3, “Spot Compression”).
Partial View Code Sequence	(0028,1352)	3	Sequence that describes the portion or section of the breast captured in a partial

			view image. One or two Items may be present. See C.8.11.7.1.3. If this Attribute is absent, then the image may or may not be a partial view. This Attribute shall not be present if there is a View Modifier Code Sequence (0054,0222) Item of value (R-102D6, SNM3, "Magnification") or (R-102D7, SNM3, "Spot Compression").
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' (Table 8.8-1).			Defined Context ID is 4005.
Include 'General Anatomy Mandatory Macro' Table 10-5			Defined Context ID for the Anatomic Region Sequence is 4013.
View Code Sequence	(0054,0220)	1	Sequence that describes the projection of the anatomic region of interest on the image receptor. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this Sequence.
>*Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1*.		Enumerated Value for Context ID is 4014.	
>View Modifier Code Sequence	(0054,0222)	2	View modifier. Zero or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>>*Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1*.		Enumerated Value for Context ID is 4015.	

C.8.11.7.1 Mammography Image Attribute Descriptions

C.8.11.7.1.1 Mammography X-Ray Beam and X-ray Beam Vector Definition

Figure C.8-8 shows the X-Ray beam for a digital mammography system. The X-Ray beam vector is defined from the Focal Spot to the center of the chest wall line of the Image Detection device.

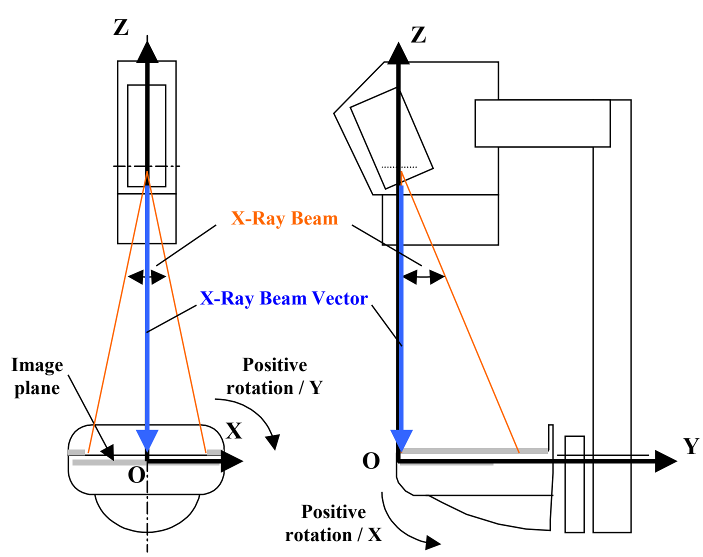


Figure C.8-8

C.8.11.7.1.2 Detector Primary and Secondary Angles

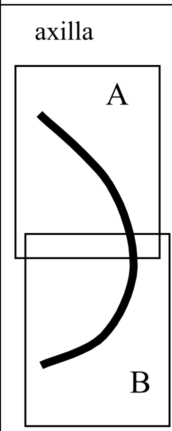
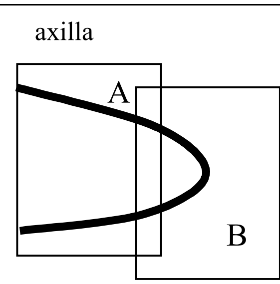
Detector Angles are defined in a fashion similar to the positioner angles, except that the angle of the x-ray beam vector is relative to the detector plane rather than the patient plane. Zero degrees is referenced to the normal of the detector plane pointing toward the x-ray source. The valid range of the Detector Angles is -90 to + 90 degrees.

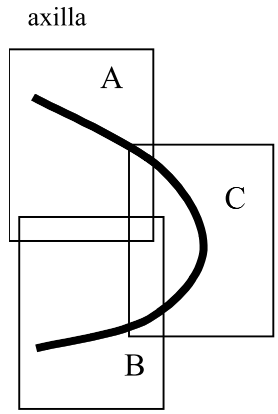
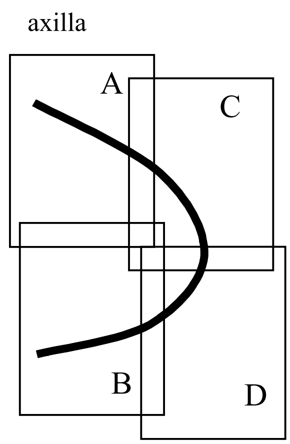
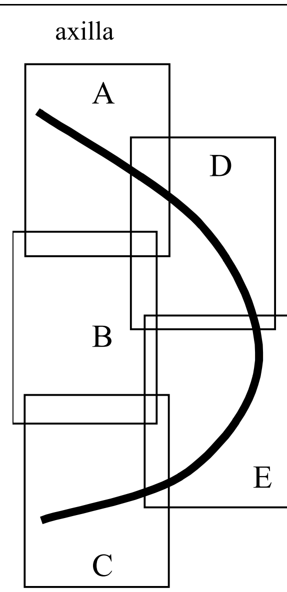
The Primary Axis of rotation is defined along the line in the column direction of the detector plane which intersects the x-ray beam vector. The Detector Primary Angle is defined in the plane perpendicular to the Primary Axis of rotation at the point where the x-ray beam vector intersects the detector plane, with zero degrees in the direction normal to the detector plane and +90 in the direction of the higher numbered columns of the detector in that plane. The valid range of Detector Primary Angle is -90 to +90 degrees.

The Secondary Axis is in the detector plane and is perpendicular to the Primary Axis at the intersection of the beam vector with the detector plane (i.e., it is along the row direction). The Detector Secondary Angle is defined in the plane perpendicular to the Secondary Axis at the point where the x-ray beam vector intersects the detector plane, with zero degrees in the direction normal to the detector plane. +90 degrees corresponds to the direction of the lower numbered rows of the detector in that plane. The Detector Secondary Angle range is -90 to + 90 degrees.

C.8.11.7.1.3 Partial View Code Sequence

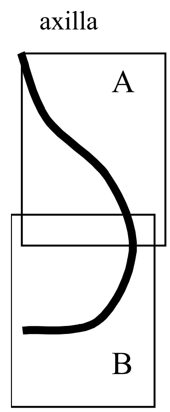
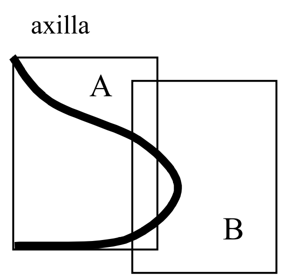
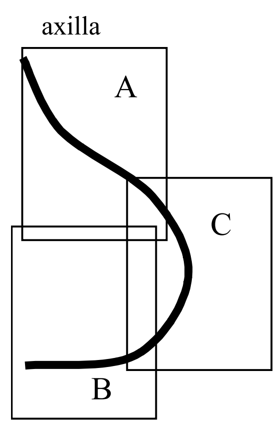
The following combinations of coded terms may be used to express the breast sections, for example, for the left cranio-caudal (L CC) view. These terms would also apply to the R CC, and the right and left FB, XCC, XCCL and XCCM views:

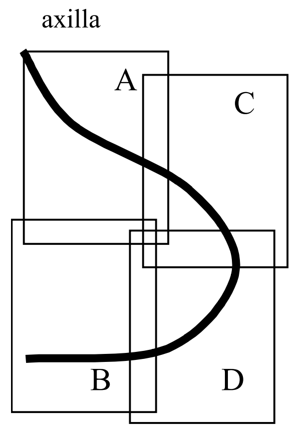
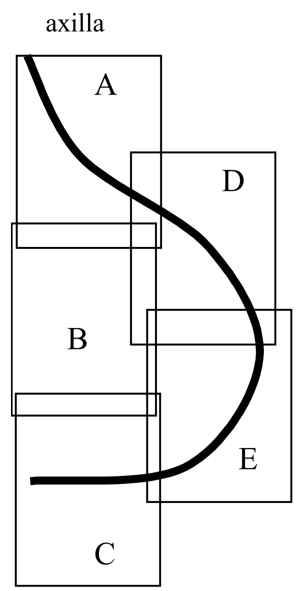
Partial View Code Sequence Items (Code Meaning)	Partial View Images (A, B, C, D, E)
A) item 1 = Lateral B) item 1 = Medial	
A) item 1 = Posterior B) item 1 = Anterior	

Partial View Code Sequence Items (Code Meaning)	**Partial View Images (A, B, C, D, E)**
A) item 1 = Lateral, item 2 = Posterior B) item 1 = Medial, item 2 = Posterior C) item1 = Anterior	
A) item 1 = Lateral, item 2 = Posterior B) item 1 = Medial, item 2 = Posterior C) item 1 = Lateral, item 2 = Anterior D) item 1 = Medial, item 2 = Anterior	
A) item 1 = Lateral, item 2 = Posterior B) item 1 = Central, item 2 = Posterior C) item 1 = Medial, item 2 = Posterior D) item 1 = Lateral, item 2 = Anterior E) item 1 = Medial, item 2 = Anterior	

Note: If six images are required, then the “Central, Anterior” combination would be added.

The following combinations of coded terms may be used to express the breast sections, for example, for the left medio-lateral oblique (L MLO) view. These terms would also apply to the R MLO, and to the right and left LM, ML, LMO, and SIO views:

Partial View Code Sequence Items (Code Meaning)	**Partial View Images (A, B, C, D, E)**
A) item 1 = Superior B) item 1 = Inferior	
A) item 1 = Posterior B) item 1 = Anterior	
A) item 1 = Superior, item 2 = Posterior B) item1 = Inferior, item 2 = Posterior C) item 1 = Anterior	

Partial View Code Sequence Items (Code Meaning)	Partial View Images (A, B, C, D, E)
A) item 1 = Superior, item 2 = Posterior B) item 1 = Inferior, item 2 = Posterior C) item 1 = Superior, item 2 = Anterior D) item 1 = Inferior, item 2 = Anterior	
A) item 1 = Superior, item 2 = Posterior B) item 1 = Central, item 2 = Posterior C) item 1 = Inferior, item 2 = Posterior D) item 1 = Superior, item 2 = Anterior E) item 1 = Inferior, item 2 = Anterior	

Note: If six images are required, then the “Central, Anterior” combination would be added.

C.8.11.8 Intra-oral Series Module

Table C.8-75 specifies the Attributes which identify and describe general information about a Digital Intra-oral X-Ray Series.

Table C.8-75
INTRA-ORAL SERIES MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Modality	(0008,0060)	1	Type of equipment that originally acquired the data used to create the images in this Series.

			Enumerated Values: IO See section C.7.3.1.1.1 for further explanation.

C.8.11.9 Intra-oral Image Module

Table C.8-76 contains IOD Attributes that describe a Digital Intra-oral X-Ray Image including its acquisition and positioning.

Table C.8-76
INTRA-ORAL IMAGE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Positioner Type	(0018,1508)	1	Enumerated Values: NONE CEPHALOSTAT RIGID
Image Laterality	(0020,0062)	1	Laterality of the region examined. Enumerated Values: R = right L = left B = both (i.e. midline)
Anatomic Region Sequence	(0008,2218)	1	Sequence that identifies the anatomic region of interest in this image. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this Sequence.
>*Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1*.		Defined Context ID 4016.	
>Anatomic Region Modifier Sequence	(0008,2220)	1C	Sequence that refines the anatomic region of interest in this image. Required if Primary Anatomic Structure Sequence (0008,2228) is not sent. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this Sequence.
>>*Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1*.		Defined Context ID 4017.	
Primary Anatomic Structure Sequence	(0008,2228)	1C	Sequence that describes the primary anatomic structures of interest in this image. See C.8.11.9.1.1 for further explanation. Required if Anatomic Region Modifier Sequence (0008,2220) is not sent. One or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>*Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1*.		Defined Context ID 4018 or 4019. See C.8.11.9.1.1 for further explanation.	

C.8.11.9.1 Intra-oral Image Attribute Descriptions

C.8.11.9.1.1 Primary Anatomic Structure Sequence

The Code Value (0008,0100) shall be drawn from the DICOM Content Mapping Resource, Context ID 4018, for permanent dentition, or Context ID 4019 for deciduous dentition.

These Context Groups correspond to ISO 3950-1984 that describes a designation of permanent and deciduous dentition using a two digit code, the first digit of which designates a quadrant, and the second digit a tooth.

The teeth imaged shall be listed as multiple Items in the Primary Anatomic Structure Sequence (0008,2228).

C.8.12 VL Modules

C.8.12.1 VL Image Module

Table C.8-77 specifies the Attributes that describe a VL Image produced by Endoscopy (ES), General Microscopy (GM), Automated-Stage Microscopy (SM), External-camera Photography (XC), or other VL imaging Modalities.

Table C.8-77
VL IMAGE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Image Type	(0008,0008)	1	Image identification characteristics. See C.8.12.1.1.6 for specialization.
Photometric Interpretation	(0028,0004)	1	Specifies the intended interpretation of the pixel data. See C.8.12.1.1.1 for specialization of this Attribute.
Bits Allocated	(0028,0100)	1	Number of bits allocated for each pixel sample. Each sample shall have the same number of bits allocated. See C.8.12.1.1.2 for specialization of this Attribute. See PS 3.5 for further explanation.
Bits Stored	(0028,0101)	1	Number of bits stored for each pixel sample. Each sample shall have the same number of bits stored. See C.8.12.1.1.2 for specialization of this Attribute. See PS 3.5 for further explanation.
High Bit	(0028,0102)	1	Most significant bit for pixel sample data. Each sample shall have the same high bit. See C.8.12.1.1.2 for specialization of this Attribute. See PS 3.5 for further explanation.
Pixel Representation	(0028,0103)	1	Data representation of the pixel samples. Each sample shall have the same pixel representation. See Section C.8.12.1.1.3 for specialization of this Attribute.
Samples per Pixel	(0028,0002)	1	Number of samples (planes) per image. See C.8.12.1.1.4 for specialization of this Attribute.
Planar Configuration	(0028,0006)	1C	Indicates whether the pixel data are sent color-by-plane or color-by-pixel. Required if Samples per Pixel (0028,0002) has a value greater than 1. See C.8.12.1.1.5 for specialization of this Attribute.
Content Time	(0008,0033)	1C	The time the image pixel data creation started. Required if the Image is part of a series in which the images are temporally related. Note: This Attribute was formerly known as Image Time.
Lossy Image Compression	(0028,2110)	2	Specifies whether an Image has undergone lossy compression. Enumerated Values: 00 = Image has NOT been subjected to lossy compression. 01 = Image has been subjected to lossy compression. See C.7.6.1.1.5
Referenced Image	(0008,1140)	1C	A Sequence that references other images significantly

Sequence			related to this image. One or more items may be included in this sequence. Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 3 is present and has a value of "STEREO L" or "STEREO R". May also be present otherwise. See Section C.8.12.1.1.7.
>Include 'Image SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table 10-3			
>Purpose of Reference Code Sequence	(0040,A170)	2	Describes the purpose for which the reference is made. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this Sequence.
>>Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1			*Defined Context ID 7201*
Window Center	(0028,1050)	3	Window Center for display. See C.11.2.1.2 for further explanation. Meaningful only if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) is MONOCHROME2.
Window Width	(0028,1051)	1C	Window Width for display. See C.11.2.1.2 for further explanation. Required if Window Center (0028,1050) is present.
Anatomic Region Sequence	(0008,2218)	1C	Sequence that identifies the anatomic region of interest in this image (i.e. external anatomy, surface anatomy, or general region of the body). Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence. Required if Number of Frames (0028,0008) is present and Specimen Accession Number (0040,050A) is absent. May be present otherwise.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*DCID 4040 is defined for the Video Endoscopic IOD.* *For other IODs, no Context ID is defined.*	
>Anatomic Region Modifier Sequence	(0008,2220)	3	Sequence of Items that modifies the anatomic region of interest of this image One or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 2.*	
Include 'Primary Anatomic Structure Macro' Table 10.x-4		*No Context ID is defined.*	
Channel Description Code Sequence	(0022,001A)	3	Describes the light color used for each channel to generate the image. If Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) has one of the YBR values, the meaning is for pixel data in an equivalent RGB encoding. Note: Interpretation and representation of RGB images rely on the assumption that the red channel really contains the red wavelength range of illumination light, the blue channel the blue wavelength range, etc. Some modalities use the RGB Photometric Interpretation as a container representing 3 channels of any illumination wavelength. Shall have the same number of items as the value of Samples per Pixel (0028,0002). The channels shall be

			described in the order in which the channels are encoded.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 4206.*	

C.8.12.1.1 VL Image Module Attribute Descriptions

C.8.12.1.1.1 Photometric Interpretation

The Enumerated Values of Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) shall be:

MONOCHROME2

RGB

YBR_FULL_422

YBR_PARTIAL_420

YBR_RCT

YBR_ICT

Note: There is no formal color space defined, hence "false" color applications that encode near-visible light images may be encoded, for example, as RGB.

C.8.12.1.1.2 Bits Allocated, Bits Stored, and High Bit

The Enumerated Value of Bits Allocated (0028,0100) shall be 8; the Enumerated Value of Bits Stored (0028,0101) shall be 8; and the Enumerated Value of High Bit (0028,0102) shall be 7.

C.8.12.1.1.3 Pixel Representation

The Enumerated Value of Pixel Representation (0028,0103) shall be 0.

C.8.12.1.1.4 Samples per Pixel

The Enumerated Values of Samples per Pixel (0028,0002) shall be as follows: If the value of Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) is MONOCHROME2, then the Enumerated Value of Samples per Pixel (0028,0002) shall be one (1). If the value of Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) is RGB or YBR_FULL_422 or YBR_PARTIAL_420 or YBR_RCT or YBR_ICT, then the Enumerated Value of Samples per Pixel (0028,0002) shall be three (3).

C.8.12.1.1.5 Planar Configuration

If present, the Enumerated Value of Planar Configuration (0028,0006) shall be 0. This value shall be present if Samples per Pixel (0028,0002) has a value greater than 1.

C.8.12.1.1.6 Image Type

The Image Type attribute identifies important image characteristics in a multiple valued data element. For Visible Light, Image Type is specialized as follows:

a. Value 1 shall identify the Pixel Data Characteristics in accordance with Section C.7.6.1.1.2; Enumerated Values are: ORIGINAL and DERIVED;

b. Value 2 shall identify the Patient Examination Characteristics in accordance with Section C.7.6.1.1.2; Enumerated Values are: PRIMARY and SECONDARY.

c. Value 3 may be absent, but if present shall identify the members of a stereo pair, in which case Referenced Image Sequence (0008,1140) is used to identify the other member of the pair. If present, the Enumerated Values are:

STEREO L	Image is the left image (relative to the observer's left) of a stereo pair acquisition;
STEREO R	Image is the right image (relative to the observer's right) of a stereo pair acquisition.

d. Other Values are implementation specific (optional).

C.8.12.1.1.7 Referenced Image Sequence

When Image Type (0008,0008) Value 3 is STEREO L or STEREO R, Referenced Image Sequence (0008,1140) shall be used to identify the corresponding SOP Instance of the Stereoscopic acquisition. In this case, either:

- only a single item shall be present, or
- multiple items may be present, each with the Purpose of Reference Code Sequence (0040,A170) present, and only the first item having the Purpose of Reference value (121315, DCM, “Other image of stereoscopic pair”).

C.8.12.2 Slide Coordinates Module

The table in this Section contains Attributes that describe Slide Coordinates. Slide Coordinates provide a means to position a robotic Microscope Stage reproduceably with respect to the pixel plane of the digital Microscope.

Note: There is no a priori correspondence of pixels to Slide Coordinates. Therefore, the geometrical symmetry point through the pixel plane of the digital microscope may not correspond to the center of a pixel. The geometrical symmetry point could be between pixels.

Table C.8-78
Slide Coordinates Module Attributes

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Image Center Point Coordinates Sequence	(0040,071A)	2	The coordinates of the center point of the Image in the Slide Coordinate System Frame of Reference. This sequence shall contain exactly one item. See Section C.8.12.2.1.1 of this Part for further explanation.
>X Offset in Slide Coordinate System	(0040,072A)	1C	The X offset in millimeters from the Origin of the Slide Coordinate System. See Figure C.8-16. Required if a sequence item is present.
>Y Offset in Slide Coordinate System	(0040,073A)	1C	The Y offset in millimeters from the Origin of the Slide Coordinate System. See Figure C.8-16. Required if a sequence item is present.
>Z Offset in Slide Coordinate System	(0040,074A)	2C	The Z offset in microns from the image substrate reference plane (i.e. utilized surface of a glass slide). Required if a sequence item is present.

Pixel Spacing Sequence	(0040,08D8)	3	Physical distance in the Imaging Subject, i.e. Patient or Specimen, between the center of each pixel along specified axes. One or more items may be present.
>Coordinate System Axis Code Sequence	(0040,08DA)	1C	Axis of a coordinate system. This sequence shall contain exactly one item.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*Baseline Context ID is 95.*
>Numeric Value	(0040,A30A)	1C	The distance between the center-points of adjacent pixels along the axis specified by Coordinate System Axis Code Sequence (0040,08DA). Required if a sequence item is present.
>Measurement Units Code Sequence	(0040,08EA)	1C	Units of the measurement. This sequence shall contain exactly one item. Required if a sequence item is present.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*Baseline Context ID is 82.*

C.8.12.2.1 Slide Coordinates Attribute Descriptions

C.8.12.2.1.1 Image Center Point Coordinates Sequence

This Section defines the Slide Coordinate System and specifies the Attributes that shall be used to describe the location of the center point of the Image pixel plane (as captured through a microscope) in the Slide Coordinate System Frame of Reference.

Note: In Slide Microscopy (SM), the Microscope is equipped with a moveable Stage and position sensors that enable storage of the location of the center point of the displayed image with respect to the examined Specimen.

The Stage is the part of the Microscope to which the Slide is attached for viewing. The Objective Lens is the lens that is closest to the Specimen. The Top Surface of the Slide is the surface of the Slide on which the Specimen in Mounted. The Bottom Surface of the Slide is the opposite surface. This Specification presumes that: 1) the Slide is rectangular; 2) the Top Surface of the Slide is oriented toward the Objective Lens of the Microscope; and 3) the Bottom Surface of the Slide is in perfect contact with the Microscope Stage when the Slide is attached to the Stage for viewing.

Notes: 1. The Label of the Slide is presumed to be mounted-on or written-on the Top Surface of the Slide.

2. Specification of the mechanical form, function, or tolerances of the Microscope are outside the scope of this Standard.

Figure C.8-16 depicts the Top Surface of the Slide on the Microscope Stage from the perspective of the Objective Lens. This is Reference Slide Orientation. The X, Y, and Z axes of the Slide Coordinate System in Reference Slide Orientation are defined as follows. The Y-axis is a line that includes the Left Edge of the Slide. The X-axis is a line that is orthogonal to the Y-axis and includes at least one point of the Specimen Edge of the Slide. The Z-axis is a line that passes through the intersection of the X-axis and Y-axis and is orthogonal to the Microscope Stage. The Origin (0,0,0) of the Slide Coordinate System is the point of intersection of the X, Y, and Z axes.

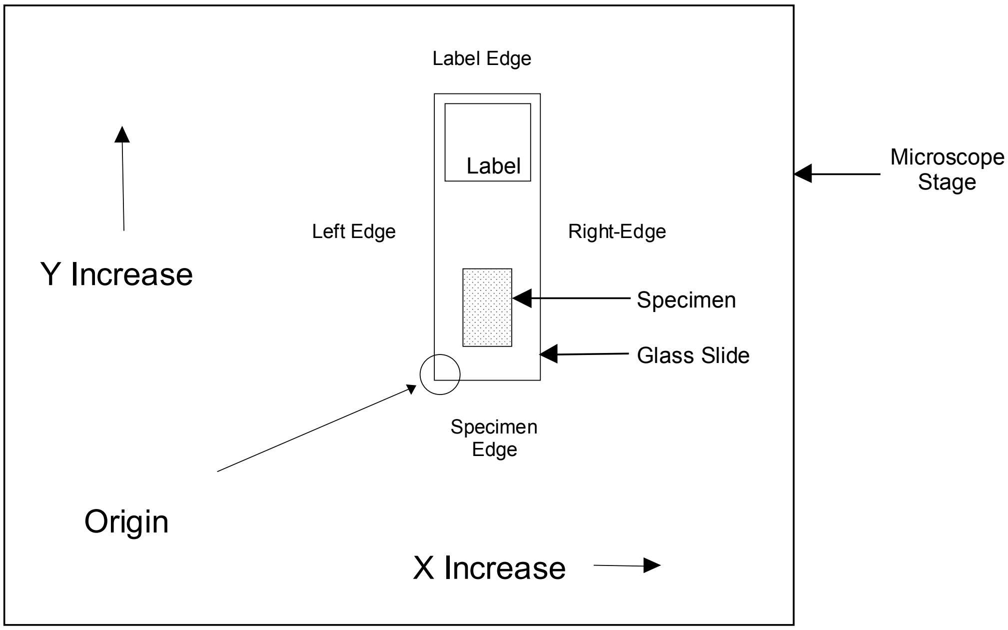


Figure C.8-16
REFERENCE SLIDE ORIENTATION

Notes:
1. An improperly-placed coverslip or Specimen that overlaps an Edge of a Slide is not considered part of the Edge a Slide for purposes of defining the Slide Coordinate System. However, such objects may cause inaccurate positioning of the Slide on the Stage.
2. If the Left Edge and Specimen Edge of the Slide are not orthogonal (e.g. the Slide is damaged or defective or the Specimen Edge is curvilinear), then the lower left-hand corner of the Slide may not be located at the Origin.
3. The definitions of X, Y, and Z axes are the same for inverted microscopes, with the Top Surface of the slide (i.e. Specimen side of the Slide) still being closest to the Objective Lens.

Figure C.8-17 depicts the Z-axis center point location. The X-axis value of Image Center Point Location (0040,073A) shall increase from the Origin toward the Right Edge in Reference Slide Orientation. The Y-axis value of Image Center Point Location (0040,073A) shall increase from the Origin toward the Label Edge in Reference Slide Orientation. The Z-axis value of Image Center Point Location (0040,073A) shall be referenced as zero at the image substrate reference plane (i.e. utilized surface of a glass slide) and shall increase in a positive fashion coincident with increased distance from the substrate surface.

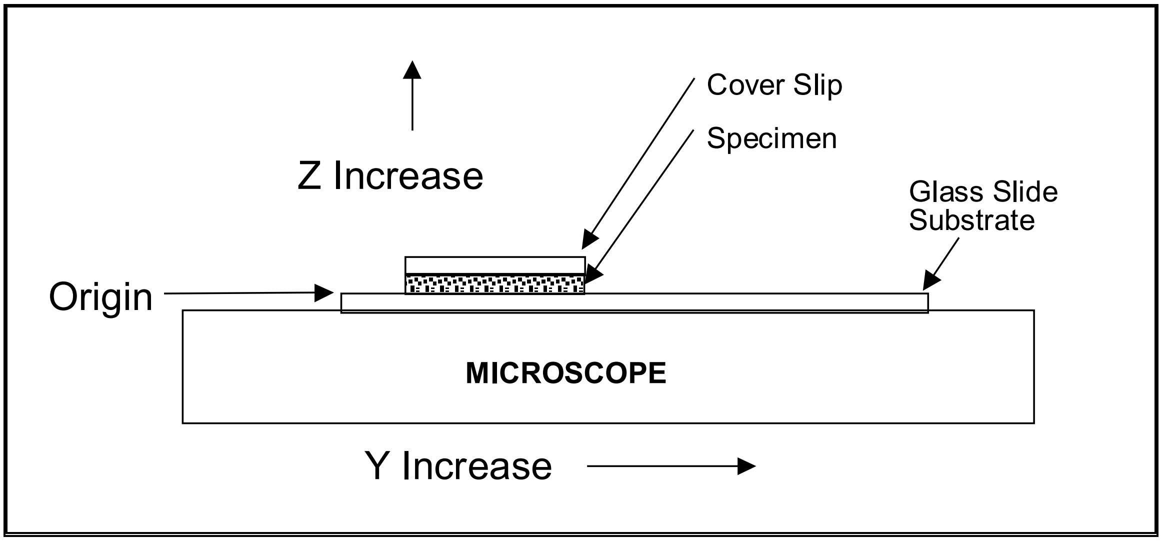


Figure C.8-17
Z-AXIS CENTER POINT LOCATION, VIEW FROM RIGHT EDGE OF SLIDE

C.8.13 Enhanced MR Image

This section describes the specific modules for the Enhanced MR Image IOD.

C.8.13.1 Enhanced MR Image Module

This section describes the Enhanced MR Image Module.

Table C.8-79 specifies the attributes of the Enhanced MR Image module.

Table C.8-79
ENHANCED MR IMAGE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Include ' MR Image and Spectroscopy Instance Macro' Table C.8-81			
Image Type	(0008,0008)	1	Image characteristics. See C.8.16.1 and C.8.13.3.1.1.
Include Common CT/MR Image Description Macro' Table C.8-131			
Include 'MR Image Description Macro' Table C.8.82			
Samples per Pixel	(0028,0002)	1	Number of samples (planes) in this image. This value shall be 1.
Photometric Interpretation	(0028,0004)	1	Specifies the intended interpretation of the pixel data. Enumerated Value: MONOCHROME2. See C.7.6.3.1.2 for definition of this term.
Bits Allocated	(0028,0100)	1	Number of bits allocated for each pixel sample. Each sample shall have the same number of bits allocated. Enumerated Values: 8 and 16.
Bits Stored	(0028,0101)	1	Number of bits stored for each pixel sample. Each sample shall have the same number of bits stored. Enumerated Values: 8, 12 and 16. See C.8.13.1.1.1 for specialization.
High Bit	(0028,0102)	1	Most significant bit for pixel sample data. Each sample shall have the same high bit. Shall be one less than the value in Bits Stored (0028,0101).

Spacing between Slices	(0018,0088)	3	Value of the prescribed spacing to be applied between the slices in a volume that is to be acquired. The spacing in mm is defined as the center-to-center distance of adjacent slices.
Burned In Annotation	(0028,0301)	1	Indicates whether or not the image contains sufficient burned in annotation to identify the patient and date the image was acquired. Enumerated Values: NO This means that images that contain this Module shall not contain such burned in annotations.
Lossy Image Compression	(0028,2110)	1	Specifies whether an Image has undergone lossy compression. Enumerated Values: 00 = Image has NOT been subjected to lossy compression. 01 = Image has been subjected to lossy compression. See C.7.6.1.1.5 for further explanation.
Lossy Image Compression Ratio	(0028,2112)	1C	Describes the approximate lossy compression ratio(s) that have been applied to this image. See C.7.6.1.1.5 for further explanation. May be multivalued if successive lossy compression steps have been applied. Note: For example, a compression ratio of 30:1 would be described in this Attribute with a single value of 30. Required if Lossy Images Compression (0028,2110) is “01”.
Lossy Image Compression Method	(0028,2114)	1C	A label for the lossy compression method(s) that have been applied to this image. See C.7.6.1.1.5 for further explanation. May be multivalued if successive lossy compression steps have been applied; the value order shall correspond to the values of Lossy Image Compression Ratio (0028,2112). Required if Lossy Image Compression (0028,2110) is “01”.
Presentation LUT Shape	(2050,0020)	1	Specifies an identity transformation for the Presentation LUT, such that the output of all grayscale transformations defined in the IOD containing this Module are

			defined to be P-Values. Enumerated Values: IDENTITY - output is in P-Values.
Icon Image Sequence	(0088,0200)	3	This icon image is representative of the Image.
> Include 'Image Pixel Macro' Table C.7-11b			See Section F.7.

C.8.13.1.1 Enhanced MR Image Module Attribute Description

C.8.13.1.1.1 Bits Allocated and Bits Stored

Table C.8-80 specifies the allowed combinations of Bits Allocated (0028,0100) and Bits Stored (0028,0101).

Table C.8-80
ALLOWED COMBINATIONS OF ATTRIBUTE VALUES FOR BITS ALLOCATED AND BITS STORED

Bits Allocated	Bits Stored
8	8
16	12, 16

C.8.13.2 MR Image and Spectroscopy Instance Macro

Table C.8-81 specifies the common attributes Enhanced MR Image Module and MR Spectroscopy Module.

Table C.8-81
MR IMAGE AND SPECTROSCOPY INSTANCE MACRO

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Acquisition Number	(0020,0012)	3	A number identifying the single continuous gathering of data over a period of time that resulted in this image. Note: This number is not required to be unique across SOP Instances in a series. See also the description of the Referenced Raw Data Sequence (0008,9121).
Acquisition Datetime	(0008,002A)	1C	The date and time that the acquisition of data started. Note: The synchronization of this time with an external clock is specified in the synchronization Module in Acquisition Time synchronized (0018,1800). Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Acquisition Duration	(0018,9073)	1C	The time in seconds needed to run the prescribed pulse sequence. See C.7.6.16.2.2.1 for further explanation. Required if Image Type (0008,0008)

			Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Referenced Raw Data Sequence	(0008,9121)	3	A sequence that identifies the set of Raw Data SOP Class/Instance pairs of the Raw data which were used to derive this Image. One or more Items may be included in this Sequence. Note: The items of in this sequence may identify raw data that has not been stored or encoded as a DICOM object. This allows recognition that images and spectra in different instances have been reconstructed from the same raw data.
>Include 'SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table C.17-3			
Referenced Waveform Sequence	(0008,113A)	3	References to waveforms acquired in conjunction with this image. These Waveforms may or may not be temporally synchronized with this image. One or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>Include 'SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table C.17-3			
Referenced Image Evidence Sequence	(0008,9092)	1C	Full set of Composite SOP Instances referred to inside the Referenced Image Sequences of this Enhanced MR Image SOP Instance. See C.8.13.2.1.2 for further explanation. One or more Items may be included in this sequence. Required if the Referenced Image Sequence (0008,1140) is present.
>Include 'SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table C.17-3			
Source Image Evidence Sequence	(0008,9154)	1C	Full set of Composite SOP Instances referred to inside the Source Image Sequences of this Enhanced MR Image SOP Instance. See C.8.13.2.1.2 for further explanation. One or more Items may be included in this sequence. Required if the Source Image Sequence (0008,2112) is present.
>Include 'SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table C.17-3			
Referenced Grayscale Presentation State Sequence	(0008,9237)	1C	References to Grayscale Presentation State instances acquired in conjunction with this instance. Note: May only be used to reference Presentation States belonging to the acquired data and not to reference Presentation States generated subsequently such as

			during interpretation. One or more Items may be included in this sequence. Required if Presentation State is generated during acquisition, shall not be present otherwise.
>Include 'SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table C.17-3			
Content Qualification	(0018,9004)	1	Content Qualification Indicator Enumerated Values: PRODUCT RESEARCH SERVICE See C.8.13.2.1.1 for further explanation.
Resonant Nucleus	(0018,9100)	1C	Nucleus that is resonant at the transmitter frequency. Defined Terms: 1H 3HE 7LI 13C 19F 23NA 31P 129XE Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
k-space Filtering	(0018,9064)	1C	Describes k-space filtering applied. Shall be NONE if no k-space filter. Defined Terms: COSINE COSINE_SQUARED FERMI GAUSSIAN HAMMING HANNING LORENTZIAN LRNTZ_GSS_TRNSFM RIESZ TUKEY NONE Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Magnetic Field Strength	(0018,0087)	1C	Nominal field strength of the MR Magnet, in Tesla. Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.

Applicable Safety Standard Agency	(0018,9174)	1	Agency that established MR safety standard applicable to the acquisition of this Instance. Defined Terms: IEC FDA MHW
Applicable Safety Standard Description	(0018,9175)	3	Name and Version of the applicable standard.
Image Comments	(0020,4000)	3	User-defined comments about the image.

C.8.13.2.1 MR Image and Spectroscopy Instance Macro Attribute Description

C.8.13.2.1.1 Content Qualification

Content Qualification (0018,9004) shall have the value PRODUCT if the content (image or Spectroscopy data) was produced with approved hardware and software. It shall have the value RESEARCH or SERVICE if there is any doubt as to whether the content was produced with approved hardware and software.

If data with Content Qualification (0018,9004) of RESEARCH or SERVICE is used to derive other content then it is expected that this derived content will also have Content Qualification (0018,9004) set to RESEARCH or SERVICE.

The intent of this element is to allow annotation of an advisory message that indicates that this content may not be suitable for clinical interpretation.

C.8.13.2.1.2 Evidence Sequence Attributes

The intent of the Referenced Image Evidence Sequence (0008,9092) and Source Image Evidence Sequence (0008,9154) is to provide a list of all unique SOP Instances listed in the Referenced Image Sequence (0008,1140) and Source Image Sequence (0008,2112) attributes respectively.

C.8.13.3 MR Image Description Macro

This section describes the MR Image Description Macro.

Table C.8-82 specifies the attributes of the MR Image Description Macro.

Table C.8-82
MR IMAGE DESCRIPTION MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Complex Image Component	(0008,9208)	1	Representation of complex data of frames in the SOP Instance. See C.8.13.3.1.5 for a description and Defined Terms.
Acquisition Contrast	(0008,9209)	1	Indication of acquisition contrast used with frames in the SOP Instance. See C.8.13.3.1.6 for a description and Defined Terms.

C.8.13.3.1 MR Image Description Attribute Description

C.8.13.3.1.1 Image Type and Frame Type

The Image Type (0008,0008) and Frame Type (0008,9007) are not included in this Macro but one or the other is always included in the Module or Macro that invokes this Macro, and they are therefore described here.

In addition to the requirements specified in C.8.16.1 Image Type and Frame Type, the following additional requirements and Defined Terms are specified.

C.8.13.3.1.1.1 Pixel Data Characteristics

Value 1 of Image Type (0008,0008) and Frame Type (0008,9007) is discussed in C.8.16.1.1. No additional requirements or Defined Terms.

C.8.13.3.1.1.2 Patient Examination Characteristics

Value 2 of Image Type (0008,0008) and Frame Type (0008,9007) is discussed in C.8.16.1.2. No additional requirements or Defined Terms.

C.8.13.3.1.1.3 Image Flavor

Table C.8-83 specifies the Defined Terms for MR additional to those defined in C.8.16.1.3 for Value 3 for Image Type (0008,0008) and Frame Type (0008,9007).

Table C.8-83
MR-SPECIFIC IMAGE TYPE AND FRAME TYPE VALUE 3

Defined Term Name	Defined Term Description
ANGIO_TIME	Angio time acquisition (peripheral vascular/carotid)
CINE	Cardiac CINE
DIFFUSION	Collected to show diffusion effects.
FLOW_ENCODED	Flow Encoded
FLUID_ATTENUATED	Fluid Attenuated T2 weighted
FMRI	Collected for functional imaging calculations.
MAX_IP	Maximum Intensity Projection
MIN_IP	Minimum Intensity Projection
M_MODE	Image line over time
METABOLITE_MAP	Metabolite Maps from spectroscopy data
MULTIECHO	Multiple echoes with different contrast weighting (e.g. proton density and T2 weighted)
PROTON_DENSITY	Proton density weighted
REALTIME	Real-time collection of single slices
STIR	Short Tau Inversion Recovery
TAGGING	Images with superposition of thin saturation bands
TEMPERATURE	Images record temperature
T1	T1 weighted
T2	T2 weighted
T2_STAR	T2* weighted
TOF	Time Of Flight weighted
VELOCITY	Velocity encoded

C.8.13.3.1.1.4 Derived Pixel Contrast

Table C.8-84 specifies the Defined Terms for MR additional to those defined in C.8.16.1.4 for Value 4 for Image Type (0008,0008) and Frame Type (0008,9007).

Table C.8-84
MR-SPECIFIC IMAGE TYPE AND FRAME TYPE VALUE 4

Defined Term Name	Defined Term Description
ADC	Apparent Diffusion Coefficient
DIFFUSION	Diffusion weighted
DIFFUSION_ANISO	Diffusion Anisotropy
DIFFUSION_ATTNTD	Diffusion Attenuated. Derived by removing the T2 contributions from a Diffusion Weighted image.
METABOLITE_MAP	Metabolite Maps from spectroscopy data
NEI	Created through Negative Enhancement Integral operation
R_COEFFICIENT	R-Coefficient Map (fMRI)
RHO	Proton Density map
SCM	Signal Change Map
SNR_MAP	Signal to Noise Map
T1_MAP	T1 Map
T2_STAR_MAP	T2* Map
T2_MAP	T2 Map
TCS	Time Course of Signal
TEMPERATURE	Temperature encoded
VELOCITY	Velocity encoded

C.8.13.3.1.2 Pixel Presentation

See C.8.16.2.1.1. No additional requirements or Defined Terms.

C.8.13.3.1.2.1 Supplemental Palette Color LUTs

See C.8.16.2.1.1.1.

C.8.13.3.1.3 Volumetric Properties

See C.8.16.2.1.2. No additional requirements or Defined Terms.

C.8.13.3.1.4 Volume Based Calculation Technique Attribute

See C.8.16.2.1.3. No additional requirements or Defined Terms.

C.8.13.3.1.5 Complex Image Component

The value of the Complex Image Component attribute (0008,9208) shall be used to indicate which component of the complex representation of the signal is represented in the pixel data.

Table C.8-85 specifies the Defined Terms for Complex Image Component attribute (0008,9208).

Table C.8-85
COMPLEX IMAGE COMPONENT ATTRIBUTE VALUES

Defined Term Name	Defined Term Description
MAGNITUDE	The magnitude component of the complex image data.
PHASE	The phase component of the complex image data.
REAL	The real component of the complex image data.
IMAGINARY	The imaginary component of the complex image data.
MIXED	Used only as a value in Complex Image Component (0008,9208) in the Enhanced MR Image Module if frames within the image SOP Instance contain different values for the Complex Image Component attribute in the MR Frame Type Functional Group.

C.8.13.3.1.6 Acquisition Contrast

Table C.8-86 specifies the Defined Terms for Acquisition Contrast attribute (0008,9209).

Table C.8-86
ACQUISITION CONTRAST VALUES

Defined Term Name	Defined Term Description
DIFFUSION	Diffusion weighted contrast
FLOW_ENCODED	Flow Encoded contrast
FLUID_ATTENUATED	Fluid Attenuated T2 weighted contrast
PERFUSION	Perfusion weighted contrast
PROTON_DENSITY	Proton Density weighted contrast
STIR	Short Tau Inversion Recovery
TAGGING	Superposition of thin saturation bands onto image
T1	T1 weighted contrast
T2	T2 weighted contrast
T2_STAR	T2* weighted contrast
TOF	Time Of Flight weighted contrast
UNKNOWN	Value should be UNKNOWN if acquisition contrasts were combined resulting in an unknown contrast. Also this value should be used when the contrast is not known.
MIXED	Used only as a value in Acquisition Contrast (0008,9209) attribute in the Enhanced MR Image Type Module if frames within the image SOP Instance contain different values for the Acquisition Contrast attribute in the MR Frame Type Functional Group.

C.8.13.4 MR Pulse Sequence Module

The primary purpose of this module is to identify the pulse sequence and variations on that, which was used in creation of the image. Terminology is intended to be neutral, and allow equivalent sequences provided by different vendors to be classified the same.

Table C.8-87 specifies the attributes of the MR Pulse Sequence Module.

Table C.8-87
MR PULSE SEQUENCE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Pulse Sequence Name	(0018,9005)	1C	Name of the pulse sequence for annotation purposes. Potentially vendor-specific name. Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
MR Acquisition Type	(0018,0023)	1C	Identification of spatial data encoding scheme. Defined Terms: 1D 2D 3D Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Echo Pulse Sequence	(0018,9008)	1C	Echo category of pulse sequences. Enumerated Values: SPIN GRADIENT BOTH Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Multiple Spin Echo	(0018,9011)	1C	Multiple Spin Echo category of pulse sequence used to collect different lines in k-space for a single frame. Enumerated Values: YES NO Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED and Echo Pulse sequence (0018,9008) equals SPIN or BOTH. Otherwise may be present if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is DERIVED and Echo Pulse sequence (0018,9008) equals SPIN or BOTH.
Multi-planar Excitation	(0018,9012)	1C	Technique that simultaneously excites several volumes. Enumerated Values: YES

			NO Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Phase Contrast	(0018,9014)	1C	Phase Contrast Pulse sequence is a pulse sequence in which the flowing spins are velocity encoded in phase. Enumerated Values: YES NO Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Time of Flight Contrast	(0018,9015)	1C	Time of Flight contrast is created by the inflow of blood in the saturated plane. Enumerated Values: YES NO Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Steady State Pulse Sequence	(0018,9017)	1C	Steady State Sequence. Defined Terms: FREE_PRECESSION TRANSVERSE TIME_REVERSED LONGITUDINAL NONE Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Echo Planar Pulse Sequence	(0018,9018)	1C	Echo Planar category of Pulse Sequences. Enumerated Values: YES NO Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Saturation Recovery	(0018,9024)	1C	Saturation recovery pulse sequence. Enumerated Values: YES NO Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Spectrally Selected Suppression	(0018,9025)	1C	Spectrally Selected Suppression. Defined Terms: FAT WATER

			FAT_AND_WATER SILICON_GEL NONE Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Oversampling Phase	(0018,9029)	1C	Oversampling Phase. Enumerated Values: 2D = phase direction 3D = out of plane direction 2D_3D = both NONE Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Geometry of k-Space Traversal	(0018,9032)	1C	Geometry category of k-Space traversal. Defined Terms: RECTILINEAR RADIAL SPIRAL Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Rectilinear Phase Encode Reordering	(0018,9034)	1C	Rectilinear phase encode reordering. Defined Terms: LINEAR CENTRIC SEGMENTED REVERSE_LINEAR REVERSE_CENTRIC Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED and Geometry of k-Space Traversal (0018,9032) equals RECTILINEAR. Otherwise may be present if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is DERIVED and Geometry of k-Space Traversal (0018,9032) equals RECTILINEAR.
Segmented k-Space Traversal	(0018,9033)	1C	Segmented k-Space traversal. If Geometry of k-Space Traversal is rectilinear, multiple lines can be acquired at one time. If Geometry of k-Space Traversal is spiral or radial, paths can be interleaved and acquired at one time. Enumerated Values: SINGLE = successive single echo coverage PARTIAL = segmented coverage FULL = single shot full coverage Required if Image Type (0008,0008)

			Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Coverage of k-Space	(0018,9094)	1C	Coverage of k-Space in the ky-kz plane. Defined Terms: FULL ELLIPTICAL WEIGHTED Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED and MR Acquisition Type (0018,0023) equals 3D. Otherwise may be present if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is DERIVED and MR Acquisition Type (0018,0023) equals 3D.
Number of k-Space Trajectories	(0018,9093)	1C	Number of interleaves or shots. Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.

C.8.13.5 Enhanced MR Image Functional Group Macros

The following sections contain Functional Group macros specific to the Enhanced MR Image IOD.

Note: The attribute descriptions in the Functional Group Macros are written as if they were applicable to a single frame (i.e., the macro is part of the Per-frame Functional Groups Sequence). If an attribute is applicable to all frames (i.e. the macro is part of the Shared Functional Groups Sequence) the phrase "this frame" in the attribute description shall be interpreted to mean " for all frames".".

C.8.13.5.1 MR Image Frame Type Macro

Table C.8-88 specifies the attributes of the MR Image Frame Type Functional Group macro.

Table C.8-88
MR IMAGE FRAME TYPE MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
MR Image Frame Type Sequence	(0018,9226)	1	Identifies the characteristics of this frame. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Frame Type	(0008,9007)	1	Type of Frame. A multi-valued attribute analogous to the Image Type (0008,0008). Enumerated Values and Defined Terms are the same as those for the four values of the Image Type (0008,0008) attribute, except that the value MIXED is not allowed. See C.8.16.1 and C.8.13.3.1.1.
>Include Common CT/MR Image Description Macro' Table C.8-131			
>Include 'MR Image Description Macro' Table C.8-82			

C.8.13.5.2 MR Timing and Related Parameters Macro

Table C.8-89 specifies the attributes of the MR Timing and Related Parameters Functional Group macro.

Table C.8-89
MR TIMING AND RELATED PARAMETERS MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
MR Timing and Related Parameters Sequence	(0018,9112)	1	Identifies the timing and safety information of this frame. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Repetition Time	(0018,0080)	1C	The time in ms between two successive excitations of the same volume. Shall be 0 (zero) if there is a single excitation per volume. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Flip Angle	(0018,1314)	1C	Steady state angle in degrees to which the magnetic vector is flipped from the magnetic vector of the primary field. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Echo Train Length	(0018,0091)	1C	Number of lines in k-space acquired per excitation of the same volume regardless of the type of echo or the number of frames derived from them. See section C.8.12.5.2.1. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>RF Echo Train Length	(0018,9240)	1C	Number of RF echoes collected per RF shot (or excitation) per frame. A value of zero shall correspond to a pure gradient echo frame. Note that this value corresponds to the current frame. Several frames may be derived from the same shot. See section C.8.13.5.2.1. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Gradient Echo Train Length	(0018,9241)	1C	Number of gradient echoes collected per RF echo per shot (or excitation) per frame. A value of zero shall correspond to a pure RF echo frame. If RF Echo Train Length (0018,9240) is non zero and Gradient Echo Train Length is as well then only the central echo will be an RF Spin Echo, all others will be gradient echoes. See section C.8.13.5.2.1. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007)

			Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.

>Specific Absorption Rate Sequence	(0018,9239)	1C	Sequence containing the methods of SAR calculation and the corresponding values. One or more items may be present. Required if the system is capable of calculating Specific Absorption Rate (0018,9181).
>>Specific Absorption Rate Definition	(0018,9179)	1	Specification of the method of SAR calculation as defined in Applicable Safety Standard Description (0018,9174). Defined Terms: IEC_WHOLE_BODY IEC_PARTIAL_BODY IEC_HEAD IEC_LOCAL
>>Specific Absorption Rate Value	(0018,9181)	1	Specific Absorption Rate in W/kg.
>Gradient Output Type	(0018,9180)	1C	Definition of gradient output unit, for which the value is stored in Gradient Output (0018,9182). Defined Terms: DB_DT = in T/s ELECTRIC_FIELD = in V/m PER_NERVE_STIM = percentage of peripheral nerve stimulation Required if the system is capable of calculating Gradient Output (0018,9182).
>Gradient Output	(0018,9182)	1C	Unit is defined by Gradient Output Type (0018,9180). Required if the system is capable of calculating Gradient Output (0018,9182).
>Operating Mode Sequence	(0018,9176)	1C	Sequence of operating mode information relating to the frame/SOP instance as required to adhere to the Applicable Safety Standard Agency (0018,9174) regulations. One or more Items may be included in this sequence. Required if required by law or regulations. May be present otherwise.
>>Operating Mode Type	(0018,9177)	1	Defined Terms: STATIC FIELD RF GRADIENT
>>Operating Mode	(0018,9178)	1	Operating mode applicable for the defined by the applicable standard. Defined Terms: IEC_NORMAL IEC_FIRST_LEVEL IEC_SECOND_LEVEL

C.8.13.5.2.1 RF Echo Train Length and Gradient Echo Train Length Attributes Usage

The three Echo Train Length attributes all specify information related to the pulse sequence, one or more frames, and the echo type. The following examples illustrate their usage.

For a sequence with each excitation/shot producing 2 spin echoes that produce a line of k-Space for 2 different frames, the following values would be used for each frame:

Echo Train Length	2
Gradient Echo Train Length	0
RF Echo Train Length	1

For a sequence with each excitation/shot producing 2 gradient echoes that produce a line of k-Space for 2 different frames, the following values would be used:

Echo Train Length	2
Gradient Echo Train Length	1
RF Echo Train Length	0

For a sequence with each excitation/shot producing 8 spin echoes that produce 8 lines of k-Space for 1 frame, the following values would be used:

Echo Train Length	8
Gradient Echo Train Length	0
RF Echo Train Length	8

C.8.13.5.3 MR FOV/Geometry Macro

Table C.8-90 specifies the attributes of the MR FOV/Geometry Functional Group macro.

Table C.8-90
MR FOV/GEOMETRY MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
MR FOV/Geometry Sequence	(0018,9125)	1	Identifies the geometry parameters of this frame. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>In-plane Phase Encoding Direction	(0018,1312)	1C	The axes of the in-plane phase encoding with respect to the frame. Enumerated Values: COLUMN ROW OTHER Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>MR Acquisition Frequency Encoding Steps	(0018,9058)	1C	Number of Frequency Encoding steps (kx) acquired

			Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>MR Acquisition Phase Encoding Steps in-plane	(0018,9231)	1C	Number of In-Plane Phase Encoding steps (ky) acquired Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>MR Acquisition Phase Encoding Steps out-of-plane	(0018,9232)	1C	Number of Out-of-Plane Phase Encoding steps (kz) acquired Required if MR Acquisition Type (0018,0023) equals 3D and Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Percent Sampling	(0018,0093)	1C	Fraction of acquisition matrix lines acquired, expressed as a percent. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Percent Phase Field of View	(0018,0094)	1C	Ratio of field of view dimension in phase direction to field of view dimension in frequency direction, expressed as a percent. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.

C.8.13.5.4 MR Echo Macro

Table C.8-91 specifies the attributes of the MR Echo Functional Group macro.

Table C.8-91
MR ECHO MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
MR Echo Sequence	(0018,9114)	1	Identifies echo timing of this frame. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Effective Echo Time	(0018,9082)	1C	The time in ms between the middle of the excitation pulse and the peak of the echo produced for kx=0. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.

C.8.13.5.5 MR Modifier Macro

Table C.8-92 specifies the attributes of the MR Modifier Functional Group macro.

Table C.8-92
MR MODIFIER MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
MR Modifier Sequence	(0018,9115)	1	Identifies general acquisition parameters of this frame. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Inversion Recovery	(0018,9009)	1C	Inversion Recovery preparatory sequence. Enumerated Values: YES NO Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Inversion Times	(0018,9079)	1C	Times in ms after the middle of inverting RF pulse to middle of excitation pulse to detect the amount of longitudinal magnetization. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL and Inversion Recovery (0018,9009) equals YES. Otherwise may be present if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 is DERIVED and Inversion Recovery (0018,9009) equals YES.
>Flow Compensation	(0018,9010)	1C	Flow Compensation. Defined Terms: ACCELERATION VELOCITY OTHER NONE Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Flow Compensation Direction	(0018,9183)	1C	Flow Compensation Direction. Enumerated Values: PHASE FREQUENCY SLICE_SELECT SLICE_AND_FREQ SLICE_FREQ_PHASE PHASE_AND_FREQ SLICE_AND_PHASE OTHER Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL and Flow Compensation (0018,9010) equals

			other than NONE. Otherwise may be present if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 is DERIVED and Flow Compensation (0018,9010) equals other than NONE.
>Spoiling	(0018,9016)	1C	Spoiling. Enumerated Values: RF = RF spoiled GRADIENT = gradient spoiled RF_AND_GRADIENT NONE Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL and Echo Pulse Sequence (0018,9008) equals GRADIENT or BOTH. Otherwise may be present if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 is DERIVED and Echo Pulse Sequence (0018,9008) equals GRADIENT or BOTH.
>T2 Preparation	(0018,9021)	1C	T2 prepared Pulse Sequence. Enumerated Values: YES NO Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Spectrally Selected Excitation	(0018,9026)	1C	Spectrally Selected Excitation. Enumerated Values: WATER = water excitation FAT = fat excitation NONE Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Spatial Pre-saturation	(0018,9027)	1C	Spatial Pre-saturation. Defined Terms: SLAB NONE Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Partial Fourier	(0018,9081)	1C	Partial Fourier. Enumerated Values: YES NO Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Partial Fourier Direction	(0018,9036)	1C	Direction of Partial Fourier. Enumerated Values: PHASE

			FREQUENCY SLICE_SELECT COMBINATION Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL and Partial Fourier (0018,9081) equals YES. Otherwise may be present if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 is DERIVED and Partial Fourier (0018,9081) equals YES.
>Parallel Acquisition	(0018,9077)	1C	Parallel acquisition has been used to reduce measurement time. Enumerated Values: YES NO Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Parallel Acquisition Technique	(0018,9078)	1C	Parallel acquisition characteristics. Defined Terms: PILS SENSE SMASH OTHER Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL and Parallel Acquisition (0018,9077) equals YES. Otherwise may be present if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 is DERIVED and Parallel Acquisition (0018,9077) equals YES.
>Parallel Reduction Factor In-plane	(0018,9069)	1C	Measurement time reduction factor expressed as ratio of original and reduced measurement time for the in-plane direction. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL and Parallel Acquisition (0018,9077) equals YES. Otherwise may be present if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 is DERIVED and Parallel Acquisition (0018,9077) equals YES.
>Parallel Reduction Factor out-of-plane	(0018,9155)	1C	Measurement time reduction factor expressed as ratio of original and reduced measurement time for the out-of-plane direction Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL and Parallel Acquisition (0018,9077) equals YES.

			Otherwise may be present if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 is DERIVED and Parallel Acquisition (0018,9077) equals YES.
>Parallel Reduction Factor Second In-plane	(0018,9168)	1C	Measurement time reduction factor expressed as ratio of original and reduced measurement time for the second in-plane direction. Only required for MR Spectroscopy SOP Instances. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL and Parallel Acquisition (0018,9077) equals YES. Otherwise may be present if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 is DERIVED and Parallel Acquisition (0018,9077) equals YES.

C.8.13.5.6 MR Imaging Modifier Macro

Table C.8-93 specifies the attributes of the MR Imaging Modifier Functional Group macro.

Table C.8-93
MR IMAGING MODIFIER MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
MR Imaging Modifier Sequence	(0018,9006)	1	Identifies sequence containing MR modifier Sequence Attributes. Only one item may be included in this sequence.
>Magnetization Transfer	(0018,9020)	1C	Magnetization Transfer pulse sequence. Enumerated Values: ON_RESONANCE OFF_RESONANCE NONE Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Blood Signal Nulling	(0018,9022)	1C	Blood Signal Nulling (“Black Blood”) preparatory pulse sequence. Enumerated Values: YES NO Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Tagging	(0018,9028)	1C	Tagging. Defined Terms: GRID LINE NONE Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Tag Spacing First Dimension	(0018,9030)	1C	Space between lines in mm. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL and Tagging (0018,9028) is GRID or LINE. Otherwise may be present if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 is DERIVED and Tagging (0018,9028) is GRID or LINE.
>Tag Spacing Second Dimension	(0018,9218)	1C	Space between the lines in mm in the other direction. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL and Tagging (0018,9028) is GRID. Otherwise may be present if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 is DERIVED and Tagging (0018,9028) is GRID.
>Tag Angle First Axis	(0018,9019)	1C	Angle of the tag lines relative to the rows axis (left to right) of the image, with a

			range of 0-180 degrees. The angle is increasing in clockwise direction. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL and Tagging (0018,9028) is GRID or LINE. Otherwise may be present if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 is DERIVED and Tagging (0018,9028) is GRID or LINE.
>Tag Angle Second Axis	(0018,9219)	1C	Angle of the tag lines relative to the rows axis (left to right) of the image, with a range of 0-180 degrees. The angle is increasing in clockwise direction. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL and Tagging (0018,9028) is GRID. Otherwise may be present if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 is DERIVED and Tagging (0018,9028) is GRID.
>Tag Thickness	(0018,9035)	1C	Thickness of the line in mm. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL and Tagging (0018,9028) is GRID or LINE. Otherwise may be present if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 is DERIVED and Tagging (0018,9028) is GRID or LINE.
>Tagging Delay	(0018,9184)	3	Delay time in ms of the beginning of the application of the tagging pattern relative to the last R-peak.
>Transmitter Frequency	(0018,9098)	1C	Center transmitter frequency in MHz. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
> Pixel Bandwidth	(0018,0095)	1C	Reciprocal of the effective sampling period, in hertz per pixel. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.

C.8.13.5.7 MR Receive Coil Macro

Table C.8-94 specifies the attributes of the MR Receive Coil Functional Group macro.

Table C.8-94
MR RECEIVE COIL MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
MR Receive Coil Sequence	(0018,9042)	1	A sequence that provides information about each receive coil used. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Receive Coil Name	(0018,1250)	1C	Name of receive coil used. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Receive Coil Manufacturer Name	(0018,9041)	2C	Name of manufacturer of receive coil. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Receive Coil Type	(0018,9043)	1C	Type of receive coil used. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise. Defined Terms: BODY VOLUME = head, extremity, etc. SURFACE MULTICOIL
>Quadrature Receive Coil	(0018,9044)	1C	Indicates whether the receive coil is quadrature. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise. Enumerated Values: YES = quadrature or circularly polarized NO = linear
>Multi-Coil Definition Sequence	(0018,9045)	1C	A sequence that provides information regarding each element of a multi-coil. It should include attributes for all elements, whether used in the current acquisition or not. One or more Items shall be present. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL and Receive Coil Type (0018,9043) equals MULTICOIL. May be present otherwise only if Receive Coil Type (0018,9043) equals MULTICOIL.
>>Multi-Coil Element Name	(0018,9047)	1	Name of element of multi-coil.

>>Multi-Coil Element Used	(0018,9048)	1	Indicates whether the multi-coil element was used in the current acquisition. Enumerated Values: YES NO
>Multi-Coil Configuration	(0018,9046)	3	A textual description of the configuration of multi-coil elements which was used in the current acquisition.

C.8.13.5.8 MR Transmit Coil Macro

Table C.8-95 specifies the attributes of the MR Transmit Coil Functional Group macro.

Table C.8-95
MR TRANSMIT COIL MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
MR Transmit Coil Sequence	(0018,9049)	1	A sequence that provides information about the transmit coil used. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Transmit Coil Name	(0018,1251)	1C	Name of transmit coil used. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Transmit Coil Manufacturer Name	(0018,9050)	2C	Name of manufacturer of transmit coil. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Transmit Coil Type	(0018,9051)	1C	Type of transmit coil used. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise. Defined Terms: BODY VOLUME = head, extremity, etc. SURFACE

C.8.13.5.9 MR Diffusion Macro

Table C.8-96 specifies the attributes of the MR Diffusion Functional Group macro.

Table C.8-96
MR DIFFUSION MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
MR Diffusion Sequence	(0018,9117)	1	Identifies the diffusion parameters of this frame. One Item shall be included in this sequence.
>Diffusion b-value	(0018,9087)	1C	Diffusion sensitization factor in sec/mm^2. This is the actual b-value for original frames and those derived from frames with the same b-value, or the most representative b-value when derived from images with different b-values. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Diffusion Directionality	(0018,9075)	1C	Specifies whether diffusion conditions for the frame are directional, or isotropic with respect to direction. Defined Terms: DIRECTIONAL ISOTROPIC NONE = to be used when Frame Type (0008,9007) value 4 equals DIFFUSION_ANISO or Diffusion b-value (0018,9087) is 0 (zero). Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Diffusion Gradient Direction Sequence	(0018,9076)	1C	Sequence containing orientations of all diffusion sensitization gradients that were applied during the preparation phase for this frame. One or more Items may be present. Required if Diffusion Directionality (0018,9075) equals DIRECTIONAL
>>Diffusion Gradient Orientation	(0018,9089)	1C	The direction cosines of the diffusion gradient vector with respect to the patient Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Diffusion Anisotropy Type	(0018,9147)	1C	Class of diffusion anisotropy calculation. Defined Terms: FRACTIONAL RELATIVE VOLUME_RATIO

			Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) value 4 equals DIFFUSION_ANISO.

C.8.13.5.10 MR Averages Macro

Table C.8-97 specifies the attributes of the MR Averages Functional Group macro.

Table C.8-97
MR AVERAGES MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
MR Averages Sequence	(0018,9119)	1	Identifies the averaging parameters of this frame. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Number of Averages	(0018,0083)	1C	Maximum number of times any point in k-space is acquired. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.

C.8.13.5.11 MR Spatial Saturation Macro

Table C.8-98 specifies the attributes of the MR Spatial Saturation Functional Group macro.

Table C.8-98
MR SPATIAL SATURATION MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
MR Spatial Saturation Sequence	(0018,9107)	2	A sequence that provides the position of spatial saturation bands deposited as part of the pulse sequence. Zero or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>Slab Thickness	(0018,9104)	1	Thickness of slab in mm.
>Slab Orientation	(0018,9105)	1	The direction cosines of a normal vector perpendicular to the saturation plane with respect to the patient. See C.7.6.2.1.1 for further explanation.
>Mid Slab Position	(0018,9106)	1	The x, y, and z coordinates of the midpoint of the slab plane in mm with respect to the patient. See C.7.6.2.1.1 for further explanation.

C.8.13.5.12 MR Metabolite Map Macro

Table C.8-99 specifies the attributes of the MR Metabolite Map Functional Group macro.

TABLE C.8-99
MR METABOLITE MAP MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
MR Metabolite Map Sequence	(0018,9152)	1	Identifies chemical shift parameters of this frame. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Metabolite Map Description	(0018,9080)	1C	Text describing the Metabolite Map. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Metabolite Map Code Sequence	(0018,9083)	3	Code describing the Metabolite Map.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1.			Defined Context ID = 4032
>Chemical Shift Sequence	(0018,9084)	3	The list of frequencies that were used to create the Metabolite Map. One or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>>Chemical Shift Minimum Integration Limit in ppm	(0018,9295)	1	Minimal value of Chemical Shift Frequency in ppm.
>>Chemical Shift Maximum Integration Limit in ppm	(0018,9296)	1	Maximum value of Chemical Shift Frequency in ppm.

C.8.13.5.13 MR Velocity Encoding Macro

Table C.8-100 specifies the attributes of the MR Velocity Encoding Functional Group macro.

Table C.8-100
MR VELOCITY ENCODING MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
MR Velocity Encoding Sequence	(0018,9197)	1	Identifies the velocity encoding of this frame. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Velocity Encoding Direction	(0018,9090)	1C	The direction cosines of the velocity encoding vector with respect to the patient. See C.7.6.2.1.1 for further explanation. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Velocity Encoding Minimum Value	(0018,9091)	1C	Minimum velocity in cm/s. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Velocity Encoding Maximum Value	(0018,9217)	1C	Maximum velocity in cm/s. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.

C.8.13.6 MR Series Module

The MR IODs use the General Series module described in section C.7.3.1, specialized by the MR Series Module, to describe the DICOM Series Entity described in A.1.2.3, and to define what constitutes a Series for the context of MR device.

Table C.8-101 specifies the Attributes that identify and describe general information about the MR Series.

Table C.8-101
MR SERIES MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Modality	(0008,0060)	1	Type of equipment that originally acquired the data used to create the images in this Series. Enumerated Values: MR See section C.7.3.1.1.1 for further explanation.
Referenced Performed Procedure Step Sequence	(0008,1111)	1C	Uniquely identifies the Performed Procedure Step SOP Instance to which the Series is related (e.g. a Modality or General-Purpose Performed Procedure Step SOP Instance). The Sequence shall

			have one Item. Required if the Modality Performed Procedure Step SOP Class , General Purpose Performed Procedure Step SOP Class is supported.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.

C.8.14 MR Spectroscopy Modules

This section describes the MR Spectroscopy Modules.

Note: Many attributes have names and descriptions that include the terms “pixel” and “image”. Although MR spectroscopy is not pixel based, some of these “pixel” and “image” attributes encode concepts that are still relevant for this technique. Where such attributes appear in the MR Spectroscopy IOD, it may be helpful to consider the term “pixel” to be equivalent to a spectroscopy “voxel”, and the term “image” to be equivalent to “MR Spectroscopy SOP Instance”.

C.8.14.1 MR Spectroscopy Module

Table C.8-102 specifies the attributes of the MR Spectroscopy Module.

Table C.8-102
MR SPECTROSCOPY MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Include ' MR Image and Spectroscopy Instance Macro' Table C.8-81			
Image Type	(0008,0008)	1	Spectroscopy data characteristics. See C.8.14.5.1.1.

Include 'MR Spectroscopy Description Macro' Table C.8.107			
Transmitter Frequency	(0018,9098)	1C	Precession frequency in MHz of the nucleus being addressed for each spectral axis. See section C.8.14.1.1 for further explanation of the ordering. Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
Spectral Width	(0018,9052)	1C	Spectral width in Hz. See section C.8.14.1.1 for further explanation of the ordering. Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Chemical Shift Reference	(0018,9053)	1C	The chemical shift at the transmitter frequency in ppm. See section C.8.14.1.1 for further explanation of the ordering. Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Volume Localization Technique	(0018,9054)	1C	Name of volume localization technique used. Shall be "NONE" if no spatial localization was performed. Defined Terms: ILOPS ISIS PRIME PRESS SLIM SLOOP STEAM NONE Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Volume Localization Sequence	(0018,9126)	1C	A sequence of one or more Items that provide the position of RF excitations used to select a volume of tissue. The selected volume is described by the intersection of the sequence Items. Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED and Volume Localization Technique (0018,9054) is other than NONE. May be present if Volume Localization Technique (0018,9054) is other than NONE.
>Slab Thickness	(0018,9104)	1	Thickness of slab in mm.
>Slab Orientation	(0018,9105)	1	The direction cosines of a normal vector

			perpendicular to the selection plane with respect to the patient. See C.7.6.2.1.1 for further explanation.
>Mid Slab Position	(0018,9106)	1	The x, y, and z coordinates of the mid-point of the slab in mm. See C.7.6.2.1.1 for further explanation.
De-coupling	(0018,9059)	1C	Indicates whether de-coupling was active. Enumerated Values: YES NO Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
De-coupled Nucleus	(0018,9060)	1C	Nucleus being de-coupled. Defined Terms: 1H 3HE 7LI 13C 19F 23NA 31P 129XE See section C.8.14.1.1 for further explanation of the ordering. Required if De-coupling (0018,9059) equals YES.
De-coupling Frequency	(0018,9061)	1C	The center frequency (Hz) for the de-coupling. See section C.8.14.1.1 for further explanation of the ordering. Required if De-coupling (0018,9059) equals YES.
De-coupling Method	(0018,9062)	1C	The de-coupling modulation scheme used. Defined Terms: MLEV WALTZ NARROWBAND Required if De-coupling (0018,9059) equals YES.
De-coupling Chemical Shift Reference	(0018,9063)	1C	The chemical shift in ppm at the de-coupling frequency. See section C.8.14.1.1 for further explanation of the ordering. Required if De-coupling (0018,9059) equals YES.
Time Domain Filtering	(0018,9065)	1C	Describes time domain filtering or apodization applied. Shall be NONE if no

			filtering operations were applied to the time domain data. Defined Terms: COSINE COSINE_SQUARED EXPONENTIAL GAUSSIAN HAMMING HANNING LORENTZIAN LRNTZ_GSS_TRNSFM NONE See section C.8.14.1.1 for further explanation of the ordering. Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Number of Zero Fills	(0018,9066)	1C	Number of zero fills added to the time domain data before FT. Shall be 0 (zero) if no zero filling performed. See section C.8.14.1.1 for further explanation of the ordering. Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Baseline Correction	(0018,9067)	1C	Describes baseline correction techniques. Shall be NONE if no baseline correction was performed. Defined Terms: LINEAR_TILT LOCAL_LINEAR_FIT POLYNOMIAL_FIT SINC_DECONVOLUTN TIME_DOMAIN_FIT SPLINE NONE Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Frequency Correction	(0018,9101)	1C	Specifies whether operations were performed to correct resonant frequency of metabolite peaks due to B0 field inhomogeneities. Enumerated Values: YES NO Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
First Order Phase Correction	(0018,9198)	1C	Describes whether a first order (frequency dependent) phase correction was applied to the spectral data.

			Enumerated Values: YES NO Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Water Referenced Phase Correction	(0018,9199)	1C	Enumerated Values: YES NO Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.

C.8.14.1.1 MR Spectroscopy Attribute Multiplicity Ordering

The following attributes may have a Value Multiplicity of one or two depending whether one or two frequency axes are used as specified by the value of Data Point Rows (0028,9001):

Transmitter Frequency (0018,9098)
Resonant Nucleus (0018,9100)
Spectral Width (0018,9052)
Chemical Shift Reference (0018,9053)
De-coupled Nucleus (0018,9060)
De-coupling Frequency (0018,9061)
De-coupling Chemical Shift Reference (0018,9063)
Time Domain Filtering (0018,9065)
Number of Zero Fills (0018,9066)

Value 1 shall contain the value corresponding to the sampling time axis (the axis along a data point row).

Value 2, if present, shall contain the value corresponding to the evolution time axis (the axis along a data point column).

C.8.14.2 MR Spectroscopy Pulse Sequence Module

The primary purpose of this module is to identify the pulse sequence and variations which were used in creation of the spectroscopic data. Terminology is intended to be neutral, and allow equivalent sequences provided by different vendors to be classified together.

Table C.8-103 specifies the attributes of the MR Spectroscopy Pulse Sequence Module.

Table C.8-103
MR SPECTROSCOPY PULSE SEQUENCE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Pulse Sequence Name	(0018,9005)	1C	Name of the pulse sequence for annotation purposes. Potentially vendor-specific name. Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
MR Spectroscopy Acquisition Type	(0018,9200)	1C	Identification of data encoding scheme. Defined Terms: SINGLE_VOXEL ROW PLANE VOLUME Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Echo Pulse Sequence	(0018,9008)	1C	Echo category of pulse sequences. Enumerated Values: SPIN GRADIENT BOTH Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Multiple Spin Echo	(0018,9011)	1C	Multiple Spin Echo category of pulse sequence used to collect different lines in k-space for a single frame. Enumerated Values: YES NO Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED and Echo Pulse Sequence (0018,9008) equals SPIN or BOTH. Otherwise may be present if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is DERIVED and Echo Pulse Sequence (0018,9008) equals SPIN or BOTH.
Multi-planar Excitation	(0018,9012)	1C	Technique that simultaneously excites several volumes. Enumerated Values: YES

			NO Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Steady State Pulse Sequence	(0018,9017)	1C	Steady State Sequence. Defined Terms: FREE_PRECESSION TRANSVERSE TIME_REVERSED LONGITUDINAL NONE Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Echo Planar Pulse Sequence	(0018,9018)	1C	Echo Planar category of pulse-sequences. Enumerated Values: YES NO Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Spectrally Selected Suppression	(0018,9025)	1C	Spectrally Selected Suppression. Defined Terms: WATER FAT FAT_AND_WATER SILICON_GEL NONE Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Geometry of k-Space Traversal	(0018,9032)	1C	Geometry category of k-Space traversal. Defined Terms: RECTILINEAR RADIAL SPIRAL Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Rectilinear Phase Encode Reordering	(0018,9034)	1C	Rectilinear phase encode reordering. Defined Terms: LINEAR CENTRIC SEGMENTED REVERSE_LINEAR REVERSE_CENTRIC Required if Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED and Geometry of k-Space Traversal (0018,9032) equals

			RECTILINEAR. Otherwise may be present if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is DERIVED and Geometry of k-Space Traversal (0018,9032) equals RECTILINEAR.
Segmented k-Space Traversal	(0018,9033)	1C	Segmented k-Space traversal. If Geometry of k-Space Traversal is rectilinear, multiple lines can be acquired at one time. If Geometry of k-Space Traversal is spiral or radial, paths can be interleaved and acquired at one time. Enumerated Values: SINGLE = successive single echo coverage PARTIAL = segmented coverage FULL = single shot full coverage Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.
Coverage of k-Space	(0018,9094)	1C	Coverage of k-Space. Defined Terms: FULL CYLINDRICAL ELLIPSOIDAL WEIGHTED Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED and MR Spectroscopy Acquisition Type (0018,9200) equals VOLUME. Otherwise may be present if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is DERIVED and MR Spectroscopy Acquisition Type (0018,9200) equals VOLUME.
Number of k-Space Trajectories	(0018,9093)	1C	Number of interleaves or shots. Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL or MIXED. May be present otherwise.

C.8.14.3 MR Spectroscopy Functional Group Macros

The following sections contain Functional Group Macro's specific to the MR Spectroscopy IOD.

Note: The attribute descriptions in the Functional Group Macros are written as if they were applicable to a single frame (i.e., the macro is part of the Per-frame Functional Groups Sequence). If an attribute is applicable to all frames (i.e. the macro is part of the Shared Functional Groups Sequence) the phrase "this frame" in the attribute description shall be interpreted to mean " for all frames".".

C.8.14.3.1 MR Spectroscopy Frame Type Macro

Table C.8-104 specifies the attributes of the MR Spectroscopy Frame Type Functional Group macro.

Table C.8-104
MR SPECTROSCOPY FRAME TYPE MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
MR Spectroscopy Frame Type Sequence	(0018,9227)	1	Identifies sequence containing Frame Type Attributes. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Frame Type	(0008,9007)	1	Spectroscopy data characteristics. See C.8.14.5.1.1.
>Include 'MR Spectroscopy Description Macro' Table C.8.107			

C.8.14.3.2 MR Spectroscopy FOV/Geometry Macro

Table C.8-105 specifies the attributes of the MR Spectroscopy FOV/Geometry Functional Group Macro.

Table C.8-105
MR SPECTROSCOPY FOV/GEOMETRY MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
MR Spectroscopy FOV/Geometry Sequence	(0018,9103)	1	Identifies the geometry parameters of this frame. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Spectroscopy Acquisition Data Columns	(0018,9127)	1C	Number of data points in the columns direction. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Spectroscopy Acquisition Phase Rows	(0018,9095)	1C	Number of Phase Encoding Rows. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
> Spectroscopy Acquisition Phase Columns	(0018,9234)	1C	Number of Phase Encoding Columns. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Spectroscopy Acquisition Out-of-plane Phase Steps	(0018,9159)	1C	Number of out-of-plane Phase Encoding steps. Required if MR Spectroscopy Acquisition Type (0018,9200) equals PLANE and Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Percent Sampling	(0018,0093)	1C	Fraction of acquisition matrix lines acquired, expressed as a percent. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Percent Phase Field of View	(0018,0094)	1C	Ratio of field of view dimension in phase direction to field of view dimension in frequency direction, expressed as a percent. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.

C.8.14.4 MR Spectroscopy Data Module

Table C.8-106 specifies the attributes that describe the Spectroscopy Data.

Table C.8-106
MR SPECTROSCOPY DATA MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Rows	(0028,0010)	1	Number of voxels in the vertical direction in the frame.
Columns	(0028,0011)	1	Number of voxels in the horizontal direction in the frame.
Data Point Rows	(0028,9001)	1	Number of rows of data points in spectroscopic data.
Data Point Columns	(0028,9002)	1	Number of columns of data points in spectroscopic data.
Data Representation	(0028,9108)	1	Data representation of the data points. Each data point shall have the same representation. Enumerated Values: COMPLEX = Data is complex pair REAL = Data contains only real component IMAGINARY = Data contains only imaginary component MAGNITUDE = Magnitude data
Signal Domain Columns	(0028,9003)	1	Domain of represented signal in column direction. Enumerated Values: FREQUENCY TIME
Signal Domain Rows	(0028,9235)	1C	Domain of represented signal in row direction. Enumerated Values: FREQUENCY TIME Required if Data Point Rows (0028,9001) has a value of more than 1.
First Order Phase Correction Angle	(5600,0010)	1C	First Order Phase Correction Angle. Number of values is determined by Row ∗ Column ∗ Number of Frames. Required if First Order Phase Correction (0018,9198) equals YES
Spectroscopy Data	(5600,0020)	1	A data stream of the signal intensities that comprise the spectroscopic data. See C.8.14.4.1 for further explanation.

C.8.14.4.1 Spectroscopy Data

The Spectroscopy Data attribute (5600,0020) contains the Signal intensities for the spectra. The order of voxels sent for each spectral plane is left to right, top to bottom, i.e., the upper left voxel (labeled 1,1) is sent first followed by the remainder of row 1, followed by the first voxel of row 2 (labeled 2,1) then the remainder of row 2 and so on. Each "voxel" represents an entire spectrum. The complete spectral data from each voxel is sent, followed by the spectral data from the next voxel position.

The number of voxels on each frame are described by Rows (0028,0010) and Columns (0028,0011). The number of frames is described by Number of Frames (0028,0008). The frames may represent different locations in a 3D acquisition, or the same position at a different point of time, or a difference of some other combination of attributes.

The spectral data points are ordered from lower effective magnetic field strength (down-field) to higher effective magnetic field strength (up-field) when the Signal Domain Columns (0028,9003) or Signal Domain Rows (0028,9235) attributes contain the value FREQUENCY and from first sample acquired to last sample acquired when the Signal Domain Columns (0028,9003) or Signal Domain Rows (0028,9235) attributes contain the value TIME.

For two-dimensional spectral acquisitions, the ordering is such that all data points from a row (corresponding to all data points acquired in an individual sampling period), are followed by all data points from the successive sampling period. Following all data of the rows from a given voxel position, the data from the subsequent voxel position are sent. The axis parallel to the row direction corresponds to the sampling time axis. The axis parallel to the column direction corresponds to the evolution time axis.

The dimensions of each spectrum that make up a voxel are described by Data Point Rows (0028,9001) and Data Point Columns (0028,9002). In the case of 1D spectra, the number of Data Point Rows shall be 1.

For a Data Representation (0028,9108) value of COMPLEX, the order of data points is real channel followed by imaginary channel for each spectral data point. For the other Data Representation values (REAL, IMAGINARY and MAGNITUDE), each spectral data point contains only a single value.

The Figure C.8-18 depicts 6 frames each made up of 4 rows and 4 columns of voxels. Specific values for Data Point Rows (0028,9001) and Data Point Columns (0028,9002) of these voxels are not depicted.

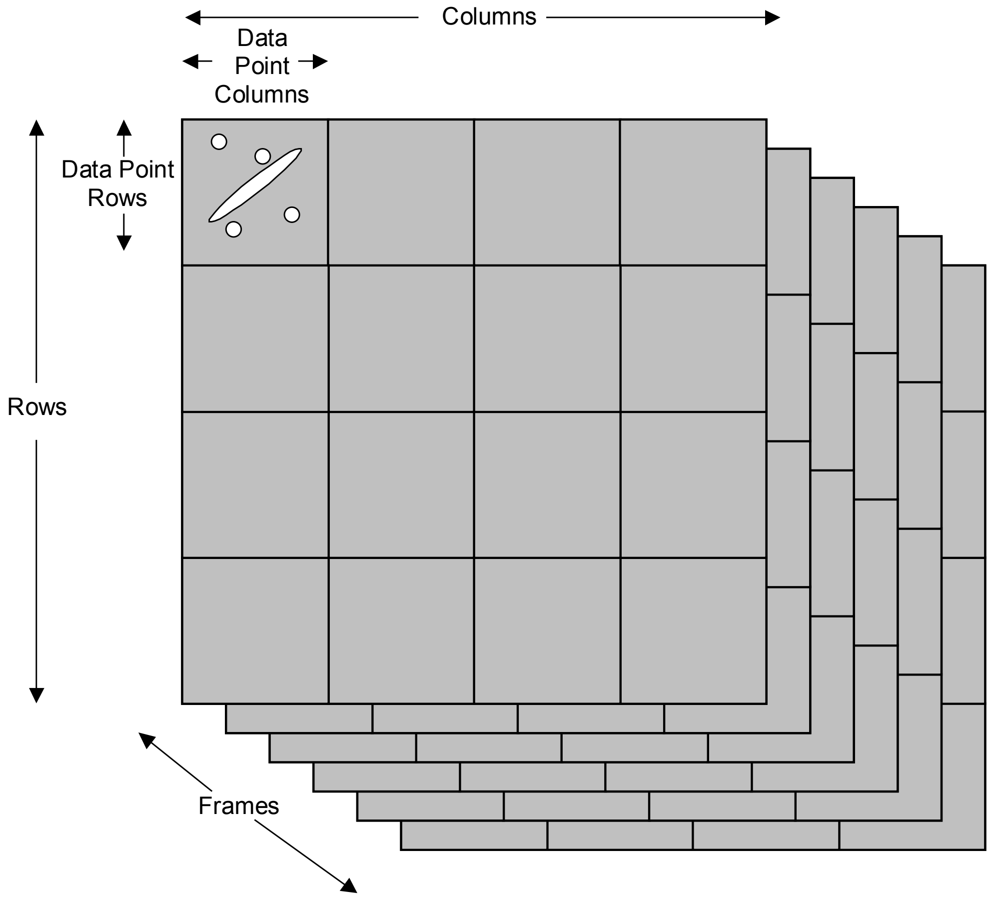


Figure C.8-18
Dimensions of spectroscopy data.

C.8.14.5 MR Spectroscopy Description Macro

Table C.8-107 specifies the attributes that describe the Spectroscopy.

Table C.8-107
MR SPECTROSCOPY DESCRIPTION MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Volumetric Properties	(0008,9206)	1	Indication if geometric manipulations are possible with frames in the SOP Instance. See C.8.14.5.1.2 for a description and Enumerated Values.
Volume Based Calculation Technique	(0008,9207)	1	Method used for volume calculations with frames in the SOP Instance. See C.8.14.5.1.3 for a description and Defined Terms.
Complex Image Component	(0008,9208)	1	Representation of complex data of frames in the SOP Instance. See C.8.14.5.1.4 for a description and Defined Terms.

Acquisition Contrast	(0008,9209)	1	Indication of acquisition contrast used with frames in the SOP Instance. See C.8.14.5.1.5 for a description and Defined Terms.

C.8.14.5.1 MR Spectroscopy Description Attribute Description

C.8.14.5.1.1 Image Type and Frame Type

The Image Type (0008,0008) and Frame Type (0008,9007) are not included in this Macro but one or the other is always included in the Module or Macro that invokes this Macro, and they are therefore described here.

In addition to the requirements specified in C.8.16.1 Image Type and Frame Type, the following additional requirements and Defined Terms are specified.

C.8.14.5.1.1.1 Pixel Data Characteristics

See C.8.16.1.1. No additional requirements or Defined Terms.

C.8.14.5.1.1.2 Patient Examination Characteristics

See C.8.16.1.2. No additional requirements or Defined Terms.

C.8.14.5.1.1.3 Image Flavor

See C.8.16.1.3 for requirements, but not Defined Terms.

Table C.8-108 specifies the Defined Terms for MR Spectroscopy for Value 3 for Image Type (0008,0008) and Frame Type (0008,9007).

Table C.8-108
MR SPECTROSCOPY IMAGE TYPE AND FRAME TYPE VALUE 3

Defined Term Name	Defined Term Description
SPECTROSCOPY	Spectroscopy

C.8.14.5.1.1.4 Derived Pixel Contrast

See C.8.16.1.4 for requirements, but not Defined Terms.

Table C.8-109 specifies the Defined Terms for Value 4 for Image Type (0008,0008) and Frame Type (0008,9007).

Table C.8-109
MR SPECTROSCOPY IMAGE TYPE AND FRAME TYPE VALUE 4

Defined Term Name	Defined Term Description
ADDITION	Created through point by point addition operation
DIVISION	Created through point by point division operation
MAXIMUM	Created through point by point maximum operation
MEAN	Created through point by point mean operation
MINIMUM	Created through point by point minimum operation
MULTIPLICATION	Created through point by point multiplication operation
STD_DEVIATION	Standard Deviation
SUBTRACTION	Created through point by point subtraction operation
NONE	Not calculated
MIXED	Used only as value in Image Type (0008,0008) if frames within the spectroscopy SOP Instance contain different values for value 4 in their Frame Type (0008,9007) attribute.

C.8.14.5.1.2 Volumetric Properties

See C.8.16.2.1.2. No additional requirements or Defined Terms.

C.8.14.5.1.3 Volume Based Calculation Technique Attribute

See C.8.16.2.1.3 for requirements, but not Defined Terms.

Table C.8-110 specifies the Defined Terms for the Volume Based Calculation Technique (0008,9207) attribute.

Table C.8-110
VOLUME BASED CALCULATION TECHNIQUE ATTRIBUTE VALUES

Defined Term Name	Defined Term Description
MAX_IP	Maximum Intensity Projection
MIN_IP	Minimum Intensity Projection
NONE	Pixels not derived geometrically
MIXED	Used only as a value in Volume Based Calculation Technique (0008,9207) attribute in the MR Spectroscopy Module if frames within the image SOP Instance contain different terms for the Volume Based Calculation Technique attribute in MR Spectroscopy Frame Type Functional Group.

C.8.14.5.1.4 Complex Image Component

The value of the Complex Image Component attribute (0008,9208) shall be used to indicate which component of the complex representation of the signal is represented in the spectroscopy data.

Table C.8-111 specifies the Defined Terms for Complex Image Component attribute (0008,9208).

Table C.8-111
COMPLEX IMAGE COMPONENT ATTRIBUTE VALUES

Defined Term Name	Defined Term Description
MAGNITUDE	The magnitude component of the complex spectroscopy data.
PHASE	The phase component of the complex spectroscopy data.
REAL	The real component of the complex spectroscopy data.
IMAGINARY	The imaginary component of the complex spectroscopy data.
COMPLEX	The real and imaginary components of the complex spectroscopy data
MIXED	Used only as a value in Complex Image Component (0008,9208) in the MR Spectroscopy Module if frames within the image SOP Instance contain different values for the Complex Image Component attribute in the MR Spectroscopy Frame Type Functional Group.

C.8.14.5.1.5 Acquisition Contrast

Table C.8-112 specifies the Defined Terms for Acquisition Contrast attribute (0008,9209).

Table C.8-112
ACQUISITION CONTRAST VALUES

Defined Term Name	Defined Term Description
PROTON_DENSITY	Proton Density weighted contrast
T1	T1 weighted contrast
T2	T2 weighted contrast
UNKNOWN	Value should be UNKNOWN if acquisition contrasts were combined resulting in an unknown contrast. Also this value should be used when the contrast is not known.
MIXED	Used only as a value in Acquisition Contrast (0008,9209) attribute in the MR Spectroscopy Module if frames within the SOP Instance contain different values for the Acquisition Contrast attribute in the MR Spectroscopy Frame Type Functional Group.

C.8.15 Enhanced CT Image

This section describes the specific modules for the Enhanced CT Image IOD.

C.8.15.1 CT Series Module

The CT IODs use the General Series module described in section C.7.3.1, specialized by the CT Series Module, to describe the DICOM Series Entity described in A.1.2.3, and to define what constitutes a Series for the context of CT device.

Table C.8-113 specifies the Attributes that identify and describe general information about the CT Series.

Table C.8-113
CT SERIES MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Modality	(0008,0060)	1	Type of equipment that originally acquired the data used to create the images in this Series. Enumerated Values: CT See section C.7.3.1.1.1 for further explanation.
Referenced Performed Procedure Step Sequence	(0008,1111)	1C	Uniquely identifies the Performed Procedure Step SOP Instance to which the Series is related (e.g. a Modality or General-Purpose Performed Procedure Step SOP Instance). The Sequence shall have one Item. Required if the Modality Performed Procedure Step SOP Class , General Purpose Performed Procedure Step SOP Class is supported.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.

C.8.15.2 Enhanced CT Image Module

This section describes the Enhanced CT Image Module. Table C.8-114 specifies the attributes of the Enhanced CT Image Module.

Table C.8-114
ENHANCED CT IMAGE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Image Type	(0008,0008)	1	Image characteristics. See sections C.8.16.1 and C.8.15.2.1.1.
Include Common CT/MR Image Description Macro' Table C.8-131			
Acquisition Number	(0020,0012)	3	A number identifying the single continuous gathering of data over a period of time that resulted in this image. Note: This number is not required to be unique across SOP Instances in a

			series. See also the description of the Referenced Raw Data Sequence (0008,9121).
Acquisition Datetime	(0008,002A)	1C	The date and time that the acquisition of data started. Notes: 1. The synchronization of this time with an external clock is specified in the synchronization Module in Acquisition Time synchronized (0018,1800) . 2. See C.7.6.16.2.2.1 for an overview of all acquisition related timing attributes. Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL or MIXED, may be present otherwise.
Acquisition Duration	(0018,9073)	2C	The time in seconds needed to complete the acquisition of data. See C.7.6.16.2.2.1 for further explanation. Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL or MIXED, may be present otherwise.
Referenced Raw Data Sequence	(0008,9121)	3	A sequence that identifies the set of Raw Data SOP Class/Instance pairs of the Raw data that were used to derive this Image. One or more Items may be included in this Sequence. Note: The items of in this sequence may identify raw data that has not been stored or encoded as a DICOM object. This allows recognition that images in different instances have been reconstructed from the same raw data.
>Include 'SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table C.17-3			
Referenced Waveform Sequence	(0008,113A)	3	References to waveforms acquired in conjunction with this image. These Waveforms may or may not be temporally synchronized with this image. One or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>Include 'SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table C.17-3			
Referenced Image Evidence Sequence	(0008,9092)	1C	Full set of Composite SOP Instances referring to image SOP Instances inside the frames of this Enhanced CT Image SOP Instance. See C.8.13.2.1.2 for further explanation. One or more Items may be included in this sequence. Required if the Referenced Image Sequence (0008,1140) is present.

>Include 'SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table C.17-3			
Source Image Evidence Sequence	(0008,9154)	1C	Full set of Composite SOP Instances used as source image SOP Instances inside the frames of this Enhanced CT Image SOP Instance. See C.8.13.2.1.2 for further explanation. One or more Items may be included in this sequence. Required if the Source Image Sequence (0008,2112) is present.
>Include 'SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table C.17-3			
Referenced Grayscale Presentation State Sequence	(0008,9237)	1C	References to Grayscale Presentation State instances acquired in conjunction with this instance. Note: May only be used to reference Presentation States belonging to the acquired data and not to reference Presentation States generated subsequently such as during interpretation. One or more Items may be included in this sequence. Required if Presentation State is generated during acquisition, shall not be present otherwise.
>Include 'SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table C.17-3			
Samples per Pixel	(0028,0002)	1	Number of samples (planes) in this image. This value shall be 1.
Photometric Interpretation	(0028,0004)	1	Specifies the intended interpretation of the pixel data. Enumerated Value: MONOCHROME2. See C.7.6.3.1.2 for definition of this term.
Bits Allocated	(0028,0100)	1	Number of bits allocated for each pixel sample. Each sample shall have the same number of bits allocated. This value shall be 16.
Bits Stored	(0028,0101)	1	Number of bits stored for each pixel sample. Each sample shall have the same number of bits stored. This value shall be 12 or16.
High Bit	(0028,0102)	1	Most significant bit for pixel sample data. Each sample shall have the same high bit. Shall be one less than the value in Bits Stored (0028,0101).
Content Qualification	(0018,9004)	1	Content Qualification Indicator Enumerated Values: PRODUCT RESEARCH SERVICE

			See C.8.13.2.1.1 for further explanation.
Image Comments	(0020,4000)	3	User-defined comments about the image
Burned In Annotation	(0028,0301)	1	Indicates whether or not the image contains sufficient burned in annotation to identify the patient and date the image was acquired. Enumerated Values: NO This means that images that contain this Module shall not contain such burned in annotations.
Lossy Image Compression	(0028,2110)	1	Specifies whether an Image has undergone lossy compression. Enumerated Values: 00 = Image has NOT been subjected to lossy compression. 01 = Image has been subjected to lossy compression. See C.7.6.1.1.5 for further explanation.
Lossy Image Compression Ratio	(0028,2112)	1C	Describes the approximate lossy compression ratio(s) that have been applied to this image. See C.7.6.1.1.5 for further explanation. May be multivalued if successive lossy compression steps have been applied. Note: For example, a compression ratio of 30:1 would be described in this Attribute with a single value of 30. Required if Lossy Images Compression (0028,2110) is “01”.
Lossy Image Compression Method	(0028,2114)	1C	A label for the lossy compression method(s) that have been applied to this image. See C.7.6.1.1.5 for further explanation. May be multivalued if successive lossy compression steps have been applied; the value order shall correspond to the values of Lossy Image Compression Ratio (0028,2112). Required if Lossy Image Compression (0028,2110) is “01”.
Presentation LUT Shape	(2050,0020)	1	Specifies an identity transformation for the Presentation LUT, such that the output of all grayscale transformations defined in the IOD containing this Module are defined to be P-Values. Enumerated Values:

			IDENTITY - output is in P-Values.
Icon Image Sequence	(0088,0200)	3	This icon image is representative of the Image.
> *Include 'Image Pixel Macro' Table C.7-11b*		See Section F.7.	

C.8.15.2.1 CT Image Description Attribute Description

C.8.15.2.1.1 Image Type and Frame Type

In addition to the requirements specified in C.8.16.1 Image Type and Frame Type, the following additional requirements and Defined Terms are specified.

These requirements and Defined Terms are also applicable to Frame Type (0008,9007).

C.8.15.2.1.1.1 Pixel Data Characteristics

Value 1 of Image Type (0008,0008) and Frame Type (0008,9007) is discussed in C.8.16.1.1. No additional requirements or Defined Terms.

C.8.15.2.1.1.2 Patient Examination Characteristics

Value 2 of Image Type (0008,0008) and Frame Type (0008,9007) is discussed in C.8.16.1.2. No additional requirements or Defined Terms.

C.8.15.2.1.1.3 Image Flavor

Table C.8-115 specifies the Defined Terms for CT additional to those defined in C.8.16.1.3 for Value 3 for Image Type (0008,0008) and Frame Type (0008,9007).

Table C.8-115
IMAGE TYPE AND FRAME TYPE VALUE 3 FOR CT

Defined Term Name	Defined Term Description
ATTENUATION	Collected for the purpose of performing attenuation corrections (e.g. PET attenuation correction)
REFERENCE	Collected for anatomical reference for PET or SPECT

C.8.15.2.1.1.4 Derived Pixel Contrast

Table C.8-116 specifies the Defined Terms for CT additional to those defined in C.8.16.1.4 for Value 4 for Image Type (0008,0008) and Frame Type (0008,9007).

Table C.8-116
IMAGE TYPE AND FRAME TYPE VALUE 4 FOR CT

Defined Term Name	Defined Term Description
FILTERED	An image filter has been applied
MEDIAN	Pixel by pixel median

C.8.15.3 Enhanced CT Image Functional Group Macros

The following sections contain Functional Group macros specific to the Enhanced CT Image IOD.

Note: The attribute descriptions in the Functional Group Macros are written as if they were applicable to a single frame (i.e., the macro is part of the Per-frame Functional Groups Sequence). If an attribute is applicable to all frames (i.e. the macro is part of the Shared Functional Groups

Sequence) the phrase "this frame" in the attribute description shall be interpreted to mean " for all frames".

C.8.15.3.1 CT Image Frame Type Macro

Table C.8-117 specifies the attributes of the CT Image Frame Type Functional Group macro.

Table C.8-117
CT IMAGE FRAME TYPE MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
CT Image Frame Type Sequence	(0018,9329)	1	Identifies the characteristics of this frame. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Frame Type	(0008,9007)	1	Type of Frame. A multi-valued attribute analogous to the Image Type (0008,0008). Enumerated Values and Defined Terms are the same as those for the four values of the Image Type (0008,0008) attribute, except that the value MIXED is not allowed. See sections C.8.16.1 and C.8.15.2.1.1.1.
> Include Common CT/MR Image Description Macro' Table C.8-131			

C.8.15.3.2 CT Acquisition Type Macro

Table C.8-118 specifies the attributes of the CT Acquisition Type Functional Group macro.

Table C.8-118
CT ACQUISITION TYPE MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
CT Acquisition Type Sequence	(0018,9301)	1	Contains the attributes defining the CT acquisition mode. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Acquisition Type	(0018,9302)	1C	Description of the method used during acquisition of this frame. See C.8.15.3.2.1 for Defined Terms. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Tube Angle	(0018,9303)	1C	The constant angle at which the x-ray source is located during acquisition. 0 degrees means that the source is located at the highest point of the gantry orbit. Degrees increase from 0 to positive 360 in a clockwise direction as viewed when facing the gantry where the table enters the gantry. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL and Acquisition Type (0018,9302) is

			CONSTANT_ANGLE. May be present otherwise if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is DERIVED and Acquisition Type (0018,9302) is CONSTANT_ANGLE.
>Constant Volume Flag	(0018,9333)	1C	Identifies that the acquisition was performed by repetitively acquiring the same volume set over a period of time. Note: The Acquisition Type (0018,9302) value may be SEQUENCED, SPIRAL or STATIONARY depending on whether table movement is necessary to cover the volume. Enumerated Values YES NO Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Fluoroscopy Flag	(0018,9334)	1C	Identifies that near real-time display of a block of continuously acquired data was performed, which may result in a lower than usual image quality. Enumerated Values YES NO Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.

C.8.15.3.2.1 Acquisition Type

Acquisition Type (0018,9302) has the following Defined Terms:

SEQUENCED — identifies that the acquisition was performed by acquiring single or multi detector data while rotating the source about the gantry while the table is not moving. Additional slices are acquired by incrementing the table position and again rotating the source about the gantry while the table is not moving.

SPIRAL — identifies that the acquisition was performed by acquiring data while rotating the source about the gantry while continuously moving the table.

CONSTANT_ANGLE — identifies that the acquisition was performed by holding the source at a constant angle and moving the table to obtain a projection image (e.g., a localizer image).

STATIONARY — identifies that the acquisition was performed by holding the table at a constant position and acquiring multiple slices over time at the same location.

FREE identifies that the acquisition was performed while rotating the source about the gantry while the table movement is under direct control of a human operator or under the control of an analysis application (e.g., fluoroscopic image).

C.8.15.3.3 CT Acquisition Details Macro

Table C.8-119 specifies the attributes of the CT Acquisition Details Functional Group macro.

Table C.8-119
CT ACQUISITION DETAILS MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
CT Acquisition Details Sequence	(0018,9304)	1	Contains the attributes defining the details of the acquisition. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Rotation Direction	(0018,1140)	1C	Direction of rotation of the source about the gantry, as viewed while facing the gantry where the table enters the gantry. Enumerated Values: CW = clockwise CC = counter clockwise Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL and Acquisition Type (0018,9302) is other than CONSTANT_ANGLE. Otherwise may be present if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is DERIVED and Acquisition Type (0018,9302) is other than CONSTANT_ANGLE.
>Revolution Time	(0018,9305)	1C	The time in seconds of a complete revolution of the source around the gantry orbit. This value is independent of the Reconstruction Angle (0018,9319) of the frame. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL and Acquisition Type (0018,9302) is other than CONSTANT_ANGLE. Otherwise may be present if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is DERIVED and Acquisition Type (0018,9302) is other than CONSTANT_ANGLE.
>Single Collimation Width	(0018,9306)	1C	The width of a single row of acquired data (in mm). Note: Adjacent physical detector rows may have been combined to form a single effective acquisition row. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.

>Total Collimation Width	(0018,9307)	1C	The width of the total collimation (in mm) over the area of active x-ray detection. Note: This will be equal to the number of effective detector rows multiplied by single collimation width. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Table Height	(0018,1130)	1C	The distance in mm from the top of the patient table to the center of rotation of the source (i.e. the data collection center or isocenter). The distance is positive when the table is below the data collection center. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Gantry/Detector Tilt	(0018,1120)	1C	Nominal angle of tilt in degrees of the scanning gantry. Not intended for mathematical computations. Zero degrees means the gantry is not tilted, negative degrees are when the top of the gantry is tilted away from where the table enters the gantry. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Data Collection Diameter	(0018,0090)	1C	The diameter in mm of the region over which data were collected. See C.8.15.3.6.1. Note: In the case of an Acquisition Type (0018,9302) of CONSTANT_ANGLE, the diameter is that in a plane normal to the central ray of the diverging X-ray beam as it passes through the data collection center. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.

C.8.15.3.4 CT Table Dynamics Macro

Table C.8-120 specifies the attributes of the CT Table Dynamics Functional Group macro.

Table C.8-120
CT TABLE DYNAMICS MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
CT Table Dynamics Sequence	(0018,9308)	1	Contains the attributes defining the movement of the CT table. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.

>Table Speed	(0018,9309)	1C	The distance in mm that the table moves in one second during the gathering of data that resulted in this frame. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL and Acquisition Type (0018,9302) is SPIRAL or CONSTANT_ANGLE. May be present otherwise if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is DERIVED and Acquisition Type (0018,9302) is SPIRAL or CONSTANT_ANGLE.
>Table Feed per Rotation	(0018,9310)	1C	Motion of the table (in mm) during a complete revolution of the source around the gantry orbit. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL and Acquisition Type (0018,9302) is SPIRAL. May be present otherwise if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is DERIVED and Acquisition Type (0018,9302) is SPIRAL.
>Spiral Pitch Factor	(0018,9311)	1C	Ratio of the Table Feed per Rotation (0018,9310) to the Total Collimation Width (0018,9307). See C.8.15.3.4.1 for further explanation and some examples. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL and Acquisition Type (0018,9302) is SPIRAL. May be present otherwise if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is DERIVED and Acquisition Type (0018,9302) is SPIRAL.

C.8.15.3.4.1 Spiral Pitch Factor

The formula for Spiral Pitch Factor (0018,9311) in terms of Table Feed per Rotation (0018,9310) and Total Collimation Width (0018,9307) is:

Spiral Pitch Factor = (Table Feed per Rotation (mm))/(Total Collimation Width (mm))

An example calculation of Spiral Pitch Factor (0018,9311) for a single slice spiral acquisition of an image with a Total Collimation Width of 2.5mm and a Table Feed per Rotation of 10mm is:

Spiral Pitch Factor = (10 mm)/(2.5 mm) = 4.0

An example calculation of Spiral Pitch Factor (0018,9311) for a multiple slice spiral acquisition having a Total Collimation Width of 20mm and a Table Feed per Rotation of 10mm is:

Spiral Pitch Factor = (10 mm)/(20 mm) = 0.5

C.8.15.3.5 CT Position Macro

Table C.8-121 specifies the attributes of the CT Position Functional Group macro.

Table C.8-121
CT POSITION MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
CT Position Sequence	(0018,9326)	1	Contains the attributes defining the CT geometry. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Table Position	(0018,9327)	1C	Relative longitudinal position of acquisition location of this frame in mm from an implementation specific reference point. Shall be relative to the same reference point for all frames in this SOP Instance, but may be different from the reference point in other SOP Instances. Positions as the table moves into the gantry viewed from the front are more negative. Notes: 1. For contiguous slices reconstructed from multiple detectors one would expect different values for adjacent slices. 2. Lateral positioning or tilting or swiveling are not described. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Data Collection Center (Patient)	(0018,9313)	1C	The x, y, and z coordinates (in the patient coordinate system) in mm of the center of the region in which data were collected. See C.8.15.3.6.1. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Reconstruction Target Center (Patient)	(0018,9318)	1C	The x, y, and z coordinates (in the patient coordinate system) of the reconstruction center target point as used for reconstruction in mm. See C.8.15.3.6.1. Note: If the reconstructed image is not magnified or panned the value corresponds with the Data Collection Center (0018,9313) attribute. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.

C.8.15.3.6 CT Geometry Macro

Table C.8-122 specifies the attributes of the CT Geometry Functional Group macro.

Table C.8-122
CT GEOMETRY MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
CT Geometry Sequence	(0018,9312)	1	Contains the attributes defining the CT geometry. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Distance Source to Detector	(0018,1110)	1C	Distance in mm from source to detector center. See C.8.15.3.6.1. Note: This value is traditionally referred to as Source Image Receptor Distance (SID). Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Distance Source to Data Collection Center	(0018,9335)	1C	Distance in mm from source to data collection center. See C.8.15.3.6.1. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.

C.8.15.3.6.1 Relationships Between CT Geometric Attributes (Informative)

In Figure C.8-19 the relationship of the Geometric Attributes within the CT Geometry and CT Reconstruction functional groups is shown. The figure, viewed from the front of the gantry (where the table enters the gantry), is informative only and is not meant to represent a standardization of an equipment-based frame of reference.

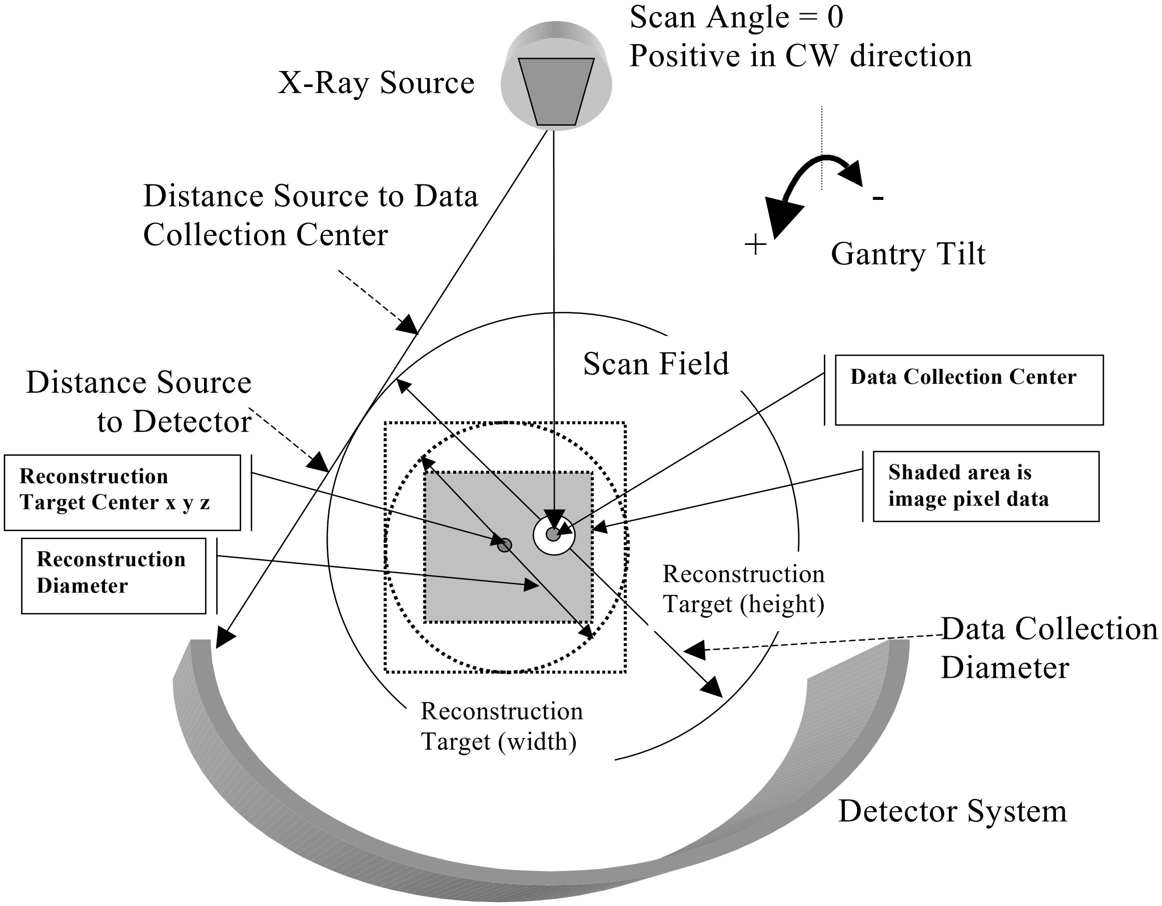


Figure C.8-19: Geometry of CT Acquisition System

C.8.15.3.7 CT Reconstruction Macro

Table C.8-123 specifies the attributes of the CT Reconstruction Functional Group macro.

Table C.8-123
CT RECONSTRUCTION MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
CT Reconstruction Sequence	(0018,9314)	1	Contains the attributes holding information about the reconstruction techniques used. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Reconstruction Algorithm	(0018,9315)	1C	Description of the algorithm used when reconstructing the image from the data acquired during the acquisition process. Defined Terms:

			FILTER_BACK_PROJ ITERATIVE Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Convolution Kernel	(0018,1210)	1C	A label describing the convolution kernel or algorithm used to reconstruct the data. A single value shall be present. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Convolution Kernel Group	(0018,9316)	1C	A label describing the group that the Convolution Kernel (0018,1210) belongs. Defined Terms: BRAIN SOFT_TISSUE LUNG BONE CONSTANT_ANGLE Required if Convolution Kernel (0018,1210) is present. May be present otherwise.
>Reconstruction Diameter	(0018,1100)	1C	The diameter in mm of the region from which data were used in creating the reconstruction of the image. Data may exist outside this region and portions of the patient may exist outside this region. See C.8.15.3.6.1. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL and Reconstruction Field of View (0018,9317) is not present. Otherwise may be present if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is DERIVED and Reconstruction Field of View (0018,9317) is not present.
>Reconstruction Field of View	(0018,9317)	1C	The field of view width (x-dimension) followed by height (y-dimension) as used for reconstruction in mm. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL and Reconstruction Diameter (0018,1100) is not present. Otherwise may be present if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is DERIVED and Reconstruction Diameter (0018,1100) is not present.
>Reconstruction Pixel Spacing	(0018,9322)	1C	Physical distance in the patient between the center of each reconstructed pixel, specified by a numeric pair – adjacent row spacing (delimiter) adjacent column

			spacing in mm. See 10.7.1.3 for further explanation of the value order. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Reconstruction Angle	(0018,9319)	1C	Angle (in degrees) over which the data from which the frame was reconstructed was collected, where 360 degrees signifies a complete revolution of the source around the gantry orbit. It is possible, in the case of over-scanning that the Reconstruction Angle is greater than 360 degrees. Shall be 0 if Acquisition Type (0018,9302) is CONSTANT_ANGLE. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Image Filter	(0018,9320)	1C	A label describing the filter applied to the reconstructed image after the original reconstruction has been completed. Note: When Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is DERIVED and Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 4 is FILTERED the type of filtration is described in Derivation Image Macro. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL.

C.8.15.3.8 CT Exposure Macro

Table C.8-124 specifies the attributes of the CT Exposure Functional Group macro.

Table C.8-124
CT EXPOSURE MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
CT Exposure Sequence	(0018,9321)	1	Contains the attributes defining exposure information. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Exposure Time in ms	(0018,9328)	1C	Duration of exposure for this frame in milliseconds. If Acquisition Type (0018,9302) equals SPIRAL the duration of exposure shall be weighted by the Spiral Pitch Factor (0018,9311). Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>X-ray Tube Current in mA	(0018,9330)	1C	Nominal X-ray tube current in milliamperes. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007)

			Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Exposure in mAs	(0018,9332)	1C	The exposure expressed in milliampere seconds, for example calculated from exposure time and X-Ray tube current. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Exposure Modulation Type	(0018,9323)	1C	A label describing the type of exposure modulation used for the purpose of limiting the dose. Defined Terms: NONE Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Estimated Dose Saving	(0018,9324)	2C	A percent value of dose saving due to the use of Exposure Modulation Type (0018,9323). A negative percent value of dose savings reflects an increase of exposure. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL and Exposure Modulation Type (0018,9323) is not equal to NONE. Otherwise may be present if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is DERIVED and Exposure Modulation Type (0018,9323) is not equal to NONE.
>CTDIvol	(0018,9345)	2C	Computed Tomography Dose Index ($CTDI_{vol)}$, in mGy according to IEC 60601-2-44, Ed.2.1 (Clause 29.1.103.4), The Volume $CTDI_{vol}$. It describes the average dose for this frame for the selected CT conditions of operation. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.

Note: The dose that a patient receives in a given procedure should be found in the Radiation Module of the relevant Modality Performed Procedure Step IOD.

C.8.15.3.9 CT X-ray Details Macro

Table C.8-125 specifies the attributes of the CT X-ray Details Functional Group macro.

Table C.8-125
CT X-RAY DETAILS SEQUENCE MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
CT X-ray Details Sequence	(0018,9325)	1	Contains the attributes defining the x-ray information. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>KVP	(0018,0060)	1C	Peak kilo voltage output of the x-ray generator used. Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Focal Spot(s)	(0018,1190)	1C	Used nominal size of the focal spot in mm. The attribute may only have one or two values, for devices with variable focal spot, small dimension followed by large dimension Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Filter Type	(0018,1160)	1C	Type of filter(s) inserted into the X-Ray beam. Defined Terms: WEDGE BUTTERFLY MULTIPLE FLAT SHAPED NONE Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
>Filter Material	(0018,7050)	1C	The X-Ray absorbing material used in the filter. May be multi-valued. Defined Terms: MOLYBDENUM ALUMINUM COPPER RHODIUM NIOBIUM EUROPIUM LEAD MIXED Note: MIXED may be used to indicate a filter type of complex composition for which listing the individual materials would be excessive or undesirable; it is not intended to mean “unknown”.

			Required if Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL and the value of Filter Type (0018,1160) is other than NONE. May be present otherwise.

C.8.15.3.10 CT Pixel Value Transformation Macro

Table C.8-126 specifies the attributes of the CT Pixel Value Transformation Functional Group macro.

Notes: 1. This Macro is equivalent to the Modality LUT transformation in non Multi-frame IODs.

2. This in effect specializes the C.7.6.16.2.9 Pixel Value Transformation Macro.

Table C.8-126
CT PIXEL VALUE TRANSFORMATION MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Pixel Value Transformation Sequence	(0028,9145)	1	Contains the attributes involved in the transformation of stored pixel values. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Rescale Intercept	(0028,1052)	1	The value b in relationship between stored values (SV) and the output units. Output units = m*SV + b.
>Rescale Slope	(0028,1053)	1	m in the equation specified by Rescale Intercept (0028,1052).
>Rescale Type	(0028,1054)	1	Specifies the output units of Rescale Slope (0028,1053) and Rescale Intercept (0028,1052). See C.11.1.1.2 for further explanation. If Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 1 of this frame is ORIGINAL and Frame Type (0008,9007) Value 3 is not LOCALIZER, the value shall be HU (Hounsfield Units).

C.8.16 Common CT and MR Descriptions

This section contains descriptions of Macros and Attributes used in Modules and Functional Group Macros that are common to the Enhanced CT Image, Enhanced MR Images and MR Spectroscopy IODs.

C.8.16.1 Image Type and Frame Type

The Image Type (0008,0008) and associated Image Type related attributes provide a high level description of a multi-frame SOP Instance. These attributes describe properties that provide key summary information to users of the SOP Instance. Image Type (0008,0008) contains the highest level summary of what is in the SOP Instance.

The Frame Type (0008,9007) attribute mirrors the corresponding Image Type attribute and applies to the frame level rather than to the image level.

If more than one value is used by the set of frames for a given Frame Type (0008,9007) attribute value or associated attribute value then the corresponding value of the Image Type (0008,0008) or associated attribute shall contain a value of MIXED. This indicates that a mixed set of values exists within the multi-frame SOP Instance.

The value MIXED shall only be used in the Image Type (0008,0008) when the corresponding values for the individual frames are not equal. When a value of an attribute is equal for all frames, the same value shall be used for the corresponding value of the Image Type (0008,0008). Values 2 and 3 of Image Type (0008,0008) are an exception to the rule for MIXED: Values 2 and 3 may never have the value of MIXED as described in sections C.8.16.1.2 and C.8.16.1.3.

Image Type (0008,0008) and Frame Type (0008,9007) shall consist of four non-zero length values.

C.8.16.1.1 Pixel Data Characteristics

Value 1 of Image Type (0008,0008) and Frame Type (0008,9007) shall use one of the following Enumerated Values from Table C.8-127.

Value 1 of Image Type (0008,0008) and Value 1 of Frame Type (0008,9007) shall not be zero length.

Table C.8-127
IMAGE TYPE AND FRAME TYPE VALUE 1

Enumerated Value Name	Enumerated Value Description
ORIGINAL	An image or frame is original if its pixel data was directly reconstructed from the original data that is obtained from the sensors of the imaging equipment, Image Type (0008,0008) Value 4 is NONE, and Volume Based Calculation Technique (0008,9207) is NONE. Notes: (1) For MR, original data is data directly reconstructed from k-space data. (2) For CT, original frames are those directly reconstructed from projection data.
DERIVED	An image or frame is derived if its pixel data was calculated from original or other derived pixel data (i.e. it is not original).
MIXED	Used only as a value in Image Type (0008,0008) if frames within the SOP Instance contain different values for Value 1 in their Frame Type (0008,9007).

C.8.16.1.2 Patient Examination Characteristics

Value 2 for Image Type (0008,0008) and Frame Type (0008,9007) follows the standard definition and shall have the following Enumerated Value from Table C.8-128.

Value 2 of Image Type (0008,0008) and Value 2 of Frame Type (0008,9007) shall not be zero length.

Table C.8-128
IMAGE TYPE AND FRAME TYPE VALUE 2

Enumerated Value Name	Enumerated Value Description
PRIMARY	See C.7.6.1.1.2

C.8.16.1.3 Image Flavor

Value 3 is an overall representation of the image type. This value may be a summary of several other attributes or a duplication of one of the other attributes to indicate the most important aspect of this image. Value 3 Image Flavor is to be used with Value 4 Derived Pixel Contrast to indicate the nature of the image set.

Note: For example Value 3 = DIFFUSION together with Value 4 = NONE indicates that the image set was originally collected for DIFFUSION.

If Value 3 = DIFFUSION together with Value 4 = DIFFUSION this indicates that the object contains DIFFUSION weighted post processed images.

Value 3 of Image Type (0008,0008) shall not be zero length.

Value 3 of Frame Type (0008,9007) may have the same value as found in Value 3 of Image Type (0008,0008), or may have a different value or may be of zero length.

The attribute value may not be MIXED as this value needs to be a summary of the primary purpose of the images, whether the frames have the same value or not.

Table C.8-129 specifies the Defined Terms for Value 3 for Image Type (0008,0008) and Frame Type (0008,9007) that are common to CT and MR. Additional defined terms are defined in the modality-specific Module and Macro definitions.

Table C.8-129
IMAGE TYPE AND FRAME TYPE VALUE 3 COMMON

Defined Term Name	Defined Term Description
ANGIO	Collected for the purpose of angiography
CARDIAC	Images of the heart
CARDIAC_GATED	Cardiac gated images, other than of the heart
CARDRESP_GATED	Cardiac and respiratory gated images
FLUOROSCOPY	Real-time collection of single slices (e.g. CT or MR Fluoroscopy)
LOCALIZER	Collected for the purpose of planning other images.
MOTION	Collected for looking at body motion
PERFUSION	Collected for the purposes of perfusion calculations.
PRE_CONTRAST	Collected before contrast was administered
POST_CONTRAST	Collected during or after contrast was administered

RESP_GATED	Respiratory gated images
REST	Cardiac rest image set
STRESS	Cardiac stress image set
VOLUME	Set of frames that define a regularly sampled volume
NON_PARALLEL	Set of frames that are not parallel
PARALLEL	Set of frames that are parallel but do not constitute a regularly sampled volume

C.8.16.1.4 Derived Pixel Contrast

Value 4 shall be used to indicate derived pixel contrast – generally, contrast created by combining or processing images with the same geometry. Value 4 shall have a value of NONE when Value 1 is ORIGINAL.

Note: If more than one of the following derived types is applicable, then it is up to the generating application to specify the value that best characterizes the derived image.

Value 4 of Image Type (0008,0008) and Value 4 of Frame Type (0008,9007) shall not be zero length.

Table C.8-130 specifies the Defined Terms for Value 4 for Image Type (0008,0008) and Frame Type (0008,9007) that are common to CT and MR. Additional defined terms are defined in the modality-specific Module and Macro definitions.

Table C.8-130
IMAGE TYPE AND FRAME TYPE VALUE 4 COMMON

Defined Term Name	Defined Term Description
ADDITION	Created through Pixel by pixel addition operation
DIVISION	Created through Pixel by pixel division operation
MASKED	Created through Pixel by pixel masking operation
MAXIMUM	Created through Pixel by Pixel Maximum operation
MEAN	Created through Pixel by pixel mean operation
MINIMUM	Created through Pixel by Pixel Minimum operation
MTT	Mean Transit Time
MULTIPLICATION	Created through Pixel by pixel multiplication operation
RCBF	Regional Cerebral Blood Flow (rCBF)
RCBV	Regional Cerebral Blood Volume (rCBV)
RESAMPLED	Pixels have been spatially re-sampled, e.g., MPR
STD_DEVIATION	Standard Deviation
SUBTRACTION	Created through Pixel by pixel subtraction operation
T_TEST	Student's T-Test
TTP	Time To Peak map
Z_SCORE	Z-Score Map
NONE	Not a calculated image
MIXED	Used only as value in Image Type (0008,0008) if frames within the image SOP Instance contain different values for

	value 4 in their Frame Type (0008,9007) attribute.

C.8.16.2 Common CT/MR Image Description Macro

This section describes the Common CT/MR Image Description Macro.

Table C.8-131 specifies the attributes of the Common CT/MR Image Description Macro.

Table C.8-131
COMMON CT/MR IMAGE DESCRIPTION MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Pixel Presentation	(0008,9205)	1	Indication of the presence or absence of color information that may be used during rendering. See C.8.16.2.1.1 for a description and Enumerated Values.
Volumetric Properties	(0008,9206)	1	Indication if geometric manipulations are possible with frames in the SOP Instance. See C.8.16.2.1.2 for a description and Enumerated Values.
Volume Based Calculation Technique	(0008,9207)	1	Method used for volume calculations with frames in the SOP Instance. See C.8.16.2.1.3 for a description and Defined Terms.

C.8.16.2.1 Common CT/MR Image Description Attribute Description

C.8.16.2.1.1 Pixel Presentation

Table C.8-132
PIXEL PRESENTATION ATTRIBUTE VALUES

Enumerated Value Name	Enumerated Value Description
COLOR	Image is best displayed in color using Supplemental Palette Color LUTs, but can be displayed in grayscale if current display does not support color. See section C.8.13.3.1.2.1.
MONOCHROME	Image is intended to be displayed in grayscale only. No Supplemental Palette Color LUTs are supplied.
MIXED	Used only as a value in Pixel Presentation (0008,9205) in the Enhanced MR Image Module or Enhanced CT Image Module if frames within the image SOP Instance contain different values for the Pixel Presentation attribute in the MR Image Frame Type Functional Group or CT Image Frame Type Functional Group.

C.8.16.2.1.1.1 Supplemental Palette Color LUTs

Figure C.8-20 presents two separate image visualization pipelines that can be used for interpreting the stored pixel values.

If Pixel Presentation (0008,9205) equals COLOR, the stored values are split into two ranges. The stored values up to one less than the second value of the Red, Green and Blue Palette Color Lookup Table Descriptor (0028,1101-1103)are passed through the gray scale visualization pipeline. The values equal to or greater than the second value of the Red, Green and Blue Palette Color Lookup Table Descriptor (0028,1101-1103) are mapped by the Palette Color LUTs.

Notes: 1. Some images may be purely color, and there will be no grayscale range of stored pixel values "below" those that are passed through the color lookup tables.

2. Images containing Supplemental Palette Color LUTs cannot be irreversibly (lossy) compressed, since that would potentially change the index values and result in different colors being rendered.

The complete range of stored pixel values can also be displayed via the grayscale visualization pipeline only, but the information content may be less useful because the color information is not available.

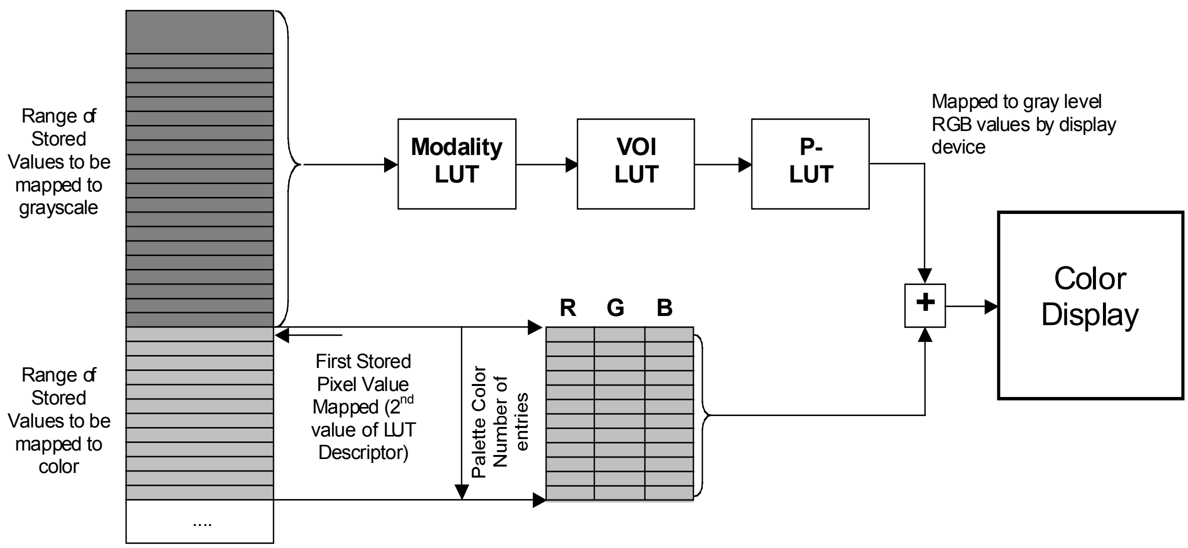


Figure C.8-20
MONOCHROME2 Photometric Interpretation with Supplemental Palette Color mapping

C.8.16.2.1.2 Volumetric Properties

The value of the Volumetric Properties attribute (0008,9206) allows applications doing geometric manipulations (e.g., MAX_IP or MPR or planning) to determine if the image is an appropriate candidate for an operation without having to know all the details of the generating application.

Table C.8-133 specifies the Enumerated Values for the Volumetric Properties (0008,9206) attribute.

Table C.8-133
VOLUMETRIC PROPERTIES ATTRIBUTE VALUES

Enumerated Value Name	Enumerated Value Description
VOLUME	Image contains pixels that represent the volume specified for the image (Examples: Volume Based Calculation Technique (0008,9207) is NONE or MPR).
SAMPLED	The specified frame or each frame within the image will not contain a representation of the average information in the slice direction because the frame was calculated by the non-linear re-sampling of a volume where each pixels of the resulting frame does not contain an average representation

	of the voxel represented by the frame's pixel. For example a projection (MAX_IP) frame uses the maximum value along a ray for each pixel rather than the average value of the represented voxel.
DISTORTED	Image contains significantly distorted information from what is specified by the image volume attributes. For example this image should not be used in planning or for 3D volume. An example of this image type is a curved reformatted image (CURVED_MPR).
MIXED	Used only as a value in the Volumetric Properties (0008,9206) attribute in the Enhanced MR Image Type Module or Enhanced CT Image Type Module if frames within the image SOP Instance contain different values for the Volumetric Properties (0008,9206) attributes in the MR Image Frame Type Functional Group or CT Frame Type Functional Group.

C.8.16.2.1.3 Volume Based Calculation Technique Attribute

The value of the Volume Based Calculation Technique attribute (0008,9207) shall be used to indicate the method used for calculating pixels based on geometry.

Shall have a value of NONE when Value 1 of Image Type (0008,0008) or Value 1 of Frame Type (0008,9007) is ORIGINAL.

Table C.8-134 specifies the Defined Terms for the Volume Based Calculation Technique (0008,9207) attribute.

Table C.8-134
VOLUME BASED CALCULATION TECHNIQUE ATTRIBUTE VALUES

Defined Term Name	Defined Term Description
MAX_IP	Maximum Intensity Projection
MIN_IP	Minimum Intensity Projection
VOLUME_RENDER	Volume Rendering Projection Volume Rendering Image represents 3D voluminar information constructed from measured voxel intensities covering a 3D volume.
SURFACE_RENDER	Surface Rendering Projection Surface Rendering Image represents 3D surface information constructed from measured voxel intensities covering a 3D volume.
MPR	Multi-Planar Reformat
CURVED_MPR	Curved Multi-Planar Reformat
NONE	Pixels not derived geometrically
MIXED	Used only as a value in Volume Based Calculation Technique (0008,9207) attribute in the Enhanced MR Image Module or MR Spectroscopy Module if frames within the image SOP Instance contain different terms for the Volume Based Calculation Technique attribute in MR Frame Type Functional Group or MR Spectroscopy Frame Type Functional Group.

C.8.17 Ophthalmic Photography Modules

C.8.17.1 Ophthalmic Photography Series Module

Table C.8.17.1-1 specifies the attributes that describe an Ophthalmic Photography Series.

Table C.8.17.1-1
OPHTHALMIC PHOTOGRAPHY SERIES MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Modality	(0008,0060)	1	Source equipment that produced the Ophthalmic Photography Series. Enumerated Value: OP

C.8.17.2 Ophthalmic Photography Image Module

Table C.8.17.2-1 specifies the Attributes that describe an Ophthalmic Photography Image produced by Ophthalmic Photography equipment (OP) imaging Modalities.

Table C.8.17.2-1
OPHTHALMIC PHOTOGRAPHY IMAGE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Image Type	(0008,0008)	1	Image identification characteristics. See C.8.17.2.1.4 for specialization.
Instance Number	(0020,0013)	1	A number that identifies this image.
Samples per Pixel	(0028,0002)	1	Number of samples (planes) in this image. Enumerated values: 1 or 3. See C.8.17.2.1.2 for further explanation.
Samples per Pixel Used	(0028,0003)	1C	The number of samples (planes) containing information. Enumerated value: 2. Required if different from Samples per Pixel (0028,0002). See section C.8.17.2.1.2
Photometric Interpretation	(0028,0004)	1	Specifies the intended interpretation of the pixel data. See section C.8.17.2.1.3
Pixel Representation	(0028,0103)	1	Data representation of the pixel samples. Enumerated value: 0
Planar Configuration	(0028,0006)	1C	Indicates whether the pixel data are sent color-by-plane or color-by-pixel. Required if Samples per Pixel (0028,0002) has a value greater than 1. Enumerated value shall be 0 (color-by-pixel).
Pixel Spacing	(0028,0030)	1C	Nominal physical distance at the focal plane (in the retina) between the center of each pixel, specified by a numeric pair - adjacent row spacing (delimiter) adjacent column spacing in mm. See 10.7.1.3 for further explanation of the value order. Note: These values are specified as nominal because the physical distance may vary across the field of the images and the lens correction is likely to be imperfect. Required when Acquisition Device Type Code Sequence (0022,0015) contains an item with the value (SRT, R-1021A,"Fundus Camera"). May be present otherwise.
Content Time	(0008,0033)	1	The time the image pixel data creation started.
Content Date	(0008,0023)	1	The date the image pixel data creation started.
Acquisition Datetime	(0008,002A)	1C	The date and time that the acquisition of data started. Note: The synchronization of this time with an external clock is specified in the synchronization Module in Acquisition Time Synchronized (0018,1800). Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL. May be present otherwise.
Source Image Sequence	(0008,2112)	2C	A Sequence that identifies the set of Image SOP Class/Instance pairs of the Images that were used to derive this Image. Required if Image Type Value 1 is DERIVED. Zero or more items may be present in the sequence. See C.7.6.1.1.4 for further explanation.

>Include Image SOP Instance Reference Macro, Table 10-3			
>Purpose of Reference Code Sequence	(0040,A170)	1	Describes the purpose for which the reference is made, that is what role the source image or frame(s) played in the derivation of this image.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*Defined Context ID is 7202.*
Lossy Image Compression	(0028,2110)	1	Specifies whether an Image has undergone lossy compression. Enumerated Values: 00 = Image has NOT been subjected to lossy compression. 01 = Image has been subjected to lossy compression. See C.7.6.1.1.5
Lossy Image Compression Ratio	(0028,2112)	1C	Describes the approximate lossy compression ratio(s) that have been applied to this image. See C.7.6.1.1.5 for further explanation. May be multivalued if successive lossy compression steps have been applied. Notes: 1. For example, a compression ratio of 30:1 would be described in this Attribute with a single value of 30. 2. For historical reasons, the lossy compression ratio should also be described in Derivation Description (0008,2111) Required if Lossy Image Compression (0028,2110) has a value of "01".
Lossy Image Compression Method	(0028,2114)	1C	A label for the lossy compression method(s) that have been applied to this image. See C.7.6.1.1.5 for further explanation. May be multivalued if successive lossy compression steps have been applied; the value order shall correspond to the values of Lossy Image Compression Ratio (0028,2112). Required if Lossy Image Compression (0028,2110) has a value of "01". Note: For historical reasons, the lossy compression method should also be described in Derivation Description (0008,2111).
Presentation LUT Shape	(2050,0020)	1C	Specifies an identity transformation for the Presentation LUT, such that the output of all grayscale transformations defined in the IOD containing this Module are defined to be P-Values. Enumerated Values: IDENTITY - output is in P-Values. Required if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) is MONOCHROME2
Calibration Image	(0050,0004)	3	Indicates whether a reference object (phantom) of known size is present in the image and was used for calibration. Enumerated Values: YES

			NO
Burned In Annotation	(0028,0301)	1	Indicates whether or not image contains sufficient burned in annotation to identify the patient and date the image was acquired. Enumerated Value: YES NO

C.8.17.2.1 Ophthalmic Photography Image Module Attribute Descriptions

C.8.17.2.1.1 Referenced Image Sequence

The Referenced Image Sequence (0008,1140) in the General Image Module (Section C.7.6.1) shall not convey stereoscopic information, which instead shall be encoded using the Stereometric Relationship IOD.

C.8.17.2.1.2 Samples per Pixel and Samples per Pixel Used

Samples per Pixel (0028,0002) shall be 1 or 3.

Cameras producing 2-color images are required to use a value of 3 for Samples per Pixel (0028,0002) and a value of 2 for Samples per Pixel Used (0028,0003). For 2-color images with a RGB Photometric Interpretation, the R and G channel shall be used and the B channel shall have all values set to zero.

Note: In the case of Photometric Interpretations typically used for compression such as YBR_FULL_422, the encoding will be as if the RGB values were transformed to YCbCr.

C.8.17.2.1.3 Photometric Interpretation

Specifies the intended interpretation of the pixel data. Enumerated Values shall be:

MONOCHROME2
RGB
YBR_FULL_422
YBR_PARTIAL_420
YBR_ICT
YBR_RCT

C.8.17.2.1.4 Image Type

The Image Type attribute (0008,0008) (General Image Module, C.7.6.1) identifies important image characteristics in a multiple valued data element. For the Ophthalmic Photography Image IOD, Image Type is specified as a Type 1 attribute and further specialized as follows:

a. Value 1 shall identify the Pixel Data Characteristics in accordance with Section C.7.6.1.1.2; Enumerated Values are: ORIGINAL and DERIVED;
b. Value 2 shall identify the Patient Examination Characteristics in accordance with Section C.7.6.1.1.2; Enumerated Value is: PRIMARY
c. Value 3 shall only be present if Value 1 is DERIVED; Defined Terms: MONTAGE.
d. Value 4 (optionally present) shall identify the type of test performed for image acquisition. Defined terms:
   COLOR - a picture take at “white” light; no filters applied

REDFREE - a picture take at “green” illumination light; or just the green channel of a color sensor

RED - a picture take at “red” illumination light; or just the red channel of a color sensor

BLUE - a picture take at “blue” illumination light; or just the blue channel of a color sensor

FA- fluorescein injected; a picture taken at fluorescein exciting illumination light; a filter passing just the emitted wavelength to sensor applied

ICG - Indocyanine green injected; a picture taken at Indocyanine green exciting illumination light; a filter passing just the emitted wavelength to sensor applied

Note: A Montage Image is constructed out of several individual images, which also can be exchanged separately. The images used to create the montage image will be included in the source image sequence if those images are also exchanged. A Montage Image is identified as Image Type DERIVED\PRIMARY\MONTAGE

C.8.17.3 Ophthalmic Photographic Parameters Module

This Module describes equipment used to create original images.

Table C.8.17.3-1
OPHTHALMIC PHOTOGRAPHIC PARAMETERS MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Acquisition Device Type Code Sequence	(0022,0015)	1	Describes the type of acquisition device. A single item shall be present in the sequence.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8.1			Baseline Context ID is 4202
Illumination Type Code Sequence	(0022,0016)	2	Coded value for illumination. Zero or one item shall be present in the sequence.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8.1			Baseline Context ID is 4203
Light Path Filter Type Stack Code Sequence	(0022,0017)	2	Filters used in the light source path. Zero or more items may be present in the sequence.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8.1			Baseline Context ID is 4204
Light Path Filter Pass-Through Wavelength	(0022,0001)	3	Nominal pass-through wavelength of light path filter in nm
Light Path Filter Pass Band	(0022,0002)	3	Pass band of light path filter in nm. This Attribute has two Values. The first is the shorter and the second the longer wavelength relative to the peak. The values are for the – 3dB nominal (1/2 of peak) pass through intensity. One of the two Values may be zero length, in which case it is a cutoff filter.
Image Path Filter Type Stack Code Sequence	(0022,0018)	2	Describes stack of filters used in image path. Zero or more items may be present in the sequence.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8.1			Baseline Context ID is 4204
Image Path Filter Pass-Through Wavelength	(0022,0003)	3	Nominal pass-through wavelength of image path filter in nm
Image Path Filter Pass Band	(0022,0004)	3	Pass band of image path filter in nm. This Attribute has two Values. The first is the shorter and the second the longer wavelength relative to the peak. The values are for the – 3dB nominal (1/2 of peak) pass through intensity. One of the two Values may be zero length, in which case it is a cutoff filter
Lenses Code Sequence	(0022,0019)	2	Lenses that were used during the image acquisition. Zero or more items may be present in the sequence.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8.1			Baseline Context ID is 4205
Detector Type	(0018,7004)	2	Type of detector used for creating this image. Defined terms: CCD = Charge Coupled Devices CMOS = Complementary Metal Oxide Semiconductor

Channel Description Code Sequence	(0022,001A)	1C	Describes the light color used for each channel to generate the image. Required if this differs from the natural interpretation. Note: Interpretation and representation of RGB images rely on the assumption that the red channel really contains the red wavelength range of illumination light, the blue channel the blue wavelength range, etc. Some modalities use the RGB Photometric Interpretation as a container representing 3 channels of any illumination wavelength. Shall have the same number of items as the Value of Samples per Pixel Used (0028,0003) if present, or otherwise the value of Samples per Pixel (0028,0002). The channels shall be described in the order in which the channels are encoded.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8.1			Baseline Context ID is 4206

C.8.17.4 Ophthalmic Photography Acquisition Parameters Module

This Module describes patient clinical conditions related to the image acquisition.

Table C.8.17.4-1
OPHTHALMIC PHOTOGRAPHY ACQUISITION PARAMETERS MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Patient Eye Movement Commanded	(0022,0005)	2	Enumerated Values: YES NO
Patient Eye Movement Command Code Sequence	(0022,0006)	1C	Coded value for patient movement or orientation, which is the intent, and not necessarily the result, based on what the patient is capable of. Required if the value of Patient Eye Movement Commanded (0022,0005) is YES. A single item shall be present in this sequence.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8.1			Baseline Context ID is 4201
Refractive State Sequence	(0022,001B)	2	The refractive state of the imaged eye at the time of acquisition. Zero or one Item shall be present. Absence of an item means the refractive state was not measured.
> Spherical Lens Power	(0022,0007)	1	Sphere value in diopters
> Cylinder Lens Power	(0022,0008)	1	Cylinder value in diopters
> Cylinder Axis	(0022,0009)	1	Axis value in degrees
Emmetropic Magnification	(0022,000A)	2	Emmetropic Magnification value (dimensionless). Zero length means the emmetropic magnification was not measured.
Intra Ocular Pressure	(0022,000B)	2	Value of pressure. Value in mmHg. Zero length means the pressure was not measured.
Horizontal Field of View	(0022,000C)	2	The horizontal field of view in degrees
Pupil Dilated	(0022,000D)	2	Enumerated Values: YES NO
Mydriatic Agent Code Sequence	(0022,001C)	2C	The agent administered to dilate the pupil. Required if the value of Pupil Dilated (0022,000D) is YES. Zero or more items may be present.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8.1			Baseline Context ID is 4208
Degree of Dilation	(0022,000E)	2C	The degree of the dilation in mm Required if the value of Pupil Dilated (0022,000D) is YES.

C.8.17.5 Ocular Region Imaged Module

Table C.8.17.5-1 contains IOD Attributes that describe the anatomy contained in an OP IOD.

Table C.8.17.5-1
OCULAR REGION IMAGED MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Image Laterality	(0020,0062)	1	Laterality of object imaged (as described in Anatomic Region Sequence (0008,2218)) examined. Enumerated Values: R = right eye L = left eye B = both left and right eye Shall be consistent with any laterality information contained in Primary Anatomic Structure Modifier Sequence (0008,2230), if present. Note: Laterality (0020,0060) is a Series level Attribute and must be the same for all Images in the Series. Since most Ophthalmic Photographic Image studies contain images of both eyes, the series level attribute will rarely be present.
Relative Image Position Code Sequence	(0022,001D)	3	The position of this image on the retina (as defined by a specified nomenclature; the nomenclature is implicit in the code used).
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8.1			Baseline Context ID 4207
Include 'General Anatomy Mandatory Macro' Table 10-5			Defined Context ID 4209 for Anatomic Region Sequence

C.8.18 Stereometric Modules

C.8.18.1 Stereometric Series Module

Table C.8.18.1-1 specifies the Attributes that describe a Stereometric Series produced by Ophthalmic Photography equipment (OP) imaging Modalities.

Table C.8.18.1-1
STEREOMETRIC SERIES MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Modality	(0008,0060)	1	Source equipment that produced the Stereometric Series. Enumerated Value: SMR

C.8.18.2 Stereometric Relationship Module

The stereometric relationship module is used to identify pairs of images that may be viewed in stereo. It is possible that the same image or frame may be a member of multiple pairs. The images forming a pair shall be in different SOP Instances. The images forming a pair can be in different Series. All Instances referenced in this Module shall be in the same Study as the Instance in which the Module occurs.

Table C.8.18.2 -1
STEREOMETRIC RELATIONSHIP MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Stereo Pairs Sequence	(0022,0020)	1	Sequence of items identifying pairs of images. There shall be one or more items in this sequence.
>Stereo Baseline Angle	(0022,0010)	3	Stereo separation angle in degrees
>Stereo Baseline Displacement	(0022,0011)	3	Horizontal displacement of instrument between left and right image in mm
>Stereo Horizontal Pixel Offset	(0022,0012)	3	Horizontal displacement of right image relative to left image in pixels for optimal display. Offset of right image to right means positive value.
>Stereo Vertical Pixel Offset	(0022,0013)	3	Vertical displacement of right image relative to left image in pixels for optimal display. Offset of right image downwards means positive value.
>Stereo Rotation	(0022,0014)	3	Rotation of right image relative to left image in degrees for optimal display. The rotation of the right image against the left image counterclockwise is positive, rotation around the center is assumed.
>Left Image Sequence	(0022,0021)	1	Left Image of the Pair. Only one Item shall be present in this Sequence.
>>*Include Image SOP Instance Reference Macro, Table 10-3*			The Referenced SOP Instance UID (0008,1155) shall not be the same as the Referenced SOP Instance UID (0008,1155) of the Right Image Sequence (0022,0022).
>Right Image Sequence	(0022,0022)	1	Right Image of the Pair. Only one Item shall be present in this Sequence.
>>*Include Image SOP Instance Reference Macro, Table 10-3*			The Referenced SOP Instance UID (0008,1155) shall not be the same as the Referenced SOP Instance UID (0008,1155) of the Left Image Sequence (0022,0021).

C.8.18.2.1 Stereometric Relationship Module Attribute Descriptions

C.8.18.2.1.1 Left and Right Image Sequences

The images referenced by the Left Image Sequence (0022,0021) and Right Image Sequence (0022,0022) in a single Stereo Pairs Sequence Item shall have the same values for Rows (0028,0010) and the same values for Columns (0028,0011).

The reference may be to images with a single frame, all the frames of images with multiple frames, or one or more selected frames within an image with multiple frames. If multiple frames are selected, the same number of frames shall be referenced from both sequences.

C.8.19 Enhanced XA/XRF Image

C.8.19.1 XA/XRF Series Module

The XA/XRF X-Ray IODs use the General Series module described in section C.7.3.1, specialized by the XA/XRF Series Module, to describe the DICOM Series Entity specified in A.47 and A.48. It is defining what constitutes a Series for the context of projection XA/XRF device.

Table C.8.19.1-1 specifies the Attributes that identify and describe general information about the XA/XRF Series.

Table C.8.19.1-1
XA/XRF SERIES MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Modality	(0008,0060)	1	Type of equipment that originally acquired the data used to create the images in this Series. Enumerated Values: XA RF See section C.7.3.1.1.1 for further explanation.
Series Number	(0020,0011)	1	A number that identifies this Series.
Referenced Performed Procedure Step Sequence	(0008,1111)	1C	Uniquely identifies the Performed Procedure Step SOP Instance to which the Series is related (e.g. a Modality or General-Purpose Performed Procedure Step SOP Instance). Only a single Item is permitted in this sequence. Required if the Modality Performed Procedure Step SOP Class, General Purpose Performed Procedure Step SOP Class is supported.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.

C.8.19.2 Enhanced XA/XRF Image Module

This section describes the Enhanced XA/XRF Image Module. Table C.8.19.2-1 contains IOD Attributes that describe a XA/XRF Image by specializing Attributes of the General Image and Image Pixel Modules, and adding additional Attributes.

Table C.8.19.2-1
Enhanced XA/XRF Image Module Table

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Image Type	(0008,0008)	1	Image identification characteristics. See C.8.19.2.1.1 for specialization.
Plane Identification	(0018,9457)	1C	Identification of the plane used to acquire this image.

			Defined Terms: MONOPLANE PLANE A PLANE B Notes: 1. MONOPLANE may only be used for a single plane system 2. PLANE A and PLANE B must be used for two plane systems, independent if the acquisition is single plane or biplane. 3. The value has to be in accordance with Image Type (0008,0008) value 3. If this value is SINGLE PLANE all three Defined Term are applicable. Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 3 is not equal to UNDEFINED.
Acquisition Number	(0020,0012)	3	A number identifying the single continuous gathering of data over a period of time that resulted in this image.
Acquisition Datetime	(0008,002A)	1	The date and time that the acquisition of data that resulted in this image started. Note: The synchronization of this time with an external clock is specified in the Synchronization Module in Acquisition Time Synchronized (0018,1800).
Bits Allocated	(0028,0100)	1	Number of bits allocated for each pixel sample. Each sample shall have the same number of bits allocated. Enumerated Values: 8 and 16.
Bits Stored	(0028,0101)	1	Number of bits stored for each pixel sample. Each sample shall have the same number of bits stored. Enumerated Values: 8 to 16. See C.8.19.2.1.2 for specialization.
High Bit	(0028,0102)	1	Most significant bit for pixel sample data. Each sample shall have the same high bit. Shall be one less than the value in Bits Stored (0028,0101).
Samples per Pixel	(0028,0002)	1	Number of samples (color planes) in this image shall have a value of 1.
Pixel Representation	(0028,0103)	1	Data representation of the pixel samples. Shall have the value: 0000H = Unsigned Integer.
Photometric Interpretation	(0028,0004)	1	Specifies the intended interpretation of the pixel data. Enumerated Values: MONOCHROME1 MONOCHROME2

Acquisition Protocol Name	(0018,9423)	3	User defined name of the protocol used to acquire this image.
Acquisition Protocol Description	(0018,9424)	3	User defined description of the protocol used to acquire this image.
Scan Options	(0018,0022)	3	Identifies any acquisition technique that was used during the acquisition of the image. Defined Terms: TOMO = Tomography CHASE = Bolus Chasing STEP = Stepping ROTA = Rotation
Content Qualification	(0018,9004)	1	Content Qualification Indicator Enumerated Values: PRODUCT RESEARCH SERVICE See C.8.13.2.1.1 for further explanation.
Patient Orientation Code Sequence	(0054,0410)	1C	Sequence that describes the orientation of the patient with respect to gravity. See C.8.11.5.1.2 for further explanation. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this Sequence. Required if Positioner Type (0018,1508) equals CARM and C-arm Positioner Tabletop Relationship (0018,9474) equals YES. May be present otherwise.
>*Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1.*			Baseline Context ID 19
> Patient Orientation Modifier Code Sequence	(0054,0412)	1C	Patient Orientation Modifier. Required if needed to fully specify the orientation of the patient with respect to gravity. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this Sequence.
>>*Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1.*			Baseline Context ID 20
Patient Gantry Relationship Code Sequence	(0054,0414)	2C	Sequence that describes the orientation of the patient with respect to the head of the table. See Section C.8.4.6.1.3 for further explanation. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this Sequence. Required if Positioner Type (0018,1508) equals CARM and C-arm Positioner Tabletop Relationship (0018,9474) equals YES. May be present otherwise.
>*Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1.*			Baseline Context ID 21
Examined Body Thickness	(0010,9431)	3	Body thickness in mm at examination location perpendicular to the table top for

			this series. Notes: 1. This is intended for estimation of the thickness of the patient at the tabletop, not for precise calculation of the size of the object in the X-Ray beam (see Calculated Anatomy Thickness (0018,9452) attribute). 2. For example, used to estimate the value range of the Distance Object to Table Top (0018,9403) attribute.
Burned In Annotation	(0028,0301)	1	Indicates that the image shall not contain burned in annotations. Enumerated Values: NO
Lossy Image Compression	(0028,2110)	1	Specifies whether an Image has undergone lossy compression. Enumerated Values: 00 = Image has NOT been subjected to lossy compression. 01 = Image has been subjected to lossy compression. See C.7.6.1.1.5 for further explanation.
Lossy Image Compression Ratio	(0028,2112)	1C	See C.7.6.1.1.5 for further explanation. Required if Lossy Image Compression (0028,2110) equals 01.
Lossy Image Compression Method	(0028,2114)	1C	A label for the lossy compression method(s) that have been applied to this image. See C.7.6.1.1.5 for further explanation. May be multi valued if successive lossy compression steps have been applied; the value order shall correspond to the values of Lossy Image Compression Ratio (0028,2112). Note: For historical reasons, the lossy compression method may also be described in Derivation Description (0008,2111). Required if Lossy Image Compression (0028,2110) equals 01.
Referenced Other Plane Sequence	(0008,9410)	1C	A sequence that identifies the SOP Class/Instance pairs of the corresponding plane for a Biplane acquisition device. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this Sequence. Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 3 is BIPLANE A or BIPLANE B.

>Include 'Image SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table 10-3			
Referenced Image Evidence Sequence	(0008,9092)	1C	Full set of Composite SOP Instances referred to inside the Referenced Image Sequences of this SOP Instance. See C.8.13.2.1.2 for further explanation. One or more Items may be permitted in this sequence. Required if the Referenced Image Sequence (0008,1140) is present.
>Include 'SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table C.17-3			
Source Image Evidence Sequence	(0008,9154)	1C	Full set of Composite SOP Instances referred to inside the Source Image Sequences of this SOP Instance. See C.8.13.2.1.2 for further explanation. One or more Items may be permitted in this sequence. Required if the Source Image Sequence (0008,2112) is present.
>Include 'SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table C.17-3			
Referenced Instance Sequence	(0008,114A)	3	A sequence which provides reference to a set of non-image SOP Class/Instance pairs significantly related to this Image, including waveforms that may or may not be temporally synchronized with this image. One or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class. Required if a Sequence Item is present.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance. Required if a Sequence Item is present.
>Purpose of Reference Code Sequence	(0040,A170)	1	Code describing the purpose of the reference to the SOP Instances. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*Defined Context ID is CID 7004 for referenced waveforms.*
Image Comments	(0020,4000)	3	User-defined comments about the image.
Quality Control Image	(0028,0300)	3	Indicates whether or not this image is a quality control or phantom image. Enumerated Values: YES NO If this Attribute is absent, then the image may or may not be a quality control or

			phantom image.
Icon Image Sequence	(0088,0200)	3	This icon image is representative of the Image.
> *Include 'Image Pixel Macro' Table C.7-11b*			See C.7.6.1.1.6 for further explanation.
Presentation LUT Shape	(2050,0020)	1	Specifies a predefined identity transformation for the Presentation LUT such that the output of all grayscale transformations, if any, are defined to be in P-Values. Enumerated Values: IDENTITY - output is in P-Values - shall be used if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) is MONOCHROME2 INVERSE - output after inversion is in P-Values - shall be used if Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) is MONOCHROME1.

C.8.19.2.1 Enhanced XA/XRF Image Module Attribute Description

C.8.19.2.1.1 Image Type

The Image Type attribute identifies important image characteristics in a multiple valued data element. For X-Ray, Image Type is specialized as follows:

a. Value 1 shall identify the Pixel Data Characteristics in accordance with Section C.7.6.1.1.2; Enumerated Values are: ORIGINAL and DERIVED;

b. Value 2 shall identify the Patient Examination Characteristics in accordance with Section C.7.6.1.1.2; Enumerated Values are: PRIMARY and SECONDARY.

Note: X-Ray images generally use PRIMARY value for images captured from patient exposure.

c. Value 3 shall identify the image set in terms of the imaging planes. Enumerated Values are:

SINGLE PLANE	Image is a single plane acquisition;
BIPLANE A	Image is the first plane (e.g., Frontal) of a Bi-plane acquisition;
BIPLANE B	Image is the second plane (e.g., Lateral) of a Bi-plane acquisition
UNDEFINED	Image is created by using data from one or two planes (e.g., reconstructed projection). May only be used when Image Type Value 1 equals DERIVED.

d. Other Values are implementation specific (optional).

C.8.19.2.1.2 Bits Allocated and Bits Stored

Table C.8.X2-2 specifies the allowed combinations of Bits Allocated (0028,0100) and Bits Stored (0028,0101).

Table C.8.19.2-2
ALLOWED COMBINATIONS OF ATTRIBUTE VALUES FOR BITS ALLOCATED AND BITS STORED

Bits Allocated	Bits Stored
8	8
16	9 to16

C.8.19.3 XA/XRF Acquisition Module

Table C.8.19.3-1 specifies the attributes of the XA/XRF Acquisition Module.

Table C.8.19.3-1
XA/XRF ACQUISITION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
KVP	(0018,0060)	1	Average of the peak kilo voltage outputs of the X-Ray generator used for all frames.
Radiation Setting	(0018,1155)	1	Identify the general level of X-Ray dose exposure. Enumerated values are: SC = low dose exposure generally corresponding to fluoroscopic settings (e.g. preparation for diagnostic quality image acquisition); GR = high dose for diagnostic quality image acquisition (also called digital spot or cine);
X-Ray Tube Current in mA	(0018,9330)	1C	Average of the nominal X-ray tube currents in milliamperes for all frames. Required if Exposure in mAs (0018,9332) is not present. May be present otherwise.
Exposure Time in ms	(0018,9328)	1C	Duration of X-Ray exposure in milliseconds. See C.8.7.2.1.1. Required if Exposure in mAs (0018,9332) is not present. May be present otherwise.
Exposure in mAs	(0018,9332)	1C	The exposure expressed in milliampereseconds, for example calculated from Exposure Time and X-ray Tube Current. Required if either Exposure Time in ms (0018,9328) or X-Ray Tube Current in mA (0018,9330) are not present. May be present otherwise.
Average Pulse Width	(0018,1154)	1	Average width of X-Ray pulse in msec.
Acquisition Duration	(0018,9073)	1	The time in seconds needed for the complete acquisition.

			See C.7.6.16.2.2.1 for further explanation
Radiation Mode	(0018,115A)	1	Specifies X-Ray radiation mode. Defined Terms: CONTINUOUS PULSED
Focal Spot	(0018,1190)	3	Nominal focal spot size in mm used to acquire this image.
Anode Target Material	(0018,1191)	3	The primary material in the anode of the X-Ray source. Defined Terms: TUNGSTEN MOLYBDENUM RHODIUM
Rectification Type	(0018,1156)	3	Type of rectification used in the X-Ray generator. Defined Terms: SINGLE PHASE THREE PHASE CONST POTENTIAL
X-Ray Receptor Type	(0018,9420)	1	Identifies with type of X-ray receptor is used. Enumerated Values: IMG_INTENSIFIER DIGITAL_DETECTOR
Imager Pixel Spacing	(0018,1164)	1	Physical distance measured at the receptor plane of the detector between the centers of each pixel specified by a numeric pair – row spacing value (delimiter) column spacing value in mm. See 10.7.1.3 for further explanation of the value order. Note: These values are the actual pixel spacing distances of the stored pixel values of an image.
Distance Receptor Plane to Detector Housing	(0018,9426)	2	Distance in mm between the receptor plane and the detector housing. The direction of the distance is positive from receptor plane to X-Ray source. Note: 1. A negative value is allowed in the case of an image intensifier the receptor plane can be a virtual plane located outside the detector housing depending the magnification factor of the intensifier. A negative value is not applicable for the digital detector. 2. Used to calculate the pixel size of the plane in the patient when markers are used, and they are placed on the detector housing.

Positioner Type	(0018,1508)	1	Defined Terms: CARM COLUMN Notes: 1. The term CARM can apply to any positioner with 2 degrees of freedom of rotation of the X-Ray beam about the Imaging Subject. 2. The term COLUMN can apply to any positioner with 1 degree of freedom of rotation of the X-Ray beam about the Imaging Subject.
C-arm Positioner Tabletop Relationship	(0018,9474)	1C	Describes for C-arm positioner type systems if positioner and tabletop has the same geometrical reference system. Defined Terms: YES NO Note: The value NO is intended for mobile systems where there is no table fixed to the system Required if Positioner Type (0018,1508) equals CARM.
Acquired Image Area Dose Product	(0018,9473)	2	X-Ray dose, measured in dGy*cm*cm, to which the patient was exposed for the acquisition of this image only. Notes: 1. The sum of the Image Area Dose Product of all images of a Series or a Study may not result in the actual area dose product to which the patient was exposed. 2. This may be an estimated value based on assumptions about the patient's body size and habitus.

C.8.19.4 X-Ray Image Intensifier module

Table C.8.19.4-1 specifies the attributes of the X-Ray Image Intensifier Module.

Table C.8.19.4-1
X-RAY IMAGE INTENSIFIER MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Intensifier Size	(0018,1162)	1	Physical diameter of the maximum active area X-Ray intensifier in mm. Note: This attribute does not specify the field of view. The attribute Field of View Dimension(s) in Float (0018,9461) is intended for this value.
Intensifier Active Shape	(0018,9427)	1	Shape of the active area used for acquiring this image. Enumerated Value:

			RECTANGLE ROUND HEXAGONAL Note: This may be different from the Field of View Shape (0018,1147), and should not be assumed to describe the stored image.
Intensifier Active Dimension(s)	(0018,9428)	1	Dimensions in mm of the active area used for acquiring this image. If Intensifier Active Shape (0018,9427) is: RECTANGLE: row dimension followed by column. ROUND: diameter. HEXAGONAL: diameter of the circle circumscribing the hexagon. Note: This may be different from the Field of View Dimension(s) in Float (0018,9461), and should not be assumed to describe the stored image.

C.8.19.5 X-Ray Detector Module

Table C.8.19.5-1 contains IOD Attributes that describe an X-Ray detector.

Table C.8.19.5-1
X-RAY DETECTOR MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Include 'Digital X-Ray Detector Macro' Table C.8-71b			
Physical Detector Size	(0018,9429)	1	Dimensions of the physical detector measured in mm as a row size followed by a column size.
Position of Isocenter Projection	(0018,9430)	1C	Position of the Isocenter measured in physical detector elements as a row offset followed by a column offset from the TLHC of a rectangle circumscribing the physical detector area. Required if Isocenter Reference System Sequence (0018,9462) is present.

C.8.19.6 Enhanced XA/XRF Image Functional Group Macros

The following sections contain Functional Group macros specific to the Enhanced XA Image IOD.

Note: The attribute descriptions in the Functional Group Macros are written as if they were applicable to a single frame (i.e., the macro is part of the Per-frame Functional Groups Sequence). If an attribute is applicable to all frames (i.e. the macro is part of the Shared Functional Groups Sequence) the phrase "this frame" in the attribute description shall be interpreted to mean " for all frames".".

C.8.19.6.1 XA/XRF Frame Characteristics Macro

Table C.8.19.6-1 specifies the attributes of the XA/XRF Frame Characteristics Functional Group macro.

Table C.8.19.6-1
XA/XRF FRAME CHARACTERISTICS MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
XA/XRF Frame Characteristics Sequence	(0018,9412)	1	A sequence that describes general characteristics of this frame. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Derivation Description	(0008,2111)	3	A text description of how this frame was derived. See C.8.7.1.1.5 for further explanation.
>Derivation Code Sequence	(0008,9215)	3	A coded description of how this frame was derived. See C.7.6.1.1.3 for further explanation.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			Defined Context ID is 7203.
>Acquisition Device Processing Description	(0018,1400)	3	Indicates any visual processing performed on the frame prior to exchange. See Section C.8.7.1.1.3.
>Acquisition Device Processing Code	(0018,1401)	3	Code representing the device-specific processing associated with the frame (e.g. Organ Filtering code) Note: This Code is manufacturer specific but provides useful annotation information to the knowledgeable observer.

C.8.19.6.2 X-Ray Field of View Macro

Table C.8.19.6-2 specifies the attributes of the X-Ray Field of View Functional Group macro.

Table C.8.19.6-2
X-RAY FIELD OF VIEW MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Field of View Sequence	(0018,9432)	1	Sequence containing the field of view for this frame. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>Field of View Shape	(0018,1147)	3	Shape of the Field of View, that is the image pixels stored in Pixel Data (7FE0,0010). Enumerated Values: RECTANGLE ROUND HEXAGONAL

>Field of View Dimension(s) in Float	(0018,9461)	3	Dimensions in mm of the Field of View, that is the image pixels stored in Pixel Data (7FE0,0010). If Field of View Shape (0018,1147) is: RECTANGLE: row dimension followed by column. ROUND: diameter. HEXAGONAL: diameter of the circle circumscribing the hexagon.
>Field of View Origin	(0018,7030)	1C	Offset of the TLHC of a rectangle circumscribing the Field of View, i.e., the image pixels stored in Pixel Data (7FE0,0010) before rotation or flipping, from the TLHC of the physical detector area measured in physical detector pixels as a row offset followed by a column offset. See C.8.11.4.1.1 for further explanation. Required if X-Ray Receptor Type (0018,9420) is present and equals DIGITAL_DETECTOR.
>Field of View Rotation	(0018,7032)	1	Clockwise rotation in degrees of Field of View, i.e., the image pixels stored in Pixel Data (7FE0,0010), relative to the physical detector. Enumerated Values: 0, 90, 180, 270 See C.8.11.4.1.1 for further explanation.
>Field of View Horizontal Flip	(0018,7034)	1	Whether or not a horizontal flip has been applied to the Field of View, i.e., the image pixels stored in Pixel Data (7FE0,0010), after rotation relative to the physical detector as described in Field of View Rotation (0018,7032). Enumerated Values: NO YES See C.8.11.4.1.1 for further explanation.
>Field of View Description	(0018,9433)	3	Manufacturer defined description of the field of view selected during acquisition.

C.8.19.6.3 X-Ray Exposure Control Sensing Regions Macro

Table C.8.19.6-3 specifies the attributes that describe the region targeted as area where the x-ray dose value is estimated.

Table C.8.19.6-3
X-RAY EXPOSURE CONTROL SENSING REGIONS MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description

Exposure Control Sensing Regions Sequence	(0018,9434)	1	Sequence containing the Exposure Control Sensing Region for this frame. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>Exposure Control Sensing Region Shape	(0018,9435)	1	Shape of the Exposure Control Sensing Region. Enumerated Values: RECTANGULAR CIRCULAR POLYGONAL
>Exposure Control Sensing Region Left Vertical Edge	(0018,9436)	1C	Required if Exposure Control Sensing Region Shape (0018,9435) is RECTANGULAR. Location of the left edge of the rectangular Exposure Control Sensing Region expressed as effective pixel column. See C.8.19.6.3.1.
>Exposure Control Sensing Region Right Vertical Edge	(0018,9437)	1C	Required if Exposure Control Sensing Region Shape (0018,9435) is RECTANGULAR. Location of the right edge of the rectangular Exposure Control Sensing Region expressed as effective pixel column. See C.8.19.6.3.1.
>Exposure Control Sensing Region Upper Horizontal Edge	(0018,9438)	1C	Required if Exposure Control Sensing Region Shape (0018,9435) is RECTANGULAR. Location of the upper edge of the rectangular Exposure Control Sensing Region expressed as effective pixel row. See C.8.19.6.3.1.
>Exposure Control Sensing Region Lower Horizontal Edge	(0018,9439)	1C	Required if Exposure Control Sensing Region Shape (0018,9435) is RECTANGULAR. Location of the lower edge of the rectangular Exposure Control Sensing Region expressed as effective pixel row. See C.8.19.6.3.1.
>Center of Circular Exposure Control Sensing Region	(0018,9440)	1C	Required if Exposure Control Sensing Region Shape (0018,9435) is CIRCULAR. Location of the center of the circular Exposure Control Sensing Region expressed as effective pixel row and column. See C.8.19.6.3.1.
>Radius of Circular Exposure Control Sensing Region	(0018,9441)	1C	Required if Exposure Control Sensing Region Shape (0018,9435) is CIRCULAR. Radius of the circular Exposure Control Sensing Region expressed as effective number of pixels along the row direction. See C.8.19.6.3.1.
>Vertices of the Polygonal Exposure Control Sensing Region	(0018,9442)	1C	Required if Exposure Control Sensing Region Shape (0018,9435) is POLYGONAL. Multiple Values where the first set of two values are:

			row of the origin vertex; column of the origin vertex. Two or more pairs of values follow and are the effective pixel row and column coordinates of the other vertices of the polygon Exposure Control Sensing Region. Polygon Exposure Control Sensing Regions are implicitly closed from the last vertex to the origin vertex and all edges shall be non-intersecting except at the vertices. See C.8.19.6.3.1.

C.8.19.6.3.1 X-Ray Exposure Control Sensing Regions attributes

The Exposure Control Sensing Region Left Vertical Edge (0018,9436), Exposure Control Sensing Region Right Vertical Edge (0018,9437), Exposure Control Sensing Region Upper Horizontal Edge (0018,9438), Exposure Control Sensing Region Lower Horizontal Edge (0018,9439) and Center of Circular Exposure Control Sensing Region (0018,9440) may have a negative value when the point defined by the attribute lies outside the left or upper border of the pixel data matrix. The top left pixel of the image has a pixel row and column value of 1.

C.8.19.6.4 XA/XRF Frame Pixel Data Properties Macro

Table C.8.19.6-4 specifies the attributes of the Frame Pixel Data Properties Functional Group macro.

Table C.8.19.6-4
XA/XRF FRAME PIXEL DATA PROPERTIES MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Frame Pixel Data Properties Sequence	(0028,9443)	1	Sequence containing the pixel data properties for this frame. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Pixel Intensity Relationship	(0028,1040)	1	The relationship between the Pixel and the X-Ray beam intensity. See C.8.19.6.4.1.
>Pixel Intensity Relationship Sign	(0028,1041)	1	The sign of the relationship between the Pixel sample values stored in Pixel Data (7FE0,0010) and the X-Ray beam intensity. Enumerated Values: 1 = Lower pixel values correspond to less X-Ray beam intensity -1 = Higher pixel values correspond to less X-Ray beam intensity See C.8.11.3.1.2 for further explanation.
>Geometrical Properties	(0028,9444)	1	Geometrical characteristics of the pixel data to indicate whether pixel spacing is uniform for all pixels or not.

			Enumerated Values: UNIFORM NON_UNIFORM
>Geometric Maximum Distortion	(0028,9445)	2C	The percentage of the maximum deviation of the pixel spacing values of images for which the geometric properties are non-uniform. Note: This attribute may be used to judge the result of measurements, 3D reconstructions, etc. Required if Geometrical Properties (0028,9444) equals NON_UNIFORM.
>Image Processing Applied	(0028,9446)	1	The type or a combination of types of image processing applied to the pixel data before being stored. Defined Terms: DIGITAL_SUBTR HIGH_PASS_FILTER LOW_PASS_FILTER MULTI_BAND_FLTR FRAME_AVERAGING NONE

C.8.19.6.4.1 Pixel Intensity Relationship

Pixel Intensity Relationship (0028,1040) shall identify the relationship of the pixel values to the X-Ray beam intensity. Defined terms are:

LIN — Approximately proportional to X-Ray beam intensity.

LOG — Non-linear “ Log Function”; A Pixel Intensity Relationship LUT shall be included with the image to allow it to be mapped back to its proportional value to X-Ray beam intensity.

OTHER — Not proportional to X-Ray beam intensity. If a TO_LINEAR Pixel Intensity Relationship LUT item is supplied, scaling back to X-Ray beam intensity is possible.

Notes: 1. When the relationship can be better defined (e.g., square root data) a more precise Defined Term can be used than OTHER.

2. Providing a TO_LINEAR Pixel Intensity Relationship LUT is encouraged.

C.8.19.6.5 X-Ray Frame Detector Parameters Macro

Table C.8.19.6-5 specifies the attributes containing the X-Ray Frame Detector Parameters Functional Group macro.

Table C.8.19.6-5
X-RAY FRAME DETECTOR PARAMETERS MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Frame Detector Parameters Sequence	(0018,9451)	1	Sequence containing the detector properties for this frame. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Detector Active Time	(0018,7014)	3	Time in mSec that the detector is active during acquisition of this image. Note: This activation window overlaps the time of the X-Ray exposure as defined by Exposure Time in ms (0018,9328) and Detector Activation Offset From Exposure (0018,7016).
>Detector Activation Offset From Exposure	(0018,7016)	3	Offset time in mSec that the detector becomes active after the X-Ray beam is turned on during acquisition of this image. May be negative.

C.8.19.6.6 X-Ray Calibration Device Usage Macro

Table C.8.19.6-6 specifies the attributes containing the X-Ray Calibration Device Usage Functional Group macro.

Table C.8.19.6-6
X-RAY CALIBRATION DEVICE USAGE MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Calibration Sequence	(0018,9455)	1	Sequence containing the calibration flag for this frame. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Calibration Image	(0050,0004)	1	Indicates whether a reference object (phantom) of known size is present in the frame and was used for calibration. Enumerated Values: YES NO Note: Device is identified using the Device module. See C.7.6.12.

C.8.19.6.7 X-Ray Object Thickness Macro

Table C.8.19.6-7 specifies the attributes containing the X-Ray Object Thickness Group macro.

Table C.8.19.6-7
X-RAY OBJECT THICKNESS MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Object Thickness Sequence	(0018,9456)	1	Sequence containing object thickness for this frame. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Calculated Anatomy Thickness	(0018,9452)	1	The physical thickness in mm of the anatomic region of interest as specified in the Anatomic Region Sequence (0008,2218) in the direction of the center of the beam. Note: The value takes in account the position relative to object and the X-Ray source – detector axis.

C.8.19.6.8 X-Ray Frame Acquisition Macro

Table C.8.19.6-8 specifies the attributes containing the X-Ray Frame Acquisition Functional Group macro.

Table C.8.19.6-8
X-RAY FRAME ACQUISITION MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Frame Acquisition Sequence	(0018,9417)	1	Sequence containing the acquisition parameters for this frame. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>KVP	(0018,0060)	1	Exact peak kilo voltage output of the X-Ray generator used for this frame.
>X-Ray Tube Current in mA	(0018,9330)	1	Exact Nominal X-ray tube current in milliamperes applied during the Acquisition Duration (0018,9220) for this frame.

C.8.19.6.8.1 X-Ray Frame Acquisition Sequence Attributes

These attribute may only be used if the information is available on a frame-by-frame base. The average values for these attributes of all frames shall be stored in the same attribute in the XA/XRF Acquisition Module (Section C.8.19.3).

C.8.19.6.9 X-Ray Projection Pixel Calibration Macro

Table C.8.19.6-9 specifies the attributes of the X-Ray Projection Pixel Calibration Functional Group macro.

Table C.8.19.6-9
X-RAY PROJECTION PIXEL CALIBRATION MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Projection Pixel Calibration Sequence	(0018,9401)	1	A sequence that describes the geometrical position of the patient relative to the equipment. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Distance Object to Table Top	(0018,9403)	2	Distance between the anatomic region of interest of observation and table top in mm. Notes: 1.This value is always positive, the object is assumed to be above the table. 2.The value of this attribute is depending on the patient position on the tabletop (supine, left or right decubitus, etc.)
>Object Pixel Spacing in Center of Beam	(0018,9404)	1C	Physical distance within the anatomic region of interest in the center of the beam and perpendicular to the beam between the center of each pixel, specified by a numeric pair adjacent row spacing (delimiter) adjacent column spacing in mm. See C.8.19.6.9.2. See 10.7.1.3 for further explanation of the value order. Required if Distance Object to Table Top (0018,9403) is not empty. Note: This value is provided besides the values that are the input parameters of the calibration algorithm.
>Table Height	(0018,1130)	1C	The distance of the top of the patient table to the center of rotation of the source (i.e. the isocenter) in mm. A positive value indicates that the tabletop is below the isocenter. Note: All the distances are measured perpendicular to the Table Top plane. Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL, may be present otherwise.
>Beam Angle	(0018,9449)	1C	The equipment related angle in degrees of the X-Ray beam relative to the perpendicular to the tabletop plane. An angle from 0 to +90 degrees indicates

			that the X-Ray source is below the table. The valid range is 0 to +180 degrees. Required if Image Type (0008,0008) Value 1 is ORIGINAL, may be present otherwise.

C.8.19.6.9.1 Project Calibration Method

The X-Ray Projection Pixel Calibration Macro defines the attributes needed to completely describe the specific inputs and results from projection image pixel calibration based on isocenter reference. The attributes are provided to allow usage of calibration result as well as recalibration. The below included figures illustrate the relationship of the attributes. The term ISO refers to Distance Source to Isocenter attribute (0018,9402). The Imager Pixel Spacing (0018,1164) is defined in the XA/XRF Acquisition Module.

Note: The equipment related Beam Angle attribute (0018,9449) shall be consistent with the patient oriented Positioner Primary Angle (0018,1510) and Positioner Secondary Angle (0018,1511) together with the patient orientation on the table specified in Patient Orientation Code Sequence (0054,0410) attributes.

The Figures C.8.X6-1 and C.8.X6-2 illustrate the usage of the attributes under the conditions laid out above.

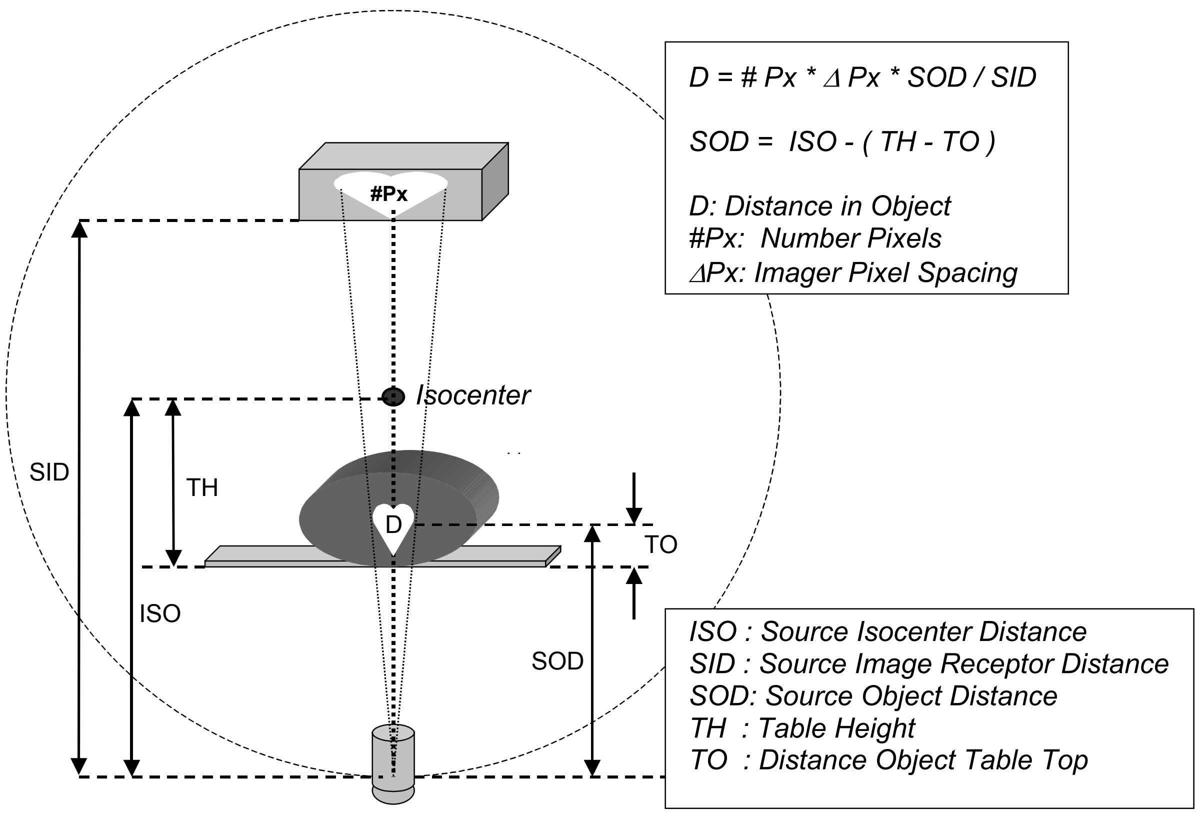


Figure C.8.19.6-1
Project Calibration without angulation of the X-Ray beam (Beam Angle = 0)

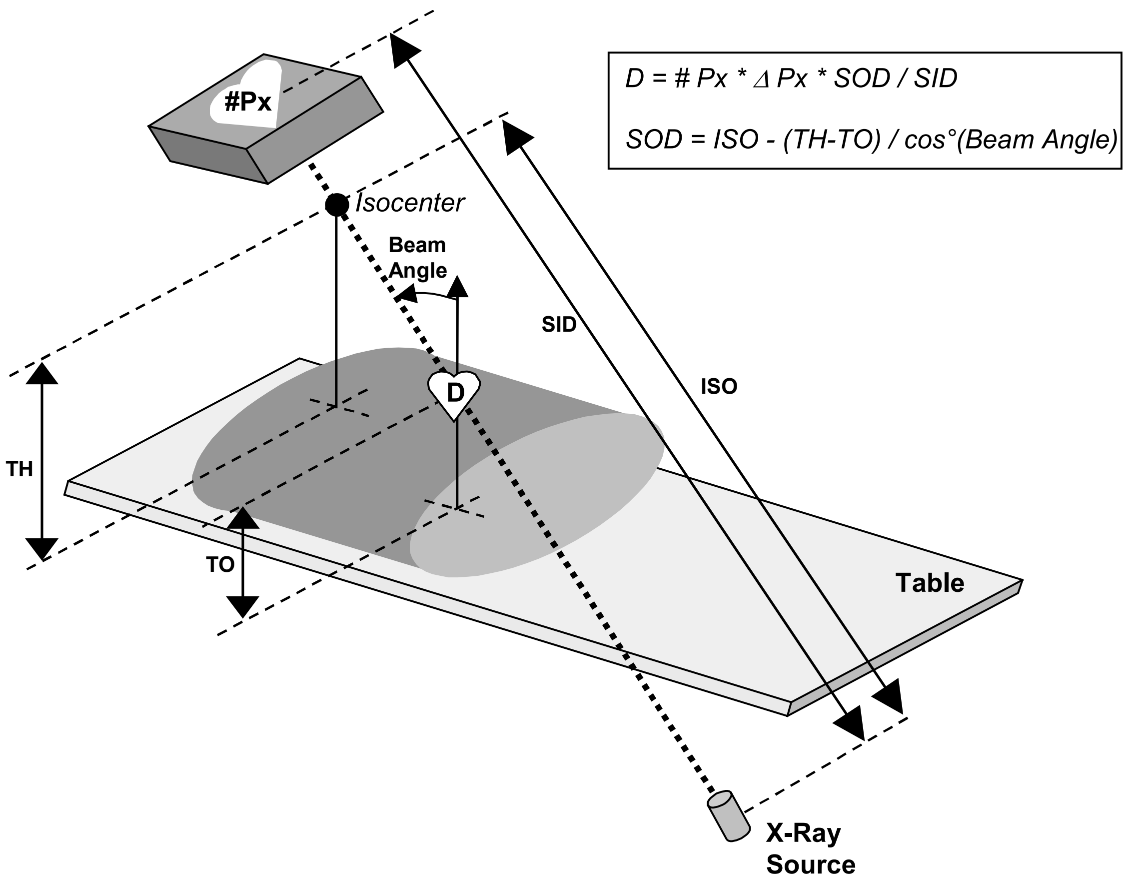


Figure C.8.19.6-2
Project Calibration with angulation of the X-Ray beam (Beam Angle not equal 0)

C.8.19.6.9.2 Object Pixel Spacing in Center of Beam

The value provided for the Beam Angle (0018,9449) attribute shall correspond to the other attribute values within this module and according to the mathematic terms listed in section C.8.19.6.9.1.

The terms listed will result in infinite result when used with 90-degree beam angles.

It is outside the scope of this Standard to define reasonable limits for single input values in the above-mentioned terms, or to define the mathematical accuracy of applications using those terms.

Note: It may be reasonable to limit automatic calculations to a narrow range of +/- 60 degrees for Beam Angle and inform users about possible deviations in the calibration result when exceeding such range limits.

C.8.19.6.10 X-Ray Positioner Macro

Table C.8.19.6-10 specifies the attributes of the X-Ray Positioner Functional Group macro. If included into the Shared Functional Groups Sequence (5200,9229) no DYNAMIC motion was performed during acquisition. If included in the Per-frame Functional Groups Sequence (5200,9230) the indication of a DYNAMIC motion is given.

Table C.8.19.6-10
X-RAY POSITIONER MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Positioner Position Sequence	(0018,9405)	1	A sequence that describes the geometrical position of the positioner. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Positioner Primary Angle	(0018,1510)	1C	Position of the X-Ray Image Intensifier about the patient from the RAO to LAO direction where movement from RAO to vertical is positive. See C.8.7.5.1.2. Required if Positioner Type (0018,1508) equals CARM.
>Positioner Secondary Angle	(0018,1511)	1C	Position of the X-Ray Image Intensifier about the patient from the CAU to CRA direction where movement from CAU to vertical is positive. See C.8.7.5.1.2 Required if Positioner Type (0018,1508) equals CARM.
>Column Angulation (Patient)	(0018,9447)	1C	Angle of the X-Ray beam in degree relative to an orthogonal axis to the detector plane. Positive values indicate that the tilt is towards the head of the patient. Notes: 1. The detector plane is assumed to be parallel to the table plane 2. This attribute differentiates form the attribute Column Angulation (0018,1450) by using the patient based coordinate system instead of the equipment based coordinate system. Required if Positioner Type (0018,1508) equals COLUMN.

C.8.19.6.11 X-Ray Table Position Macro

Table C.8.19.6-11 specifies the attributes of the X-Ray Table Position Functional Group macro.

Table C.8.19.6-11
X-RAY TABLE POSITION MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Table Position Sequence	(0018,9406)	1	A sequence that describes the geometrical position of the table top. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Table Top Vertical Position	(300A,0128)	1	Table Top Vertical position with respect to an arbitrary chosen reference by the equipment in (mm). Table motion downwards is positive
>Table Top Longitudinal Position	(300A,0129)	1	Table Top Longitudinal position with respect to an arbitrary chosen reference by the equipment in (mm). Table motion towards LAO is positive assuming that the patient is positioned supine and its head is in normal position.
>Table Top Lateral Position	(300A,012A)	1	Table Top Lateral position with respect to an arbitrary chosen reference by the equipment in (mm). Table motion towards CRA is positive assuming that the patient is positioned supine and its head is in normal position.
>Table Horizontal Rotation Angle	(0018,9469)	1	Rotation of the table in the horizontal plane (clockwise when looking from above the table).
>Table Head Tilt Angle	(0018,9470)	1	Angle of the head-feet axis of the table in degrees relative to the horizontal plane. Positive values indicate that the head of the table is upwards.
>Table Cradle Tilt Angle	(0018,9471)	1	Angle of the left-right axis of the table in degrees relative to the horizontal plane. Positive values indicate that the left of the table is upwards.

C.8.19.6.11.1 X-Ray Table Position Macro Attribute Description

The Table Top Position attributes of the Table Position Sequence (0018,9406) specify the geometrical position of the Table in the three spatial directions (i.e. Vertical, Longitudinal and Lateral) relative to the Table Top plane (see Figure C.8.19.6-3). The absolute reference point to which the Table positions are related is arbitrarily defined by the manufacturer.

The Table Angle attributes of the Table Position Sequence (0018,9406) specify the rotation and tilt of the Table Top Plane with respect to a plane arbitrarily defined by the manufacturer (usually the horizontal plane).

The Table Top Position attributes allow to describe the incremental translation of the Table top between frames of the same Multi-frame image, and between frames of different images, provided that the Table Angles are not modified between these frames.

When the table angles are modified between two frames, the Table Position Sequence (0018,9406) does not allow to characterize the relationship between the two table positions in an absolute reference coordinate system. For this purpose, the X-Ray Isocenter Reference System Macro has to be used.

Note: The incremental table translation may be used, in conjunction with the Positioner Position Sequence attributes (0018,9405), for simple 2D-2D registration applications (object tracking, pixel shift…), assuming that the patient position is fixed on the table. For more complex registration applications, and in order to properly handle the changes in the table angles, it is recommended to use the X-Ray Isocenter Reference System Macro attributes.

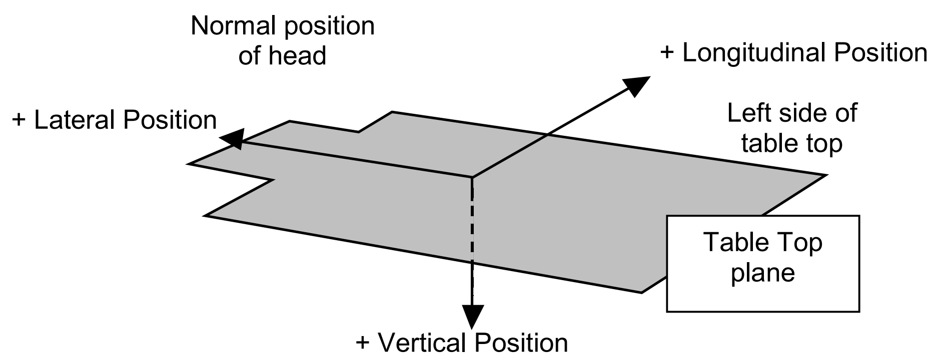


Figure C.8.19.6-3
Table Position Vectors

C.8.19.6.12 X-Ray Collimator Macro

Table C.8.19.6-12 specifies the attributes of the X-Ray Collimator Functional Group macro.

Table C.8.19.6-12
X-RAY COLLIMATOR MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Collimator Shape Sequence	(0018,9407)	1	A sequence that describes the collimator shape. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Collimator Shape	(0018,1700)	1	Shape(s) of the collimator. Enumerated Values: RECTANGULAR CIRCULAR POLYGONAL This multi-valued Attribute shall contain at most one of each Enumerated Value.
>Collimator Left Vertical Edge	(0018,1702)	1C	Required if Collimator Shape (0018,1700) is RECTANGULAR. Location of the left edge of the rectangular collimator expressed as effective pixel column. See C.8.7.3.1.1 and C.8.19.6.12.1.
>Collimator Right Vertical Edge	(0018,1704)	1C	Required if Collimator Shape (0018,1700) is RECTANGULAR. Location of the right

			edge of the rectangular collimator expressed as effective pixel column. See C.8.7.3.1.1 and C.8.19.6.12.1.
>Collimator Upper Horizontal Edge	(0018,1706)	1C	Required if Collimator Shape (0018,1700) is RECTANGULAR. Location of the upper edge of the rectangular collimator expressed as effective pixel row. See C.8.7.3.1.1 and C.8.19.6.12.1.
>Collimator Lower Horizontal Edge	(0018,1708)	1C	Required if Collimator Shape (0018,1700) is RECTANGULAR. Location of the lower edge of the rectangular collimator expressed as effective pixel row. See C.8.7.3.1.1 and C.8.19.6.12.1.
>Center of Circular Collimator	(0018,1710)	1C	Required if Collimator Shape (0018,1700) is CIRCULAR. Location of the center of the circular collimator expressed as effective pixel row and column. See C.8.7.3.1.1 and C.8.19.6.12.1.
>Radius of Circular Collimator	(0018,1712)	1C	Required if Collimator Shape (0018,1700) is CIRCULAR. Radius of the circular collimator expressed as effective number of pixels along the row direction. See C.8.7.3.1.1 and C.8.19.6.12.1.
>Vertices of the Polygonal Collimator	(0018,1720)	1C	Required if Collimator Shape (0018,1700) is POLYGONAL. Multiple Values where the first set of two values are: row of the origin vertex; column of the origin vertex. Two or more pairs of values follow and are the effective pixel row and column coordinates of the other vertices of the polygon collimator. Polygon collimators are implicitly closed from the last vertex to the origin vertex and all edges shall be non-intersecting except at the vertices. See C.8.19.6.12.1.

C.8.19.6.12.1 X-Ray Collimator attributes

The top left pixel of the image has a pixel row and column value of 1.

C.8.19.6.13 X-Ray Isocenter Reference System Macro

Table C.8.19.6-13 specifies the attributes of the X-Ray Isocenter Reference System Functional Group macro.

Table C.8.19.6-13
X-RAY ISOCENTER REFERENCE SYSTEM MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Isocenter Reference System Sequence	(0018,9462)	1	A sequence that describes the Isocenter Reference Coordinate System (O, X, Y, Z). Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Positioner Isocenter Primary Angle	(0018,9463)	1	Position of the X-Ray center beam in the isocenter reference system in the X direction (deg). See C.8.19.6.13.1.2 for further explanation.
>Positioner Isocenter Secondary Angle	(0018,9464)	1	Position of the X-Ray center beam in the isocenter reference system in the Z direction (deg). See C.8.19.6.13.1.2 for further explanation.
>Positioner Isocenter Detector Rotation Angle	(0018,9465)	1	Rotation of the X-Ray detector plane (deg). See C.8.19.6.13.1.2 for further explanation.
>Table X Position to Isocenter	(0018,9466)	1	X position of the Table Reference Point with respect to the Isocenter (mm). See C.8.19.6.13.1.3 for further explanation.
>Table Y Position to Isocenter	(0018,9467)	1	Y position of the Table Reference Point with respect to the Isocenter (mm). See C.8.19.6.13.1.3 for further explanation.
>Table Z Position to Isocenter	(0018,9468)	1	Z position of the Table Reference Point with respect to the Isocenter (mm). See C.8.19.6.13.1.3 for further explanation.
>Table Horizontal Rotation Angle	(0018,9469)	1	Rotation of the table in the horizontal plane. See C.8.19.6.13.1.3 for further explanation.
>Table Head Tilt Angle	(0018,9470)	1	Angle of the head-feet axis of the table in degrees relative to the horizontal plane. See C.8.19.6.13.1.3 for further explanation.
>Table Cradle Tilt Angle	(0018,9471)	1	Angle of the left-right axis of the table in

			degrees relative to the horizontal plane. See C.8.19.6.13.1.3 for further explanation.

C.8.19.6.13.1 Isocenter Reference System Attribute Description

The Isocenter Reference System Attributes describe the 3D geometry of the X-Ray equipment composed by the X-Ray positioner and the X-Ray table.

These attributes define three coordinate systems in the 3D space:

- Isocenter coordinate system
- Positioner coordinate system
- Table coordinate system

The Isocenter Reference System attributes describe the relationship between the 3D coordinates of a point in the table coordinate system and the 3D coordinates of such point in the positioner coordinate system (both systems moving in the equipment), by using the Isocenter coordinate system that is fixed in the equipment.

Note: PS 3.17 Annex X describes the transformations necessary to transpose between coordinate systems.

C.8.19.6.13.1.1 Isocenter Coordinate System

The Isocenter coordinate system (O,X,Y,Z) of the equipment is defined as follows:

- Origin O is on the System Isocenter
- +Y DOWNWARD (gravity)
- +X, +Z directions in the horizontal plane (gravity plane). Directions arbitrarily defined by the manufacturer

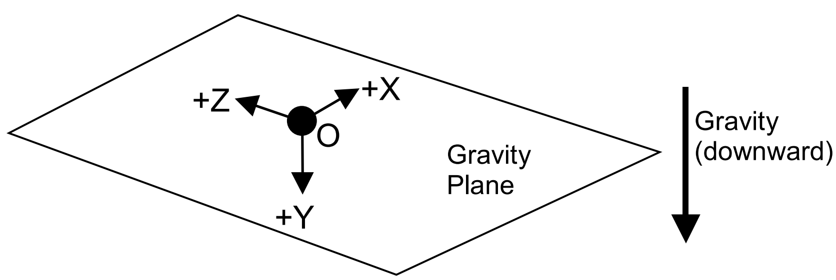


Figure C.8.19.6-4
Isocenter Coordinate System

C.8.19.6.13.1.2 Positioner Coordinate System

The positioner coordinate system (O_p, X_p, Y_p, Z_p) is defined as follows:

- Origin O_p, is the origin of the Isocenter coordinate system O
- X_p axis is parallel to the horizontal scan-lines of the detector (rows). Positive direction from left to right of the detector plane looking towards the source.

- Z_p axis is parallel to the vertical scan-lines of the detector (columns). Positive direction from bottom to top of the detector plane looking towards the source.
- Y_p is the axis from the isocenter to the X-Ray source. Positive direction from the Isocenter to the X-Ray Source. This axis is so-called the X-Ray center beam.

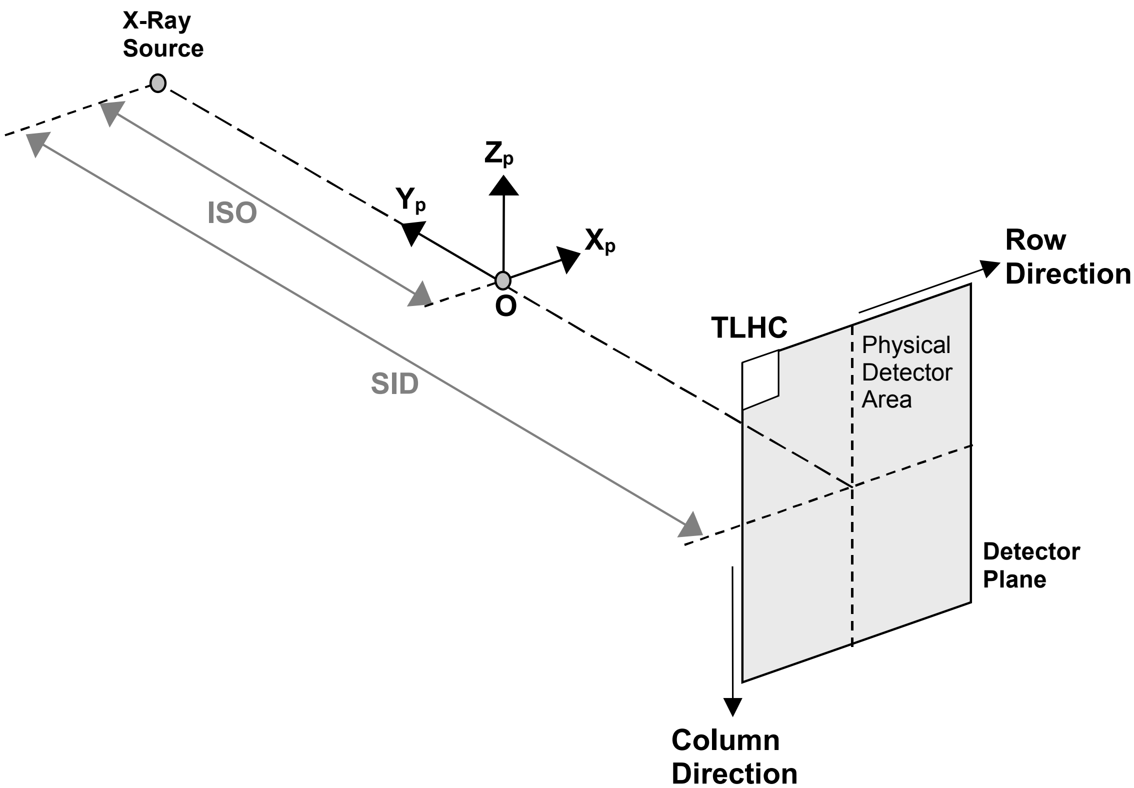


Figure C.8.19.6-5
Positioner Coordinate System

Note: The quantities **SID** and **ISO** are specified by the attributes Distance Source to Detector (0018,1110) and Distance Source to Isocenter (0018,9402) respectively.

The Positioner coordinate system (O_p, X_p, Y_p, Z_p) is characterized, with respect to the Isocenter coordinate system (O, X, Y, Z), by two angles describing the X-Ray center beam, and a third angle describing the rotation of the X-Ray detector plane. These angles are relative to the Isocenter reference system, and independent from the patient position on the equipment.

Positioner Isocenter Primary Angle (0018,9463) (so-called **Ap_1** in Figure C.8.19.6-6) is defined in the plane XY, as the angle between the plane YZ and the plane Y_pZ. The axis of rotation of this angle is the Z axis. Angle from –Y to +X is positive. The valid range of this angle is –180 to +180 degrees.

Positioner Isocenter Secondary Angle (0018,9464) (so-called **Ap_2** in Figure C.8.19.6-6) is defined in the plane Y_pZ, as the angle of the *X-Ray Center Beam* (i.e. Y_p) relative to the XY plane. The axis of rotation of this angle is perpendicular to the plane Y_pZ. Angle from the plane XY to +Z is positive. The valid range of this angle is –180 to +180 degrees.

Positioner Isocenter Detector Rotation Angle (0018,9465) (so-called **Ap_3** in Figure C.8.19.6-6 and in Figure C.8.19.6-7) is defined in the detector plane, as the angle of the vertical scan-lines of the detector (i.e. Z_p) relative to the intersection between the detector plane and the plane Y_pZ. The sign of this angle is positive clockwise when facing on to the detector plane (see Figure C.8.19.6-7). The valid range of this angle is –180 to +180 degrees.

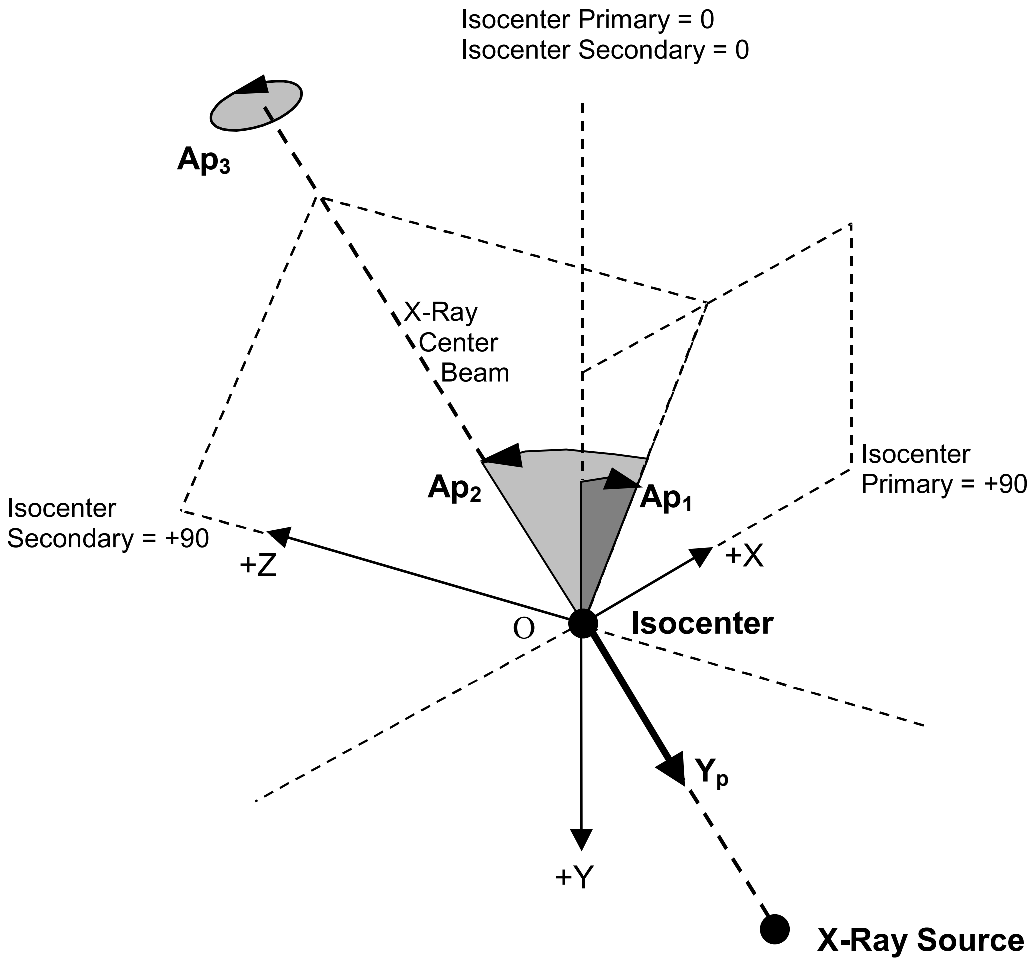


Figure C.8.19.6-6
Positioner Isocenter Angles

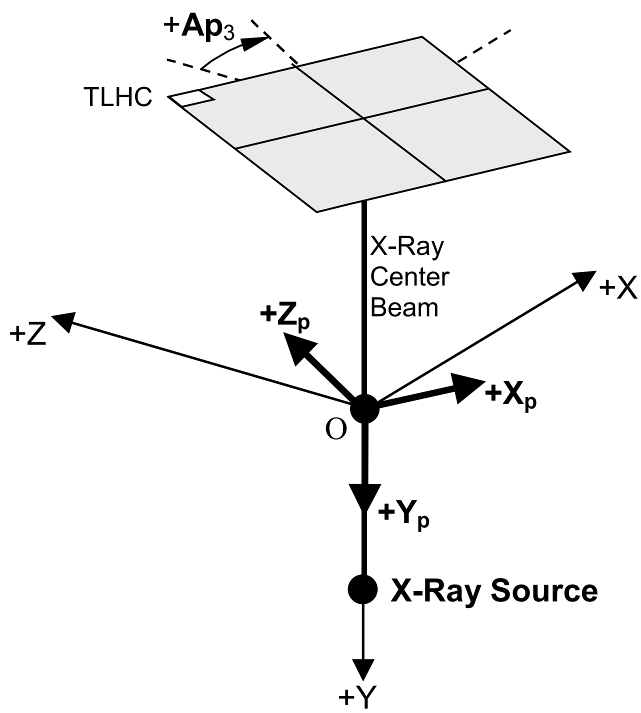


Figure C.8.19.6-7
Positioner Isocenter Detector Rotation Angle when Ap_1=0 and Ap_2=0

C.8.19.6.13.1.3 Table Coordinate System

The table coordinate system (O_t, X_t, Y_t, Z_t) is defined as follows:

- Origin O_t, so-called Table Reference Point, is on the Table Top plane
- $+X_t$ direction to the TABLE LEFT
- $+Z_t$ direction to the TABLE HEAD
- $+Y_t$ direction to the TABLE DOWN

The table coordinate system (O_t, X_t, Y_t, Z_t) is characterized, with respect to the Isocenter coordinate system (O, X, Y, Z), by a 3D translation and 3 angles describing the tilting and rotation:

Table X Position to Isocenter (0018,9466) (so-called $\mathbf{T_X}$ in Figure C.8.19.6-8) is defined as the translation of the Table Reference Point O_t with respect to the Isocenter system in the X direction. Table motion towards +X is positive.

Table Y Position to Isocenter (0018,9467) (so-called $\mathbf{T_Y}$ in Figure C.8.19.6-8) is defined as the translation of the Table Reference Point O_t with respect to the Isocenter system in the Y direction. Table motion towards +Y is positive.

Table Z Position to Isocenter (0018,9468) (so-called $\mathbf{T_Z}$ in Figure C.8.19.6-8) is defined as the translation of the Table Reference Point O_t with respect to the Isocenter system in the Z direction. Table motion towards +Z is positive.

Note: A translation of ($\mathbf{T_X}$, $\mathbf{T_Y}$, $\mathbf{T_Z}$) = (0, 0, 0) means that the Table Reference Point O_t is at the System Isocenter.

Table Horizontal Rotation Angle (so-called **At$_1$** in Figure C.8.19.6-9) is defined in the horizontal plane XZ, as the angle of the projection of the +Zt axis in the XZ plane relative to the +Z axis. The axis of rotation of this angle is the vertical axis crossing the Table Reference Point Ot. Zero value is defined when the projection of +Zt in the XZ plane is equal to +Z. Angle from +Z to +X is positive. The valid range of this angle is -180 to +180 degrees.

Table Head Tilt Angle (so-called **At$_2$** in Figure C.8.19.6-9) is defined in the vertical plane containing Z_t (i.e. YZ_t), as the angle of the +Z_t axis relative to the horizontal plane XZ. The axis of rotation of this angle is defined as the intersection between the horizontal plane XZ and the plane X_tY_t. Zero value is defined when +Z_t is contained in the horizontal plane XZ. Angle from horizontal (plane XZ) to –Y direction (upwards) is positive, indicating that the head of the table is above the horizontal plane. The valid range of this angle is -45 to +45 degrees.

Table Cradle Tilt Angle (so-called **At$_3$** in Figure C.8.19.6-9) is defined in the X_tY_t plane, as the angle of the +X_t axis relative to the intersection between the X_tY_t plane and the horizontal plane XZ. The axis of rotation of this angle is the axis Z_t. Zero value is defined when +X_t is contained in the horizontal plane XZ. Angle from horizontal (plane XZ) to –Y direction (upwards) is positive, indicating that the left of the table is above the horizontal plane. The valid range of this angle is -45 to +45 degrees.

Note: The angles **At$_1$** ,**At$_2$** and **At$_3$** are independent from any specific mechanical design of the table rotation axis defined by a manufacturer. In particular, they don't require the three rotation axis to cross on a single point. If a mechanical rotation axis does not cross the Table Reference Point O_t , a mechanical rotation around this axis will generate a change in one or more table angles as well as a translation of the Table Reference Point.

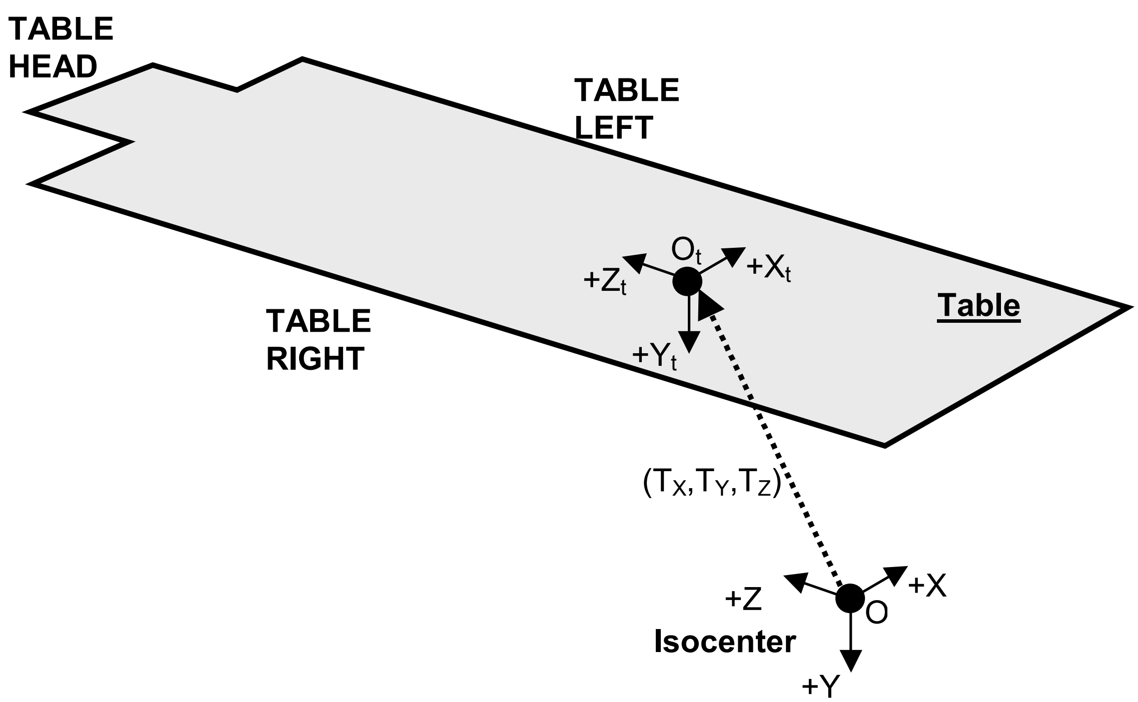


Figure C.8.19.6-8
Table Translation with respect to the Isocenter Reference System

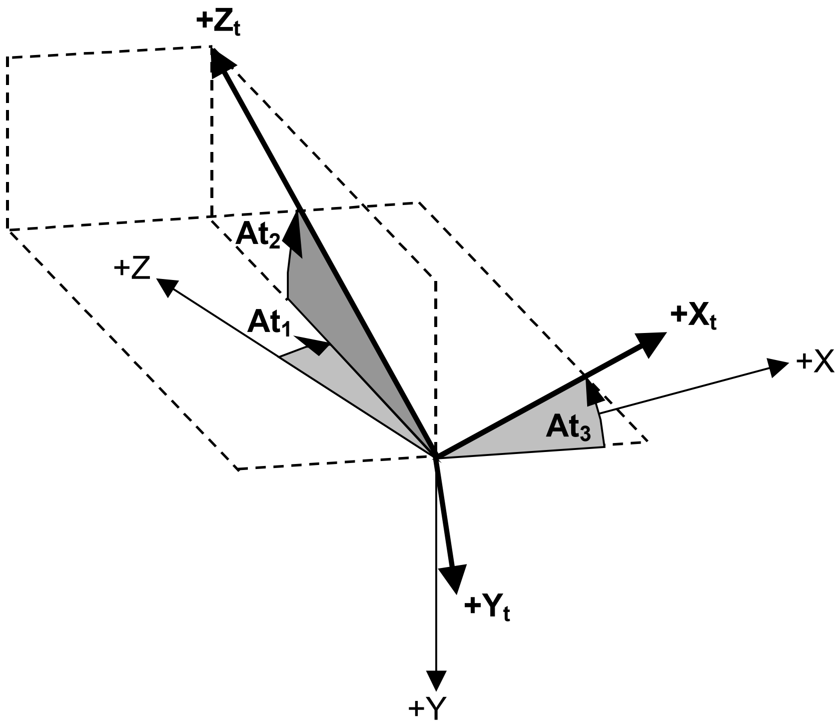


Figure C.8.19.6-9
Table Angulations with respect to the Isocenter Reference System

C.8.19.6.13.2 Relationship Patient Coordinate System

The Isocenter Reference System attributes allow expressing the positioner angulations (i.e. X-Ray Center Beam direction) as a vector in the table coordinate system. If the relationship between the X-ray table and the patient is known, it is possible to express any vector of the table coordinate system as a direction in the patient.

Therefore, the Isocenter Reference System attributes allow calculating the positioner angulations in the patient-based coordinate system if the following attributes are present:

- Patient Orientation Code Sequence (0054,0410)
- Patient Orientation Modifier Code Sequence (0054,0412)

Further, the Isocenter Reference System attributes allow calculating the patient anatomical directions (i.e. left, right, head, feet, anterior, posterior) of the rows and columns of the stored image, if the following attributes are present:

- Patient Orientation Code Sequence (0054,0410)
- Patient Orientation Modifier Code Sequence (0054,0412)
- Field of View Rotation (0018,7032)
- Field of View Horizontal Flip (0018,7034)

For registration purposes, a given point fixed in the patient (object of interest) that is defined in the table coordinate system can be expressed as row and column coordinates of the stored image if the relationship between the positioner coordinate system and the stored image is fully characterized. Therefore, the Isocenter Reference System attributes allow calculating the projection of a point of the patient as row and column coordinates of the stored image, if the following attributes are present:

- Frame of Reference UID (0020,0052) and must be equal for all images involved in the registration
- Field of View Rotation (0018,7032)
- Field of View Horizontal Flip (0018,7034)
- Imager Pixel Spacing (0018,1164)
- Distance Source to Isocenter (0018,9402)
- Distance Source to Detector (0018,1110)

In addition for a system equipped with a digit al detector the following attributes need to be present:

- Detector Element Spacing (0018,7022)
- Field of view Origin (0018,7030)
- Position of Isocenter Projection (0018,9430)

C.8.19.6.14 X-Ray Geometry Macro

Table C.8.19.6-14 specifies the attributes containing the X-Ray Geometry Functional Group macro.

Table C.8.19.6-14
X-RAY GEOMETRY MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
X-Ray Geometry Sequence	(0018,9476)	1	Sequence containing the geometric properties for this frame. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Distance Source to Isocenter	(0018,9402)	1	Distance from source to isocenter in mm.
>Distance Source to Detector	(0018,1110)	1	Distance from source to receptor plane perpendicular to the receptor plane in mm. Note: This value is traditionally referred to as Source Image Receptor Distance (SID).

C.8.19.7 XA/XRF Multi-frame Presentation Module

Table C.8.19.7-1 specifies the Attributes of a XA/XRF Multi-frame Presentation Image.

Table C.8.19.7-1
XA/XRF MULTI-FRAME PRESENTATION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Preferred Playback Sequencing	(0018,1244)	3	Describes the preferred playback sequencing for a multi-frame image. Enumerated Values: 0 = Looping (1,2...n,1,2,...n,1,2,....n,...) 1 = Sweeping (1,2,...n,n -1,...2,1,2,...n,...)
Frame Display Sequence	(0008,9458)	3	Sequence that specifies the display frame

			rate of a selected set of frames. The Items are ordered in increasing frame number. The range of the frames may not overlap and the ranges shall be adjacent. One or more items may be included.
>Start Trim	(0008,2142)	1	The Frame Number of the first frame of the set of frames to be displayed in this Item.
>Stop Trim	(0008,2143)	1	The Frame Number of the last frame of the set of frames to be displayed in this Item.
>Skip Frame Range Flag	(0008,9460)	1	A flag indicating that the range of frames in this item may be skipped. Defined Terms: DISPLAY SKIP
>Recommended Display Frame Rate in Float	(0008,9459)	1	Recommended rate at which the frames of this Item should be displayed in frames/second.
Recommended Viewing Mode	(0028,1090)	2	Specifies the recommended viewing protocol(s). Defined terms: SUB = subtraction with mask images NAT = native viewing of image as stored Note: If an implementation does not recognize the defined term for Recommended Viewing Mode (0028,1090), reverting to native display mode is recommended.
Display Filter Percentage	(0028,9411)	2	Edge enhancement filter percentage that is recommended by the pixel data creator as filter presetting for display purposes. The value of 100% corresponds to the maximum filter strength that can be applied by a specific application displaying the image.

C.8.20 Segmentation

This section describes the specific modules for the Segmentation IOD.

C.8.20.1 Segmentation Series Module

Table C.8.20-1 defines the general Attributes of the Segmentation Series Module.

Table C.8.20-1
SEGMENTATION SERIES MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Modality	(0008,0060)	1	Modality Type Enumerated Value: SEG
Series Number	(0020,0011)	1	A number that identifies this Series
Referenced Performed Procedure Step Sequence	(0008,1111)	1C	Uniquely identifies the Performed Procedure Step SOP Instance to which the Series is related (e.g. a Modality or General-Purpose Performed Procedure Step SOP). Only a single Item is permitted in this sequence. Required if the SOP Instance was created in a workflow managed with the Modality Performed Procedure Step SOP Class or General Purpose Performed Procedure Step SOP Class.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.

C.8.20.2 Segmentation Image Module

Table C.8.20-2 defines the general Attributes of the Segmentation Image Module.

Table C.8.20-2
SEGMENTATION IMAGE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Image Type	(0008,0008)	1	Value 1 shall be DERIVED. Value 2 shall be PRIMARY. No other values shall be present.
Include Content Identification Macro Table 10-12			
Samples Per Pixel	(0028,0002)	1	Enumerated Values: 1
Photometric Interpretation	(0028,0004)	1	Enumerated Values: MONOCHROME2
Pixel Representation	(0028,0103)	1	Enumerated Values: 0
Bits Allocated	(0028,0100)	1	If Segmentation Type (0062,0001) is BINARY, shall be 1. Otherwise it shall be 8. See Section C.8.20.2.1.
Bits Stored	(0028,0101)	1	If Segmentation Type (0062,0001) is BINARY, shall be 1. Otherwise it shall be 8. See Section C.8.20.2.1.

High Bit	(0028,0102)	1	If Segmentation Type (0062,0001) is BINARY, shall be 0. Otherwise it shall be 7. See Section C.8.20.2.1.
Lossy Image Compression	(0028,2110)	1	Specifies whether an Image has undergone lossy compression. Enumerated Values: 00 = Image has NOT been subjected to lossy compression. 01 = Image has been subjected to lossy compression. See Section C.8.20.2.2
Lossy Image Compression Ratio	(0028,2112)	1C	Describes the approximate lossy compression ratio(s) that have been applied to this image. See C.7.6.1.1.5 for further explanation. May be multivalued if successive lossy compression steps have been applied. Notes: 1. For example, a compression ratio of 30:1 would be described in this Attribute with a single value of 30. 2. For historical reasons, the lossy compression ratio may also be described in Derivation Description (0008,2111). Required if present in the source images or this IOD instance has been compressed.
Lossy Image Compression Method	(0028,2114)	1C	A label for the lossy compression method(s) that have been applied to this image. See C.7.6.1.1.5 for further explanation. May be multivalued if successive lossy compression steps have been applied; the value order shall correspond to the values of Lossy Image Compression Ratio (0028,2112). Note: For historical reasons, the lossy compression method may also be described in Derivation Description (0008,2111). Required if present in the source images or this IOD instance has been compressed. See section C.8.20.2.2.
Segmentation Type	(0062,0001)	1	The type of encoding used to indicate the presence of the segmented property at a pixel/voxel location. Enumerated Values are: BINARY FRACTIONAL See section C.8.20.2.3.

Segmentation Fractional Type	(0062,0010)	1C	For fractional segmentation encoding, the meaning of the fractional value. Enumerated Values are: PROBABILITY OCCUPANCY Required if Segmentation Type (0062,0001) is FRACTIONAL. See section C.8.20.2.3.
Maximum Fractional Value	(0062,000E)	1C	Specifies the value that represents 100%. There shall be no values in Pixel Data (7FE0,0010) greater than this value. Required if Segmentation Type (0062,0001) is FRACTIONAL.
Segment Sequence	(0062,0002)	1	Describes the segments that are contained within the data. One or more items shall be present.
>Segment Number	(0062,0004)	1	Identification number of the segment. The value of Segment Number (0062,0004) shall be unique within the Segmentation instance in which it is created. See C.8.20.2.4.
>Segment Label	(0062,0005)	1	User-defined label identifying this segment. This may be the same as the Code Meaning (0008,0104) of the Segmented Property Type Code Sequence (0062,000F).
>Segment Description	(0062,0006)	3	User-defined description for this segment.
>Segment Algorithm Type	(0062,0008)	1	Type of algorithm used to generate the segment. Enumerated Values are: AUTOMATIC: calculated segment SEMIAUTOMATIC: calculated segment with user assistance MANUAL: user-entered segment
>Segment Algorithm Name	(0062,0009)	1C	Name of algorithm used to generate the segment. Required if Segment Algorithm Type (0062,0008) is not MANUAL.
>Include 'General Anatomy Mandatory Macro' Table 10-5			
>Segmented Property Category Code Sequence	(0062,0003)	1	Sequence defining the general category of this segment. This sequence shall contain a single item.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 7150.*	
>Segmented Property Type Code Sequence	(0062,000F)	1	Sequence defining the specific property type of this segment. This sequence shall contain a single item.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 7151.*	

>Recommended Display Grayscale Value	(0062,000C)	3	A default single gray unsigned value in which it is recommended that the maximum pixel value in this segment be rendered on a monochrome display. The units are specified in P-Values from a minimum of 0000H (black) up to a maximum of FFFFH (white). Note: The maximum P-Value for this Attribute may be different from the maximum P-Value from the output of the Presentation LUT, which may be less than 16 bits in depth.
>Recommended Display CIELab Value	(0062,000D)	3	A default triplet value in which it is recommended that segment be rendered on a color display. The units are specified in PCS-Values, and the value is encoded as CIELab. See C.10.7.1.1.

C.8.20.2.1 Bits Allocated and Bits Stored

As a consequence of the enumerated Bits Allocated and Bits Stored attribute values, single bit pixels shall be packed 8 to a byte as defined by the encoding rules in PS 3.5.

C.8.20.2.2 Lossy Image Compression and Lossy Image Compression Method

If Lossy Image Compression (0028,2110) in any of the source images is “01”, the value shall be “01” for the Segmentation instance.

The process of segmentation itself is defined not to be lossy compression, even though it involves loss. If the Segmentation instance is encoded using a lossy compression transfer syntax, then the value shall be set to “01”.

Notes: It is not advisable to lossy compress a Segmentation SOP Instance. In particular, a binary segmentation should not be lossy compressed.

C.8.20.2.3 Segmentation Type and Segmentation Fractional Type

BINARY indicates the segmented property is present with a value of 1 and absent with a value of 0.

FRACTIONAL segmentation is defined as a value from zero to the Maximum Fractional Value (0062,000E). A FRACTIONAL segmentation shall be further specified via the Segmentation Fractional Type (0062,0010) attribute, with the following values:

PROBABILISTIC Defines the probability, as a percentage, that the segmented property occupies the spatial area defined by the voxel.

OCCUPANCY Defines the percentage of the voxel area occupied by the segmented property.

C.8.20.2.4 Segment Number

Segment Number (0062,0004) shall be unique within each instance, start at a value of 1, and increase monotonically by 1.

C.8.20.3 Segmentation Functional Group Macros

The following sections contain Functional Group macros specific to the Segmentation IOD.

Note: The attribute descriptions in the Functional Group Macros are written as if they were applicable to a single frame (i.e., the macro is part of the Per-frame Functional Groups Sequence). If an attribute is applicable to all frames (i.e. the macro is part of the Shared Functional Groups Sequence) the phrase “this frame” in the attribute description shall be interpreted to mean “for all frames”.

C.8.20.3.1 Segmentation Macro

Table C.8.20-3 specifies the attributes of the Segmentation Functional Group macro.

Table C.8.20-3
SEGMENTATION MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Segment Identification Sequence	(0062,000A)	1	Identifies the characteristics of this frame. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Referenced Segment Number	(0062,000B)	1	Uniquely identifies the segment described in the Segment Sequence (0062,0002) by reference to the Segment Number (0062,0004). Referenced Segment Number (0062,000B) shall not be multi-valued.

C.9 OVERLAYS

C.9.1 Overlay identification module

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.9.2 Overlay plane module

Table C.9-2 contains Attributes that describe characteristics of an Overlay Plane.

An Overlay Plane describes graphics or bit-mapped text that is associated with an Image. It may also describe a Region of Interest in an Image.

Each Overlay Plane is one bit deep. Sixteen separate Overlay Planes may be associated with an Image.

Overlay data is stored in Overlay Data (60xx,3000) . See the Section Repeating Groups in PS 3.5 for a description of permitted values of 60xx.

Note: Overlay data stored in unused bit planes of the Pixel Data (7FE0,0010) with Samples Per Pixel (0028,0002) of 1 was previously described in DICOM. This usage has now been retired. See PS 3.3 and PS 3.5 2004.

Attributes describing display of grayscale and color overlays were defined in a previous version of the DICOM Standard. These have now been retired. How an Overlay Plane is rendered is undefined; specifically there is no mechanism to specify with what color or intensity an Overlay Plane is to be displayed, except when rendered under the control of a Grayscale Softcopy Presentation State SOP Instance.

Table C.9-2
OVERLAY PLANE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Overlay Rows	(60xx,0010)	1	Number of Rows in Overlay.
Overlay Columns	(60xx,0011)	1	Number of Columns in Overlay.
Overlay Type	(60xx,0040)	1	Indicates whether this overlay represents a region of interest or other graphics. Enumerated Values: G = Graphics R = ROI.
Overlay Origin	(60xx,0050)	1	Location of first overlay point with respect to pixels in the image, given as row\column. The upper left pixel of the image has the coordinate 1\1. Column values greater than 1 indicate the overlay plane origin is to the right of the image origin. Row values greater than 1 indicate the overlay plane origin is below the image origin. Values less than 1 indicate the overlay plane origin is above or to the left of the image origin. Note: Values of 0\0 indicate that the overlay pixels start 1 row above and one column to the left of the image pixels.

Overlay Bits Allocated	(60xx,0100)	1	Number of Bits Allocated in the Overlay. Tthe value of this Attribute shall be 1. Note: Formerly the standard described embedding the overlay data in the Image Pixel Data (7FE0,0010), in which case the value of this Attribute was required to be the same as Bits Allocated (0028,0100). This usage has been retired. See PS 3.3 2004.
Overlay Bit Position	(60xx,0102)	1	The value of this Attribute shall be 0. Note: Formerly the standard described embedding the overlay data in the Image Pixel Data (7FE0,0010), in which case the value of this Attribute specified the bit in which the overlay was stored. This usage has been retired. See PS 3.3 2004.
Overlay Data	(60xx,3000)	1	Overlay pixel data. The order of pixels sent for each overlay is left to right, top to bottom, i.e., the upper left pixel is sent first followed by the remainder of the first row , followed by the first pixel of the 2nd row, then the remainder of the 2nd row and so on. Overlay data shall be contained in this Attribute . See C.9.2.1.1 for further explanation.
Overlay Description	(60xx,0022)	3	User-defined comments about the overlay.
Overlay Subtype	(60xx,0045)	3	Defined term which identifies the intended purpose of the Overlay Type. See C.9.2.1.3 for further explanation.
Overlay Label	(60xx,1500)	3	A user defined text string which may be used to label or name this overlay.
ROI Area	(60xx,1301)	3	Number of pixels in ROI area. See C.9.2.1.2 for further explanation.
ROI Mean	(60xx,1302)	3	ROI Mean. See C.9.2.1.2 for further explanation.
ROI Standard Deviation	(60xx,1303)	3	ROI standard deviation. See C.9.2.1.2 for further explanation.

C.9.2.1 Overlay Attribute Descriptions

C.9.2.1.1 Overlay type

There are two specific types of overlays. The type is specified in this Attribute.

A Region of Interest (ROI) is a specific use of an Overlay. The overlay bits corresponding to all the pixels included in the ROI shall be set to 1. All other bits are set to 0. This is used to specify an area of the image of particular interest.

A Graphics overlay may express reference marks, graphic annotation, or bit mapped text, etc. A Graphics overlay may be used to mark the boundary of a ROI. If this is the case and the ROI statistical parameters are used, they will only refer to the pixels under the boundaries, not those in the included regions.

The overlay bits corresponding to all the pixels included in the Graphics shall be set to 1. All other bits are set to 0.

C.9.2.1.2 ROI area, ROI mean, and ROI standard deviation

These Attributes contain the statistical parameters of the ROI. The values of these parameters are for the overlay pixel values set to 1.

C.9.2.1.3 Overlay Subtype

Two Defined Terms are specified:

USER - User created graphic annotation (e.g. operator)

AUTOMATED - Machine or algorithm generated graphic annotation, such as output of a Computer Assisted Diagnosis algorithm.

Note: Additional or alternative Defined Terms may be specified in modality specific Modules, such as in the Ultrasound Image Module, C.8.5.6.1.11.

C.9.3 Multi-frame Overlay Module

Table C.9-3 specifies the Attributes of a Multi-frame overlay.

Table C.9-3
MULTI-FRAME OVERLAY MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Number of Frames in Overlay	(60xx,0015)	1	Number of Frames in Overlay. Required if Overlay data contains multiple frames.
Image Frame Origin	(60xx,0051)	3	Frame number of Multi-frame Image to which this overlay applies; frames are numbered from 1.

C.9.3.1 Multi-Frame Overlay Attribute Descriptions

C.9.3.1.1 Number of frames in overlay

A Multi-frame Overlay is defined as an Overlay whose overlay data consists of a sequential set of individual Overlay frames. A Multi-frame Overlay is transmitted as a single contiguous stream of overlay data. Frame delimiters are not contained within the data stream.

Each individual frame shall be defined (and thus can be identified) by the Attributes in the Overlay Plane Module (see C.9.2).

The total number of frames contained within a Multi-frame Overlay is conveyed in the Number of Frames in Overlay (60xx,0015).

The frames within a Multi-frame Overlay shall be conveyed as a logical sequence. If Multi-frame Overlays are related to a Multi-frame Image, the order of the Overlay Frames are one to one with the order of the Image frames. Otherwise, no attribute is used to indicate the sequencing of the Overlay Frames. If Image Frame Origin (60xx,0051) is present, the Overlay frames are applied one to one to the Image frames, beginning at the indicated frame number**.** Otherwise, no attribute is used to indicated the sequencing of the Overlay Frames.

The Number of Frames in Overlay (60xx,0015) plus the Image Frame Origin (60xx,0051) minus 1 shall be less than or equal to the total number of frames in the Multi-frame Image.

If the Overlay data are embedded in the pixel data, then the Image Frame Origin (60xx,0051) must be 1 and the Number of Frames in Overlay (60xx,0015) must equal the number of frames in the Multi-frame Image.

C.9.4 Bi-Plane Overlay Module (Retired)

C.9.5 Basic Print Image Overlay Box Module

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.10 CURVE, GRAPHIC AND WAVEFORM

C.10.1 Curve identification module

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.10.2 Curve module

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.10.3 Audio module

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.10.4 Displayed Area Module

This Module describes Attributes required to define a Specified Displayed Area space.

The Specified Displayed Area is that portion of the image displayed on the device.

If Presentation Size Mode (0070,0100) is specified as SCALE TO FIT, then the specified area shall be displayed as large as possible within the available area on the display or window, i.e. magnified or minified if necessary to fit the display or window space available.

If Presentation Size Mode (0070,0100) is specified as TRUE SIZE, then the physical size of the rendered image pixels shall be the same on the screen as specified in Presentation Pixel Spacing (0070,0101).

If Presentation Size Mode (0070,0100) is specified as MAGNIFY, then the factor that shall be used to spatially interpolate image pixels to create pixels on the display is defined.

Note: If this factor is specified as 1.0, then one image pixel will correspond to one displayed pixel, and if the Specified Displayed Area is the entire image, and it fits on the display, then the number of displayed pixels will equal the number of image pixels.

In all modes, the actual area rendered on a display device may be greater than the Specified Display Area, if the ratio of rows and columns of the Specified Display Area differs from the ratio of rows and columns of the display device or window. The Displayed Area relative annotations specified in C.10.5 Graphic Annotation Module are rendered relative to the Specified Displayed Area, not the actual rendered displayed area.

Notes: 1. The content of a display outside the Specified Display Area is not defined. In particular no padding value (such as black) is specified.

2. In the TRUE SIZE and MAGNIFY modes, if the entire Specified Displayed Area is not visible, then display relative graphic annotations may be obscured.

This Module explicitly specifies the aspect ratio to be used to display the image, even if it is 1:1, and it may be different from that specified in the referenced image.

Notes: 1.Depending on the mode, the aspect ratio is either specified using the Presentation Pixel Aspect Ratio (0070,0102), or derived from the Presentation Pixel Spacing (0070,0101).

2. This explicit definition of aspect ratio implies that graphic objects that are specified relative to the Specified Display Area will not change their shape regardless of the size or shape of the presentation device (e.g. whether a landscape or portrait monitor is used).

3. The mechanism of interpolation, if necessary, is not specified.

4. The image may need to be cropped and scroll bars or a panning mechanism provided in order to provide access to sections of the image that do not fit within the available area on the display or window.

Table C.10-4
DISPLAYED AREA MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Displayed Area Selection Sequence	(0070,005A)	1	A sequence of Items each of which describes the displayed area selection for a group of images or frames. Sufficient Items shall be present to describe every image and frame listed in the Presentation State Module. One or more Items shall be present.
>Referenced Image Sequence	(0008,1140)	1C	Sequence of Repeating Items where each Item provides reference to a selected set of Image SOP Class/SOP Instance pairs that are defined in the Presentation State Module. Required if a sequence item is present, and if the displayed area selection in this Item does not apply to all the images listed in the Presentation State Module.
>>Include 'Image SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table 10-3			
>Displayed Area Top Left Hand Corner	(0070,0052)	1	The top left (after spatial transformation) pixel in the referenced image to be displayed, given as column\row. Column is the horizontal (before spatial transformation) offset (X) and row is the vertical (before spatial transformation) offset (Y) relative to the origin of the pixel data before spatial transformation, which is 1\1. See Figure C.10.4-1.
>Displayed Area Bottom Right Hand Corner	(0070,0053)	1	The bottom right (after spatial transformation) pixel in the referenced image to be displayed, given as column\row. Column is the horizontal (before spatial transformation) offset (X) and row is the vertical (before spatial transformation) offset (Y) relative to the origin of the pixel data before spatial transformation, which is 1\1. See Figure C.10.4-1.
>Presentation Size Mode	(0070,0100)	1	Manner of selection of display size. Enumerated Values: SCALE TO FIT TRUE SIZE MAGNIFY See C.10.4 for further explanation.
>Presentation Pixel Spacing	(0070,0101)	1C	Physical distance between the center of each pixel in the referenced image (before spatial transformation), specified by a numeric pair – adjacent row spacing (delimiter) adjacent column spacing in mm. See 10.7.1.3 for further explanation of the

			value order. Notes: 1. This value may be different from Pixel Spacing (0028,0030) or Imager Pixel Spacing (0018,1164) specified in the referenced image, which are ignored, since some form of calibration may have been performed (for example by reference to an object of known size in the image). 2. If the row and column spacing are different, then the pixel aspect ratio of the image is not 1:1. Required if Presentation Size Mode (0070,0100) is TRUE SIZE, in which case the values will correspond to the physical distance between the center of each pixel on the display device. May be present if Presentation Size Mode (0070,0100) is SCALE TO FIT or MAGNIFY, in which case the values are used to compute the aspect ratio of the image pixels.
>Presentation Pixel Aspect Ratio	(0070,0102)	1C	Ratio of the vertical size and the horizontal size of the pixels in the referenced image, to be used to display the referenced image, specified by a pair of integer values where the first value is the vertical pixel size and the second value is the horizontal pixel size. See C.7.6.3.1.7. Required if Presentation Pixel Spacing (0070,0101) is not present. Notes: 1. This value may be different from the aspect ratio specified by Pixel Aspect Ratio (0028,0034) in the referenced image, or implied by the values of Pixel Spacing (0028,0030) or Imager Pixel Spacing (0018,1164) specified in the referenced image, which are ignored. 2. This value must be specified even if the aspect ratio is 1:1.
>Presentation Pixel Magnification Ratio	(0070,0103)	1C	Ratio of displayed pixels to source pixels, specified in one dimension. Required if Presentation Size Mode (0070,0100) is MAGNIFY. Notes: 1. A value of 1.0 would imply that one pixel in the referenced image would be displayed as one pixel on the display (i.e. it would not be interpolated if the aspect ratio of the image pixels is 1:1). 2. A value of 2.0 would imply that one pixel in the referenced image

			would be displayed as 4 pixels on the display (i.e. up-sampled by a factor of 2 in each of the row and column directions). 3. A value of 0.5 would imply that 4 pixels in the referenced image would be displayed as 1 pixel on the display (i.e. down-sampled by a factor of 2 in each of the row and column directions). 4. If the source pixels have an aspect ratio of other than 1:1, then they are assumed to have been interpolated to a display pixel aspect ratio of 1:1 prior to magnification.

Notes: 1. In scale to fit mode, the Displayed Area Top Left Hand Corner (TLHC)and Bottom Right Hand Corner (BRHC) have the effect of defining how any zoom or magnification and/or pan has been applied to select a region of an image to be displayed (the Specified Displayed Area), without assuming anything about the size of the actual display.

2. The TLHC and BRHC may be outside the boundaries of the image pixel data (e.g. the TLHC may be 0 or negative, or the BRHC may be greater than Rows or Columns), allowing minification or placement of the image pixel data within a larger Specified Displayed Area. There is no provision to position a zoomed selected sub-area of the image pixel data within a larger Specified Displayed Area.

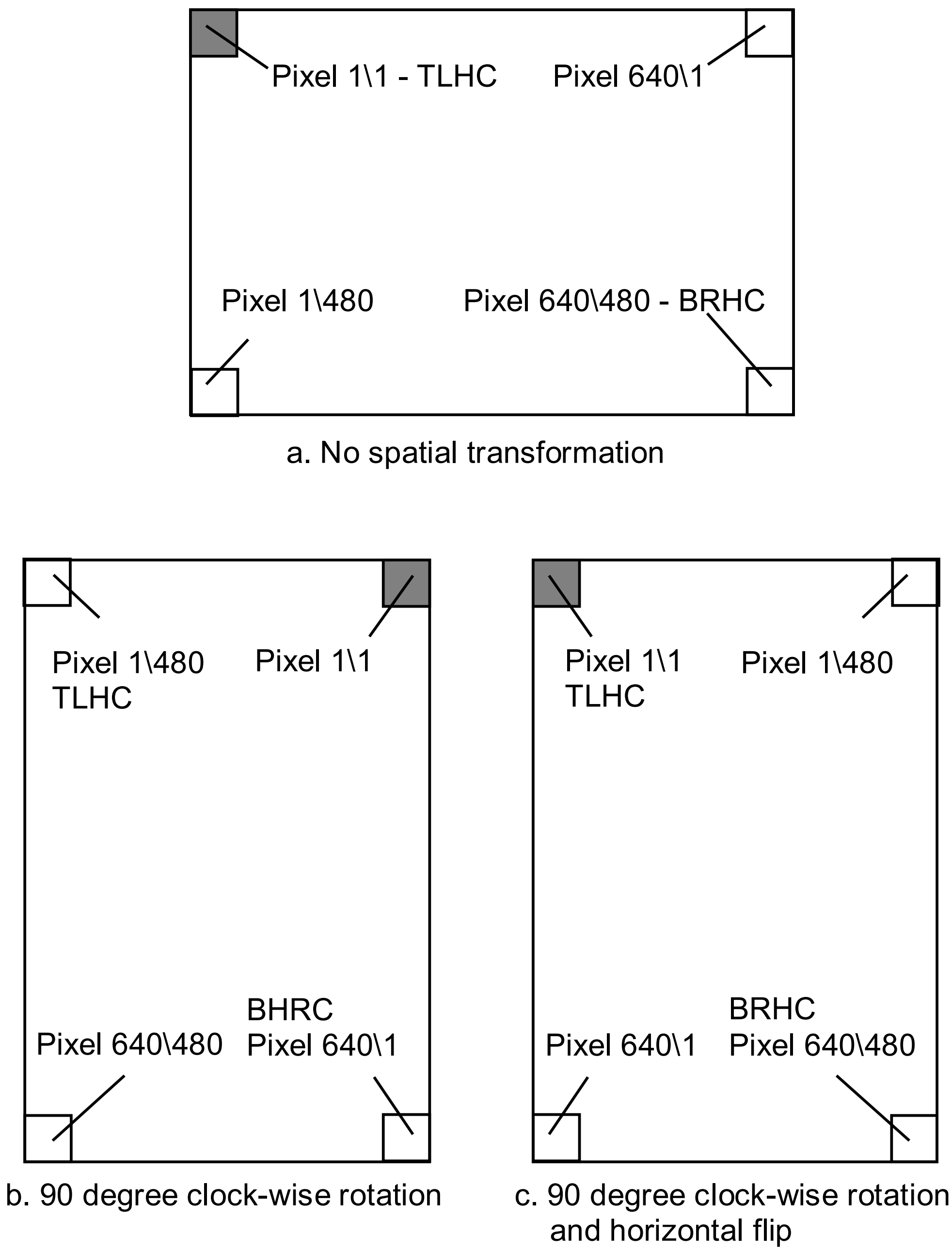


Figure C.10.4-1
Example of displayed area selection addressing of pixels
before and after spatial transformation

C.10.5 Graphic Annotation Module

This Module defines Attributes of vector graphics and text annotation that shall be made available by a display device to be applied to an image. The graphics and text are defined in position and size relative to the image pixel coordinates or the Specified Displayed Area space (defined in C.10.4 Displayed Area Module). A Graphic Annotation shall be related to an Image.

Note: This Module uses a Sequence of Items rather than a Repeating Group to avoid limiting the maximum number of annotation items that may be present. The use of a Repeating Group would limit the number of items to 16. The use of Repeating Groups is also noted in PS 3.5 to be deprecated.

Table C.10-5
GRAPHIC ANNOTATION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Graphic Annotation Sequence	(0070,0001)	1	A sequence of Items each of which represents a group of annotations composed of graphics or text or both. One or more Items shall be present.
>Referenced Image Sequence	(0008,1140)	1C	Sequence of Repeating Items where each Item provides reference to a selected set of Image SOP Class/SOP Instance pairs that are defined in the Presentation State Module. Required if a sequence item is present, and if graphic annotations in this Item do not apply to all the images listed in the Presentation State Module.
>>Include 'Image SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table 10-3			
>Graphic Layer	(0070,0002)	1	The layer defined in the Graphic Layer Module C.10.7 in which the graphics or text is to be rendered.
>Text Object Sequence	(0070,0008)	1C	Sequence that describes a text annotation. One or more Items may be present. Either one or both of Text Object Sequence (0070,0008) or Graphic Object Sequence (0070,0009) are required if the Sequence Item is present.
>>Bounding Box Annotation Units	(0070,0003)	1C	Units of measure for the axes of the text bounding box. Defines whether or not the annotation is Image or Displayed Area relative. Both dimensions shall have the same units. Enumerated Values: PIXEL = Image relative position specified with sub-pixel resolution such that the origin at the Top Left Hand Corner (TLHC) of the TLHC pixel is 0.0\0.0, the Bottom Right Hand Corner (BRHC) of the TLHC pixel is 1.0\1.0, and the BRHC of the BRHC pixel is Columns\Rows (see figure C.10.5-1). The values must be within the

			range 0\0 to Columns\Rows. DISPLAY = Fraction of Specified Displayed Area where 0.0\0.0 is the TLHC and 1.0\1.0 is the BRHC. The values must be within the range 0.0 to 1.0. Required if Bounding Box Top Left Hand Corner (0070,0010) or Bounding Box Bottom Right Hand Corner (0070,0011) is present.
>>Anchor Point Annotation Units	(0070,0004)	1C	Units of measure for the axes of the text anchor point annotation. Enumerated Values for Anchor Point Annotation Units (0070,0004) are the same as for Bounding Box Annotation Units (0070,0003). Required if Anchor Point (0070,0014) is present.
>>Unformatted Text Value	(0070,0006)	1	Text data which is unformatted and whose manner of display within the defined bounding box or relative to the specified anchor point is implementation dependent. See C.10.5.1.1. The text value may contain spaces, as well as multiple lines separated by either LF, CR, CR LF or LF CR, but otherwise no format control characters (such as horizontal or vertical tab and form feed) shall be present, even if permitted by the Value Representation of ST. The text shall be interpreted as specified by Specific Character Set (0008,0005) if present in the SOP Common Module. Note: The text may contain single or multi-byte characters and use code extension techniques as described in PS 3.5 if permitted by the values of Specific Character Set (0008,0005).
>>Bounding Box Top Left Hand Corner	(0070,0010)	1C	Location of the Top Left Hand Corner (TLHC) of the bounding box in which Unformatted Text Value (0070,0006) is to be displayed, in Bounding Box Annotation Units (0070,0003), given as column\row. Column is the horizontal offset and row is the vertical offset. Required if Anchor Point (0070,0014) is not present.
>>Bounding Box Bottom Right Hand Corner	(0070,0011)	1C	Location of the Bottom Right Hand Corner (BRHC) of the bounding box in which Unformatted Text Value (0070,0006) is to be displayed, in Bounding Box Annotation Units (0070,0003), given as column\row.

			Column is the horizontal offset and row is the vertical offset. Required if Anchor Point (0070,0014) is not present.
>>Bounding Box Text Horizontal Justification	(0070,0012)	1C	Location of the text relative to the vertical edges of the bounding box. Enumerated Values: LEFT = closest to left edge RIGHT = closest to right edge CENTER = centered Required if Bounding Box Top Left Hand Corner (0070,0010) is present.
>>Anchor Point	(0070,0014)	1C	Location of a point in the image or Specified Displayed Area to which the Unformatted Text Value (0070,0006) is related, in Anchor Point Annotation Units (0070,0004), given as column\row. Column is the horizontal offset and row is the vertical offset. Required if Bounding Box Top Left Hand Corner (0070,0010) and Bounding Box Bottom Right Hand Corner (0070,0011) are not present. May be present even if a bounding box is specified (i.e. Bounding Box Top Left Hand Corner (0070,0010) and Bounding Box Bottom Right Hand Corner (0070,0011) are present).
>>Anchor Point Visibility	(0070,0015)	1C	Flag to indicate whether or not a visible indication (such as a line or arrow) of the relationship between the text and the anchor point is to be displayed. Enumerated Values: Y = yes N = no Required if Anchor Point (0070,0014) is present.
>Graphic Object Sequence	(0070,0009)	1C	Sequence that describes a graphic annotation. One or more Items may be present. Either one or both of Text Object Sequence (0070,0008) or Graphic Object Sequence (0070,0009) are required if the Sequence Item is present.
>>Graphic Annotation Units	(0070,0005)	1	Units of measure for the axes of the graphic annotation. Enumerated Values for Graphic Annotation Units (0070,0005) are the same as for Bounding Box Annotation Units (0070,0003).

>>Graphic Dimensions	(0070,0020)	1	Enumerated Value: 2
>>Number of Graphic Points	(0070,0021)	1	Number of data points in this graphic.
>> Graphic Data	(0070,0022)	1	Coordinates that specify this graphic annotation. See C.10.5.1.2 for further explanation.
>>Graphic Type	(0070,0023)	1	The shape of graphic that is to be drawn. See C.10.5.1.2. Enumerated Values: POINT POLYLINE INTERPOLATED CIRCLE ELLIPSE
>>Graphic Filled	(0070,0024)	1C	Whether or not the closed graphics element is displayed as filled (in some unspecified manner that shall be distinguishable from an outline) or as an outline. See C.10.5.1.2. Enumerated Values: Y = yes N = no Required if Graphic Data (0070,0022) is “closed”, that is Graphic Type (0070,0023) is CIRCLE or ELLIPSE, or Graphic Type (0070,0023) is POLYLINE or INTERPOLATED and the first data point is the same as the last data point.

C.10.5.1 Graphic Annotation Attribute Descriptions

C.10.5.1.1 Unformatted Text Value

The text shall be displayed if any part of the bounding box or anchor point is within the Specified Display Area.

The text need not be confined to within the bounding box, but shall be rendered in a direction from the Top Left Hand Corner (TLHC) of the bounding box to the Bottom Right Hand Corner (BRHC) of the bounding box, even if these coordinates have been specified in an image relative space and then transformed (rotated, flipped or scaled).

Notes: 1. An implementation may render text outside the confines of the bounding box if necessary to display all the specified text.

2. Alternatively, an implementation may choose to render the text in a scrolling box, or a link to another fixed or popup window as appropriate.

Whether the contents of the bounding box completely opacify the underlying image or whether the box is “transparent” is undefined.

Notes: 1. For example, an implementation may choose an “exclusive or” style opacification to be sure that the text is discernible over light and dark portions of the image.

2. Commonly, the region of the bounding box around the text will be rendered “transparently”, i.e. the image will be visible, though some implementations may choose to opacify the bounding box behind the text to improve its readability.

An alternative to specifying a bounding box, is to specify an Anchor Point (0070,0014), i.e. some point in an image or Specified Displayed Area that is related to the text. The semantics of this relationship, and the manner of positioning or linking the text to this point, are unspecified.

Notes: 1. For example, a description of a feature may be linked to a point in the image, and when that image is displayed, if it is magnified and panned, the rendered text (and any arrow or line drawn in response to Anchor Point Visibility (0070,0015)) might be repositioned as appropriate so as not to be cropped out of the Specified Displayed Area.

2. As another example, the text could be rendered in a pop-up window when a hypertext link flagged on the displayed image at the location of the Anchor Point (0070,0014) is selected.

3. The bounding box and anchor point need not be defined with the same axis units, i.e. one can be image pixel relative, and the other displayed area relative.

The size, font and rotation of the individual rendered text characters are unspecified.

C.10.5.1.2 Graphic Data and Graphic Type

Graphic Data (0070,0022) contains the points in the graphic annotation, each dimension for the first point, followed by dimensions for second point, etc. For a two dimensional curve: X1, Y1, X2, Y2, etc. The first (X) dimension corresponds to the image or Specified Displayed Area column (horizontal offset), and the second (Y) dimension corresponds to the image or Specified Displayed Area row (vertical offset). The Value Representation of all components of the N-tuple shall be the same. The image or Specified Displayed Area relative drawing space is defined in Graphic Annotation Units (0070,0005).

If Graphic Type (0070,0023) is POINT, then two values (one point) shall be specified and the single point specified is to be drawn.

If Graphic Type (0070,0023) is POLYLINE, then the points are to be interpreted as an n-tuple list of end points between which straight lines are to be drawn.

If Graphic Type (0070,0023) is INTERPOLATED, then the points are to be interpreted as an n-tuple list of end points between which some form of implementation dependent curved lines are to be drawn. The rendered line shall pass through all the specified points.

If Graphic Type (0070,0023) is CIRCLE, then exactly two points shall be present; the first point is to be interpreted as the center and the second point as a point on the circumference of a circle, some form of implementation dependent representation of which is to be drawn.

If Graphic Type (0070,0023) is ELLIPSE, then exactly four points shall be present; the first two points are to be interpreted as the endpoints of the major axis and the second two points as the endpoints of the minor axis of an ellipse, some form of implementation dependent representation of which is to be drawn.

The notion of “open” or “closed” has no inherent meaning in the context of an arbitrary graphic, other than in the condition for the presence of Graphic Filled (0070,0024). The graphic has no semantic notion of an associated observation such as a region of interest, except that which the unformatted text in the same Item may describe.

The choice of pixel value used to represent the graphic on a display is defined in the Graphic Layer Module C.10.7.

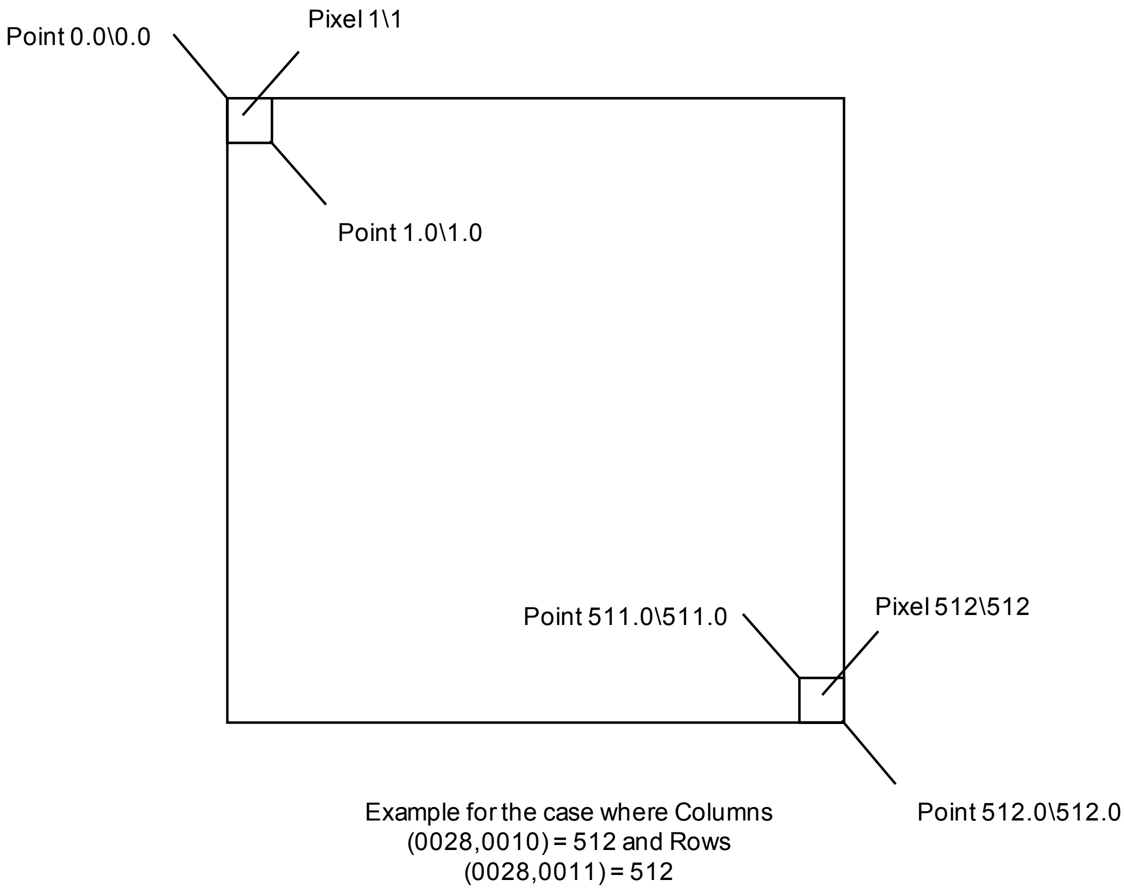


Figure C.10.5-1
Sub-pixel Addressing Units in PIXEL Space

C.10.6 Spatial Transformation Module

This Module defines a manner of rotating an image by increments of ninety degrees and flipping an image.

Table C.10-6
SPATIAL TRANSFORMATION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Image Rotation	(0070,0042)	1	How far to rotate the image clockwise in degrees, before any Image Horizontal Flip (0070,0041) is applied. Enumerated Values: 0, 90,180,270 Notes: Negative values are not permitted since the Value Representation is unsigned.
Image Horizontal Flip	(0070,0041)	1	Whether or not to flip the image horizontally after any Image Rotation has been applied such that the left side of the image becomes the right side.

			Enumerated Values: Y = yes, N = no Note: No vertical flip is specified since the same result can be achieved by a combination of a 180 degree rotation and a horizontal flip.

Note: Given the definition of the Grayscale Transformation Sequence in PS 3.4, it is apparent that the rotation, flipping and magnification will be applied AFTER the application of any bit-mapped overlays or graphic annotations that are specified in the image pixel spaces, but BEFORE the application of graphic annotations that apply in the Specified Displayed Area relative space.

C.10.7 Graphic Layer Module

This Module defines the characteristics of the layers in which overlays, graphic and text may be rendered.

Layers group together graphics which are related. It is recommended that a layer be displayed such that it may be distinguished from other layers that have a different value for Graphic Layer Order (0070,0062).

Note: The transparency, opacity, and any other interaction (such as exclusive or) with underlying layers or image data are not specified and are at the discretion of the implementation.

Table C.10-7
GRAPHIC LAYER MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Graphic Layer Sequence	(0070,0060)	1	A sequence of Items each of which represents a single layer in which overlays, curves, graphics or text may be rendered. An Item is required for each layer referenced from the Graphic Annotation Module or the Overlay Activation Module.
>Graphic Layer	(0070,0002)	1	A string which identifies the layer. Note: This identifier may be used by other Attributes within the same presentation state instance to reference this layer. There is no requirement for the same identifiers to be used in different presentation states, and there is no mechanism for referencing layers in other presentation states. That is, a UID is not required.
>Graphic Layer Order	(0070,0062)	1	An integer indicating the order in which it is recommended that the layer be rendered, if the display is capable of distinguishing. Lower numbered layers are to be rendered first.
>Graphic Layer Recommended Display Grayscale Value	(0070,0066)	3	A default single gray unsigned value in which it is recommended that the layer be rendered on a monochrome display. The units are specified in P-Values from a minimum of 0000H (black) up to a maximum of FFFFH (white). Note: The maximum P-Value for this Attribute may be different from the maximum P-Value from the output of the Presentation LUT, which may be less than 16 bits in depth.
>Graphic Layer Recommended Display CIELab Value	(0070,0401)	3	A default color triplet value in which it is recommended that the layer be rendered on a color display. The units are specified in PCS-Values, and the value is encoded as CIELab. See C.10.7.1.1.
>Graphic Layer Description	(0070,0068)	3	A free text description of the contents of this layer.

Note: Graphic Layer Recommended Display RGB Value (0070,0067) was previously used in this Module, but has been retired and its function replaced by Graphic Layer Recommended Display CIELab Value (0070,0401). See PS 3.3 2004.

C.10.7.1 Graphic Layer Module Attributes

C.10.7.1.1 Encoding of CIELab Values

Attributes such as Graphic Layer Recommended Display CIELab Value (0070,0401) consist of three unsigned short values:

- An L value linearly scaled to 16 bits, such that 0x0000 corresponds to an L of 0.0, and 0xFFFF corresponds to an L of 100.0.
- An a* then a b* value, each linearly scaled to 16 bits and offset to an unsigned range, such that 0x0000 corresponds to an a* or b* of -128.0, 0x8080 corresponds to an a* or b* of 0.0 and 0xFFFF corresponds to an a* or b* of 127.0

Note: This is the same form of encoding as used for the PCS in ICC Profiles.

C.10.8 Waveform Identification Module

The table in this section contains Attributes that identify a Waveform as a separate information entity.

Table C.10-8
Waveform Identification Module Attributes

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Instance Number	(0020,0013)	1	A number that identifies this Waveform.
Content Date	(0008,0023)	1	The date the Waveform data was created.
Content Time	(0008,0033)	1	The time the Waveform data was created.
Acquisition Datetime	(0008,002A)	1	The date and time that the acquisition of data that resulted in this waveform started; the reference timestamp for the Multiplex Group Time Offset (0018,1068) for a waveform multiplex group Note: The synchronization of this time with an external clock is specified in the Synchronization Module in Acquisition Time Synchronized (0018,1800).
Referenced Instance Sequence	(0008,114A)	3	A sequence which provides reference to a set of SOP Class/Instance pairs significantly related to this Waveform. One or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.
>Purpose of Reference Code Sequence	(0040,A170)	3	Code describing the purpose of the reference to the Instance(s). Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Defined Context ID is CID 7004 for referenced waveforms.*	

Note: The Acquisition Datetime (0008,002A) is the time of the original waveform data capture. Derived waveforms which are processed (e.g., averaged or filtered) and encoded subsequent to the waveform Acquisition Datetime have a Content Date (0008,0023) and Content Time (0008,0033) representing the time of the processing. In all cases the actual date and time of creation of the SOP Instance for transmission or storage may be recorded in the Instance Creation Date (0008,0012) and Instance Creation Time (0008,0013) (see Section C.12.1).

C.10.9 Waveform Module

The table in this section contains Attributes that describe a time-based waveform. A waveform consists of one or more multiplex groups, each encoded into an Item in the Waveform Sequence.

All channels within a multiplex group are synchronously digitized at a common sampling frequency.

Table C.10-9
Waveform Module Attributes

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Waveform Sequence	(5400,0100)	1	Sequence of one or more Items, each representing one waveform multiplex group. Ordering of Items in this Sequence is significant for external reference to specific multiplex groups.
> Multiplex Group Time Offset	(0018,1068)	1C	Offset time in milliseconds from a reference time (see C.10.9.1.1). Required if Acquisition Time Synchronized (0018,1800) value is Y; may be present otherwise.
> Trigger Time Offset	(0018,1069)	1C	Offset time in milliseconds from a synchronization trigger to the first sample of a waveform multiplex group. May be positive or negative. Required if waveform acquisition is synchronized to a trigger.
> Trigger Sample Position	(0018,106E)	3	Sample number whose time corresponds to a synchronization trigger (see C.10.9.1.2).
> Waveform Originality	(003A,0004)	1	See C.10.9.1.3. Enumerated values: ORIGINAL DERIVED
> Number of Waveform Channels	(003A,0005)	1	Number of channels for this multiplex group.
> Number of Waveform Samples	(003A,0010)	1	Number of samples per channel in this multiplex group.
> Sampling Frequency	(003A,001A)	1	Frequency in Hz
> Multiplex Group Label	(003A,0020)	3	Label for multiplex group
> Channel Definition Sequence	(003A,0200)	1	Sequence of one or more Items, with one Item per channel (see C.10.9.1.4). Ordering of Items in this Sequence is significant for reference to specific channels.
>> Waveform Channel Number	(003A,0202)	3	Equipment physical channel number used for acquisition.
>> Channel Label	(003A,0203)	3	Text label for channel which may be used for display purposes
>> Channel Status	(003A,0205)	3	One or more values for the status of this channel within this SOP Instance. Defined terms: OK TEST DATA DISCONNECTED QUESTIONABLE INVALID UNCALIBRATED UNZEROED Precise location of a change in status may be noted in an Annotation.

>> Channel Source Sequence	(003A,0208)	1	A coded descriptor of the waveform channel source (metric, anatomical position, function, and technique). Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence. (See C.10.9.1.4.1)
>>> Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1.			Baseline Context ID determined by IOD specialization
>> Channel Source Modifiers Sequence	(003A,0209)	1C	Sequence of one or more Items which further qualify the Waveform Source. Required if Channel Source Sequence (003A,0208) does not fully specify the semantics of the source. Ordering of Items in this Sequence may be semantically significant.
>>> Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1.			Baseline Context ID determined by IOD specialization
>> Source Waveform Sequence	(003A,020A)	3	A sequence which provides reference to a DICOM waveform from which this channel was derived. One or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>>>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1C	Identifies the referenced SOP Class. Required if a Sequence Item is present.
>>>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1C	Identifies the referenced SOP Instance. Required if a Sequence Item is present.
>>> Referenced Waveform Channels	(0040,A0B0)	1C	Identifies the waveform multiplex group and channel within the referenced SOP Instance. Pair of values (M,C). Required if a Sequence Item is present.
>> Channel Derivation Description	(003A,020C)	3	Additional description of waveform channel derivation
>> Channel Sensitivity	(003A,0210)	1C	Nominal numeric value of unit quantity of sample. Required if samples represent defined (not arbitrary) units.
>> Channel Sensitivity Units Sequence	(003A,0211)	1C	A coded descriptor of the Units of measure for the Channel Sensitivity. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence. (see C.10.9.1.4.2) Required if Channel Sensitivity (003A,0210) is present.
>>> Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1.			Defined Context ID = 3082
>> Channel Sensitivity Correction Factor	(003A,0212)	1C	Multiplier to be applied to encoded sample values to match units specified in Channel Sensitivity (003A,0210) (e.g., based on calibration data) (see C.10.9.1.4.2) Required if Channel Sensitivity (003A,0210) is present.
>> Channel Baseline	(003A,0213)	1C	Offset of encoded sample value 0 from actual 0 using the units defined in the Channel Sensitivity Units Sequence (003A,0211). Required if Channel Sensitivity (003A,0210) is present.
>> Channel Time Skew	(003A,0214)	1C	Offset of first sample of channel from waveform multiplex group start time, in seconds (see C.10.9.1.4.3) Required if Channel Sample Skew is not present.
>> Channel Sample Skew	(003A,0215)	1C	Offset of first sample of channel from waveform multiplex group start time, in samples (see C.10.9.1.4.3) Required if Channel Time Skew is not present.

>> Channel Offset	(003A,0218)	3	Additional offset of first sample of channel to be used in aligning multiple channels for presentation or analysis, in seconds (see C.10.9.1.4.3)
>> Waveform Bits Stored	(003A,021A)	1	Number of significant bits within the waveform samples (see C.10.9.1.4.4)
>> Filter Low Frequency	(003A,0220)	3	Nominal 3dB point of lower frequency of pass band; in Hz
>> Filter High Frequency	(003A,0221)	3	Nominal 3dB point of upper frequency of pass band; in Hz
>> Notch Filter Frequency	(003A,0222)	3	Center frequency of notch filter(s); in Hz
>> Notch Filter Bandwidth	(003A,0223)	3	Nominal 3dB bandwidth of notch filter(s); in Hz
>> Channel Minimum Value	(5400,0110)	3	Minimum valid sample value as limited by the acquisition equipment (see C.10.9.1.4.5)
>> Channel Maximum Value	(5400,0112)	3	Maximum valid sample value as limited by the acquisition equipment (see C.10.9.1.4.5)
> Waveform Bits Allocated	(5400,1004)	1	Size of each waveform data sample within the Waveform Data; see section C.10.9.1.5
> Waveform Sample Interpretation	(5400,1006)	1	Data representation of the waveform data points. See C.10.9.1.5.
> Waveform Padding Value	(5400,100A)	1C	Value of waveform samples inserted in channels when input is absent or invalid. Required if acquisition equipment inserts padding. See C.10.9.1.6.
> Waveform Data	(5400,1010)	1	Encoded data samples - channel multiplexed See section C.10.9.1.7

C.10.9.1 Waveform Attribute Descriptions

C.10.9.1.1 Multiplex Group Time Offset

Multiplex Group Time Offset (0018,1068) specifies the offset time in milliseconds from a reference time to the first sample of the multiplex group. The reference time is the Acquisition Datetime (0008,002A), if present in the SOP Instance.

In all other cases, the offset is from an arbitrary reference time that is the same for all Multiplex Groups in the SOP Instance; i.e., the Multiplex Group Time Offset allows only relative time synchronization between Multiplex Groups in the SOP Instance. The arbitrary reference time may nominally be assumed to be the Content Time (0008,0033).

C.10.9.1.2 Trigger Sample Position

The Trigger Sample Position (0018,106E) specifies the sample which was digitized at the same time as a synchronization trigger. Sample positions are enumerated by channel, with the first sample enumerated 1. This provides a single trigger sample location for all channels of the multiplex group. Although channels may not have been sampled synchronously (as specified by Channel Time Skew or Channel Sample Skew), for the purpose of determining the location of the trigger with an integer value position, all channels are considered to be synchronous.

C.10.9.1.3 Waveform Originality

Waveform Originality (003A,0004) shall have the value ORIGINAL if the Waveform Data samples are the original or source data, and shall have the value DERIVED if the Waveform Data samples have been derived in some manner from the sample data of other waveforms.

Notes : 1. The Waveform Originality (003A,0004) attribute is comparable to the Image Type (0008,0008) attribute value 1 (see C.7.6.1.1.2). Within a single Multiplex Group, all channels shall have the same Originality value.

2. Waveform data which has been transcoded from a non-DICOM format may have Waveform Originality value ORIGINAL if the samples are unchanged from the originally acquired waveform samples.

C.10.9.1.4 Channel Definition Sequence

C.10.9.1.4.1 Channel Source and Modifiers

Channel Source Sequence (003A,0208) identifies the metric (quality being measured, e.g., voltage or pressure), the anatomical position of the sensor or probe, the function of the channel (e.g., measurement or stimulus), and any particulars of technique which affect those parameters (e.g., pull-back across multiple anatomic sites, or differential input from two distinct sites). If the full semantics of the source is not carried in a single coded entry (e.g., if it specifies the location but not the metric), additional qualifiers are identified in Channel Source Modifiers Sequence (003A,0209) coded entries.

When a single sensor channel is used to collect a waveform from two (or more) anatomic sites, e.g., in hemodynamic pull-back procedures, multiple Channel Source Modifier items will identify the sequence of sites, if not encoded in the semantics of the Channel Source Coded Entry. Transition times from one site to another may be indicated with an Annotation, or pull-back rate may be indicated with an Acquisition Context Sequence Item (see Section C.7.6.14).

The Baseline (default) Context IDs are defined by IOD in accordance with Section A.34. Restrictions in the IOD may also determine the pattern of specification of the waveform source, i.e., which item is to be encoded in the Channel Source sequence, and the order in which Channel Source Modifier items are to be encoded. Unless otherwise specified, pattern of specification of the waveform source shall be:

1. If the function of the channel is not measurement, the function (and optionally additional parameters of the channel source) shall be encoded in the Channel Source item.

2. If the function of the channel is measurement of a waveform originating in the patient (the implicit default function), the metric (and optionally additional parameters of the channel source) shall be encoded in the Channel Source item.

3. If not encoded in the Channel Source item, and a particular technique needs to be encoded, that technique shall be encoded in the first Channel Source Modifier item.

Note: For example, an intracardiac measurement of a pressure waveform across the mitral valve by means of a catheter pullback may be encoded in one of the following three ways (using pseudo-coded terminology), depending on the availability of coded terms with sufficient expressive power:

Channel Source	Channel Source Modifiers
X-2311 "pressure measurement"	T-7663 "pullback" C-2001 "mitral valve"
X-2123 "pressure measurement, pullback"	C-2001 "mitral valve"
X-1234 "pressure measurement, mitral valve, pullback"	(none required)

C.10.9.1.4.2 Channel Sensitivity and Channel Sensitivity Units

Channel Sensitivity is the nominal value of one unit (i.e., the least significant bit) of each waveform sample in the Waveform Data attribute (5400,1010). It includes both the amplifier gain and the analog-digital converter resolution. It does not relate the vertical scaling of a waveform on a particular display.

Note: The Defined (default) Context Group for Channel Sensitivity Units Sequence is CID 3082 Waveform Units of Measurement, which includes all the commonly used measurement values. Units of measurement not included in the default list can be specified using the more general CID 82 Units of Measurement, or a local Coding Scheme. The Defined Context ID may be replaced in a specialization of the IOD.

Channel Sensitivity Correction Factor (003A,0212) is the ratio of the actual (calibrated) value to the nominal Channel Sensitivity specified in Data Element (003A,0210). Thus a waveform sample value multiplied by the Channel Sensitivity value provides the nominal measured value in Channel Sensitivity Units, and that nominal value multiplied by the Channel Sensitivity Correction Factor provides the calibrated measured value.

C.10.9.1.4.3 Channel Skew and Channel Offset

Skew is also known as a sub-sample time delay, typically caused by using a multiplexed analog to digital converter which switches from channel to channel. For analysis it may be important to know if the analog channels were all latched simultaneously or sequentially and then digitized. Skew may be represented as time offset in seconds, or a fractional number of samples.

Separate and additional to skew is an offset time adjustment (sometimes called latency) by which one waveform channel is displaced significantly relative to others before sampling.

Note: As an example, a hemodynamic pressure is measured at the external end of a catheter, and thus its measurement is delayed by the time for the pressure wave to propagate down the catheter. With a dual catheter measurement, two signals may be acquired at the same time, but one arrives by a longer distance (e.g., a pulmonary capillary wedge pressure, compared to a left ventricular pressure). To obtain an accurate comparison of the waveforms (e.g., the gradient across the mitral valve), one waveform has to be offset (perhaps as much as 30 ms) to synchronize them.

C.10.9.1.4.4 Waveform Bits Stored

Waveform Bits Stored (003A,021A) specifies the number of significant bits within the Waveform Bits Allocated of each sample, for signed or unsigned integers.

If Waveform Sample Value Representation is MB or AB, Waveform Bits Stored shall be 8.

C.10.9.1.4.5 Channel Minimum and Maximum Value

Channel Minimum and Maximum Value attributes (5400,0110) and (5400,0112) may be used to send the analog-to-digital converter limits (i.e., the clipping levels).

Note: These values do not represent the maximum and minimum values in the data set, but rather the valid range of values.

C.10.9.1.5 Waveform Bits Allocated and Waveform Sample Interpretation

Waveform Bits Allocated (5400,1004) specifies the number of bits allocated for each sample, and Waveform Sample Interpretation (5400,1006) specifies the data representation of each waveform sample. Waveform Bits Allocated shall be a multiple of 8. These data elements are related, and their defined terms are specified in Table C.10-5.

Table C.10-10
Waveform Bits Allocated and Waveform Sample Interpretation

Waveform Bits Allocated - Defined Terms	Waveform Sample Interpretation - Defined Terms	Waveform Sample Interpretation Meaning
8	SB	signed 8 bit linear
	UB	unsigned 8 bit linear
	MB	8 bit mu-law (in accordance with ITU-T Recommendation G.711)
	AB	8 bit A-law (in accordance with ITU-T Recommendation G.711)
16	SS	signed 16 bit linear
	US	unsigned 16 bit linear

Notes: 1. The set of valid values from within this table may be constrained by definition of the IOD (see Section A.34).
2. mu-law and A-law encoding is without the alternate bit inversion used for PCM transmission through the telephone network.

This representation also applies to the Channel Minimum and Maximum Data Values, and Waveform Padding Value.

C.10.9.1.6 Waveform Padding Value

Equipment which produces digitized waveform curves may encode a specific value when the source is disconnected or otherwise invalid. This value is encoded like the Waveform Data attribute with one sample only.

The Waveform Padding Value need not be within the range specified by the Channel Minimum and Maximum Data Values.

C.10.9.1.7 Waveform Data

Each sample shall be encoded using the defined Waveform Sample Interpretation (5400,1006), using the defined number of Waveform Bits Stored (003A,021A) right justified in the sample. If the number of Waveform Bits Stored is less than the number of bits in Waveform Bits Allocated, the sign bit shall be extended to the highest order bit of the data sample.

Data values are encoded interleaved, incrementing by channel and then by sample (i.e., C1S1, C2S1,C3S1, ... CnS1, C1S2, C2S2, C3S2, ... CnSm), with no padding or explicit delimitation between successive samples. Cx denotes the channel defined in the Channel Definition Sequence Item in item number x.

Notes: 1. With 8-bit Waveform Data, there may be an odd number of channels and an odd number of samples; see PS3.5 for rules on encoding.

2. The sign bit extension rule differs from the rules for pixel data, which do not require sign extension.

C.10.10 Waveform Annotation Module

The table in this section contains Attributes that identify annotations to the waveform of the current SOP Instance. Each annotation conceptually forms the equivalent of a overlay on a presentation display of the annotated entity. Annotations may represent a measurement or categorization based on the waveform data, identification of regions of interest or particular features of the waveform, or events during the data collection which may affect diagnostic interpretation (e.g., the time at which the subject coughed).

Each Annotation Item shall have the following components:

1. An annotation Text, Coded Name (only), Coded Name/Coded Value pair, or Coded Name/Numeric Measurement pair (mutually exclusive)

2. Temporal coordinates in the Waveform to which the annotation applies

Table C.10-11 – Waveform Annotation Module Attributes

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Waveform Annotation Sequence	(0040,B020)	1	Sequence of Annotation Items; one or more items shall be present
> Unformatted Text Value	(0070,0006)	1C	Text Observation Value (annotation). Mutually exclusive with Concept Name Code Sequence (0040,A043)
> Concept Name Code Sequence	(0040,A043)	1C	Code representing the fully specified name of the NUMERIC measurement or CODED concept. This sequence shall contain exactly one item. Mutually exclusive with Text Value (0070,0006).
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			Baseline Context ID may be defined in IOD definition.
>> Modifier Code Sequence	(0040,A195)	1C	A sequence of items modifying or specializing the Concept Name. Any number of items may be present. Required if Concept Name Code Sequence (0040,A043) is sent and the value does not fully describe the semantics of the measurement or concept.
>>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			Baseline Context ID may be defined in IOD definition.
> Concept Code Sequence	(0040,A168)	3	A sequence that conveys the categorical coded nominal value.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			Baseline Context ID may be defined in IOD definition.
>> Modifier Code Sequence	(0040,A195)	1C	A sequence of items modifying or specializing the Concept. Any number of items may be present. Required if Concept Code Sequence (0040,A168) is sent and the value does not fully describe the semantics of the concept value.
>>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			Baseline Context ID may be defined in IOD definition.
> Numeric Value	(0040,A30A)	3	Numeric measurement value or values.
> Measurement Units Code Sequence	(0040,08EA)	3	Units of measurement. Coded entry sequence with one item only.
>> Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			Baseline Context ID 82
> Referenced Waveform Channels	(0040,A0B0)	1	List of channels in waveform to which annotation applies. See C.10.10.1.1

> Temporal Range Type	(0040,A130)	1C	See C.10.10.1.2 for Enumerated Values. Required if Annotation does not apply to entire Referenced Waveform Channels; shall not be present if Annotation applies to entire temporal extent of referenced channels.
> Referenced Sample Positions	(0040,A132)	1C	List of samples within a multiplex group specifying temporal points for annotation. Position of first sample is 1. Required if Temporal Range Type (0040,A130) is present, and if Referenced Time Offsets (0040,A138) and Referenced Datetime (0040,A13A) are not present. See C.10.10.1.3
> Referenced Time Offsets	(0040,A138)	1C	Specifies temporal points for annotation by number of seconds after start of data. Required if Temporal Range Type (0040,A130) is present, and if Referenced Sample Positions (0040,A132) and Referenced Datetime (0040,A13A) are not present.
> Referenced Datetime	(0040,A13A)	1C	Specifies temporal points for annotation by absolute time. Required if Temporal Range Type (0040,A130) is present, and if Referenced Sample Positions (0040,A132) and Referenced Time Offsets (0040,A138) are not present.
> Annotation Group Number	(0040,A180)	3	Number identifying associated annotations (see C.10.10.1.4).

C.10.10.1 Waveform Annotation Attribute Descriptions

C.10.10.1.1 Referenced Channels

Referenced Waveform Channels (0040,A0B0) is a multi-value attribute which lists the channels to which an annotation of a waveform applies. Each channel is specified as a pair of values (M,C), where the first value is the ordinal of the sequence item of the Waveform Sequence (5400,0100) attribute (i.e., the Multiplex Group Number), and the second value is the ordinal of the sequence item of the Channel Definition Sequence (003A,0200) attribute (i.e., the Waveform Channel Number) within the multiplex group.

If the specified channel number is 0, the annotation applies to all channels in the multiplex group.

Note: As an example, an annotation which applies to the entire first multiplex group and channels 2 and 3 of the third multiplex group would have Referenced Channels value 0001 0000 0003 0002 0003 0003.

C.10.10.1.2 Temporal Range Type

The Temporal Range Type attribute (0040,A130) defines the type of temporal extent of the annotated region of interest. A temporal point (or instant of time) may be defined by a waveform sample offset (for a single waveform multiplex group only), time offset, or absolute time.

The following terms are Enumerated Values for Temporal Range Type:

POINT = a single temporal point
MULTIPOINT = multiple temporal points
SEGMENT = a range between two temporal points
MULTISEGMENT = multiple segments, each denoted by two temporal points
BEGIN = a range beginning at one temporal point, and extending beyond the end of the acquired

data
END = a range beginning before the start of the acquired data, and extending to (and including) the identified temporal point

C.10.10.1.3 Referenced Sample Positions

Referenced Sample Positions (0040,A132) may be used only if Referenced Waveform Channels (0040,A0B0) refers to channels within a single multiplex group. The sample position is by channel, and applies to all channels specified in Referenced Channels (0040,A0B0).

C.10.10.1.4 Annotation Group Number

The Annotation Group Number (0040,A180) allows the logical association of multiple annotations within the current SOP Instance. Such linked annotations share an Annotation Group Number, but each annotation is semantically separable. The nature of the association is not defined. The number is not semantically significant.

Note: For instance, the R-wave in several waveform channels may be annotated, and all occurrences of the same R-wave could be linked in an annotation group.

C.11 LOOK UP TABLES

C.11.1 Modality LUT Module

Table C.11-1 specifies the Attributes that describe the Modality LUT.

Either a Modality LUT Sequence containing a single Item or Rescale Slope and Intercept values shall be present but not both.

Note: This requirement for only a single transformation makes it possible to unambiguously define the input of succeeding stages of the grayscale pipeline such as the VOI LUT.

Table C.11-1
MODALITY LUT MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Include Modality LUT Macro Table C.11-1b			

Table C.11-1b
MODALITY LUT MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Modality LUT Sequence	(0028,3000)	1C	Defines a sequence of Modality LUTs. Only one Item may be present. Shall not be present if Rescale Intercept (0028,1052) is present.
>LUT Descriptor	(0028,3002)	1C	Specifies the format of the LUT Data in this Sequence. See C.11.1.1 for further explanation. Required if the Modality LUT Sequence (0028,3000) is sent.
>LUT Explanation	(0028,3003)	3	Free form text explanation of the meaning of the LUT.
>Modality LUT Type	(0028,3004)	1C	Specifies the output values of this Modality LUT. See C.11.1.1.2 for further explanation. Required if the Modality LUT Sequence (0028,3000) is sent.
>LUT Data	(0028,3006)	1C	LUT Data in this Sequence. Required if the Modality LUT Sequence (0028,3000) is sent.
Rescale Intercept	(0028,1052)	1C	The value b in relationship between stored values (SV) and the output units specified in Rescale Type (0028,1054). Output units = m*SV + b. Required if Modality LUT Sequence (0028,3000) is not present. Shall not be present otherwise.
Rescale Slope	(0028,1053)	1C	m in the equation specified by Rescale Intercept (0028,1052).

			Required if Rescale Intercept is present.
Rescale Type	(0028,1054)	1C	Specifies the output units of Rescale Slope (0028,1053) and Rescale Intercept (0028,1052). See C.11.1.1.2 for further explanation. Required if Rescale Intercept is present.

C.11.1.1 LUT Attribute Descriptions

C.11.1.1.1 LUT descriptor

The three values of the LUT Descriptor (0028,3002) describe the format of the LUT Data in the corresponding Data Element (0028,3006).

The first value is the number of entries in the lookup table. When the number of table entries is equal to 2^{16} then this value shall be 0.

The second value is the first stored pixel value mapped. The Value Representation of the second value (US or SS) is specified by Pixel Representation (0028,0103). This stored pixel value is mapped to the first entry in the LUT. All stored pixel values less than the first value mapped are also mapped to the first entry in the LUT Data. A stored pixel value one greater than the first value mapped is mapped to the second entry in the LUT Data. Subsequent stored pixel values are mapped to the subsequent entries in the LUT Data up to a stored pixel value equal to number of entries + first value mapped - 1 which is mapped to the last entry in the LUT Data. Stored pixel values greater than or equal to number of entries + first value mapped are also mapped to the last entry in the LUT Data.

The third value specifies the number of bits for each entry in the LUT Data. It shall take the value 8 or 16. The LUT Data shall be stored in a format equivalent to 8 bits allocated when the number of bits for each entry is 8, and 16 bits allocated when the number of bits for each entry is 16, where in both cases the high bit is equal to bits allocated - 1.

Note: Some implementations have encoded 8 bit entries with 16 bits allocated, padding the high bits; this can be detected by comparing the number of entries specified in the LUT Descriptor with the actual value length of the LUT Data entry. The value length in bytes should equal the number of entries if bits allocated is 8, and be twice as long if bits allocated is 16.

The third value also conveys the range of LUT entry values. It shall take the value 8 or 16, corresponding with the LUT entry value range of 256 or 65536.

Note: Since the LUT Descriptor (0028,3002) Attribute is multi-valued, in an Explicit VR Transfer Syntax, only one value representation (US or SS) may be specified, even though the first and third values are always by definition interpreted as unsigned. The explicit VR actually used is dictated by the VR needed to represent the second value, which will be consistent with Pixel Representation (0028,0103).

The LUT Data contains the LUT entry values.

The output range of the Modality LUT Module depends on whether or not Rescale Slope (0028,1053) and Rescale Intercept (0028,1052) or the Modality LUT Sequence (0028,3000) are used.

In the case where Rescale Slope and Rescale Intercept are used, the output ranges from (minimum pixel value*Rescale Slope+Rescale Intercept) to (maximum pixel value*Rescale

Slope+Rescale Intercept), where the minimum and maximum pixel values are determined by Bits Stored and Pixel Representation.

Note: This range may be signed even if Pixel Representation is unsigned.

In the case where the Modality LUT Sequence is used, the output range is from 0 to 2^n-1 where n is the third value of LUT Descriptor. This range is always unsigned.

C.11.1.1.2 Modality LUT and Rescale Type

Specifies the units of the output of the Modality LUT or rescale operation.

Defined Terms:

OD = The number in the LUT represents thousands of optical density. That is, a value of 2140 represents an optical density of 2.140.

HU = Hounsfield Units (CT)

US = Unspecified

Other values are permitted, but are not defined by the DICOM Standard.

C.11.2 VOI LUT Module

Table C.11-2 specifies the Attributes that describe the VOI LUT.

Table C.11-2
VOI LUT MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Include VOI LUT Macro Table C.11-2b			

Table C.11-2b
VOI LUT MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
VOI LUT Sequence	(0028,3010)	1C	Defines a sequence of VOI LUTs. One or more Items shall be present. Required if Window Center (0028,1050) is not present. May be present otherwise.
>LUT Descriptor	(0028,3002)	1	Specifies the format of the LUT Data in this Sequence. See C.11.2.1.1 for further explanation.
>LUT Explanation	(0028,3003)	3	Free form text explanation of the meaning of the LUT.
>LUT Data	(0028,3006)	1	LUT Data in this Sequence.
Window Center	(0028,1050)	1C	Window Center for display. See C.11.2.1.2 for further explanation. Required if VOI LUT Sequence (0028,3010) is not present. May be present otherwise.
Window Width	(0028,1051)	1C	Window Width for display. See C.11.2.1.2 for further explanation. Required if Window Center (0028,1050) is

			sent.
Window Center & Width Explanation	(0028,1055)	3	Free form explanation of the meaning of the Window Center and Width. Multiple values correspond to multiple Window Center and Width values.
VOI LUT Function	(0028,1056)	3	Describes a VOI LUT function to apply to the values of Window Center (0028,1050) and Window Width (0028,1051). See C.11.2.1.3 for further explanation. Defined terms: LINEAR SIGMOID When this attribute is not present, the interpretation of the values of Window Center (0028,1050) and Window Width (0028,1051) is linear as in C.11.2.1.2.

C.11.2.1 LUT Attribute Descriptions

C.11.2.1.1 LUT Descriptor

The three values of the LUT Descriptor (0028,3002) describe the format of the LUT Data in the corresponding Data Element (0028,3006).

The first value is the number of entries in the lookup table. When the number of table entries is equal to 2^{16} then this value shall be 0.

The second value is the first input value mapped. The Value Representation of the second value (US or SS) depends on the source of the input to the VOI LUT, and shall be:

- the same as specified by Pixel Representation (0028,0103), if there is no Modality LUT or Rescale Slope and Intercept specified;
- SS if the possible output range after application of the Rescale Slope and Intercept may be signed;

Note: This is always the case for the CT Image IOD in which the Rescale Type is specified to be Hounsfield Units, which are always signed.

- US otherwise.

This input value is mapped to the first entry in the LUT. All input values less than the first value mapped are also mapped to the first entry in the LUT Data. An input value one greater than the first value mapped is mapped to the second entry in the LUT Data. Subsequent input values are mapped to the subsequent entries in the LUT Data up to an input value equal to number of entries + first value mapped - 1 which is mapped to the last entry in the LUT Data. Input values greater than or equal to number of entries + first value mapped are also mapped to the last entry in the LUT Data.

The third value specifies the number of bits for each entry in the LUT Data. If the VOI LUT is included in an Image IOD, the third value of LUT Descriptor (0028,3002) shall be 8 or 16 bits, unless otherwise specialized. If the VOI LUT is included in a Presentation State IOD, the third value of LUT Descriptor (0028,3002) shall be between 8 and 16 inclusive. The LUT Data shall be stored in a format equivalent to 8 bits allocated when the number of bits for each entry is 8, and 16 bits allocated when the number of bits for each entry is 16, where in both cases the high bit is equal to bits stored - 1, and where bits stored is the third value.

Notes: 1. Since the LUT Descriptor (0028,3002) Attribute is multi-valued, in an Explicit VR Transfer Syntax, only one value representation (US or SS) may be specified, even though the first and third values are always by definition interpreted as unsigned. The explicit VR actually used is dictated by the VR needed to represent the second value.

2. Some implementations have encoded 8 bit entries with 16 bits allocated, padding the high bits; this can be detected by comparing the number of entries specified in the LUT Descriptor with the actual value length of the LUT Data entry. The value length in bytes should equal the number of entries if bits allocated is 8, and be twice as long if bits allocated is 16.

The LUT Data contains the LUT entry values.

The output range is from 0 to 2^n-1 where n is the third value of LUT Descriptor. This range is always unsigned.

C.11.2.1.2 Window center and window width

Window Center (0028,1050) and Window Width (0028,1051) specify a linear conversion from stored pixel values (after any Modality LUT or Rescale Slope and Intercept specified in the IOD have been applied) to values to be displayed. Window Center contains the input value that is the center of the window. Window Width contains the width of the window.

Note: The terms “window center” and “window width” are not consistently used in practice, nor were they defined in previous versions of the standard. The definitions here are presented for the purpose of defining consistent meanings for identity and threshold transformations while preserving the common practice of using integral values for center and width.

Window Width (0028,1051) shall always be greater than or equal to 1.

When Window Width (0028,1051) is greater than 1, these Attributes select the range of input values that are to be mapped to the full range of the displayed output.

When Window Width (0028,1051) is equal to 1, they specify a threshold below which input values will be displayed as the minimum output value.

Note: Whether the minimum output value is rendered as black or white may depend on the value of Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) or the presence of a Presentation LUT Module.

These Attributes are applied according to the following pseudo-code, where x is the input value, y is an output value with a range from y_{min} to y_{max}, c is Window Center (0028,1050) and w is Window Width (0028,1051):

if (x <= c - 0.5 - (w-1)/2), then y = y_{min}

else if (x > c - 0.5 + (w-1)/2), then y = y_{max},

else y = ((x - (c - 0.5)) / (w-1) + 0.5) * (y_{max} - y_{min})+ y_{min}

Notes: 1. For the purpose of this definition, a floating point calculation without integer truncation is assumed, though the manner of implementation may vary as long as the result is the same.

2. The pseudo-code function computes a continuous value over the output range without any discontinuity at the boundaries. The value of 0 for w is expressly forbidden, and the value of 1 for w does not cause division by zero, since the continuous segment of the function will never be reached for that case.

3. For example, for an output range 0 to 255:

c=2048, w=4096 becomes:

```
        if (x <= 0) then y = 0
        else if (x > 4095) then y = 255
        else y = ((x - 2047.5) / 4095 + 0.5) * (255-0) + 0
c=2048, w=1 becomes:
        if (x <= 2047.5) then y = 0
        else if (x > 2047.5) then y = 255
        else /* not reached */

c=0, w=100 becomes:
        if (x <= -50) then y = 0
        else if (x > 49) then y = 255
        else y = ((x + 0.5) / 99 + 0.5) * (255-0) + 0
c=0, w=1 becomes:
        if (x <= -0.5) then y = 0
        else if (x > -0.5) then y = 255
        else /* not reached */
```

4. A Window Center of 2^{n-1} and a Window Width of 2^n selects the range of input values from 0 to 2^n-1. This represents an identity VOI LUT transformation in the case where no Modality LUT is specified and the stored pixel data are n bit unsigned integers.

5. A Window Width of 1 is typically used to represent a "threshold" operation in which those integer input values less than the Window Center are represented as the minimum displayed value and those greater than or equal to the Window Center are represented as the maximum displayed value. A Window Width of 2 will have the same result for integral input values.

6. The application of Window Center (0028,1050) and Window Width (0028,1051) may select a signed input range. There is no implication that this signed input range is clipped to zero.

7. The selected input range may exceed the actual range of the input values, thus effectively “compressing” the contrast range of the displayed data into a narrower band of the available contrast range, and “flattening” the appearance. There are no limits to the maximum value of the window width, or to the minimum or maximum value of window level, both of which may exceed the actual or possible range of input values.

8. Input values "below" the window are displayed as the minimum output value and input values "above" the window are displayed as the maximum output value. This is the common usage of the window operation in medical imaging. There is no provision for an alternative approach in which all values "outside" the window are displayed as the minimum output value.

9. The output of the Window Center/Width or VOI LUT transformation is either implicitly scaled to the full range of the display device if there is no succeeding transformation defined, or implicitly scaled to the full input range of the succeeding transformation step (such as the Presentation LUT), if present. See C.11.6.1.

10. Fractional values of Window Center and Window Width are permitted (since the VR of these Attributes is Decimal String), and though they are not often encountered, applications should be prepared to accept them.

These Attributes shall be used only for Images with Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) values of MONOCHROME1 and MONOCHROME2. They have no meaning for other Images.

If multiple values are present, both Attributes shall have the same number of values and shall be considered as pairs. Multiple values indicate that multiple alternative views may be presented.

If any VOI LUT Table is included by an Image, a Window Width and Window Center or the VOI LUT Table, but not both, may be applied to the Image for display. Inclusion of both indicates that multiple alternative views may be presented.

If multiple items are present in VOI LUT Sequence (0028,3010), only one may be applied to the Image for display. Multiple items indicate that multiple alternative views may be presented.

If the VOI LUT Module is defined in an IOD and if neither a VOI LUT Sequence nor a Window Width and Window Center are present, then the VOI LUT stage of the grayscale pipeline is defined to be an identity transformation.

Notes: 1. This requirement is specified so that IODs that define a particular output space for the grayscale pipeline, such as P-Values, are not in an undefined state when no VOI LUT Sequence or Window Width and Window Center are present.

2. Despite the Type 3 requirement for VOI LUT Sequence and Window Center, implementations that render images are expected to implement and apply these transformations when they are present in the image.

C.11.2.1.3 VOI LUT Function

The VOI LUT Function (0028,1056) specifies a potentially non-linear conversion for the output of the (conceptual) Modality LUT values to the input of the (conceptual) Presentation LUT.

The behavior for the value LINEAR is defined in C.11.2.1.2. For all other values, the VOI LUT Function (0028,1056) shall include a unique descriptor of the LUT function to be used. Each descriptor is associated with a bivariate function of Window Center (0028,1050) and Window Width (0028,1051).

If the VOI LUT Function (0028,1056) is present with a value other than LINEAR, the values provided in Window Center (0028,1050) and Window Width (0028,1051) shall not be interpreted as a linear conversion of the (conceptual) Modality LUT values to the input to the (conceptual) Presentation LUT – but as parameters for the function defined by the VOI LUT Function descriptor in (0028,1056).

When defined, each descriptor must provide the functional relationship between the output of the (conceptual) Modality LUT values to the input of the (conceptual) Presentation LUT.

C.11.2.1.3.1 SIGMOID descriptor

If the value of VOI LUT Function (0028,1056) is SIGMOID, the function to be used to convert the output of the (conceptual) Modality LUT values to the input of the (conceptual) Presentation LUT is given by

$$OUT = \frac{Output\_range}{1 + \exp\left(-4\frac{IN - WC}{WW}\right)} \qquad (1)$$

where

IN is the input value of the LUT (i.e., the output of the (conceptual) Modality LUT).
WC (resp. *WW*) is the Window Center (resp. Window Width) defined interactively by the user or by using the values provided in (0028,1050) (resp. 0028,1051).
Output_range is the maximum output value (see Note below on encoding depth)

Note: The encoding depth of the input values for the VOI LUT function is given by the number of bits specified in Bits Stored (0028,0101). The output values of the VOI LUT function must be encoded with an appropriate depth to be then used as input for the Presentation LUT (typically this value is 8 bits) and the *Output_range* parameter allows this scaling. Moreover, Eq. 1 is given assuming float values for clarity but the actual implementation must include rounding to output integer values.

C.11.3 LUT Identification Module

This section has been retired. See PS 3.3 2006.

C.11.4 Presentation LUT Module

Table C.11-4 specifies the Attributes that describe the Presentation LUT.

Table C.11-4
Presentation LUT Module

Attribute name	Tag	Description
Presentation LUT Sequence	(2050,0010)	Defines a sequence of Presentation LUTs. Only a single item shall be included in this sequence.
>LUT Descriptor	(0028,3002)	Specifies the format of the LUT Data in this Sequence. Required if Presentation LUT Sequence (2050,0010) is sent. See C.11.4.1 for further explanation.
>LUT Explanation	(0028,3003)	Free form text explanation of the meaning of the LUT.
>LUT Data	(0028,3006)	LUT Data in this Sequence.
Presentation LUT Shape	(2050,0020)	Specifies pre-defined Presentation LUT shapes. Enumerated Values : IDENTITY = input to the Presentation LUT is in P-Values, no further translation is necessary. LIN OD = input to Presentation LUT is in linear optical density over the range of Min Density (2010,0120) and Max Density (2010,1030). Note: LIN OD is only defined for hardcopy devices and is not applicable to softcopy devices.

C.11.4.1 LUT Descriptor

The three values of the LUT Descriptor (0028,3002) describe the format of the data in LUT Data (0028,3006).

The first value is the number of entries in the lookup table. When the number of table entries is equal to 2^{16} then this value shall be 0. The number of entries shall be equal to the number of possible values in the input. (For 8 bit input will be 256 entries, for 12 bit input it will be 4096 entries)

The second value is the first input value mapped, and shall always be 0. The Value Representation of the second value is always US. This input value is mapped to the first entry in the LUT. Subsequent input values are mapped to the subsequent entries in the LUT Data up to an input value equal to number of entries + first value mapped - 1 which is mapped to the last entry in the LUT Data. There are no input values greater than number of entries – 1.

The third value specifies the number of bits for each entry in the LUT Data. It shall be between 10 and 16 inclusive. The LUT Data shall be stored in a format equivalent to 16 bits allocated where the high bit is equal to bits stored - 1, where bits stored is the third value.

Note: Since the LUT Descriptor (0028,3002) Attribute is multi-valued, in an Explicit VR Transfer Syntax, only one value representation (US or SS) may be specified. Since all three values are always by definition interpreted as unsigned, the explicit VR actually used will always be US.

LUT Data (0028,3006) contains the LUT entry values, which are P-Values.

The output range is from 0 to 2^n-1 where n is the third value of LUT Descriptor. This range is always unsigned.

This range specifies the output range of the P-Values.

C.11.5 Image Histogram Module

Table C.11.5-1
IMAGE HISTOGRAM MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute name	Tag	Type	Description
Histogram Sequence	(0060,3000)	1	Defines a sequence of Histograms. One or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>Histogram Number of Bins	(0060,3002)	1C	The number of “bins” (entries) in the histogram. Required if a Sequence Item is present.
>Histogram First Bin Value	(0060,3004)	1C	The stored pixel value corresponding to the lowest pixel value counted in the first bin. All image pixel values less than this value are not included in the histogram. Required if a Sequence Item is present. Note: The Value Representation of this Attribute is determined by the value of Pixel Representation (0028,0103).
>Histogram Last Bin Value	(0060,3006)	1C	The stored pixel value corresponding to the highest pixel value counted in the last bin. All image pixel values greater than this value are not included in the histogram. Required if a Sequence Item is present. Note: The Value Representation of this Attribute is determined by the value of Pixel Representation (0028,0103).
>Histogram Bin Width	(0060,3008)	1C	The number of consecutive stored pixel values included in a bin. All bins shall be of equal width. Required if a Sequence Item is present.
>Histogram Explanation	(0060,3010)	3	Free form text explanation of the meaning of the LUT.
>Histogram Data	(0060,3020)	1C	Histogram Data encoded as 32 bit unsigned counts of the number of pixel values in each bin. Required if a Sequence Item is present.

C.11.5.1 Image Histogram Attribute Descriptions

The Image Histogram is a multi-valued sequence representing a sequential count of binned stored image pixel values in ascending order.

Note: One reason to include a histogram with an image is as an aid to image processing applications. For applications that use them, computations of histograms for very large images can be a significant burden on computer resources and can seriously degrade the response time to the user.

The Image Histogram is multi-valued to support multiple histograms per image. One or more regions of interest or value ranges may be separately computed. A description of the region(s) of interest and value range may be included in the Histogram Explanation (0060,3010). The Image Histogram may be related to parts or all of a specific image.

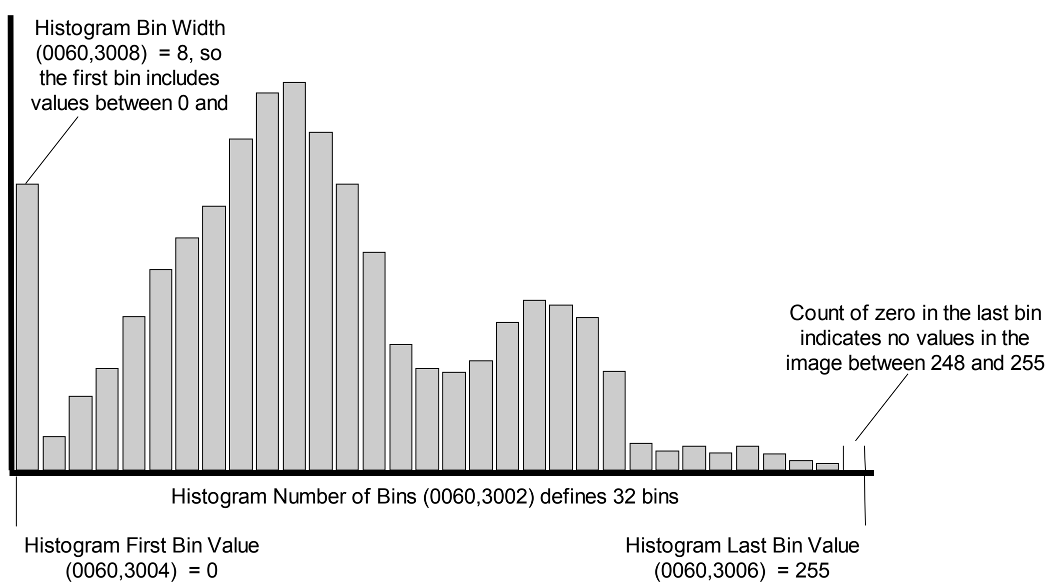
The Attributes describing the parameters of the histogram are in image pixel value space, as stored in Pixel Data (7FE0,0010), before the application of any transformation such as Rescale Slope and Intercept or Modality LUT.

The range of stored image pixel value instances is described by the Histogram First Bin Value (0060,3004) and Histogram Last Bin Value (0060,3006). All values outside of this range shall be ignored. The number of histogram bins shall be large enough to contain all of the pixels in the range from the smallest to the largest stored image pixel value in that region of the image from which the histogram has been derived (which may or may not be the whole image).

The Histogram Bin Width (0060,3008) describes how many consecutive stored image pixel values are counted as one. All bins shall be of equal width.

Note: For example, a Histogram Bin Width (0060,3008) of 8 means that counts of pixel values in ascending groups of 8 are added together. If Histogram First Bin Value (0060,3004) were 0, then the first bin would contain the count of pixel values in the range of 0-7, the second bin the count of pixel values in the range of 8-15, etc. If Histogram Number of Bins (0060,3002) were 32, then the last bin would contain the count of pixel values in the range of 248-255 and Histogram Last Bin Value (0060,3006) would be 255 (not 248).

This example is illustrated in the following figure, in which the vertical axis represents the count within each bin and the horizontal axis represents each bin in ascending order.



C.11.6 Softcopy Presentation LUT Module

Table C.11.6-1 specifies the Attributes that describe the Softcopy Presentation LUT.

Table C.11.6-1
SOFTCOPY PRESENTATION LUT MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute name	Tag	Type	Description
Presentation LUT Sequence	(2050,0010)	1C	Defines a sequence of Presentation LUTs. Only a single item shall be included in this sequence. Required if Presentation LUT Shape (2050,0020) is absent.
>LUT Descriptor	(0028,3002)	1C	Specifies the format of the LUT Data in this Sequence. See C.11.6.1.1 for further explanation. Required if a Sequence Item is present.
>LUT Explanation	(0028,3003)	3	Free form text explanation of the meaning of the LUT.
>LUT Data	(0028,3006)	1C	LUT Data in this Sequence. Required if a Sequence Item is present.
Presentation LUT Shape	(2050,0020)	1C	Specifies predefined Presentation LUT transformation. Required if Presentation LUT Sequence (2050,0010) is absent. Enumerated Values: IDENTITY - no further translation necessary, input values are P-Values INVERSE - output values after inversion are P-Values See C.11.6.1.2.

Note: This Module differs from the Presentation LUT Module used in the hardcopy (print) related SOP Classes in that Optical Density is not supported for Presentation LUT Shape (since Optical Density has no meaning for softcopy display devices).

C.11.6.1 Softcopy Presentation LUT Attributes

When the Presentation LUT is specified as a Presentation LUT Sequence, then the input range of values is specified by the LUT Descriptor as the first value mapped and the number of entries (values mapped). However, there is an implicit linear scaling of the output range of the preceding transformation (such as the VOI LUT transformation) so that it is always mapped to the specified input range of the Presentation LUT.

When the Presentation LUT is specified as Presentation LUT Shape, then the input range is implicitly specified to be the output range of the preceding transformation (VOI LUT, or if the VOI LUT is identity or absent, the Modality LUT, or if the Modality LUT and VOI LUT are identity or absent, the stored pixel values). In this case, the full range of the output of the preceding transformation will be mapped to the full input range of the display device that receives the output of the Presentation LUT.

Note: The output of the preceding transformation may be signed. This does not mean that signed P-Values actually need to be generated, only that the output of the preceding transformation is to be interpreted by the display device as perceptually linear over the range from the minimum to the maximum values output by the preceding step, and that the minimum value be mapped to the lowest JND Index (and hence luminance) that the display can generate, and the maximum value be mapped to the highest JND Index (and hence luminance) that the display can generate.

In other words, in both cases, the Presentation LUT Module is always implicitly specified to apply over the full range of output of the preceding transformation, and it never selects a subset or superset of the that range (unlike the VOI LUT).

The output bit precision of the VOI LUT Sequence is not required to match the input range of the Presentation LUT Sequence.

Notes: 1. For example, if the VOI LUT is specified as a Window Center of 0 and a Window Width of 100, then the range from -50 to +49 is selected to be mapped to the full range of the display or print device (the full range of P-Values) if the Presentation LUT Shape is specified as IDENTITY or INVERSE. This example demonstrates the conventional understanding of the meaning of Window Center and Width to select “values of interest” that are to be displayed across the full range of the output device, without explicitly having to map each choice to P-Values.

2. For example, if the VOI LUT is specified as a Window Center of 0 and a Window Width of 100, and the Presentation LUT Sequence is sent with a LUT Descriptor first value of 256 and second value of 0, then the range from -50 to +49 is implicitly linearly scaled from 0 to 255 before selecting values from the LUT Data in the Presentation LUT Sequence. This example demonstrates that it is not necessary to send a different Presentation LUT for different Window Center and Width values.

3. For example, if the VOI LUT is specified as VOI LUT Sequence with a LUT Descriptor with a 3rd Value of 16, then the range from 0 to 2^{16}-1 is selected to be mapped to the full range of the display or print device (the full range of P-Values) if the Presentation LUT Shape is specified as IDENTITY or INVERSE. This example demonstrates that a VOI LUT may be specified with the desired precision, without having to explicitly send a Presentation LUT to rescale that precision to whatever range of P-Values is preferred by the display application.

4. For example, if the VOI LUT is specified as VOI LUT Sequence with a LUT Descriptor with a 3rd Value of 16, and the Presentation LUT Sequence is sent with a LUT Descriptor first value of 4096 and second value of 0, then the range from 0 to 2^{16}-1 is implicitly linearly scaled to the range 0 to 4095 before selecting values from the LUT Data in the Presentation LUT Sequence. This example demonstrates the case where, to save space, the Presentation LUT is sent in a compact form that a display application may choose to interpolate more precisely, yet the VOI LUT output may be sent with 16 bit precision.

C.11.6.1.1 LUT Descriptor

The three values of the LUT Descriptor (0028,3002) describe the format of the LUT Data in the corresponding Data Element (0028,3006).

The first value is the number of entries in the lookup table. When the number of table entries is equal to 2^{16} then this value shall be 0.

The second value is the first implicitly scaled input value mapped, and shall always be 0. The Value Representation of the second value is always US. This implicitly scaled input value is mapped to the first entry in the LUT. There are no implicitly scaled input values less than the first value mapped. An implicitly scaled input value one greater than the first value mapped is mapped to the second entry in the LUT Data. Subsequent implicitly scaled input values are mapped to the subsequent entries in the LUT Data up to an implicitly scaled input value equal to number of entries + first value mapped - 1 which is mapped to the last entry in the LUT Data. There are no implicitly scaled input values greater than number of entries + first value mapped.

The third value specifies the number of bits for each entry in the LUT Data. The third value of the LUT Descriptor (0028,3002) shall be between 8 and 16 inclusive. The LUT Data shall be stored in a format equivalent to 8 bits allocated when the number of bits for each entry is 8, and 16 bits allocated when the number of bits for each entry is 16, where the high bit is equal to bits stored - 1, and where bits stored is the third value.

Notes: 1. Since the LUT Descriptor (0028,3002) Attribute is multi-valued, in an Explicit VR Transfer Syntax, only one value representation (US or SS) may be specified. Since all three values are always by definition interpreted as unsigned, the explicit VR actually used will always be US.

2. Some implementations have encoded 8 bit entries with 16 bits allocated, padding the high bits; this can be detected by comparing the number of entries specified in the LUT Descriptor with the actual value length of the LUT Data entry. The value length in bytes should equal the number of entries if bits allocated is 8, and be twice as long if bits allocated is 16.

The LUT Data contains the LUT entry values, which are P-Values.

The output range is from 0 to 2^n-1 where n is the third value of LUT Descriptor. This range is always unsigned.

This range specifies the output range of the P-Values.

C.11.6.1.2 Presentation LUT Shape

A value of INVERSE shall mean the same as a value of IDENTITY, except that the minimum output value shall convey the meaning of the maximum available luminance, and the maximum value shall convey the minimum available luminance. In other words:

P-Value = maximum value - output value

C.11.7 Overlay Activation Module

This Module defines a manner of controlling whether or not bit-mapped overlay and curve information are displayed.

If the corresponding Overlay Group activated is present within the Presentation State, then that Overlay shall be activated and any corresponding Overlay in the referenced image(s) ignored, otherwise the Overlay within the referenced image(s) shall be activated.

An Overlay Group referenced in the Bitmap Display Shutter Module described in C.7.6.15 shall not be activated using the Overlay Activation Module.

Table C.11.7-1 specifies the Attributes that describe the Overlay Activation Module.

Table C.11.7-1
OVERLAY ACTIVATION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Overlay Activation Layer	(60xx,1001)	2C	The layer (defined in Graphic Layer (0070,0002) of the Graphic Layer Module C.10.7) in which the Overlay described in group 60xx shall be displayed. If no layer is specified (zero length) then the overlay shall not be displayed. Required if Group 60xx is present in the referenced image(s) or the Presentation State instance containing this Module.

Notes: 1. Previously, those bits that are stored in Pixel data (7FE0,0010) above High Bit(0028,0102) could be used as overlay bit planes if they were referenced by an Overlay Bit Position (60xx,0102). This usage has been retired. See PS 3.3 2004. Their contents are unspecified in

DICOM and should not be displayed. Usually they will be zero, though if the pixel data is signed, i.e. Pixel Representation (0028,0103) is 0001H, then it is possible that the sign bit may be "extended" through these values. Alternatively, they may have been "masked off" even if the value is signed and negative.

2. Previously, Curve Activation Layer (50xx,1001) was defined in this Module. Its usage has been retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.11.8 Softcopy VOI LUT module

Table C.11.8-1 specifies the Attributes that describe the Softcopy VOI LUT. These Attributes have the same meaning and behavior as defined in the VOI LUT Module Section C.11.2.

Table C.11.8-1
SOFTCOPY VOI LUT MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Softcopy VOI LUT Sequence	(0028,3110)	1	Defines a sequence of VOI LUTs or Window Centers and Widths and to which images and frames they apply. No more than one VOI LUT Sequence containing a single Item or one pair of Window Center/Width values shall be specified for each image or frame. One or more Items shall be present.
>Referenced Image Sequence	(0008,1140)	1C	Sequence of Items where each Item provides reference to a selected set of Image SOP Class/SOP Instance pairs that are defined in the Presentation State Module, to which this VOI LUT or Window Center and Width applies. Required if the VOI LUT transformation in this Item does not apply to all the images listed in the Presentation State Module.
>>Include Image SOP Instance Reference Macro Table 10-3			
>Include VOI LUT Macro Table C.11-2b			

C.11.9 Presentation Series Module

Table C.11.9-1 contains Attributes that identify and describe a Presentation Series.

Table C.11.9-1
PRESENTATION SERIES MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Modality	(0008,0060)	1	Type of equipment that originally acquired the data. Enumerated Value: PR = Presentation State See C.7.3.1.1.1.

Note: This implies that presentation states will be in different series from the images to which they apply, which will have different values for Modality.

C.11.10 Presentation State Identification Module

Table C.11.10-1 contains Attributes that identify a Presentation State.

Table C.11.10-1
PRESENTATION STATE IDENTIFICATION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Presentation Creation Date	(0070,0082)	1	Date on which this presentation was created. Note: This date may be different from the date that the DICOM SOP Instance was created, since the presentation state information contained may have been recorded earlier.
Presentation Creation Time	(0070,0083)	1	Time at which this presentation was created. Note: This time may be different from the time that the DICOM SOP Instance was created, since the presentation state information contained may have been recorded earlier.
Include Content Identification Macro Table 10-12			Note: The Content Label value may be used by an application as a Defined Term in order to imply some grouping of different presentation states, i.e. it may have the same value for different presentation state instances that share some common concept.

C.11.11 Presentation State Relationship Module

Table C.11.11-1 contains Attributes that describe the images to which a Presentation State applies.

Table C.11.11-1
PRESENTATION STATE RELATIONSHIP MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Include Presentation State Relationship Macro Table C.11.11-1b			

Table C.11.11-1b
PRESENTATION STATE RELATIONSHIP MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Referenced Series Sequence	(0008,1115)	1	Sequence of Items where each Item includes the Attributes of one Series to which the Presentation applies. One or more Items shall be present.
>Series Instance UID	(0020,000E)	1	Unique identifier of a Series that is part of the Study defined by the Study Instance UID (0020,000D) in the enclosing dataset. Note: The Study Instance UID (0020,000D) will be that of the presentation state itself, unless the macro is invoked from the Blending Sequence (0070,0402) in the Presentation State Blending Module, in which case it will be explicitly specified.
>Referenced Image Sequence	(0008,1140)	1	Sequence of Items where each Item provides reference to a selected set of Image SOP Class/SOP Instance pairs to which the Presentation applies that are part of the Study defined by Study Instance UID (0020,000D) and the Series defined by Series Instance UID (0020,000E). One or more Items shall be present. The referenced SOP Class shall be the same for all Images in any Item of this Referenced Series Sequence (0008,1115).
>>Include Image SOP Instance Reference Macro, Table 10-3			

C.11.12 Presentation State Shutter Module

Table C.11.12-1 contains Attributes that specialize Attributes in other Modules included in a Presentation State.

Table C.11.12-1
PRESENTATION STATE SHUTTER MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Shutter Presentation Value	(0018,1622)	1C	A single grayscale unsigned value used to replace those parts of the image occluded by the shutter, when rendered on a

			monochrome display. The units are specified in P-Values. Required if the Display Shutter Module or Bitmap Display Shutter Module is present. Note: The requirement in this module is type 1C which overrides the type 3 in the Display Shutter Module.
Shutter Presentation Color CIELab Value	(0018,1624)	1C	A color triplet value used to replace those parts of the image occluded by the shutter, when rendered on a color display. The units are specified in PCS-Values, and the value is encoded as CIELab. See C.10.7.1.1. Required if the Display Shutter Module or Bitmap Display Shutter Module is present and the SOP Class is other than Grayscale Softcopy Presentation State Storage. Note: The requirement in this module is type 1C, which overrides the type 3 in the Display Shutter and Bitmap Display Shutter Modules.

C.11.13 Presentation State Mask Module

Table C.11.13-1 contains Attributes that specialize the use of masks in a Presentation State.

Table C.11.13-1
PRESENTATION STATE MASK MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Mask Subtraction Sequence	(0028,6100)	1C	Required if Mask Module is present. Only one Item shall be present. Applicable Frame Range (0028,6102) shall not be included in the Sequence Item. See C.7.6.10 for a complete definition of the Attributes in the Items of this Sequence other than Mask Operation(0028,6101) and Applicable Frame Range (0028,6102). Notes: 1. This Sequence is replicated here in order to specify one Item, additional conditions on Mask Operation (0028,6101) and to forbid Applicable Frame Range (0028,6102). 2. The role of Applicable Frame Range (0028,6102) is replaced by Referenced Frame Number (0008,1160).
>Mask Operation	(0028,6101)	1	Type of mask operation to be performed Enumerated Values: AVG_SUB TID See C.7.6.10.1 for further explanation.

			Note: The requirement in this module is for Enumerated Values which override the requirements of the Mask Module.
>Contrast Frame Averaging	(0028,6112)	1C	Specified the number of contrast frames to average together before performing the mask operation. Required if Mask Frame Numbers (0028,6110) specifies more than one frame (i.e. is multi-valued). Note: The requirement in this module is conditional and overrides the optional requirements of the Mask Module.
Recommended Viewing Mode	(0028,1090)	1C	Specifies the recommended viewing protocol(s). Enumerated Value: SUB = for subtraction with mask images Required if Mask Subtraction Sequence (0028,6100) is present. Note: The requirement in this module is type 1C and an Enumerated Value is specified which override the requirements of the Mask Module.

C.11.14 Presentation State Blending Module

Table C.11.14-1 contains Attributes that describe the identification of two sets of grayscale images and the grayscale transformations to be applied to them, for the purpose of blending.

Table C.11.14-1
PRESENTATION STATE BLENDING MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Blending Sequence	(0070,0402)	1	A Sequence of exactly two Items, one identifying and describing transformations upon a set of underlying grayscale images, and the other identifying and describing transformations upon a set of superimposed grayscale images. See C.11.14.1.1.
>Blending Position	(0070,0405)	1	Whether or not the contents of the Item represent the superimposed or underlying image set. Enumerated Values: SUPERIMPOSED UNDERLYING
>Study Instance UID	(0020,000D)	1	Unique identifier for the Study that contains the images, which may differ from the Study in which the presentation state is contained.
>Include Presentation State Relationship Macro Table C.11.11-1b			

>Include Modality LUT Macro Table C.11-1b			
>Softcopy VOI LUT Sequence	(0028,3110)	1	Defines a sequence of VOI LUTs or Window Centers and Widths and to which images and frames they apply. No more than one VOI LUT Sequence containing a single Item or one pair of Window Center/Width values shall be specified for each image or frame. One or more Items shall be present.
>>Referenced Image Sequence	(0008,1140)	1C	Sequence of Items identifying images that are defined in the enclosing Item of the Blending Sequence (0070,0402), to which this VOI LUT or Window Center and Width applies. Required if the VOI LUT transformation in this Item does not apply to all the images in the enclosing Item of the Blending Sequence (0070,0402).
>>>Include Image SOP Instance Reference Macro Table 10-3			
>>Include VOI LUT Macro Table C.11-2b			
Relative Opacity	(0070,0403)	1	A value from 0.0 to 1.0 indicating the relative opacity of the pixels of the superimposed image, where 1.0 means that pixels of the superimposed image completely replace the pixels of the underlying image, and 0.0 means that the pixels of the underlying image completely replace the pixels of the superimposed image. See PS 3.4 for a detailed description of the blending operation.
Referenced Spatial Registration Sequence	(0070,0404)	3	A reference to Spatial Registration Instances that may be used to register the underlying and superimposed images. Zero or more Items may be present. Note: A Spatial Registration Instance may identify registration between frames of reference, or between explicitly identified images. In the latter case, the list of images referenced by the Presentation State, not the list of images referenced by the Spatial Registration Instance, are to be blended.
>Include SOP Instance Reference Macro Table C.17-3			

C.11.14.1 Presentation State Blending Module Attributes

C.11.14.1.1 Blending Sequence

The Blending Sequence (0070,0402) Attribute is used to identify two sets of images, one to be superimposed upon the other.

The sets of images and any subset of the frames therein in the case of multi-frame images are identified by Study, Series, SOP Instance and Frame Number.

This module specifies no explicit relationship (such as pairing or ordering) between the sets of images and frames defined in the first item for the underlying images, and the second item for the superimposed images. This module does not define how the images are spatially related, and what re-sampling, if any, needs to be performed before the images are blended for rendering.

Note: The images in the two sets may share the same Frame of Reference, in which case the rendering application can spatially relate the two sets of images based on their Image Position (Patient) (0020,0032) and Image Orientation (Patient) (0020,0037) Attributes.

Alternatively, a Spatial Registration SOP Instance may exist that relates either two different Frames of Reference, or two sets of images identified by UID and frame.

Whilst the two sets of images may already be spatially co-registered and oriented in the same plane, or even be sampled at the same in-plane and between-plane resolution, this will frequently not be the case.

See PS 3.4 for behavioral requirements that apply to Storage SOP Classes using this Module.

C.11.15 ICC Profile Module

Table C.11.15-1 contains Attributes that identify and describe an ICC Profile.

Table C.11.15-1
ICC PROFILE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
ICC Profile	(0028,2000)	1	An ICC Profile encoding the transformation of device-dependent color stored pixel values into PCS-Values.

C.11.15.1 Attribute descriptions

C.11.15.1.1 ICC Profile

The ICC Profile (0028,2000) Attribute encodes an ICC Input Device Profile that encodes the transformation of device-dependent color stored pixel values into PCS-Values.

Notes: 1. Only Input Device profiles are encoded, since display and output device profiles are not interchanged in DICOM, though they may be used internally within display and output devices, for example when they are calibrated.

2. Since the version of the ICC Profile is encoded within the profile itself, no additional version information is encoded in the ICC Profile Module.

The following constraints on the encoding of the ICC Profile shall be observed:

- The profile shall be of the Input Device class, i.e., header bytes 12 through15, Profile Device/Class Signature, shall be “scnr”
- The color space of the input shall be RGB, i.e., header bytes 16 through 19, Color Space Signature, shall be “RGB”, regardless of the Photometric Interpretation of the image pixel data prior to decompression
- PCS shall be CIELab or CIEXYZ, i.e., header bytes 20 through 23, Profile Connection Space, shall be either “Lab” or “XYZ”.

Notes: 1. In the case of a PCS of CIELab, the profile will contain an N-component LUT-based AtoB0Tag, since three-component matrix based transformations are only possible with a PCS of

CIEXYZ. A three-component matrix based transformation might be used to define a well-known rather than device-specific profile for such spaces as sRGB.

2. Selection of a PCS of CIELab or CIEXYZ within the ICC profile does not impact the DICOM encoding, since all color management systems support both.

The following constraints on the encoding of the ICC Profile are recommended:

- The Rendering Intent should be Perceptual.

Notes: 1. The rendering intent specifies how rendering will take place when the ICC Input Profile is linked with another Profile for the purpose of display.

2. A perceptual rendering intent implies that AtoB0Tag and BtoA0Tag tags will be present in the profile. The AtoB0Tag allows mapping from the input values to the PCS. The BtoA0Tag allows mapping from the PCS to the input values, though this is not required for the color rendering pipeline defined in PS 3.4.

- All LUTs should be represented as 16 bit values, using tag type lut16Type, for greater precision.
- The chromaticAdaptationTag should be set if the actual illumination source is not D50.

Note: See the discussion of white point in PS 3.4.

C.12 GENERAL MODULES

The SOP Common Module shall be mandatory for all DICOM IODs.

C.12.1 SOP Common Module

Table C.12-1 defines the Attributes which are required for proper functioning and identification of the associated SOP Instances. They do not specify any semantics about the Real-World Object represented by the IOD.

Table C.12-1
SOP COMMON MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
SOP Class UID	(0008,0016)	1	Uniquely identifies the SOP Class. See C.12.1.1.1 for further explanation. See also PS 3.4.
SOP Instance UID	(0008,0018)	1	Uniquely identifies the SOP Instance. See C.12.1.1.1 for further explanation. See also PS 3.4.
Specific Character Set	(0008,0005)	1C	Character Set that expands or replaces the Basic Graphic Set. Required if an expanded or replacement character set is used. See C.12.1.1.2 for Defined Terms.
Instance Creation Date	(0008,0012)	3	Date the SOP Instance was created.
Instance Creation Time	(0008,0013)	3	Time the SOP Instance was created.
Instance Creator UID	(0008,0014)	3	Uniquely identifies device which created the SOP Instance.
Related General SOP Class UID	(0008,001A)	3	Uniquely identifies a Related General SOP Class for the SOP Class of this Instance. See PS 3.4.
Original Specialized SOP Class UID	(0008,001B)	3	The SOP Class in which the Instance was originally encoded, but which has been replaced during a fall-back conversion to the current Related General SOP Class. See PS 3.4.
Coding Scheme Identification Sequence	(0008,0110)	3	Sequence of items that map values of Coding Scheme Designator (0008,0102) to an external coding system registration, or to a private or local coding scheme. One or more items may be present in the sequence.
>Coding Scheme Designator	(0008,0102)	1	The value of a Coding Scheme Designator, used in this SOP Instance, which is being mapped.
>Coding Scheme Registry	(0008,0112)	1C	The name of the external registry where further definition of the identified coding scheme may be obtained. Required if coding scheme is registered. Defined term: HL7
>Coding Scheme UID	(0008,010C)	1C	The coding scheme UID identifier.

			Required if coding scheme is identified by an ISO 8824 object identifier compatible with the UI VR.
>Coding Scheme External ID	(0008,0114)	2C	The coding scheme identifier as defined in an external registry. Required if coding scheme is registered and Coding Scheme UID (0008,010C) is not present.
>Coding Scheme Name	(0008,0115)	3	The coding scheme full common name
>Coding Scheme Version	(0008,0103)	3	The coding scheme version associated with the Coding Scheme Designator (0008,0102).
>Responsible Organization	(0008,0116)	3	Name of the organization responsible for the Coding Scheme. May include organizational contact information.
Timezone Offset From UTC	(0008,0201)	3	Contains the offset from UTC to the timezone for all DA and TM Attributes present in this SOP Instance. Encoded as an ASCII string in the format “&ZZZZ”. The components of this string, from left to right, are & = “+” or “-”, and ZZZZ = Hours and Minutes of offset. Notes: 1. This encoding is the same as described in PS 3.5 for the DT Value Representation. 2. This Attribute does not apply to values with a DT Value Representation, which may contain an explicitly encoded timezone. 3. The corrected time may cross a 24 hour boundary. For example, if Local Time = 1.00 a.m. and Offset = +0200, then UTC = 11.00 p.m. (23.00) the day before. 4. The “+” sign may not be omitted. Time earlier than UTC is expressed as a negative offset. Note: For example: UTC = 5.00 a.m. Local Time = 3.00 a.m. Offset = -0200 The local timezone offset is undefined if this Attribute is absent.
Contributing Equipment Sequence	(0018,A001)	3	Sequence of Items containing descriptive attributes of related equipment which has contributed to the acquisition, creation or modification of the composite instance. One or more Items may be included in this Sequence. See C.12.1.1.5 for further explanation.

>Purpose of Reference Code Sequence	(0040,A170)	1	Describes the purpose for which the related equipment is being reference. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence. See C.12.1.1.5 for further explanation.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			Defined Context ID 7005.
>Manufacturer	(0008,0070)	1	Manufacturer of the equipment that contributed to the composite instance.
>Institution Name	(0008,0080)	3	Institution where the equipment that contributed to the composite instance is located.
>Institution Address	(0008,0081)	3	Address of the institution where the equipment that contributed to the composite instance is located.
>Station Name	(0008,1010)	3	User defined name identifying the machine that contributed to the composite instance.
>Institutional Department Name	(0008,1040)	3	Department in the institution where the equipment that contributed to the composite instance is located.
>Manufacturer's Model Name	(0008,1090)	3	Manufacturer's model name of the equipment that contributed to the composite instance.
>Device Serial Number	(0018,1000)	3	Manufacturer's serial number of the equipment that contributed to the composite instance.
>Software Versions	(0018,1020)	3	Manufacturer's designation of the software version of the equipment that contributed to the composite instance.
>Spatial Resolution	(0018,1050)	3	The inherent limiting resolution in mm of the acquisition equipment for high contrast objects for the data gathering and reconstruction technique chosen. If variable across the images of the series, the value at the image center.
>Date of Last Calibration	(0018,1200)	3	Date when the image acquisition device calibration was last changed in any way. Multiple entries may be used for additional calibrations at other times. See C.7.5.1.1.1 for further explanation.
>Time of Last Calibration	(0018,1201)	3	Time when the image acquisition device calibration was last changed in any way. Multiple entries may be used. See C.7.5.1.1.1 for further explanation.
>Contribution DateTime	(0018,A002)	3	The Date & Time when the equipment contributed to the composite instance.
>Contribution Description	(0018,A003)	3	Description of the contribution the equipment made to the composite instance.
Instance Number	(0020,0013)	3	A number that identifies this Composite

			object instance.
SOP Instance Status	(0100,0410)	3	A flag that indicates the storage status of the SOP Instance. Not Specified (NS) implies that this SOP Instance has no special storage status, and hence no special actions need be taken. Original (OR) implies that this is the primary SOP instance for the purpose of storage, but that it has not yet been authorized for diagnostic use. Authorized Original (AO) implies that this is the primary SOP instance for the purpose of storage, which has been authorized for diagnostic use. Any copies of an Authorized Original should be given the status of Authorized Copy. Authorized Copy (AC) implies that this is a copy of an Authorized Original SOP Instance. Enumerated Values: NS, OR, AO, AC Note: Proper use of these flags is specified in Security Profiles. Implementations that do not conform to such Security Profiles may not necessarily handle these flags properly.
SOP Authorization Date and Time	(0100,0420)	3	The date and time when the SOP Instance Status (0100,0410) was set to AO.
SOP Authorization Comment	(0100,0424)	3	Any comments associated with the setting of the SOP Instance Status (0100,0410) to AO.
Authorization Equipment Certification Number	(0100,0426)	3	The certification number issued to the Application Entity that set the SOP Instance Status (0100,0410) to AO.
Include 'Digital Signatures Macro' Table C.12-5			
Encrypted Attributes Sequence	(0400,0500)	1C	Sequence of Items containing encrypted DICOM data. One or more Items shall be present. Required if application level confidentiality is needed and certain recipients are allowed to decrypt all or portions of the Encrypted Attributes Data Set. See C.12.1.1.4.1.
>Encrypted Content Transfer Syntax UID	(0400,0510)	1	Transfer Syntax used to encode the encrypted content. Only Transfer Syntaxes that explicitly include the VR and use Little Endian encoding shall be used.
>Encrypted Content	(0400,0520)	1	Encrypted data. See C.12.1.1.4.2.
Original Attributes Sequence	(0400,0561)	3	Sequence of Items containing all attributes that were removed or replaced by other values in the main dataset. One or more Items may be permitted in this sequence.

>Source of Previous Values	(0400,0564)	2	The source that provided the SOP Instance prior to the removal or replacement of the values. For example, this might be the Institution from which imported SOP Instances were received.
>Attribute Modification Datetime	(0400,0562)	1	Date and time the attributes were removed and/or replaced.
>Modifying System	(0400,0563)	1	Identification of the system which removed and/or replaced the attributes.
>Reason for the Attribute Modification	(0400,0565)	1	Reason for the attribute modification. Defined terms are: COERCE = Replace values of attributes such as Patient Name, ID, Accession Number, for example, during import of media from an external institution, or reconciliation against a master patient index. CORRECT = Replace incorrect values, such as Patient Name or ID, for example, when incorrect worklist item was chosen or operator input error.
>Modified Attributes Sequence	(0400,0550)	1	Sequence containing a single item that contains all the Attributes that were modified or removed from the main data set.
>>Any Attribute from the main data set that was modified or removed			
HL7 Structured Document Reference Sequence	(0040,A390)	1C	Sequence of items defining mapping and/or access mechanism for HL7 Structured Documents referenced from the current SOP Instance. One or more Items may be included in this sequence. See C.12.1.1.6. Required if HL7 Structured Documents are referenced within the Instance.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1	Unique identifier for the class of HL7 Structured Document.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1	Unique identifier for the HL7 Structured Document as used in DICOM instance references.
>HL7 Instance Identifier	(0040,E001)	1	Instance Identifier of the referenced HL7 Structured Document, encoded as a UID (OID or UUID), concatenated with a caret (“^”) and Extension value (if Extension is present in Instance Identifier).
>Retrieve URI	(0040,E010)	3	Retrieval access path to HL7 Structured Document. Includes fully specified scheme, authority, path, and query in accordance with RFC 2396

Note: If Issuer of Patient ID (0010,0021) is included in the Modified Attribute Sequence, the context of the prior Patient ID (0010,0020) can be more precisely identified.

C.12.1.1 SOP Common Attribute Descriptions

C.12.1.1.1 SOP Class UID, SOP Instance UID

The SOP Class UID and SOP Instance UID Attributes are defined for all DICOM IODs. However, they are only encoded in Composite IODs with the Type equal to 1. See C.1.2.3. When encoded they shall be equal to their respective Attributes in the DIMSE Services and the File Meta Information header (see PS 3.10 Media Storage).

C.12.1.1.2 Specific Character Set

Specific Character Set (0008,0005) identifies the Character Set that expands or replaces the Basic Graphic Set (ISO 646) for values of Data Elements that have Value Representation of SH, LO, ST, PN, LT or UT. See PS 3.5.

If the Attribute Specific Character Set (0008,0005) is not present or has only a single value, Code Extension techniques are not used. Defined terms for the Attribute Specific Character Set (0008,0005), when single valued, are derived from the International Registration Number as per ISO 2375 (e.g., ISO_IR 100 for Latin alphabet No. 1). See Table C.12-2.

Table C.12-2
DEFINED TERMS FOR SINGLE-BYTE CHARACTER SETS WITHOUT CODE EXTENSIONS

Character Set Description	Defined Term	ISO registration number	Number of characters	Code element	Character Set
Default repertoire	none	ISO-IR 6	94	G0	ISO 646
Latin alphabet No. 1	ISO_IR 100	ISO-IR 100	96	G1	Supplementary set of ISO 8859
		ISO-IR 6	94	G0	ISO 646
Latin alphabet No. 2	ISO_IR 101	ISO-IR 101	96	G1	Supplementary set of ISO 8859
		ISO-IR 6	94	G0	ISO 646
Latin alphabet No. 3	ISO_IR 109	ISO-IR 109	96	G1	Supplementary set of ISO 8859
		ISO-IR 6	94	G0	ISO 646
Latin alphabet No. 4	ISO_IR 110	ISO-IR 110	96	G1	Supplementary set of ISO 8859
		ISO-IR 6	94	G0	ISO 646
Cyrillic	ISO_IR 144	ISO-IR 144	96	G1	Supplementary set of ISO 8859
		ISO-IR 6	94	G0	ISO 646
Arabic	ISO_IR 127	ISO-IR 127	96	G1	Supplementary set of ISO 8859
		ISO-IR 6	94	G0	ISO 646
Greek	ISO_IR 126	ISO-IR 126	96	G1	Supplementary set of ISO 8859
		ISO-IR 6	94	G0	ISO 646
Hebrew	ISO_IR 138	ISO-IR 138	96	G1	Supplementary set of

					ISO 8859
		ISO-IR 6	94	G0	ISO 646
Latin alphabet No. 5	ISO_IR 148	ISO-IR 148	96	G1	Supplementary set of ISO 8859
		ISO-IR 6	94	G0	ISO 646
Japanese	ISO_IR 13	ISO-IR 13	94	G1	JIS X 0201: Katakana
		ISO-IR 14	94	G0	JIS X 0201: Romaji
Thai	ISO_IR 166	ISO-IR 166	88	G1	TIS 620-2533 (1990)
		ISO-IR 6	94	G0	ISO 646

Note: To use the single-byte code table of JIS X0201, the value of attribute Specific Character Set (0008,0005), value 1 should be ISO_IR 13. This means that ISO-IR 13 is designated as the G1 code element which is invoked in the GR area. It should be understood that, in addition, ISO-IR 14 is designated as the G0 code element and this is invoked in the GL area.

If the attribute Specific Character Set (0008,0005) has more than one value, Code Extension techniques are used and Escape Sequences may be encountered in all character sets. Requirements for the use of Code Extension techniques are specified in PS 3.5. In order to indicate the presence of Code Extension, the Defined Terms for the repertoires have the prefix "ISO 2022", e.g., ISO 2022 IR 100 for the Latin Alphabet No. 1. See Table 12-3 and Table 12-4. Table 12-3 describes single-byte character sets for value 1 to value n of the attribute Specific Character Set (0008,0005), and Table 12-4 describes multi-byte character sets for value 2 to value n of the attribute Specific Character Set (0008,0005).

Note: A prefix other than "ISO 2022" may be needed in the future if other Code Extension techniques are adopted.

Table C.12-3
DEFINED TERMS FOR SINGLE-BYTE CHARACTER SETS WITH CODE EXTENSIONS

Character Set Description	Defined Term	Standard for Code Extension	ESC sequence	ISO registration number	Number of char-acters	Code element	Character Set
Default repertoire	ISO 2022 IR 6	ISO 2022	ESC 02/08 04/02	ISO-IR 6	94	G0	ISO 646
Latin alphabet No. 1	ISO 2022 IR 100	ISO 2022	ESC 02/13 04/01	ISO-IR 100	96	G1	Supplementary set of ISO 8859
		ISO 2022	ESC 02/08 04/02	ISO-IR 6	94	G0	ISO 646
Latin alphabet No. 2	ISO 2022 IR 101	ISO 2022	ESC 02/13 04/02	ISO-IR 101	96	G1	Supplementary set of ISO 8859
		ISO 2022	ESC 02/08 04/02	ISO-IR 6	94	G0	ISO 646
Latin alphabet No. 3	ISO 2022 IR 109	ISO 2022	ESC 02/13 04/03	ISO-IR 109	96	G1	Supplementary set of ISO 8859
		ISO 2022	ESC 02/08 04/02	ISO-IR 6	94	G0	ISO 646
Latin alphabet No. 4	ISO 2022 IR 110	ISO 2022	ESC 02/13 04/04	ISO-IR 110	96	G1	Supplementary set of ISO 8859

		ISO 2022	ESC 02/08 04/02	ISO-IR 6	94	G0	ISO 646
Cyrillic	ISO 2022 IR 144	ISO 2022	ESC 02/13 04/12	ISO-IR 144	96	G1	Supplementary set of ISO 8859
		ISO 2022	ESC 02/08 04/02	ISO-IR 6	94	G0	ISO 646
Arabic	ISO 2022 IR 127	ISO 2022	ESC 02/13 04/07	ISO-IR 127	96	G1	Supplementary set of ISO 8859
		ISO 2022	ESC 02/08 04/02	ISO-IR 6	94	G0	ISO 646
Greek	ISO 2022 IR 126	ISO 2022	ESC 02/13 04/06	ISO-IR 126	96	G1	Supplementary set of ISO 8859
		ISO 2022	ESC 02/08 04/02	ISO-IR 6	94	G0	ISO 646
Hebrew	ISO 2022 IR 138	ISO 2022	ESC 02/13 04/08	ISO-IR 138	96	G1	Supplementary set of ISO 8859
		ISO 2022	ESC 02/08 04/02	ISO-IR 6	94	G0	ISO 646
Latin alphabet No. 5	ISO 2022 IR 148	ISO 2022	ESC 02/13 04/13	ISO-IR 148	96	G1	Supplementary set of ISO 8859
		ISO 2022	ESC 02/08 04/02	ISO-IR 6	94	G0	ISO 646
Japanese	ISO 2022 IR 13	ISO 2022	ESC 02/0 9 04/09	ISO-IR 13	94	G1	JIS X 0201: Katakana
		ISO 2022	ESC 02/08 04/10	ISO-IR 14	94	G0	JIS X 0201: Romaji
Thai	ISO 2022 IR 166	ISO 2022	ESC 02/13 05/04	ISO-IR 166	88	G1	TIS 620-2533 (1990)
		ISO 2022	ESC 02/08 04/02	ISO-IR 6	94	G0	ISO 646

Note: If the attribute Specific Character Set (0008,0005) has more than one value and value 1 is empty, it is assumed that value 1 is ISO 2022 IR 6.

Table C.12-4
DEFINED TERMS FOR MULTI-BYTE CHARACTER SETS WITH CODE EXTENSIONS

Character Set Description	Defined Term	Standard for Code Extension	ESC sequence	ISO registration number	Number of characters	Code element	Character Set
Japanese	ISO 2022 IR 87	ISO 2022	ESC 02/04 04/02	ISO-IR 87	94^2	G0	JIS X 0208: Kanji
	ISO 2022 IR 159	ISO 2022	ESC 02/04 02/08 04/04	ISO-IR 159	94^2	G0	JIS X 0212: Supplementary Kanji set
Korean	ISO 2022 IR 149	ISO 2022	ESC 02/04 02/09 04/03	ISO-IR 149	94^2	G1	KS X 1001: Hangul and

							Hanja

There are multi-byte character sets that prohibit the use of Code Extension Techniques. The Unicode character set used in ISO 10646, when encoded in UTF-8, and the GB18030 character set, encoded per the rules of GB18030, both prohibit the use of Code Extension Techniques. These character sets may only be specified as value 1 in the Specific Character Set (0008,0005) attribute and there shall only be one value. The minimal length UTF-8 encoding shall always be used for ISO 10646.

Notes: 1. The ISO standards for 10646 now prohibit the use of anything but the minimum length encoding for UTF-8. UTF-8 permits multiple different encodings, but when used to encode Unicode characters in accordance with ISO 10646-1 and 10646-2 (with extensions) only the minimal encodings are legal.

2. The representation for the characters in the DICOM Default Character Repertoire is the same single byte value for the Default Character Repertoire, ISO 10646 in UTF-8, and GB18030. It is also the 7-bit US-ASCII encoding.

Table C.12-5
DEFINED TERMS FOR MULTI-BYTE CHARACTER SETS WITHOUT CODE EXTENSIONS

Character Set Description	Defined Term
Unicode in UTF-8	ISO_IR 192
GB18030	GB18030

C.12.1.1.3 Digital Signatures Macro

This Macro allows Digital Signatures to be included in a DICOM Data Set for the purpose of insuring the integrity of the Data Set, and to authenticate the sources of the Data Set. Table C.12-6 defines the Attributes needed to embed a Digital Signature in a Data Set. This Macro may appear in individual sequence items as well as in the main Data Set of the SOP Instance.

Note: Each Item of a Sequence of Items is a Data Set. Thus, individual Sequence items may incorporate their own Digital Signatures in addition to any Digital Signatures added to the Data Set in which the Sequence appears.

Table C.12-6
DIGITAL SIGNATURES MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
MAC Parameters Sequence	(4FFE,0001)	3	A sequence of one or more items that describe the parameters used to calculate a MAC for use in Digital Signatures.
>MAC ID Number	(0400,0005)	1	A number used to identify this MAC Parameters Sequence item.
>MAC Calculation Transfer Syntax UID	(0400,0010)	1	The Transfer Syntax UID used to encode the values of the Data Elements included in the MAC calculation. Only Transfer Syntaxes that explicitly include the VR and use Little Endian encoding shall be used. Notes: Certain Transfer Syntaxes, particularly those that are used with compressed data, allow the fragmentation of the pixel data to change. If such fragmentation changes, Digital Signatures generated with such

			Transfer Syntaxes could become invalid.
>MAC Algorithm	(0400,0015)	1	The algorithm used in generating the MAC to be encrypted to form the Digital Signature. Defined Terms: RIPEMD160 MD5 SHA1 . Note: Digital Signature Security Profiles (see PS 3.15) may require the use of a restricted subset of these terms.
>Data Elements Signed	(0400,0020)	1	A list of Data Element Tags in the order they appear in the Data Set which identify the Data Elements used in creating the MAC for the Digital Signature. See Section C.12.1.1.3.1.1.
Digital Signatures Sequence	(FFFA,FFFA)	3	Sequence holding one or more Digital Signatures.
>MAC ID Number	(0400,0005)	1	A number used to identify which MAC Parameters Sequence item was used in the calculation of this Digital Signature.
>Digital Signature UID	(0400,0100)	1	A UID that can be used to uniquely reference this signature.
>Digital Signature DateTime	(0400,0105)	1	The date and time the Digital Signature was created. The time shall include an offset (i.e., time zone indication) from Coordinated Universal Time. Note: This is not a certified timestamp, and hence is not completely verifiable. An application can compare this date and time with those of other signatures and the validity date of the certificate to gain confidence in the veracity of this date and time.
>Certificate Type	(0400,0110)	1	The type of certificate used in (0400,0115). Defined Term: X509_1993_SIG Note: Digital Signature Security Profiles (see PS 3.15) may require the use of a restricted subset of these terms.
>Certificate of Signer	(0400,0115)	1	A certificate that holds the identity of the entity producing this Digital Signature, that entity's public key or key identifier, and the algorithm and associated parameters with which that public key is to be used. Algorithms allowed are specified in Digital Signature Security Profiles (see PS 3.15). Notes: 1. As technology advances, additional encryption algorithms may be allowed in future versions. Implementations should take this possibility into account. 2. When symmetric encryption is used, the certificate merely identifies which key was used by which entity, but not

			Note: Note: the actual key itself. Some other means (e.g., a trusted third party) must be used to obtain the key.
>Signature	(0400,0120)	1	The MAC generated as described in Section 12.2.1.1 and encrypted using the algorithm, parameters, and private key associated with the Certificate of the Signer (0400,0115). See Section C.12.1.1.3.1.2.
>Certified Timestamp Type	(0400,0305)	1C	The type of certified timestamp used in the Certified Timestamp (0400,0310) Attribute. Required if Certified Timestamp (0400,0310) is present. Defined Terms: CMS_TSP – Internet X.509 Public Key Infrastructure Time Stamp Protocol Note: Digital Signature Security Profiles (see PS 3.15) may require the use of a restricted subset of these terms.
>Certified Timestamp	(0400,0310)	3	A certified timestamp of the Digital Signature (0400,0120) Attribute Value, which shall be obtained when the Digital Signature is created. See Section C.12.1.1.3.1.3.
>Digital Signature Purpose Code Sequence	(0400,0401)	3	The purpose of this Digital Signature.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*Baseline Context ID is 7007*

C.12.1.1.3.1 Digital Signature Attribute Descriptions

C.12.1.1.3.1.1 Data Elements Signed

The Data Elements Signed Attribute shall list the Tags of the Data Elements that are included in the MAC calculation. The Tags listed shall reference Data Elements at the same level as the Mac Parameters Sequence (4FFE,0001) Data Element in which the Data Elements Signed Attribute appears. Tags included in Data Elements Signed shall be listed in the order in which they appear within the Data Set.

The following Data Elements shall not be included either implicitly or explicitly in the list of Tags in Data Elements Signed, nor included as part of the MAC calculation:

- The Length to End (0008,0001) or any Tag with an element number of 0000 (i.e., no data set or group lengths may be included in MAC calculations)
- Tags with a group number less than 0008
- Tags associated with Data Elements whose VR is UN
- Tags of Data Elements whose VR is SQ, where any Data Element within that Sequence of Items has a VR of UN recursively
- Tags with a group number of FFFA (e.g. the Digital Signatures Sequence)
- MAC Parameters Sequence (4FFE,0001)
- Data Set Trailing Padding (FFFC,FFFC)
- Item Delimitation Item (FFFE,E00D)

Notes: 1. The Length to End and group lengths can change if non-signed Data Elements change, so it is not appropriate to include them in the MAC calculation.

2. Since the Data Element Tags identifying a sequence and which start each item are included in the MAC calculation, there is no need to include the Item Delimitation Item Tags.

If any of the Data Element Tags in the list refer to a Sequence of Items, then the Tags of all Data Elements within all Items of that Sequence shall be implicitly included in the list of Data Elements Signed, except those disallowed above. This implicit list shall also include the Item Tag (FFFE,E000) Data Elements that separate the Sequence Items and the Sequence Delimitation Item (FFFE,E0DD).

Notes: It is possible to sign individual items within a sequence by including the Digital Signatures Macro in that sequence item. In fact, this is a highly desirable feature, particular when used in the context of reports. The Digital Signatures Macro is applied at the Data Set level, and Sequences of Items are merely Data Sets embedded within a larger Data Set. Essentially, the Digital Signature Macro may be applied recursively.

An example of nesting Digital Signatures within Data Elements is illustrated in the following figure:

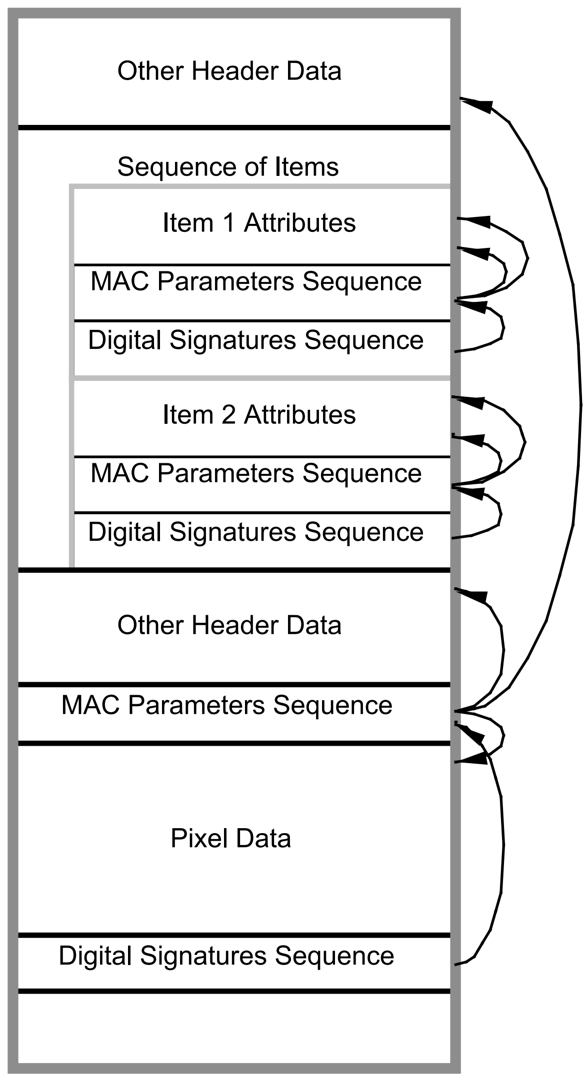


Figure C.12-1
Example of nesting Digital Signatures (Informative)

In this example, there is main signature covering the pixel data and a few other Data Elements, plus two individually signed items within a sequence.

For Data Elements with a VR OB (e. g. pixel data) that have an undefined length (i.e. the data is encapsulated as described in PS 3.5), the Item Data Element Tags that separate the fragments shall implicitly be included in the list of Data Elements Signed (i.e. a Data Element with a VR of OB is encoded in the same fashion as a Sequence of Items).

C.12.1.1.3.1.2 Signature

To generate the MAC, Data Elements referenced either explicitly or implicitly by the Tags in the Data Elements Signed list shall be encoded using the Transfer Syntax identified by the MAC Calculation Transfer Syntax UID (0400,0010) of the MAC Parameters Sequence item where the Data Elements Signed Attribute appears. Data shall be formed into a byte stream and presented to the MAC Algorithm for computation of the MAC according to the following rules:

For all Data Elements except those with a VR of SQ or with a VR of OB with an undefined length, all Data Element fields, including the Tag, the VR, the reserved field (if any), the Value Length, and the Value, shall be placed into the byte stream in the order encountered.

For Data Elements with a VR of SQ or with a VR of OB with an undefined length, the Tag, the VR, and the reserved field are placed into the byte stream. The Value Length shall not be included. This is followed by each Item Tag in the order encountered, without including the Value Length, followed by the contents of the Value for that item. In the case of an Item within a Data Element whose VR is SQ, these rules are applied recursively to all of the Data Elements within the Value of that Item. After all the Items have been incorporate into the byte stream, a Sequence Delimitation Item Tag (FFFE,E0DD) shall be added to the byte stream presented to the MAC Algorithm, regardless of whether or not it was originally present.

Note: Since the Value Length of Data Elements with a VR of SQ can be either explicit or undefined, the Value Lengths of such Data Elements are left out of the MAC calculation. Similarly, the Value Length of Data Elements with a VR of OB with an undefined length are also left out so that they are handled consistently. If such Data Elements do come with undefined lengths, including the Item Tags that separate the Items or fragments insures that Data Elements cannot be moved between Items or Fragments without compromising the Digital Signature. For those Data Elements with explicit lengths, if the length of an item changes, the added or removed portions would also impact the MAC calculation, so it is not necessary to include explicit lengths in the MAC calculation. It is possible that including the Value Lengths could make cryptoanalysis easier.

After the fields of all the Data Elements in the Data Elements Signed list have been placed into the byte stream presented to the MAC Algorithm according to the above rules, all of the Data Elements within the Digital Signatures Sequence item except the Certificate of Signer (0400,0115), Signature (0400,0120), Certified Timestamp Type (0400,0305), and Certified Timestamp (0400,0310) shall also be encoded according to the above rules, and presented to the MAC algorithm (i.e., the Attributes of the Digital Signature Sequence Item for this particular Digital Signature are also implicitly included in the list of Data Elements Signed, except as noted above).

The resulting MAC code after processing this byte stream by the MAC Algorithm is then encrypted as specified in the Certificate of Signer and placed in the Value of the Signature Data Element.

Notes: 1. The Transfer Syntax used in the MAC calculation may differ from the Transfer Syntax used to exchange the Data Set.

2. Digital Signatures require explicit VR in order to calculate the MAC. An Application Entity which receives a Data Set with an implicit VR Transfer Syntax may not be able to verify Digital Signatures that include Private Data Elements or Data Elements unknown to that Application

Entity.This also true of any Data Elements whose VR is UN. Without knowledge of the Value Representation, the receiving Application Entity would be unable to perform proper byte swapping or be able to properly parse sequences in order to generate a MAC.

3. If more than one entity signs, each Digital Signature would appear in its own Digital Signatures Sequence item. The Digital Signatures may or may not share the same MAC Parameters Sequence item.

4. The notion of a notary public (i.e., someone who verifies the identity of the signer) for Digital Signatures is partially filled by the authority that issued the Certificate of Signer.

C.12.1.1.3.1.3 Certified Timestamp

To generate a certified timestamp, the Value of the Signature (0400,0120) Attribute is sent to a third party, as specified by the protocol referred to by the Certified Timestamp Type (0400,0305) Attribute. The third party then generates and returns a certified timestamp in the form specified by that protocol. The certified timestamp returned by the third party is encoded as a stream of bytes in the Certified Timestamp Attribute.

Note: The timestamp protocol may be specified by a Profile in PS 3.15.

C.12.1.1.4 Encrypted Attribute Descriptions

C.12.1.1.4.1 Encrypted Attributes Sequence

Each Item of the Encrypted Attributes Sequence (0400,0500) contains an encrypted DICOM dataset containing a single instance of the Encrypted Attributes Data Set (Table C.12-7). It also contains encrypted content-encryption keys for one or more recipients. The encoding is based on the Enveloped-data Content Type of the *Cryptographic Message Syntax* defined in RFC 2630. It allows to encrypt the embedded Data Set for an arbitrary number of recipients using any of the three key management techniques supported by RFC 2630:

- *Key Transport:* the content-encryption key is encrypted in the recipient's public key;
- *Key Agreement:* the recipient's public key and the sender's private key are used to generate a pairwise symmetric key, then the content-encryption key is encrypted in the pairwise symmetric key; and
- *Symmetric key-encryption Keys:* the content-encryption key is encrypted in a previously distributed symmetric key-encryption key.

A recipient decodes the embedded Encrypted Attributes Data Set by decrypting one of the encrypted content-encryption keys, decrypting the encrypted dataset with the recovered content-encryption key, and then decoding the DICOM dataset using the Transfer Syntax specified in Encrypted Content Transfer Syntax UID (0400,0510).

Multiple Items may be present in the Encrypted Attributes Sequence. The different Items may contain Encrypted Attributes Data Sets with the same or different sets of Attributes and may contain encrypted content-encryption keys for the same or different sets of recipients. However, if the same Attribute is contained in more than one embedded Encrypted Attributes Data Set, the value of the Attribute must be identical in all embedded Encrypted Attributes Data Sets in which the Attribute is contained.

Note: If the Encrypted Attributes Sequence contains more than one Item, and a recipient holds the key for more than one of the items, the recipient may either decode any single one or more of the embedded Data Sets at its own discretion. Since the same Attribute is required to have the same value in all embedded Encrypted Attributes Data Sets, it is safe to “overlay” multiple embedded Encrypted Attributes Data Sets in an arbitrary order upon decoding.

C.12.1.1.4.2 Encrypted Content

The Encrypted Content (0400,0520) Attribute contains an Enveloped-data content type of the cryptographic message syntax defined in RFC 2630. The encrypted content of the Enveloped-data content type is an instance of the Encrypted Attributes Data Set as shown in Table C.12-7 (i.e., it is a Sequence with a single Item), encoded with the Transfer Syntax specified by the Encrypted Content Transfer Syntax UID (0400,0510) Attribute. Figure C.12-2 shows an example of how the Encrypted Content is encoded. The exact use of this Data Set is defined in the Attribute Confidentiality Profiles in PS 3.15.

Since the de-identified SOP Instance is a significantly altered version of the original Data Set, it is a new SOP Instance, with a SOP Instance UID that differs from the original Data Set.

Note: 1. Content encryption may require that the content (the DICOM Data Set) be padded to a multiple of some block size. This shall be performed according to the Content-encryption Process defined in RFC-2630.

2. Any standard or private Transfer Syntax may be specified in Encrypted Content Transfer Syntax UID (0400,0510) unless encoding is performed in accordance with an Attribute Confidentiality Profile that specifies additional restrictions. In general, an application entity decoding the Encrypted Attributes Sequence may not assume any particular Transfer Syntax or set of Transfer Syntaxes to be used with Encrypted Content Transfer Syntax UID (0400,0510).

3. For certain applications it might be necessary to “blacken” (remove) identifying information that is burned in to the image pixel data. The Encrypted Attributes Data Set does not specify a means of restoring the original image information without the complete image pixel data being encoded inside the Modified Attributes Sequence (0400,0550). If access to the original, unmodified pixel data is required and the image pixel data cannot be replicated inside the Modified Attributes Sequence (0400,0550) due to resource considerations, the SOP Instance UID may be used to locate the original SOP Instance from which the de-identified version was derived.

4. There is no guarantee that the original SOP Instance can be reconstructed from the data in Encrypted Content. If access to the original data is required, the (de-encrypted) UIDs may be used to locate the original SOP Instance from which the de-identified version was derived.

Table C.12-7
ENCRYPTED ATTRIBUTES DATA SET ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Modified Attributes Sequence	(0400,0550)	1	Sequence of Items containing all Attributes that were removed or replaced by “dummy values” in the main dataset during de-identification of the SOP instance. Upon reversal of the de-identification process, the Attributes are copied back into the main dataset, replacing any dummy values that might have been created. Only a single Item shall be present.
> Any Attribute from the main dataset that was modified or removed during the de-identification process.		*3*	

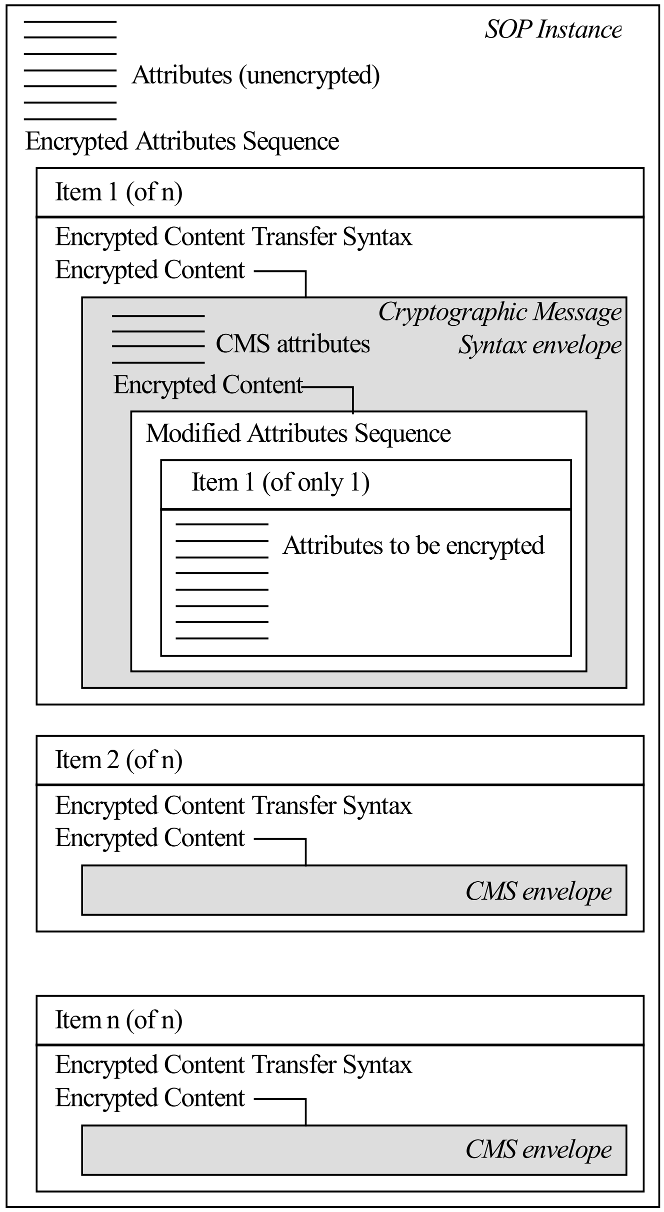


Figure C.12-2
Example encoding of Encrypted Attributes Data Set (Informative)

C.12.1.1.5 Contributing Equipment Sequence

Contributing Equipment Sequence (0018,A001) allows equipment to be described which has contributed towards the creation of the composite instance. The general class of contribution is denoted via a coded entry within the Purpose of Reference Code Sequence (0040,A170).

Notes: 1. For example, a post-processing application creating DERIVED images from ORIGINAL images would place its own identification within the Equipment Module and identify the original acquisition equipment as an Item within the Contributing Equipment Sequence (0018,A001). Here, the value of the Purpose of Reference Code Sequence (0040,A170) within the Item would be (109101, DCM, ”Acquisition Equipment"). Image display applications wishing to annotate images with information related to the acquisition environment would prefer to extract such details from the Contributing Equipment Sequence rather than the Equipment Module.

2. For example, an image fusion application would place its own identification within the Equipment Module and identify each of the original acquisition equipment as separate Items within the Contributing Equipment Sequence (0018,A001). Here, the value of the Purpose of Reference Code Sequence (0040,A170) within each Item would be (109101, DCM, ”Acquisition Equipment").

3. For example, a post-processing application creating DERIVED images from other DERIVED images would place its own identification within the Equipment Module and add the source equipment as an additional Item within the Contributing Equipment Sequence (0018,A001). Here, the value of the Purpose of Reference Code Sequence (0040,A170) within the Item would be (109102, DCM, ”Processing Equipment").

4. For example, a gateway device that coerces attributes of existing composite instances (without creating new composite instances) would retain information about the creating equipment within the Equipment Module and provide its own identification as an Item within the Contributing Equipment Sequence (0018,A001). Here, the value of the Purpose of Reference Code Sequence (0040,A170) within the Item would be (109103, DCM, ”Modifying Equipment").

C.12.1.1.6 HL7 Structured Document Reference Sequence

The HL7 Structured Document Reference Sequence (0040,A390) identifies instances of Structured Documents defined under an HL7 standard. The HL7 standards that define such documents include the Clinical Document Architecture (CDA) and Structured Product Labeling (SPL) standards.

References to HL7 Structured Documents from within DICOM SOP Instances shall be encoded with a SOP Class UID and SOP Instance UID pair. The Abstract Syntax of an HL7 Structured Document is defined by its Hierarchical Message Description; the Object Identifier of the Hierarchical Message Description shall be used as the SOP Class UID for the Structured Document reference.

Notes: 1. The Hierarchical Message Description Object Identifiers are specified in the HL7 OID Registry (http://hl7.org/oid). The HL7 OIDs for these types of documents are:

CDA Release 1	2.16.840.1.113883.1.7.1
CDA Release 2	2.16.840.1.113883.1.7.2
SPL Release 1	2.16.840.1.113883.1.7.3

2. The Hierarchical Message Description Object Identifiers do not imply a network or media storage service, as do SOP Class UIDs. However, they do identify the Abstract Syntax, similar to SOP Class UIDs.

The HL7 Structured Document instances are natively identified by an attribute using the Instance Identifier (II) Data Type, as defined in HL7 v3 Data Types - Abstract Specification. A UID as defined by the DICOM UI Value Representation is a valid identifier under the II Data Type; however, an II attribute is not always encodable as a UID. Therefore a UID shall be constructed for use within the DICOM Data Set that can be mapped to the native instance identifier encoded as an HL7 II Data Type. This mapping is performed through the combination of the local Referenced SOP Instance UID (0008,1155) and the HL7 Instance Identifier (0040,E001) attributes in the HL7 Structured Document Reference Sequence (0040,A390).

Notes: 1. An HL7 II is not encodable as a UID if it exceeds 64 characters, or if it includes an extension. See HL7 v3 DT R1.

2. Even though an II may contain just a UID, applications should take care to use the II specified in HL7 Instance Identifier (0040,E001) to access the Structured Document. If the instance identifier used natively within the referenced document is encodable using the UI VR, i.e., it is an ISO 8824 OID up to 64 characters without an extension, it is recommended to be used as the Referenced SOP Instance UID within the current Instance.

3. The Referenced SOP Instance UID used to reference a particular HL7 Structured Document is not necessarily the same in all DICOM Instances. For example, two SR Documents may *internally* use different SOP Instance UIDs to reference the same HL7 Structured Document, but they will each contain a mapping to the same HL7 Instance Identifier as the *external* identifier.

4. The HL7 Instance Identifier is encoded in attribute (0040,E001) as a serialization of the UID and Extension (if any) separated by a caret character. This is the same format adopted in the IHE Cross-Enterprise Document Sharing (XDS) profile (see http://www.ihe.net).

5. See Figure C.12-3.

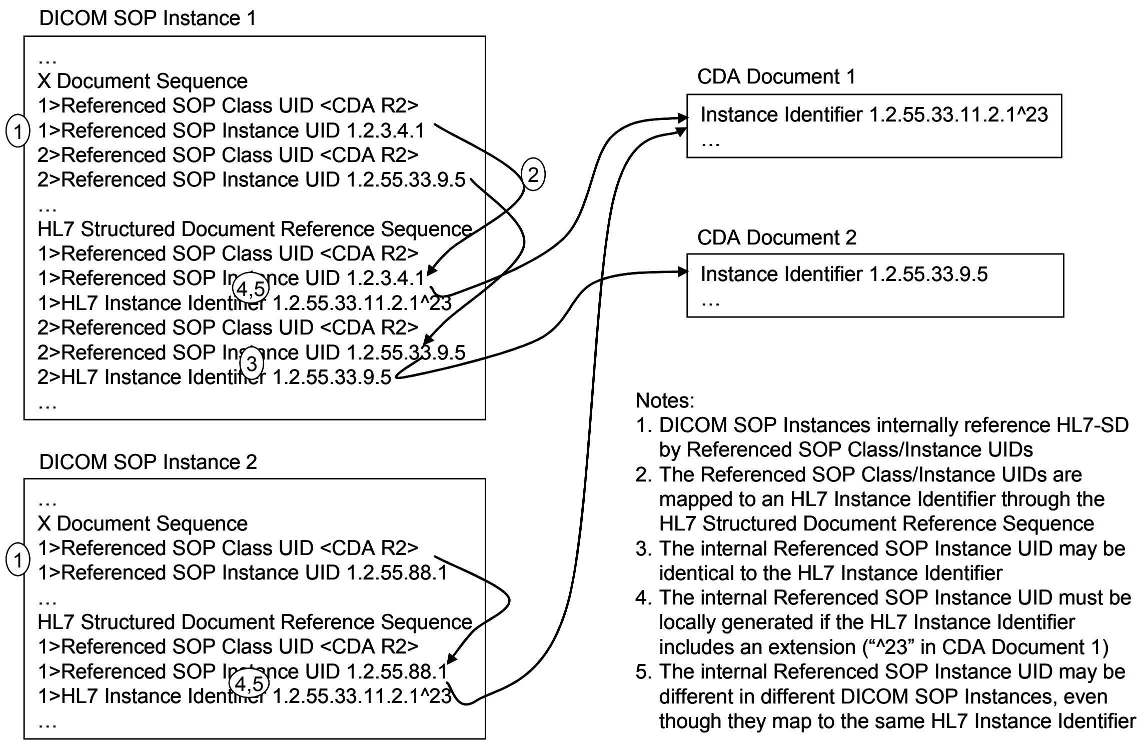


Figure C.12-3 HL7 Structured Document References

C.12.2 Common Instance Reference Module

Table C.12-8 defines the Attributes that describe the hierarchical relationships of any SOP Instances referenced from other Modules within the Instance in which this Module occurs.

Table C.12-8
COMMON INSTANCE REFERENCE MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Include Series and Instance Reference Macro, Table 10-4.			Identifies all Series within the Study of which this Instance is a part, which Series contain Instances that are referenced elsewhere in this Instance.
Studies Containing Other Referenced Instances Sequence	(0008,1200)	1C	Sequence of items each identifying a Study other than the Study of which this Instance is a part, which Studies contain Instances that are referenced elsewhere in this Instance. One or more Items shall be present. Required if this Instance

			references Instances in other Studies.
>Study Instance UID	(0020,000D)	1	Unique identifier of the Study containing the referenced Instances.
>Include Series and Instance Reference Macro, Table 10-4.			

C.13 PRINT MANAGEMENT SPECIFIC MODULES

The following Sections specify Modules used for Print Management.

C.13.1 Basic Film Session Presentation Module

Table C.13-1
BASIC FILM SESSION PRESENTATION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute name	Tag	Attribute Description
Number of Copies	(2000,0010)	Number of copies to be printed for each film of the film session.
Print Priority	(2000,0020)	Specifies the priority of the print job. Enumerated Values: HIGH MED LOW
Medium Type	(2000,0030)	Type of medium on which the print job will be printed. Defined Terms: PAPER CLEAR FILM BLUE FILM MAMMO CLEAR FILM MAMMO BLUE FILM
Film Destination	(2000,0040)	Film destination. Defined Terms: MAGAZINE = the exposed film is stored in film magazine PROCESSOR = the exposed film is developed in film processor BIN_i = the exposed film is deposited in a sorter bin where “I” represents the bin number. Film sorter BINs shall be numbered sequentially starting from one and no maxiumu is placed on the number of BINs. The encoding of the BIN number shall not contain leading zeros.
Film Session Label	(2000,0050)	Human readable label that identifies the film session
Memory Allocation	(2000,0060)	Amount of memory allocated for the film session. Value is expressed in KB
Owner ID	(2100,0160)	Identification of the owner of the film session

C.13.2 Basic Film Session Relationship Module

Table C.13-2
BASIC FILM SESSION RELATIONSHIP MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
Referenced Film Box Sequence	(2000,0500)	A Sequence which provides references to a set of Film Box SOP Class/Instance pairs. Zero or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.

>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.

Note: Proposed Study Sequence (2130,00A0) was previously included in this Module but has been retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.13.3 Basic Film Box Presentation Module

Table C.13-3
BASIC FILM BOX PRESENTATION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
Image Display Format	(2010,0010)	Type of image display format. Enumerated Values: STANDARD\C,R : film contains equal size rectangular image boxes with R rows of image boxes and C columns of image boxes; C and R are integers. ROW\R1,R2,R3, etc. : film contains rows with equal size rectangular image boxes with R1 image boxes in the first row, R2 image boxes in second row, R3 image boxes in third row, etc.; R1, R2, R3, etc. are integers. COL\C1,C2,C3, etc.: film contains columns with equal size rectangular image boxes with C1 image boxes in the first column, C2 image boxes in second column, C3 image boxes in third column, etc.; C1, C2, C3, etc. are integers. SLIDE : film contains 35mm slides; the number of slides for a particular film size is configuration dependent. SUPERSLIDE : film contains 40mm slides; the number of slides for a particular film size is configuration dependent. CUSTOM\i : film contains a customized ordering of rectangular image boxes; i identifies the image display format; the definition of the image display formats is defined in the Conformance Statement; i is an integer
Annotation Display Format ID	(2010,0030)	Identification of annotation display format. The definition of the annotation display formats and the annotation box position sequence are defined in the Conformance Statement
Film Orientation	(2010,0040)	Film orientation. Enumerated Values: PORTRAIT = vertical film position LANDSCAPE = horizontal film position
Film Size ID	(2010,0050)	Film size identification. Defined Terms: 8INX10IN 8_5INX11IN 10INX12IN 10INX14IN 11INX14IN

		11INX17IN 14INX14IN 14INX17IN 24CMX24CM 24CMX30CM A4 A3 Note: 10INX14IN corresponds with 25.7CMX36.4CM A4 corresponds with 210 x 297 millimeters A3 corresponds with 297 x 420 millimeters
Magnification Type	(2010,0060)	Interpolation type by which the printer magnifies or decimates the image in order to fit the image in the image box on film. Defined Terms: REPLICATE BILINEAR CUBIC NONE
Smoothing Type	(2010,0080)	Further specifies the type of the interpolation function. Values are defined in Conformance Statement. Only valid for Magnification Type (2010,0060) = CUBIC
Border Density	(2010,0100)	Density of the film areas surrounding and between images on the film. Defined Terms: BLACK WHITE i where i represents the desired density in hundreds of OD (e.g. 150 corresponds with 1.5 OD)
Empty Image Density	(2010,0110)	Density of the image box area on the film that contains no image. Defined Terms: BLACK WHITE i where i represents the desired density in hundredths of OD (e.g. 150 corresponds with 1.5 OD)
Min Density	(2010,0120)	Minimum density of the images on the film, expressed in hundredths of OD. If Min Density is lower than minimum printer density than Min Density is set to minimum printer density.
Max Density	(2010,0130)	Maximum density of the images on the film, expressed in hundredths of OD. If Max Density is higher than maximum printer density than Max Density is set to maximum printer density.
Trim	(2010,0140)	Specifies whether a trim box shall be printed surrounding each image on the film. Enumerated Values: YES NO
Configuration Information	(2010,0150)	Character string that contains either the ID of the

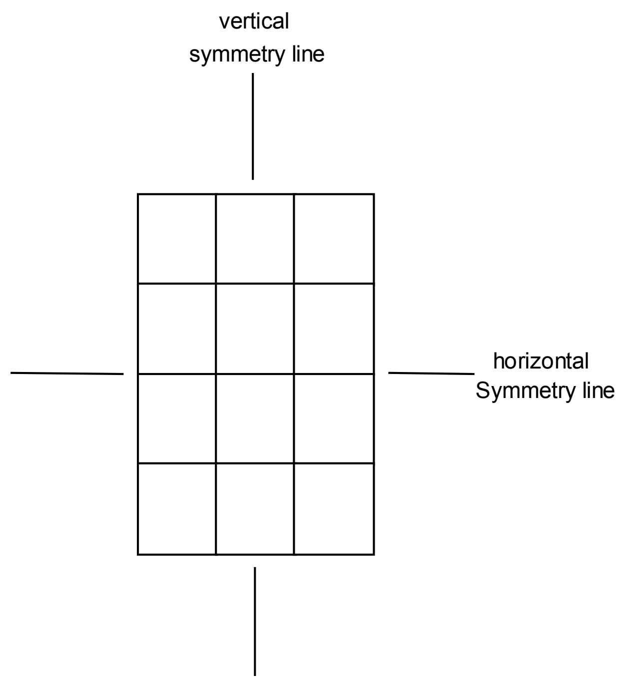
		printer configuration table that contains a set of values for implementation specific print parameters (e.g. perception LUT related parameters) or one or more configuration data values, encoded as characters. If there are multiple configuration data values encoded in the string, they shall be separated by backslashes. The definition of values shall be contained in the SCP's Conformance Statement. Defined Terms: CS000-CS999: Implementation specific curve type. Note: It is recommended that for SCPs, CS000 represent the lowest contrast and CS999 the highest contrast levels available.
Illumination	(2010,015E)	Luminance of lightbox illuminating a piece of transmissive film, or for the case of reflective media, luminance obtainable from diffuse reflection of the illumination present. Expressed as L_0, in candelas per square meter (cd/m^2).
Reflected Ambient Light	(2010,0160)	For transmissive film, luminance contribution due to reflected ambient light. Expressed as L_a, in candelas per square meter (cd/m^2).
Requested Resolution ID	(2020,0050)	Specifies the resolution at which images in this Film Box are to be printed. Defined Terms: STANDARD = approximately 4k x 5k printable pixels on a 14 x 17 inch film HIGH = Approximately twice the resolution of STANDARD.

C.13.3.1 Image display format

C.13.3.1.1 Standard image display format

The standard format subdivides a film into image boxes of equal size. Therefore, the film layout is fully symmetrical, i.e. the arrangement of image boxes on film is left-right and top-bottom symmetric.

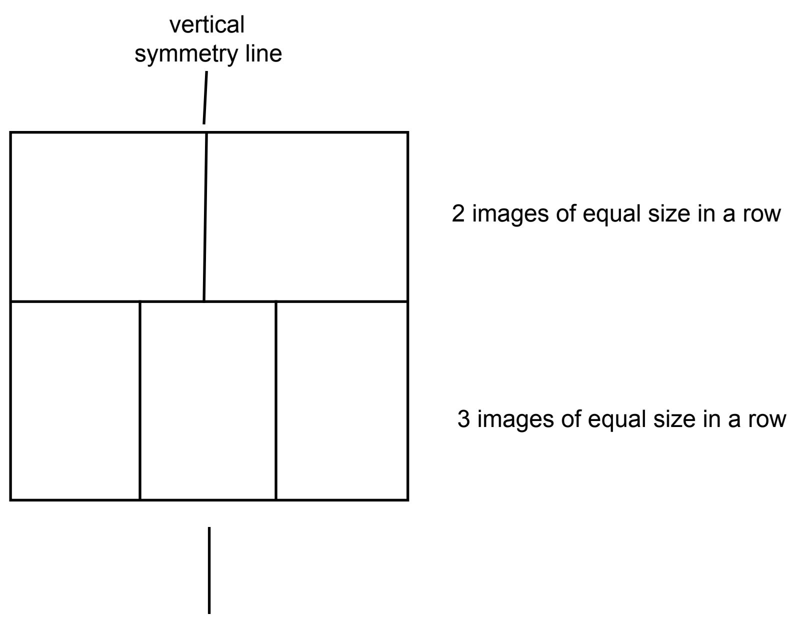
Example : STANDARD\3,4



C.13.3.1.2 Row symmetric image display format

The row symmetric image display format subdivides a film into rows of image boxes of equal size. As a result, the layout is left-right symmetric, the associated symmetry line is vertical (V). There is no top-bottom symmetry.

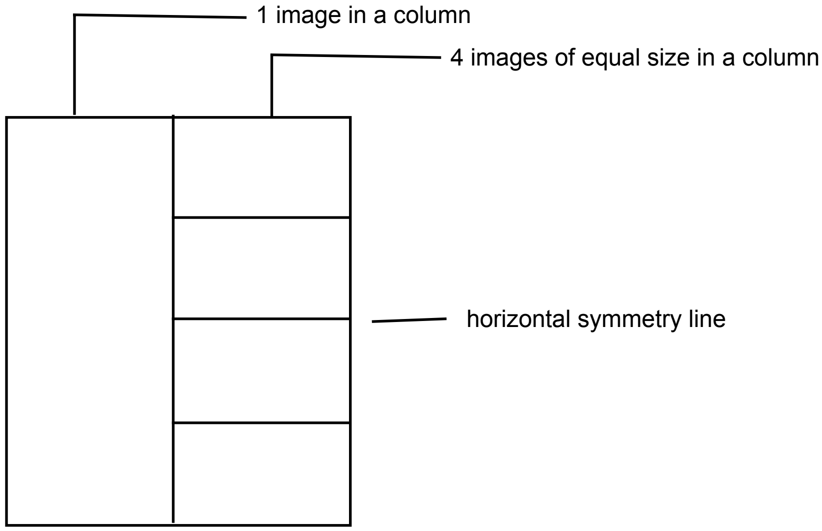
Example : ROW\2,3



C.13.3.1.3 Column symmetric image display format

The column symmetric image display format subdivides a film into columns of image boxes of equal size. As a result, the layout is top-button symmetric, the associated symmetry line is horizontal (H). There is no left-right symmetry.

Example : COL\1,4



C.13.4 Basic Film Box Relationship Module

Table C.13-4
BASIC FILM BOX RELATIONSHIP MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
Referenced Film Session Sequence	(2010,0500)	A sequence which provides references to a Film Session SOP Class/Instance pairs. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this Sequence.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.
Referenced Image Box Sequence	(2010,0510)	A sequence which provides references to a set of Image Box SOP Class/Instance pairs. One or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.
Referenced Basic Annotation Box Sequence	(2010,0520)	A Sequence which provides references to a set of Basic Annotation Box SOP Class/Instance pairs. Zero or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.
Referenced Presentation LUT	(2050,0500)	A sequence which provides references to a

Sequence		Presentation LUT related SOP Class/Instance pairs. Only a single Item shall be included in this sequence.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.

C.13.5 Image Box Pixel Presentation Module

Table C.13-5
IMAGE BOX PIXEL PRESENTATION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
Image Position	(2020,0010)	The position of the image on the film, based on Image Display Format (2010,0010). See C.13.5.1 for specification.
Polarity	(2020,0020)	Specifies whether minimum pixel values (after VOI LUT transformation) are to printed black or white. Enumerated Values: NORMAL = pixels shall be printed as specified by the Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) REVERSE = pixels shall be printed with the opposite polarity as specified by the Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) If Polarity (2020,0020) is not specified by the SCU, the SCP shall print with NORMAL polarity.
Magnification Type	(2010,0060)	Description is the same as in Table C.13-3. Overrides the Magnification Type specified for the Film Box
Smoothing Type	(2010,0080)	Description is the same as in Table C.13-3. Overrides the Smoothing Type specified for the Film Box
Configuration Information	(2010,0150)	See Table C.13-3 for description of Configuration Information.
Requested Image Size	(2020,0030)	Width (x-dimension) in mm of the image to be printed. This value overrides the size that corresponds with optimal filling of the Image Box.
Requested Decimate/Crop Behavior	(2020,0040)	Specifies whether image pixels are to be decimated or cropped if the image rows or columns is greater than the available printable pixels in an Image Box. Decimation means that a magnification factor <1 is applied to the image. The method of decimation shall be that specified by Magnification Type (2010,0060) or the SCP default if not specified Cropping means that some image rows and/or columns are deleted before printing Enumerated Values: DECIMATE = a magnification factor <1 to be applied to the image. CROP = some image rows and/or columns are to

		be deleted before printing. The specific algorithm for cropping shall be described in the SCP Conformance Statement. FAIL = the SCP shall not crop or decimate
Basic Grayscale Image Sequence	(2020,0110)	A sequence which provides the content of the grayscale image pixel data to be printed. This is a specialization of the Image Pixel Module defined in C.7.6.3 of this part. It is encoded as a sequence of Attributes of the Image Pixel Module. Zero or one Item may be included in this Sequence. See PS 3.4 for further description.
>Samples Per Pixel	(0028,0002)	See C.7.6.3 for description of Image Pixel Module. Enumerated Value: 1
>Photometric Interpretation	(0028,0004)	See C.7.6.3 for description of Image Pixel Module. Enumerated Values: MONOCHROME1 MONOCHROME2
>Rows	(0028,0010)	See C.7.6.3 for description of Image Pixel Module
>Columns	(0028,0011)	See C.7.6.3 for description of Image Pixel Module
>Pixel Aspect Ratio	(0028,0034)	See C.7.6.3 for description of Image Pixel Module
>Bits Allocated	(0028,0100)	See C.7.6.3 for description of Image Pixel Module. Enumerated Values: 8 (if Bits Stored = 8) 16 (if Bits Stored = 12)
>Bits Stored	(0028,0101)	See C.7.6.3 for description of Image Pixel Module. Enumerated Values: 8 12
>High Bit	(0028,0102)	See C.7.6.3 for description of Image Pixel Module. Enumerated Values: 7 (if BITS STORED = 8) 11 (if BITS STORED = 12)
>Pixel Representation	(0028,0103)	See C.7.6.3 for description of Image Pixel Module. Enumerated Value: 0 (unsigned integer)
>Pixel Data	(7FE0,0010)	See C.7.6.3 for description of Image Pixel Module
Basic Color Image Sequence	(2020,0111)	A sequence which provides the content of the color image pixel data to be printed. It is a specialization of the Image Pixel Module defined in C.7.6.3 of this part. It is encoded as a sequence of Attributes of the Image Pixel Module. Zero or one Item may be included in this Sequence. See PS 3.4 for further description.
>Samples Per Pixel	(0028,0002)	See C.7.6.3 for description of Image Pixel Module. Enumerated Value: 3

>Photometric Interpretation	(0028,0004)	See C.7.6.3 for description of Image Pixel Module. Enumerated Value: RGB
>Planar Configuration	(0028,0006)	See C.7.6.3 for description of Image Pixel Module. Enumerated Value: 1 (frame interleave)
>Rows	(0028,0010)	See C.7.6.3 for description of Image Pixel Module.
>Columns	(0028,0011)	See C.7.6.3 for description of Image Pixel Module.
>Pixel Aspect Ratio	(0028,0034)	See C.7.6.3 for description of Image Pixel Module.
>Bits Allocated	(0028,0100)	See C.7.6.3 for description of Image Pixel Module. Enumerated Value: 8
>Bits Stored	(0028,0101)	See C.7.6.3 for description of Image Pixel Module. Enumerated Value: 8
>High Bit	(0028,0102)	See C.7.6.3 for description of Image Pixel Module. Enumerated Value: 7
>Pixel Representation	(0028,0103)	See C.7.6.3 for description of Image Pixel Module. Enumerated Value: 0000H (unsigned integer)
>Pixel Data	(7FE0,0010)	See C.7.6.3 for description of Image Pixel Module

Note: Referenced Image Overlay Box Sequence (2020,0130) and Original Image Sequence (2130,00C0) were previously included in this Module but have been retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.13.5.1 Image Position

The position of the image on the film; the encoding of the image position sequence is based on the selected Image Display Format (2010,0010). The image position sequence shall be increasing order beginning with the value 1. Image Position (2020,0010) is defined as follows:

- STANDARD display format: image box sequence shall be major row order (from left-to-right and from top-to-bottom); top left image position shall be equal to 1.
- ROW display format: image box sequence shall be major row order (from left-to-right and from top-to-bottom); top left image position shall be set to 1.
- COL display format: image box sequence shall be major column order (from top-to-bottom and from left-to-right); top left image position shall be equal to 1.
- SLIDE display format: image box sequence shall be major row order (from left-to-right and from top-to-bottom); top left image position shall be set to 1.
- SUPERSLIDE display format: image box sequence shall be major row order (from left-to-right and from top-to-bottom); top left image position shall be set to 1.
- CUSTOM STANDARD display format: image box sequence shall be defined in the Conformance Statement; top left image position shall be set to 1.

C.13.6 Image Box Relationship Module (Retired)

This section was previously defined in DICOM. It is now retired. See PS 3.3-1998.

C.13.7 Basic Annotation Presentation Module

Table C.13-7
BASIC ANNOTATION PRESENTATION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
Annotation Position	(2030,0010)	The position of the annotation box in the parent film box. Annotation position sequence depends on the selected Annotation Display Format ID (2010,0030)
Text String	(2030,0020)	Text string

C.13.8 Print Job Module

Table C.13-8
PRINT JOB MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
Execution Status	(2100,0020)	Execution status of print job. Enumerated Values: PENDING PRINTING DONE FAILURE
Execution Status Info	(2100,0030)	Additional information about Execution Status (2100,0020). Defined Terms when the Execution Status is DONE or PRINTING: NORMAL Defined Terms when the Execution Status is FAILURE: INVALID PAGE DES = The specified page layout cannot be printed or other page description errors have been detected. INSUFFIC MEMORY = There is not enough memory available to complete this job. See Section C.13.9.1 for additional Defined Terms when the Execution Status is PENDING or FAILURE.
Creation Date	(2100,0040)	Date of print job creation.
Creation Time	(2100,0050)	Time of print job creation.
Print Priority	(2000,0020)	Priority of print job (see C.13.1 for further explanation).
Printer Name	(2110,0030)	User defined name identifying the printer.
Originator	(2100,0070)	DICOM Application Entity Title that issued the print operation.

C.13.9 Printer Module

Table C.13-9
PRINTER MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
Printer Status	(2110,0010)	Printer device status. Enumerated Values: NORMAL WARNING FAILURE
Printer Status Info	(2110,0020)	Additional information about Printer Status (2110,0010). Defined Terms when the Printer Status is equal to NORMAL: NORMAL See Section C.13.9.1 for Defined Terms when the Printer Status is equal to WARNING or FAILURE.
Printer Name	(2110,0030)	User defined name identifying the printer.
Manufacturer	(0008,0070)	Manufacturer of the printer.
Manufacturer Model Name	(0008,1090)	Manufacturer's model number of the printer.
Device Serial Number	(0018,1000)	Manufacturer's serial number of the printer.
Software Versions	(0018,1020)	Manufacturer's designation of software version of the printer.
Date Of Last Calibration	(0018,1200)	Date when the printer was last calibrated.
Time Of Last Calibration	(0018,1201)	Time when the printer was last calibrated.

C.13.9.1 Printer Status Info and Execution Status Info

Additional Defined Terms for Printer Status Info (2110,0020) and Execution Status Info (2100,0030) are:

BAD RECEIVE MGZ	There is a problem with the film receive magazine. Films from the printer cannot be transported into the magazine.
BAD SUPPLY MGZ	There is a problem with a film supply magazine. Films from this magazine cannot be transported into the printer.
CALIBRATING	Printer is performing self calibration, it is expected to be available for normal operation shortly.
CALIBRATION ERR	An error in the printer calibration has been detected, quality of processed films may not be optimal.
CHECK CHEMISTRY	A problem with the processor chemicals has been detected, quality of processed films may not be optimal.
CHECK SORTER	There is an error in the film sorter.
CHEMICALS EMPTY	There are no processing chemicals in the processor, films will not be printed and processed until the processor is back to normal.
CHEMICALS LOW	The chemical level in the processor is low, if not corrected, it will

	probably shut down soon.
COVER OPEN	One or more printer or processor covers, drawers, doors are open.
ELEC CONFIG ERR	Printer configured improperly for this job.
ELEC DOWN	Printer is not operating due to some unspecified electrical hardware problem.
ELEC SW ERROR	Printer not operating for some unspecified software error.
EMPTY 8X10	The 8x10 inch film supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 8X10 BLUE	The 8x10 inch blue film supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 8X10 CLR	The 8x10 inch clear film supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 8X10 PAPR	The 8x10 inch paper supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 10X12	The 10x12 inch film supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 10X12 BLUE	The 10x12 inch blue film supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 10X12 CLR	The 10x12 inch clear film supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 10X12 PAPR	The 10x12 inch paper supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 10X14	The 10x14 inch film supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 10X14 BLUE	The 10x14 inch blue film supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 10X14 CLR	The 10x14 inch clear film supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 10X14 PAPR	The 10x14 inch paper supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 11X14	The 11x14 inch film supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 11X14 BLUE	The 11x14 inch blue film supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 11X14 CLR	The 11x14 inch clear film supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 11X14 PAPR	The 11x14 inch paper supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 14X14	The 14x14 inch film supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 14X14 BLUE	The 14x14 inch blue film supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 14X14 CLR	The 14x14 inch clear film supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 14X14 PAPR	The 14x14 inch paper supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 14X17	The 14x17 inch film supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 14X17 BLUE	The 14x17 inch blue film supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 14X17 CLR	The 14x17 inch clear film supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 14X17 PAPR	The 14x17 inch paper supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 24X24	The 24x24 cm film supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 24X24 BLUE	The 24x24 cm blue film supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 24X24 CLR	The 24x24 cm clear film supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 24X24 PAPR	The 24x24 cm paper supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 24X30	The 24x30 cm film supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 24X30 BLUE	The 24x30 cm blue film supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 24X30 CLR	The 24x30 cm clear film supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY 24X30 PAPR	The 24x30 cm paper supply magazine is empty.
EMPTY A4 PAPR	The A4 paper supply magazine is empty.

EMPTY A4 TRANS	The A4 transparency supply magazine is empty.
EXPOSURE FAILURE	The exposure device has failed due to some unspecified reason.
FILM JAM	A film transport error has occurred and a film is jammed in the printer or processor.
FILM TRANSP ERR	There is a malfunction with the film transport, there may or may not be a film jam.
FINISHER EMPTY	The finisher is empty.
FINISHER ERROR	The finisher is not operating due to some unspecified reason.
FINISHER LOW	The finisher is low on supplies
LOW 8X10	The 8x10 inch film supply magazine is low.
LOW 8X10 BLUE	The 8x10 inch blue film supply magazine is low.
LOW 8X10 CLR	The 8x10 inch clear film supply magazine is low.
LOW 8X10 PAPR	The 8x10 inch paper supply magazine is low.
LOW 10X12	The 10x12 inch film supply magazine is low.
LOW 10X12 BLUE	The 10x12 inch blue film supply magazine is low.
LOW 10X12 CLR	The 10x12 inch clear film supply magazine is low.
LOW 10X12 PAPR	The 10x12 inch paper supply magazine is low.
LOW 10X14	The 10x14 inch film supply magazine is low.
LOW 10X14 BLUE	The 10x14 inch blue film supply magazine is low.
LOW 10X14 CLR	The 10x14 inch clear film supply magazine is low.
LOW 10X14 PAPR	The 10x14 inch paper supply magazine is low.
LOW 11X14	The 11x14 inch film supply magazine is low.
LOW 11X14 BLUE	The 11x14 inch blue film supply magazine is low.
LOW 11X14 CLR	The 11x14 inch clear film supply magazine is low.
LOW 11X14 PAPR	The 11x14 inch paper supply magazine is low.
LOW 14X14	The 14x14 inch film supply magazine is low.
LOW 14X14 BLUE	The 14x14 inch blue film supply magazine is low.
LOW 14X14 CLR	The 14x14 inch clear film supply magazine is low.
LOW 14X14 PAPR	The 14x14 inch paper supply magazine is low.
LOW 14X17	The 14x17 inch film supply magazine is low.
LOW 14X17 BLUE	The 14x17 inch blue film supply magazine is low.
LOW 14X17 CLR	The 14x17 inch clear film supply magazine is low.
LOW 14X17 PAPR	The 14x17 inch paper supply magazine is low.
LOW 24X24	The 24x24 cm film supply magazine is low.
LOW 24X24 BLUE	The 24x24 cm blue film supply magazine is low.
LOW 24X24 CLR	The 24x24 cm clear film supply magazine is low.
LOW 24X24 PAPR	The 24x24 cm paper supply magazine is low.
LOW 24X30	The 24x30 cm film supply magazine is low.
LOW 24X30 BLUE	The 24x30 cm blue film supply magazine is low.

LOW 24X30 CLR	The 24x30 cm clear film supply magazine is low.
LOW 24X30 PAPR	The 24x30 cm paper supply magazine is low.
LOW A4 PAPR	The A4 paper supply magazine is low.
LOW A4 TRANS	The A4 transparency supply magazine is low.
NO RECEIVE MGZ	The film receive magazine not available
NO RIBBON	The ribbon cartridge needs to be replaced.
NO SUPPLY MGZ	The film supply magazine specified for this job is not available.
CHECK PRINTER	The printer is not ready at this time, operator intervention is required to make the printer available.
CHECK PROC	The processor is not ready at this time, operator intervention is required to make the printer available.
PRINTER DOWN	The printer is not operating due to some unspecified reason.
PRINTER BUSY	Printer is not available at this time, but should become ready without user intervention. This is to handle non-initialization instances.
PRINT BUFF FULL	The Printer 's buffer capacity is full. The printer is unable to accept new images in this state. The printer will correct this without user intervention. The SCU should retry later.
PRINTER INIT	The printer is not ready at this time, it is expected to become available without intervention. For example, it may be in a normal warm-up state.
PRINTER OFFLINE	The printer has been disabled by an operator or service person.
PROC DOWN	The processor is not operating due to some unspecified reason.
PROC INIT	The processor is not ready at this time, it is expected to become available without intervention. For example, it may be in a normal warm-up state.
PROC OVERFLOW FL	Processor chemicals are approaching the overflow full mark.
PROC OVERFLOW HI	Processor chemicals have reached the overflow full mark.
QUEUED	Print Job in Queue
RECEIVER FULL	The Film receive magazine is full.
REQ MED NOT INST	The requested film, paper, or other media supply magazine is installed in the printer, but may be available with operator intervention.
REQ MED NOT AVAI	The requested film, paper, or other media requested is not available on this printer.
RIBBON ERROR	There is an unspecified problem with the print ribbon.
SUPPLY EMPTY	The printer is out of film.
SUPPLY LOW	The film supply is low.
UNKNOWN	There is an unspecified problem.

C.13.10 Image Overlay Box Presentation Module (Retired)

This section was previously defined in DICOM. It is now retired. See PS 3.3-1998.

C.13.11 Image Overlay Box Relationship Module (Retired)

This section was previously defined in DICOM. It is now retired. See PS 3.3-1998.

C.13.12 Print Request Module

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.13.13 Printer Configuration Module

This Module describes Printer Configuration Information.

Table C.13-13
PRINTER CONFIGURATION MODULE

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
Printer Configuration Sequence	(2000,001E)	Contains printer configuration information for a single Application Entity title. See Print Management Service Class Structure in PS 3.4. The sequence shall contain one item for each physical printer/Meta SOP Class combination supported by the Application Entity title.
>SOP Classes Supported	(0008,115A)	The Meta-SOP Class and a list of optional SOP Classes supported. It shall contain one Meta SOP Class UID and 0-n optional SOP Class UIDs.
>Maximum Memory Allocation	(2000,0061)	Maximum number of kilobytes of memory that can be allocated for a Film Session. The value shall be 0 if Memory Allocation (2000,0060) is not supported.
>Memory Bit Depth	(2000,00A0)	The maximum number of bits for each pixel that can be stored in printer memory.
>Printing Bit Depth	(2000,00A1)	The number of bits used by the print engine for internal LUT calculation and printing of each pixel.
>Media Installed Sequence	(2000,00A2)	A sequence which specifies the combinations of Medium Type and Film Size IDs available in the printer at this time and the Min and Max Densities supported by these media. The Item Number with the value of 1 is the printer default. There is no significance to other item numbers. One item for each Medium Type and Film Size ID installed shall be included.
>>Item Number	(0020,0019)	A number that labels this item. Each item in the sequence shall have a unique number.
>>Medium Type	(2000,0030)	See C.13.1
>>Film Size ID	(2010,0050)	See C.13.3
>>Min Density	(2010,0120)	Minimum density that can be printed, expressed in hundredths of OD.
>>Max Density	(2010,0130)	Maximum density that can be printed, expressed in hundredths of OD.
>Other Media Available Sequence	(2000,00A4)	A sequence which specifies combinations of Medium Type and Film Size ID for which the printer will accept an N-CREATE of a Film Box, but are not

		physically installed in the printer at this time. It also specifies the Min and Max Densities supported by these media. User intervention may be required to instal these media in the printer. One item for each Medium Type and Film Size ID available, but not installed shall be included.
>>Medium Type	(2000,0030)	See C.13.1
>>Film Size ID	(2010,0050)	See C.13.3
>>Min Density	(2010,0120)	Minimum density that can be printed, expressed in hundredths of OD.
>>Max Density	(2010,0130)	Maximum density that can be printed, expressed in hundredths of OD.
>Supported Image Display Formats Sequence	(2000,00A8)	A sequence which specifies the Image Display Formats supported, rows and columns in Image Boxes for each format, pixel spacing, and whether Requested Image Size is supported as a function of Film Orientation, Film Size ID, and Printer Resolution ID. One item for each display format, film orientation, film size, and printer resolution combination shall be included.
>>Rows	(0028,0010)	Number of printable rows in an Image Box.
>>Columns	(0028,0011)	Number of printable columns in an Image Box
>>Image Display Format	(2010,0010)	See C.13.3
>>Film Orientation	(2010,0040)	See C.13.3
>>Film Size ID	(2010,0050)	See C.13.3
>>Printer Resolution ID	(2010,0052)	Printer Resolution identification. Defined Terms are the same as Requested Resolution ID (2020,0050). See C.13.3.
>>Printer Pixel Spacing	(2010,0376)	Physical distance on the printed film between the center of each pixel, specified by a numeric pair - adjacent row spacing (delimiter) adjacent column spacing in mm. See 10.7.1.3 for further explanation of the value order.
>>Requested Image Size Flag	(2020,00A0)	Indicates whether the printer supports Requested Image Size (2020,0030) for this display format and film orientation and size combination. Enumerated Values: NO = not supported YES = supported
>Default Printer Resolution ID	(2010,0054)	The printer's default resolution identification. Defined Terms are the same as Requested Resolution ID (2020,0050). See C.13.3.
>Default Magnification Type	(2010,00A6)	Printer's default magnification type. See C.13.3 for Defined Terms.
>Other Magnification Types Available	(2010,00A7)	Other magnification types available in the printer. See C.13.3 for Defined Terms.

>Default Smoothing Type	(2010,00A8)	Printer's default smoothing type. See C.13.3.
>Other Smoothing Types Available	(2010,00A9)	Other smoothing types available in the printer. See C.13.3.
>Configuration Information Description	(2010,0152)	A free form text description of Configuration Information (2010,0150) supported by the printer.
>Maximum Collated Films	(2010,0154)	The maximum number of films that can be collated for an N-ACTION of the Film Session. The value shall be 0 if N-ACTION of the Film Session is not supported.
>Decimate/Crop Result	(2020,00A2)	Indicates whether the printer will decimate or crop image pixels if the image rows or columns is greater than the available printable pixels in an Image Box. See C.13.5. Enumerated Values when the printer does not support Requested Decimate/Crop Behavior (2020,0040): DECIMATE = image will be decimated to fit. CROP = image will be cropped to fit. FAIL = N-SET of the Image Box will fail Enumerated Values when the printer supports Requested Decimate/Crop Behavior (2020,0040): DEF DECIMATE = image will be decimated to fit. DEF CROP = image will be cropped to fit DEF FAIL = N-SET of the Image Box will fail This value indicates the printer default if the SCU does not create or set Requested Decimate/Crop Behavior for the Image Box.

C.14 STORAGE COMMITMENT MODULE

Table C.14-1 defines the Attributes for referencing SOP Instances which are contained in a Storage Commitment Request/Response.

Table C.14-1
STORAGE COMMITMENT MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Attribute Description
Transaction UID	(0008,1195)	Uniquely identifies this Storage Commitment transaction.
Retrieve AE Title	(0008,0054)	Application Entity Title where the SOP Instance(s) may be retrieved via a network based retrieve service.
Storage Media File-Set ID	(0088,0130)	User or implementation specific human readable identification of a Storage Media on which the SOP Instances reside.
Storage Media File-Set UID	(0088,0140)	Uniquely identifies a Storage Media on which the SOP Instances reside.
Referenced SOP Sequence	(0008,1199)	A sequence of repeating Items where each Item references a single SOP Instance for which storage commitment is requested / or has been provided.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.
>Retrieve AE Title	(0008,0054)	Application Entity Title from which the SOP Instance may be retrieved via a network based retrieve service.
>Storage Media File-Set ID	(0088,0130)	The user or implementation specific human readable identifier that identifies a Storage Media on which this SOP Instance resides.
>Storage Media File-Set UID	(0088,0140)	Uniquely identifies a Storage Media on which this SOP Instance resides.
Failed SOP Sequence	(0008,1198)	A sequence of repeating Items where each Item references a single SOP Instance for which storage commitment could not be provided.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.
>Failure Reason	(0008,1197)	The reason that storage commitment could not be provided for this SOP Instance. See Section C.14.1.1.

Notes: 1. Conditions under which Attributes are required (i.e. Retrieve AE Title, etc.) are defined in the Storage Commitment Service Class in PS 3.4.

2. Referenced Performed Procedure Step Sequence (0008,1111) was included in this Module in earlier versions, but its use here has been retired. See PS 3.4-2001, in which the Attribute was formerly known as Referenced Study Component Sequence.

C.14.1 Storage Commitment Attribute Description

C.14.1.1 Failure Reason

The following values and semantics shall be used for the Failure Reason Attribute :

0110H - Processing failure
  A general failure in processing the operation was encountered.

0112H - No such object instance
  One or more of the elements in the Referenced SOP Instance Sequence was not available.

0213H - Resource limitation
  The SCP does not currently have enough resources to store the requested SOP Instance(s).

0122H - Referenced SOP Class not supported
  Storage Commitment has been requested for a SOP Instance with a SOP Class that is not supported by the SCP.

0119H - Class / Instance conflict
  The SOP Class of an element in the Referenced SOP Instance Sequence did not correspond to the SOP class registered for this SOP Instance at the SCP.

0131H - Duplicate transaction UID
  The Transaction UID of the Storage Commitment Request is already in use.

C.15 QUEUE MANAGEMENT SPECIFIC MODULES

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.16 STORED PRINT SPECIFIC MODULES

Retired. See PS 3.3 2004.

C.17 SR DOCUMENT MODULES

C.17.1 SR Document Series Module

Table C.17-1 defines the Attributes of the SR Document Series. A Series of SR Documents may contain any number of SR Documents.

Note: Series of SR Documents are separate from Series of Images or other Composite SOP Instances. SR Documents do not reside in a Series of Images or other Composite SOP Instances.

Table C.17-1
SR DOCUMENT SERIES MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Modality	(0008,0060)	1	Modality type. Enumerated Value: SR = SR Document
Series Instance UID	(0020,000E)	1	Unique identifier of the Series. Note: No SR-specific semantics are specified.
Series Number	(0020,0011)	1	A number that identifies the Series. Note: No SR-specific semantics are specified.
Referenced	(0008,1111)	2	Uniquely identifies the Performed Procedure Step

Performed Procedure Step Sequence			SOP Instance for which the Series is created. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence. Notes: 1. The Performed Procedure Step referred to by this Attribute is the Step during which this Document is generated. 2. If this Document is generated during the same Modality or General Purpose Performed Procedure Step as the evidence in the current interpretation procedure, this attribute may contain reference to that Modality or General Purpose Performed Procedure Step. 3. This Attribute is not used to convey reference to the evidence in the current interpretation procedure. See Current Requested Procedure Evidence Sequence (0040,A375). 4. This Sequence may be sent zero length if the Performed Procedure Step is unknown.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class. Required if Referenced Performed Procedure Step Sequence (0008,1111) is sent.
> Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance. Required if Referenced Performed Procedure Step Sequence (0008,1111) is sent.

C.17.2 SR Document General Module

Table C.17-2 defines the general Attributes of an SR Document Instance. These Attributes identify the SR Document and provide context for the entire document.

Table C.17-2
SR DOCUMENT GENERAL MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Instance Number	(0020,0013)	1	A number that identifies the SR Document.
Completion Flag	(0040,A491)	1	The estimated degree of completeness of this SR Document with respect to externally defined criteria in a manner specified in the Conformance Statement. Note: It may be desirable to make these criteria adaptable to local policies or user decisions. Enumerated Values: PARTIAL = Partial content. COMPLETE = Complete content.
Completion Flag Description	(0040,A492)	3	Explanation of the value sent in Completion Flag (0040,A491).
Verification Flag	(0040,A493)	1	Indicates whether this SR Document is Verified. Enumerated Values: UNVERIFIED = Not attested to. VERIFIED = Attested to by a Verifying Observer Name (0040,A075) who is accountable for its content. Note: The intent of this specification is that

			the "prevailing final version" of an SR Document is the version having the most recent Verification DateTime (0040,A030), Completion Flag (0040,A491) of COMPLETE and Verification Flag (0040,A493) of VERIFIED.
Content Date	(0008,0023)	1	The date the document content creation started.
Content Time	(0008,0033)	1	The time the document content creation started.
Verifying Observer Sequence	(0040,A073)	1C	The person or persons authorized to verify documents of this type and accept responsibility for the content of this document. One or more Items may be included in this sequence. Required if Verification Flag (0040,A493) is VERIFIED. Note: In HL7 Structured Documents, the comparable attribute is the “legalAuthenticator”.
>Verifying Observer Name	(0040,A075)	1	The person authorized by the Verifying Organization (0040,A027) to verify documents of this type and who accepts responsibility for the content of this document.
>Verifying Observer Identification Code Sequence	(0040,A088)	2	Coded identifier of Verifying Observer. Zero or one Items shall be permitted in this sequence.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*No Baseline Context ID defined.*
>Verifying Organization	(0040,A027)	1	Organization to which the Verifying Observer Name (0040,A075) is accountable in the current interpretation procedure.
>Verification DateTime	(0040,A030)	1	Date and Time of verification by the Verifying Observer Name (0040,A075).
Author Observer Sequence	(0040,A078)	3	The person or device that created the clinical content of this document. This attribute sets the default Observer Context for the root of the content tree. Zero or one Items may be included in this sequence.
>Include 'Identified Person or Device Macro' Table C.17-3b			
Participant Sequence	(0040,A07A)	3	Persons or devices related to the clinical content of this document. Zero or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>Participation Type	(0040,A080)	1	Participant’s role with respect to the clinical content of this document. See C.17.2.5. Defined Terms: SOURCE – Equipment that contributed to

			the content ENT – Data enterer (e.g., transcriptionist) ATTEST – Attestor Note: In HL7 Structured Documents, the participation comparable to Attestor is the "Authenticator".
>Participation Datetime	(0040,A082)	2	Datetime of participation with respect to the clinical content of this document.
>Include 'Identified Person or Device Macro' Table C.17-3b			
Custodial Organization Sequence	(0040,A07C)	3	Custodial organization for this SR Document instance. Represents the organization from which the document originates and that is in charge of maintaining the document, i.e., the steward of the original source document. Note: This may or may not be identical to the Institution identified in the Equipment Module. Zero or one Items may be included in this sequence.
>Institution Name	(0008,0080)	2	Name of Custodial Institution or Organization.
>Institution Code Sequence	(0008,0082)	2	Coded identifier of Custodial Institution or Organization. Zero or one Items may be included in this sequence.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*No Baseline Context ID defined.*
Predecessor Documents Sequence	(0040,A360)	1C	Shall refer to SR SOP Instances (e.g. prior or provisional reports) whose content has been wholly or partially included in this document with or without modification. One or more Items may be included in this sequence. Required if this document includes content from other documents. Note: The amendment process of an existing SR Document is not explicitly described, but several approaches may be considered. One may choose, for example, to create a new SR Document that includes the original content with any amendments applied or included. The structure of this amended SR Document may or may not reflect what was amended. However, the use of the Predecessor Document Sequence allows tracing back to the input SR Document, which in this case is the previous version.
>Include 'SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table C.17-3			
Identical Documents Sequence	(0040,A525)	1C	Duplicates of this document, stored with

			different SOP Instance UIDs. One or more Items may be included in this sequence. Required if this document is stored with different SOP Instance UIDs in one or more other Studies. See C.17.2.2 for further explanation.
>Include 'SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table C.17-3			
Referenced Request Sequence	(0040,A370)	1C	Identifies Requested Procedures which are being fulfilled (completely or partially) by creation of this Document. One or more Items may be included in this sequence. Required if this Document fulfills at least one Requested Procedure.
>Study Instance UID	(0020,000D)	1	Unique identifier for the Study.
>Referenced Study Sequence	(0008,1110)	2	Uniquely identifies the Study SOP Instance. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1	Uniquely identifies the SOP Class
>>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1	Uniquely identifies the SOP Instance.
>Accession Number	(0008,0050)	2	A departmental IS generated number which identifies the order for the Study.
>Placer Order Number/Imaging Service Request	(0040,2016)	2	The order number assigned to the Imaging Service Request by the party placing the order.
>Filler Order Number/Imaging Service Request	(0040,2017)	2	The order number assigned to the Imaging Service Request by the party filling the order.
>Requested Procedure ID	(0040,1001)	2	Identifier of the related Requested Procedure
>Requested Procedure Description	(0032,1060)	2	Institution-generated administrative description or classification of Requested Procedure.
>Requested Procedure Code Sequence	(0032,1064)	2	A sequence that conveys the requested procedure. Zero or one Item may be included in this sequence.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID Number is specified.*	
>Reason for the Requested Procedure	(0040,1002)	3	Reason for requesting this procedure.
>Reason for Requested Procedure Code Sequence	(0040,100A)	3	Coded Reason for requesting this procedure. One or more sequence items may be present.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID Number is specified.*	
Performed Procedure Code Sequence	(0040,A372)	2	A Sequence that conveys the codes of the performed procedures pertaining to this SOP Instance. Zero or more Items may be included in this sequence.

>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID Number is specified.*	
Current Requested Procedure Evidence Sequence	(0040,A375)	1C	Full set of Composite SOP Instances, of which the creator is aware, which were created to satisfy the current Requested Procedure(s) for which this SR Document is generated or that are referenced in the content tree. One or more Items may be included in this sequence. Required if the creator is aware of Composite Objects acquired in order to satisfy the Requested Procedure(s) for which the SR Document is or if instances are referenced in the content tree. May be present otherwise. See C.17.2.3 for further explanation.
>Include 'SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table C.17-3			
Pertinent Other Evidence Sequence	(0040,A385)	1C	Other Composite SOP Instances that are considered to be pertinent evidence by the creator of this SR Document. This evidence must have been acquired in order to satisfy Requested Procedures other than the one(s) for which this SR Document is generated. One or more Items may be included in this sequence. Required if pertinent evidence from other Requested Procedures needs to be recorded. See C.17.2.3 for further explanation.
>Include 'SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table C.17-3			
Referenced Instance Sequence	(0008,114A)	1C	Sequence specifying SOP Instances significantly related to the current SOP Instance. Such referenced Instances may include equivalent documents or renderings of this document. One or more Items may be included in this sequence. Required if the identity of a CDA Document equivalent to the current SOP Instance is known at the time of creation of this SOP Instance (see C.17.2.6). May be present otherwise.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.
>Purpose of Reference Code Sequence	(0040,A170)	1	Code describing the purpose of the reference to the Instance(s). Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			Defined Context ID is CID 7006.

C.17.2.1 SOP Instance Reference Macro

Table C.17-3 specifies the Attributes that reference a SOP Instance.

Table C.17-3
SOP INSTANCE REFERENCE MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Study Instance UID	(0020,000D)	1	Unique identifier for the Study
Referenced Series Sequence	(0008,1115)	1	Sequence of Repeating Items where each Item includes the Attributes of a Series containing referenced Composite Object(s). One or more Items may be included in this sequence
>Series Instance UID	(0020,000E)	1	Unique identifier of a Series that is part of this Study and contains the referenced Composite Object(s).
>Retrieve AE Title	(0008,0054)	3	Title of the DICOM Application Entity where the Composite Object(s) may be retrieved on the network.
>Storage Media File-Set ID	(0088,0130)	3	The user or implementation specific human readable identifier that identifies the Storage Media on which the Composite Object (s) reside.
>Storage Media File-Set UID	(0088,0140)	3	Uniquely identifies the Storage Media on which the Composite Object (s) reside.
>Referenced SOP Sequence	(0008,1199)	1	References to Composite Object SOP Class/SOP Instance pairs that are part of the Study defined by Study Instance UID and the Series defined by Series Instance UID (0020,000E). One or more Items may be included in this sequence
>>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.
>>Purpose of Reference Code Sequence	(0040,A170)	3	Describes the purpose for which the reference is made. Zero or more Items may be included in this sequence.
>>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID may be specified in Macro invocation.*	
>>Referenced Digital Signature Sequence	(0400,0402)	3	Sequence of references to Digital Signatures in the referenced SOP Instance. Zero or more Items may be present. Note: The Attributes in this sequence can be used to detect if the referenced SOP Instance has been altered.
>>>Digital Signature UID	(0400,0100)	1	The Unique Identifier of a Digital Signature held in the referenced SOP Instance.
>>>Signature	(0400,0120)	1	The Signature Value identified by the Digital Signature UID within the Referenced SOP

			Instance UID.
>>Referenced SOP Instance MAC Sequence	(0400,0403)	3	A MAC Calculation from data in the referenced SOP Instance that can be used as a data integrity check. Note: This Attribute may be used in place of the Referenced Digital Signature Sequence Attribute (0400,0402), particularly if the SOP Instance does not have appropriate Digital Signatures that can be referenced.
>>>MAC Calculation Transfer Syntax UID	(0400,0010)	1	The Transfer Syntax UID used to encode the values of the Data Elements included in the MAC calculation. When computing the MAC, only Transfer Syntaxes that explicitly include the VR and use Little Endian encoding shall be used. Notes: 1. Certain Transfer Syntaxes, particularly those that are used with compressed data, allow the fragmentation of the pixel data to change. If such fragmentation changes, Digital Signatures generated with such Transfer Syntaxes could become invalid. 2. This does not constrain the transfer syntax used to transmit the object.
>>>MAC Algorithm	(0400,0015)	1	The algorithm used in generating the MAC. Defined Terms: RIPEMD160 MD5 SHA1 Note: Digital Signature Security Profiles (see PS 3.15) may require the use of a restricted subset of these terms.
>>>Data Elements Signed	(0400,0020)	1	A list of Data Element Tags in the order they appear at the top level of the referenced SOP Instance that identify the Data Elements used in creating the MAC. See Section C.12.1.1.3.1.1.
>>>MAC	(0400,0404)	1	The MAC generated as described in Section 12.2.1.1, but unencrypted and without inclusion of fields from the Digital Signatures Sequence. See Section C.12.1.1.3.1.2.

C.17.2.2 Identical Documents Sequence

If identical copies of an SR Document are to be included in multiple Studies then the entire SR Document shall be duplicated with appropriate changes for inclusion into the different Studies (i.e. Study Instance UID, Series Instance UID, SOP Instance UID, Identical Documents Sequence etc.). The Identical Documents Sequence Attribute in each SOP Instance shall contain references to all other duplicate SOP Instances.

Note: If an SR Document contains an Identical Documents Sequence then it will not be further duplicated without producing a new complete set of duplicate SOP Instances with re-generated Identical Documents Sequences. This is a consequence of the rules for modification of SR Document content in PS3.4. For example, if there are two identical reports and an application is creating a third identical report, then the first two reports must be re-generated in order that their Identical Documents Sequence will reference the new duplicate document and all other identical documents.

If a new SR Document is created using content from an SR Document that contains an Identical Documents Sequence and is part of the same Requested Procedure, then the new SR Document shall only contain a new Identical Documents Sequence if the new SR Document is duplicated. The Predecessor Documents Sequence in all the new SR Documents shall contain references to the original SR Document and all its duplicates as well as any other documents from which content is included.

Note: It is up to an implementation to decide whether a new SR Document is duplicated across multiple Studies. This may require user input to make the decision.

C.17.2.3 Current Requested Procedure Evidence Sequence and Pertinent Other Evidence Sequence

The intent of the Current Requested Procedure Evidence Sequence is to reference all evidence created in order to satisfy the current Requested Procedure(s) for this SR Document. This shall include, but is not limited to, all current evidence referenced in the content tree.

For a completed SR Document satisfying (i.e., being the final report for) the current Requested Procedure(s), this sequence shall list the full set of Composite SOP Instances created for the current Requested Procedure(s). For other SOP Instances that include the SR Document General Module, this sequence shall contain at minimum the set of Composite SOP Instances from the current Requested Procedure(s) that are referenced in the content tree.

The Pertinent Other Evidence Sequence attribute is used to reference all other evidence considered pertinent for this SR Document that is not listed in the Current Requested Procedure Evidence Sequence.

This requires that the same SOP Instance shall not be referenced in both of these Sequences.

C.17.2.4 Identified Person or Device Macro

Table C.17-3b defines the Attributes that identify a person or a device participating as an observer for the context of an SR Instance. This macro contains content equivalent to TID 1002 (see PS3.16).

Table C.17-3b
Identified Person or Device Macro Attributes

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Observer Type	(0040,A084)	1	Enumerated Values: PSN – Person DEV – Device
Person Name	(0040,A123)	1C	Name of the person observer for this document Instance. Required if Observer Type value is PSN.
Person Identification Code Sequence	(0040,1101)	2C	Coded identifier of person observer. Zero or one Items shall be permitted in this

			sequence. Required if Observer Type value is PSN.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*No Baseline Context ID defined*
Station Name	(0008,1010)	2C	Name of the device observer for this document instance. Required if Observer Type value is DEV.
Device UID	(0018,1002)	1C	Unique identifier of device observer. Required if Observer Type value is DEV.
Manufacturer	(0008,0070)	1C	Manufacturer of the device observer. Required if Observer Type value is DEV.
Manufacturer's Model Name	(0008,1090)	1C	Model Name of the device observer. Required if Observer Type value is DEV.
Institution Name	(0008,0080)	2	Institution or organization to which the identified person is responsible or accountable, or which manages the identified device.
Institution Code Sequence	(0008,0082)	2	Institution or organization to which the identified person is responsible or accountable, or which manages the identified device. Zero or one Items shall be permitted in this Sequence.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*No Baseline Context ID defined*

C.17.2.5 Verifying Observer, Author Observer, and Participant Sequences

The Verifying Observer Sequence (0040,A073), Author Observer Sequence (0040,A078), and Participant Sequence (0040,A07A) identify significant contributors to the SR document. The Author creates the clinical content of the document. The Verifying Observer verifies and accepts legal responsibility for the content. Other participants may include an Attestor, a person identified as a Participant who "signs" an SR document, but who does not have legal authority to verify the clinical content. E.g., an SR document may be authored and attested by a resident, and then verified by a staff physician; or a document may be authored by a CAD device and attested by a technologist, and then verified by a physician; or a technologist working with a measurement software package may be the author, the package is a Source participant, and the final content is verified by a physician.

An individual shall not be identified in both the Verifying Observer Sequence (as the legal authenticator) and in the Participant Sequence as an Attestor. An individual may be identified in both the Author Observer Sequence and either the Verifying Observer Sequence or the Participant Sequence.

The participation datetime for the Verifying Observer is conveyed in Verification Datetime (0040,A030) within the Verifying Observer Sequence, for the Author Observer in the Observation Datetime (0040,A032) in the main Data Set (see C.17.3), and for other participants in Participation Datetime (0040,A082) within the Participant Sequence.

C.17.2.6 Equivalent CDA Document

The Referenced Instance Sequence (0008,114A) with a Purpose of Reference Code Sequence value of (121331, DCM, "Equivalent CDA Document") identifies an HL7 Clinical Document

Architecture (CDA) Document that contains clinical content equivalent to this SR Document SOP Instance. This referenced CDA Document may be a source document that was transformed to create this SR Document, or it may be a transcoding of the content created simultaneously for both the SR Document and the CDA Document.

Notes: 1. Reference to a CDA Document created as a transcoding of the SR Document subsequent to the creation of the SR SOP Instance would not be encodable in that SOP Instance.

2. There is no requirement that the transform or transcoding between DICOM SR and HL7 CDA be reversible. In particular, some attributes of the DICOM Patient, Study, and Series IEs have no corresponding standard encoding in the HL7 CDA Header, and vice versa. Such data elements, if transcoded, may need to be encoded in implementation-dependent “local markup” (in HL7 CDA) or private data elements (in DICOM SR) in an implementation-dependent manner; some such data elements may not be transcoded at all. It is a responsibility of the transforming application to ensure clinical equivalence.

3. Due to the inherent differences between DICOM SR and HL7 CDA, a transcoded document should have a different UID than the source document.

The Referenced SOP Instance UID (0008,1155) in Items of this Sequence is mapped to the native HL7 Instance Identifier through the HL7 Structured Document Reference Sequence (0040,A390) of the SOP Common Module (see Section C.12.1).

C.17.3 SR Document Content Module

This section specifies the Attributes contained in the SR Document Content Module. The Attributes in this Module convey the content of an SR Document.

Table C.17-4
SR DOCUMENT CONTENT MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Include Document Content Macro Table C.17-5. with a Value Type (0040,A040) of CONTAINER			
Include Document Relationship Macro Table C.17-6.			

Table C.17-5
DOCUMENT CONTENT MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Value Type	(0040,A040)	1	The type of the value encoded in this Content Item. Defined Terms: TEXT NUM CODE DATETIME DATE TIME UIDREF PNAME COMPOSITE IMAGE WAVEFORM SCOORD TCOORD CONTAINER

			See C.17.3.2.1 for further explanation.
Concept Name Code Sequence	(0040,A043)	1C	Code describing the concept represented by this Content Item. Also conveys the value of Document Title and section headings in documents. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence. Required if Value Type (0040,A040) is TEXT or NUM or CODE or DATETIME or DATE or TIME or UIDREF or PNAME. Required if Value Type (0040,A040) is CONTAINER and a heading is present, or this is the Root Content Item. Note: That is, containers without headings do not require Concept Name Code Sequence Required if Value Type (0040,A040) is COMPOSITE, IMAGE, WAVEFORM, SCOORD or TCOORD, and the Purpose of Reference is conveyed in the Concept Name. See C.17.3.2.2 for further explanation.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID.*	
Text Value	(0040,A160)	1C	This is the value of the Content Item. Required if Value Type (0040,A040) is TEXT. Text data which is unformatted and whose manner of display is implementation dependent. The text value may contain spaces, as well as multiple lines separated by either LF, CR, CR LF or LF CR, but otherwise no format control characters (such as horizontal or vertical tab and form feed) shall be present, even if permitted by the Value Representation of UT. The text shall be interpreted as specified by Specific Character Set (0008,0005) if present in the SOP Common Module. Note: The text may contain single or multi-byte characters and use code extension techniques as described in PS 3.5 if permitted by the values of Specific Character Set (0008,0005).
DateTime	(0040,A120)	1C	This is the value of the Content Item. Required if Value Type (0040,A040) is DATETIME.
Date	(0040,A121)	1C	This is the value of the Content Item. Required if Value Type (0040,A040) is DATE.
Time	(0040,A122)	1C	This is the value of the Content Item.

			Required if Value Type (0040,A040) is TIME.
Person Name	(0040,A123)	1C	This is the value of the Content Item. Required if Value Type (0040,A040) is PNAME.
UID	(0040,A124)	1C	This is the value of the Content Item. Required if Value Type (0040,A040) is UIDREF.
Include 'Numeric Measurement Macro' Table C.18.1-1 if and only if Value Type (0040,A040) is NUM.			
Include 'Code Macro' Table C.18.2-1 if and only if Value Type (0040,A040) is CODE.			
Include 'Composite Object Reference Macro' Table C.18.3-1 if and only if Value Type (0040,A040) is COMPOSITE.			
Include 'Image Reference Macro' Table C.18.4-1 if and only if Value Type (0040,A040) is IMAGE.			
Include 'Waveform Reference Macro' Table C.18.5-1 if and only if Value Type (0040,A040) is WAVEFORM.			
Include 'Spatial Coordinates Macro' Table C.18.6-1 if and only if Value Type (0040,A040) is SCOORD.			
Include 'Temporal Coordinates Macro' Table C.18.7-1 if and only if Value Type (0040,A040) is TCOORD.			
Include 'Container Macro' Table C.18.8-1 if and only if Value Type (0040,A040) is CONTAINER.			

Table C.17-6
DOCUMENT RELATIONSHIP MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Observation DateTime	(0040,A032)	1C	The date and time on which this Content Item was completed. For the purpose of recording measurements or logging events, completion time is defined as the time of data acquisition of the measurement, or the time of occurrence of the event. Required if the date and time are different from the Content Date (0008,0023) and Content Time (0008,0033) or the Observation DateTime (0040,A032) defined in higher items. May be present otherwise. Note: When Content Items are copied into successor reports, the Content Date (0008,0023) and Content Time (0008,0033) of the new report are likely to be different than the date and time of the original observation. Therefore this attribute may need to be included in any copied Content Items to satisfy the condition.

Content Sequence	(0040,A730)	1C	A potentially recursively nested Sequence of Items that conveys content that is the Target of Relationships with the enclosing Source Content Item. One or more Items may be included in this sequence. Required if the enclosing Content Item has relationships. Notes: 1. If this Attribute is not present then the enclosing Item is a leaf. 2. The order of Items within this Sequence is semantically significant for presentation. See C.17.3.2.4 for further explanation.
>Relationship Type	(0040,A010)	1	The type of relationship between the (enclosing) Source Content Item and the Target Content Item. IODs specify additional constraints on Relationships (including lists of Enumerated Values). Defined Terms: CONTAINS HAS PROPERTIES HAS OBS CONTEXT HAS ACQ CONTEXT INFERRED FROM SELECTED FROM HAS CONCEPT MOD See C.17.3.2.4 for further explanation.
>Include Document Relationship Macro Table C.17-6 if the Target Content Item is included by-value in the Source Content Item. The Macro shall not be present if the relationship is by-reference.			
>Include Document Content Macro Table C.17-5 if the Target Content Item is included by-value in the Source Content Item. The Macro shall not be present if the relationship is by-reference.			
>Referenced Content Item Identifier	(0040,DB73)	1C	An ordered set of one or more integers that uniquely identifies the Target Content Item of the relationship. The root Content Item is referenced by a single value of 1. Each subsequent integer represents an ordinal position of a Content Item in the Content Sequence (0040,A730) in which it belongs. The Referenced Content Item Identifier is the set of these ordinal positions along the by-value relationship path. The number of values in this Multi-Value Attribute is exactly the number of relationships traversed in the SR content tree plus one. Note: 1. See C.17.3.2.5. 2. Content Items are ordered in a Content Sequence starting from 1 as

			defined in VR of SQ (See PS 3.5). Required if the Target Content Item is denoted by-reference, i.e. the Document Relationship Macro and Document Content Macro are not included.

C.17.3.1 SR Document Content Tree

The Module consists of a single root Content Item that is the root of the SR Document tree. The root Content Item is of type CONTAINER, and its Content Sequence conveys either directly or indirectly through further nested Content Sequences, all of the other Content Items in the document. This root Content Item shall have a heading in the Concept Name Code Sequence (0040,A043) that conveys the title of the SR Document, i.e. the Document Title.

Figure C.17.3-1 depicts the relationship of SR Documents to Content Items and the relationships of Content Items to other Content Items and to Observation Context.

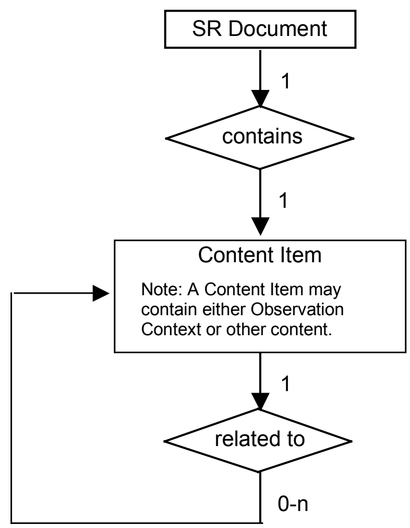
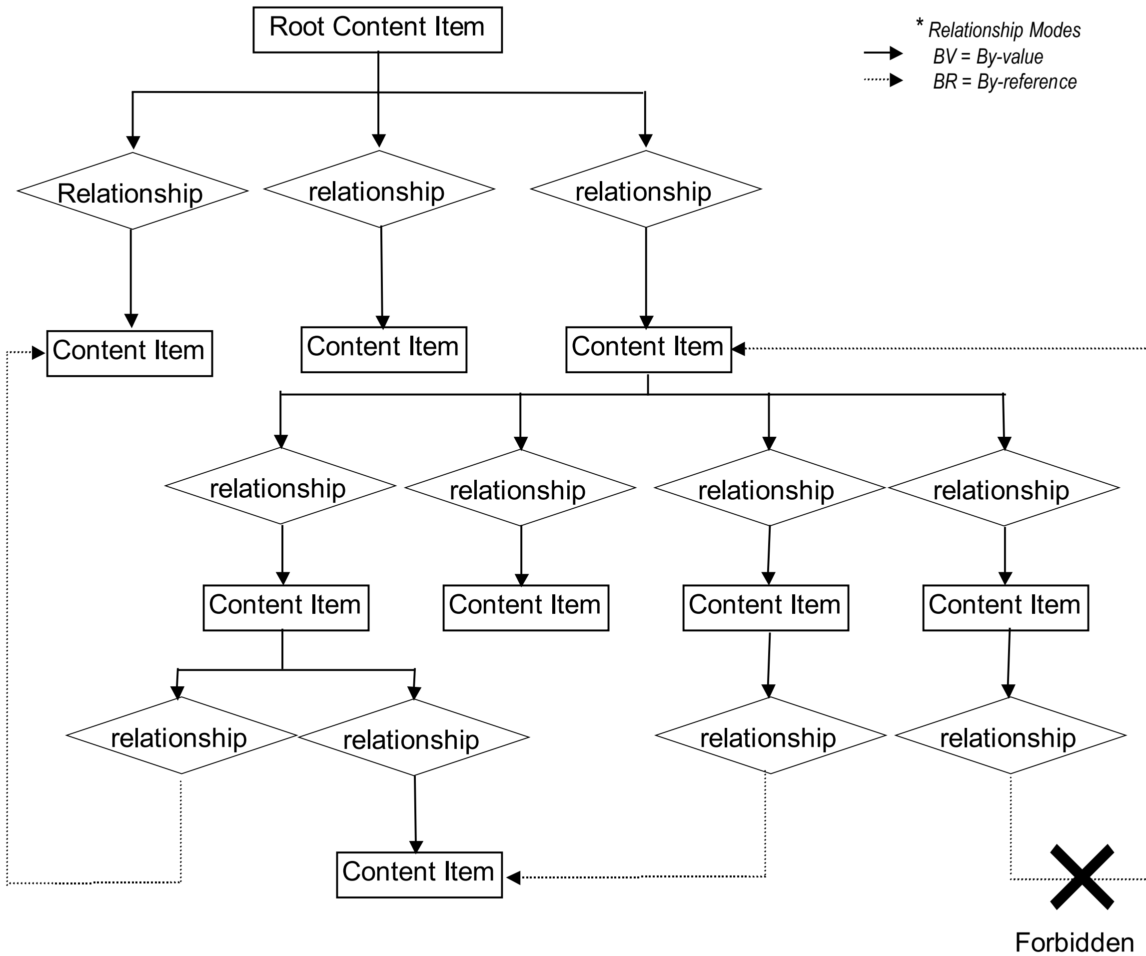


Figure C.17.3-1
SR Information Model



Note: Whether or not relationships by-reference are allowed to ancestor Content Items, is specified in the IOD.

Figure C.17.3-2 – Example of an SR Content Tree (Informative)

C.17.3.2 Content Item Attributes

Each Content Item contains:

- name/value pair, consisting of
    - a single Concept Name Code Sequence (0040,A043) that is the name of a name/value pair or a heading,
    - a value (text, codes, etc.),
- references to images, waveforms or other composite objects, with or without coordinates,
- relationships to other Items, either
    - by-value through nested Content Sequences, or
    - by-reference.

C.17.3.2.1 Content Item Value Type

The value of the name/value pair is encoded with one of the Value Types defined in Table C.17.3-7 (the choice of which may be constrained by the IOD in which this Module is contained). The Value Type (0040,A040) attribute explicitly conveys the type of Content Item value encoding.

Table C.17.3-7
VALUE TYPE DEFINITIONS

Value Type	Concept Name	Concept Value	Description
TEXT	Type of text, e.g. "Findings", or name of identifier, e.g. “Lesion ID”	Textual expression of the concept	Free text, narrative description of unlimited length. May also be used to provide a label or identifier value.
NUM	Type of numeric value or measurement, e.g. "BPD"	Numeric value and associated Unit of Measurement	Numeric value fully qualified by coded representation of the measurement name and unit of measurement.
CODE	Type of code, e.g. "Findings"	Coded expression of the concept	Categorical coded value. Representation of nominal or non-numeric ordinal values.
DATETIME	Type of DateTime, e.g. "Date/Time of onset"	Concatenated date and time	Date and time of occurrence of the type of event denoted by the Concept Name.
DATE	Type of Date, e.g. "Birth Date"	Calendar date	Date of occurrence of the type of event denoted by the Concept Name.
TIME	Type of Time, e.g "Start Time"	Time of day	Time of occurrence of the type of event denoted by the Concept Name.
UIDREF	Type of UID, e.g "Study Instance UID"	Unique Identifier	Unique Identifier (UID) of the entity identified by the Concept Name.
PNAME	Role of person, e.g., "Recording Observer"	Name of person	Person name of the person whose role is described by the Concept Name.
COMPOSITE	Purpose of Reference	Reference to UIDs of Composite SOP Instances	A reference to one Composite SOP Instance which is not an Image or Waveform.
IMAGE	Purpose of Reference	Reference to UIDs of Image Composite SOP Instances	A reference to one Image. IMAGE Content Item may convey a reference to a Softcopy Presentation State associated with the Image.
WAVEFORM	Purpose of Reference	Reference to UIDs of Waveform Composite SOP Instances	A reference to one Waveform.
SCOORD	Purpose of Reference	Listing of spatial coordinates	Spatial coordinates of a geometric region of interest in the DICOM image coordinate system. The IMAGE Content Item from which spatial coordinates are selected is denoted by a SELECTED FROM relationship.

TCOORD	Purpose of Reference	Listing of temporal coordinates	Temporal Coordinates (i.e. time or event-based coordinates) of a region of interest in the DICOM waveform coordinate system. The WAVEFORM or IMAGE or SCOORD Content Item from which Temporal Coordinates are selected is denoted by a SELECTED FROM relationship.
CONTAINER	Document Title or document section heading. Concept Name conveys the Document Title (if the CONTAINER is the Document Root Content Item) or the category of observation.	The content of the CONTAINER. The value of a CONTAINER Content Item is the collection of Content Items that it contains.	CONTAINER groups Content Items and defines the heading or category of observation that applies to that content. The heading describes the content of the CONTAINER Content Item and may map to a document section heading in a printed or displayed document.

Note: It is recommended that drawings and sketches, sometimes used in reports, be represented byIMAGE Content Items that reference separate SOP Instances (e.g., 8-bit, MONOCHROME2, Secondary Capture, or Multi-frame Single Bit Secondary Capture).

C.17.3.2.2 Concept Name Code Sequence

The Concept Name Code Sequence (0040,A043) conveys the name of the concept whose value is expressed by the value attribute or set of attributes. Depending on the Value Type (0040,A040), the meaning of the Concept Name Code Sequence may reflect specifics of the use of the particular data type (see Table C.17.3-7).

C.17.3.2.3 Continuity of Content

See Section C.18.8.1.1.

C.17.3.2.4 Content Sequence and Relationship Type

The Content Sequence (0040,A730) provides the hierarchical structuring of the Content Tree (see C.17.3.1) by recursively nesting Content Items. A parent (or source) Content Item has an explicit relationship to each child (or target) Content Item, conveyed by the Relationship Type (0040,A010) attribute.

Table C.17.3-8 describes the Relationship Types between Source Content Items and the Target Content Items.

Table C.17.3-8
RELATIONSHIP TYPE DEFINITIONS

Relationship Type	Description	Definition and Example
CONTAINS	Contains	Source Item contains Target Content Item. E.g.: CONTAINER "History" {CONTAINS: TEXT: “mother had breast cancer”; CONTAINS IMAGE 36}
HAS OBS CONTEXT	Has Observation Context	Target Content Items shall convey any specialization of Observation Context needed for unambiguous documentation of the Source Content Item. E.g: CONTAINER: "Report" {HAS OBS CONTEXT:

		PNAME: “Recording Observer” = “Smith^John^^Dr^”}
HAS CONCEPT MOD	Has Concept Modifier	Used to qualify or describe the Concept Name of the Source Content item, such as to create a post-coordinated description of a concept, or to further describe a concept. E.g. CODE "Chest X-Ray" {HAS CONCEPT MOD: CODE "View = PA and Lateral"} E.g. CODE "Breast" {HAS CONCEPT MOD: TEXT "French Translation" = "Sein"} E.g. CODE "2VCXRPALAT" {HAS CONCEPT MOD: TEXT "Further Explanation" = "Chest X-ray, Two Views, Postero-anterior and Lateral"}
HAS PROPERTIES	Has Properties	Description of properties of the Source Content Item. E.g: CODE "Mass" {HAS PROPERTIES: CODE “anatomic location”, HAS PROPERTIES: CODE “diameter”, HAS PROPERTIES: CODE “margin”, ...}.
HAS ACQ CONTEXT	Has Acquisition Context	The Target Content Item describes the conditions present during data acquisition of the Source Content Item. E.g: IMAGE 36 {HAS ACQ CONTEXT: CODE “contrast agent”, HAS ACQ CONTEXT: CODE “position of imaging subject”, ...}.
INFERRED FROM	Inferred From	Source Content Item conveys a measurement or other inference made from the Target Content Items. Denotes the supporting evidence for a measurement or judgment. E.g: CODE "Malignancy" {INFERRED FROM: CODE "Mass", INFERRED FROM: CODE "Lymphadenopathy",...}. E.g: NUM: "BPD = 5mm" {INFERRED FROM: SCOORD}.
SELECTED FROM	Selected From	Source Content Item conveys spatial or temporal coordinates selected from the Target Content Item(s). E.g: SCOORD: "CLOSED 1,1 5,10" {SELECTED FROM: IMAGE 36}. E.g: TCOORD: "SEGMENT 60-200mS" {SELECTED FROM: WAVEFORM}.

C.17.3.2.5 Referenced Content Item Identifier

Content Items are identified by their position in the Content Item tree. They have an implicit order as defined by the order of the Sequence Items. When a Content Item is the target of a by-reference relationship, its position is specified in the Referenced Content Item Identifier (0040,DB73) in a Content Sequence Item subsidiary to the source Content Item.

Note: Figure C.17.3-3 illustrates an SR content tree and identifiers associated with each Content Item:

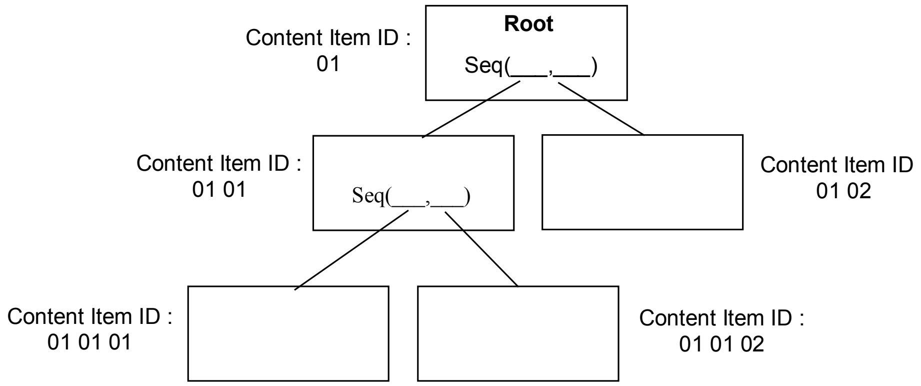
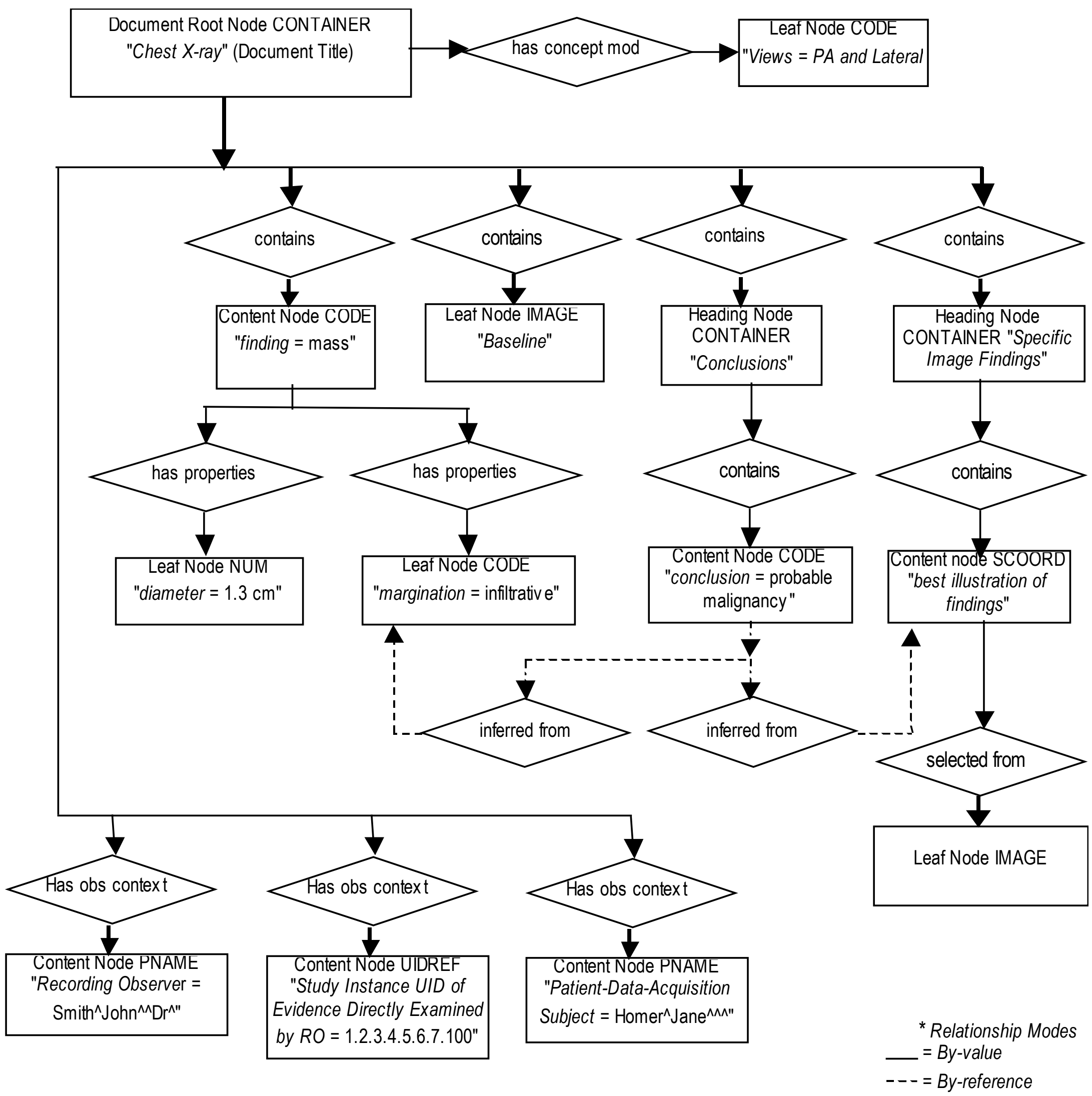


Figure C.17.3-3 Use of Position as SR Content Item Identifier (Informative)

C.17.4 SR Content Tree Example (Informative)

Figure C.17.4-1 depicts the content of an example diagnostic interpretation.



Notes: 1. For nodes of type CONTAINER, the contents of the Concept Name Code Sequence are shown in quotes and italicized.

2. For nodes of Value Type CODE, PNAME, NUM the contents are shown as "*Concept Name Code Sequence* = Value".

3. For the nodes of Value Type IMAGE and SCOORD, the contents of the Concept Name Code Sequence indicating the purpose of reference are shown in quotes and italicized.

4. The root node containing the Document Type is illustrated using a post-coordinated node of "Chest X-ray", qualified using a HAS CONCEPT MOD relationship by a child with a CODE meaning "Views = PA and Lateral". An alternative would be to use a single pre-coordinated code in one node that applies to the entire concept of a "Two-view (PA and Lateral) Chest X-ray". However, the use of pre-coordinated terms to describe complex concepts rapidly becomes unwieldy and difficult to search on (in the sense that more specific pre-coordinated codes do not have a visible relationship with more general codes). If it were necessary to include a longer textual description of Document Type, then this could be achieved with a HAS CONCEPT MOD relationship with one or more TEXT nodes, perhaps in different languages.

5. The Document Type is only a title, and is not being used to convey the Procedure Context, although in this example it does appear to contain a description of some aspects of Procedure Context.

Figure C.17.4-1 (Informative)
SR Content Tree for an Example Diagnostic Interpretation

C.17.5 Observation Context Encoding

Observation Context describes who or what is performing the interpretation, whether the examination of evidence is direct or quoted, what procedure generated the evidence that is being interpreted, and who or what is the subject of the evidence that is being interpreted.

Initial Observation Context is defined outside the SR Document Content tree by other modules in the SR IOD (i.e., Patient Module, Specimen Identification, General Study, Patient Study, SR Document Series, Frame of Reference, Synchronization, General Equipment and SR Document General modules). Observation Context defined by attributes in these modules applies to all Content Items in the SR Document Content tree and need not be explicitly coded in the tree. The initial Observation Context from outside the tree can be explicitly replaced.

If a Content Item in the SR Document Content tree has Observation Context different from the context already encoded elsewhere in the IOD, the context information applying to that Content Item shall be encoded as child nodes of the Content Item in the tree using the HAS OBS CONTEXT relationship. That is, Observation Context is a property of its parent Content Item.

The context information specified in the Observation Context child nodes (i.e. target of the HAS OBS CONTEXT relationship) adds to the Observation Context of their parent node Content item, and shall apply to all the by-value descendant nodes of that parent node regardless of the relationship type between the parent and the descendant nodes. Observation Context is encoded in the same manner as any other Content Item. See the example in Figure C.17.5-1. Observation Context shall not be inherited across by-reference relationships.

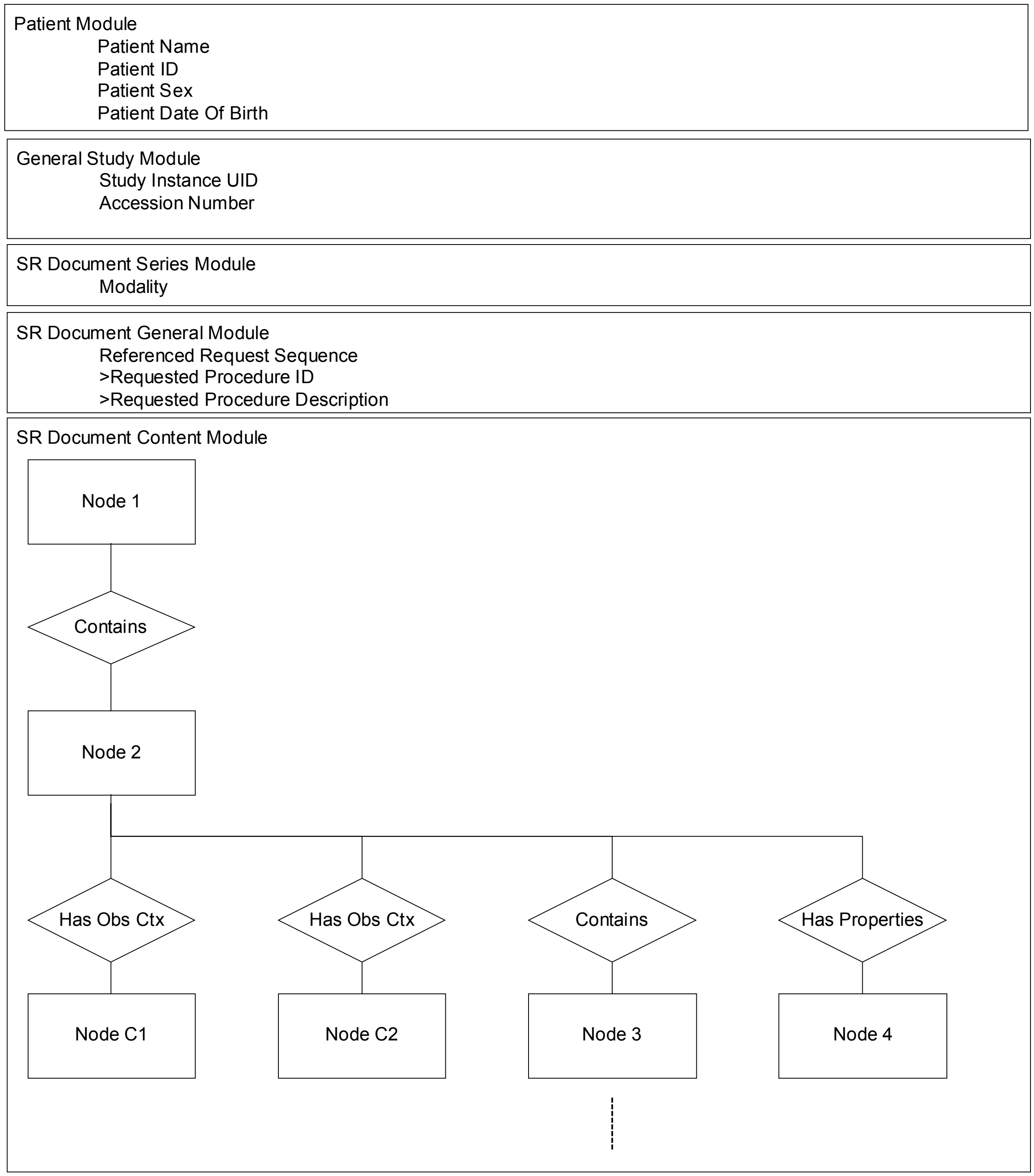
Notes: 1. For example, the “subject context” may be defined by attaching an appropriate content item to the root node with a HAS OBS CONTEXT relationship. This “subject context” then applies not only to the root node, but to all its descendants, until such time as a content item explicitly replaces the “subject context” attribute, the new value of which is then inherited by all of that nodes descendants.

2. For example, one can extend the observation context that specifies the procedure being interpreted, either from that inherited from outside the tree or from ancestors within the tree, by adding further content items that specify identifying information, such as HL7 placer and filler order numbers.

Observation DateTime is not included as part of the HAS OBS CONTEXT relationship, and therefore is not inherited along with other Observation Context. The Observation DateTime Attribute is included in each Content Item which allows different observation dates and times to be attached to different Content Items.

The IOD may specify restrictions on Content Items and Relationship Types that also constrain the flexibility with which Observation Context may be described.

The IOD may specify Templates that offer or restrict patterns and content in Observation Context.



Notes: 1. Node 2 inherits any Observation Context of Node 1, which is then extended or replaced by the additional Observation Context defined in Nodes C1 and C2 (that is C1 and C2 are properties of 2).

2. Node 3 and its descendents inherit the Observation Context of Node 2, which includes C1 and C2.

3. Node 4 inherits the Observation Context of Node 2, which includes C1 and C2.

Figure C.17.5-1 (Informative)
Definition and Inheritance of Observation Context

C.17.6 Key Object Selection Modules

C.17.6.1 Key Object Document Series Module

Table C.17.6-1 defines the Attributes of the Key Object Document Series.

Note: Series of Key Object Selection Documents are separate from Series of Images or other Composite SOP Instances. Key Object Documents do not reside in a Series of Images or other Composite SOP Instances.

Table C.17.6-1
KEY OBJECT DOCUMENT SERIES MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Modality	(0008,0060)	1	Modality type. Enumerated Value: KO = Key Object Selection
Series Instance UID	(0020,000E)	1	Unique identifier of the Series. Note: No specific semantics are specified.
Series Number	(0020,0011)	1	A number that identifies the Series. Note: No specific semantics are specified.
Referenced Performed Procedure Step Sequence	(0008,1111)	2	Uniquely identifies the Performed Procedure Step SOP Instance for which the Series is created. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence. Notes: See notes on this attribute in Section C.17.1 SR Document Series Module
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class. Required if Referenced Performed Procedure Step Sequence (0008,1111) is sent.
> Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance. Required if Referenced Performed Procedure Step Sequence (0008,1111) is sent.

C.17.6.2 Key Object Document Module

Table C.17.6-2 defines the general Attributes of a Key Object Selection Document. These Attributes identify and provide context for the Key Object Selection Document.

Table C.17.6-2
KEY OBJECT DOCUMENT MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Instance Number	(0020,0013)	1	A number that identifies the Document.
Content Date	(0008,0023)	1	The date the document content creation started.
Content Time	(0008,0033)	1	The time the document content creation started.
Referenced Request Sequence	(0040,A370)	1C	Identifies Requested Procedures to which this Document pertains. One or more Items may be included in this sequence. Required if this Document pertains to at

			least one Requested Procedure.
>Study Instance UID	(0020,000D)	1	Unique identifier for the Study.
>Referenced Study Sequence	(0008,1110)	2	Uniquely identifies the Study SOP Instance. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1	Uniquely identifies the SOP Class
>>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1	Uniquely identifies the SOP Instance.
>Accession Number	(0008,0050)	2	A departmental IS generated number which identifies the order for the Study.
>Placer Order Number/Imaging Service Request	(0040,2016)	2	The order number assigned to the Imaging Service Request by the party placing the order.
>Filler Order Number/Imaging Service Request	(0040,2017)	2	The order number assigned to the Imaging Service Request by the party filling the order.
>Requested Procedure ID	(0040,1001)	2	Identifier of the related Requested Procedure
>Requested Procedure Description	(0032,1060)	2	Institution-generated administrative description or classification of Requested Procedure.
>Requested Procedure Code Sequence	(0032,1064)	2	A sequence that conveys the requested procedure. Zero or one Item may be included in this sequence.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		*No Baseline Context ID Number is specified.*	
Current Requested Procedure Evidence Sequence	(0040,A375)	1	List of all Composite SOP Instances referenced in the Content Sequence (0040,A730). One or more Items shall be included in this sequence. Note: In the context of the Key Object Selection, the current evidence is considered to be only the set of instances referenced within the Key Object Selection.
>Include 'SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table C.17-3			
Identical Documents Sequence	(0040,A525)	1C	Duplicates of this document, stored with different SOP Instance UIDs. One or more Items may be included in this sequence. Required if this Key Object Selection document references instances in more than one Study. See C.17.2.2 and C.17.6.2.1 for further explanation and conditions.
>Include 'SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table C.17-3			

C.17.6.2.1 Identical Documents

If the Current Requested Procedure Evidence Sequence (0040,A375) references SOP Instances both in the current study and in one or more other studies, this document shall be duplicated into each of those other studies, and the duplicates shall be referenced in the Identical Documents Sequence (0040,A525).

Note: Thus a Key Object Selection Document that references images in the current study as well as in a prior or comparison study, would be duplicated into the other study. This allows an application displaying that other study to easily access notes relevant to that study's SOP Instances.

C.18 CONTENT MACROS

C.18.1 Numeric Measurement Macro

Table C.18.1-1 specifies the Attributes that convey a NUM (numeric measurement) value.

Note: The Measured Value Sequence (0040,A300) may be empty to convey the concept of a measurement whose value is unknown or missing, or a measurement or calculation failure.

Table C.18.1-1
NUMERIC MEASUREMENT MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Measured Value Sequence	(0040,A300)	2	This is the value of the Content Item. Shall consist of a Sequence of Items conveying the measured value(s), which represent integers or real numbers and units of measurement. Zero or one Items shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Numeric Value	(0040,A30A)	1	Numeric measurement value. Only a single value shall be present.
>Measurement Units Code Sequence	(0040,08EA)	1	Units of measurement. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*Defined Context ID is 82.*
Numeric Value Qualifier Code Sequence	(0040,A301)	3	Qualification of Numeric Value in Measured Value Sequence, or reason for absence of Measured Value Sequence Item. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*Defined Context ID is 42.*

C.18.2 Code Macro

Table C.18.2-1 specifies the Attributes that convey a CODE value.

Table C.18.2-1
CODE MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Concept Code Sequence	(0040,A168)	1	This is the value of the Content Item. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*No Baseline Context ID is specified.*

C.18.3 Composite Object Reference Macro

Table C.18.3-1 specifies the Attributes that convey a reference to a DICOM Composite Object that is not a DICOM Image or Waveform (such as an SR Document), or to an HL7 Structured Document.

Notes: 1. If a Softcopy Presentation State is to be applied to an Image, it should be referenced by an Image Reference Macro.

2. Other SR Documents may be referenced by this macro, but there is no facility to reference individual Content Items within those reports.

3. HL7 Structured Documents include, in particular, those conforming to the Clinical Document Architecture (CDA). See Section C.12.1.1.6 for further details about this type of referenced object.

Table C.18.3-1
COMPOSITE OBJECT REFERENCE MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Referenced SOP Sequence	(0008,1199)	1	References to Composite Object SOP Class/SOP Instance pairs. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this Sequence.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.

C.18.4 Image Reference Macro

Table C.18.4-1 specifies the Attributes that convey a reference to a DICOM image.

Table C.18.4-1
IMAGE REFERENCE MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Include 'Composite Object Reference Macro' Table C.18.3-1			
>Referenced Frame Number	(0008,1160)	1C	Identifies the frame numbers within the Referenced SOP Instance to which the reference applies. The first frame shall be denoted as frame number 1. Note: This Attribute may be multi-valued. Required if the Referenced SOP Instance is a multi-frame image and the reference does not apply to all frames, and Referenced Segment Number (0062,000B) is not present.
>Referenced Segment Number	(0062,000B)	1C	Identifies the segments to which the reference applies identified by Segment Number (0062,0004). Required if the Referenced SOP Instance is a Segmentation and the reference does not apply to all segments and Referenced Frame Number (0008,1160) is not present.
>Referenced SOP Sequence	(0008,1199)	3	Reference to a Softcopy Presentation State SOP Class/SOP Instance pair. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.
>Referenced Real World Value	(0008,114B)	3	Reference to a Real World Value Mapping SOP

Mapping Instance Sequence			Class/SOP Instance pair. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence.
>>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.
>Icon Image Sequence	(0088,0200)	3	This Icon Image is representative of the Image. The Icon Image may be no greater than 128 rows by 128 columns.
>> *Include 'Image Pixel Macro' Table C.7-11b*			See Section F.7.

C.18.5 Waveform Reference Macro

Table C.18.5-1 specifies the Attributes that convey a reference to a DICOM waveform.

Table C.18.5-1
WAVEFORM REFERENCE MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Include 'Composite Object Reference Macro' Table C.18.3-1			
>Referenced Waveform Channels	(0040,A0B0)	1C	List of channels in Waveform to which the reference applies. See C.18.5.1.1 Required if the Referenced SOP Instance is a Waveform that contains multiple Channels and not all Channels in the Waveform are referenced.

C.18.5.1 Waveform Reference Macro Attribute Descriptions

C.18.5.1.1 Referenced Waveform Channels

Referenced Waveform Channels (0040,A0B0) is a multi-value attribute which lists the channels referenced. Each channel is specified as a pair of values (M,C), where the first value is the sequence item number of the Waveform Sequence (5400,0100) attribute in the referenced object (i.e. the Multiplex Group Number), and the second value is the sequence item number of the Channel Definition Sequence (003A,0200) attribute (i.e., the Channel Number) within the multiplex group.

If the specified channel number is 0, the annotation applies to all channels in the multiplex group.

Note: As an example, an annotation which applies to the entire first multiplex group and channels 2 and 3 of the third multiplex group would have Referenced Waveform Channels (0040,A0B0) value 0001 0000 0003 0002 0003 0003.

C.18.6 Spatial Coordinates Macro

Table C.18.6-1 specifies the Attributes that conveySpatial Coordinates in an SCOORD Content Item. An SCOORD Content Item shall always be the Source Content Item of one or more SELECTED FROM Relationships with IMAGE Target Content Items. Each IMAGE Target Content Item shall contain a reference to one single frame or multi-frame Image.

Note: The same set of spatial coordinates may be selected from more than one single-frame image, or more than one frame of a multi-frame image when the purpose of reference is applicable to multiple images. For example, the spatial coordinates may specify the outline of a sampling region at the same spatial location on multiple images acquired over time.

Table C.18.6-1
SPATIAL COORDINATES MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Graphic Data	(0070,0022)	1	An ordered set of (column,row) pairs that denote positions in an image specified with sub-pixel resolution such that the origin at the TLHC of the TLHC pixel is 0.0\0.0, the BRHC of the TLHC pixel is 1.0\1.0, and the BRHC of the BRHC pixel is Columns\Rows. The values must be within the range 0\0 to Columns\Rows. The values Columns (0028,0011) and Rows (0028,0010) are those contained in the referenced image. See C.18.6.1.1 for further explanation.
Graphic Type	(0070,0023)	1	See C.18.6.1.2 for Enumerated Values.

C.18.6.1 Spatial Coordinates Macro Attribute Descriptions

C.18.6.1.1 Graphic Data

Graphic Data may be used to associate an anatomic or spatial Concept with a defined subset of one or more images. Graphic Data may be explicitly defined as a single point (i.e. to denote the epicenter of an anatomic site or lesion) or more than one point (i.e. representing a set of points or an open or closed polygon).

Note: Spatial coordinates may be used to associate observational data with a set of Image features. Spatial coordinates also may be used to convey coordinates that are input data for a measurement.

C.18.6.1.2 Graphic Type

When annotation applies to an image, this attribute defines the type of geometry of the annotated region of interest. The following Enumerated Values are specified for image spatial coordinate geometries:

POINT = a single pixel denoted by a single (column,row) pair

MULTIPOINT = multiple pixels each denoted by an (column,row) pair

POLYLINE = a series of connected line segments with ordered vertices denoted by (column,row) pairs; if the first and last vertices are the same it is a closed polygon

CIRCLE = a circle defined by two (column,row) pairs. The first point is the central pixel. The second point is a pixel on the perimeter of the circle.

ELLIPSE = an ellipse defined by four pixel (column,row) pairs, the first two points specifying the endpoints of the major axis and the second two points specifying the endpoints of the minor axis of an ellipse

C.18.7 Temporal Coordinates Macro

Table C.18.7-1 specifies the Attributes that convey TCOORD Content Items. A TCOORD Content Item shall be the Source Content Item of one or more SELECTED FROM relationships with one or more SCOORD Content Items, one or more IMAGE Content Items, or one or more WAVEFORM Content Items.

Notes: 1. The same set of temporal coordinates may be selected from more than one single-frame image, or more than one frame of a multi-frame image, or from images and waveforms when the purpose of reference is applicable to multiple objects. For example, the definition of a sampling period at different spatial locations on multiple images and a synchronously acquired waveform.

2. Temporal coordinates may refer to spatial coordinates which in turn refer to one or more frames or images, for example to indicate a region localized in both time and space.

Table C.18.7-1
TEMPORAL COORDINATES MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Temporal Range Type	(0040,A130)	1	See C.18.7.1.1 for Enumerated Values.
Referenced Sample Positions	(0040,A132)	1C	List of samples within a multiplex group specifying temporal points of the referenced data. Position of first sample is 1. Required if the Referenced SOP Instance is a Waveform and Referenced Time Offsets (0040,A138) and Referenced Datetime (0040,A13A) are not present. May be used only if Referenced Channels (0040,A0B0) refers to channels within a single multiplex group.
Referenced Time Offsets	(0040,A138)	1C	Specifies temporal points for reference by number of seconds after start of data. Required if Referenced Sample Positions (0040,A132) and Referenced Datetime (0040,A13A) are not present.
Referenced Datetime	(0040,A13A)	1C	Specifies temporal points for reference by absolute time. Required if Referenced Sample Positions (0040,A132) and Referenced Time Offsets (0040,A138) are not present.

C.18.7.1 Temporal Coordinates Macro Attribute Descriptions

C.18.7.1.1 Temporal Range Type

This Attribute defines the type of temporal extent of the region of interest. A temporal point (or instant of time) may be defined by a waveform sample offset (for a single waveform multiplex group only), time offset, or absolute time.

The following Enumerated Values are specified for Temporal Range Type:

POINT = a single temporal point
MULTIPOINT = multiple temporal points
SEGMENT = a range between two temporal points

MULTISEGMENT = multiple segments, each denoted by two temporal points

BEGIN = a range beginning at one temporal point, and extending beyond the end of the acquired data

END = a range beginning before the start of the acquired data, and extending to (and including) the identified temporal point

C.18.8 Container Macro

Table C.18.1-1 specifies the Attributes that convey a CONTAINER content item.

Table C.18.8-1
CONTAINER MACRO ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Continuity of Content	(0040,A050)	1	This flag specifies for a CONTAINER whether or not its contained Content Items are logically linked in a continuous textual flow, or are separate items. Enumerated Values: SEPARATE CONTINUOUS See C.18.8.1.1 for further explanation.
Content Template Sequence	(0040,A504)	1C	Template that describes the content of this Content Item and its subsidiary Content Items. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence. Required if a template was used to define the content of this Item, and the template consists of a single CONTAINER with nested content, and it is the outermost invocation of a set of nested templates that start with the same CONTAINER (see C.18.8.1.2).
>Mapping Resource	(0008,0105)	1	Mapping Resource that defines the template. See Section 8.4. Defined Terms: DCMR = DICOM Content Mapping Resource
>Template Identifier	(0040,DB00)	1	Template identifier.

C.18.8.1 Container Macro Attribute Descriptions

C.18.8.1.1 Continuity of Content

Continuity of Content (0040,A050) specifies whether or not all the Content Items contained in a CONTAINER are logically linked in a continuous textual flow, or are separate entities. It only applies to the children contained in the container, and not their children (which if containers themselves, will have the attribute specified explicitly).

Notes: 1. This allows the interspersing of measurements, codes, and image references, amongst text. For example, the following: “A mass of diameter = 3 cm was detected.” can be represented by the following Content Items in a CONTAINER with a Continuity of Content (0040,A050) of CONTINUOUS:

TEXT “A mass of”

NUM “Diameter” 3 “cm”

TEXT “was detected.”

2. The Continuity of Content applies only to subsidiary Content Items with Relationship Type CONTAINS. Other subsidiary items, e.g., with Relationship Type HAS CONCEPT MOD or HAS OBS CONTEXT, are not part of the Continuity of Content, but apply to the Container as a whole.

C.18.8.1.2 Content Template Sequence

A Template for SR Documents defines a set of constraints on the relationships and content (Value Types, Codes, etc.) of Content Items. Specific Templates for SR Documents are defined either by the DICOM Standard (see PS3.16) or by users of the Standard for particular purposes. Usage of Templates for SR Documents may improve comparability of essential data, facilitate data-entry and revisions, enable automatic processing and simplify presentation of information to the user.

An SR Document consists of a Root CONTAINER Content Item with nested content, and as such may be defined by a Template specifying a single CONTAINER with nested content. Sub-trees of an SR Document may similarly be defined by a Template specifying a single CONTAINER with nested content. If created using such a Template, the Root and/or sub-tree shall identify the Template in the CONTAINER Content Item. When a Template invokes (includes) another Template, the outermost invoking Template is the one identified as the defining Template for the CONTAINER in the Content Template Sequence (0040,A504).

The Content Template Sequence (0040,A504) identifies the Template that was used in the creation of the associated Content Item and its subsidiary Content Items. A Template is identified by a Mapping Resource (0008,0105) (the entity that manages or registers the Template), and an identifier of the Template. DICOM Standard Templates are identified in Template Identifier (0040,DB00) using the CS value representation.

The DICOM Template identifier (0040,DB00) is a string of digits, without leading zeroes, and does not include the string “TID”.

C.19 RAW DATA SPECIFIC MODULES

The following Modules are used by the Raw Data IOD.

C.19.1 Raw Data Module

Table C.19-1 specifies the attributes that describe a raw data stream.

Table C.19-1
RAW DATA MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Instance Number	(0020,0013)	2	A number that identifies this image. The value shall be unique within a series.
Content Date	(0008,0023)	1	The date the raw data creation was started.
Content Time	(0008,0033)	1	The time the raw data creation was started.
Acquisition Datetime	(0008,002A)	3	The date and time that the acquisition of data started. Note: The synchronization of this time with an external clock is specified in the synchronization Module in Acquisition Time synchronized (0018,1800).
Creator-Version UID	(0008,9123)	1	Unique identification of the equipment and version of the software that has created the Raw Data information. The UID allows one to avoid attempting to interpret raw data with an unknown format.
Referenced Instance Sequence	(0008,114A)	3	A sequence that provides reference to a set of SOP Class/Instance pairs identifying other Instances significantly related to this Instance. One or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>Include 'Image SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table 10-3			
>Purpose of Reference Code Sequence	(0040,A170)	1	Describes the purpose for which the reference is made. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence. See C.7.6.16.2.5.1.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			No Baseline Context ID is defined.
Include any private attributes that contain Raw Data information. See section C.19.1.1 for further explanation.			

C.19.1.1 Raw Data

The Raw Data stored with the Raw Data Module consists of one or more private attributes that are vendor specific. No rules are specified about the content and format of the raw data.

C.20 SPATIAL REGISTRATION

C.20.1 Spatial Registration Series Module

Table C.20.1-1 defines the general Attributes of the Spatial Registration Series Module.

Table C.20.1-1
SPATIAL REGISTRATION SERIES MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Modality	(0008,0060)	1	Modality type. Enumerated Value: REG

C.20.2 Spatial Registration Module

Table C.20.2-1 defines the general Attributes of the Spatial Registration Module.

Table C.20.2-1
SPATIAL REGISTRATION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Content Date	(0008,0023)	1	The date the content creation started.
Content Time	(0008,0033)	1	The time the content creation started.
Include Content Identification Macro Table 10-12			
Registration Sequence	(0070,0308)	1	A sequence of one or more registration items. Each item defines a spatial registration to the referenced images in that item. All referenced images are in the same spatial frame of reference or atlas.
>Frame of Reference UID	(0020,0052)	1C	Identifies a Frame of Reference that may or may not be an image set (e.g. atlas or physical space). See C.7.4.1.1.1 for further explanation. Required if Referenced Image Sequence (0008,1140) is absent. May be present otherwise.
>Referenced Image Sequence	(0008,1140)	1C	Identifies the set of images registered in this sequence item. One or more items shall be present. Required if Frame of Reference UID (0020,0052) is absent. May be present otherwise.
>>Include 'Image SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table 10-3			
>Matrix Registration Sequence	(0070,0309)	1	A sequence that specifies one spatial registration. Exactly one item shall be present
>>Frame of Reference Transformation Comment	(3006,00C8)	3	User description or comments about the registration.
>>Registration Type Code Sequence	(0070,030D)	2	Describes the information input into the registration process. Only one item may be present.
>>>Include ‘Code Sequence Macro’ Table 8.8-1			*Baseline Context ID is 7100*
>>Matrix Sequence	(0070,030A)	1	One or more items shall be present. Each

			item specifies a transformation. The item order is significant and corresponds to matrix multiplication order. See C.20.2.1.1.
>>>Frame of Reference Transformation Matrix	(3006,00C6)	1	A 4x4 homogeneous transformation matrix that registers the referenced images to the local RCS. Matrix elements shall be listed in row-major order. See C.20.2.1.1.
>>>Frame of Reference Transformation Matrix Type	(0070,030C)	1	Type of Frame of Reference Transformation Matrix (3006,00C6). Defined terms: RIGID RIGID_SCALE AFFINE See C.20.2.1.2
>Used Fiducials Sequence	(0070,0314)	3	The fiducials used to determine the Frame of Reference Transformation Matrix. One or more Items may be present.
>>Include 'SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table 10-8			Reference to the Spatial Fiducial SOP Instance identifying the Used Fiducial(s)
>>Fiducial UID	(0070,031A)	1	The UID that identifies the fiducial used as registration input.

C.20.2.1 Registration Module Attribute Descriptions

C.20.2.1.1 Frame of Reference Transformation Matrix

The Frame of Reference Transformation Matrix (3006,00C6) ${}^{A}M_{B}$ describes how to transform a point (${}^{B}x$,${}^{B}y$,${}^{B}z$) with respect to RCS_B into (${}^{A}x$,${}^{A}y$,${}^{A}z$) with respect to RCS_A according to the equation below.

$$\begin{bmatrix} {}^{A}x \\ {}^{A}y \\ {}^{A}z \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} M_{11} & M_{12} & M_{13} & T_x \\ M_{21} & M_{22} & M_{23} & T_y \\ M_{31} & M_{32} & M_{33} & T_z \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} {}^{B}x \\ {}^{B}y \\ {}^{B}z \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

The Frame of Reference Transformation Matrix is expressible as multiple matrices, each in a separate item of the Matrix Sequence (0070,030A). The equation below specifies the order of the matrix multiplication where $\mathbf{M}_1$, $\mathbf{M}_2$ and $\mathbf{M}_3$ are the first, second and third items in the sequence.

$$\begin{bmatrix} x' & y' & z' & 1 \end{bmatrix}^T = \mathbf{M}_3\left(\mathbf{M}_2\left(\mathbf{M}_1\begin{bmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \end{bmatrix}^T\right)\right)$$

where $\begin{bmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \end{bmatrix}^T = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

Registration often involves two or more RCS, each with a corresponding Frame of Reference Transformation Matrix. For example, another Frame of Reference Transformation Matrix ${}^{A}M_{C}$ can describe how to transform a point (${}^{C}x, {}^{C}y, {}^{C}z$) with respect to RCS_C into (${}^{A}x, {}^{A}y, {}^{A}z$) with respect to RCS_A. It is straightforward to find the Frame of Reference Transformation Matrix ${}^{B}M_{C}$ that describes how to transform the point (${}^{C}x, {}^{C}y, {}^{C}z$) with respect to RCS_C into the point (${}^{B}x, {}^{B}y, {}^{B}z$) with respect to $RCS_{B.}$ The solution is to invert ${}^{A}M_{B}$ and multiply by ${}^{A}M_{C}$, as shown below:

$$\begin{bmatrix} {}^{B}x \\ {}^{B}y \\ {}^{B}z \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = ({}^{A}\mathbf{M}_{B})^{-1} * {}^{A}\mathbf{M}_{C} \begin{bmatrix} {}^{C}x \\ {}^{C}y \\ {}^{C}z \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

C.20.2.1.2 Frame of Reference Transformation Matrix Type

There are three types of Registration Matrices:

RIGID: This is a registration involving only translations and rotations. Mathematically, the matrix is constrained to be orthonormal and describes six degrees of freedom: three translations, and three rotations.

RIGID_SCALE: This is a registration involving only translations, rotations and scaling. Mathematically, the matrix is constrained to be orthogonal and describes nine degrees of freedom: three translations, three rotations and three scales. This type of transformation is sometimes used in atlas mapping.

AFFINE: This is a registration involving translations, rotations, scaling and shearing. Mathematically, there are no constraints on the elements of the Frame of Reference Transformation Matrix, so it conveys twelve degrees of freedom. This type of transformation is sometimes used in atlas mapping.

See the PS 3.17 Annex on Transforms and Mappings for more detail.

C.20.3 Deformable Spatial Registration Module

Table C.20.3-1 defines the general Attributes of the Deformable Spatial Registration Module.

Table C.20.3-1
DEFORMABLE SPATIAL REGISTRATION MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Content Date	(0008,0023)	1	The date the vector grid data creation started.
Content Time	(0008,0033)	1	The time the vector grid data creation started.
Include Content Identification Macro Table 10-12			
Deformable Registration Sequence	(0064,0002)	1	A sequence of one or more registration items. Each item defines a spatial registration to the referenced images in that item. At least one item shall have a Deformable Registration Grid Sequence (0064,0005) with one item. See C.20.3.1.1.
>Source Frame of Reference UID	(0064,0003)	1	Identifies the Frame of Reference of a Source RCS. The Source RCS may or may not include an image set (e.g. atlas). See C.7.4.1.1.1 for further explanation.
>Referenced Image Sequence	(0008,1140)	1C	Identifies the set of images registered in this sequence item. One or more items shall be present. Required if the registration applies to a subset of images within the specified Source Frame of Reference UID (0064,0003). All referenced images shall be in the same spatial frame of reference.
>>Include 'Image SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table 10-3			
>Frame of Reference Transformation Comment	(3006,00C8)	3	User description or comments about the registration.
>Registration Type Code Sequence	(0070,030D)	2	Describes the method used for the registration process. Zero or one item shall be present.
>>Include ‘Code Sequence Macro’ Table 8.8-1		*Baseline Context ID is 7100*	
>Pre Deformation Matrix Registration Sequence	(0064,000F)	1C	A sequence that specifies one spatial registration to be applied prior to the deformation. Exactly one item shall be present. Required if a matrix transformation is to be applied prior to deformation.
>>Frame of Reference Transformation Matrix	(3006,00C6)	1	A 4x4 homogeneous transformation matrix. Matrix elements shall be listed in row-major order. See C.20.2.1.1.

>>Frame of Reference Transformation Matrix Type	(0070,030C)	1	Type of Frame of Reference Transformation Matrix (3006,00C6). Defined terms: RIGID RIGID_SCALE AFFINE See C.20.2.1.2
>Post Deformation Matrix Registration Sequence	(0064,0010)	1C	A sequence that specifies one spatial registration to be applied after the application of the deformation. Exactly one item shall be present. Required if matrix transformation is to be performed after application of the deformation.
>>Frame of Reference Transformation Matrix	(3006,00C6)	1	A 4x4 homogeneous transformation matrix. Matrix elements shall be listed in row-major order. See C.20.2.1.1.
>>Frame of Reference Transformation Matrix Type	(0070,030C)	1	Type of Frame of Reference Transformation Matrix (3006,00C6). Defined terms: RIGID RIGID_SCALE AFFINE See C.20.2.1.2
>Deformable Registration Grid Sequence	(0064,0005)	1C	Describes the deformation grid used to sample into the Source RCS. Exactly one item shall be present. Required if deformation is performed. See C.20.3.1.2.
>>Image Orientation (Patient)	(0020,0037)	1	The direction of cosines of the first row and first column of the Vector Grid Data (0064,0009) with respect to the patient. See C.7.6.2.1.1 for further explanation.
>>Image Position (Patient)	(0020,0032)	1	The x, y, and z coordinates of the upper left hand voxel (center of the first voxel transmitted) of the grid, in mm in the Registered Frame of Reference. See C.7.6.2.1.1 for further explanation.
>>Grid Dimensions	(0064,0007)	1	The dimensions of the grid, in voxels. A triple representing the number of voxels along the X, Y, and Z axes.
>>Grid Resolution	(0064,0008)	1	The resolution of the grid voxels. A triple representing the size of a deformation voxel in along the X, Y, and Z dimension, in mm.
>>Vector Grid Data	(0064,0009)	1	A data stream of vectors. See C.20.3.1.3 for further explanation.
>Used Fiducials Sequence	(0070,0314)	3	The fiducials used to determine the registration. One or more Items may be present.

>> Include 'Image SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table 10-3			Reference to the Spatial Fiducial SOP Instance identifying the Used Fiducial(s)
>>Fiducial UID	(0070,031A)	1	The UID that identifies the fiducial used as registration input.

C.20.3.1 Deformable Spatial Registration Module Attribute Descriptions

C.20.3.1.1 Deformable Registration Sequence Application

The registrations in this module are applied to the Registered RCS coordinates in the following order. First, transform the coordinates using the matrix described in the Pre Deformation Matrix Registration Sequence (0064,000F). Next apply the deformation offsets to the resulting coordinates. Finally, transform those coordinates using the matrix described in the Post Deformation Matrix Registration Sequence (0064,0010). The resulting coordinate addresses the sample point within the Source RCS.

Thus a source coordinate may be calculated using the following equation:

(This assumes that the center position of each deformation voxel will be transformed)

$$\begin{bmatrix} X_{Source} \\ Y_{Source} \\ Z_{Source} \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = M_{Post}\left(M_{\Pr e}\begin{bmatrix} X_{Start}+i*X_R \\ Y_{Start}+j*Y_R \\ Z_{Start}+k*Z_R \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} \Delta X_{ijk} \\ \Delta Y_{ijk} \\ \Delta Z_{ijk} \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}\right)$$

Where:

$[X \quad Y \quad Z]_{Source}$ The spatial coordinate in the Source RCS.

$[X \quad Y \quad Z]_{Start}$ The start coordinate, in the Registered RCS, of the deformation grid as specified in the Image Position (Patient) attribute (0020,0032).

$[i \quad j \quad k]$ The index into the deformation grid in the X, Y, and Z dimension.

$[X \quad Y \quad Z]_R$ The resolution of the deformation grid in the X, Y, and Z dimension as specified in the Grid Resolution attribute (0064,0008).

$\lfloor \Delta X_{ijk} \quad \Delta Y_{ijk} \quad \Delta Z_{ijk} \rfloor$ The deformation specified at index (i,j,k) in the deformation grid. If the Deformation Registration Grid Sequence (0064,0005) has no items, the Δ values are zero.

M_{Pre} The transformation matrix specified in the Pre Deformation Matrix Registration Sequence (0064,000F).

M_{Post} The transformation matrix specified in the Post Deformation Matrix Registration Sequence (0064,0010).

C.20.3.1.2 Deformable Registration Grid Sequence

The vector represents the deformation at the center of the voxel. Deformations between voxel centers shall be determined through interpolation of the surrounding vectors in an implementation dependent manner.

C.20.3.1.3 Vector Grid Data

The Vector Grid Data attribute (0064,0009) contains the vector data. Each voxel in the Vector Grid Data attribute (0064,0009) is represented by an $\lfloor \Delta X_{ijk} \quad \Delta Y_{ijk} \quad \Delta Z_{ijk} \rfloor$ vector. The vector describes the direction and magnitude of the deformation at the center of the deformation voxel.

The order of vectors sent for each vector plane shall be left to right, top to bottom, i.e., the upper left vector (labeled 1,1) is sent first followed by the remainder of row 1, followed by the first vector of row 2 (labeled 2,1) then the remainder of row 2 and so on.

A vector triple with values of (NaN,NaN,NaN) shall indicate that the transformation at that point of the deformation grid is undefined.

The size of this attribute value is determined by the dimensions specified in the Grid Dimensions attribute (0064,0007). For dimensions of $X_D \backslash Y_D \backslash Z_D$, the size of the attribute value can be calculated with the equation:

Number of Bytes = $X_D * Y_D * Z_D * 3 * 4$

C.21 SPATIAL FIDUCIALS

C.21.1 Spatial Fiducials Series Module

Table C.21.1-1 defines the general Attributes of the Spatial Fiducials Series Module.

Table C.21.1-1
SPATIAL FIDUCIALS SERIES MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Modality	(0008,0060)	1	Modality type. Enumerated Value: FID

C.21.2 Spatial Fiducials Module

Table C.21.2-1 defines the general Attributes of the Registration.

Table C.21.2-1
SPATIAL FIDUCIALS MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Content Date	(0008,0023)	1	The date the content creation started.
Content Time	(0008,0033)	1	The time the content creation started.
Include Content Identification Macro Table 10-12			
Fiducial Set Sequence	(0070,031C)	1	A sequence of one or more items, each of which is a fiducial set.
>Frame of Reference UID	(0020,0052)	1C	Identifies a Frame of Reference that may or may not be an image set (e.g. an atlas or physical space). See C.7.4.1.1.1 for further explanation. Required if Referenced Image Sequence (0008,1140) is absent. May be present otherwise.
>Referenced Image Sequence	(0008,1140)	1C	Identifies the set of images in which the fiducials are located. Required if Frame of Reference UID (0020,0052) is absent. May be present otherwise. One or more Items shall be present. All referenced images shall have the same Frame of Reference UID if present in the images.
>>Include 'Image SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table 10-3			
>Fiducial Sequence	(0070,031E)	1	A sequence that specifies one or more fiducials, one item per fiducial.
>>Fiducial Identifier	(0070,0310)	1	A fiducial assignment identifier that is unique within this Fiducial Sequence item but may match the fiducial identifier of an equivalent feature in another item.
>>Fiducial Identifier Code Sequence	(0070,0311)	1C	A code sequence for a term that identifies a well-known fiducial type (potentially including methodology, anatomy, tools, etc.). Only one item shall be present. Required if Identifier (0070,0310) is absent. May be present otherwise.
>>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*DCID 7101*
>>Fiducial UID	(0070,031A)	3	Globally unique identifier for the fiducial instance of this fiducial assignment.
>>Fiducial Description	(0070,030F)	3	User description or comments about the fiducial.
>>Shape Type	(0070,0306)	1	See C.21.2.1.1 for defined terms.
>>Number of Contour Points	(3006,0046)	1C	Number of points (triplets) in Contour Data (3006,0050). Required if Contour Data is present.
>>Contour Data	(3006,0050)	1C	Specifies the coordinates of this item's fiducial. One triplet (x,y,z) shall be present for each point in the fiducial. See C.21.2.1.2 for further explanation.

			Required if Frame of Reference UID (0020,0052) is present in this item of the Fiducial Set Sequence (0070,031C). Shall not be present otherwise. Note: Contour Data may not be properly encoded if Explicit-VR transfer syntax is used and the VL of this attribute exceeds 65534 bytes.
>>Contour Uncertainty Radius	(0070,0312)	3	The estimated uncertainty radius for the Contour Data in mm. See C.21.2.1.3
>>Graphic Coordinates Data Sequence	(0070,0318)	1C	The image pixel locations of the fiducial's points. Shall contain one or more items. More than one item shall be present only if a fiducial spans more than one image. Required if Contour Data is not present. May be present otherwise.
>>>Graphic Data	(0070,0022)	1	Graphic point coordinates of the fiducial points in the image of the Referenced Image Sequence. If Fiducial's Contour Data (3006,0050) is present, these points correlate to the points in the Contour Data, one row-column pair for each point and in the same order. See C.10.5.1.2 for further explanation.
>>>Referenced Image Sequence	(0008,1140)	1	A sequence that specifies the image containing the fiducial's graphic coordinates. Only one item shall be present. Shall be an image within the set of the images in the Referenced Image Sequence (0008,1140) of the encapsulating Fiducial Set Sequence (0070,031C) item.
>>>>Include 'Image SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table 10-3			

C.21.2.1 Spatial Fiducials Module Attribute Descriptions

C.21.2.1.1 Shape Type

For convenient registration, correlated Fiducials exist in each image set of the Registration Sequence. Correlated Fiducials are identified with either Fiducial Identifier (0070,0310) or Fiducial Identifier Code Sequence (0070,0311).

Shape Type (0070,0306) defines the geometric interpretation of the Contour Data (3006,0050) and Graphic Data (0070,0022). A point is defined as a triplet (x,y,z) in the case of spatial data or a pair (x,y) in the case of graphic data.

Defined Terms are:

POINT = a single point designating a single fiducial point.

Note: A point may be the epicenter of a more complex shape such as sphere.

LINE = two points that specify a line or axis such as the inter-orbital line. The point locations have no significance other than identifying the line, i.e. they are not line segment end points.

PLANE = three points that identify a plane such as the laterality plane

SURFACE = three or more points (usually many) that reside on, or near, a region of a curved surface. The surface may be flat or curved, closed or open. The point order has no significance.

RULER = two or more evenly spaced collinear points ordered sequentially along the line, such as a physical ruler placed in the imaging field.

L_SHAPE = three points of two perpendicular line segments, AB and BC, having a common end point B. The order of the points is: ABC. May represent an L-shaped marker placed in the imaging field.

T_SHAPE = three points of two perpendicular line segments AB and CD, such that C bisects AB. The order is ABD.

SHAPE = three or more points that specify the shape of a well-known fiducial type. The term in the Fiducial Identifier Code Sequence (0070,0311) defines the shape and the order of the points that represent it.

C.21.2.1.2 Contour Data

Contour Data (3006,0050) is an ordered set of triplets that defines a shape. The triplets (x,y,z) denote points in the Reference Coordinate System of the Registration Instance.

Note: Contours may associate observational data with a set of Image features or specify coordinates that are input data for a measurement.

C.21.2.1.3 Contour Uncertainty Radius

The uncertainty is an estimate of the standard deviation of the fiducial location process.

C.22 MEDIA CREATION MANAGEMENT SPECIFIC MODULES

The following Sections specify Modules used for Media Creation Management.

C.22.1 Media Creation Management Module

Table C.22.1-1
MEDIA CREATION MANAGEMENT MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute name	Tag	Attribute Description
Storage Media File-Set ID	(0088,0130)	User or implementation specific human readable identification of the Storage Media to be created.
Storage Media File-Set UID	(0088,0140)	Uniquely identifies a Storage Media to be created.
Number of Copies	(2000,0010)	Number of copies of set of media to be created for storing this file-set. Note: If the entire request fits on a single piece of media per copy, then this value corresponds to the actual number of pieces of media to be created.
Request Priority	(2200,0020)	Specifies the priority of the request. Enumerated Values: HIGH MED LOW
Label Using Information Extracted From Instances	(2200,0001)	Specifies whether or not to extract label information from the instances. Enumerated Values: YES NO
Label Text	(2200,0002)	Unformatted free text to include in the label instead

		of or in addition to information extracted from the instances.
Label Style Selection	(2200,0003)	An implementation-dependent code string that may be used as a hint to select a particular layout or format of label.
Media Disposition	(2200,0004)	Unstructured text that describes where and to whom the media is to be sent.
Barcode Value	(2200,0005)	String that describes the bar code value to be printed on the media label. Note It is SCU responsibility to convey a value for this attribute coherent in length and content with the requested Barcode Symbology (2200,0006).
Barcode Symbology	(2200,0006)	Code string that describes the bar code symbology that shall be used for printing the Barcode Value (2200,0005). See Section C.22.1.1 for Defined Terms.
Allow Media Splitting	(2200,0007)	A flag indicating if the SCP is allowed to split this request over more than one piece of media. Enumerated Values: YES NO Note: 1. The SCP is not required to support the split of a media creation request across more than one piece of media. 2. If the size of the set of SOP instances is greater than the media storage capacity, and this flag has been set to NO, the SCP shall refuse to process the request.
Allow Lossy Compression	(2200,000F)	A flag indicating if the SCP is allowed to perform lossy compression. Enumerated Values: YES NO
Include Non-DICOM Objects	(2200,0008)	A flag indicating if the SCP should include in the media additional Non-DICOM information/objects Defined Terms: NO FOR_PHYSICIAN FOR_PATIENT FOR_TEACHING FOR_RESEARCH
Include Display Application	(2200,0009)	A flag indicating if the SCP should include on the media a DICOM Instance Display Application. Enumerated Values: NO

		YES
Preserve Composite Instances After Media Creation	(2200,000A)	A flag to indicate whether or not the SCU intends to issue a subsequent media creation request referencing some or all of the instances contained in Referenced SOP Sequence (0008,1199). Enumerated Values: YES NO
Referenced SOP Sequence	(0008,1199)	A sequence of repeating Items where each Item references a single SOP Instance, the Media Application Profile to be used, and, where applicable, the icon representing the referenced image
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.
>Requested Media Application Profile	(2200,000C)	The Media Application Profile to be used for this SOP Instance. Note: This is the label of the profile as defined in PS 3.11, e.g. "STD-XABC-CD".
>Icon Image Sequence	(0088,0200)	This Icon Image is representative of the Image.
>> Include 'Image Pixel Macro' Table C.7-11.2		
Execution Status	(2100,0020)	Execution status of a request. See Section C.22.1.2 for Enumerated Values
Execution Status Info	(2100,0030)	Additional information about Execution Status (2100,0020). When Execution Status is DONE, CREATING or IDLE, Defined Terms are: NORMAL See Section C.22.1.3 for Defined Terms when the Execution Status is PENDING or FAILURE.
Total Number of Pieces of Media Created	(2200,000B)	Number of pieces of media that have been successfully created, in order to store all copies of the requested file-set. Note: If the entire request fits on a single piece of media per copy, then this value corresponds to the number of copies of media created.
Failed SOP Sequence	(0008,1198)	A sequence of repeating Items describing SOP Instances for which media creation failed.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.
>Requested Media Application Profile	(2200,000C)	The Media Application Profile used for this SOP Instance. Note: This is the label of the profile as defined in PS 3.11, e.g. "STD-XABC-CD".
>Failure Reason	(0008,1197)	The reason that media creation failed for this SOP Instance. See Section C.22.1.4.

>Failure Attributes	(2200,000E)	Attributes associated with the Failure Reason (0008,1197). See Section C.22.1.4.
Referenced Storage Media Sequence	(2200,000D)	A Sequence describing the identifiers of all pieces of media created to satisfy the request. One or more items are allowed. Note: If the SCP splits a media creation request across more than one piece of media (e.g. if it doesn't fit on one), then all the created pieces of media will be included in this Sequence.
> Storage Media File-Set ID	(0088,0130)	User or implementation specific human readable identification of the Storage Media that has been created.
> Storage Media File-Set UID	(0088,0140)	Uniquely identifies the Storage Media that has been created.

C.22.1.1 Barcode Symbology

Defined Terms for Barcode Symbology (2200,0006) are:

CODE128	Code 128. ISO/IEC 15417:2000 Information technology – Automatic identification and data capture techniques – Bar code symbology specification – Code128
CODE39	Code 39. ISO/IEC 16388:1999 Information technology – Automatic identification and data capture techniques – Bar code symbology specifications – Code 39
INTER_2_5	Interleaved 2 of 5. (also known as USS ITF 2/5, I-2/5, ITF 2of5) ISO/IEC 16390:1999 Information technology – Automatic identification and data capture techniques – Bar code symbology specifications – Interleaved 2 of 5
HIBC	ANSI/HIBC 1-1996 Health Industry Bar Code (HIBC) Provider Applications Standard

Note This table doesn't suppose to list all the bar code symbologies in use (there are currently more than 400). Implementations supporting other symbologies can extend this list. Implementation specific code values shall be defined in the Conformance Statement.

C.22.1.2 Execution Status

Enumerated Values for Execution Status (2100,0020) are:

IDLE	The SCP has created the media creation management instance, but it has not been yet scheduled. Note It describes the status of a new media creation management instance (N-CREATE operation performed) for which the N-ACTION action has not been yet issued.
PENDING	This media creation management instance is still scheduled for processing.
CREATING	This media creation management instance is being processed.
DONE	This media creation management instance has been

	successfully processed.
FAILURE	This media creation management instance failed to be processed.

C.22.1.3 Execution Status Info

Defined Terms for Execution Status Info (2100,0030) are:

CHECK_MCD_OP	The media creation request could not be accomplished since the device is not ready at this time and needs to be checked by an operator (e.g., covers/doors opened or device jammed).
CHECK_MCD_SRV	The media creation request could not be accomplished since the device is not ready at this time and needs to be checked by a vendor service engineer (e.g., internal component failure).
DIR_PROC_ERR	The DICOMDIR building process failed for some unspecified reason (e.g., mandatory attributes or values missing).
DUPL_REF_INST	Duplicated instances in the Referenced SOP Sequence (0008,1199).
INST_AP_CONFLICT	One or more of the elements in the Referenced SOP Sequence (0008,1199) are in conflict (e.g., the SOP Class specified is not consistent with the requested Application Profile).
INST_OVERSIZED	A single instance size exceeds the actual media capacity. Note: DICOM media does not support spanning of instances across volumes.
INSUFFIC_MEMORY	There is not enough memory available to complete this request.
MCD_BUSY	Media creation device is not available at this time, but should become ready without user intervention (e.g the media creation device‘s buffer capacity is full). The SCU should retry later.
MCD_FAILURE	Media creation device fails to operate. This may depend on permanent or transient hardware failures (e.g robot arm broken, DVD writer failed) or because it has been disabled by an operator.
NO_INSTANCE	One or more of the SOP Instances in the Referenced SOP Sequence (0008,1199) are not available.
NOT_SUPPORTED	One or more of the Application Profiles, and/or SOP Classes, referenced in the Referenced SOP Sequence (0008,1199) are not supported by the SCP.
OUT_OF_SUPPLIES	No more supplies (e.g., blank media, labeling ink) are available for the media creation device. Operator intervention is required to replenish the supply. Note This service is not supposed to provide detailed device status information, however sophisticated media creating devices can extend this table to return more information about the supply to be replenished. Implementation specific code values shall be defined in the Conformance Statement.
PROC_FAILURE	A general processing failure was encountered.
QUEUED	This Media Creation Management instance is still in queue

SET_OVERSIZED	The file-set size exceeds the actual media capacity, and the device is not capable of splitting across multiple pieces of media.
UNKNOWN	There is an unspecified problem

Note: For most of the above statuses, the SCU can obtain more details about the processing errors (e.g., what are the SOP instances not available) by using the Failure Reason Attribute (0008,1197) within the Failed SOP Sequence (0008,1198).

C.22.1.4 Failure Reason

Defined Terms for Failure Reason (0008,1197) are:

Code	Further meaning	Description
0110H	Processing failure	A general failure in processing the operation was encountered.
0112H	No such object instance	One or more of the instances listed in the Referenced SOP Sequence (0008,1199) was not available.
0122H	Referenced SOP Class not supported	A media creation has been requested for a SOP Instance with a SOP Class that is not supported by the SCP.
0119H	Class/Instance conflict	The SOP Class of an instance in the Referenced SOP Instance Sequence did not correspond to the SOP class of the SOP Instance stored at the SCP.
0201H	Media Application Profiles conflict	One or more of the Media Application Profiles referenced in the Reference SOP Sequence (0008,1199) are in conflict (e.g. for the same request a STD-GEN-CD and a STD-GEN-DVD is referenced).
0202H	Media Application Profile / Instance conflict	The SOP Class of an instance in the Referenced SOP Sequence (0008,1199) did not correspond to a SOP class permitted for the requested or supported Media Application Profiles.
0203H	Media Application Profile / Compression conflict	The profile for an instance in the Referenced SOP Sequence (0008,1199) specified lossy compression but Allow Lossy Compression (2200,000F) has a value of NO.
0204H	Media Application Profile not supported	Media creation has been requested for an Application Profile that is not supported by the SCP.
0205H	Instance size exceeded	A single instance size exceeds the actual media capacity. Note: DICOM media does not support spanning of instances across volumes.
0120H	Missing attribute	A required Attribute (e.g., Patient ID) was not supplied. The missing Attribute(s) shall be listed in Failure Attributes (2200,000E).
0121H	Missing attribute value	A required Attribute Value (e.g., the Content Date for a Structured Report) was not supplied. The Attribute(s) with missing values shall be listed in Failure Attributes (2200,000E).

C.23 HANGING PROTOCOL SPECIFIC MODULES

The following Sections specify Modules used for Hanging Protocols.

C.23.1 Hanging Protocol Definition Module

Table C.23.1-1 specifies the Attributes that describe and identify the high level definition of a Hanging Protocol, including its overall purpose, and the types of image sets to which it applies. See the Hanging Protocols informative annex (PS 3.17) for further explanation.

Table C.23.1-1
Hanging Protocol Definition Module Attributes

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Hanging Protocol Name	(0072,0002)	1	Short descriptor that identifies the Hanging Protocol.
Hanging Protocol Description	(0072,0004)	1	Explanation of the objective or intent of the Hanging Protocol.
Hanging Protocol Level	(0072,0006)	1	Identifies the level at which this Hanging Protocol is defined, and the intended use. Enumerated values: MANUFACTURER SITE USER_GROUP SINGLE_USER
Hanging Protocol Creator	(0072,0008)	1	Identifies the creator of the Hanging Protocol.
Hanging Protocol Creation Datetime	(0072,000A)	1	Date and time on which the Hanging Protocol was created.
Hanging Protocol Definition Sequence	(0072,000C)	1	Sequence that defines the type of imaging studies to which this Hanging Protocol applies. One or more sequence items shall be present. See C.23.1.1.1.
>Modality	(0008,0060)	1C	Type of equipment that originally acquired the data used to create images or related objects to which this Hanging Protocol applies. See C.7.3.1.1.1 for Defined Terms. Required if Anatomic Region Sequence (0008,2218) is not present. May be present otherwise.
>Anatomic Region Sequence	(0008,2218)	1C	Sequence that identifies the anatomic region of interest to which this Hanging Protocol applies. One or more sequence items may be present. Required if Modality (0008,0060) is not present. May be present otherwise.
>>Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1			*Defined Context ID 4*
>Laterality	(0020,0060)	2C	Laterality of the body part to which this Hanging Protocol applies. Enumerated Values: R – Right L – Left

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
			B – Both U – Unpaired Zero length means not applicable. Required if Anatomic Region Sequence (0008,2218) is present.
> Procedure Code Sequence	(0008,1032)	2	Sequence that identifies a procedure to which this Hanging Protocol applies. One or more sequence items may be present.
>>Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1			*No Baseline Context ID is defined*
>Reason for Requested Procedure Code Sequence	(0040,100A)	2	Sequence that identifies a reason for procedure to which this Hanging Protocol applies. One or more sequence items may be present.
>>Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1			*No Baseline Context ID is defined*
Number of Priors Referenced	(0072,0014)	1	Identifies the number of prior image sets used in this Hanging Protocol.
Image Sets Sequence	(0072,0020)	1	Sequence describing one or more types of Image Sets to which the Hanging Protocol applies. One or more sequence items shall be present. See C.23.1.1.2.
>Image Set Selector Sequence	(0072,0022)	1	Sequence containing Image Set selection attributes and values that are used to identify one type of image or object set for the Hanging Protocol. One or more sequence items shall be present. See C.23.1.1.3.
>>Image Set Selector Usage Flag	(0072,0024)	1	Indicates the behavior of matching against an image object when the Selector Attribute (0072,0026) is not available in the image object. Enumerated Values: MATCH – if the attribute is not in the image object, consider the image to be a match anyway. NO_MATCH – if the attribute is not in the image object, then do not consider the image to be a match.
>>Selector Attribute	(0072,0026)	1	Data Element Tag of an Attribute from an Image or other IOD to use for Image Set selection.
>>Selector Attribute VR	(0072,0050)	1	The Value Representation of the Selector Attribute (0072,0026). See PS 3.5 for Enumerated Values of Value Representation.
>>Include Hanging Protocol Selector Attribute Context Macro Table C.23.4-1			
>>Include Hanging Protocol Selector Attribute Value Macro Table C.23.4-2			
>>Selector Value Number	(0072,0028)	1	Positive integer identifying which value of a multi-valued attribute identified by Selector Attribute (0072,0026) is to be used for Image Set selection. The value 1 identifies the first value. The value zero identifies any value.

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
>Time Based Image Sets Sequence	(0072,0030)	1	Sequence containing time based Image Set selection categories and values that are used to identify one type of image set for the Hanging Protocol per sequence item. One or more sequence items shall be present. The Image Set Selector Sequence (0072,0022) shall be applied to each sequence item to define an image set. See C.23.1.1.2.
>>Image Set Number	(0072,0032)	1	A monotonically increasing integer, starting from 1, incrementing by one, unique within the Hanging Protocol Instance. Note: Each item of the Display Sets Sequence (0072,0200) references one Image Set Number (0072,0032).
>>Image Set Selector Category	(0072,0034)	1	Category of the Time Based Image Set selector. Enumerated Values: RELATIVE_TIME ABSTRACT_PRIOR
>>Relative Time	(0072,0038)	1C	Exactly two numeric values, indicating the start and end values of a prior range of instance acquisition times relative to the date and time of a current image set. The units shall be specified in Relative Time Units (0072,003A). The value pair 0\0 shall indicate a current image set. The value pair n\n shall indicate “prior from the instance acquisition time of a current image set by n units”. Required if the value of Image Set Selector Category (0072,0034) is RELATIVE_TIME. Note: 1. A value pair “1\7” with Relative Time Units (0072,003A) of DAYS would indicate the range “prior by 1 to 7 days before a current image set”. 2. The VR of this attribute is unsigned, hence future time cannot be represented.
>>Relative Time Units	(0072,003A)	1C	Units of time for Relative Time (0072,0038). Enumerated Values: SECONDS, MINUTES, HOURS, DAYS, WEEKS, MONTHS, YEARS. Required if Relative Time (0072,0038) is present.
>>Abstract Prior Value	(0072,003C)	1C	Identifies a prior image set in abstract terms. Exactly two integer values, indicating the range of prior studies to include. Each value shall be greater than zero, where 1 indicates the most recent prior and higher values indicate successively older priors. The special value –1 shall indicate the oldest prior. Notes: 1. The value pair n\n indicates the nth prior.

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
			2. The value pair -1\-1 indicates the oldest prior. 3. The value pair m\n indicates the mth through nth priors, where m is the more recent prior. 4. The value pair 1\-1 indicates all priors. 5. The value pair m\-1 indicates the mth prior and all priors older than m. Required if Image Set Selector Category (0072,0034) is ABSTRACT_PRIOR and Abstract Prior Code Sequence (0072,003E) is not present.
>>Abstract Prior Code Sequence	(0072,003E)	1C	Identifies a prior image set using coded terminology. Only one sequence item shall be present. Required if Image Set Selector Category (0072,0034) is ABSTRACT_PRIOR and Abstract Prior Value (0072,003C) is not present.
>>>Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1			*Defined Context ID 31*
>>Image Set Label	(0072,0040)	3	Description of the objective of the image set defined by this sequence item.
Hanging Protocol User Identification Code Sequence	(0072,000E)	2	Sequence that provides a coded identifier for the person, group, or site for which this Hanging Protocol was defined. Only one sequence item may be present. Note: If a standardized naming schema becomes available, it should be used. Meanwhile, local coding schemes such as employee numbers and department numbers are likely to be used.
>Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1			*No baseline context ID is defined.*
Hanging Protocol User Group Name	(0072,0010)	3	Group or site for which this Hanging Protocol was defined.
Source Hanging Protocol Sequence	(0072,0012)	3	Sequence that identifies the Hanging Protocol from which this Hanging Protocol was derived, or on which it is based. One sequence item may be present.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1	Uniquely identifies the SOP Class UID.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1	Uniquely identifies the SOP Instance UID.

C.23.1.1 Attribute Descriptions

C.23.1.1.1 Hanging Protocol Definition Sequence Attributes

The Hanging Protocol Definition Sequence (0072,000C) provides a collection of one or more sequence items that defines the intent for the Hanging Protocol with respect to modality, anatomy, laterality, procedure and/or reason.

This allows for some degree of flexibility in defining the intent for the Hanging Protocol, while providing a precise structure for query matching using the existing rules for Sequence Matching, as defined in PS 3.4.

Notes: 1. The Hanging Protocol Definition Sequence (0072,000C) does not imply anything about the related image sets. These are defined in the Image Sets Sequence (0072,0020).

2. When creating a Hanging Protocol Instance, the values that are used for Procedure Code Sequence (0008,1032) or Reason for Requested Procedure Code Sequence (0040,100A) may come from a variety of sources, but are expected to be consistent throughout the domain in which a Hanging Protocol Instance will be exchanged. The following are recommended as potential sources of values.

Procedure Code Sequence (0008,1032):

- SNOMED codes
- ICD-10-PCS Procedure Codes
- Local Codes

Reason for Requested Procedure Code Sequence (0040,100A):

- SNOMED codes
- ICD-9-CM
- ICD-10-CM
- Local Codes

C.23.1.1.2 Image Sets Sequence

The Image Sets Sequence (0072,0020) within a Hanging Protocol Instance serves to identify the type of image or other object sets to which the Hanging Protocol is intended to apply. Multiple types of image sets may be identified for a Hanging Protocol, to combine, for example, multiple imaging studies for a specific anatomy, or multiple imaging studies performed over a period of time, to monitor the progress of a condition. All image sets shall be for the same patient.

The images to be included in an Image Set may be specified directly by matching attribute values within the images, or indirectly through Key Object Selection Documents or Presentation States by matching their attribute values.

Key Object Selection Documents shall be matched by their SOP Class UID. The available Key Object Selection Documents may be further matched on the values of their other attributes (e.g., Concept Name Code Sequence, Coding Scheme Designator = “DCM” and Code Value = “113003”, which has a code meaning of “For Surgery”). When the Hanging Protocol Instance is applied, the image object instances referenced by the matching Key Object Selection Document instances comprise the image set.

Presentation States shall be matched by their SOP Class UID. The available Presentation States may be further matched on the values of their other attributes (e.g., Content Label). When the Hanging Protocol Instance is applied, the image object instances referenced by the matching Presentation State instances comprise the image set.

Note: Image Sets Sequence (0072,0020) allows other objects such as waveforms and SR documents to be identified. However, Hanging Protocol Display module operations such as filtering, reformatting, and sorting are defined only for image objects. The only expectation for non-image objects is to associate the objects with a position on a screen.

Each sequence item in the Image Sets Sequence (0072,0020) shall follow these rules:

- Each sequence item in the Time Based Image Sets Sequence (0072,0030) shall identify one image set, based on time criteria.

- The Items of the Image Set Selector Sequence (0072,0022) shall collectively identify one type of image set.
- One instance of time based criteria combined with the Items of the Image Set Selector Sequence (0072,0022) shall identify one image set.
- The number of image sets identified by a sequence item of the Image Sets Sequence (0072,0020) shall equal the number of items in the Time Based Image Sets Sequence (0072,0030).
- The value of the Image Set Number (0072,0032) in each Time Based Image Sets Sequence (0072,0030) sequence item shall be unique across all sequence items of the Image Sets Sequence (0072,0020).

Notes: 1. The identification of a current image set is established by the application prior to selection of a Hanging Protocol Instance. The current image set is not necessarily from a single study.

2. In mammography screening, for example, the Hanging Protocol defines the current image set plus the screening image set for the patient from the year prior. There would be one sequence item in the Image Sets Sequence (0072,0020). Within this sequence item, the Items of the Image Set Selector Sequence (0072,0022) would identify a mammography screening image set type. The Time Based Image Sets Sequence (0072,0030) would have two sequence items, one to identify the current, and one to identify the prior.

C.23.1.1.3 Image Set Selector Sequence Attributes

The Image Set Selector Sequence (0072,0022) contains sequence items that specify the DICOM attribute tags and values that shall be used to identify the image or other object set.

The Image Set Selector Usage Flag (0072,0024) indicates whether the attribute identified by the Selector Attribute (0072,0026) causes matching to succeed or fail if the attribute is not available in an image object.

Within a sequence item, the Selector Attribute (0072,0026) identifies a DICOM attribute tag that is likely to be present in image or other object instances that are desired for the Image Set. If it is a multi-valued attribute, the Selector Value Number (0072,0028) indicates which value is intended to be used for matching. The Selector Attribute VR (0072,0050) identifies the Value Representation of the Selector Attribute (0072,0026). The value of Selector Attribute VR (0072,0050) determines which attribute of the Hanging Protocol Selector Attribute Value Macro is required to specify one or more desired values for the DICOM attribute tag. If more than one value is specified for the attribute, or more than one sequence item is specified in the Selector Code Sequence Value (0072,0080), then image object instances with a corresponding attribute that matches any one of the values shall be included in the Image Set.

Note: The values used for the Selector Attribute (0072,0026) are intended to identify a type of image set via the general categories of modality, anatomy, procedure intent and/or reason. Therefore the values of the tags represented by Selector Attribute (0072,0026) are likely to be coded terms, enumerated values, defined terms or free text. The use of free text attributes is less desirable, because their values are less predictable for matching.

In an image object, some attributes occur at the top level, or nested within a Sequence or Functional Group Sequence, or both. In addition, a Private Attribute may be identified as a Selector Attribute (0072,0026). The attributes of the Hanging Protocol Selector Attribute Context Macro identify a Sequence, Functional Group Sequence, or Private Group context for the Selector Attribute (0072,0026).

The creator of a Hanging Protocol Instance uses this collection of attributes to identify one type of image set to which the Hanging Protocol is intended to apply. The user of a Hanging Protocol Instance (e.g., softcopy review workstation or pre-fetching application) uses this collection of attributes to match a specific image set to a Hanging Protocol, and/or to determine which image sets need to be retrieved in order to use a Hanging Protocol Instance. The Key Attributes to match against to obtain image sets are specified in the Selector Attribute (0072,0026) and its context in each sequence item.

If the value of the tag represented by Selector Attribute (0072,0026) contains a free text description (i.e., Selector Attribute VR = LO, SH, ST, LT, UT), whether exact or partial matching is used to identify a specific image instance when applying a Hanging Protocol Instance is implementation dependent.

C.23.2 Hanging Protocol Environment Module

Table C.23.2-1 specifies the Attributes that describe and identify the best suited display environment for a Hanging Protocol.

Different viewing styles and interactions may be defined depending on a workstation's capabilities. For example, the hanging preferences for viewing a screening mammogram study on a 1Kx1K screen with a 10 second repaint time versus a 2Kx2.5K screen may differ.

Notes: 1. The term Screen is intended to include all types of display devices (e.g., CRT, LCD, etc.).
2. This information may be used by an application to select a subset of the available screens on which to apply a Hanging Protocol.

Table C.23.2-1
Hanging Protocol Environment Module Attributes

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Number of Screens	(0072,0100)	2	Positive integer indicating the number of screens for which this Hanging Protocol is intended.
Nominal Screen Definition Sequence	(0072,0102)	2	Sequence of zero or more items that describes the set of screens for which this Hanging Protocol is intended.
>Number of Vertical Pixels	(0072,0104)	1	Positive integer indicating the intended number of rows of the addressable area of the screen in pixels. Note: The goal is not absolute size matching.
>Number of Horizontal Pixels	(0072,0106)	1	Positive integer indicating the intended number of columns of the addressable area of the screen in pixels. Note: The goal is not absolute size matching.
>Display Environment Spatial Position	(0072,0108)	1	Exactly four unitless floating point values indicating the rectangular coordinate position of the screen within the overall bounding box that encompasses all the screens. See C.23.2.1.1.
>Screen Minimum Grayscale Bit Depth	(0072,010A)	1C	Positive integer indicating the desired minimum number of grayscale bits per pixel of the screen. Required if Screen Minimum Color Bit Depth (0072,010C) is not present.
>Screen Minimum Color Bit Depth	(0072,010C)	1C	Positive integer indicating the desired minimum total number of bits per color channel used to present a pixel. Required if Screen Minimum Grayscale Bit Depth (0072,010A) is not present. Note: A 24-bit color system with 8 bits per color channel (red, green, blue) would have a value of 8.

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
>Application Maximum Repaint Time	(0072,010E)	3	Positive integer indicating the desired maximum time in milliseconds required by the application to repaint the full screen once (i.e., recalculate all pixels and paint them to the screen). Note: This is not the screen refresh time.

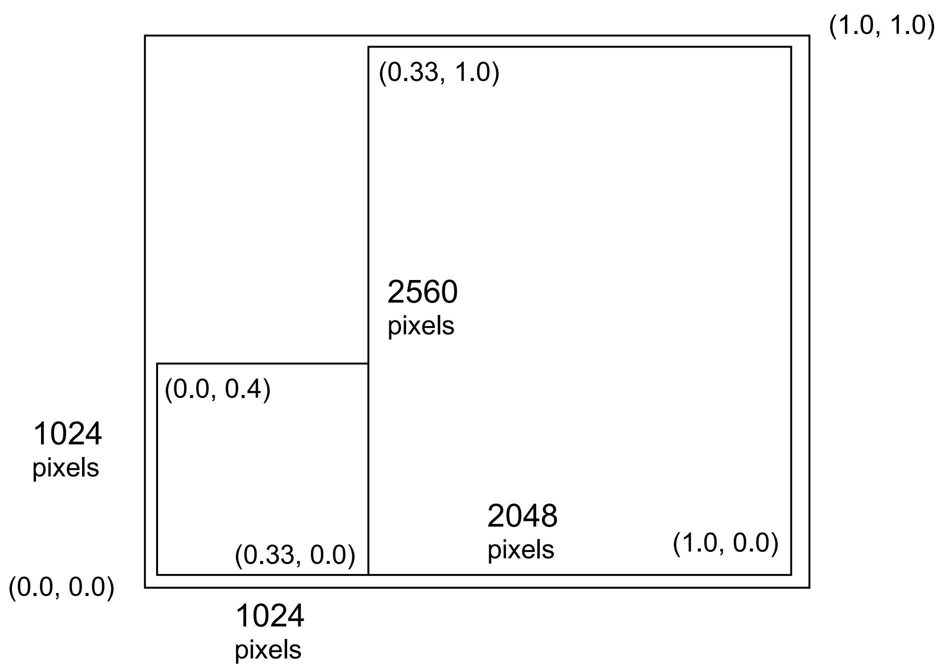
C.23.2.1 Attribute Descriptions

C.23.2.1.1 Display Environment Spatial Position

For the Display Environment Spatial Position (0072,0108) attribute, the lower left corner of the overall bounding box has Cartesian coordinates of (0.0,0.0). The upper right corner has coordinates of (1.0,1.0). The scale of the box is based on the Number of Vertical Pixels (0072,0104) and Number of Horizontal Pixels (0072,0106), not the physical size of the screens that are part of the workstation. The coordinates of each individual screen's box are defined in absolute coordinates relative to the (0,0) and (1,1) range of the overall box. Position of a box is given by a (x1,y1), (x2,y2) pair that identifies the upper left corner and lower right corner if the box is rectangular.

Note: The goal is not absolute position matching of the image boxes rendered on the screens using Hanging Protocol layout information, but that the relative positioning of the image boxes should be consistent between different workstations.

The following figure depicts a 1K x 1K screen positioned to the left of a 2K x 2.5K screen. The Display Environment Spatial Position (0072,0108) of the 1K x 1K screen is (0.0,0.4) (0.33,0.0), and the Display Environment Spatial Position (0072,0108) of the 2K x 2.5K screen is (0.33,1.0) (1.0,0.0).



C.23.3 Hanging Protocol Display Module

Table C.23.3-1 specifies the Attributes that describe operations (filter, reformat, sort, presentation intent), layout and interactions for a Hanging Protocol. See the Hanging Protocols informative annex (PS 3.17) for further explanation.

Table C.23.3-1
Hanging Protocol Display Module Attributes

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Display Sets Sequence	(0072,0200)	1	Sequence that describes one or more display sets used to present the Image Sets defined in the Image Sets Sequence (0072,0020). One or more sequence items shall be present. See C.23.3.1.
>Display Set Number	(0072,0202)	1	A monotonically increasing integer, starting from 1, incrementing by one, unique within the Hanging Protocol Instance. It shall be used to identify linked display sets in the Display Set Scrolling Group (0072,0212).
>Display Set Label	(0072,0203)	3	Description of the objective of the display set defined by this sequence item.
>Display Set Presentation Group	(0072,0204)	1	Positive integer value that designates this Display Set as part of a specific presentation group. All Display Sets with the same Display Set Presentation Group (0072,0204) value shall be displayed at the same time. The value 1 shall indicate that this Display Set is part of the initial presentation group.Subsequent values incrementing by 1 shall imply successive temporal ordering of display.
>Image Set Number	(0072,0032)	1	Image Set Number (0072,0032) value from a Time Based Image Sets Sequence (0072,0030) Item within the Image Sets Sequence (0072,0020) Item that is selected for display by this Display Set. Note: Multiple Image Boxes Sequence (0072,0300) Items within a Display Sets Sequence (0072,0200) Item may be used to spread one image set over multiple image boxes with the same Display Set characteristics.
>Image Boxes Sequence	(0072,0300)	1	Sequence that defines the image boxes for this Display Set. Exactly one sequence item shall be present unless Image Box Layout Type (0072,0304) is TILED, in which case one or more items shall be present.
>>Image Box Number	(0072,0302)	1	A monotonically increasing integer that identifies the order of image boxes for scrolling, starting from 1, incrementing by one, unique within a Display Set Sequence Item.
>>Display Environment Spatial Position	(0072,0108)	1	Exactly four unitless floating point values indicating the rectangular coordinate position of the image box within the overall bounding box that encompasses all the display space (across

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
			all screens). See C.23.2.1.1.
>>Image Box Layout Type	(0072,0304)	1	Type of layout of the image box. All types except for TILED are single rectangles containing a single frame of image pixel data. The types are primarily distinguished by their interaction technique. Defined Terms: TILED: a scrollable array of rectangles, each containing a single frame of image pixel data. STACK: a single rectangle containing a steppable single frame, intended for user-controlled stepping through the image set, usually via continuous device interaction (e.g., mouse scrolling) or by single stepping (mouse or button click). CINE: a single rectangle, intended for video type play back where the user controls are play sequence, rate of play, and direction. PROCESSED: intended for interactive 3D visualizations that have custom interfaces. SINGLE: a single rectangle, intended for images and objects with no defined methods of interaction. Note: This value may also be used for non-image objects, such as waveforms and SR documents.
>>Image Box Tile Horizontal Dimension	(0072,0306)	1C	Positive integer defining the horizontal Image Box tile dimension; the number of columns. Required if the value of Image Box Layout Type (0072,0304) is TILED.
>>Image Box Tile Vertical Dimension	(0072,0308)	1C	Positive integer defining the vertical Image Box tile dimension; the number of rows. Required if the value of Image Box Layout Type (0072,0304) is TILED.
>>Image Box Scroll Direction	(0072,0310)	1C	Enumerated Values: VERTICAL: scroll images by row HORIZONTAL: scroll images by column. Required if the value of Image Box Layout Type (0072,0304) is TILED, and the value of Image Box Tile Horizontal Dimension (0072,0306) or Image Box Tile Vertical Dimension (0072,0308) is greater than 1.
>>Image Box Small Scroll Type	(0072,0312)	2C	Defines the type of small increment scrolling to be applied to this Image Box. Required if the value of Image Box Layout Type (0072,0304) is TILED, and the value of Image Box Tile Horizontal Dimension (0072,0306) or Image Box Tile Vertical Dimension (0072,0308)

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
			is greater than 1. Scrolling is not specified if zero length. Enumerated Values: PAGE: In a TILED image box, replace all image slots with the next N x M images in the set, ROW_COLUMN: in a TILED image box, move each row or column of images to the next row or column, depending on Image Box Scroll Direction (0072,0310) IMAGE: In a TILED image box, move each image to the next slot, either horizontally or vertically, depending on Image Box Scroll Direction (0072,0310) Note: If there are multiple image boxes of different Tile Dimensions in a Display Set, then only IMAGE scrolling applies, and the value of this attribute is ignored.
>>Image Box Small Scroll Amount	(0072,0314)	1C	Defines the positive integer number of pages, rows, columns, or images per small increment scroll, based on the values of Image Box Small Scroll Type (0072,0312) and Image Box Scroll Direction (0072,0310). The value applies to both forward and backward scrolling. Required if Image Box Small Scroll Type (0072,0312) is present with a value.
>>Image Box Large Scroll Type	(0072,0316)	2C	Defines the type of large increment scrolling to be applied to this Image Box. Required if the value of Image Box Layout Type (0072,0304) is TILED, and the value of Image Box Tile Horizontal Dimension (0072,0306) or Image Box Tile Vertical Dimension (0072,0308) is greater than 1. Enumerated Values: PAGE: In a TILED image box, replace all image slots with the next N x M images in the set, ROW_COLUMN: in a TILED image box, move each row or column of images to the next row or column, depending on Image Box Scroll Direction (0072,0310) IMAGE: In a TILED image box, move each image to the next slot, either horizontally or vertically, depending on Image Box Scroll Direction (0072,0310) Note: If there are multiple image boxes of different Tile Dimensions in a Display Set, then only IMAGE scrolling applies, and the value of the attribute is ignored.
>>Image Box Large Scroll Amount	(0072,0318)	1C	Defines the positive integer number of pages, rows, columns, or images per large increment scroll, based on the values of Image Box Large

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
			Scroll Type (0072,0316) and Image Box Scroll Direction (0072,cc50). The value applies to both forward and backward scrolling. Required if Image Box Large Scroll Type (0072,0316) is present with a value.
>>Image Box Overlap Priority	(0072,0320)	3	If this Image Box overlaps in spatial position with others, this attribute indicates the layer of this Image Box in relation to the others. The value shall be a positive integer in the range 1 to 100, where 1 = top and 100 = bottom. If this attribute is not present, then the expected behavior is not defined.
>>Preferred Playback Sequencing	(0018,1244)	1C	Describes the preferred playback sequencing for the Image Box. Overrides any Preferred Playback Sequencing (0018,1244) value in the image objects being displayed. Required if the value of Image Box Layout Type (0072,0304) is CINE. Enumerated Values: 0 = Looping (1,2...n,1,2,...n,1,2,....n,...) 1 = Sweeping (1,2,...n,n-1,...2,1,2,...n,...) 2 = Stop (1,2…n)
>>Recommended Display Frame Rate	(0008,2144)	1C	Recommended rate at which the frames of a multi-frame image shall be displayed, in frames/second. Shall have a value greater than zero. Overrides any Recommended Display Frame Rate (0008,2144) value in the image objects being displayed. Required if the value of Image Box Layout Type (0072,0304) is CINE and if Cine Relative to Real-Time (0072,0330) is not present.
>>Cine Relative to Real-Time	(0072,0330)	1C	A positive unitless floating point numeric factor equal to playback rate divided by acquisition rate. Required if the value of Image Box Layout Type (0072,0304) is CINE and if Recommended Display Frame Rate (0008,2144) is not present. Note: The capture rate may change within the image object, as specified in Frame Time (0018,1063) or Frame Time Vector (0018,1065).
>Filter Operations Sequence	(0072,0400)	2	Sequence that defines filter criteria to be applied to the image set identified by Image Set Number (0072,0032). Zero or more items shall be included in this sequence. See C.23.3.1.1.
>>Filter-by Category	(0072,0402)	1C	Category of the filter operation. See C.23.3.1.1. Defined terms: IMAGE_PLANE

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
			Required if Selector Attribute (0072,0026) is not present.
>>Filter-by Attribute Presence	(0072,0404)	1C	Operation to be applied based on the presence or absence of the attribute represented by Selector Attribute (0072,0026) in each image of the Image Set. Required if Selector Attribute (0072,0026) is present and Filter-by Operator (0072,0406) is not present. Enumerated Values: PRESENT: Include the image if the attribute is present NOT_PRESENT: Include the image if the attribute is not present
>>Selector Attribute	(0072,0026)	1C	Data Element Tag of an Attribute from an Image IOD to use as a filter. See C.23.3.1.1 for potential attributes. Required if Filter-by Category (0072,0402) is not present.
>>Selector Attribute VR	(0072,0050)	1C	The Value Representation of the Selector Attribute (0072,0026). Required if Selector Attribute (0072,0026) or Filter-by Category (0072,0402), and Filter-by Operator (0072,0406) are present.
>>Include Hanging Protocol Selector Attribute Context Macro Table C.23.4-1			
>>Include Hanging Protocol Selector Attribute Value Macro Table C.23.4-2			
>>Selector Value Number	(0072,0028)	1C	Positive integer identifying which value of the attribute identified by Selector Attribute (0072,0026) is to be used for filtering. The value 1 identifies the first value. The value zero identifies any value. Required if Selector Attribute (0072,0026) and Filter-by Operator (0072,0406) are present.
>>Filter-by Operator	(0072,0406)	1C	Operation to be applied between the value(s) in the Hanging Protocol Selector Attribute Value Macro ("selector"), and the value(s) of the attribute identified by Selector Attribute (0072,0026) in each image of the Image Set. See C.23.3.1.1. Required if Filter-by Category (0072,0402) is present, or if Selector Attribute (0072,0026) is present and Filter-by Attribute Presence (0072,0404) is not present. Enumerated Values: RANGE_INCL: the values lie within the specified range, or are equal to the endpoints; applies only to numeric, date or time Selector Attribute (0072,0026); two values shall be present in the

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
			selector, the first of which is less than or equal to the second RANGE_EXCL: the values lie outside the specified range, and are not equal to the endpoints; applies only to numeric Selector Attribute (0072,0026); two values shall be present in the selector, the first of which is less than or equal to the second GREATER_OR_EQUAL: applies only to numeric Selector Attribute (0072,0026) LESS_OR_EQUAL: applies only to numeric Selector Attribute (0072,0026) GREATER_THAN: applies only to numeric Selector Attribute (0072,0026) LESS_THAN: applies only to numeric Selector Attribute (0072,0026) MEMBER_OF: one of the values in the image is present in the values of the selector; if one value is present in each, this is an "equal to" operator NOT_MEMBER_OF: none of the values in the image is present in the values of the selector; if one value is present in each, this is a "not equal to" operator
>Sorting Operations Sequence	(0072,0600)	2	Sequence that defines sorting criteria to be applied to the result of filter and reformat operations, to define the order in which to present the images in the Image Boxes. Zero or more items shall be included in this sequence. See C.23.3.1.2.
>>Selector Attribute	(0072,0026)	1C	Data Element Tag of an Attribute from an Image IOD to be used for sorting. See C.23.3.1.2 for potential attributes. Required if Sort-by Category (0072,0602) is not present.
>>Include Hanging Protocol Selector Attribute Context Macro Table C.23.4-1			
>>Selector Value Number	(0072,0028)	1C	Positive integer identifying which value of the attribute identified by Selector Attribute (0072,0026) is to be used for sorting. The value of 1 identifies the first value. Shall not be zero. Required if Selector Attribute (0072,0026) is present.
>>Sort-by Category	(0072,0602)	1C	Category of the sorting operation. See C.23.3.1.2. Defined terms: ALONG_AXIS: for CT, MR, other cross-sectional image sets BY_ACQ_TIME Required if Selector Attribute (0072,0026) is not

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
			present.
>>Sorting Direction	(0072,0604)	1	Sorting direction to be applied to the value(s) in the image set of the attribute identified by Selector Attribute (0072,0026) or Sort-by Category (0072,0602). Enumerated Values: INCREASING, DECREASING
>Blending Operation Type	(0072,0500)	3	Type of blending of superimposed and underlying images from the image set, performed before reformatting. See C.23.3.1.3. Defined Terms: COLOR – apply a pseudo-color to the superimposed image while blending
>Reformatting Operation Type	(0072,0510)	3	Reformatting operation to be applied to the Image Set. Defined terms: MPR, 3D_RENDERING, SLAB
>Reformatting Thickness	(0072,0512)	1C	The desired thickness of the reformatted images in millimeters. Required if value of Reformatting Operation Type (0072,0510) is SLAB or MPR. May be present otherwise.
>Reformatting Interval	(0072,0514)	1C	The desired spacing of the reformatted images in millimeters. The spacing is measured from the center-to-center of each reconstructed image. Required if value of Reformatting Operation Type (0072,0510) is SLAB or MPR. May be present otherwise.
>Reformatting Operation Initial View Direction	(0072,0516)	1C	Initial view of the reformatted images. Required if the value of Reformatting Operation Type (0072,0510) is MPR or 3D_RENDERING. May be present otherwise. Defined Terms: SAGITTAL, AXIAL, CORONAL, OBLIQUE
>3D Rendering Type	(0072,0520)	1C	Describes the intended 3D rendering type. One or more values shall be present. The first value shall not be zero length. Required if the value of Reformatting Operation Type (0072,0510) is 3D_RENDERING: Defined Terms for value 1: MIP, SURFACE, VOLUME Additional values may be used to identify implementation specific sub-types.
>Display Set Patient Orientation	(0072,0700)	3	Patient direction of the rows and columns of the images, as intended for display. See C.23.3.1.4.
>Display Set Horizontal Justification	(0072,0717)	3	Indicates direction in which to horizontally justify the image within a viewport that is not the same

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
			shape (aspect ratio) as the image. Enumerated Values: LEFT CENTER RIGHT Note: Typically used in mammography display applications in which images from the patient's left and right are displayed "back to back", rather than centered.
>Display Set Vertical Justification	(0072,0718)	3	Indicates direction in which to vertically justify the image within a viewport that is not the same shape (aspect ratio) as the image. Enumerated Values: TOP CENTER BOTTOM
>VOI Type	(0072,0702)	3	Expected value of interest transformation for display (e.g., Window Center and Window Width or VOI LUT). Defined Terms: LUNG MEDIASTINUM ABDO_PELVIS LIVER SOFT_TISSUE BONE BRAIN POST_FOSSA
>Pseudo-color Type	(0072,0704)	3	A category of pseudo-color palette choice to be applied after application of the VOI LUT. If this attribute is not present, a pseudo-color palette shall not be applied. Defined Terms: BLACK_BODY HOT_IRON DEFAULT
>Show Grayscale Inverted	(0072,0706)	3	Whether or not to invert the rendered luminance of the displayed values. See C.23.3.1.4. Enumerated values: YES = The maximum output value after the display pipeline has been applied shall be displayed with the minimum available luminance. NO = The maximum output value after the display pipeline has been applied shall be displayed with the maximum available

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
			luminance. Notes: 1. The YES and NO values of this Attribute correspond to the Presentation LUT Shape (2050,0020) values of INVERSE and IDENTITY, as described in C.11.6.1.2. 2. Only applicable to display of grayscale images.
>Show Image True Size Flag	(0072,0710)	3	Indicates whether or not to display images with the physical size of the rendered image pixel the same on the screen as specified in the image attributes, unless overridden by a Presentation State instance. Enumerated values: YES = Display images at True Size. NO = The rendered size is not specified.
>Show Graphic Annotation Flag	(0072,0712)	3	Indicates whether or not to display items from the Graphic Annotation Sequence (0070,0001) in an applied Presentation State, and the attributes of the Overlay Plane module in the image objects or applied Presentation State. Enumerated Values: YES NO
>Show Patient Demographics Flag	(0072,0714)	3	Indicates whether or not to display patient and study identification information. Enumerated Values: YES NO
>Show Acquisition Techniques Flag	(0072,0716)	3	Indicates whether or not to display image acquisition technique information. Enumerated Values: YES NO
>Display Set Presentation Group Description	(0072,0206)	3	Description of the intent of the Display Set Presentation Group (0072,0204). If present, shall have the same value in all sequence Items assigned the same value for Display Set Presentation Group (0072,0204).
Partial Data Display Handling	(0072,0208)	2	If one or more Image Sets identified by Image Set Number (0072,0032) in the Display Sets Sequence (0072,0200) Items is not available, indicate whether or not to maintain the expected layout in the absence of complete Image Sets. Enumerated Values: MAINTAIN_LAYOUT: If one or more Image Sets is not available, maintain the layout with empty Image Boxes.

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
			ADAPT_LAYOUT: If one or more Image Sets is not available, rearrange the layout at the discretion of the application. If this attribute is zero length, then the expected behavior is not defined.
Synchronized Scrolling Sequence	(0072,0210)	3	Each sequence item of this attribute identifies a group of Display Sets to which synchronized scrolling is to be applied. Zero or more sequence items may be present. The dimensions along which the synchronization occurs shall be those specified in the Sorting Operations Sequence (0072,0600).
>Display Set Scrolling Group	(0072,0212)	1	Multi-valued list of two or more Display Set Number (0072,0202) values. Indicates that the images within the specified Display Sets are scrolled in parallel, to maintain the established synchronization.
Navigation Indicator Sequence	(0072,0214)	3	Describes a geometric relationship between Display Sets for the purpose of static or interactive localization or navigation. One or more sequence items may be present.
>Navigation Display Set	(0072,0216)	1C	Display Set Number (0072,0202) of the Display Set where the geometric relationship to the Reference Display Sets (0072,0218) is graphically depicted. Required if there is a one-way interaction such that the location of the Reference Display Sets is indicated on or controlled by the Navigation Display Set. Note: For example, the graphical representation may indicate either the number of slices displayed or contained in the Reference Display Set(s).
>Reference Display Sets	(0072,0218)	1	One or more Display Set Number (0072,0202) values. If Navigation Display Set is present, shall list those Display Sets that are controlled by or indicated on the Navigation Display Set. If Navigation Display Set is absent, shall indicate that all of the Reference Display Sets cross-reference each other.

C.23.3.1 Attribute Descriptions

The attributes of a Display Set Sequence Item shall be applied to the image set represented by the value of Image Set Number (0072,0032) in the following order:

- Filter Operations Sequence
- Reformatting

- Sorting Operations Sequence
- Presentation Intent

C.23.3.1.1 Filter Operations Sequence

The items in the Filter Operations Sequence (0072,0400) determine which subset of the images in the identified Image Set are to be displayed in the associated Display Set image boxes. If there are multiple Items in the Filter Operations Sequence (0072,0400), the filter operations shall be applied in Item order, and the output of the preceding filter shall serve as the input to the succeeding filter (i.e., an AND operation).

When Filter-by Category (0072,0402) has a value of IMAGE_PLANE, Selector Attribute VR (0072,0050) shall have a value of “CS”, and abstract enumerated values shall be used for the value of the associated Selector CS Value (0072,0062) attribute, which may be computed from the values of Image Orientation (Patient) (0020,0037) or Patient Orientation (0020,0020). Enumerated Values: AXIAL, CORONAL, SAGITTAL, OBLIQUE.

Note: Cross-sectional images do not normally contain a categorical description of the image plane, but rather only a patient-relative row and column direction cosines that are unit vectors. The category of image plane can be determined first by categorizing the row and column major directions (or detecting if the orientation is oblique according to a pre-specified threshold), and then using those categories to select a plan category.

The following pseudo-code can be used to determine the major axis (R or L, A or P, H or F) from a single direction cosine that is an (x,y,z) tuple (as defined in C.7.6.2.1.1):

```
if (abs(x) > threshold)
        axis = “RL”
else if (abs(y) > threshold)
        axis = “AP”
else if (abs(z) > threshold)
        axis = “HF”
else
        is OBLIQUE
```

Having determined the major axis of the row and column, the category of plane can be obtained from a table lookup:

Column	Row		
	RL	AP	HF
RL		TRANSVERSE	CORONAL
AP	TRANSVERSE		SAGITTAL
HF	CORONAL	SAGITTAL	

Alternatively, one can obtain a single vector that is the normal to the orientation (cross product of the row and column unit vectors), then find which of the x, y and z components has the maximum absolute value that is above threshold; if x then SAGITTAL, if y then CORONAL, if z then TRANSVERSE; if all of the components are below threshold then the orientation is OBLIQUE.

Since it is also necessary to determine whether or not to flip or rotate the image into the preferred orientation (as specified by Display Set Patient orientation (0072,0700)) for the category of plane (e.g., sagittals are normally viewed with row direction posteriorly and column direction towards the feet), the categorical row and column direction to use can be obtained as above, additional accounting for the sign of the direction cosine, e.g.:

```
if x < 0 then orientationX = “R” else orientationX = “L”
if y < 0 then orientationY = “A” else orientationY = “P”
if z < 0 then orientationZ = “F” else orientationZ = “H”
if (abs(x) > threshold)
        orientation = orientationX
…
```

An application that is applying a Hanging Protocol Instance shall support any value for Selector Attribute (0072,0026). If the attribute identified by Selector Attribute is not present in an image of the referenced Image Set, then the image is included in the filter output. The attributes of the Hanging Protocol Selector Attribute Context Macro specify whether the Selector Attribute (0072,0026) is contained in a Sequence, Functional Group Sequence, or Private Group.

Notes: 1. The following attributes from image IODs are examples of some possible values for the Selector Attribute (0072,0026) of the Filter Operations Sequence (0072,0400). This is not a complete list:

- Value 3 of Image Type (0008,0008) or Frame Type (0008,9007)
- Anatomic Region Sequence (0008,2218)
- Pixel Presentation (0008,9205)
- Volume Based Calculation Technique (0008,9207)
- Acquisition Contrast (0008,9209)
- Contrast/Bolus Agent (0018,0010)
- Body Part Examined (0018,0015)
- Scanning Sequence (0018,0020)
- Intervention Drug Start Time (0018,0035)
- Echo Time (0018,0081)
- Echo Number (0018,0086)
- Protocol Name (0018,1030)
- Contrast/Bolus Start Time (0018,1042)
- Contrast/Bolus Stop Time (0018,1043)
- Trigger Time (0018,1060)
- Image Trigger Delay (0018,1067)
- Radiopharmaceutical Start Time (0018,1072)
- Radiopharmaceutical Stop Time (0018,1073)
- Trigger Window (0018,1094)
- View Position (0018,5101)
- Echo Pulse Sequence (0018,9008)
- Phase Contrast (0018,9014)
- Effective Echo Time (0018,9082)
- Laterality (0020,0060)
- Image Laterality (0020,0062)
- Slice Location (0020,1041)
- View Code Sequence (0054,0220)

2. For a multi-frame image set, it is the responsibility of the application to apply the filter operations to individual frames within a multi-frame image instance in the image set, versus multiple single frame image instances in the image set that represent individual frames.

C.23.3.1.2 Sorting Operations Sequence

The Items in the Sorting Operations Sequence (0072,0600) define the order in which the images resulting from the filter and reformat operations on the Image Set are to be displayed in the associated Image Boxes of the Display Set. The sorting criteria may include the value of a numeric, date, or time Attribute that is expected to be present in each of the image objects in the filtered Image Set, and/or an abstract sorting category. A sorting direction shall be associated with each sorting criterion. If a textual Attribute is used for sorting, then the INCREASING sorting direction indicates alpabetical order, and DECREASING indicates reverse alphabetical order.

If a code sequence Attribute is used for sorting, then the Code Meaning (0008,0104) shall be sorted alphabetically. If a string numeric Attribute is used for sorting (VR of IS or DS), then sorting shall be on the numeric value, and padding shall be ignored. When sorting by date or time Attribute, then sorting shall be on the temporal value, not the alphabetic string.

If there are multiple Items in the Sorting Operations Sequence (0072,0600), then the sorting operations shall be applied in Item order. The least rapidly varying attribute for the sorting operation shall be the first Item in the sequence.

Note: For example, a Sorting Operations Sequence (0072,0600) with two Items:

Item #1: (0018,5101) View Position, INCREASING

Item #2: (0008,0020) Study Date, INCREASING

results in the following order, based on these attribute values in the image objects:

View Position (0018,5101)	Study Date (0008,0020)
AP	20030201
AP	20030501
LL	20020705
LL	20030102
RL	20030101
RL	20030201

When the Sort-by Category (0072,0602) is used with a value of ALONG_AXIS, such as for CT, MR or other cross-sectional image sets, the sorting operation is computed from the values Image Position (Patient) (0020,0032) and Image Orientation (Patient) (0020,0037) in the image objects.

For the image set to be displayed, a “dominant axis” of the set shall be determined. The dominant axis is the normal to the Image Orientation (Patient) (0020,0037) attribute (assuming all selected images are parallel), computed as the dot product in a right-handed coordinate system (see C.7.6.2.1.1). The INCREASING direction for ALONG_AXIS of the image set shall be in the positive direction along the dominant axis. The DECREASING direction shall be in the negative direction along that axis.

When the Sort-by Category (0072,0602) is used with a value of BY_ACQ_TIME, the sorting operation is computed from appropriate values in the image objects (e.g., Frame Acquisition DateTime, Acquisition Time, Content Time, Acquisition DateTime), since the specific attribute used may vary from one Image Instance or SOP Class to another, yet the Hanging Protocol Instance may be generally applicable.

An application that is applying a Hanging Protocol Instance shall support any value for Selector Attribute (0072,0026), provided that it is present in the referenced Image Set. The attributes of the Hanging Protocol Selector Attribute Context Macro specify whether the Selector Attribute (0072,0026) is contained in a Sequence, Functional Group Sequence or Private Group.

Notes: 1. The following attributes from image IODs are examples of some possible values for the Selector Attribute (0072,0026) of the Sorting Operations Sequence (0072,0600). This is not a complete list:

- Acquisition Datetime (0008,002A)
- Acquisition Time (0008,0032)
- Echo Time (0018,0081)
- Echo Number (0018,0086)
- Trigger Time (0018,1060)
- View Position (0018,5101)
- Effective Echo Time (0018,9082)
- Acquisition Number (0020,0012)
- Instance Number (0020,0013)
- Slice Location (0020,1041), although Sort-by Category (0072,0602) with value ALONG_AXIS may be more reliable
- Trigger Delay Time (0020,9153)
- Stage Number (0008,2122)
- View Number (0008,2128)

2. For a multi-frame image set, it is the responsibility of the application to apply the sorting operations to individual frames within a multi-frame image instance in the image set, versus multiple single frame image instances in the image set that represent individual frames.

C.23.3.1.3 Blending Operation Type

A Blending Operation Type (0072,0500) of COLOR implies that the filtered selected image set contains two sets of images appropriate for blending, such as CT and PET images defined in the same frame of reference or associated by a spatial registration object. The decision as to which subset are the underlying images and which subset are the superimposed images is left to the discretion of the display application. There is no mechanism to explicitly specify the two subsets.

The relative opacity and color-related aspects of blending are not specified by the Hanging Protocol, and are left to the discretion of the application.

C.23.3.1.4 Presentation Intent Attributes

The attributes that indicate the presentation intent for each Display Set of a Hanging Protocol Instance are: Display Set Patient Orientation (0072,0700), VOI Type (0072,0702), Pseudo-color Type (0072,0704), Show Grayscale Inverted (0072,0706), Show Image True Size Flag (0072,0710), Show Graphic Annotation Flag (0072,0712), Show Patient Demographics Flag (0072,0714), and Show Acquisition Techniques Flag (0072,0716).

- If one Presentation State instance is defined for the images that are to be displayed, then it shall be applied.

- If more than one Presentation State instance is defined for the images that are to be displayed, then the presentation intent attributes, if present, shall be used to select the closest matching Presentation State instance to apply (for example, matching VOI Type (0072,0702) in the Hanging Protocol Instance with Window Center & Width Explanation in the Presentation State instance). Otherwise, the application shall determine which Presentation State instance to apply.

- If no Presentation State instance is defined for the images that are to be displayed, then the presentation intent attributes, if present, shall be applied (for example, matching VOI Type

(0072,0702) in the Hanging Protocol Instance with Window Center & Width Explanation in the Image). Otherwise, the display related information in the image instances shall be applied.

The intent of the VOI Type (0072,0702) attribute is to support generic intensity window settings for the Display Sets in a Hanging Protocol, such as lung, soft tissue, or bone for chest CT. It is expected for most other modalities that the window/center or VOI LUT values, if not provided in a Presentation State instance, would be provided in the image instance rather than by intent in a Hanging Protocol Instance.

The value of Show Grayscale Inverted (0072,0706) shall override any such intent expressed in the images or associated Presentation States to which the Hanging Protocol is applied.

Notes: 1. For example, an image may have a MONOCHROME2 Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) and no Presentation LUT Shape (2050,0020), which implies that maximum values are displayed with maximum available luminance, but the presence of a Show Grayscale Inverted (0072,0706) value of YES in the Hanging Protocol requires maximum values to be displayed with minimum available luminance.

2. For example, an image may have an applicable Presentation State with a Presentation LUT Shape (2050,0020) of IDENTITY, which implies that maximum values are displayed with maximum available luminance, but the presence of a Show Grayscale Inverted (0072,0706) value of YES in the Hanging Protocol requires maximum values to be displayed with minimum available luminance.

3. For example, an image may have an applicable Presentation State with a Presentation LUT, in which case the minimum possible LUT output value (i.e., 0) will be interpreted as maximum available luminance if the value of Show Grayscale Inverted (0072,0706) is YES.

The intent of Display Set Patient Orientation (0072,0700) is to describe the preferred image rotation and/or flip for presentation within an image box. Each of the two values shall be an anatomic direction designated by the capital letters: A (anterior), P (posterior), R (right), L (left), H (head), F (foot), or X (unspecified). Each value of the orientation attribute shall contain at least one of these characters. If refinements in the orientation descriptions are to be specified, then they shall be designated by one or two additional letters in each value. Within each value, the letters shall be ordered with the principal orientation designated in the first character. If the value "X" is used for one of the values, the patient direction for that value is not defined.

The first value is the patient direction to be oriented at the right side of the image box for each image. The second value is the patient direction to be positioned at the bottom of the image image box. The application shall use the patient orientation information of each image (if available) to compute the best rotate and/or flip operation to be applied within the display set. If the patient orientation of an image is not defined, then this attribute shall be ignored.

C.23.4 Hanging Protocol Selector Attribute Macros

C.23.4.1 Hanging Protocol Selector Attribute Context Macro

Table C.23.4-1 specifies the Attributes that identify the context for a Data Element Tag that is used as a Selector Attribute (0072,0026) in the Image Set Selector Sequence (0072,0022), Filter Operations Sequence (0072,0400), or Sorting Operations Sequence (0072,0600). The attribute may be an attribute nested within a Sequence or Functional Group Sequence, and/or a Private Attribute.

Table C.23.4-1
Hanging Protocol Selector Attribute Context Macro Attributes

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Selector Sequence Pointer	(0072,0052)	1C	Contains the Data Element Tag of the Sequence that contains the Attribute that is identified by the Selector Attribute (0072,0026). Required if the Selector Attribute (0072,0026) is nested in a Sequence. Shall not be used to

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
			identify code sequence attributes. See Selector Code Sequence Value (0072,0080).
Functional Group Pointer	(0020,9167)	1C	Contains the Data Element Tag of the Functional Group Sequence that contains the Attribute that is identified by the Selector Attribute (0072,0026). Required if the value of the Selector Attribute (0072,0026) is the Data Element Tag of an Attribute that is contained within a Functional Group Sequence.
Selector Sequence Pointer Private Creator	(0072,0054)	1C	Identification of the creator of a group of private data elements. Required if the Selector Sequence Pointer (0072,0052) value is the Data Element Tag of a Private Attribute.
Functional Group Private Creator	(0020,9238)	1C	Identification of the creator of a group of private data elements. Required if the Functional Group Pointer (0020,9167) value is the Data Element Tag of a Private Attribute.
Selector Attribute Private Creator	(0072,0056)	1C	Identification of the creator of a group of private data elements. Required if the Selector Attribute (0072,0026) value is the Data Element Tag of a Private Attribute.

C.23.4.1.1 Hanging Protocol Selector Attribute Context Macro Attribute Descriptions

C.23.4.1.1.1 Selector Sequence Pointer

The Sequence Attribute in the referenced Image identified by the value of Selector Sequence Pointer (0072,0052) may have more than one Item, in which case the filter or image set selector is applied to the values of the attribute identified by Selector Attribute (0072,0026) in all Items of the Sequence. The Selector shall match the specified value(s) of the specified Attribute in any Item of the Sequence Attribute in the referenced Image.

If the Functional Group Pointer (0020,9167) attribute is not present, then the Sequence Attribute identified by Selector Sequence Pointer (0072,0052) resides in the top level Data Set of the referenced Image.

C.23.4.1.1.2 Functional Group Pointer

The Functional Group Sequence is a Sequence Attribute contained within a Shared Functional Groups Sequence (5200,9229) Item or a Per-frame Functional Groups Sequence (5200,9230) Item. See C.7.6.16.

The Selector Sequence Pointer (0072,0052) may be used to further nest the reference to a Sequence Attribute within a Functional Group Sequence identified by Functional Group Pointer (0020,9167).

C.23.4.1.1.3 Private Attribute References

The Functional Group Private Creator (0020,9238), Selector Sequence Pointer Private Creator (0072,0054), and the Selector Attribute Private Creator (0072,0056) each has a value that corresponds to the Private Creator Data Element numbers (gggg,00pp), where gggg is odd and pp ranges from 10 to FF. These identify a block of Private Data Elements within the block (gggg,ppxx). When the Selector Attribute (0072,0026), Selector Sequence Pointer (0072,0052) or Functional Group Sequence Pointer (0020,9167) points to a Private Data Element, (gggg,ppxx), it shall have the value (gggg,00xx).

C.23.4.2 Hanging Protocol Selector Attribute Value Macro

Table C.23.4-2 specifies the Attributes that identify the value(s) for a Data Element Tag that is used as a Selector Attribute (0072,0026) in the Image Set Selector Sequence (0072,0022) or Filter Operations Sequence (0072,0400).

Table C.23.4-2
Hanging Protocol Selector Attribute Value Macro Attributes

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Selector AT Value	(0072,0060)	1C	The value(s) of the attribute identified by Selector Attribute (0072,0026). Required if Selector Attribute VR (0072,0050) is present and the value is AT.
Selector CS Value	(0072,0062)	1C	The value(s) of the attribute identified by Selector Attribute (0072,0026). Required if Selector Attribute VR (0072,0050) is present and the value is CS.
Selector IS Value	(0072,0064)	1C	The value(s) of the attribute identified by Selector Attribute (0072,0026). Required if Selector Attribute VR (0072,0050) is present and the value is IS. Some leniency in precision and format (including padding with spaces and leading zeros, e.g., “001” = “ 1 “ = “1”) will be required.
Selector LO Value	(0072,0066)	1C	The value(s) of the attribute identified by Selector Attribute (0072,0026). Required if Selector Attribute VR (0072,0050) is present and the value is LO.
Selector LT Value	(0072,0068)	1C	The value(s) of the attribute identified by Selector Attribute (0072,0026). Required if Selector Attribute VR (0072,0050) is present and the value is LT.
Selector PN Value	(0072,006A)	1C	The value(s) of the attribute identified by Selector Attribute (0072,0026). Required if Selector Attribute VR (0072,0050) is present and the value is PN.
Selector SH Value	(0072,006C)	1C	The value(s) of the attribute identified by Selector Attribute (0072,0026). Required if Selector Attribute VR (0072,0050) is present and the value is SH.
Selector ST Value	(0072,006E)	1C	The value(s) of the attribute identified by Selector Attribute (0072,0026). Required if Selector Attribute VR (0072,0050) is present and the value is ST.
Selector UT Value	(0072,0070)	1C	The value(s) of the attribute identified by Selector Attribute (0072,0026). Required if Selector Attribute VR (0072,0050) is

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
			present and the value is UT.
Selector DS Value	(0072,0072)	1C	The value(s) of the attribute identified by Selector Attribute (0072,0026). Required if Selector Attribute VR (0072,0050) is present and the value is DS. Some leniency in precision and format (including padding and scientific notation) will be required.
Selector FD Value	(0072,0074)	1C	The value(s) of the attribute identified by Selector Attribute (0072,0026). Required if Selector Attribute VR (0072,0050) is present and the value is FD.
Selector FL Value	(0072,0076)	1C	The value(s) of the attribute identified by Selector Attribute (0072,0026). Required if Selector Attribute VR (0072,0050) is present and the value is FL.
Selector UL Value	(0072,0078)	1C	The value(s) of the attribute identified by Selector Attribute (0072,0026). Required if Selector Attribute VR (0072,0050) is present and the value is UL.
Selector US Value	(0072,007A)	1C	The value(s) of the attribute identified by Selector Attribute (0072,0026). Required if Selector Attribute VR (0072,0050) is present and the value is US.
Selector SL Value	(0072,007C)	1C	The value(s) of the attribute identified by Selector Attribute (0072,0026). Required if Selector Attribute VR (0072,0050) is present and the value is SL.
Selector SS Value	(0072,007E)	1C	The value(s) of the attribute identified by Selector Attribute (0072,0026). Required if Selector Attribute VR (0072,0050) is present and the value is SS.
Selector Code Sequence Value	(0072,0080)	1C	The value(s) of the attribute identified by Selector Attribute (0072,0026). One or more sequence items shall be present. See C.23.4.2.1.2. Required if Selector Attribute VR (0072,0050) is present and the value is SQ, and Selector Attribute (0072,0026) is a code sequence.
>Include Code Sequence Macro Table 8.8-1			*No baseline context ID is defined.*

C.23.4.2.1 Hanging Protocol Selector Attribute Value Macro Attribute Descriptions

C.23.4.2.1.1 Selector Attribute Value Matching

The value of Specific Character Set (0008,0005) in the Image and the Hanging Protocol Instance may differ and shall be taken into account for matching.

The value of Specific Character Set (0008,0005) may influence how matching of text Attributes is performed, in an implementation dependent manner. No requirements are specified for case sensitive or accent sensitive matching, or for ignoring padding.

C.23.4.2.1.2 Selector Code Sequence Value

The matching shall be performed on Coding Scheme Designator (0008,0102) and Code Value (0008,0100). The Code Meaning (0008,0104) is required to be present, but shall be ignored for matching purposes. The matching is case sensitive, and leading and trailing spaces are not significant. The Coding Scheme Version (0008,0103) shall be ignored unless Coding Scheme Designator (0008,0102) is not sufficient to identify the Code Value (0008,0100) unambiguously.

C.24 ENCAPSULATED DOCUMENT MODULES

C.24.1 Encapsulated Document Series Module

Table C.24-1 defines the Encapsulated Document Series Attributes.

Table C.24-1
Encapsulated Document Series Module Attributes

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Modality	(0008,0060)	1	The modality appropriate for the encapsulated document. This Type definition shall override the definition in the SC Equipment Module. See section C.7.3.1.1.1 for Defined Terms.
Series Instance UID	(0020,000E)	1	Unique identifier of the Series.
Series Number	(0020,0011)	1	A number that identifies the Series.
Referenced Performed Procedure Step Sequence	(0008,1111)	3	Uniquely identifies the Performed Procedure Step SOP Instance for which the Series is created. Only a single Item shall be permitted in this sequence. Note: The Performed Procedure Step referred to by this Attribute is the Step during which this Document is generated.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
> Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.
Series Description	(0008,103E)	3	User provided description of the Series
Request Attributes Sequence	(0040,0275)	3	Sequence that contains attributes from the Imaging Service Request. The sequence may have one or more Items.
>Requested Procedure ID	(0040,1001)	1C	Identifier that identifies the Requested Procedure in the Imaging Service Request. Required if Sequence Item is present.
>Reason for the Requested Procedure	(0040,1002)	3	Reason for requesting this procedure.
>Reason for Requested	(0040,100A)	3	Coded Reason for requesting this procedure.

Procedure Code Sequence			One or more sequence items may be present.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
>Scheduled Procedure Step ID	(0040,0009)	1C	Identifier that identifies the Scheduled Procedure Step. Required if Sequence Item is present.
>Scheduled Procedure Step Description	(0040,0007)	3	Institution-generated description or classification of the Scheduled Procedure Step to be performed.
>Scheduled Protocol Code Sequence	(0040,0008)	3	Sequence describing the Scheduled Protocol following a specific coding scheme. This sequence contains one or more Items.
>>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
>>Protocol Context Sequence	(0040,0440)	3	Sequence that specifies the context for the Scheduled Protocol Code Sequence Item. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>>Include 'Content Item Macro' Table 10-2			*No Baseline Template is defined.*
>>> Content Item Modifier Sequence	(0040,0441)	3	Sequence that specifies modifiers for a Protocol Context Content Item. One or more items may be included in this sequence. See Section C.4.10.1.
>>>>Include 'Content Item Macro' Table 10-2			*No Baseline Template is defined.*
Performed Procedure Step ID	(0040,0253)	3	User or equipment generated identifier of that part of a Procedure that has been carried out within this step.
Performed Procedure Step Start Date	(0040,0244)	3	Date on which the Performed Procedure Step started.
Performed Procedure Step Start Time	(0040,0245)	3	Time on which the Performed Procedure Step started.
Performed Procedure Step Description	(0040,0254)	3	Institution-generated description or classification of the Procedure Step that was performed.
Performed Protocol Code Sequence	(0040,0260)	3	Sequence describing the Protocol performed for this Procedure Step. One or more Items may be included in this Sequence.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*No Baseline Context ID is defined.*
>Protocol Context Sequence	(0040,0440)	3	Sequence that specifies the context for the Performed Protocol Code Sequence Item. One or more items may be included in this sequence.
>>Include 'Content Item Macro' Table 10-2			*No Baseline Template is defined.*
>> Content Item Modifier Sequence	(0040,0441)	3	Sequence that specifies modifiers for a Protocol Context Content Item. One or more items may be included in this sequence. See Section C.4.10.1.
>>>Include 'Content Item Macro' Table 10-2			*No Baseline Template is defined.*
Comments on the Performed Procedure Step	(0040,0280)	3	User-defined comments on the Performed Procedure Step.

C.24.2 Encapsulated Document Module

Table C.24-2 defines the Encapsulated Document Attributes.

Table C.24-2
Encapsulated Document Module Attributes

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Instance Number	(0020,0013)	1	A number that identifies this SOP Instance. The value shall be unique within a series.
Content Date	(0008,0023)	2	The date the document content creation was started.
Content Time	(0008,0033)	2	The time the document content creation was started.
Acquisition Datetime	(0008,002A)	2	The date and time that the original generation of the data in the document started.
Burned In Annotation	(0028,0301)	1	Indicates whether or not the encapsulated document contains sufficient burned in annotation to identify the patient and date the data was acquired. Enumerated Values: YES NO
Source Instance Sequence	(0042,0013)	1C	A sequence that identifies the set of Instances that were used to derive the encapsulated document. One or more Items may be included in this Sequence. Required if derived from one or more DICOM Instances. May be present otherwise.
>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class.
> Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance.
Document Title	(0042,0010)	2	The title of the document. Note: In the case of a PDF encapsulated document, this may be the value of the “Title” entry in the “Document Information Directory” as encoded in the PDF data.
Concept Name Code Sequence	(0040,A043)	2	A coded representation of the document title. Zero or one item may be present.
>Include ‘Code Sequence Macro’ Table 8.8-1			*Baseline Context Group 7020*
Verification Flag	(0040,A493)	3	Indicates whether the Encapsulated Document is Verified. Enumerated Values: UNVERIFIED = Not attested by a legally accountable person. VERIFIED = Attested to (signed) by a Verifying Observer or Legal Authenticator named in the document, who is accountable for its content.
MIME Type of Encapsulated Document	(0042,0012)	1	The type of the encapsulated document stream described using the MIME Media Type (see RFC 2046).
Encapsulated	(0042,0011)	1	Encapsulated Document stream, containing a

Document			document encoded according to the MIME Type.

Note: One could distinguish four stages in the creation of the Encapsulated Document Object, identified by the following Attributes:

1. Measurement and/or data collection, identified by Acquisition Datetime (0008,002A) in the Encapsulated Document Module.
2. Creation of the original documentation of the data collection, identified by Content Date (0008,0023) and Content Time (0008,0033).
3. Rendering of the original documentation into the format that will be encapsulated, e.g. a PDF document. The rendering time is not captured by any DICOM Attribute, but may be encoded in the rendering.
4. Encapsulation of the rendering into a DICOM Object, identified by Instance Creation Date (0008,0012) and Instance Creation Time (0008,0013) in the SOP Common Module.

C.25 REAL WORLD VALUE MAPPING MODULES

C.25.1 Real World Value Mapping Series Module

Table C.25.1-1 defines the general Attributes of the Real World Value Mapping Series Module.

Table C.25.1-1
REAL WORLD VALUE MAPPING SERIES MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Modality	(0008,0060)	1	Modality type. Enumerated Value: RWV

C.25.2 Real World Value Mapping Module

Table C.25.2-1 defines the general Attributes of the Real World Value Mapping Module.

Table C.25.2-1
REAL WORLD VALUE MAPPING MODULE ATTRIBUTES

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Content Date	(0008,0023)	1	The date the content creation started.
Content Time	(0008,0033)	1	The time the content creation started.
Include Content Identification Macro Table 10-12			
Referenced Image Real World Value Mapping Sequence	(0040,9094)	1	A sequence of one or more real world value mapping items. Each item defines a single mapping and a list of images to which the mapping applies.
>Include Real World Value Mapping Macro Table C.7.6.16-12, overriding the Defined Context ID for Measurement Units Code Sequence with DCID 83.			
>Referenced Image Sequence	(0008,1140)	1	A sequence listing the images to which the mapping applies. One or more items shall be present.
>>Include 'Image SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table 10-3			

Annex D Codes and Controlled Terminology (Informative)

Retired. See PS 3.16.

Annex E Explanation of patient orientation (Normative)

Retired. See PS 3.17.

Annex F Basic Directory Information Object Definition (Normative)

F.1 SCOPE OF THE BASIC DIRECTORY INFORMATION IOD

The Basic Directory Information Object Definition may be used for DICOM Media Storage (See PS 3.10) and the Media Storage Service Class (See PS 3.4). It is an abstraction of the information to:

a. Identify a File-set

b. Provide a directory which facilitates access to the information stored in the files of a File-set based on key medical information. Such a directory facility relies on a hierarchical information model of medical summary information referencing the content of the Files stored in a File-set on a storage medium. Standardizing such a directory function is a key element to facilitate the interchange of medical imaging data and is intended to support the complete range of modality imaging information.

Note: The directory information has been defined so that a future version of this Part may be extended to support the distribution of the directory information among a logical tree of several files (with the DICOMDIR file at its root). However in this version of this Part, the entire directory information is specified to be stored in a single File with a DICOMDIR File ID.

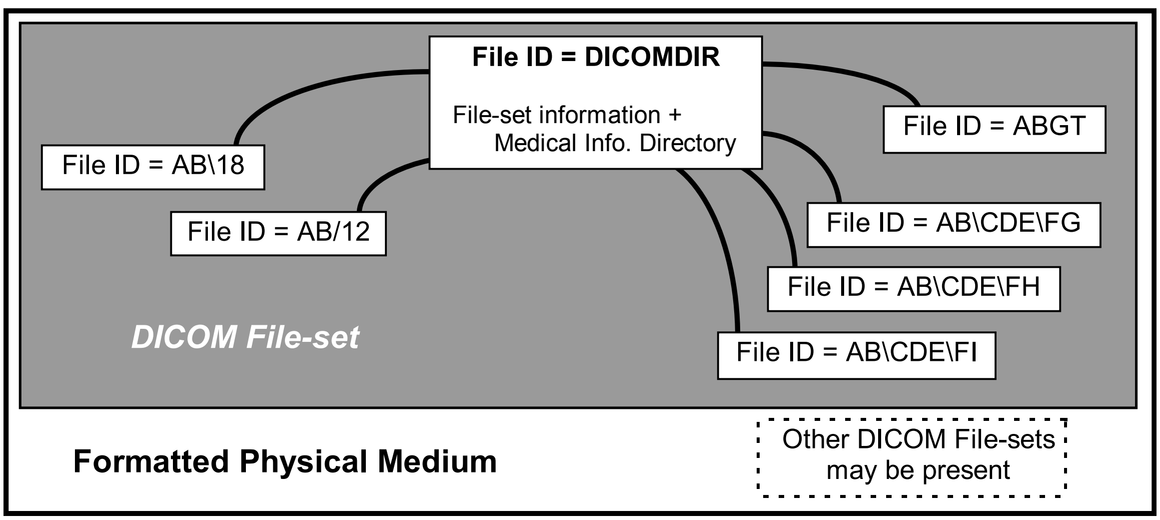


Figure F.1-1
THE DICOMDIR FILE. A CENTRAL ROLE IN A DICOM FILE-SET

Notes: 1. Whether a single File-set or multiple File-sets are allowed on a formatted Physical Media is defined by the Media Format specification (used for each specific Physical Media) in PS 3.12.

2. The DICOMDIR File is identified by a single component File ID, DICOMDIR. Other files in the File-set may have File IDs made of a single component (e.g. "ABGT" in the figure above) or multiple components (e.g. AB\12 or AB\CDE\FI) not to exceed 8 components (See PS 3.10).

This Basic Directory Information Object:

a. is based on a structure of basic medical information. It is not a file system directory such as the one which may be used by the Media Format Layer;

b. is simple enough to meet the requirements of elementary Media Interchange applications;

c. is efficient in supporting update to the directory on rewritable media without a complete rewrite of the entire DICOMDIR File;

d. is extendible for specific applications with specialized selection keys in addition to the standard keys;

e. does not mandate any relationship between the hierarchy of the medical information in the DICOM Directory and the hierarchy of the File ID Components;

Note: Such an independence between the structure of the file identifiers, from which no semantical information shall be inferred, and the DICOM Directory which conveys medical imaging information, ensures that the broadest inter-operability is possible between conforming DICOM media storage implementations.

F.2 BASIC DIRECTORY IOD OVERVIEW

The general organization of the Basic Directory IOD is introduced in this Section. A simple example is also provided to illustrate the application of this organization.

F.2.1 Basic directory IOD organization

The Basic Directory IOD organization is based on a hierarchy of Directory Entities. At the origin of this inverted tree is a root Directory Entity. Each Directory Entity includes one or more Directory Records which in turn, may each reference a lower level Directory Entity.

Directory Records serve to reference objects stored in the Files of the File-set. The organization of the Directory is depicted by the Basic Directory IOD entity/relationship model presented in Figure F.2-1.

Each Directory Record, irrespective of the Directory Entity it is included in, contains four types of information:

a. A reference to a lower level Directory Entity or Referenced Directory Entity. This reference may be absent if such a lower level Directory Entity does not exist for an instance of a directory record;

b. A reference to a File of the File-set in which is stored a "Referenced Object" (formally called in DICOM a Referenced SOP Instance). This reference may be absent if no File is referenced. Files may be referenced directly by their File ID;

c. A set of "selection keys," specific to a Referenced Object, which will allow its selection among all the records included in a given Directory Entity;

d. A mechanism to chain the various Directory Records which belong to the same Directory Entity.

This generic content of a Directory Record is further specialized based on its specific type in the context the Basic Directory IOD Information Model specified in Section F.4 (e.g., a Study Record, a Series Record, etc.). A Directory Entity may include Directory Records of different Types. By standardizing a number of specific Directory Records (see Section F.5) in the context of the Basic Directory IOD Information Model, one allows the definition of a variety of directory contents while maintaining a framework for interoperability.

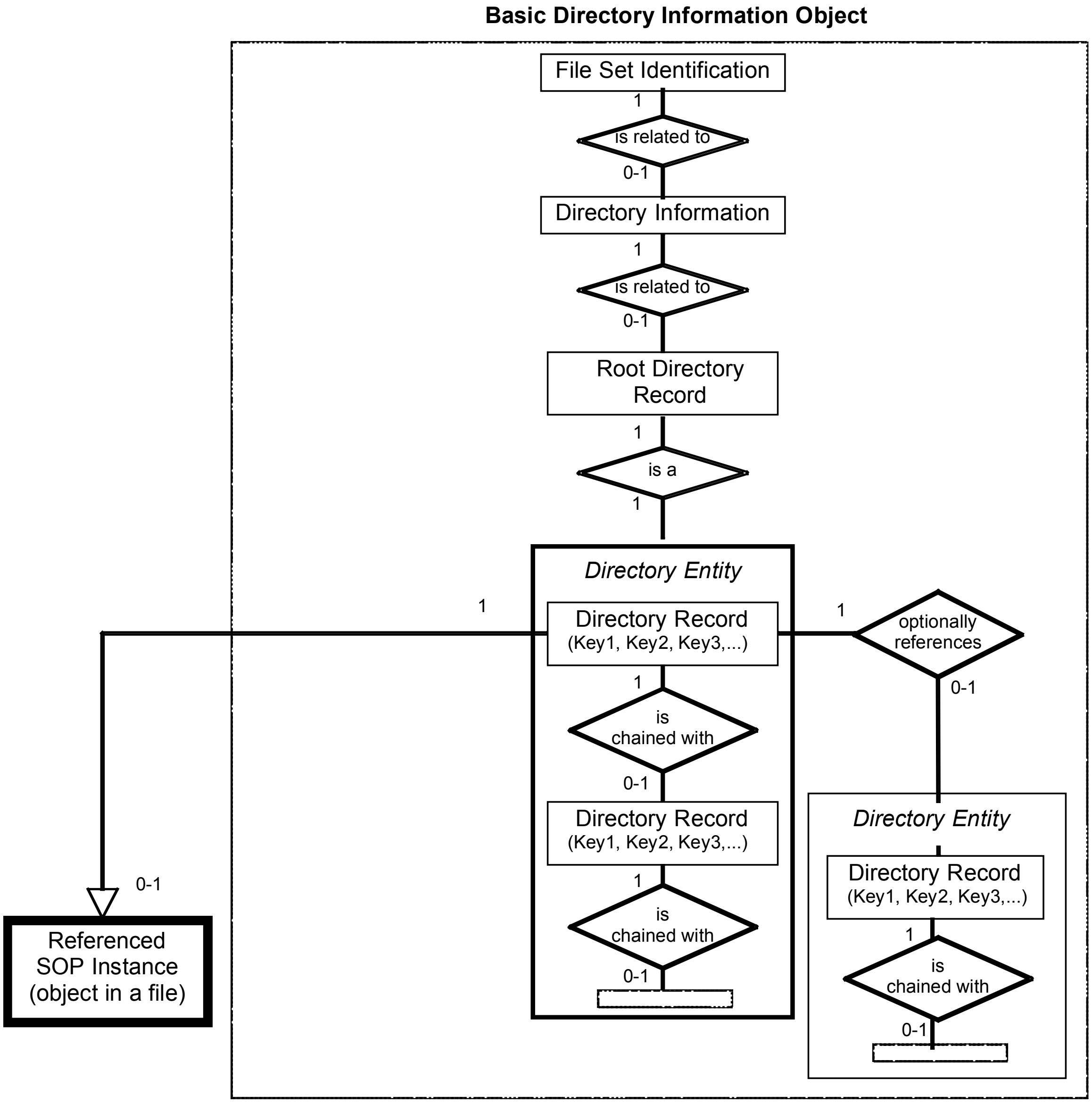


Figure F.2-1
BASIC DIRECTORY INFORMATION OBJECT E-R MODEL

To facilitate the management and update of the Directory Information a number of rules are defined:

a. Any Lower-Level Directory Entity shall be referenced by at most one higher-level Directory Record. Not allowing multiple higher-level Directory Records to reference the same Lower-Level Directory Entity simplifies the management of the deletion (or inactivation) of Directory Records and Lower-Level Directory Entities and associated Directory Records

b. Any Directory Record shall belong to a single Directory Entity. This rule and the above rule, makes the Basic Directory IOD itself strictly hierarchical

c. All files referenced by a Directory shall be present in the same File-Set to which the directory belongs

d. Non-DICOM files which are not referenced by the Directory may be included in the File-set space. The means of access to such Files and the semantics associated with their absence from the Directory is beyond the scope of the DICOM Standard

e. If a DICOMDIR contains a Directory Information Module, all DICOM Files of the File-set shall be referenced by a Directory Record

f. Any File of the File-set shall be directly referenced by at most one Directory Record of the Directory.

Note: Referenced Files may contain SOP Instances of SOP Classes which provide the means to reference by UIDs other SOP Instances which may not be stored in files of the same File-set.

F.2.2 Example of a directory

The example provided in this Section is only one simple example of a possible directory content and organization. This Section is not normative in nature. Therefore, this example is not meant to specify a conformant directory nor to restrict the range of possible directory organizations supported by this Part of the DICOM Standard.

The overall organization is illustrated at a logical level in Section F.2.2.1. The actual structure of the content is discussed in Section F.2.2.2. Two Annexes of PS 3.10 provide example where further details of the encoding of the file content is depicted.

F.2.2.1 Illustration of the Overall Directory Organization

A simple directory content is used as an example of Directory organization. It is depicted by Figure F.2-2. The left hand side part of Figure F.2-2 depicts the various Objects stored in Files of the File-set. The right hand side presents an example of organization of the directory which facilitates access to the Files of the File-set.

This example shows how stored Files are referenced by Directory Records which are grouped into Directory Entities. The two Study Directory Records (Study 1 and Study 2) are part of the Directory Entity relative to the Patient A.

Thin curved lines depict the referencing mechanism based on File IDs which allow reference to Files containing stored objects. Thick curved lines depict the internal referencing mechanisms which support the reference to a lower-level Directory Entity by a Directory Record,.

Keys which are used to select a specific Directory Record from among the Directory Records of a Directory Entity are not shown on Figure F.2-2.

One may note in this example that certain Directory Records such as the Series Directory Records do not reference Files containing stored objects. Other Directory Records such as the Image Directory Records do not reference lower level Directory Entities. However, a number of Directory Records reference both one lower level Directory Entity and one File containing a stored object. This flexibility allows the definition of a variety of directories.

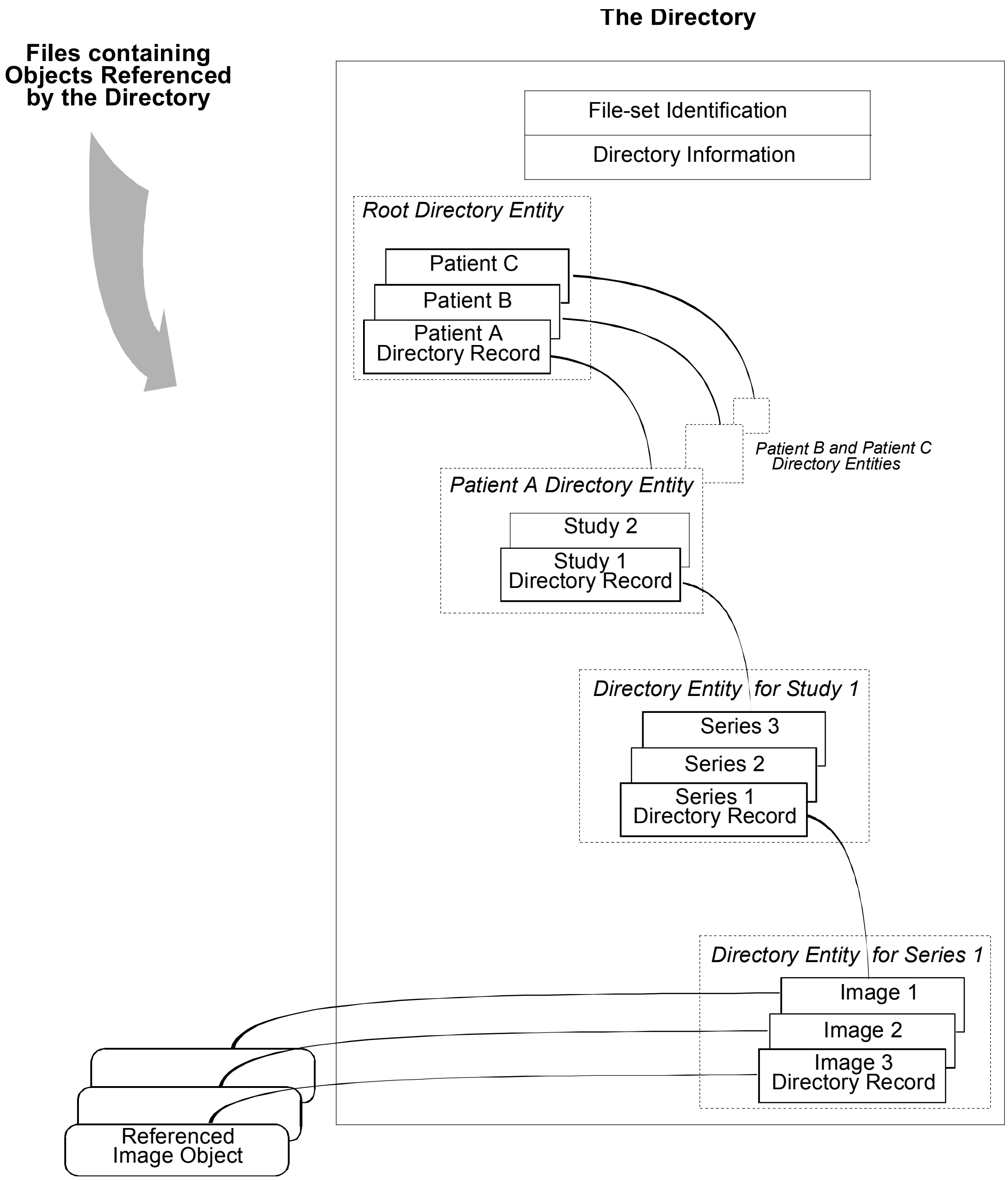


Figure F.2-2
EXAMPLE OF A DIRECTORY ORGANIZATION AND CONTENT

F.2.2.2 Example of a DICOMDIR File Structure

Based on the example discussed in Section F.2.2.1, the internal data structure used by the Basic Directory IOD is depicted in Figure F.2-3. It shows a set of Directory Records where each Directory Record is linked by three different types of "referencing" mechanisms:

a. The chaining of Directory Records to form a Directory Entity. In particular, this facilitates the addition of new Directory Records at the level of any Directory Entity by placing them at the end of the DICOMDIR File. On Figure F.2-3, these chainings are shown by dotted lines:

    1. #1 shows the chaining of the Directory Records forming the root Directory Entity
    2. #2 shows the chaining of the Directory Records for the Directory Entity related to Patient A
    3. #3 shows the chaining of the Directory Records for the Directory Entity related to Study 1
    4. #4 shows the chaining of the Directory Records for the Directory Entity related to Series 1

b. Thick curved lines depict the reference by a Directory Record to a lower level Directory Entity

c. Thin curved lines depict the reference by a Directory Record to a stored file containing a SOP Class

This example of a DICOMDIR File structure shows one example of a specific order of the Directory Records. Other orderings of Directory Records could result in a functionally equivalent directory.

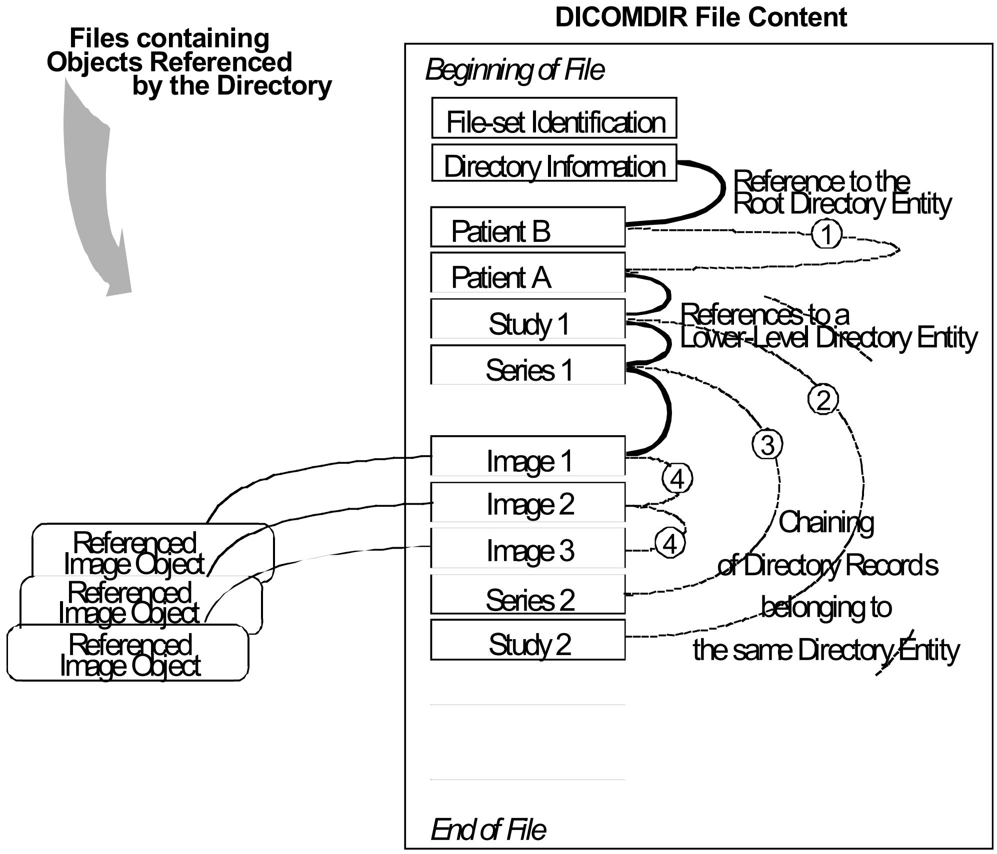


Figure F.2-3
EXAMPLE OF DATA STRUCTURE FOR THE DICOM DIRECTORY INFORMATION

F.3 BASIC DIRECTORY INFORMATION OBJECT DEFINITION

This IOD is based on the Directory Information organization introduced in Section F.2. The model for this Basic Directory IOD is described Section F.2.1 by the Entity/Relationship model in Figure F.2-1. The rules specified in Section F.2.1 apply to this Information Object Definition.

F.3.1 Module table

The Basic Directory IOD includes the Modules specified by Table F.3-1.

Table F.3-1
BASIC DIRECTORY IOD MODULES

Module	Reference	Usage	Module Description
File-set Identification	F.3.2.1	M	File-set identification information
Directory Information	F.3.2.2	U	Directory Information followed by a Sequence of Directory Records. Note: The Directory Information Module is optional. This Directory Information Module should be present in all but primitive environments where a directory is not needed. In this case, only the File-set Identification Information is present.

F.3.2 Modules of the basic directory information object

Attributes of the Basic Directory IOD are defined with a Type designation which indicates if a specific Attribute is required for all Media Storage Operations (See Section 5, Conventions).

F.3.2.1 File-set Identification Module

Table F.3-2
FILE-SET IDENTIFICATION MODULE

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
File-set ID	(0004,1130)	2	User or implementation specific Identifier (up to 16 characters). For definition, see PS 3.10. The File-set ID is intended to be a short human readable label to easily (but not necessarily uniquely) identify a specific File-set to facilitate operator manipulation of the physical media on which the File-set is stored. Assignment of Value and semantics are environment specific.
File-set Descriptor File ID	(0004,1141)	3	ID of a File (in the same File-set) used for user comments related to the File-set (e.g. a readme file). The Specific Character set used may be specified in the Specific Character Set of the File-set Descriptor File (0004,1142). Note: This File is not DICOM formatted (no Preamble, nor DICM Prefix and Meta Information).
Specific Character Set of File-set Descriptor File	(0004,1142)	1C	Character set used in the File-set Descriptor File with a File ID as specified in File-set Descriptor File ID (0004,1141). Required to specify the expanded or replacement character set. If absent, only the Basic Graphic set is used. See C.12.1.1.2 for Defined Terms.

Note: Every File-set is assigned a File-set UID when created. The File-set UID need not be duplicated as a Type 1 Attribute of the File-set Identification Module. It is conveyed as the SOP Instance UID of the Basic Directory IOD. It is included in the DICOMDIR File Meta Information (See PS

3.10)

F.3.2.2 Directory Information Module

This Module contains a sequence of Directory Records forming one or more Directory Entities. This Module defines at least one Directory Entity, the Root Directory Entity (which may be empty). Each Directory Record is composed of Directory Elements (marked by a ">"). They include:

a. an offset pointer to another Directory Record of the Same Directory Entity

b. an offset pointer to a lower level Directory Entity

c. a Referenced File pointed to by the Directory Record

d. a set of keys representative of the information contained in the Referenced File

Table F.3-3
DIRECTORY INFORMATION MODULE

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Offset of the First Directory Record of the Root Directory Entity	(0004,1200)	1	Offset of the first byte (of the Item Data Element) of the first Directory Record of the Root Directory Entity. This Offset is a number of bytes starting with the first byte of the File Meta Information. When the Root Directory Entity contains no Directory Record, this offset shall be set to 00000000H. Note: This offset includes the File Preamble and the DICM Prefix.
Offset of the Last Directory Record of the Root Directory Entity	(0004,1202)	1	Offset of the first byte (of the Item Data Element) of the last Directory Record of the Root Directory Entity. This Offset is a number of bytes starting with the first byte of the File Meta Information. When the Root Directory Entity contains no Directory Record, this offset shall be set to 00000000H. Note: This offset includes the File Preamble and the DICM Prefix.
File-set Consistency Flag	(0004,1212)	1	When set, this Flag indicates that an inconsistency within the Directory or between the Directory and the Files of the File-set may exist. Potential recovery actions are implementation specific and are beyond the scope of this Standard. Enumerated Values: 0000H: no known inconsistencies FFFFH: the FSR or FSU shall assume that inconsistencies are present. This flag shall be set by implementations before a File-set update which, if interrupted, may result in an inconsistent File-set. Note: There may be error conditions where an inconsistency is present but this flag is not set. There may also be conditions where no inconsistencies are present but the flag is set.
Directory Record Sequence	(0004,1220)	2	Sequence of zero or more repeating Items where each Item contains a Directory Record by including the Directory Elements from (0004,1400) to (0004,1511) and Record selection Keys as defined below (marked with a >). A zero length Value indicates that no Directory Records are contained in the Root Directory Entity.

>Offset of the Next Directory Record	(0004,1400)	1C	Offset of the first byte (of the Item Data Element) of the next Directory Record of the same Directory Entity. This Offset is an unsigned integer representing a number of bytes starting with the first byte of the File Meta-information. A zero offset shall be used to mean that there is no other Directory Record in this Directory Entity. Required if the Directory Record Sequence (0004,1220) is not zero length. This Offset may be used to keep an inactive Record (0004,1410) chained with the next Directory Record of the same Directory Entity. Note: This offset includes the File Preamble and the DICM Prefix.
>Record In-use Flag	(0004,1410)	1C	This flag facilitates the deletion of referenced files. Enumerated Values: FFFFH = record is in use. 0000H = record is inactive. All attributes of an inactive Directory Record except (0004,1400) and (0004,1410) shall be ignored. Other Values are reserved and shall not be set by File-set Creators, but if present shall be interpreted as FFFFH by File-set Readers or Updaters. Required if the Directory Record Sequence (0004,1220) is not zero length. If a Directory Record is changed from in use to inactive, the FSU shall ensure that all Directory Records of referenced lower-level Directory Entities are changed to inactive.
>Offset of Referenced Lower-Level Directory Entity	(0004,1420)	1C	Offset of the first byte (of the Item Data Element) of the first Directory Record of the Referenced Lower Level Directory Entity. This Offset is a number of bytes starting with the first byte of the File Meta Information. Required if the Directory Record Sequence (0004,1220) is not zero length. When no lower-level Directory Entity (containing at least one Directory Record) is referenced, this Attribute shall have a Value of 00000000H. Note: This offset includes the File Preamble and the DICM Prefix.
>Directory Record Type	(0004,1430)	1C	Defines a specialized type of Directory Record by reference to its position in the Media Storage Directory Information Model (see Section F.4). Required if the Directory Record Sequence (0004,1220) is not zero length. Enumerated Values (see Section F.5): PATIENT STUDY SERIES IMAGE RT DOSE RT STRUCTURE SET RT PLAN RT TREAT RECORD PRESENTATION WAVEFORM SR DOCUMENT KEY OBJECT DOC SPECTROSCOPY RAW DATA REGISTRATION FIDUCIAL HANGING PROTOCOL ENCAP DOC HL7 STRUC DOC VALUE MAP STEREOMETRIC

			PRIVATE = Privately defined record hierarchy position. Type shall be defined by Private Record UID (0004,1432). Notes: 1. Enumerated Values PRINT QUEUE, FILM SESSION, FILM BOX, and IMAGE BOX were previously defined in DICOM for this Attribute. They are now retired. See PS3.3-1998. 2. Enumerated Values OVERLAY, MODALITY LUT, VOI LUT, CURVE, TOPIC, VISIT, RESULTS, INTERPRETATION, STUDY COMPONENT and STORED PRINT were previously defined in DICOM for this Attribute. They are now retired. See PS3.3-2004. 3. Enumerated Value MRDR was previously defined in DICOM for this Attribute, to allow indirect reference to a File by multiple Directory Records. It is now retired. FSUs and FSRs are unlikely to be capable of supporting this mechanism. See PS3.3-2004.
>Private Record UID	(0004,1432)	1C	Required if the Directory Record Type (0004,1430) is of Value PRIVATE. This UID is used to define a non-standard type of Directory Record by reference to its position in a private extension to the Basic Directory IOD Information Model (see Section F.5). This UID shall be registered according to the procedures defined in PS 3.5. Its meaning may or may not be specified in a Conformance Statement.
>Referenced File ID	(0004,1500)	1C	A Multiple Value (See PS 3.5) which represents the ordered components of the File ID containing a "referenced object" or Referenced SOP Instance. A maximum of 8 components, each from 1 to 8 characters shall be used (see Section 8.2). Note: The Referenced File ID provides the means to "locate" the File through the DICOM File Service provided by the Media Format Layer. All referenced Files shall be with the File-set to which the Directory belongs. Any File within the File-set (to which the Directory belongs) shall be referenced by at most one Directory Record. When the Directory Record does not reference any SOP Instance this attribute shall not be present.
>Referenced SOP Class UID in File	(0004,1510)	1C	Unique ID for the SOP Class of the Instance stored in the referenced File. Required if the Directory Record references a SOP Instance.
>Referenced SOP Instance UID in File	(0004,1511)	1C	Unique Identifier for the SOP Instance stored in the referenced file. Required if the Directory Record references a SOP Instance.
>Referenced Transfer Syntax UID in File	(0004,1512)	1C	Unique Identifier for the Transfer Syntax used to encode the Instance stored in the referenced file. Required if the Directory Record references a SOP Instance.
>Referenced Related General SOP Class UID in File	(0004,151A)	1C	Unique ID for the Related General SOP Class(es) related to the SOP Class of the Instance stored in the referenced file. Required if the Directory Record references a SOP Instance that encodes the Related General SOP Class UID (0008,001A). Note: This may be useful to an FSR that does not support the SOP Class of the referenced Instance, but which does support one of the Related General SOP Classes.

>Record Selection Keys	See F.5	See F.5	A number of DICOM Data Elements which contain specific keys defined for each type of Directory Record (0004,1430) defined in Section F.5.

F.4 BASIC DIRECTORY IOD INFORMATION MODEL

The Basic Directory IOD Information Model defines the relationship between the various types of Directory Records that may be used in constructing DICOM Directories. This model is based on the DICOM Application Model defined in this part of the DICOM Standard. Entities in this Model correspond to Directory Records (DR). These are shown as rectangular boxes. Each Directory Record in this model is part of a Directory Entity (not shown except for the Root Entity) which is referenced by a Directory Record of a higher-level Directory Entity (e.g., a Study Directory Record references a Directory Entity which includes Directory Records describing the content of the Study).

Each Directory Record has a number of mandatory and optional keys which are not shown on this model. They are defined in Section F.5. Conventions used are those used by this part of the DICOM Standard. The model is depicted as an entity/relationship model in Figure F.4-1. These Directory Record relationships are fully specified in Table F.4-1.

Table F.4-1
RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN DIRECTORY RECORDS

Directory Record Type	Section	Directory Record Types which may be included in the next lower-level directory Entity
(Root Directory Entity)	—	PATIENT, HANGING PROTOCOL, PRIVATE
PATIENT	F.5.1	STUDY, HL7 STRUC DOC, PRIVATE
STUDY	F.5.2	SERIES, PRIVATE
SERIES	F.5.3	IMAGE, RT DOSE, RT STRUCTURE SET, RT PLAN, RT TREAT RECORD, PRESENTATION, WAVEFORM, SR DOCUMENT, KEY OBJECT DOC, SPECTROSCOPY, RAW DATA, REGISTRATION, FIDUCIAL, ENCAP DOC, VALUE MAP, STEREOMETRIC, PRIVATE
IMAGE	F.5.4	PRIVATE
RT DOSE	F.5.19	PRIVATE
RT STRUCTURE SET	F.5.20	PRIVATE
RT PLAN	F.5.21	PRIVATE
RT TREAT RECORD	F.5.22	PRIVATE
PRESENTATION	F.5.23	PRIVATE
WAVEFORM	F.5.24	PRIVATE
SR DOCUMENT	F.5.25	PRIVATE
KEY OBJECT DOC	F.5.26	PRIVATE
SPECTROSCOPY	F.5.27	PRIVATE
RAW DATA	F.5.28	PRIVATE
REGISTRATION	F.5.29	PRIVATE
FIDUCIAL	F.5.30	PRIVATE

HANGING PROTOCOL	F.5.31	PRIVATE
ENCAP DOC	F.5.32	PRIVATE
HL7 STRUC DOC	F.5.33	PRIVATE
VALUE MAP	F.5.34	PRIVATE
STEREOMETRIC	F.5.35	PRIVATE
PRIVATE	F.6.1	PRIVATE, (any of the above as privately defined)

Notes: 1. Directory Record Types PRINT QUEUE, FILM SESSION, FILM BOX, and IMAGE BOX were previously defined in DICOM. They have been retired. See PS 3.3-1998.

2. Directory Record Types OVERLAY, MODALITY LUT, VOI LUT, CURVE, TOPIC, VISIT, RESULTS, INTERPRETATION, STUDY COMPONENT, STORED PRINT and MRDR were previously defined in DICOM. They have been retired. See PS 3.3-2004.

F.5 DEFINITION OF SPECIFIC DIRECTORY RECORDS

The following Sections specify a number of Directory Records which were introduced by the Basic Directory IOD Information Model presented in Section F.4. For each one, it identifies the SOP Classes which may be referenced and the related mandatory keys. Keys are assigned a Type designation which indicates if it is required for all Media Storage Operations of the Directory (See Section 5, Conventions).

Type 2 and Type 3 Keys may be changed to Type 1 and Type 2 or 3 respectively by Application Profiles defined in PS 3.11 of the DICOM standard. Keys based on Private Data Elements, or Private Keys may also be used in addition to Standard defined Keys. However such Private keys may be ignored by any File-set Reader or Updater.

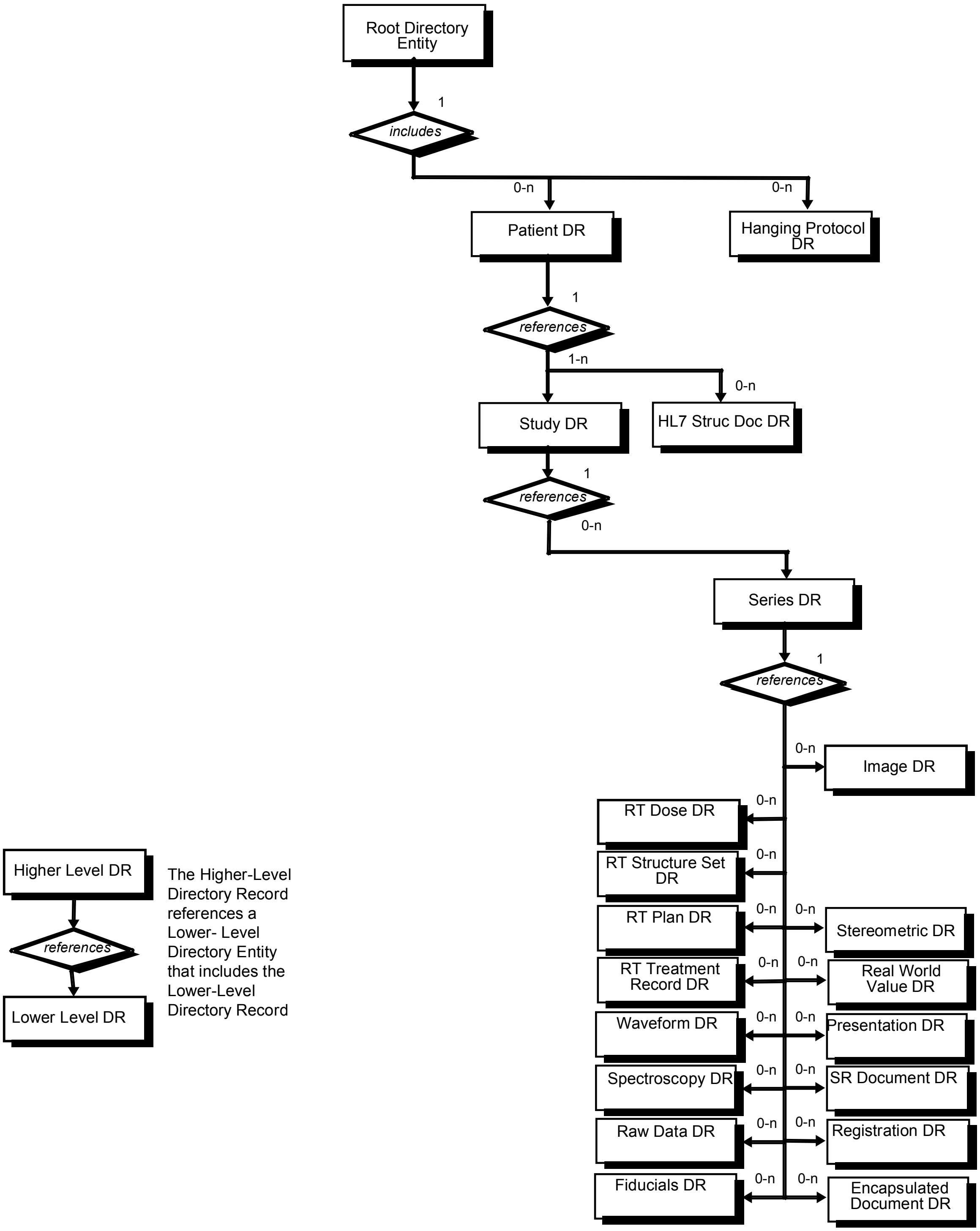


Figure F.4-1
BASIC DIRECTORY IOD INFORMATION MODEL

Note: Normalized Print media storage was previously defined in DICOM. It is now retired. See PS3.3 - 1998.

F.5.1 Patient Directory Record Definition

The Directory Record is based on the specification of Section F.3. It is identified by a Directory Record Type of Value "PATIENT." Table F.5-1 lists the set of keys with their associated Types for such a Directory Record Type. The description of these keys may be found in the Modules related to the Patient IOD or the Patient IE of Image IODs. This Type of Directory Record may reference a Lower-Level Directory Entity that includes one or more Directory Records as defined in Table F.4-2.

Table F.5-1
PATIENT KEYS

Key	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Specific Character Set	(0008,0005)	1C	Required if an extended or replacement character set is used in one of the keys
Patient's Name	(0010,0010)	2	
Patient ID	(0010,0020)	1	
Any other Attribute of the Patient IOD or Patient IE Modules		3	

For a given File-set, the Patient ID shall be unique. This means that it shall not appear in different Patient Directory Records.

F.5.2 Study Directory record definition

The Directory Record is based on the specification of Section F.3. It is identified by a Directory Record Type of Value "STUDY." Table F.5-2 lists the set of keys with their associated Types for such a Directory Record Type. The description of these keys may be found in the Modules related to the Study IE of Composite IODs. This Type of Directory Record may reference a Lower-Level Directory Entity that includes one or more Directory Records as defined in Table F.4-2. Only one Study Directory Record per Study Instance UID shall be present in a Basic Directory Instance; this implies that a study belongs to a single patient and shall be referenced only once for that patient.

Table F.5-2
STUDY KEYS

Key	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Specific Character Set	(0008,0005)	1C	Required if an extended or replacement character set is used in one of the keys
Study Date	(0008,0020)	1	
Study Time	(0008,0030)	1	
Study Description	(0008,1030)	2	
Study Instance UID	(0020,000D)	1C	Required only if (0004,1511) is absent. (See Note)
Study ID	(0020,0010)	1	
Accession Number	(0008,0050)	2	
Any other Attribute		3	

of the Study IOD or Study IE Modules			

Note: The Study Instance UID shall be present as a mandatory key only if no file is referenced by this Directory Record. In the case where this Directory Record references a file, the Directory Record contains in the Referenced SOP Instance UID in File (0004,1511). In this case (0004,1511) may be used as a "pseudo" Directory Record Key (See Table F.3-3) and need not be duplicated.

F.5.3 Series Directory Record Definition

The Directory Record is based on the specification of Section F.3. It is identified by a Directory Record Type of Value "SERIES." Table F.5-3 lists the set of keys with their associated Types for such a Directory Record Type. The description of these keys may be found in the Modules related to the Series IE and Equipment IE of Composite IODs. This type of Directory Record may reference a Lower-Level Directory Entity that includes one or more Directory Records as defined in Table F.4-2. Only one Series Directory Record per Series Instance UID shall be present in a Basic Directory Instance; this implies that a series belongs to a single study and shall be referenced only once for that study.

Table F.5-3
SERIES KEYS

Key	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Specific Character Set	(0008,0005)	1C	Required if an extended or replacement character set is used in one of the keys
Modality	(0008,0060)	1	
Series Instance UID	(0020,000E)	1	
Series Number	(0020,0011)	1	
Icon Image Sequence	(0088,0200)	3	This Icon Image is representative of the Series. It may or may not correspond to one of the images of the Series.
> *Include 'Image Pixel Macro' Table C.7-11b*			See Section F.7 of this Part.
Any other Attribute of the Series IE Modules		3	

F.5.4 Image directory record definition

The Directory Record is based on the specification of Section F.3. It is identified by a Directory Record Type of Value "IMAGE." Table F.5-4 lists the set of keys with their associated Types for such a Directory Record Type. The description of these keys may be found in the Modules related to the Image IE of Image IODs. This Directory Record shall be used to reference an Image SOP Instance. This type of Directory Record may reference a Lower-Level Directory Entity that includes one or more Directory Records as defined in Table F.4-2.

Table F.5-4
IMAGE KEYS

Key	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Specific Character Set	(0008,0005)	1C	Required if an extended or replacement character set is used in one of the keys.
Instance Number	(0020,0013)	1	
Icon Image Sequence	(0088,0200)	3	This Icon Image is representative of the Image.
> *Include 'Image Pixel Macro' Table C.7-11b*			See Section F.7 of this Part.
Any other Attribute of the Image IE Modules		3	

Note: Because (0004,1511) Referenced SOP Instance UID in File may be used as a "pseudo" Directory Record Key (See Table F.3-3), it is not duplicated in this list of keys.

F.5.5 Standalone overlay directory record definition

Retired. See PS 3.3-2004.

F.5.6 Standalone modality LUT directory record definition

Retired. See PS 3.3-2004.

F.5.7 Standalone VOI LUT directory record definition

Retired. See PS 3.3-2004.

F.5.8 Standalone curve directory record definition

Retired. See PS 3.3-2004.

F.5.9 Topic directory record definition

Retired. See PS 3.3-2004.

F.5.10 Visit directory record definition

Retired. See PS 3.3-2004.

F.5.11 Results directory record definition

Retired. See PS 3.3-2004.

F.5.12 Interpretation directory record definition

Retired. See PS 3.3-2004.

F.5.13 Study component directory record definition

Retired. See PS 3.3-2004.

F.5.14 Print Queue Directory Record Definition

This section was previously defined in DICOM. It is now retired. See PS 3.3-1998.

F.5.15 Film session directory record definition

This section was previously defined in DICOM. It is now retired. See PS 3.3-1998.

F.5.16 Film box directory record definition

This section was previously defined in DICOM. It is now retired. See PS 3.3-1998.

F.5.17 Basic image box directory record definition

This section was previously defined in DICOM. It is now retired. See PS 3.3-1998.

F.5.18 Stored Print Directory Record Definition

Retired. See PS 3.3-2004.

F.5.19 RT Dose Directory Record Definition

This Directory Record is based on the specification of Section F.3. It is identified by a Directory Record Type of Value "RT DOSE". Table F.5-19 lists the set of keys with their associated Types for such a Directory Record Type. The description of these keys may be found in the Modules related to the Dose IE of the RT Dose IOD. This Directory Record shall be used to reference a RT Dose SOP instance. This Type of Directory Record may reference a Lower-Level Directory Entity that includes one or more Directory Records as defined in Table F.4-2.

Table F.5-19
RT DOSE KEYS

Key	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Specific Character Set	(0008,0005)	1C	Required if an extended or replacement character set is used in one of the keys.
Instance Number	(0020,0013)	1	
Dose Summation Type	(3004,000A)	1	
Dose Comment	(3004,0006)	3	
Icon Image Sequence	(0088,0200)	3	This Icon Image is representative of the RT Dose.
> Include 'Image Pixel Macro' Table C.7-11b			See Section F.7 of this part.
Any other Attribute of the Dose IE Modules		3	

Note: Because (0004,1511) Referenced SOP Instance UID in File may be used as a "pseudo" Directory Record Key (see Table F.3-3), it is not duplicated in this list of keys.

F.5.20 RT Structure Set Directory Record Definition

This Directory Record is based on the specification of Section F.3. It is identified by a Directory Record Type of Value "RT STRUCTURE SET". Table F.5-20 lists the set of keys with their associated Types for such a Directory Record Type. The description of these keys may be found in the Modules related to the Structure Set IE of the RT Structure Set IOD. This Directory Record shall be used to reference a RT Structure Set SOP instance. This Type of Directory Record may reference a Lower-Level Directory Entity that includes one or more Directory Records as defined in Table F.4-2.

Table F.5-20
RT STRUCTURE SET KEYS

Key	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Specific Character Set	(0008,0005)	1C	Required if an extended or replacement character set is used in one of the keys.

Instance Number	(0020,0013)	1	
Structure Set Label	(3006,0002)	1	
Structure Set Date	(3006,0008)	2	
Structure Set Time	(3006,0009)	2	
Any other Attribute of the Structure Set IE Modules		3	

Note: Because (0004,1511) Referenced SOP Instance UID in File may be used as a "pseudo" Directory Record Key (see Table F.3-3), it is not duplicated in this list of keys.

F.5.21 RT Plan Directory Record Definition

This Directory Record is based on the specification of Section F.3. It is identified by a Directory Record Type of Value "RT PLAN". Table F.5-21 lists the set of keys with their associated Types for such a Directory Record Type. The description of these keys may be found in the Modules related to the Plan IE of the RT Plan IOD. This Directory Record shall be used to reference a RT Plan SOP instance. This Type of Directory Record may reference a Lower-Level Directory Entity that includes one or more Directory Records as defined in Table F.4-2.

Table F.5-21
RT PLAN KEYS

Key	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Specific Character Set	(0008,0005)	1C	Required if an extended or replacement character set is used in one of the keys
Instance Number	(0020,0013)	1	
RT Plan Label	(300A,0002)	1	
RT Plan Date	(300A,0006)	2	
RT Plan Time	(300A,0007)	2	
Any other Attribute of the Plan IE Modules		3	

Note: Because (0004,1511) Referenced SOP Instance UID in File may be used as a "pseudo" Directory Record Key (see Table F.3-3), it is not duplicated in this list of keys.

F.5.22 RT Treatment Record Directory Record Definition

This Directory Record is based on the specification of Section F.3. It is identified by a Directory Record Type of Value "RT TREAT RECORD". Table F.5-22 lists the set of keys with their associated Types for such a Directory Record Type. The description of these keys may be found in the Modules related to the Treatment Record IE of the RT Treatment Record IODs. This Directory Record shall be used to reference an RT Beams Treatment Record SOP instance, RT Brachy Treatment Record SOP instance, or RT Treatment Summary Record SOP instance. This Type of Directory Record may reference a Lower-Level Directory Entity that includes one or more Directory Records as defined in Table F.4-2.

Table F.5-22
RT TREATMENT RECORD KEYS

Key	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Specific Character Set	(0008,0005)	1C	Required if an extended or replacement character set is used in one of the keys
Instance Number	(0020,0013)	1	
Treatment Date	(3008,0250)	2	
Treatment Time	(3008,0251)	2	
Any other Attribute of the Treatment Record IE Modules		3	

Note: Because (0004,1511) Referenced SOP Instance UID in File may be used as a "pseudo" Directory Record Key (see Table F.3-3), it is not duplicated in this list of keys.

F.5.23 Presentation State Directory Record Definition

The Directory Record is based on the specification of Section F.3. It is identified by a Directory Record Type of Value "PRESENTATION". Table F.5-23 lists the set of keys with their associated Types for such a Directory Record Type. The description of these keys may be found in the Modules related to Softcopy Presentation State Storage IODs. This Directory Record shall be used to reference a Softcopy Presentation State Storage SOP Instance. This Type of Directory Record may reference a Lower-Level Directory Entity that includes one or more Directory Records as defined in Table F.4-2.

Table F.5-23
PRESENTATION KEYS

Key	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Specific Character Set	(0008,0005)	1C	Required if an extended or replacement character set is used in one of the keys.
Presentation Creation Date	(0070,0082)	1	Date on which this presentation was created. Note: This date may be different from the date that the DICOM SOP Instance was created, since the presentation state information contained may have been recorded earlier.
Presentation Creation Time	(0070,0083)	1	Time at which this presentation was created. Note: This time may be different from the time that the DICOM SOP Instance was created, since the presentation state information contained may have been recorded earlier.
Include Content Identification Macro Table 10-12			

Referenced Series Sequence	(0008,1115)	1	Sequence of Repeating Items where each Item includes the Attributes of one or more Series.
>Series Instance UID	(0020,000E)	1C	Unique identifier of a Series that is part of this Study. Required if sequence item is present.
>Referenced Image Sequence	(0008,1140)	1C	Sequence of Repeating Items where each Item provides reference to a selected set of Image SOP Class/SOP Instance pairs that are part of this Study and the Series defined by Series Instance UID (0020,000E). Required if a sequence item is present.
>>Referenced SOP Class UID	(0008,1150)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Class. Required if sequence item is present. Shall be the same for all Images referenced by this presentation state.
>>Referenced SOP Instance UID	(0008,1155)	1C	Uniquely identifies the referenced SOP Instance. Required if sequence item is present.
Any other Attribute of the Presentation IE Modules		3	

Note: Because (0004,1511) Referenced SOP Instance UID in File may be used as a "pseudo" Directory Record Key (See Table F.3-3), it is not duplicated in this list of keys.

F.5.24 Waveform Directory Record Definition

The Directory Record is based on the specification of Section F.3. It is identified by a Directory Record Type of Value "WAVEFORM". Table F.5-24 lists the set of keys with their associated Types for such a Directory Record Type. The description of these keys may be found in PS 3.3 of the DICOM Standard in the Modules related to the Waveform IE. This Directory Record shall be used to reference a Waveform SOP Instance. This Type of Directory Record may reference a Lower-Level Directory Entity that includes one or more Directory Records as defined in Table F.4-2.

Table F.5-24
WAVEFORM KEYS

Key	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Specific Character Set	(0008,0005)	1C	Required if an extended or replacement character set is used in one of the keys.
Instance Number	(0020,0013)	1	
Content Date	(0008,0023)	1	
Content Time	(0008,0033)	1	
Any other Attribute of the Waveform IE Modules		3	

Note: Because (0004,1511) Referenced SOP Instance UID in File may be used as a "pseudo" Directory Record Key (See Table F.3-3), it is not duplicated in this list of keys.

F.5.25 SR Document Directory Record Definition

The Directory Record is based on the specification of Section F.3. It is identified by a Directory Record Type of Value "SR DOCUMENT". Table F.5-25 lists the set of keys with their associated Types for such a Directory Record Type. The description of these keys may be found in the Modules related to the Observation IE of Structured Report IOD. This Directory Record shall be used to reference an SR Document. This type of Directory Record may reference a Lower-Level Directory Entity that includes one or more Directory Records as defined in Table F.4-2.

Table F.5-25
SR DOCUMENT KEYS

Key	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Specific Character Set	(0008,0005)	1C	Required if an extended or replacement character set is used in one of the keys.
Instance Number	(0020,0013)	1	
Completion Flag	(0040,A491)	1	
Verification Flag	(0040,A493)	1	
Content Date	(0008,0023)	1	
Content Time	(0008,0033)	1	
Verification DateTime	(0040,A030)	1C	Most recent Date and Time of verification among those defined in the Verifying Observer Sequence (0040,A073). Required if Verification Flag (0040,A493) is VERIFIED.
Concept Name Code Sequence	(0040,A043)	1	Code describing the concept represented by the root Content Item (Document Title). This sequence shall contain exactly one Item.
Content Sequence	(0040,A730)	1C	Contains the Target Content Items that modify the Concept Name Code Sequence of the root Content Item (Document Title). Required if the root Content Item is the Source Content Item of HAS CONCEPT MOD relationships.
Any Attribute of the Document IE Modules		3	

Note: Because (0004,1511) Referenced SOP Instance UID in File may be used as a "pseudo" Directory Record Key (See Table F.3-3), it is not duplicated in this list of keys.

F.5.26 Key Object Document Directory Record Definition

The Directory Record is based on the specification of Section F.3. It is identified by a Directory Record Type of Value "KEY OBJECT DOC". Table F.5-25 lists the set of keys with their associated Types for such a Directory Record Type. The description of these keys may be found in the Modules related to the Document IE of the Key Object Selection IOD. This Directory

Record shall be used to reference a Key Object Selection Document. This type of Directory Record may reference a Lower-Level Directory Entity that includes one or more Directory Records as defined in Table F.4-1.

Table F.5-26
KEY OBJECT DOCUMENT KEYS

Key	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Specific Character Set	(0008,0005)	1C	Required if an extended or replacement character set is used in one of the keys.
Instance Number	(0020,0013)	1	
Content Date	(0008,0023)	1	
Content Time	(0008,0033)	1	
Concept Name Code Sequence	(0040,A043)	1	Code describing the concept represented by the root Content Item (Document Title). This sequence shall contain exactly one Item.
Content Sequence	(0040,A730)	1C	Contains the Target Content Items that modify the Concept Name Code Sequence of the root Content Item (Document Title). Required if the root Content Item is the Source Content Item of HAS CONCEPT MOD relationships.
Any Attribute of the Document IE Modules		3	

Note: Because (0004,1511) Referenced SOP Instance UID in File may be used as a "pseudo" Directory Record Key (See Table F.3-3), it is not duplicated in this list of keys.

F.5.27 Spectroscopy directory record definition

The Directory Record is based on the specification of Section F.3. It is identified by a Directory Record Type of Value "SPECTROSCOPY." Table F.5-27 lists the set of keys with their associated Types for such a Directory Record Type. The description of these keys may be found in the Modules related to the Spectroscopy IE of Spectroscopy IODs. This Directory Record shall be used to reference a Spectroscopy SOP Instance. This type of Directory Record may reference a Lower-Level Directory Entity that includes one or more Directory Records as defined in Table F.4-2.

Table F.5-27
SPECTROSCOPY KEYS

Key	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Specific Character Set	(0008,0005)	1C	Required if an extended or replacement character set is used in one of the keys.
Image Type	(0008,0008)	1	
Content Date	(0008,0023)	1	
Content Time	(0008,0033)	1	

Instance Number	(0020,0013)	1	
Referenced Image Evidence Sequence	(0008,9092)	1C	Required if present in the spectroscopy instance.
>*Include 'SOP Instance Reference Macro' Table C.17-3*			
Number of Frames	(0028,0008)	1	
Rows	(0028,0010)	1	
Columns	(0028,0011)	1	
Data Point Rows	(0028,9001)	1	
Data Point Columns	(0028,9002)	1	
Icon Image Sequence	(0088,0200)	3	This Icon Image is representative of the Spectroscopy instance.
>Image Pixel Module			See Section F.7 of this Part.
Any other Attribute of the Spectroscopy IE Modules		3	

Note: Because (0004,1511) Referenced SOP Instance UID in File may be used as a "pseudo" Directory Record Key (See Table F.3-3), it is not duplicated in this list of keys.

F.5.28 Raw Data directory record definition

The Directory Record is based on the specification of Section F.3. It is identified by a Directory Record Type of Value "RAW DATA." Table F.5-28 lists the set of keys with their associated Types for such a Directory Record Type. The description of these keys may be found in the Modules related to the Raw Data IE of Raw Data IODs. This Directory Record shall be used to reference a Raw Data SOP Instance. This type of Directory Record may reference a Lower-Level Directory Entity that includes one or more Directory Records as defined in Table F.4-2.

Table F.5-28
RAW DATA KEYS

Key	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Specific Character Set	(0008,0005)	1C	Required if an extended or replacement character set is used in one of the keys.
Content Date	(0008,0023)	1	
Content Time	(0008,0033)	1	
Instance Number	(0020,0013)	2	
Icon Image Sequence	(0088,0200)	3	This Icon Image is representative of the Raw Data instance.
>Image Pixel Module			See Section F.7 of this Part.
Any other Attribute of the Raw Data IE Modules		3	

Note: Because (0004,1511) Referenced SOP Instance UID in File may be used as a "pseudo" Directory Record Key (See Table F.3-3), it is not duplicated in this list of keys.

F.5.29 Registration directory record definition

The Directory Record is based on the specification of Section F.3. It is identified by a Directory Record Type of Value "REGISTRATION." Table F.5-29 lists the set of keys with their associated Types for such a Directory Record Type. The description of these keys may be found in the Modules related to the Spatial Registration IE of the Spatial Registration IOD. This Directory Record shall be used to reference a Spatial Registration SOP Instance. This type of Directory Record may reference a Lower-Level Directory Entity that includes one or more Directory Records as defined in Table F.4-2.

Table F.5-29
REGISTRATION KEYS

Key	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Specific Character Set	(0008,0005)	1C	Required if an extended or replacement character set is used in one of the keys.
Content Date	(0008,0023)	1	The date the content creation started.
Content Time	(0008,0033)	1	The time the content creation started.
Include Content Identification Macro Table 10-12			
Any other Attribute of the Spatial Registration IE Modules		3	

Note: Because (0004,1511) Referenced SOP Instance UID in File may be used as a "pseudo" Directory Record Key (See Table F.3-3), it is not duplicated in this list of keys.

F.5.30 Fiducial directory record definition

The Directory Record is based on the specification of Section F.3. It is identified by a Directory Record Type of Value "FIDUCIAL." Table F.5-30 lists the set of keys with their associated Types for such a Directory Record Type. The description of these keys may be found in the Modules related to the Spatial Fiducials IE of Spatial Fiducials IOD. This Directory Record shall be used to reference a Spatial Fiducials SOP Instance. This type of Directory Record may reference a Lower-Level Directory Entity that includes one or more Directory Records as defined in Table F.4-2.

Table F.5-30
FIDUCIAL KEYS

Key	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Specific Character Set	(0008,0005)	1C	Required if an extended or replacement character set is used in one of the keys.
Content Date	(0008,0023)	1	The date the content creation started.
Content Time	(0008,0033)	1	The time the content creation started.
Include Content Identification Macro Table 10-12			
Any other Attribute of the Spatial Fiducials IE Modules		3	

Note: Because (0004,1511) Referenced SOP Instance UID in File may be used as a "pseudo" Directory Record Key (See Table F.3-3), it is not duplicated in this list of keys.

F.5.31 Hanging Protocol Directory Record Definition

The Directory Record is based on the specification of Section F.3. It is identified by a Directory Record Type of Value "HANGING PROTOCOL". Table F.5-31 lists the set of keys with their associated Types for such a Directory Record Type. The description of these keys may be found in the Modules related to the Hanging Protocol IOD. This Directory Record shall be used to reference a Hanging Protocol SOP Instance. This type of Directory Record may reference a Lower-Level Directory Entity which includes one or more Directory Records as defined in Table F.4-1.

Table F.5-31
HANGING PROTOCOL KEYS

Attribute Name	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Specific Character Set	(0008,0005)	1C	Required if an extended or replacement character set is used in one of the keys
Hanging Protocol Name	(0072,0002)	1	
Hanging Protocol Description	(0072,0004)	1	
Hanging Protocol Level	(0072,0006)	1	
Hanging Protocol Creator	(0072,0008)	1	
Hanging Protocol Creation Datetime	(0072,000A)	1	
Hanging Protocol Definition Sequence	(0072,000C)	1	
Number of Priors Referenced	(0072,0014)	1	
Hanging Protocol User Identification Code Sequence	(0072,000E)	2	
Any other Attribute of the Hanging Protocol IOD		3	

Note: Because (0004,1511) Referenced SOP Instance UID in File may be used as a "pseudo" Directory Record Key (See Table F.3-3), it is not duplicated in this list of keys.

F.5.32 Encapsulated Document directory record definition

The Directory Record is based on the specification of Section F.3. It is identified by a Directory Record Type of Value "ENCAP DOC." Table F.5-32 lists the set of keys with their associated Types for such a Directory Record Type. The description of these keys may be found in the Modules related to the Encapsulated Document IE of the Encapsulated PDF IOD. This Directory Record shall be used to reference an Encapsulated PDF SOP Instance. This type of Directory Record may reference a Lower-Level Directory Entity that includes one or more Directory Records as defined in Table F.4-2.

Note: Other Encapsulated Document SOP Classes may be added to the standard in the future and these will likely be referenced by this directory record. Therefore, the MIME Type should be checked rather than assuming that the referenced file contains PDF.

Table F.5-32
Encapsulated Document KEYS

Key	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Content Date	(0008,0023)	2	The date the content creation started.
Content Time	(0008,0033)	2	The time the content creation started.
Instance Number	(0020,0013)	1	A number that identifies this instance
Document Title	(0042,0010)	2	The title of the document.
Concept Name Code Sequence	(0040,A043)	2	A coded representation of the document title. Zero or one item may be present.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1		1	*Baseline Context Group 7020*
MIME Type of Encapsulated Document	(0042,0012)	1	The type of the encapsulated document stream described using the MIME Media Type (see RFC 2046).
Any other Attribute of the Encapsulated Document Module except Encapsulated Document (0042,0011)		3	

F.5.33 HL7 Structured Document Directory Record Definition

The Directory Record is based on the specification of Section F.3. It is identified by a Directory Record Type of Value "HL7 STRUC DOC".

Table F.5-33 lists the set of keys with their associated Types for such a Directory Record Type. This Directory Record shall be used to reference an HL7 Structured Document and any of its referenced content encapsulated in a multi-part MIME wrapper (see PS3.10). This type of Directory Record shall not reference any Lower-Level Directory Entity.

Table F.5-33
HL7 Structured Document Keys

Key	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Specific Character Set	(0008,0005)	1C	Required if an extended or replacement character set is used in one of the keys.
HL7 Instance Identifier	(0040,E001)	1	Instance Identifier from the referenced HL7 Structured Document, encoded as a UID (OID or UUID), concatenated with a caret ("^") and Extension value (if Extension is present in Instance Identifier).
HL7 Document Effective Time	(0040,E004)	1	Effective Time from the referenced HL7 Structured Document
HL7 Document Type Code Sequence	(0040,E006)	1C	Document Type Code from the referenced HL7 Structured Document. Required if the HL7 Structured Document contains a Document Type Code.
>Include 'Code Sequence Macro' Table 8.8-1			*No BCID defined*

Document Title	(0042,0010)	1C	Document Title from the referenced HL7 Structured Document. Required if the HL7 Structured Document contains a Document Title.

Note: This directory record points to a CDA document that is stored on this media. The HL7 Document Effective Time and other information can be obtained from the CDA document.

F.5.34 Real World Value Mapping directory record definition

The Directory Record is based on the specification of Section F.3. It is identified by a Directory Record Type of Value "VALUE MAP." Table F.5-34 lists the set of keys with their associated Types for such a Directory Record Type. The description of these keys may be found in the Modules related to the Real World Value Mapping IE of Real World Value Mapping IOD. This Directory Record shall be used to reference a Real World Value Mapping SOP Instance. This type of Directory Record may reference a Lower-Level Directory Entity that includes one or more Directory Records as defined in Table F.4-2.

Table F.5-34
REAL WORLD VALUE MAPPING KEYS

Key	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Specific Character Set	(0008,0005)	1C	Required if an extended or replacement character set is used in one of the keys.
Content Date	(0008,0023)	1	The date the content creation started.
Content Time	(0008,0033)	1	The time the content creation started.
Include Content Identification Macro Table 10-12			
Any other Attribute of the Real World Value Mapping IE Modules		3	

Note: Because (0004,1511) Referenced SOP Instance UID in File may be used as a "pseudo" Directory Record Key (See Table F.3-3), it is not duplicated in this list of keys.

F.5.35 Stereometric Relationship directory record definition

The Directory Record is based on the specification of Section F.3. It is identified by a Directory Record Type of Value "STEREOMETRIC." Table F.5-xx lists the set of keys with their associated Types for such a Directory Record Type. The description of these keys may be found in the Modules related to the Stereometric Relationship IE of Stereometric Relationship IOD. This Directory Record shall be used to reference a Stereometric Relationship SOP Instance. This type of Directory Record may reference a Lower-Level Directory Entity that includes one or more Directory Records as defined in Table F.4-2.

Table F.5-35
STEREOMETRIC RELATIONSHIP KEYS

Key	Tag	Type	Attribute Description
Specific Character Set	(0008,0005)	1C	Required if an extended or replacement character set is used in one of the keys.
Any other Attribute of the Stereometric relationship IE Modules		3	

Note: Because (0004,1511) Referenced SOP Instance UID in File may be used as a "pseudo" Directory Record Key (See Table F.3-3), it is not duplicated in this list of keys.

F.6 SPECIAL DIRECTORY RECORDS

F.6.1 Private directory record definition

Private Directory Records may also be used in addition to Standard defined Directory Records. Such Private Records shall follow the specification of Sections F.2 and F.3. In addition, if created by File-set Creators they shall be proper extensions to the DICOM Basic Directory IOD Information Model specified in Section F.4. By proper extensions it is meant that any File-set Creator creating private Directory Records shall still meet the DICOM PS 3.10 conformance requirements. Thus a File-set Reader or File-set Updater which chooses to ignore such privately defined Directory Records will find a conformant Directory.

F.6.2 Multi-referenced file directory record definition

Retired. See PS 3.3-2004.

F.7 ICON IMAGE KEY DEFINITION

An Icon Image may be used as a key representative of an Image, RT Dose, or Series in a corresponding Directory Record to allow an application to display icons which enable a user to select one or more from amongst several of them. It is based on the general purpose Image Pixel Macro (See Annex C).

The Icon Image Key corresponds to Data Element (0088,0200). It is defined as a Sequence which contains a single Item encapsulating the Data Set made of the Data Elements of the Icon Image. The Data Elements are defined by the Image Pixel Macro (see Section C.7.6.3).

The Image Pixel Macro usage is restricted in a few areas to facilitate general use in Directory Record across various modality environments. These restrictions are:

a. Only monochrome and palette color images shall be used. Samples per Pixel (0028,0002) shall have a Value of 1, Photometric Interpretation (0028,0004) shall have a Value of either MONOCHROME 1, MONOCHROME 2 or PALETTE COLOR, Planar Configuration (0028,0006) shall not be present

Note: True color icon images are not supported. This is due to the fact that the reduced size of the Icon Image makes the quality of a palette color image (with 256 colors) sufficient in most cases. This simplifies the handling of Icon Images by File-set Readers and File-set Updaters.

b. If an FSR/FSU supports Icons (i.e. does not ignore them) then it shall support at least a maximum size of 64 by 64 Icons. An FSC may write Icons of any size. Icons larger than 64 by 64 may be ignored by FSRs and FSUs unless specialized by Application Profiles

c. Pixel samples have a Value of either 1 or 8 for Bits Allocated (0028,0100) and Bits Stored (0028,0101). High Bit (0028,0102) shall have a Value of one less than the Value used in Bit Stored

d. Pixel Representation (0028,0103) shall used an unsigned integer representation (Value 0000H)

e. Pixel Aspect Ratio (0028,0034) shall have a Value of 1:1

f. If a Palette Color lookup Table is used, an 8 Bit Allocated (0028,0100) shall be used

Annex G Integration of Modality Worklist and Modality Performed Procedure Step in the Original DICOM Standard (Informative)

Retired. See PS 3.17.

Annex H Retired

Annex I Retired

Annex J Waveforms (Informative)

Retired. See PS 3.17.

Annex K SR Encoding Example (Informative)

Retired. See PS 3.17.

Annex L Mammography CAD (Informative)

Retired. See PS 3.17.

Annex M Chest CAD (Informative)

Retired. See PS 3.17.

Annex N Explanation of Grouping Criteria for Multi-frame Functional Group IODs (Informative)

Retired. See PS 3.17.

Annex O. Clinical Trial Identification Workflow Examples (Informative)

Retired. See PS 3.17.

Annex P Index